

Clinical Methods
in
MEDICINE
(Clinical Skills and Practices)

Clinical Methods in MEDICINE

(Clinical Skills and Practices)

SN Chugh

MD, MNAMS, FICP, FICN, FIACM, FIMSA, FISC
Professor of Medicine and Head Endocrine and Metabolism
PGIMS, Rohtak, Haryana
India



JAYPEE BROTHERS MEDICAL PUBLISHERS (P) LTD

New Delhi • Ahmedabad • Bengaluru • Chennai • Hyderabad • Kochi • Kolkata • Lucknow • Mumbai • Nagpur

Published by

Jitendar P Vij

Jaypee Brothers Medical Publishers (P) Ltd

B-3 EMCA House, 23/23B Ansari Road, Daryaganj

New Delhi 110 002, India

Phones: +91-11-23272143, +91-11-23272703, +91-11-23282021, +91-11-23245672, Rel: 32558559

Fax: +91-11-23276490, +91-11-23245683

e-mail: jaypee@jaypeebrothers.com

Visit our website: www.jaypeebrothers.com

Branches

- ❑ **Ahmedabad** 380 015 Phones: +91-79-26926233, Rel: +91-79-32988717,
Fax: +91-79-26927094 e-mail: ahmedabad@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ 202 Batavia Chambers, 8 Kumara Krupa Road, Kumara Park East
Bengaluru 560 001 Phones: +91-80-22285971, +91-80-22382956, +91-80-22372664, Rel: +91-80-32714073
Fax: +91-80-22281761 e-mail: bangalore@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ 282 IIIrd Floor, Khaleel Shirazi Estate, Fountain Plaza, Pantheon Road
Chennai 600 008 Phones: +91-44-28193265, +91-44-28194897, Rel: +91-44-32972089
Fax: +91-44-28193231 e-mail: chennai@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ 4-2-1067/1-3, 1st Floor, Balaji Building, Ramkote Cross Road
Hyderabad 500 095 Phones: +91-40-66610020, +91-40-24758498, Rel: +91-40-32940929
Fax: +91-40-24758499, e-mail: hyderabad@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ No. 41/3098, B & B1, Kuruvi Building, St. Vincent Road
Kochi 682 018, Kerala Phone: +91-484-4036109, +91-484-2395739, +91-484-2395740
e-mail: kochi@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ 1-A Indian Mirror Street, Wellington Square
Kolkata 700 013 Phones: +91-33-22651926, +91-33-22276404, +91-33-22276415, Rel: +91-33-32901926
Fax: +91-33-22656075, e-mail: kolkata@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ Lekhraj Market III, B-2, Sector-4, Faizabad Road, Indira Nagar
Lucknow 226 016 Phones: +91-522-3040553, +91-522-3040554
e-mail: lucknow@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ 106 Amit Industrial Estate, 61 Dr SS Rao Road, Near MGM Hospital, Parel
Mumbai 400012 Phones: +91-22-24124863, +91-22-24104532, Rel: +91-22-32926896
Fax: +91-22-24160828, e-mail: mumbai@jaypeebrothers.com
- ❑ "KAMALPUSHPA" 38, Reshimbag, Opp. Mohota Science College, Umred Road
Nagpur 440 009 (MS) Phone: Rel: +91-712-3245220,
Fax: +91-712-2704275 e-mail: nagpur@jaypeebrothers.com

Clinical Methods in Medicine

© 2008, Jaypee Brothers Medical Publishers

All rights reserved. No part of this publication should be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the author and the publisher.

This book has been published in good faith that the material provided by author is original. Every effort is made to ensure accuracy of material, but the publisher, printer and author will not be held responsible for any inadvertent error(s). In case of any dispute, all legal matters are to be settled under Delhi jurisdiction only.

First Edition: 2008

ISBN 978-81-8448-205-8

Typeset at JPBMP typesetting unit

Printed at Ajanta Offset & Packagings Ltd, New Delhi

Dedicated

To

My parents

*Late Shri Chhabil Dass Chugh and Sanwari Devi Chugh
and my wife Dr Kiran Chugh
and*

My Children

*Dr Anshul Chugh and daughter-in-law Deepti Chugh
Daughter Dr Ashima Chugh
and my all students and teachers*

Preface

Medicine is a fast changing subject, is nowadays dominated by investigations instead of clinical skills in making the clinical diagnosis. There is no doubt that with fast development of science and availability of new techniques for investigations, the diagnosis can be made accurately but at exuberant cost. In the present era, the practice of medicine is changing, clinical skills have been pushed to back seat. I must say that clinical skills make up the clinical sense of the students/physicians thus cut short the demand of unnecessary investigations. The human mind is a computer, can see and interpret the clinical signs on the bedside and can give provisional diagnosis instantaneously. A good bedside examination can narrow down the differential diagnosis and provide you a concise approach for investigations and thus curtail the cost of investigations. The developing countries cannot afford such costly investigations just for pretty ailment/diseases, for example CT scan for just headache.

I being a clinician, is of the opinion that a student must learn the technique of history taking and master the interpretation of clinical signs so as to become a good physician. If you cannot see and interpret clinical sign, your mind will not think of the diagnosis and differential diagnosis. If you cannot make a provisional diagnosis, you cannot order the appropriate investigations; hence, history taking, clinical skills and methods and investigations are interlinked. Keeping this concept in mind, I am delighted to bring the first edition of this book.

A large number of books are available on clinical examination in the market, but none of them is complete. Most of them are written by foreign authors from the developed countries, lay more emphasis on the investigations than the physical signs. Our students by reading such books are not able to interpret the clinical signs and are becoming investigations-oriented which is not accepted by our society. Our patients are poor, cannot afford so much on investigations, require cheap diagnosis which can be provided by accurate and better interpretation of clinical signs and symptoms.

This book on *Clinical methods in Medicine* will provide the students an opportunity to get acquainted with the secrets of history taking and clinical examination and then take the help of appropriate bedside investigations so as to plan the management. The basic aim of the book is to describe the various skills in taking a history and step by step clinical examination including general physical and systemic examination. Unit I is devoted to history taking and analysis of the symptoms pertaining to various systems. Unit II concentrates on the clinical examination, includes first ten chapters on detailed general physical examination while next ten chapters of Unit III deals with the proper systemic examination. The approach of this book is basic, i.e. to start with the history taking and then proceed to analyse the symptoms and discuss their significance and then find all what is normal or what is abnormal on physical examination. The examination sequence is detailed, abnormal findings to be noted on inspection or palpation also detailed and relevance of abnormal findings discussed simultaneously. Throughout the book, the "key points" are highlighted in the boxes.

The book is primarily intended for the undergraduate students but the postgraduate students and even the physicians will also find it useful in day to day clinical practice. The postgraduate students who are preparing for the examination and especially those who are planning to pursue higher study will also be benefitted. I have attempted to include all the available information in the literature so as to make the book presentable both for undergraduates and postgraduates. However, if there is an error in interpretation of a clinical sign or under or over interpretation, I may be informed personally. I will like suggestions from my teacher colleague on this book so that I can improve on my deficiencies.

I extend my sincere thanks to M/s Jaypee Brothers Medical Publishers (P) Ltd. who have taken sincere and dedicated efforts to bring the first colourful edition of this book. I must say that best look and face to the book is provided by the publisher.

I am grateful to my family who have supported me in this endeavour.

At last, I request the readers to forward any suggestion or comment on this book to the publisher or to me.

SN Chugh

Contents

UNIT — I HISTORY TAKING AND REVIEW OF SYSTEM

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| 1. History Taking | 3 – 17 |
| 2. Analysis of Systemic Symptoms | 18 – 48 |

UNIT — II PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 3. General Physical Examination | 51 – 60 |
| 4. The Head, Scalp, Skin and Hair | 61 – 80 |
| 5. The Eyes | 81 – 100 |
| 6. The Mouth and the Pharynx | 101 – 109 |
| 7. The Ear, Nose, Sinuses and Throat | 110 – 121 |
| 8. The Neck | 122 – 130 |
| 9. The Breast and the Axillae | 131 – 138 |
| 10. The Extremities | 139 – 151 |

UNIT — III SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 11. The Cardiovascular System (CVS) | 155 – 202 |
| 12. The Respiratory System | 203 – 235 |
| 13. The Abdomen | 236 – 283 |
| 14. The Urogenital System and Sexually Transmitted Diseases | 284 – 314 |
| 15. The Nervous System | 315 – 402 |
| 16. The Examination of Unconscious Patient | 403 – 412 |
| 17. The Locomotor System | 413 – 455 |
| 18. The Blood | 456 – 473 |
| 19. The Psychiatric Assessment | 474 – 490 |
| 20. The Endocrinal System | 491 – 515 |

UNIT — IV APPENDICES

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Appendices | 519 – 535 |
| <i>Index</i> | 537 - 547 |

UNIT I

History Taking and Review of System

Chapters

1. History Taking	1 - 17
2. Analysis of Systemic Symptoms	18 - 48

1

History Taking

INTRODUCTION

A student while posted in medicine has to learn the clinical medicine with following aims:

1. One should learn the art of taking a detailed informative history. History taking is an important aspect of medicine.
2. One has to know the method of detailed physical examination to be carried out. Both the important positive and negative physical signs are to be noted so as to reach some conclusion at the end of examination.
3. The exact terminology used in medicine has to be followed. Terminology based on science is the foundation for the solution to many clinical problems.
4. The practice of medicine combines both science and art. The dazzling advances in biochemical methodology and in biophysical imaging techniques that allow access to the remotest recesses of the body are the products of science. So, too are the therapeutic manoeuvres which increasingly are major products of medical science. One has to learn the skill in the most sophisticated application of laboratory technology or use of the latest therapeutic modality.
5. The ability to extract items of crucial significance from a mass of contradictory physical signs and from the printouts of laboratory data, when a clinical sign is worth pursuing or when to dismiss it as 'red herring' and to estimate in any given patient whether a proposed treatment entails a greater risk than the disease are all involved in the 'decision-making'. This combination of medical knowledge, intuition and judgement is termed the art of medicine, which one has to learn.
6. *The patient-doctor relationship*: It may be emphasised that students/physicians need to approach patients not as 'cases' or 'diseases' but as 'individuals' whose problems/symptoms are to be heard sympathetically. Most patients are anxious and frightened.

Often, they go to extreme ends to convince themselves that illness does not exist or unconsciously develop false belief or perception about benign disease as life threatening illness. Some patients may use illness to gain attention, or to serve as a crutch to extricate themselves from an emotionally stressful situation; some even feign physical illness. Without this knowledge, it is difficult for the physicians to gain rapport with the patient or to develop insight into the patient's illness. The patient-doctor relationship must be based on thorough knowledge of the patient and on the mutual trust and the ability to communicate with one another. A strong personal relationship with the patient is essential in order to sustain the patient during stressful situation.

HISTORY TAKING

The Skills

The written history of a patient should contain all the facts of medical significance in the life of the patient. The history should be recorded in a chronological order. The recent events should be given most attention. A problem-oriented approach should be adopted while recording the history; the problems that are clinically dominant should be listed first. Ideally, patient should be allowed to narrate his/her history in his/her own way and language without any interruption. However, few patients have sufficient power of observation or recall to give a history without some guidance from the physician. A physician/student must be careful not to suggest the answers to the questions being posed. A physician/student should hear the history with patience, often a symptom which has concerned a patient most may have little significance, while an apparently minor complaint may be of considerable importance. Therefore, the physician must be constantly alert to the possibility that any event narrated by the

patient, however, trivial or apparently remote, may be the key to the solution of the medical problem.

NB: History taking is not a mere records of some questions and answers between the doctor and the patient. Remember the dictum – “Listen to the patient, he/she is telling you the diagnosis”.

An informative history is more significant than orderly recorded symptoms. Something is always gained by listening to the patient and noting the way in which he/she expresses the symptoms. Inflections of voice, facial expression and attitude may betray important clues to the meaning of the symptoms to the patients. In listening to the history, physician/student discovers not only something about the disease but also something about the patient.

Unless patient is known, clinicians should introduce themselves by name and explain their position. If appropriate, the patient identity must be confirmed along with that of any accompanying person. The patient may be interviewed alone or in the presence of an accompanying person. This may allay anxiety and may be necessary in some situations such as memory impairment and language difficulty or an unconscious patient. The accompanying person or third person or a family member may be involved during discussion after the clinical examination as this may improve patient's subsequent understanding of the information given by the doctor.

Interview technique

It includes

- i. **What to ask about?** It is useful to think about questions to be asked which are multilayered. A positive response leads to further questioning; whereas negative response moves the clinician on to the next question.
- ii. **How to ask?** The patient needs to understand what is being said. Generally speaking, technical words should be avoided. The public is becoming

increasingly aware of medical terms or medical matters through the internet and mass media, but this does not necessarily mean they understand the terms, therefore, certain terms having different meanings may be clarified if used by the patient.

There are two main types of enquires- **open** (*how, what and why* type of questions) and **closed** (*who, when, where* types of questions). Examples of inquiries and there purpose is depicted in the Box 1.1.

Pitfalls in history taking

With experience, the following pitfalls in history - taking have become apparent.

1. What the patients relate for the most part consists of subjective phenomenon and they obviously differ widely in their responses to the same stimuli and in their interpretation. Their attitude is variably influenced by fear of disability and death and by concern over the consequence of their illness to their families.
2. Accuracy of the history is affected by language or sociological barriers.
3. History is also influenced by intellectual powers which interfere with recall. This is the reason that, sometimes narration by the patient may be difficult due to failing intellectual powers, hence, in such a situation it is narrated by the accompanying person which, in itself, may not be true representation of patient's symptoms.
4. History taking in unconscious patient is difficult. It is difficult to collect factual data and physician is forced to proceed with objective evidence of the disease.

It is in obtaining the history that the physician's skill, knowledge and experience are most helpful.

Parts of history taking/recording

It consists of the following parts:

1. Name, age, sex, father's name, marital status, full address, occupation, socio-economic status.

Box 1.1: EXAMPLES OF INQUIRIES, TECHNIQUES AND THEIR PURPOSE		
Type	Questions	Purpose
Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tell me about your illness What happened next? 	What effects has this illness on your life
Closed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When did this begin? Have you had chest pain? Has anyone in your family had a similar trouble? Do you smoke? 	Such questions give them an opportunity to say what they want to say They are mainly used to expand the patient's story and to clarify specific points

2. Chief complaints.
3. History of present illness.
4. Past history of illness.
5. Treatment (drug) history.
6. Family history.
7. Personal history:
 - Occupational or socio-economic history.
 - Dietary history.
 - Menstrual history in females.

Chief complaint (s)

Ask the patient regarding the main complaint for which he/she is seeking medical consultation. Most of the patients have mainly one or two complaints which are recorded in chronological order easily (see the Box 1.2) but sometimes because of nervousness, anxiety, apprehension and fear, they may exaggerate the symptoms to gain sympathy and make a list of complaints that are recorded in an order in which the most troubling complaint becomes the presenting complaint.

The question of duration of a complaint is difficult especially in old people and in uneducated people. Majority of patients do not remember the exact duration of complaints. In such a situation, approximate duration may be asked. The duration of complaints gives a rough idea of duration of disease whether acute, subacute or chronic and its progression. The onset of complaints may help to make the diagnosis in the absence of objective evidence. For example, to satisfy the definition of chronic bronchitis, history of intermittent cough for three months in a year for two years is sufficient for diagnosis.

Remember. Make every attempt to quote the patient's own words.

How to write the chief complaints?

The format is to ask the patient' *"what is your main complaint"*? And then' *when were you last in your usual state of health"*. This leads to the request; please tell me what has happened to you since then. The format of chief complaint (s) in chronological order is given in the Box 1.2.

Box 1.2: CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF CHIEF COMPLAINTS	
Presenting of complaint(s)	Chronological order
• Headache off and on	For the last 2 years
• Breathlessness (shortness of breath)	For the last 2 months
• Chest pain	Since today

The History of present illness

Ask the patient to tell the detailed story of his/her illness from the day it started till today, giving the details of treatment, if taken. Ideally, patient should not be interrupted while narrating the history. During history, patient may tell the things or statements which are of no consequence; these should be ignored. Sometimes, patient may describe the complaints in medical terms such as they may use rheumatism for joint pains and migraine for headache. The patient here will be asked to tell what actually happens during these complaints or he/she should give full details of the symptoms. While listening to the history, a student/physician can ask the patient to give more details about that specific symptom. Sometimes, symptoms and signs appear and disappear spontaneously and one should try to confirm whether they are related to relapse or remission of the disease.

When a student/doctor has understood the story of illness, he should proceed with each main complaint turn by turn and examine it in details. The first step in history is to make sure that you and patient are talking about the same thing. Sometimes, patient may use certain words which may have many meanings or may have different interpretation. In such a situation, one should clearly ask what does it mean actually. For example, a patient may say wind in the abdomen that moves from abdomen upwards into the brain and causes headache. Ask the patient directly whether he/she means that wind does not pass down and instead it goes up and causes discomfort.

Aims of present history

- To keep history flowing by asking so what happened next?
- To identify those aspects of history which are incomplete and require further questioning.
- To pick up clues about the patient's reaction to the complaints, emotional and mental state of the patient.

Analysis of a symptom

Perhaps the most common complaint is a pain which brings the patient to a doctor. The way in which a symptom is to be analysed is illustrated with the example of pain. Ask about the following points.

1. *Site*: Where is the pain? Note the way by which the patient illustrates the site, either he/she will use his/her finger or spreads his/her hand over the chest.
2. *Radiation*: Is it static or moves from one place to another?

3. *Severity*: How severe is it? Is it variable in severity from time to time? It depends on an individual's perception of pain. Patient may use exaggerated terms such as agonising or tearing to seek sympathy of the doctor or to overcome socio-psychological distress.
4. *Timing*: Note the time or any diurnal variation of symptom.
5. *Occurrence or its exaggeration*: Note what brings the pain. How does it get relieved? Are there any precipitating factors? Is it related to exertion? Does it occur at rest? Is there any relation to food, etc.?
6. *Relief*: What makes it better? Does it get relieved with the change in position? Is it relieved by food, by defaecation or by passage of wind? Cardiac pain is brought by exertion and is relieved by rest.
7. *Effect of treatment*: The effect of drugs may have diagnostic value.

It is, however, possible to explore other symptoms, for example thirst, by asking the relevant questions. The enquiries to be made for thirst are given in the Box 1.3. This is an urge to drink water. It occurs in variety of disorders.

Box 1.3: ENQUIRIES FOR SYMPTOM OF THIRST

Thirst is a prime symptom of loss of body water which may be due to vomiting, diarrhoea, diminished intake, fever, polyuria and haemorrhage. Simple questions will uncover its immediate cause.

If, for example, polyuria is the cause of thirst then it could be due to compulsive water drinking, diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus, hypercalcaemia, diuretic therapy and renal failure (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus). Specific enquiries about other symptoms of the disease may be made, such as whether polyuria or polyphagia or both are associated with thirst or not. This will make clinical distinction between diabetes insipidus and mellitus.

Confirm whether it is physiological due to excessive tea or coffee before embarking on the diagnosis.

Similarly, other symptoms analysis may be done according to the systemic symptoms discussed under the symptoms of systemic disorders. Towards the end of present illness, besides positive complaints of the patient, one must ask certain relevant questions about symptoms which the patient has not complained. This is important from following points of view:

- Patient may not like to include it as main complaint but that may be important for diagnosis.
- Presence and absence of symptoms not told by the patient may help in making the diagnosis and to exclude other similar conditions.
- Other information relevant to the symptoms may be necessary such as risk factors for coronary artery disease in a patient with chest pain or current medications in patients with syncope.

Remember: It is important to include “pertinent positive” and “pertinent negative” symptoms while recording the history of present illness.

There are two important points about history-taking which must be mentioned here:

- i. Under each system, the absence of the most important symptoms, i.e. dyspnoea and cough in case of respiratory system, dyspnoea on exertion or cardiac pain in case of the cardiovascular system and paralysis or headache or fits in the case of nervous system must be recorded. Their absence influences the diagnosis. The positive symptoms and important negative symptoms on history may give indication of specific involvement of a system.
- ii. Secondly, the history does not end with the first examination. Continuous notes should be made regarding the disappearance of symptoms or the appearance of new ones, or any other relevant fact.

Course of the illness must be ascertained whether it is acute or insidious onset. How did it progress, i.e. worsened quickly or slowly? Whether there have been relapses or remissions of illness, which would give the intermittent nature of the disease. Sudden events are due to trauma or vascular accidents, etc. Painful disorders and fever indicate infections and neoplasms. Progressive or chronic nature of the disorders points to degenerative origin of the disease. Exaggeration and chronicity of symptoms without any ill effect may be due to psychological reasons.

History of past illness

The previous or past history should include all events since infancy. Patient may give ready-made diagnosis of his/her illness that occurred in the past. In that eventuality, it must be verified by asking what actually happened during that illness so as to conclude whether diagnosis is likely or less likely. At times, it may be necessary to communicate with doctors or hospitals that have treated the patient in the past.

Patients are usually not interested to tell the past events. They may or may not remember minor events of the past. The relevant past history pertaining to the present symptoms is to be asked by the physician and recorded. For example, history of acute rheumatic fever in cases with rheumatic heart disease is quite relevant. Jaundice in the past, in case of liver disease, may point

to the aetiopathogenesis of symptoms of liver disease in the present history.

To ask past history of diabetes in a patient, who is suffering from diabetes mellitus, is not relevant because it is incurable disease and once it manifests, it continues. Therefore, in such a situation, past history should be asked about the age of onset, its progression and any complications during the past. Some relevant past history to be asked and recorded is as follows:

- i. **Childhood illnesses** e.g. measles, rubella, mumps, whooping cough, chicken pox, rheumatic fever and polio and history of immunisation such as DPT, polio, tetanus, hepatitis B, measles must be asked.
- ii. **Adult medical illnesses**, e.g. diabetes, hypertension, tuberculosis, asthma, hepatitis, HIV disease must be asked.
- iii. In a patient with rheumatic valvular disease, past history of acute rheumatic fever, joints pain, sore throat is helpful, while history of hypertension is to be recorded in a patient with ischaemic heart disease.
- iv. History of jaundice, haematemesis, malena, disturbed consciousness are to be asked in a case with liver disease. Drug treatment is to be asked if jaundice is present. Past history of amoebic dysentery in a case with liver abscess is important.
- v. Past history of chronic bronchitis (cough occurring 3 months in a year for two consecutive years) is relevant to COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease). Similarly, history of episodes of acute breathlessness with wheeze is important in a case with bronchial asthma. Past history of exanthematous fever, respiratory sinus infection, sore throat are important points to be asked in a respiratory case. Long history of fever with cough, haemoptysis is important for tuberculosis of lung.
- vi. Prolonged history of diarrhoea is relevant to a patient with an intestinal disorder. Episodic pain in abdomen in the past related to meals is relevant to peptic ulcer.
- vii. Past history of trauma head is significant in a case with neurological disorder.

Importance of past history

Certain illnesses in the past may produce complications in the present, for example, childhood infectious illness may produce pulmonary complications in adulthood. Similarly adult illness in the past may have important bearing on the symptoms of present illness. Obstetric/ gynaecological past history (menstrual history, birth control, and sexual function) carry significance in a

female presenting with gynaecological complaints. The past history relevant to various systems is depicted in the Table 1.1.

Difficulties in history taking

Taking a history from a patient may pose problem for a number of reasons discussed below. Patient may not at all be at fault. The difficulty is created by circumstances, hence, one should bear this in mind and remain objective (rely on signs) and professional throughout. The circumstances that lead to difficulty and their remedial measures given in the Box 1.4.

NB: Person should narrate the history himself/herself unless, otherwise indicated.

Family history

Note the patient's position in the family, the ages of the children and record of their health, important illnesses and cause of death of immediate relatives. If, however, there is question of hereditary disorder, one should enquire about all the relatives and attempt to construct a family tree showing those affected and those who are not affected (Fig. 1.1). The family history serves several functions. First, in rare single gene defects, a positive family history of a similarly affected individual or a history of consanguineous marriage may have important diagnostic implications. Second, in diseases of multifactorial aetiology that have a family aggregation, it may be possible to identify the patients at risk for the disease and to intervene prior to development of overt manifestations. For example, a recent history of weight gain is a more ominous development in a woman who has a family history of diabetes than in one who does not. Ask the family history of each of the following conditions and record if they are present or absent in the family; hypertension, coronary artery disease, hyperlipidaemia, stroke, diabetes, thyroid or renal disease, cancer (specify type), arthritis, asthma, tuberculosis, headache, seizure disorder, mental illness, suicide, alcohol or drug addiction and allergies.

The symbols used in construction of a family tree (pedigree chart) are illustrated in Figure 1.1. The genetic basis is most striking in certain autosomal dominant (Huntington's disease) or X-linked disorders (haemophilia, myopathy). The pattern of inheritance is less apparent in autosomal recessive disorders as sibs just have a 1 in 4 (25%) chance of developing the disorder.

In many common disorders such as hypertension or coronary artery disease, the mode of inheritance is complex and variable under the environmental influences such as diet and smoking. Apparently a

Table 1.1: Past history relevance to review of systems

System	Ask past history of	For/ Purpose
<i>Cardiovascular</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Joint pain (fleeting in nature) during childhood or adolescence] Rubella infection (maternal) HT, and diabetes Risk factors, e.g. obesity, smoking, lack of exercise, family history of heart attacks, etc. Drug treatment, if any 	Rheumatic fever, rheumatism Congenital heart disease Coronary artery syndromes Coronary artery disease Congestive heart failure, arrhythmias
<i>Respiratory</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Viral exanthems, polio, influenza Allergy/ asthma Tuberculosis Status of immunisation Epilepsy/convulsion Ear, nose, throat infection Surgery over upper respiratory tract 	Predispose to respiratory disease Respiratory allergic disorders and asthma Reactivation or reinfection or post-tubercular complications Partial immunisation or unimmunisation predispose to disease Aspiration of secretion and predisposition to infection May complicate to involve respiratory tract Inhalation of infected secretion and predisposition to respiratory infection
<i>GI tract</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recurrent pain abdomen, vomiting, diarrhoea Haematemesis and/or malena Prolonged diarrhoea Expulsion of worms 	Recurrent pancreatitis, cholecystitis, erosive gastritis, parasitic infection Peptic ulcer, erosive gastritis, cirrhotic portal hypertension, Mallory-Weiss syndrome Chronic diarrhoea/ malabsorption/ steatorrhea Round worm infestation
<i>Hepatobiliary</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alcohol intake Haematemesis and malena Jaundice Drug treatment Recurrent biliary colic 	Alcohol related disorders Cirrhotic and non cirrhotic portal hypertension Cirrhosis, hepatitis Cirrhosis, drug induced hepatitis Stone in biliary system
<i>Urinary system</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recurrent renal/ ureteric colic Recurrent fever with chills and rigors Any change in frequency or colour of the urine Instrumentation/ catheterisation 	Stone in renal or urinary tract, urinary tract infection, obstructive nephropathy Urinary tract infection (UTI) UTI, haematuria, haemoglobinuria, drugs Predisposition to infection
<i>Obstetric/ Gynaecological</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Menstrual history Birth control (medications) Sexual history Alcoholism and smoking Difficult labour 	Endocrinal disorder Oral contraceptive related disorder Sexually transmitted diseases Delivery of low birth weight children Injury to urinary tract and predisposition to infection
<i>Endocrinal and metabolism</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Childhood diarrhoea/ malabsorption Candida infection (mouth, GI tract, nails) Drug history (e.g. antidiabetic, steroids, hormone replacement therapy) Profuse postpartum bleeding Diabetes 	Coeliac disease, hypopituitarism Candida endocrinopathy Diabetes, iatrogenic Cushing's syndrome, menopause, osteoporosis Seehan's syndrome
<i>Neurological</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recurrent, headache, visual disturbance, vertigo Repeated convulsions Head trauma Muscular weakness Chronic diarrhoea/ malabsorption Alcohol use 	Migraine-related disorders Epilepsy Subdural haematoma, head injury related brain disorder Myopathies Nutritional deficiency disorders including peripheral neuropathies Alcohol related neurological diseases
<i>Haematological</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any bleeding in the past or recurrent episodes Family history of deep tissue bleeding/ joint bleeding Dietary history Chronic diarrhoea Excessive bleeding from any site 	Bleeding disorders (vascular or thrombocytopenic) Haemophilia A and B Anaemia and nutritional disorders Parasitic infestation and anaemia Bleeding/ coagulation disorder, anaemia

Box. 1.4: DIFFICULTIES IN HISTORY TAKING AND THEIR REMEDIAL MEASURES	
Circumstances	Remedial measures
1. Patient too unwell (triage, severe pain, profuse bleeding, vomiting, severe breathlessness, agitation, distress)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Treat the patient • Obtain history from a third party/ accompanying person • Review in detail when the patient becomes fit enough
2. Mental incapacity (coma, confusion, acute psychosis, severe learning disability)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ascertain what, if any, history can be obtained from the patient • Seek history from a third party or parties, relatives, friends, neighbours or professionals who have full knowledge of the disease of the patient
3. Communication difficulties	
i. Does not know english language (foreigner), or a regional language (illiterate, labourer)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Establish competence to understand the uncommon people considerably more than they can express. • If accompanied, ask whether the friend or relative could act as an interpreter. Proceed if the patient agrees to this. • If alone, or involving a friend or relative unacceptable, seek an interpreter
ii. <i>Sensory deficit</i> (deafness, mutism)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the hearing and establish a means of communication • Obtain a history through written questions, lip reading, involving a relative or someone who is acceptable and can communicate with the patient
iii. <i>Expressive difficulty</i> (dysphasia, dysarthria, stammering)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Establish the nature of the problem and proceed accordingly e.g. the patient can communicate in writing or via a relative
iv. <i>Emotionally disturbed</i> (angry, abusive/threatening)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ascertain the nature of problem and try to establish the basis of the reaction • Try to correct any misunderstanding • If appropriate, either offer an alternative appointment or talk to the relative, friend or third party to get the requisite information

common pathological process such as atheroma may present in unrelated manner in a family for example one relative may present with a heart attack and another with stroke. Therefore, environmental factors may emerge through family proximity. For example, a life long non-smoking woman with a bronchogenic carcinoma may have had a smoker husband who died due to smoke-related illness.

The social, personal and occupational history

This history actually deals with the patient's physical and emotional environment, the surroundings both at home and at work, habits, mental attitude to life and to work. Therefore, ask about the followings:

- 1. Exact nature of work/ occupation:** Ask the type and nature of work being done by the patient. You can ask him about former occupations, if any. One should also ask about the attitude towards work, employer and fellow-workers. Try to find out financial worries.
- 2. Domestic and marital relations:** Ask about the marital status. In men, particularly if unmarried, remember the possibility of homosexuality. Both in males and females, homosexuality is frequently associated with personal and social stresses.

Try to find out his/her relation with other family members/friends. The life study of the patient should be explored by asking his/her hobbies, interests, fear, hopes, games played or other source of entertainment, etc.

- 3. Home surroundings:** Ask about his house whether it is made of mud (kuccha house) or bricks and cemented (pucca). Ask about the sanitary conditions, any possibility of overcrowding or loneliness. What pets are kept?

Habits

Smoking, alcohol drinking and abusing drugs contribute to the disease, hence, inquires into these habits is often necessary. Patient may be defensive and may deny or minimise their substance use, in such a situation questioning should be tactful, firm and persistent to get the full information either from him or from a relative.

Tobacco

- Determine status of smoking of the patient, e.g. smoker, an ex-smoker or a life-long non-smoker.
- If patient is smoker, then determine;
 1. Form of smoking (cigarettes, bidi, cigars, pipe), quantity (number of cigarettes/bidi/cigar smoked/day) and duration of smoking.

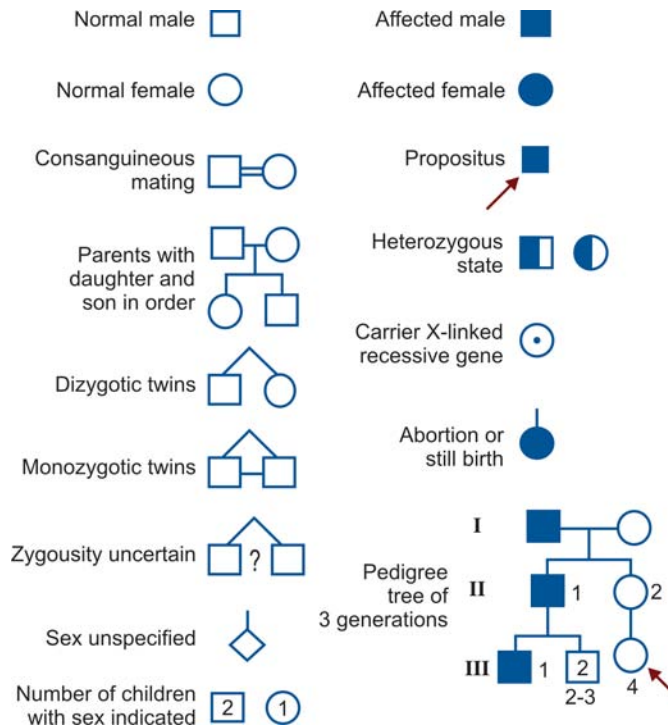


Fig. 1.1: Symbols used for construction of a pedigree charts. First of all draw up a family tree with affected person first found to have trait. Thereafter, relevant informations regarding siblings and all maternal and paternal relatives are included

- If the patient is ex-smoker, note the length of time since the patient stopped smoking.

Remember: Staining on the fingers or teeth should raise strong suspicion that patient is or until recently was a heavy smoker.

In smoker, the possibility of tobacco related disease should be considered (Fig. 1.2). It must be remembered that tobacco related diseases are common in both active as well as passive smokers (who just inhale smoke).

Alcohol

- Ask whether the patient is tea-totallar or drinks alcohol, with the approximate weekly amount (quantity in units).
- A past or recent history of an alcohol related problem must be noted. Repeated hospital admissions or consultations must be noted.
- The quantity of alcohol consumed in an week should be calculated. Normally in Indian setting, a small pack of alcohol means 20-30 ml and large back consists of 40-60 ml.

There are two ways of calculating the units of alcohol consumed.



Fig. 1.2: Bad effects of smoking

Rough estimate

Standard measure = one glass of wine, one half pint of beer, one shot of spirits = 1 unit of alcohol.

Calculation of accurate alcohol strength, i.e. 1 unit = 10 ml of pure alcohol × per cent proof = units of alcohol/L. For example 40 per cent proof contains 400 ml pure alcohol or 40 units/L so one standard bottle of 750 ml contains 30 units of alcohol. For beer, 4 per cent beer contains 40 ml of pure alcohol or 4 units/L, so one large 500 ml bottle can contain 20 units of alcohol

Recommended limits for 'Safe' drinking

For men	24 units/week
For women	14 units/week

The detailed history of alcohol intake becomes important;

1. When a man drinks heavily in a binge and could be a suspect of alcohol-induced problem.
2. When excessive drinking is suspected either currently or in the recent past.
3. When an alcohol dependence syndrome exhibiting withdrawal symptoms such as "Shakes" develop.
4. When symptoms are suggestive of alcohol-related disorder. A further questioning relate to assessing the presence of different aspects of alcoholism (Box 1.5).

Box 1.5: THE CONTENTS OF ALCOHOL HISTORY

- Drinking habits
- Quality and quantity of drink
- Daily/weekly pattern (especially binge drinking and morning drinking)
- Usual place of drinking (home, outside), alone or in a company

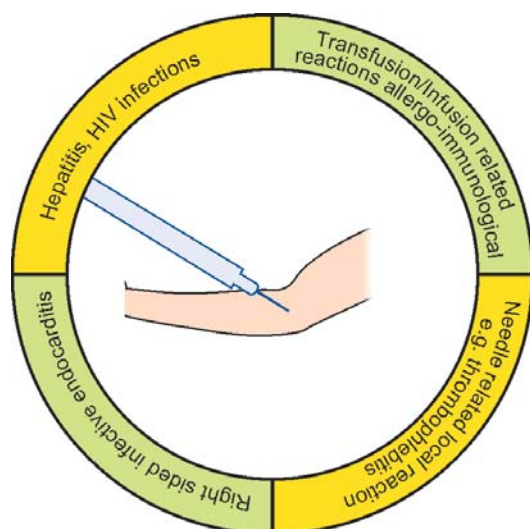


Fig. 1.3: Needle sharing disorders

Illicit drug use

The significance of alcohol intake and its related disorder are depicted in Box 1.6.

In modern era where illicit drug consumption is rising rapidly, one should not hesitate to ask about it if there is any doubt. However, enquiries should be made in a tactful manner with no adverse effect on patient-doctor relationship.

Box 1.6: ALCOHOL RELATED DISORDERS	
I. CNS related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Withdrawal convulsions Delirium tremens Alcoholic dementia Subdural haematoma Wernicke's and Korsakoff's syndromes Proximal myopathy and peripheral neuropathy
II. GI tract related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Oesophagitis and Mallory—Weiss syndrome Gastritis and peptic ulceration Pancreatitis
III CVS related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cardiomyopathy Hypertension
IV Liver related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stenosis Cirrhosis Alcoholic hepatitis
V Genitourinary related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Impotence Infertility Foetal alcohol syndrome

If illicit drugs are being suspected or have been used; the followings should be noted:

- The type(s) of drug involved
- The frequency and duration of use

- Intravenous use and whether needle-sharing occurred. The needle-related disorders are depicted in Figure 1.3
- Whether drug dependence developed
- Any mental, physical or social problem arising from drug use (e.g. indulging in other illegal activities).

Remember: Past history of intravenous drug use or misuse or IV transfusion becomes important if a patient is suffering from chronic hepatitis or hepatitis B or C infection

While asking about substance misuse, it is necessary to advise the patient that medical confidentiality affords protection of patient and even if he/she refuses to disclose details of illicit drug-taking, this should be noted.

The social history and its relevance is depicted in Table 1.2.

Table 1.2: The social history and its relevance	
1. Upbringing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Birth injury Parental attachments and disruptions Schooling, academic interest and achievements-difficulties if any Behavioural problems
2. Domestic life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emotional, physical or sexual abuse Experience of death and illness Interest and attitude of parents Other occupants of house- any problem e.g. violence, health and bereavement
3. Marital status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Married or unmarried Quality of relationship and any problem of homosexuality Spouse's occupation
4. House and surroundings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Type of house-size, owned or rented Problems with the house Relationship with neighbours
5. Education	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Status of education Higher education and further training
6. Occupation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current and previous Exposure to hazard, e.g. chemicals, accidents, foreign travel etc. Employment (employed or unemployed-duration and reason)
7. Finance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Financial position (sound or weak) Any loss of income or debts
8. Community and family support	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supporting friends or family
9. Leisure activities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Habits Use of alcohol, tobacco, caffeine, illicit drugs Dietary restrictions/eating habits

REVIEW OF SYSTEMS/PRESENTING SYMPTOMS

While taking/recording the history, the doctor/student has to ask certain questions pertaining to his/her presenting complaints. What sorts of questions are to be asked is most challenging task for the students. In fact, the review of systems covers the questions pertaining to symptoms, but on occasions, some physicians also include diseases like tuberculosis, pneumonia, epilepsy, diabetes in the present or past history (if the patient is intelligent, educated and remember important illnesses as you ask questions within the *Review of Systems*, you can record or present such illnesses as a part of present illness or past history).

The details of questions varies according to state of the patient, nature and severity of illness and relevance of the information sought to the problem/illness under consideration. Always begin with general questions pertaining to various systems in easy understandable

language. This focusses the patient attention and enable you to gain confidence of the patient so that you can shift to more specific questions about the system in question.

Under Review of Systems questions may uncover certain problems that the patient has overlooked, particularly in areas unrelated to present illness.

Remember that: "major health events should be moved to the present illness or past history in your write-up"

Some physicians do the "Review of Systems" during the physical examination, asking about questions as they examine them. If the patient has only a few symptoms, this combination can be efficient, but if there are multiple symptoms, then the flow of both history and the examination is disrupted and necessary note-taking becomes awkward.

A standard series of review-of-system questions are listed in the Table 1.3.

Table 1.3: Systemic symptoms

Symptoms	Questions
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is it increasing, decreasing or stationary? Is change in weight of recent onset
Sleep	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Has the pattern of sleep changed? Is there difficulty in getting to sleep or there is early awakening? Does the patient feel sleep during the day? Does the patient take any medication for it?
Energy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is there any tiredness? Is there any fatigability? Is there any general malaise?
GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM	
A. Upper GI Symptoms	
Upper abdominal pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is the site of pain? How severe is it? Is it continuous or intermittent? Does it radiate to any site or direction? What is duration of pain? Are there any pain-free intervals, if yes, what is their duration? Is pain related to meal? Does it disturb sleep at night? What are the aggravating factors? What are relieving factors (e.g. food, vomiting or antacid)?
Appetite	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is it increased or decreased? If reduced, is appetite poor or the patient is afraid of taking food due to pain?
Vomiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is its frequency? Does vomiting relieve pain? What is the colour of the vomitus? Does it contain blood, residues of food taken the day before? When does it occur i.e. morning or evening?
Flatulent dyspepsia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the wind move downwards or upwards? Does either relieve symptoms?
Water brash	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does patient get excessive secretion of saliva into the mouth?

Contd....

Contd....

Heart burn	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does patient feel any pain or burning behind the sternum? • Does it appear especially after lying down? • Does sitting up has any effect?
Dysphagia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is there any difficulty in swallowing? • Is there any sticking of the food during swallowing? • Is it worse with solids or liquids? • Is swallowing painful? • Is there any associated symptom i.e. dysphonia or vomiting?
Sour eructations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does patient experience acid taste in the mouth? • Does it have any relation to type of food? • Does it occur during lying down? • Is any relieving factor known?
B. Lower GI Symptoms	
Diarrhoea	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is the frequency of stools? What is the duration of diarrhoea? • At which part of the day is it more? • What is their relation to meals or to special articles of food? • What is the colour of stool? • Are stool formed (solid) or unformed (liquid) or porridge- like frothy or watery • Do they float or stick to lavatory pan and difficult to wash them away? • Has the patient ever passed any blood? • Is there pain during defecation? • Is there any incontinence or involuntary passage of stool? • Any other associated symptoms?
Costipation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is the patient usual bowel habit? • Has there any recent change in the habit, if yes, then is change related to change in diet, medicines etc.? • Does constipation alternate with diarrhoea? • Is there any colicky pain? • Is there any blood in the stools?
Lower abdominal pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is the localisation, character, and radiation of pain? • Is it persistent or intermittent? • Where is it felt worst? • Is it relieved by defecation or by passage of flatus?
Abdominal distension	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is there any increase in the abdominal girth? • Is there any flatulence or dyspepsia. • Is distension more after taking meals • Does the patient has any diarrhoea or constipation? • Has the patient any psychiatric illness?
Lower GI Bleed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What is the colour of stool? Is the stool black-tarry coloured? • Are stools mixed with fresh blood? • Is it painful or painless?
HEPATOBIILIARY SYSTEM	
Jaundice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Has the patient noticed any yellowness of eyes or skin? Is there any change in colour of the urine and/or stool? • What is the colour of the stool, i.e. pale or dark? • Does the skin itch (pruritus)? • Have there been any case of jaundice among family, friends or locality? • Has there any history of injection/pin prick during the past three months? • Has the patient visited abroad recently? • Is there any history of alcoholism. If yes, ask the amount and duration? • Is the patient a drug addict?
Pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where the pain is? • Has the patient experienced severe attack of pain coming on suddenly and lasting for few hours? If so, did the pain radiate and in which direction? • Is pain associated with jaundice or jaundice is painless and progressive? • Did the pain radiate to shoulder or middle of back? • Is there any history of steatorrhoea (pale, frothy stools)?

Contd....

Contd....

Haematemesis

- What is its duration?
- Is blood in the vomitus dark-coloured or red coloured (fresh)?
- When did the first episode of haematemesis occurred if it is recurrent?
- What is the amount of blood lost?
- Is there associated tarry-coloured stool?
- Is there any past history of jaundice?

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Dyspnoea

- How short of breath is the patient?
- When does it occur, i.e. at rest or on exertion?
- What degree of exertion is necessary to produce it?
- Are there any attacks of dyspnoea at night (PND)?
- Does the patient sleep with many pillows behind the head (orthopnoea)?

Pain/ discomfort/ tightness

- What is its exact site?
- What is its character, i.e. dull, severe, stabbing, tearing, etc.?
- Is there any radiation of pain to the left arm, neck, shoulder or interscapular region?
- What precipitates it? And what relieves it?
- Is pain present at rest or occurs during exertion?
- Is it relieved by rest or sublingual medication?

Palpitation

- What brings on palpitation and how long does it last?
- Is it paroxysmal or intermittent?
- Is it induced or relieved by exercise?
- Is the heart rate regular or irregular and whether patient experiences any missing of the beat?
- Does the heart give an occasional thump now and then?

Cough

Oedema

- Ask about cough and expectoration and haemoptysis as detailed under respiratory system?
- Do the feet or ankle swell?
- Are the clothes or shoes tight?
- Is there any associated symptom, e.g. dyspnoea, pain abdomen, cyanosis or abdominal swelling (ascites)?

Other symptoms

- Is there a past history of rheumatic fever, joint pain or chorea (John's major criteria)?
- Is there any coldness, blueness or redness of the extremities?

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Cough

- Is it dry or productive?
- Is it paroxysmal or constant?
- At what time is it worst?
- Is it become worse with cold, dust, smoke or pollen?
- Is it painful or not?

Sputum

- What is its quantity?
- At what time is it more pronounced?
- What is its colour, odour and consistency?
- Is it purulent or not?
- Is it ever blood-stained (haemoptysis), if so whether blood comes in streaks or clots and on how many occasions?

Dyspnoea

- Is patient dyspnoeic?
- Does dyspnoea occur in paroxysms?
- Does dyspnoea occur at rest or after exercise?
- What sort of activity provokes it, e.g. walking upstairs, running for a bus etc.?

Wheezing

- When does wheezing occur?
- Is it constant or intermittent?
- Does anything provoke it, e.g. smoke, dust, pollens?
- Is it worst at any particular time of the day or night?
- What is the occupation of the patient?

Pain chest

- What is its exact site, i.e. central or peripheral?
- Is it aggravated by deep breathing or coughing?
- Is it associated with increase in cough, sputum or dyspnoea?
- Whether is it acute in onset?

Haemoptysis

- Is there any blood in the sputum?
- Is it fresh or altered colour?

Contd....

Contd....

- How often does it occur and for how long? Is the blood seen alone, or is it accompanied by purulent sputum?
- Ask the occupation and exposure to toxic substances and allergens at home or at work place?
- Is patient smoker?

HAEMOPOIETIC SYSTEM (BLOOD)

In patients with blood disorders, history carries much significance in addition to symptoms

- Ask about these symptoms
- Is there history of fever? Ask the characteristics of fever?
- Does the patient look pale?
- Is there any history of bleeding from any site, i.e. gums, epistaxis, GI tract, respiratory tract or skin?
- Is there any menstrual disturbance in females?
- Is there any easy bruising?
- Diet history including meat and green vegetable consumption?
- Past history of excessive bleeding following dental extraction/ minor procedure
- Family history of bleeding/clotting disorders (haemophilia)
- History of drug intake for aplasia of bone marrow
- Exposure to chemicals
- Any enlargement of glands (lymph nodes)

URINARY SYSTEM

- How much urine do you pass at a time?
- Does the patient get up at night to pass urine (nocturia)?
- Is the patient continent?
- Is the stream of urine normal or thin?
- Is the urine altered in colour?
- Is it clear or turbid when passed?
- Is there any blood in it (haematuria), if so, at what part of micturition is it present?
- Is there any increased frequency or burning micturition?
- Do you get up at night? How often?
- Is frequency associated with increased thirst (polyuria and polydipsia)?
- Is there any pain during micturition? Is it before, during or after the act? What is its character? And where is it felt?
- Is there any retention of urine with overflow incontinence? Do you ever leak any urine? or wet yourself involuntarily?
- Is there any history of loin pain? Does the patient has any attack of pain shooting down into the groin or testes?
- Have any of the symptoms being noticed by the patients i.e. headache, vomiting, drowsiness, fits, diminished vision, dyspnoea, alteration in urine volume?
- Does the face ever look puffy or oedematous in the morning?
- Are the ankles swollen? (pedal oedema)?
- What is the state of the bowel?

NERVOUS SYSTEM

- Is it transient (TIA-transitory ischaemic attacks recover within 24 hours)?
- Is it persistent >48 hours and then starts recovering (reversible ischaemic neurological deficit)?
- Was headache, vomiting associated with the onset?
- Is there any history of risk factors for cerebrovascular disease e.g. hypertension, heavy smoking, diabetes or hyperlipidaemia or positive family history?
- Is there any history of heart disease especially vascular disease (for cerebral embolism)?
- What was your age at first attack? Describe the first attack.
- How frequent do these attacks occur? What is the shortest and longest interval between the attacks?
- Do they occur at night during sleep?

Contd....

Contd....

Other symptoms, e.g. dizziness, speech disturbance, disturbance in memory, proximal or distal weakness and numbness of extremities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is there any aura or warning? • What is the nature of aura? • Does the patient become unconscious during attack (complex-partial seizure) or not (simple partial)? • Does the patient bite the tongue during attack? Examine the tongue for injury. • Is patient incontinent (involuntary passage of urine and stool) during attack? • Is there any post-ictal phenomenon, e.g. headache, somnolence, automatism or Todd's paralysis? • Is the patient on treatment? Take treatment history. • Ask about predisposing or precipitating events, e.g. head trauma, ear infection, brain injury, fever and family history.
Headache	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In each instance, ask about the mode of onset, circumstances of onset of symptoms, its progression and specific precipitating and relieving factors. • Did it follow an injury or viral infection? • Is dizziness induced by moving the head or by a particular posture? • Is there any history of systemic disease responsible for neurological complications? • Is there an evidence of inherited neurological disorder or congenital malformation? • Is there any history of exposure to toxic substances? • Is it intermittent or continuous? • Is visual disturbance associated with it (migraine) or not? • Is there any family history (migraine)? • What is the site and localisation of headache? Does it remain on one side or occurs on both sides? • What are the aggravating or relieving factors, if any? • Is there any neurological deficit?

ENDOCRINAL AND METABOLIC SYSTEM

Excessive thirst and excessive urine output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • These symptoms may occur in diabetes mellitus, hyperparathyroidism, diabetes insipidus and may be psychogenic. Ask about the other associated features of the disorders mentioned below.
Weight loss or weight gain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How much weight have you gained or lost? • Is weight loss associated with good appetite (hyperthyroidism) or poor appetite (malignancy, hypopituitarism)? • What is duration of weight loss? A long duration of low body weight in young girls indicate anorexia nervosa • Is there any associated menstrual irregularity? • Weight gain indicates obesity which has its consequences on various systems, i.e. joint, heart, metabolism, respiratory and neurological. Ask about their involvement, if any. • Is weight gain associated with moon-facies, camel's hump, abdominal striae, truncal obesity (Cushing's syndrome) or associated with slow mental and physical activity, constipation and change in voice (hypothyroidism)?
Cold/heat intolerance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ask about them. Cold intolerance indicates hypothyroidism and heat intolerance indicates hyperthyroidism. • Ask about other feature of these disorders.
Sweating, palpitation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Are they episodic or continuous? Episodes indicate phaeochromocytoma while constant symptoms indicate hyperthyroidism, anxiety • Does sweating occur after meals? Gustatory hyperhydrosis indicates autonomic neuropathy • Is sweating associated with flushing (carcinoid syndrome)?
Tremors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do they occur during fasting (hypoglycaemia)? • Do they occur at rest (hyperthyroidism)? • Do they occur during action (Parkinsonism, cerebellar disease)? • Are they relieved with alcohol? Alcohol relieves benign essential tremors?
Sexual and menstrual symptoms (e.g. impotence, amenorrhoea, polymenorrhoea, galactorrhoea, hirsutism, gynaecomastia)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read genital system
Pigmentation and depigmentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive pigmentation occurs in Cushing's syndrome, hence, ask for other features. • Depigmentation (vitiligo) occurs in autoimmune endocrine disorders and vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.
Family history	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family history is important in certain endocrinal disorders, e.g. diabetes mellitus, thyroid disorders (autoimmune, dysmorphogenesis), hyperparathyroidism, multiple endocrinal neoplasia).

Contd....

Contd....

GENITAL SYSTEM

In male

- Is there any urethral discharge, swelling of the penis and scrotum?
- When does it occur, i.e. at the initiation or end of micturition?
- Is there any history of sexual contact with a woman other than his wife?
- Is the micturition painful?

In female

- Urethral/vaginal discharge
 - Menstrual irregularity
- Sexual functional complaints, e.g. impotence, premature ejaculation, infertility, impotence, anxiety about masturbation or homosexuality

- Ask the similar question in female as described above.
- Are menses scanty?
- Is menstruation painful?
- These aspects are to be asked while recording menstrual history in females.
- These are discussed in psychiatric assessment Chapter 20

THE SKIN

Skin disorders may be primary or secondary. The questions to be asked in a case with skin disorders are briefly described here.

- Is there any occupational or other exposure to chemicals or other irritants?
- Ask about recent drug history.
- Does the eruption itch? If so, when does it itch?
- Did the eruptions appear as a single lot or in crops?
- Is there history of allergy, e.g. asthma, hay fever, etc.? Is there any family history?
- Is there any contact with animals, insects or plants?
- What skin medication or application is being used?
- Is there any history of loss of hair (alopecia) or excessive hair (hirsutism)?
- Is there any patch of depigmentation with loss of sensation?
- Is there any present or past history of tuberculosis?

LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM

- Symptoms of joint disease, e.g. pain, swelling and stiffness.

- Is there pain in a joint or joints?
- Is pain constant or episodic?
- Are there any recurrent attacks of joint pain?
- Is the joint visibly swollen?
- Is there any history of fever, bowel disturbance (inflammatory bowel disease) or urethritis (Reiter's syndrome)?
- Does the pain move from one joint to another (fleeting joint pains of rheumatic fever and gonococcal arthritis). Therefore ask other features of these disorders.
- What is the distribution of joint pain, i.e. whether involves small (rheumatoid arthritis) or large joints (osteoarthritis)?
- Is there any family history of gout or other rheumatic disorders?
- Has the patient been exposed to rubella?
- Is there any gait/posture abnormality?
- What is the site of these symptoms?
- Is there any history of trauma or overuse during sport?
- What is the occupation of the patient?
- What are the aggravating or relieving factors?
- Is there any pain associated with bony enlargement?
- Is there any history of trauma or a stress?
- Is there congenital or family history of bone disorder?
- Is the patient suffering from immunodeficient state?

- Soft tissue symptoms such as pain, tenderness and swelling of soft tissue.

- Symptoms of bone disease, e.g. fracture, dislocation, deformity, swelling, pain etc.

2

Analysis of Systemic Symptoms

ANALYSIS OF SYSTEMIC SYMPTOMS

The symptoms pertaining to various systems have been briefly described in "Review of Systems". These systemic symptoms are analysed with respect to their causes, pathogenesis, clinical significance and their relevance.

Gastrointestinal symptoms (Box 2.1)

Box 2.1: SYMPTOMS RELATED TO GI TRACT	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pain abdomen • Dyspepsia or Flatulence • Heart burn • Anorexia • Vomiting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dysphagia • Diarrhoea • Constipation • Bleeding per rectum • Abdominal distension

Pain Abdomen

1. **Duration and pattern of pain** help to determine the nature and severity of pain. Abdominal colicky pain is acute severe crampy pain during which patients cry in discomfort or toss in the bed.

- *Mid-line pain* is usually visceral pain due to distention of a hollow viscus and localises poorly.
- *Pain around the umbilicus* is usually due to intestinal diseases, e.g. acute intestinal obstruction.
- *Somatic pain* (due to peritoneal involvement) is usually sharper and is localised to the diseased region, e.g. right iliac fossa in appendicitis, right hypochondrium due to stretching of capsule of liver in acute hepatomegaly and to the loin in renal disorders. The causes of pain in different abdominal quadrants are given in the Fig. 2.1.

- **Radiation of pain:** Pain originating from specific organs radiates to the specific sites, i.e. to right shoulder (in hepatobiliary diseases and diaphragmatic pleurisy), to left shoulder (splenic disease), to mid-back (pancreatic disease), to the flank (urinary tract disease) and to the groin (genitourinary tract diseases).

- **Precipitating and relieving factors:** The aggravating or relieving factors in relation to various diseases, are given in the Box 2.2.

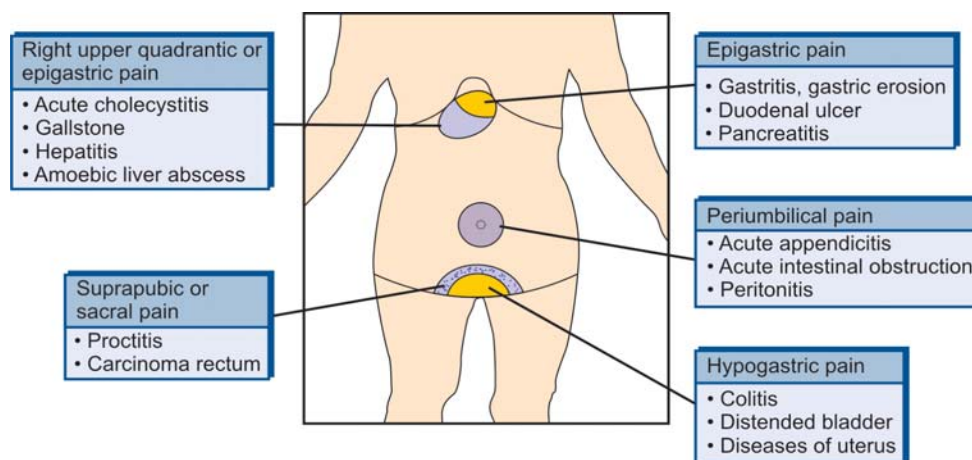


Fig. 2.1: Causes of pain in various quadrants of abdomen

Box 2.2: PRECIPITATING AND RELIEVING FACTORS FOR ABDOMINAL PAIN	
Factor	Disorders
• Eating	• Upper GI tract, biliary, pancreatic, ischaemic bowel disease.
• Defaecation	• Colorectal
• Urinary	• Genitourinary or colorectal
• Respiratory	• Pleuropulmonary and hepatobiliary
• Position	• Pancreatic, gastroesophageal reflux, musculoskeletal, menstruation, tubo-ovarian, endometrial
• Exertion	• Coronary, intestinal ischaemia, musculo-skeletal
• Medication or specific drug	• Motility disorders, food intolerance, gastroesophageal reflux, porphyria, adrenal, insufficiency, ketoacidosis and toxins.
• Stress	• Motility disorders, nonulcer dyspepsia, Irritable bowel syndrome.

Associated symptoms

- Fever and chills indicate inflammatory/infective diseases or infarction.
- Weight loss suggests malignancy, malabsorption, tuberculosis, inflammatory and/or ischaemia.

- Nausea/vomiting indicates obstruction, infection, inflammatory disease or metabolic disease.
- Dysphagia or odynophagia suggests oesophageal disease.
- Haematemesis indicates oesophageal, gastric and duodenal disease.
- Jaundice is either due to haemolytic or hepatobiliary disorders.
- Diarrhoea indicates either malabsorption or infection, inflammation of bowel or secretory tumours (Zollinger-Ellison's syndrome).
- Dysuria/haematuria suggests urinary diseases.
- Vaginal/penile discharge indicates genitorurinary disorders.
- Hematochezia indicates colorectal disease.
- Skin/joint/eye involvement indicates inflammatory bowel disease.

Causes

The causes of pain are given in Table 2.1 and its differential diagnosis in Table 2.2.

Table 2.1: Causes of abdominal pain

Intra-abdominal	Extra-abdominal
<p>A. Distension/stretching/obstruction</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Intestinal</i> e.g. tumour, hernia, volvulus, adhesions/intussusception, faecal impaction. <i>Biliary</i> e.g. stone, tumour, stricture, parasite (round worm) <i>Ureteric</i> e.g. stone, clot colic, obstruction <i>Renal</i> e.g. stone, tumour, hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis, blood clot. <i>Urinary bladder</i> e.g. stone, tumour, blood clot. <i>Hepatic</i> e.g. hepatitis, tumour, CHF, Budd-Chiari syndrome. <i>Pancreatic</i> e.g. stone, carcinoma of ampulla. <i>Appendix</i> e.g. faecal impaction, foreign body. <i>Uterine</i> e.g. dysmenorrhoea, displacement, retained products of conception, carcinoma. <i>Fallopian tube</i> e.g. adhesions, ectopic pregnancy. <i>Spleen</i> e.g. infarction, spontaneous rupture, trauma. <p>B. Inflammation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Peritonitis</i> e.g. perforated viscus (peptic ulcer, diverticulum), appendicitis, diverticulitis (colonic, Meckle's), pancreatitis, cholecystitis, salpingitis, abscess. <i>Mesenteric lymphadenitis</i> <i>Inflammatory bowel disease</i> <i>Urinary infection</i> e.g. pyelonephritis, pyonephrosis, ureteritis, cystitis. <i>Genital infection</i> e.g. endometritis, salpingitis. <p>C. Ischaemia</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Mesenteric angina</i> e.g. thrombosis, embolus. <i>Renal infarction</i> (thrombus, embolus) <i>Spleen infarction</i> e.g. sickle cell anaemia <i>Torsion</i> e.g. ovarian cyst <i>Tumour necrosis</i> e.g. hepatoma 	<p>A. Neurological e.g. herpes zoster, spinal cord and peripheral nerve tumours, spinal arthritis</p> <p>B. Haematological e.g. sickle cell disease, paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria, hereditary spherocytosis, haemorrhagic diathesis.</p> <p>C. Metabolic e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis, hypercalcaemic crisis, uraemia, porphyria, hyperlipidaemia.</p> <p>D. Immunological e.g. angioneurotic oedema.</p> <p>E. Toxins e.g. food poisoning, strychnine.</p> <p>F. Psychogenic e.g. depression, anxiety, stress, hypochondriasis, Munchausen's syndrome.</p> <p>G. Referred pain from</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Heart and blood vessels</i> e.g. pericarditis, myocardial infarction, aortic dissection. <i>Pleura</i> e.g. pleurisy, pleural effusion. <i>Dorsal spine</i> e.g. trauma, fracture. <i>Oesophagus</i> e.g. oesophagitis, neoplasia, rupture, motility disorders

Table 2.2: Differential diagnosis of acute abdominal pain (Fig. 2.1)

	Acute appendicitis	Acute diverticulitis	Perforated intestine	Intestinal obstruction	Acute pancreatitis	Acute cholangitis	Renal colic	Acute salpingitis
Location	Centre of abdomen, then right iliac fossa	Lower abdomen, usually left iliac fossa	Upper abdomen, then generalised	Centre of abdomen, then generalised	Upper abdominal quadrant, then generalised	Right upper quadrant	Lumber region (loin)	One of iliac fossa
Radiation	No	No	No	No	Back	Shoulder	Back or along the groin	No
Intensity	Moderate	Moderate	Severe	Severe	Severe	Moderate	severe	Moderate
Character	Constant	Constant	Constant	Colicky	Constant	Constant	Colicky	Constant
Exacerbating factors	Movement, coughing	Movement, coughing	Movement, coughing	Food	Movement, coughing	Inspiration	Intermittent, No movements	
Onset	Gradual	Gradual	Sudden	Gradual	Sudden	Gradual	Acute	Acute
Other symptoms	Anorexia, fever	Fever, change in bowel habit,	Shock, fever	Vomiting if high small bowel, constipation	Vomiting, shock	Vomiting, Jaundice	Occasional Vomiting, haematuria	Fever

Predisposing factors

- Family history may be positive in polyposis, inflammatory bowel disease and pancreatitis.
- Hypertension, smoking, old age, atherosclerosis predispose to ischaemic colitis.
- Diabetes mellitus predisposes to disorders of motility, ketoacidosis, connective tissue diseases predispose to motility disorders and serositis; while depression may predispose to motility disorders and functional disorder e.g. irritable bowel syndrome.

Dyspepsia/flatulence—It is a loosely applied term to all upper GI symptoms e.g. vague abdominal pain, heart burn, nausea, vomiting, abdominal distension or bloating, flatulence and aerophagy. The causes of dyspepsia are given in the Table 2.3.

Table 2.3: Causes of dyspepsia

Organic	Functional
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Peptic ulcer • Gastroesophageal reflux disease • Crohn's disease • Cardiac, hepatic, renal failure • Drugs e.g. NSAIDs, analgesic, antibiotics • Alcohol abuse • Gallbladder disease • Pregnancy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anxiety • Depression • Non-ulcer dyspepsia • Irritable bowel syndrome

Flatulent dyspepsia is the term applied to symptoms of bloating and belching without abdominal pain. **Ulcerative dyspepsia** is due to acid-peptic disease; while **nonulcer dyspepsia** refers to acid-peptic symptoms but there is no demonstrable ulcer either on endoscopy or on radiology. The differences between ulcerative and non-ulcerative dyspepsia are summarised in the Box 2.3.

Box 2.3: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN NONULCER DYSPEPSIA AND PEPTIC ULCER		
Character	Nonulcer dyspepsia	Peptic ulcer/ulcerative dyspepsia
Site of pain	Diffuse all over abdomen, no recognised or fixed pattern.	Epigastric- patient points pain with a finger (finger-pointing present)
Pain frequency	Daily/nonepisodic for long periods	Episodic
Relation to food/meal	Unrelated, lasts the whole day	Food/meal relieves pain
Response to antacids	No relief	Relief in pain
Nocturnal pain awakening the patient	Rare	Common
Vomiting	No effect	Reduces pain

Heart burn: It refers to burning sensation in the epigastrium in retrosternal region. The causes are;

- *GI tract diseases* e.g. gastroesophageal reflux disease, peptic ulcer, Zollinger-Ellison's syndrome, hiatus hernia.
- *Drugs and alcohol*
- *Functional*, e.g. faulty dietary habits, sleeping immediately after taking food, spicy food.
- *Psychogenic*, e.g. anxiety neurosis, nonulcer dyspepsia.
- **Sour eructation:** It refers to water brushes or acid taste in the mouth. Causes are;
- *GI tract disorders*, e.g. Gastritis, peptic ulcer, hiatus hernia, Zollinger-Ellison's, cholecystitis, nonulcer dyspepsia, gallstones, irritable bowel syndrome
- *Smoking, alcohol, pan-masala, chewing gums*
- *Faulty dietary habit*, e.g. large meal, spicy food
- *Psychogenic*.

Vomiting

- Early morning vomiting without retching is seen in pregnancy and uraemia. Alcoholic gastritis produces retching with early morning vomiting.
- Vomiting occurring during or immediate after eating is either psychogenic or due to peptic ulcer with pylorospasm.
- Vomiting occurring after 4-6 hours of eating with expulsion of large quantities of gastric contents is seen in pyloric obstruction or gastroparesis or cardia achalasia or Zollinger-Ellison's syndrome.
- A projectile vomiting indicates raised intracranial pressure
- A long history of vomiting with little or no weight loss is psychogenic in nature
- Associated symptoms such as tinnitus, vertigo indicate vestibular involvement
- Relief of abdominal pain with vomiting is typical of peptic ulcer
- The presence of blood (haematemesis) indicates bleeding from the oesophagus, stomach or duodenum
- Associated fever with vomiting indicates inflammatory or infective disorder
- History of drug intake indicates drug-induced vomiting

Differential diagnosis: A large number of causes that give rise to vomiting are given in the Table 2.4.

Dysphagia

Dysphagia means difficulty in swallowing. *Odynophagia* means painful swallowing usually results from oesophagitis due to gastrointestinal reflux disease or candidiasis. *Globus hystericus* means a sensation of lump in the throat without any organic cause, occurs in anxious or hysterical patients. The causes of dysphagia are given in the Table 2.5. The differential diagnosis is given in the Box 2.4.

Table 2.4: Common causes of vomiting

- Gastrointestinal**
 - Mechanical obstruction**
 - Gastric outlet obstruction following peptic ulcer or malignancy
 - Small intestinal obstruction e.g. volvulus, adhesions, malignancy
 - Motility disorders**
 - Gastroparesis due to diabetes, drugs, postvagotomy or idiopathic
 - Inflammation**
 - Bacterial food poisoning
 - Appendicitis
 - Acute pancreatitis

Contd...

Contd...

- Gastrointestinal irritants**
 - Alcohol and drugs
- Hepatobiliary**
 - Hepatitis A and B
 - Portal hypertension
 - Acute cholecystitis
 - Gallstones
- CNS disorders**
 - Vestibular e.g. labyrinthitis, Meniere's disease, motion sickness
 - Raised intracranial pressure e.g. tumors, hydrocephalus, subdural haematoma, subarachnoid haemorrhage, meningitis, encephalitis
- CVS**
 - Acute MI
 - CHF
- Renal**
 - Renal failure
- Endocrinal**
 - Diabetes, hypo or hyperparathyroidism, thyrotoxic crisis, adrenal crisis
- Systemic causes**
 - Infection
 - Pregnancy
- Psychogenic**
- Radiation therapy**
- Postoperative**

Diarrhoea

Diarrhoea refers to more than 3 stools/day. Quantitatively, it is defined as stool content more than 200g/day when dietary fibre content is low.

Table 2.5: Causes of dysphagia

- Mechanical (obstructive) dysphagia or oesophageal dysphagia**
 - Intrinsic (obstruction within oesophagus)**
 - Congenital atresia of oesophagus
 - Stomatitis, glossitis, pharyngitis, oesophagitis
 - Oesophageal/pharyngeal web (Plummer-Vinson's syndrome)
 - Benign and malignant tumours
 - Oesophageal stricture or ulceration
 - Extrinsic (oesophageal compression from outside)**
 - Retropharyngeal mass or abscess
 - Large goitre
 - Left atrial enlargement in mitral stenosis
 - Aortic aneurysm
 - Posterior mediastinal mass
- Motor dysphagia/oropharyngeal dysphagia/neuromuscular dysphagia**
 - Lower cranial nerves (9th, 10th) palsy due to poliomyelitis, motor neuron disease, systemic sclerosis
 - Myasthenia gravis
 - Oesophageal myopathy
 - Paralysis of oesophageal sphincter due to cardia achalasia, diffuse oesophageal spasms, Chagas' disease

Box 2.4: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF DYSPHAGIA	
Characteristic	Cause(s)
• Dysphagia to solids worst than liquids	• Mechanical dysphagia (e.g. stricture, oesophagitis, oesophageal tumours, dysmotility)
• Dysphagia to liquids worst than solids	• Motor dysphagia (e.g. neuromuscular diseases)
• Progressive dysphagia	• Oesophageal tumours
• Transient, painful dysphagia	• Inflammatory diseases e.g. glossitis, stomatitis, candidiasis, viral (herpes) infection
• Dysphagia with chest discomfort and heart burn	• Hiatus hernia, GERD, diffuse oesophageal spasms
• Dysphagia with dysphonia/nasal regurgitation	• Bulbar or pseudobulbar palsy
	• Left recurrent nerve palsy due to mitral stenosis.

Acute diarrhoea means less than 2 weeks duration, is rapid in onset, occurs in otherwise healthy person and may lead to dehydration and shock. It is usually infective in origin (Table 2.6).

Chronic diarrhoea is more than 2 weeks to few months duration, insidious in onset, may be constant or intermittent, may be associated with malnutrition/deficiency signs of nutrients. It is either a symptom of functional disorder or a manifestation of systemic illness (Table 2.7). *Malabsorption* refers to chronic diarrhoea of more than 3 months duration.

Table 2.6: Causes of acute diarrhoea	
Small bowel diarrhoea (large loose watery stools without blood or mucus)	Large bowel diarrhoea (small viscid stools usually with blood and pus cells)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Viral e.g. Rota, Norwalk, Adeno, corona (b) Bacterial e.g. <i>E.coli</i>, <i>V. cholerae</i>, <i>Yersinia</i> (c) Parasitic e.g. <i>Giardia</i> (d) Fungal e.g. <i>Candida</i> • Drugs e.g. laxative, digitalis, ampicillin • Traveller's diarrhoea • Consumption of fish, shell fish. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-viral • Bacterial e.g. <i>Shigella</i>, <i>Salmonella</i>, <i>E.coli</i>, <i>Campylobacter</i> • Fungal • Pseudomembranous colitis (antibiotic-induced diarrhoea) • Food poisoning • Spurious diarrhoea (faecal impaction) • Traveller's diarrhoea • Pelvic inflammatory disease • Consumption of fish, shell fish.

Constipation

Constipation is defined as infrequent passage of hard stool. Patient may complain of straining, a sensation of incomplete evacuation. Associated symptoms include diarrhoea alternating with constipation or suspicious

Table 2.7: Classification of chronic diarrhoea		
Mechanism	Causes	Clinical features
1. Inflammatory Mucosal and sub-mucosal inflammation, mucosal damage, impaired intestinal absorption and excessive secretion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ulcerative colitis • Regional ileitis (Crohn's disease) • Radiation enteritis • Eosinophilic gastroenteritis and AIDS associated enteritis 	Fever, abdominal pain, blood and/or WBC in stools
2. Osmotic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-absorbed or non-digested hypertonic solute in the intestinal lumen 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pancreatic insufficiency • Coeliac sprue • Bacterial contamination • Disaccharide (lactose) intolerance 	Improvement of diarrhoea with fasting, Bulky, greasy, foul smelling stools, weight loss, nutritional deficiencies, weakness and fatigue
3. Secretory Excessive secretion of electrolytes and water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carcinoid syndrome • Zollinger-Ellison syndrome • VIP-secreting tumours in WDHA syndrome 	Watery diarrhoea that also persists during fasting, dehydration, other systemic effects of hormones depending on the cause
4. Abnormal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rapid transit and associated sometimes bacterial overgrowth 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Irritable bowel syndrome • Neurogenic diseases • Faecal impaction 	Alternating diarrhoea and constipation and neurogenic symptoms e.g. bladder involvement weakness
5. Factitious Self-induced	Laxative abuse	Common in women, watery diarrhoea, oedema, dehydration and weakness

diarrhoea or pain abdomen. The causes of constipation are given in the Table 2.8.

The *onset*, *duration* and *characteristics* are important.

- Acute onset indicates either acute obstruction or acute inflammatory cause such as acute appendicitis, perforation or colics.

Table 2.8: Causes of constipation

Gastrointestinal	2. Others
(i) <i>Dietary</i> e.g. lack of fibres and/or fluid intake	(i) Drugs
(ii) Motility disorders	• Opiates
• Irritable bowel syndrome	• Anticholinergics
• Acute intestinal obstruction	• Calcium antagonists
• Chronic intestinal pseudoobstruction	• Iron supplements
	• Aluminium-containing antacids
(iii) Structural/organic	(ii) Neurological
• Colonic carcinoma	• Multiple sclerosis
• Diverticular disease	• Spinal cord compression
• Stricture	• CVA
• Hirschsprung's disease	• Parkinsonism
(iv) Painful anorectal conditions	(iii) Endocrinal/metabolic
• Piles (haemorrhoids)	• Diabetes mellitus
• Anal fissure	• Hypothyroidism
• Faecal impaction	• Hypercalcaemia
	• Pregnancy
	(iv) General
	• Old age
	• Depression
	• Immobility or bed-ridden

- Neonatal onset suggests Hirschsprung's disease; while a recent change in bowel habits in middle age suggests colonic carcinoma.
- Pain and rectal bleeding suggest irritable bowel syndrome.
- Alternate diarrhoea and constipation suggest ileocaecal tuberculosis or irritable bowel syndrome.

Abdominal distension/swelling

Ask about:

- Is there an increase in abdominal girth i.e. tightness of clothes or belt? Is it related to meals? Does the bowel move regularly? Is there history of pregnancy in the female? Is the distension progressive? Is there any history of tapping of fluid?

The causes of distension of abdomen are: denoted by 4 F i.e.

- *Fluid* e.g. ascites, ovarian cyst, distended bladder
- *Foetus* e.g. pregnancy
- *Faeces and flatus* e.g. acute intestinal obstruction, adynamic ileus or paralytic ileus.
- *Fat* e.g. truncal obesity due to any cause, fatty hernia.

Bleeding per rectum

Ascertain the followings;

- Is blood comes in streaks or in spurts? Is patient constipated? Is bleeding painful? Is blood mixed with loose stool? Is there history of drug intake? Is there any change in bowel habits? Is there bleeding from any other site?

The causes are;

- *Painful anorectal conditions* e.g. anal fissure, piles, fistula, proctitis, foreign body, neoplasm.
- *Colonic* e.g. dysentery (amoebic or bacillary), ulcerative colitis, diverticulitis, polyposis, carcinoma, pseudomembranous colitis.
- *Haematological* e.g. leukaemias, coagulation disorders, anticoagulant therapy
- *Renal* e.g. uraemia

Symptomatology related to liver and gallbladder

The symptoms of the liver disease are divided into two groups (see Box 2.5).

1. Non specific symptoms

- **Fatigue.** It is described as lethargy, weakness, listlessness, malaise, lack of stamina, arises after activity or exercise, is intermittent and variable in intensity and suggests chronic liver disease.
- **Nausea** occurs with more severe liver disease, is again a nonspecific symptoms and usually accompanies fatigue or vomiting. Vomiting is rarely persistent in liver disease.

Box 2.5: SYMPTOMS PERTAINING TO HEPATOBILIARY SYSTEM

1. Constitutional or nonspecific symptoms-

- Fatigue
- Weakness
- Nausea, vomiting
- Anorexia or poor appetite
- Malaise

2. Specific symptoms (i.e. they are liver-specific, suggest the cause such a hepatitis or cirrhosis and/or complications such as end-stage liver disease or encephalopathy)

- Jaundice
- Dark coloured urine, light coloured stools
- Abdominal distension- (ascites)
- Swelling or oedema feet
- Feter hepaticus
- Flapping tremors
- Encephalopathic features (disturbed consciousness, disturbed speech and sleep pattern, bizarre hand-writing)
- Abdominal pain
- Bloating
- Haematemesis and malena
- Pruritus

- **Poor appetite with weight loss** occurs commonly in acute liver disease but is rare in chronic disease. Diarrhoea (steatorrhoea) is uncommon in liver disease except with severe jaundice. On the other hand constipation may commonly occur and may exacerbate the symptoms of end-stage hepatic disease such as encephalopathy.
- **Right upper quadrant pain** occurs in many liver diseases and is usually marked by tenderness in this area. The pain arises due to stretching or irritation of *Glisson's capsule* which surrounds the liver and is a pain sensitive structure due to rich in nerve endings. Severe pain due to liver involvement is seen in liver abscess, severe venoocclusive disease, Budd-Chiari syndrome and acute hepatitis. Occasional colicky pain in right hypochondrium indicates biliary colic (stricture, stone, tumour). Pain radiating to shoulder is due to involvement of diaphragmatic pleura (pneumonia) or liver (liver abscess or malignancy liver) or due to subphrenic abscess.
- **Pruritus (itching)**. It occurs in acute liver disease appearing early in obstructive jaundice somewhat later in hepatocellular jaundice (acute hepatitis). Itching also occurs as a presenting symptom in certain chronic liver diseases i.e. primary biliary cirrhosis or cholestatic jaundice of pregnancy and sclerosing cholangitis.
- **Haematemesis and melena** in liver disease occur from rupture of oesophageal varices by passage of hard bolus of food in patients with portal hypertension or due to coagulation disorders.
- **Symptoms of hepatic insufficiency or end-stage liver disease** include progressive jaundice, haematological alterations (anaemia, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia, bleeding tendencies) symptoms of portal hypertension (ascites, fetor hepaticus, caput medusae, haematemesis), endocrinal changes (gynaecomastia, testicular atrophy, breast atrophy in female) and pigmentation.

Mass abdomen

Mass abdomen refers to intra-abdominal masses in relation to various viscera in the abdomen. Mass abdomen may produce fullness of abdomen or visible swelling, dragging sensation in abdomen, pain abdomen or may just be asymptomatic i.e. patient is not aware of it. Malignant masses or tumours produce decreased/loss of appetite or weight loss. The possible sites of

masses in the abdomen and specific to right hypochondrium are discussed under the examination of abdomen Chapter 13.

Jaundice

Jaundice is yellowness of sclera, mucous membranes and skin, occurs due to raised serum bilirubin. Normal serum bilirubin is 0.3 to 1.5 mg%. Jaundice appears when serum bilirubin is ≥ 2.5 mg%. Serum bilirubin less than 2.5 mg but more than normal indicate subclinical jaundice. The clinical jaundice may be progressive or may appear intermittently. Work-up of a patient with jaundice is given in the Table 2.9. Ask about certain features which will give you presumptive diagnosis.

Table 2.9: Clinical work-up of a case with jaundice

Features (ask about them in history)	Tentative diagnosis
1. Jaundice with fever, abdominal pain, anorexia, distaste to food and smoking	• Viral or drug induced hepatitis or liver abscess
2. Jaundice in haemophiles, IV drug abuser and male homosexual	• Acute transfusion hepatitis B or C, chronic active hepatitis if duration of jaundice is >6 months
3. Jaundice with dark -coloured urine and stool	• Haemolytic jaundice due to any cause
4. Pruritus (itching) with jaundice, acholic white-coloured stool, xanthomatous	• Cholestatic (obstructive) jaundice (intra or extrahepatic cholestasis) or biliary cirrhosis
5. Abdominal pain with fluctuating jaundice	• Bile duct stone or stricture, pancreatitis
6. Painless progressive jaundice with palpable gallbladder	• Carcinoma of pancreas
7. Jaundice, ascites with prominent abdominal veins and history of haematemesis	• Portal hypertension (cirrhotic, noncirrhotic, Budd-Chiari syndrome)
8. Jaundice with pregnancy	• Hepatic or cholestatic jaundice of pregnancy
9. Recurrent jaundice	• Congenital hyperbilirubinaemia or recurrent benign cholestasis

Jaundice is the hallmark of liver disease and perhaps the most reliable marker of severity. Patient usually report darkening of the urine before they note the scleral icterus. In obstructive jaundice, the stools are clay -coloured while urine is dark-coloured. Jaundice without dark urine usually indicates unconjugated (indirect) hyperbilirubinaemia and is typical of haemolytic jaundice and genetic disorder of bilirubin conjugation (Gilbert's syndrome and Crigler-Najjar syndrome). In these genetic disorders, the jaundice is more noticeable during fasting and with stress.

Cardiovascular system (CVS) symptoms

The symptoms pertaining to cardiovascular system are many and their interpretation varies from patient to patient. The common symptoms are given in the Box 2.6.

Box 2.6: SYMPTOMATOLOGY OF CVS		
• Dyspnoea	• Palpitation	• Fatigue
• Pain	• Syncope	• Cyanosis
• Oedema	• Cough	
• Chest pain	• Haemoptysis	

Symptoms analysis

Dyspnoea

It is defined as consciousness of breathing which normally does not occur except during severe exertion, emotional stress or during anxious events. It can be cardiac or respiratory origin. Here dyspnoea as a cardiovascular symptom will be analysed and discussed though respiratory disease may coexist if there is some common aetiological factor such as smoking. The grading/class of dyspnoea is described in the Table 2.10.

Table 2.10: New York Heart Association Functional Classification

Grade	Description
I.	Patients with cardiac disease but without limitation of physical activity. There is no dyspnoea on ordinary physical activity
II.	Patients with cardiac disease resulting in slight limitation of physical activity. They are comfortable at rest but become dyspnoeic on ordinary physical activity.
III.	Patients with cardiac disease resulting in marked limitation of physical activity. They are comfortable at rest. Less than ordinary physical activity causes dyspnoea.
IV.	Patients with cardiac disease resulting in inability to carry on any physical activity without discomfort. Dyspnoea is present at rest and increases with mildest exertion.

Dyspnoea on exertion: It is a physiological phenomenon but becomes a symptom of disease if it occurs at exercise at levels below than normal or expected for the patient's age and degree of previous fitness. Exertional dyspnoea is a presenting symptom of left heart failure irrespective of its cause. It indicates increased work-load on the heart. The conditions in which dyspnoea is a presenting symptom are;

1. *Systemic hypertension* (accelerated or malignant)
2. *Valvular heart disease* (mitral, aortic valve stenosis or regurgitation or both)
3. *Cardiomyopathies* (dilated, hypertrophic and restrictive)
4. *Myocardial diseases*-acute MI (papillary muscle dysfunction) or myocarditis
5. *Arrhythmia* such as atrial fibrillation.

Orthopnoea: Dyspnoea in recumbent (lying flat) position is termed as *orthopnoea*. The patients with orthopnoea usually try to lie propped up position by using extra-pillows at night. Sometimes, the symptom is so distressing that the patient prefers to sleep upright in a comfortable chair. These patients usually have disturbed sleep at night due to frequent awakenings as their head may slip off the pillows. Orthopnoea indicates advanced heart disease and may or may not be associated with effort (exertional) dyspnoea. The orthopnoeic patients often experience paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND).

Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea (PND): The term refers to attacks of breathlessness which generally occur at night and awaken the patients from sleep. The patient with PND or orthopnoea usually sits upright gasping in the bed or sitting on the edge of the bed with legs hanging from the bed. Occasionally, patient may even come out of the bed to open the windows in an attempt to relieve the discomfort/distress. All these positions relieve PND and orthopnoea, but patients with PND characteristically have cough and wheezing and bring out frothy sputum streaked with blood. The mechanisms of PND are:

1. Increased venous return during supine position (recumbency).
2. Shift of oedema fluid from extravascular to intravascular compartment.
3. Reduced adrenergic drive during sleep.
4. Heart rate increases during REM sleep.
5. Vital capacity is reduced in supine position.

Dyspnoea at rest: It indicates an advanced stage of cardiac dyspnoea and occurs in the presence of severe heart failure. Its presence is preceded by worsening effort dyspnoea, orthopnoea and PND, and ankle oedema. These patients have all signs and symptoms of left heart failure—which is a cause of cardiac dyspnoea. The causes of dyspnoea at rest are given in the Box 2.7.

Box 2.7: CAUSES OF DYSPNOEA AT REST	
1. Cardiovascular	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acute left heart failure (acute pulmonary oedema) • Massive pulmonary embolism (acute cor pulmonale)
2. Respiratory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acute severe asthma • Tension pneumothorax • Acute bronchopneumonia • ARDS (Adult respiratory distress syndrome) • Acute laryngeal oedema
3. Others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diabetic ketoacidosis • Lactic acidosis • Salicylate poisoning • Uraemia with fluid overload.

Dyspnoea at rest (acute dyspnoea) is an emergency.

Palpitation

Palpitation is the awareness of heart beat in the chest. Patients describe it by using different terms such as thumping, pounding, fluttering, jumping, racing and bumping of the heart beat. It may be due to heightened awareness of the heart beating during sinus rhythm (e.g. after exertion, excessive use of tea and coffee, anxiety, hyperthyroidism and due to catecholamine excess) or due to irregular heart beating or an arrhythmia (e.g. ventricular ectopics, atrial fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia, atrial tachycardia). Irregularity of heart beat is described by the patient as missing of a beat or jumping or fluttering of heart, is seen in VPCs and atrial fibrillation.

- Palpitation associated with polyuria indicate supraventricular tachycardia. Patient describes it as racing or fluttering of the heart.
- Palpitation with breathlessness indicates either atrial fibrillation or ventricular tachycardia. Ventricular tachycardia may present with syncope rather than palpitations.

Cough, sputum and haemoptysis

- These are discussed under respiratory symptoms.

Peripheral oedema (Read also the examination of extremities Chapter 10)

It is collection of fluid in the interstitial tissues. Pitting pedal oedema is demonstrated clinically by applying pressure with thumb on the ankles or feet which produces a pit at the site of pressure. The pit stays for sometime (about 10-15 sec) and then slowly disappears. Peripheral oedema is seen on the ankles or over feet in ambulatory patients; while it appears on the sacrum and thighs in recumbent position or while in bed (bed-ridden patients). Oedema appearing on the face early in the morning is its example and is seen commonly in nephrotic syndrome. The different sites of oedema in different positions represent the effect of gravity. Oedema may be unilateral or bilateral.

Peripheral oedema is associated with ascites and/or pleural effusion in severe congestive heart failure. The causes of oedema are summarised in the Box 2.8. Non-pitting peripheral oedema is seen in hypothyroidism (myxoedema).

Box 2.8: CAUSES OF PERIPHERAL PITTING OEDEMA

Unilateral	Bilateral
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lymphatic obstruction e.g. filariasis, pressure due to growth. • Venous obstruction (thrombosis) or insufficiency (varicose vein) • Infection e.g. cellulitis, carbuncle • Traumatic e.g. fracture/sprains • Hereditary e.g. Milroy's disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congestive heart failure • Constrictive pericarditis • Nephritic or nephrotic syndrome • Cirrhosis of liver, portal hypertension • Hypoproteinaemia • Beriberi • Inferior vena cava obstruction • Angioneurotic oedema • Epidemic dropsy • Drug induced e.g. pioglitazone, amlodipin

Chest pain

Pain in chest of cardiac origin (originating from myocardium, pericardium, blood vessels etc) is called *cardiac chest pain*. Noncardiac chest pain also occurs due to a variety of extracardiac disorders and may simulate cardiac chest pain from which it has to be differentiated. Here we will discuss cardiac chest pain. The causes of cardiac chest pain with their characteristics are given in the Table 2.14.

Syncope

It is loss of consciousness due to fall in BP (hypotension) leading to decreased cerebral perfusion. The feeling of impending loss of consciousness is called *presyncope*. Both syncope and presyncope may be of cardiac origin, occur due to either decreased cardiac output or decreased peripheral resistance or both. It may be a symptom of neurological disorder (Read syncope as a symptom of nervous system).

Other symptoms of cardiac disease

Fatigue

Fatigue or tiredness is a common complaint of patients with heart failure, coronary artery disease, persistent cardiac arrhythmia, hypertension and cyanotic heart disease. It is due to poor cerebral perfusion and oxygenation. It can occur in patients with bacterial endocarditis.

Nocturia

Nocturia means excessive urination of night, can occur due to congestive heart failure. Oliguria can also occur in heart failure.

Cardiovascular disease presenting with noncardiac symptoms i.e.,

- **Stroke** may be a presenting feature of cerebral embolism from an intracardiac thrombus or atrial fibrillation, endocarditis and hypertension.
- **Anorexia, nausea, abdominal pain and jaundice** can occur due to liver congestion in patients with heart failure or mesenteric embolism.

Symptoms pertaining to the respiratory system

The symptoms which point to the disease of respiratory system are given in the Box 2.9. Special attention has to be given while taking history of a patient with respiratory disease. Always ask about the following:

1. *Family history* of tuberculosis, allergies, asthma.
2. *Occupational history*. Do the symptoms relate to his occupation? Stone cutters, asbestose workers, woollen industries workers have their symptoms increased when at work.

Box 2.9: SYMPTOMS OF RESPIRATORY SYSTEM	
• Cough	• Wheeze
• Sputum	• Haemoptysis
• Dyspnoea	• Chest pain

In case symptoms indicate involvement of respiratory system, then proceed to ask questions regarding family history of allergy, asthma and tuberculosis. History of smoking in the present and past is also an important point to be asked. If the disease is episodic like asthma or allergy, then ask whether attacks of breathlessness are spontaneous or induced. What brings about these attacks? Is there any relation of an attack with the dust or exercise or occupation?

Symptoms analysis

Cough

Cough is defined as violent expiratory effort to clear the tracheobronchial secretion and is produced by rise in intra-bronchial or intratracheal pressure against closed glottis. With opening of the glottis, the pressure is

released with throwing of secretions out of trachea with production of sound of cough. The cough is the most frequent symptom of respiratory disease for which patient usually seeks medical advice. It is produced by stimulation of the sensory nerves of the mucosa of the pharynx, larynx, trachea and bronchi (smaller bronchi) by inflammatory, mechanical, chemical and thermal stimuli. Rarely, it may arise due to irritation or stimulation of the pleura during the aspiration of a pleural effusion.

The characteristics of cough depend on the site and the nature of the lesion as follows:

1. Post-nasal discharge into pharynx resulting from rhinitis or sinusitis, acute lower respiratory infection produces dry persistent cough
2. Laryngeal involvement (e.g. laryngitis, tumour, whooping) produces harsh, barking, painful persistent cough with stridor (loud sound)
3. Tracheitis produces painful coughing
4. The characteristics of cough originating at various levels of respiratory tract is given in the Box 2.10.

Box 2.10: CHARACTERISTICS OF COUGH IN DISEASES OF THE BRONCHI AND SMALL AIRWAYS	
Disease	Nature of cough
<i>Bronchitis</i>	Dry or productive, worse in the mornings
<i>Asthma</i>	Dry or productive, worse at night
<i>Bronchial carcinoma</i>	Persistent, usually with haemoptysis
<i>Pneumonia</i>	Initially dry, later productive with or without blood tinge
<i>Bronchiectasis</i>	Productive, copious in amount, postural relationship (change in posture induces sputum production)
<i>Pulmonary oedema</i>	Productive with pink frothy sputum, often at night, associated dyspnoea, orthopnoea, PND and crackles
<i>Interstitial lung disease</i>	Dry, irritant and distressing cough

5. Cough with wheezing occurs in COPD and asthma. The wheezing is nocturnal and reversible in asthma; while it is irreversible, persistent in COPD. Prolonged bouts of coughing may give rise to syncope.
6. Single vocal cord paralysis usually the left gives rise to prolonged low-pitched inefficient and *bovine cough* which is accompanied by hoarseness.
7. Cough may be intermittent/episodic (asthma) or persistent (COPD).

Sputum

The abnormal tracheobronchial secretion is called *sputum*. If history of sputum production is positive, then enquire about its *amount, character, viscosity* and *colour* or *taste*. Sputum characteristics in various respiratory disease are given in the Table 2.11.

- Quantity.** It is difficult to assess the quantity of sputum because most of the children and some adults swallow it and do not expectorate it. The quantity can be assessed as large or copious by teacupful/day or very small (one or two spits) by teaspoonful/day. Some patients deny cough while admitting the presence of sputum saying that they bring it up by clearing the throat. The large amount of sputum occurs in bronchiectasis, bronchitis, resolving lung abscess or a cavity. Small amount is seen in asthma, COPD and interstitial lung diseases.
- Character/appearance.** The four main types of sputum include *serous, mucoid, mucopurulent* or *purulent* and *rusty*. Haemoptysis means coughing up blood in the sputum. The term dirty sputum is misleading as it may either refer to purulent sputum or to mucoid sputum containing black (soot) particles. The appearance of sputum and their causes are listed in the Table 2.11. The specimen of sputum may be inspected for nature wherever possible.
- Viscosity.** Mucoid sputum is more viscous than purulent sputum, hence, is more difficult to cough up. Mucoid viscous sputum occurs in pneumonia and asthma. Serous sputum is watery with low viscosity.
- Taste or colour.** The sputum is foul tasting/smelling (fetid) in bronchiectasis, lung abscess or anaerobic (bacteroides) infection of the lung. The clinician's

own sense of smell should be used to assess the odour of sputum.

- Postural relation.** Diurnal and postural variation in cough and sputum is characteristic of lung abscess and bronchiectasis.

Haemoptysis (Fig. 2.2)

The coughing up blood in the sputum is called *haemoptysis*. It may be in the form of drops or streaking of the sputum (pneumonia) or there may be frank blood in the sputum (bronchiectasis or bronchial adenoma or carcinoma). It may be recurrent or may be just an occasional episode. Although, most patients know whether blood has been coughed up or vomited, yet haemoptysis is occasionally confused with haematemesis. The distinguishing features between the two are listed in the Box 2.11.

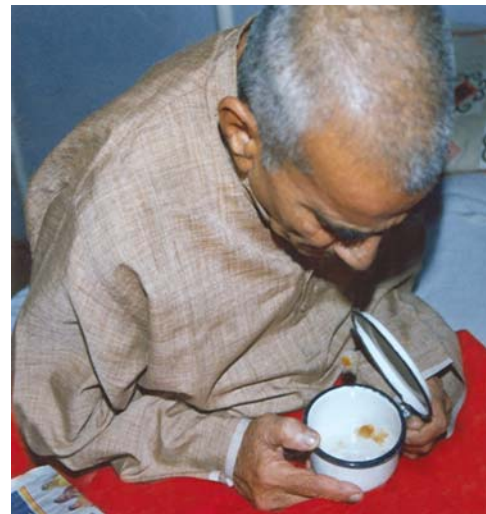


Fig. 2.2: Haemoptysis. Note the red colouration of the sputum

Table 2.11: Sputum characteristics and their causes

Type	Character/nature	Cause
<i>Serous</i>	Clear, watery, frothy may be pink	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acute pulmonary oedema • Bronchoalveolar carcinoma
<i>Mucoid</i>	Clear, grey, white, may be be frothy or black (soot)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chronic bronchitis • COPD • Bronchial asthma • Asthmatic bronchitis
<i>Mucopurulent</i> or <i>purulent</i>	Yellow, green, brown	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All types of bacterial bronchopulmonary infections • Pulmonary eosinophilia
<i>Rusty</i>	Rusty, golden yellow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pneumococcal pneumonia

Box 2.11:

DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN HAEMOPTYSIS AND HAEMATEMESIS

<i>Haemoptysis</i>	<i>Haematemesis</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blood in the sputum • The prodromal symptom is either irritation of throat or cough • Blood is bright red or frothy • Blood in sputum is alkaline in reaction • It is mixed with sputum 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blood in the vomitus • The prodrome is either nausea or abdominal discomfort • Blood is magenta-coloured or brownish-black due to formation of acid haematin • Reaction of blood is acidic • It is mixed with food particles

Causes. Some important causes of haemoptysis are given in the Table 2.12.

Table 2.12: Causes of haemoptysis

Common	Uncommon	Rare
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulmonary infection • Bronchial carcinoma • Tuberculosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchial adenoma • Aspergilloma • Secondaries in the lungs • Laryngeal tumour • Connective tissue diseases • Goodpasture's syndrome • Blood dyscrasias and anticoagulation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Foreign body inhalation • Chest trauma • Iatrogenic e.g. after bronchoscopy or biopsy (transbronchial or transthoracic)

Clinical tips

- Recent frank haemoptysis or blood streaking of mucoid sputum, sometimes in the mornings for a week along with anorexia and weakness suggests a diagnosis of bronchial carcinoma.
- Recurrent episodes of haemoptysis over many years usually associated with purulent sputum occur in bronchiectasis
- Clinical setting is an important consideration, for example, in a patient with deep vein thrombosis, haemoptysis is due to pulmonary embolism unless proved otherwise
- When no cause is found out, the oropharynx should be examined to find out the source of bleeding.

Chest pain as respiratory symptom

Any type of pain in the chest is called '*chest pain*' which may arise from;

- (i) The structures covering the chest (skin, nerves, muscles)
- (ii) The bony cage/chest wall
- (iii) The pleura or lungs
- (iv) The heart (pericardium) or the blood vessels

Therefore, chest pain is a common complaint of both cardiac and respiratory disease for which the patient usually seeks medical advice. Localisation of chest pain helps in making the clinical diagnosis. In general, pain originating from the lungs, pleura or chest wall tends to be peripheral; while pain arising from the centrally situated structures i.e. heart, aorta, trachea, mediastinum, oesophagus is retrosternal. The causes of chest pain depending on the location are given in the Table 2.13. Pain from other organs may also get referred to the chest (referred pain). It can also be psychogenic Table 2.14.

Table 2.13: Causes of chest pain

Central (retrosternal)	Peripheral
<i>Cardiac</i>	<i>Lungs/pleura</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Angina • Myocardial infarction • Myocarditis and pericarditis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulmonary infarct (small peripheral vessel) • Pneumonia • Pneumothorax • Tuberculosis • Malignancy • Connective tissue disorders
Aortic	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aortic aneurysm • Aortic dissection 	
Oesophageal	Musculoskeletal
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diffuse oesophageal spasm • Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) • Oesophageal tear (Mallory-Weiss syndrome) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rib injury/fracture • Intercostal muscle injury • Direct invasion of chest wall by tumour or metastases • Costochondritis (Teitz syndrome)
Mediastinal	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Compression due to tumour • Mediastinitis • Tracheitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Epidemic myalgia (Coxsackie B infection) • Bronchom disease
Functional	Neurological
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anxiety (cardiac neurosis) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spinal nerve root involvement in Pott's disease (tuberculosis of spine) or vertebral disease or prolapsed disc • Post-herpetic neuralgia • Thoracic outlet syndrome

Characteristics of chest pain due to the diseases of the lung and pleura

There are four major types of chest pain due to pleuro-pulmonary disease;

1. Central or retrosternal chest pain due to repeated coughing is seen in tracheobronchitis or chronic bronchitis/COPD. It is actually chest discomfort rather than pain.
2. Central chest discomfort/heaviness is felt in mediastinal compression due to a tumour or lymph node enlargement or spontaneous pneumothorax.
3. Unilateral sharp, stabbing chest pain which is made worse by coughing and breathing, is characteristic of pleuritis or chest wall disease (myalgia, fibromyalgia, rib fracture). Sometimes, a patient of pleuritis may hold breath or take shallow respiration due to pain. The characteristics of pleural pain are given in the Box 2.12.
4. Constant dull or sharp persistent pain is felt in malignant lung tumours. It is neither related to coughing nor breathing.
5. Atypical chest pain with no localisation or relation to coughing or breathing is characteristic of anxiety neurosis. These patients have anxious look.

Table 2.14: Differential diagnosis of chest pain/discomfort

Disorder	Mechanism	Site	Quality, severity and timing	Aggravating factor(s)	Relieving factor(s)	Associated symptom(s)
Cardiovascular						
Angina pectoris	Reversible myocardial ischaemia due to atherosclerosis of coronary artery	Retrosternal or across the anterior chest, radiating to the arms (left), neck, shoulders, lower jaw, or upper abdomen.	Pressing, squeezing, tightness or heaviness in chest usually of mild to moderate intensity, perceived as discomfort rather than pain. Duration is short i.e. 1-3 min (may be upto 10 minutes)	Exertions, cold, heavy meals, psychological stress act as precipitating factors	Rest and nitroglycerine	Nausea, vomiting, sometimes dyspnoea
Myocardial infarction	Irreversible prolonged myocardial ischaemia resulting in muscle damage/ necrosis	-same as above-	-same as above- —except pain is more severe and prolonged (20 minutes to several hours)	No aggravating factor.	No relieving factor	Nausea, vomiting, perspiration, exhaustion
Pericarditis	Irritation of pericardium and of adjacent pleura	Precordial, may radiate to the tip of shoulder and to the back	Sharp, cutting (knife-like) often severe and persistent	Breathing, change in posture, coughing, lying down	Forward bending or sitting forward may give some relief	Fever and symptoms of underlying illness, pericardial rub is present
Aortic dissecting aneurysm	Formation of a dissecting channel within layers of aortic wall allowing the passage of blood	Anterior chest radiating to the neck, back or abdomen	Tearing pain which is severe and persistent. Abrupt onset	Hypertension	No relieving factor	Of the underlying cause. Syncope, hemiplegia, paraplegia. Aortic diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation may appear
Pulmonary						
Acute bronchitis	Inflammation of large bronchi and trachea	Upper sternum or on either side of the sternum	Burning, mild to moderate intensity	Coughing	Sputum expulsion	Of the underlying cause
Pleuritis	Inflammation of parietal pleura	Anterior chest wall overlying the area of pleurisy	Sharp, cutting (knife-like) often severe and persistent	Breathing, coughing, movement of the trunk	Lying on the involved side may relieve it	Of the underlying cause
Gastrointestinal						
Reflux oesophagitis	Inflammation of the oesophageal mucosa	Retrosternal, may radiate to the back	Burning or squeezing pain, mild to moderate	Large meal; bending,	Antacids and nitrates, lying down	Heartburn, Sour eructation, acid taste in mouth
Diffuse oesophageal spasm	A motility disorder of oesophagus	Retrosternal, may radiate to the back, arms, and jaw.	Burning or squeezing of mild to moderate intensity	Swallowing of food, cold liquid, emotional stress	Antacids and nitrates	—do—
Myalgia/Teitz's syndrome	Variable, unclear	Often below the left breast or along the costal cartilage or elsewhere	Stabbing, sticking or dull aching of fleeting nature. Severity variable	Movements of chest, trunk, arms aggravate it. There may be local tenderness	—	—
Psychogenic Anxiety neurosis (cardiac neurosis)	Unclear	Precardial, below the left breast or across the anterior chest	Stabbing, sticking or dull aching. Variable intensity, fleeting nature	May follow stress or effort	Mental rest and anxiolytics psychotherapy	Hyperventilation, palpitations, weakness, anxious look

Box 2.12: CHARACTERISTICS OF PLEURAL CHEST PAIN

- Sharp, stabbing pain
- Pain is related to respiration (maximal towards the end of inspiration) and coughing
- It is associated with rapid shallow breathing and sometimes patient may hold breaths
- It may get referred to shoulder if there is involvement of diaphragmatic pleura
- It may be associated with a scratchy sound called *pleural rub/friction* which is due to friction between the two layers of pleura, hence is intermittent and, disappears with development of pleural effusion
- There is no localised tenderness which differentiates it from rib fracture

Dyspnoea due to respiratory disease.

Dyspnoea is subjective awareness of the sensation of breathing, may be due to cardiac or respiratory disease, but sometimes it may occur as a result of disorders of other system e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis, anaemia, thyrotoxicosis. Patients with dyspnoea complain of shortness of breath. The principle contributory factors to breathlessness are:

1. **Increased work of breathing.** The work of breathing is increased by increased airflow resistance, decreased compliance of the lungs (stiff or noncompliant lungs) and restricted chest expansion. The causes of increased work cost of breathing are given in the Box 2.13.

Box 2.13: CAUSES OF INCREASED WORK OF BREATHING

<i>Increased airway resistance</i>	<i>Restricted chest expansion</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asthma • COPD • Tracheobronchitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ankylosing spondylitis • Kyphoscoliosis • Respiratory muscle paralysis
Decreased pulmonary compliance	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulmonary oedema • Pulmonary fibrosis • Extrinsic allergic alveolitis 	

2. **Increased ventilatory drive.** An increase in physiological dead space (ventilation/perfusion mismatch) and hyperventilation may cause an increase in respiratory drive either singly or in combination leading to breathlessness. Hyperventilation may result from stimulation of respiratory centre in response to chemical or neural stimuli (Table 2.15).
3. **Respiratory muscle dysfunction.** Neuromuscular paralysis may impair the function of respiratory

Table 2.15: Causes of increased ventilatory drive responsible for dyspnoea

Cause/mechanism	Disease
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acidemia ($\uparrow H^+$ ion concentration) causing Kussmaul breathing • $\uparrow PaCO_2$ (respiratory acidosis) • $\downarrow PaO_2$ (arterial hypoxaemia) stimulates chemoreceptors • Increased central arousal (sympathetic activity) • Pulmonary 'J' receptors discharge 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis • Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease • Cyanotic congenital heart disease, asthma, COPD, anaemia, shock, pneumonia • Exercise, anxiety, thyrotoxicosis, phaeochromocytoma, fever • Pulmonary oedema

muscles and diaphragm leading to breathlessness. The causes include Guillain-Barre syndrome, cervical cord injury, muscular dystrophy, myasthenia gravis, organophosphorus poisoning.

Points to be asked on history of breathlessness

- *Mode of onset*-acute or insidious
- *Exercise tolerance*-daily physical activities
- *Associated symptoms* such as
 - Cough, sputum, haemoptysis
 - Wheeze, chest pain
- *Past history of allergy, cardiac or respiratory disorder*
- *Occupational history*—exposure to dust, pollens, animals, chemical
- *Personal history.* History of smoking (past and present)
- *Recent travel abroad*

Clinical tips

- Breathlessness with unilateral chest pain (pleurisy) occurs in pneumonia, pulmonary infarction, rib fracture, pneumothorax
- Breathlessness without chest pain, cough and wheeze is seen in pulmonary embolism, tension pneumothorax, shock and metabolic acidosis
- Breathlessness with cough and wheeze but with no chest pain indicates left heart failure, asthma, pneumothorax.

Causes of dyspnoea

Depending on the onset, dyspnoea may be divided into acute (within minutes to hours) and chronic (days to months or years). Acute dyspnoea presents with prominent symptoms at rest while chronic dyspnoea occurs on exertion. The causes are given in the Table 2.16. The differential diagnosis of acute severe dyspnoea is tabulated (Table 2.18).

Table 2.16: Causes of dyspnoea

System	Dyspnoea at rest (acute)	Dyspnoea on exertion (chronic)
C.V.S.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute left ventricular failure Myocardial infarction 	Chronic heart failure
Respiratory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute severe asthma Acute exacerbation of COPD Pneumonia Tension pneumothorax Pulmonary embolism ARDS Lobar collapse Laryngeal oedema (anaphylaxis) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chronic asthma COPD Bronchial carcinoma Interstitial lung disease Chronic pulmonary thromboembolism Large pleural effusion Lymphatic carcinomatosis
Miscellaneous	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Metabolic acidosis (e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, uraemia, salicylate poisoning, ethylene-glycol poisoning) Psychogenic hyperventilation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Severe anaemia Obesity

Dyspnoea characteristics

Mode of onset, duration and progression: Dyspnoea may be of acute or sudden onset (pulmonary oedema, pulmonary embolism, pneumothorax) or slow insidious onset (chronic congestive heart failure, interstitial lung disease, COPD), may be continuous and progressive (diffuse interstitial lung disease, occupational diseases) or intermittent /episodic (asthma). Mode of onset, duration and progression help in arriving at the diagnosis.

Aggravating and relieving factors: Diurnal variation of symptoms is characteristic of bronchiectasis, lung abscess. Dyspnoea which improves at weekend or on holidays (rest) suggests occupational asthma or extrinsic allergic alveolitis. Some diseases such as asthma may be provoked by coughing or laughing or exertion or following exposure to allergens/ irritants.

Nocturnal dyspnoea which may awaken the patient from sleep is a typical feature of nocturnal asthma, pulmonary oedema and COPD. Orthopnoea may be seen in heart failure and severe COPD and such patients may have to sleep in the sitting position propped up by pillows.

Associated symptoms. The symptoms associated with dyspnoea include cough, wheeze, sputum, haemoptysis and chest pain. Their significance has been discussed in the Table 2.14.

Severity: Though grading systems exist to assess the cardiac and respiratory disabilities (see Table 2.10

NYHA classification) but simple questions like breathlessness on daily activities may provide an effective functional assessment of the severity of dyspnoea.

Apnoea: Apnoea is defined as cessation of breathing, can occur in following conditions;

- Voluntarily holding of breath for sometimes.
- Cheyne—stokes breathing in which apnoea alternates with hyperventilation.
- Sleep—apnoea syndrome (Read from the textbook).

Wheeze

Wheezing is described by the patients as whistling or musical sounds produced in the chest. It is due to narrowing of the bronchi as a result of mucus plugging or bronchoconstriction. It is heard in asthma and COPD. Many patients may become so accustomed to wheeze that they cease to be aware of its presence.

Stridor

It is loud sound produced by partial obstruction of a major airway (e.g. laryngeal oedema, tumour, an inhaled foreign body).

Symptomatology of upper respiratory tract

The symptoms originating from upper respiratory tract (nose, nasopharynx, larynx and trachea) are summarised in the Table 2.17.

Table 2.17: Symptoms pertaining to upper respiratory tract

Nose and nasopharynx	Larynx	Trachea
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nasal discharge with frequent sneezing (e.g. rhinitis respiratory catarrh, nasal allergy) Intermittent nasal obstruction (e.g. adenoids enlargement, deflected nasal septum or polyps), bilateral nasal obstruction may result in mouth breathing in children. Epistaxis (bleeding from the nose). It may give rise to haemoptysis if blood from posterior nares is first inhaled and then coughed up. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Horseness or dysphonia Dry barking cough in laryngeal oedema and bovine cough in laryngeal paralysis Stridor—a high-pitched crowing sound occurring during inspiration Laryngeal pain (e.g. acute laryngitis, tubercular laryngitis and laryngeal carcinoma) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pain Cough Stridor Dyspnoea

Clinical clues

- Cough causing sleep disturbance is common in asthma than COPD.

Table 2.18: Differential diagnosis of acute severe dyspnoea

Condition	History	Signs	Chest X-ray	Arterial blood gas	ECG	Other tests
1. Left ventricular failure (Pulmonary oedema)	Previous cardiac disease or chest pain, orthopnoea PND and palpitation. There is pink frothy sputum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Central cyanosis JVP-normal or raised Sweating Cold extremities End-inspiratory crackles at bases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cardiomegaly Upper lobe veins engorgement Pulmonary oedema Pleural effusion 	\downarrow PaO ₂ \downarrow PaCO ₂	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sinus tachycardia Myocardial ischaemia/infarction Arrhythmias 	Echocardiography shows depressed left ventricular function
2. Massive pulmonary embolism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recent surgery or other risk factors Chest pain Haemoptysis Deep vein thrombosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Central cyanosis \uparrowJVP Signs of shock Unilateral oedema Calf tenderness Pleural rub may be heard 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prominent hilar vessels with oligoemic lung fields 	\downarrow PaO ₂ \downarrow PaCO ₂	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sinus tachycardia S₁Q₃T₃ pattern Inverted T(V₁-V₄) RBB Block 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Echocardiography Lung scan Angiography
3. Acute bronchial asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> History of previous episode History of asthma medication Wheeze 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tachycardia Pulsus paradoxus Cyanosis (late) JVP normal Diffuse bronchi (rales), sonorous 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hyperinflation Pneumothorax if complicated 	\downarrow PaO ₂ N or \downarrow PaCO ₂ (late)	Sinus tachycardia	
4. Acute exacerbation of COPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Long duration of history of cough Repeated hospital admissions History of smoking Mucoid or mucopurulent sputum 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cyanosis Signs of COPD (barrel shaped chest, intercostal indrawing, pursed lips breathing) Signs of CO₂ retention (warm extremities, bounding pulse, flapping tremors) Bilateral crackles and rales 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hyperinflation Increased lung translucency Tubular heart Low flat diaphragm Bullae may be seen 	\downarrow PaO ₂ \uparrow PaCO ₂ Acidosis	Signs of right ventricular hypertrophy if cor pulmonale develops	
5. Pneumonia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fever, cough chest pain and haemoptysis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raised temperature Signs of consolidation Pleural rub may be present Cyanosis, if widespread disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pneumonic homogeneous opacity in the lung involved 	\downarrow PaO ₂ \downarrow PaCO ₂	Tachycardia	
6. Psychogenic (Anxiety)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Previous episodes Acute anxious events precipitate it 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No cyanosis No signs of heart or lung disease Hyperventilation Anxious looks Carpopedal spasm 	Normal	Normal PaO ₂ \downarrow PaCO ₂ Alkalosis may be present		

*Abbreviations:*A-absent; N- normal; \downarrow -decreased \uparrow -increased

- Small repeated episodes of frank haemoptysis suggest bronchial carcinoma or adenoma.
- Pleuritic pain suggests underlying pneumonia or malignancy.

Significance of history

1. **Past history:** Past history of tuberculosis, pneumonia, measles and whooping cough, chest injury, epileptic attacks or surgery under general anaesthesia, pregnancy may be asked in a patient with respiratory disease.
4. **Personal social history.** Certain pets (mammals, birds) may be the cause of rhinitis, asthma, allergic alveolitis and psittacosis pneumonia, hence, history of keeping pets must be asked.

Cigarette smoking is an incriminating factor for bronchial carcinoma and COPD, therefore, history of active or passive smoking in nonsmokers must be asked. In smokers, one should enquire about the age at which smoking

started, average number of cigarettes/cigar per day and duration of smoking. (Read Habits in Chapter 1)

Cardiac versus respiratory dyspnoea

Dyspnoea may be a symptom of a cardiovascular or a respiratory disease but sometimes both may coexist in the same patient when it becomes difficult to decide how much is contributed by individual cardiac and respiratory disorder. In some patients, it may be possible to pinpoint whether dyspnoea is cardiac or respiratory origin; while in others it is rather difficult. The salient differentiating features between cardiac and respiratory dyspnoea are given in the Table 2.19.

Symptoms related to blood disorder

The symptoms and appearance (pallor) that point to a disorder of haemopoietic system are given in the Box 2.14.

Table 2.19: Distinction between cardiac and pulmonary dyspnoea

	Cardiac dyspnoea	Pulmonary dyspnoea
History	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • History or evidence of heart disease • Acute or sudden onset. • Associated symptoms, include chest pain, orthopnoea, palpitation, diaphoresis (sweating) etc. • A previous history of left ventricular failure • Paroxysmal attacks of dyspnoea (PND) are common, relieved by sitting or recumbent position • Wheezing less frequent • Dyspnoea is marked with less troublesome unproductive cough 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • History or evidence of respiratory disease • Gradual onset except when there is an acute exacerbation of COPD or acute asthma • Associated symptoms such as cough, wheeze, haemoptysis, stridor are common • Previous history of repeated attacks of asthma or chronic bronchitis • PND is less common, is relieved by cough and expectoration • Wheezing is marked and even audible • Dyspnoea is marked with productive cough
Signs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tachycardia, tachypnoea, cyanosis, (both central and peripheral) • Percussion note may be dull at bases • Trachea central and normal in length • There is no retraction of supraclavicular fossae or no activity of extrarespiratory muscles • Crackles (crepitations) at the bases with few rhonchi (wheezes) • Apex beat is normal or displaced • Breath sounds normal • 3rd heart sound may be present (gallop rhythm) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tachypnoea, tachycardia and central cyanosis are less marked • Hyperresonant note may be present • Trachea central but palpable part is decreased • Retraction of supraclavicular fossae, indrawing of ribs, barrel-shape chest and overactivity of extrarespiratory muscles prominent • Diffuse wheezes and crackles (crepitations) • Apex beat may not be visible or normal • Breath sounds with prolonged expiration • No 3rd heart sound
Chest X-ray	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Heart size enlarged, diffuse haze from hilum to periphery of lungs, Kerley's B lines may be present. Hydrothorax present in some cases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Heart size normal or may be tubular, there is increased translucency of lungs and low flat domes of diaphragm. Bullae may be seen in emphysema
ECG	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Myocardial ischaemia/infarction, left ventricular hypertrophy, conduction defects and arrhythmias 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sinus tachycardia and right ventricular hypertrophy if cor pulmonale develops
Echocardiogram	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Left ventricular ejection fraction depressed at rest and may decline during exercise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Right ventricular ejection fraction are low at rest and may decline with exercise
Arterial blood gas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PaO₂ low • PaCO₂ low 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PaO₂ low • PaCO₂ normal or raised

Box 2.14: SYMPTOMS OF DISORDERS OF BLOOD

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Lassitude, dyspnoea and palpitation | • Blood loss |
| • Infections at various sites | • Skin and joint bleeding (purpura, ecchymosis, haemarthrosis) |
| • Bleeding from different sites e.g. nose (epistaxis), gums, rectum, per vagina, and urinary tract. | • Glandular swellings (lymph node enlargement), splenomegaly |

Lassitude, dyspnoea and palpitation. They are nonspecific symptoms, can occur in hypoxia due to any cause. Anaemia is a common cause of these symptoms. They appear when haemoglobin concentration is reduced so that oxygen delivery to the tissue is affected.

Pallor is often the complaint of the friends or relatives rather than the patients themselves. The degree of pallor does not correspond with degree of anaemia. The degree of pallor is difficult to assess in dark-coloured people or patients with thick skin.

The anaemia is discussed in details in examination of haemopoietic system chapter 17.

Infections: In patients with blood disorders, the infections (bacterial, viral, fungal etc) are common due to agranulocytosis (leucopenia), aplastic anaemia, leukaemias, lymphomas, hypersplenism. The presence of fever in blood disorders indicates infection. In addition, there may be excoriation and ulceration of the mouth or fauces, white plaques of oral candidiasis (mouth thrush). These lesions are often associated with cold sores on the lips due to herpes simplex infection. There may be anorectal ulceration.

Bleeding: Bleeding is a common symptom of either a haemostatic disorder or a local anatomic defect (trauma, surgery, stress), the latter has to be differentiated from former. One clue to local cause of bleeding following common hemostatic stresses such as dental extraction, delivery or birth or minor surgery. Severe bleeding from multiple sites that can not be linked to trauma or surgery also suggests a systemic disorder. Family history of bleeding indicates an inherited haemostatic disorder.

Bleeding if occurs due to blood disorders indicates either defects of primary haemostasis (platelet disorders) or secondary haemostasis (coagulation disorders). Platelet disorders produce bleeding into superficial structures, e.g. skin and mucous membrane, comes on immediately after trauma or surgery and can be readily controlled by local measures. On the other hand, coagulation defects produce bleeding in deeper structures (muscles, joints or body cavities), comes late (hours to days) after injury and local measures can not control it.

Bleeding into the anus and rectum can occur in thrombocytopenia as well as in coagulation disorders. The causes of bleeding per rectum are discussed under GI tract symptoms.

Bleeding into nose (epistaxis), sputum (haemoptysis), vomitus (haematemesis), urine (haematuria) are discussed in the appropriate sections. The causes of bleeding gums are given in the Box 2.15.

Box 2.15: CAUSES OF BLEEDING GUMS**1. Haematological**

- Leukaemias (monocytic or monomyelocytic)
- Aplastic anaemia
- Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
- Thromboasthenia
- von Willebrand's disease
- Coagulation disorders e.g. haemophilia, Christmas disease, Vit. K deficiency, liver disease, anticoagulants, afibrinogenaemia etc
- Hypersplenism
- DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation)

2. Diseases of the gums

- Gingivitis
- Periodontitis
- Herpes infection
- Vincent's infection

3. Systemic disorders

- Scurvy (Vit. C deficiency)
- Phenytoin toxicity (gum hypertrophy)
- Pregnancy
- Henöch-Schönlein purpura
- Connective tissue disorders

Terms used in relation to bleeding

- *Purpura and petechiae.* These are tiny pin-point haemorrhages into the skin which do not blanch on compression with a glass slide. They indicate platelet disorders.
- *Ecchymoses.* These are superficial haemorrhages larger than petechiae and are more often confluent.
- *Bruises.* These are confluent areas of blood deposition, become multicoloured in appearance as they resolve and are sometimes associated with an obvious swelling (haematoma).

Blood loss: Blood loss may be due to haemorrhage which may be acute or chronic, internal (e.g. GI tract oesophageal varices, gastric carcinoma, a ruptured spleen, trauma or massive haemorrhage into body cavities or retroperitoneal space) or external (epistaxis, piles, haematemesis, haemoptysis, menorrhagia).

Acute blood loss leads to compensatory adjustment such as increase in O₂ delivery to the tissues, cardiovascular mechanisms and an increase in

erythropoiesis in the bone marrow (increased erythropoietin production). The signs and symptoms of blood loss occur relative to the volume of the blood loss (volume depletion) and the time frame over which the haemorrhage occurs (Table 2.20). With larger blood losses, blood volume redistribution is not adequate to maintain normal BP, hence, initially there may be hypotension during standing, followed by hypotension during sitting and lying down position and eventually shock.

Table 2.20: Symptoms and signs of blood loss

Percentage blood loss (volume lost)	Symptoms and signs
<20% (<1000 ml)	Restlessness, vasovagal reaction
20-30%(1000-1500 ml)	Anxiety, orthostatic hypotension, exertional tachycardia (palpitation)
30-40% (1500-2000 ml)	Syncope on sitting or standing, orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia at rest
40-50% (>2000 ml)	Confusion, shortness of breath, shock, poor perfusion.

Glandular swellings (lymph nodes enlargement). These are discussed under examination of neck (Chapter 8) as well as haemopoietic system.

Symptoms pertaining to urinary system

The main functions of the kidneys and urinary system are formation of urine, excretion of waste products and to maintain water and pH balance, therefore, changes in the urine or retention of waste products and disturbance of water and pH indicate renal system involvement. Renal disease especially chronic renal failure may be totally asymptomatic, detected incidentally by presence of hypertension, proteinuria or raised blood urea or creatinine concentrations. The symptoms which most often bring the patient to a doctor are given in the Box 2.16 and discussed below:

Box 2.16: COMMON URINARY SYMPTOMS

- Pain and dysuria
- Polyuria and/or nocturia
- Oliguria/anuria
- Red coloured (haematuria) or dark coloured urine (haemoglobinuria, porphyria)
- Increased frequency, burning micturition
- Hesitancy, retention of urine, retention with overflow, urinary incontinence
- Puffiness of face and oedema
- Symptoms of uraemia e.g. nausea, vomiting, pallor

Pain

The pain due to acute bladder or urethral inflammation is called *dysuria/stangury*. This is a burning or tingling sensation felt at urethral meatus or in suprapubic area during the act of micturition. The site of pain and their respective disorder are given in the Box 2.17.

Box 2.17: PAIN DUE TO URINARY SYSTEM DISORDERS

Site	Disorder
Loin pain/flank pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Renal disorders e.g. renal colic (e.g. stone, clot, tumour). Constant pain with fever occurs in acute pyelonephritis or perinephric abscess. Dull, dragging flank pain occurs due to large kidneys or polycystic kidney disease. <i>Radiation.</i> Pain of perinephric abscess may radiate upwards to chest or may track over psoas muscle. • Pelvi-ureteric/ureteric obstruction/ spasm due to impaction of a stone or tumour or clot. • Labium pain radiates round the groin and often limited to the labium in the sensory distribution of L₁
Suprapubic/ hypogastric pain and dysuria. Perineal/ rectal pain.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Urinary bladder disorders (calculous, infection), urethral disorders (stricture, infection). • Prostatic hypertrophy or infection.

Abnormal urine volumes

Polyuria. It refers to urine output >3L/day, provided the patient is not on high fluid intake. *Nocturia* means excessive amount of urine passed at night. Polyuria differs from increased frequency of micturition in the former urine volume is more while in the latter patients goes for micturition many times but amount of the urine passed in a day is normal or less, hence, 24 hour urine output differentiates the two. The causes of polyuria are given in the Table 2.21.

Normal urine output is 800-2500 ml/day in temperate climate. It varies with the diet and fluid intake.

Table 2.21: Causes of polyuria

1. **Physiological**
 - Primary psychogenic polydipsia or excessive fluid intake.
2. **Osmotic diuresis**
 - Chronic renal failure
 - Diabetes mellitus
 - Mannitol infusion
3. **Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus (tubules insensitive to ADH)**
 - Congenital (polycystic disease)
 - Tubulointestinal diseases e.g. pyelonephritis, multiple myeloma, hypercalcaemia, drug/toxins induced, amyloidosis.
4. **Natriuresis (loss of salt along with water)**
 - Salt-losing nephropathy
 - Diuretics

Oliguria: It refers to urine output <500 ml/day in an average adult. The oliguria may also arise due to error of judgement as it is difficult to collect the urine without spilling, and is difficult to measure when urine flow rates are low.

Oliguria is invariably a symptom/sign of acute renal failure but can occur in acute on chronic renal failure. The causes of oliguria are the causes of acute renal failure (Table 2.22).

Table 2.22: Causes of oliguria

1. **Pre-renal causes**
 - Hypovolaemia (blood or fluid loss) and shock.
 - Heart failure
 - Renal vascular disease (renal artery stenosis/occlusion)
2. **Renal causes**
 - Glomerular diseases
 - Interstitial diseases of kidney
 - Drug/toxin/sepsis
3. **Post-renal (obstructive uropathy)**
 - Stone, tumour, retroperitoneal fibrosis

Anuria: It refers to urine output <20 ml/day or patient may not pass urine at all in 24 hours. It must be ensured that urinary bladder does not contain urine on catheterisation before labelling a patient anuric. The causes are;

- (i) Complete bilateral urinary tract obstruction.
- (ii) Total renal arterial/venous occlusion.
- (iii) Bilateral renal cortical necrosis.
- (iv) Rapidly progressive acute glomerulonephritis (RPGN).
- (v) Severe shock.

Abnormal colouration of urine

Red coloured urine is due to presence of RBCs (haematuria) while dark coloured urine (brownish discolouration) is due to haemoglobinuria or myoglobinuria; the two can be distinguished by microscopic examination of urine which shows RBCs in the former not in the latter. The causes of high coloured urine are given in the Box 2.18. Haematuria which does not produce red-colouration is called microscopic haematuria. The causes of haematuria are tabulated (Table 2.23).

Box 2.18: CAUSES OF HIGH COLOURED (DARK) URINE

- Loss of blood in urine (*haematuria*).
- Loss of haemoglobin in urine (*haemoglobinuria*). Urine gives positive test for Hb but there are no RBCs under microscope. This suggests intravascular haemolysis
- Loss of muscle pigment in urine (*myoglobinuria*). No RBCs present in urine. Chemical tests for haemoglobin are positive. Myoglobin is distinguished from haemoglobin by spectrophotometry
- Loss of porphobilinogen in urine (*porphyria*). In this condition, freshly voided urine is normal-coloured which becomes dark-coloured (Bragandy-wine) on standing
- Excretion of drugs in urine such as rifampicin and phenolphthalein.

Table 2.23: Causes of haematuria

- I. **Renal**
 - Glomerular diseases e.g. glomerulonephritis (primary or secondary)
 - Interstitial renal disease
 - Cystic renal disease (polycystic kidneys)
 - Renal stones/tumours/trauma
- II. **Ureter**
 - Stone
 - Neoplasm
- III. **Urinary bladder**
 - Cystitis
 - Stone
 - Schistosomiasis
 - Neoplasm
 - Trauma
- IV. **Urethra**
 - Urethritis, injury to urethra (catheter)
- V. **Prostate**
 - Prostatitis
 - Benign enlargement of prostate (BEP)
 - Neoplasm
- VI. **Disorders of haemostasis**
 - Bleeding or coagulation disorders
 - Anticoagulant therapy

Increased frequency of micturition

It refers to how many times a patient goes for micturition. In this condition, urine output remains normal or low. It often goes undetected during the day, because during the day micturition is determined as much by habit and social factors as by necessity. Increased frequency at night if regular is much more easily recognised as an abnormal and brings the patient to the physician. It may be due to loss of concentration ability of the tubules (tubular disorders), urinary infection, bladder obstruction (infection/injury), benign enlargement of prostate or prostatitis or neurological disease affecting the urinary bladder. It could be psychogenic also.

Hesitancy, retention of urine, retention with overflow. These are common symptoms of benign enlargement of prostate past middle age. Characteristically, the stream of the urine produced during micturition is thin and poor, and the patient complains of difficulty in initiation of micturition (hesitancy) and in stopping it (terminal dribbling). Acute retention may follow with overflow. These symptoms can also be seen in spinal cord lesions (acute, complete lesion).

Urinary incontinence

It refers to the inability to retain urine in the bladder. Young women in child-bearing age may complain of involuntary passage or leakage of urine during coughing, sneezing and laughing. This is called *stress incontinence*. Some old patients with cognitive or neurosensory deficits complain of involuntary passage of urine because they do not sense the bladder fullness. Upto 30% older patients are concerned about urinary incontinence that is socially embarrassing or cause problem with hygiene. The causes of incontinence are given in the Table 2.24. Some old persons with mental derangement wet their trousers before reaching the bathroom.

Table 2.24: Causes of urinary incontinence

1. **Neurogenic incontinence** e.g. CVA, dementia, neoplasm, hydrocephalus, spinal cord compression, pelvic tumours, uterine prolapse.
2. **Stress incontinence**
 - Postmenopausal parous women.
3. **Overflow incontinence**
 - Bladder neck obstruction.
 - Urethral stricture.
 - Benign enlargement of prostate.
4. **Mechanical incontinence**
 - Congenital abnormality of urinary bladder
 - Transurethral resection of prostate with damage to sphincters.
5. **Functional incontinence**
 - Anxious children.
 - Neuropsychiatric or mental dearrangement.
 - Musculoskeletal disorders.
 - Immobility.

Enuresis

It is involuntary passage of urine at night or during sleep. It is also called *nocturnal enuresis* or *night bed-wetting*.

Bed-wetting is normal upto 2 years of age. In some children, bed-wetting persists upto 3 years due to delayed acquisition of the bladder control. Majority of the bed-wetters become dry at the age of puberty. Enuresis may be organic or psychogenic. The organic enuresis occurs both during the day and night. The causes include UTI, obstructive uropathy, urovesical dysfunction and polyuria. The psychogenic enuresis is common in young children.

Pneumaturia

It refers to passing air bubbles in the urine. It is caused by a colovesicle fistula due to diverticular abscess or malignant disease.

Puffiness of face and oedema

Morning puffiness of face, periorbital oedema and pitting pedal oedema are characteristic features of renal diseases (nephritic and nephrotic syndrome) and renal failure due to any cause.

Nervous system symptoms

Headache

(discussed in examination of cranium Chapter 3)

Involuntary movements

Neurological disorders especially involving the basal ganglia and extrapyramidal system manifest with certain involuntary or unintended movements (see the Box 2.19). These involuntary movements are not disease specific. They are discussed under nervous system examination.

Box 2.19: VARIOUS INVOLUNTARY MOVEMENTS

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| • Epilepsy | • Dystonia |
| • Myoclonus | • Dyskinesia |
| • Tremor/asterixis | • Torticollis |
| • Athetosis | • Tics |
| • Chorea | • Myokymia |
| • Hemiballismus | • Tetany |
| • Fasciculations | • Cramp |

Epilepsy/seizure

The epilepsies or seizural disorders comprise a group of clinical disorders of cerebral functions characterised by chronic, recurrent, paroxysmal nonsynchronous discharge of cerebral neurons. *Seizure* is defined as an

episode of neurological dysfunction. Convulsions are seizures accompanied by motor manifestations, i.e. limb jerking, incontinence of urine or faeces or both etc. Seizures need not be always convulsive, it may be manifested by other changes in the neurological functions, i.e. sensory, cognitive, emotional events etc.

Note. An isolated nonrecurrent seizure occurring in an otherwise healthy individual for no obvious reason should not be labelled as epilepsy.

The questionnaire for convulsions are given in the Box 2.20 and Table 1.3 on systemic symptoms. These questions not only help to categorise the epilepsy into partial or focal seizures (simple or complex) and generalised form but also suggest the status of epilepsy.

Box 2.20: ENQUIRIES FOR CONVULSIONS

- Are convulsions present?
- Are they generalised or focal?
- Where from do they begin or end?
- Does the patient fall?
- Has the patient ever hurt himself/herself?
- Does he/she bites his/her tongue?
- Does the patient micturate or defaecate during the fit?
- Are there any after-symptoms (postictal symptoms)—automatism, sleep, headache or paralysis?
- Is there any mental disturbance associated with it?

The epilepsy starts from one area of the brain and may remain limited to that area or may become generalised (secondary generalisation of focal seizures). In focal epilepsy, if consciousness is preserved, it is called *simple partial* and; if lost then it is called *complex partial seizures*.

Different terms are used by the patients for different involuntary movements such as 'fits' for epilepsy, shaking or trembling of hands for tremors, dancing movements for chorea and muscle twitchings for fasciculations.

Vertigo or dizziness (Read Chapter 7 also)

Dizziness is a common and often vexing symptom that patients use to describe a variety of sensations such as light-headedness, faintness, spinning, giddiness etc. The symptomatic enquiries for dizziness are given in the Box 2.21 and Table 1.3.

Box 2.21: SYMPTOMATIC ENQUIRIES FOR DIZZINESS

- Is it intermittent?
- Does it relate to change in head posture?
- Is there a history of deafness?
- Is there a history of trauma?
- When does it become worse?
- Are there any associated symptoms such as ataxia, speech disturbance, double vision, facial weakness?

Vertigo is an illusory or hallucinatory sense of self or environmental movement, most commonly due to a disturbance in the vestibular system. The causes of vertigo have been discussed in Chapter 7.

Nystagmus is a common concomitant of vertigo. Vertigo may be peripheral (labyrinthine and vestibular causes) or central (brain-stem and cerebellar lesions). The vertigo is analysed as follows;

- The distinction between true vertigo and dizziness is by provocative tests (read ENT examination as separate Chapter 7).
- Once it has been established that it is true vertigo rather than dizziness, then find out whether it is central or peripheral (see Table 7.2).
- The time course and duration of vertigo also help in the diagnosis. Recurrent episodes of brief positional vertigo (lasting less than a minute) indicate benign positional or post-traumatic vertigo. It can be psychogenic. On the other hand, recurrent spontaneous vertigo lasting for minutes/hours indicate Meniere's disease, vertebrobasilar insufficiency, migraine or autoimmune disease. Spontaneous attacks of prolonged vertigo lasting for a day or longer suggest labyrinthitis, multiple sclerosis or an infarction in the vertebrobasilar artery territory.
- Vascular cause (vertebrobasilar insufficiency) is suspected in elderly patients with predisposing factors such as hypertension, CVA, IHD, smoking, diabetes, hyperlipidaemia.
- Patients with central vertigo can neither stand or walk and direction of fall is variable. Vertical nystagmus (up beat or down beat) is pathognomonic of central vertigo. Most common cause of central vertigo is vascular insufficiency of brain stem (ischaemia/infarction) or basilar artery insufficiency supplying the cerebellum.
- A peripheral cause is suspected when there is history of ear discharge or pain, unilateral deafness or tinnitus. It is unidirectional nystagmus with slow component (phase) towards the affected ear and fast component away from (opposite to) the side of lesion. It is commonly due to labyrinthine disorders.

Syncope

Syncope refers to loss of postural tone, inability to maintain erect posture followed by unconsciousness. It is a symptom of decreased cerebral perfusion (Table 2.25). It occurs commonly in standing position due to postural drop in BP but it can occur in sitting position in conduction defects called Stokes-Adam attacks. The loss of consciousness is briefer than an epileptic fit (Table 2.26). Syncope has been discussed as

a symptom of cerebrovascular disease (Read neurology). The three common syncope are compared in Table 2.27.

Table 2.25: Causes of syncope

1. **Decreased cerebral perfusion**
 - A. **Inadequate vasoconstrictive mechanisms**
 - Vasovagal (vasodepressor)
 - Postural hypotension (autonomic neuropathy)
 - Carotid sinus hypersensitivity
 - Antihypertensive drugs (hydralazine, alpha-methyl dopa)
 - B. **Hypovolaemia**
 - Fluid or blood loss
 - Addison's disease
 - C. **Reduction in venous return**
 - Cough and micturition syncope
 - Mediastinal compression
 - Straining during defaecation
 - Valsalva manoeuvre
 - D. **Reduction in cardiac output**
 - Left ventricular outflow tract obstruction e.g. valvular heart disease, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
 - Right ventricular or pulmonary outflow obstruction e.g. pulmonary stenosis, pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary embolism
 - Myocardial disease (infarction, inflammation)
 - Cardiac tamponade (pericardial effusion)
 - E. **Arrhythmias**
 - Sinoatrial and AV blocks
 - Supraventricular/ventricular arrhythmias
 - Ventricular asystole
1. **Other causes**
 - A. **Altered state of blood**
 - Hypoxia
 - Anaemia
 - Hypoglycaemia
 - Hyperventilation
 - Prolonged bed rest
 - B. **Cerebrovascular disturbance**
 - TIAs
 - Vertebrobasilar insufficiency
 - Hypertensive encephalopathy

Weakness or paralysis

Weakness means reduction in normal power of one or more muscles. Paralysis and the suffix "*plegia*" implies weakness that is severe and complete or nearly complete. On the other hand, *paresis* implies partial weakness. The prefix "*hemi*" refers to one half of the body, "*para*" to both the lower limbs and "*quadri*" to all the four limbs. The enquiries about the weakness are given in the Box 2.22.

Box 2.22: ENQUIRIES ABOUT WEAKNESS/PARALYSIS

- Is there any inability to move the limb/part or side of the body?
- Did the weakness start slowly or suddenly?
- Is it stationary or has progressed? if, yes, then how it progressed?
- Which area of the body is involved?
- Does the weakness affect one or both sides?
- What movements are affected?
- Is there any difficulty in combing hair, trying to reach high shelf or difficulty in getting out of a chair, or taking a high step up?
- Does the weakness increase with effort and improve after rest?
- Are there any associated sensory or other symptoms?
- Is there any difficulty in opening a jar or cane or using hand tools (e.g. scissors, screw driver).

Analysis: (Basic patterns of weakness have been discussed in nervous system examination).

Episodic weakness

Weakness whether true or perceived, may be due to disorders of the central or peripheral nervous system. Weakness from CNS disorders is usually accompanied by disturbance in the level of consciousness, or

Table 2.26: The distinction between syncope and an epileptic fit

Feature	Syncope	Epilepsy
Precipitating factors	Emotional, painful or stressful stimuli	Unusual or recognised
Position	Upright	Any position
Diurnal pattern	Day time	Day and night
Onset	Subacute or gradual	Acute
Aura	Absent	Present
Motor symptoms and signs	Motionless, flaccid, may have few clonic jerks	Often tonic or tonic-clonic, or clonic jerks
Colour of the skin	Pale or ashen-gray	Pale or flushed
Cyanosis	Absent	May be present
Breathing	Slow, shallow	Stertorous
Urinary and /or faecal incontinence	Rare	Usual
Tongue biting	Rare	Common
Injury	Rare	Common
Postictal	Rare	Confusion, headache, drowsiness, sleep
Period of unconsciousness	Brief (few seconds)	Short (few minutes)

Table 2.27: Salient features of common syncope

Feature	Cardiac syncope	Vasovagal syncope	Neurogenic syncope
1. Premonitory symptoms	Light headedness, palpitation, chest discomfort, dyspnoea, and convulsions may occur	Nausea, perspiration, pallor, light-headedness	Headache, confusion, hyperexcitability, visual or auditory hallucinations and aura
2. Period of unconsciousness	Extreme, death like pallor present	Pallor with ashen-gray skin	Prolonged unconsciousness (>1 min), motor-seizure activity, urinary incontinence, tongue biting
3. Recovery	Rapid or fast	Slow recovery with nausea and light-headedness	Recovery with prolonged headache or focal neurologic deficit

cognition, and with hypertonia (increased tone or spasticity) and exaggerated tendon reflexes, and often with alteration of sensations. Intermittent or episodic weakness with normal mental function is a characteristic of neuromuscular disorders. The common causes of episodic weakness are electrolyte disturbance, neuromuscular disorders or muscle disorders and due to CNS and metabolic causes (Table 2.28). The questionnaire for episodic weakness given in the Box 2.23.

Table 2.28: Common causes of episodic weakness

I. Electrolyte disturbances
• Hypo or hyperkalaemia due to any cause
• Hypercalcaemia and hypocalcaemia (tetany)
• Hyponatraemia
• Hypophosphataemia
II. Neuromuscular junction disorders
• Myasthenia gravis
• Myasthenia-myopathic syndrome. (Lambert-Eaton syndrome)
III. Muscle diseases
• Periodic paralysis
• Myotonias
• Metabolic defects of muscles
IV. CNS disorders
• Cataplexy and narcolepsy
• Multiple sclerosis
• TIAs
V. Miscellaneous
• Hyperventilation (alkalosis)
• Hypoglycaemia.

Box 2.23: ENQUIRIES ABOUT EPISODIC WEAKNESS

- Hypokalaemic periodic paralysis occurs at rest after immediately after cessation of exercise. Diarrhoea, high carbohydrate diet, diuretics, steroids, and hyperthyroidism are its important causes. Therefore ask the history of these precipitating factors/ illnesses.
- Hyperkalaemic period paralysis occurs in the setting of renal or addison's disease. Ask the history for clinical features of these diseases.

- Sodium loss occurs from GI tract (diarrhoea, vomiting, burns, excessive sweating, pancreatitis) or through kidneys (diuretics, salt wasting nephropathy, hypoadosteronism). Ask for these conditions/illnesses.
- Tetany may be hypocalcaemic, alkalotic, hypokalaemic and hypomagnesaemic. In case of tetany, try to explore the underlying cause of electrolyte disturbance.
- Episodic weakness may occur in metabolic muscle disorders characterised by muscle pain and muscle weakness.
- Hyperventilation may produce recurrent attacks of weakness but these patients have normal strength when tested.
- Episodes of hypoglycaemia may produce transient subjective weakness.
- Patients with narcolepsy, cataplexy and sleep paralysis may have sudden loss of strength and tone during the attack.

Terminology for motor and sensory symptoms

One must be clear regarding the terminology to be used for various motor and sensory symptoms. The patient may interpret them in different ways but a doctor/student should use correct term listed for motor symptoms (Box 2.24) and sensory symptoms (Box 2.25).

Box 2.24: CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY USED FOR SYMPTOMS REFERABLE TO MUSCLES (MOTOR SYMPTOMS)

1. **Spasms:** It refers to brief, unsustained contractions of a muscle or muscles. It results from abnormal electrical activity of CNS, motor neurons or muscle(s) itself. Flexor or extensor spasms result from UMN lesions.
2. **Cramp:** It refers to paroxysmal, spontaneous, painful and prolonged contraction of a muscle or muscles.
3. **Stiffness:** It refers to rigidity or spasm.
4. **Asthenia:** It refers to muscle pain associated with fatigue.

Contd...

Contd...

5. Myalgia. It is a muscular pain in the absence of muscle weakness, is usually viral in origin (influenza, coxsackie virus). *Fibrositis*, *fibromyalgia* and *fibromyositis* are synonyms for a disorder associated with muscle pain/tenderness. Myalgia may be *polymyalgia rheumatica* (occurs over age 50 and is characterised by pain, stiffness in shoulder and hip muscles) or may be a symptom of other rheumatological disorders (rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, PAN, scleroderma and mixed connective tissue syndrome).

Box 2.25: TERMINOLOGY USED FOR ABNORMAL SENSATIONS

- **Paraesthesia:** It is a positive symptom, denotes the abnormal sensation perceived without an apparent stimulus.
- **Dysaesthesia:** It is also a symptom used to denote all types of positive sensations whether a stimulus is evident or not.
- **Hypoaesthesia:** It means reduction of cutaneous sensation to a specific stimulus for testing such as pressure, light touch and warm or cold stimuli.
- **Anaesthesia:** It means loss of skin sensations of all types.
- **Hypoalgesia:** It means loss of pain sensation only.
- **Hyperalgesia:** It means an exaggerated response to a noxious stimulus such as squeezing of calf produces pain in a patient with peripheral neuropathy.
- **Hyperaesthesia:** It means exaggerated perception of sensations in response to mild stimuli (light touch or stroking of the skin).
- **Allodynia:** It is a condition in which nonpainful stimulus once perceived, is experienced as painful. For example, a vibrating tuning fork may be perceived as painful stimulus.
- **Hyperpathia:** It is a broad term used to include hyperaesthesia, allodynia and hyperalgesia, seen in thalamic lesions.
- **Sensory ataxia (loss of position sense):** It is characterised by imbalance particularly with the eyes closed or in the dark, clumsiness or precision movements and unsteadiness of gait. It indicates posterior column involvement. Romberg's sign is used to test the sense of position (read examination of nervous system).

Sensory symptoms

The different types of sensory loss are discussed under neurological examination Chapter 15.

The gait

The normal gait and its abnormalities are discussed in examination of nervous system.

Acute confusional state, dementia are discussed in psychiatric case examination Chapter 20. The coma or unconsciousness is discussed as a separate Chapter 19.

Endocrinal symptoms

There are certain symptom complexes that particularly suggest an endocrinal or metabolic disorder are discussed and analysed in this section. The symptoms are given in the Box 2.26.

Box 2.26: COMMON ENDOCRINAL SYMPTOMS

- 1. Body size and shape**
 - Alteration in stature (short or tall).
 - Weight gain/loss.
- 2. Metabolic effects**
 - Tiredness, weakness.
 - Change in appetite (increased/decreased).
 - Polydipsia (excessive thirst).
 - Polyuria and nocturia.
 - Tremors, palpitations, sweating.
- 3. Local effects**
 - Headache, visual disturbance
 - Prominence of eyes.
 - Bone or muscle pain.
 - Swelling in the neck.
- 4. Reproduction and sex**
 - Impotence/loss of libido.
 - Oligomenorrhoea/amenorrhoea.
 - Infertility.
 - Galactorrhoea.
 - Gynaecomastia (breast enlargement in males).
 - Delayed puberty.
 - Precocious puberty.
- 5. Skin**
 - Hirsutism and thinning of hair.
 - Pigmentation, dryness of skin.

1. Excessive thirst (polydipsia) and excessive urination (polyuria)

The polyuria as an isolated symptom has been discussed under urinary symptoms.

Polyuria, polydipsia and polyphagia is a characteristic triad of type I diabetes mellitus. The polyuria is due to osmotic diuresis induced by glucosuria and other two symptoms in the triad are obligatory. Polyuria and polydipsia may occur in;

1. Central or neurogenic diabetes insipidus due to deficiency of secretion of ADH by posterior pituitary.
2. Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus in which there is a failure of action of ADH on distal tubules. This may be inherited or acquired secondary to impairment of ADH action by hypercalcaemia (hyperparathyroidism) or hypokalaemia.

Table 2.29: Distinction between diabetes insipidus and psychogenic polydipsia

Test	Diabetes insipidus				Psychogenic polydipsia			
	Plasma osmolarity		Urinary osmolarity		Plasma osmolarity		Urine osmolarity	
	Initial	Final	Initial	Final	Initial	Final	Initial	Final
1. Water deprivation test (no fluid for 8 hrs)	High	Rises further	Low	No rise	Low	Raised	Low	Raised

3. *Primary or psychogenic polydipsia*. It is due to compulsive water drinking leading to excessive fluid intake resulting in polyuria and polydipsia.

The differentiation between *psychogenic polydipsia* and *diabetes insipidus* is important. Generally nocturnal polyuria is not a feature of psychogenic polydipsia. The absolute differentiation needs water deprivation (Table 2.29) in addition to other tests to find out the cause. Vasopressin test differentiates between cranial diabetes insipidus from nephrogenic diabetes.

Vasopressin test

It is performed as a second part of 8 hours water deprivation test to differentiate cranial diabetes insipidus from nephrogenic diabetes insipidus. Rise in urine osmolarity >900 mOsm/kg of pretest level is diagnostic of cranial diabetes insipidus; while no rise or insignificant rise may occur in nephrogenic diabetes insipidus.

Weight loss

It is a physical sign rather than symptom, hence, discussed in general physical examination (Read the Chapter 3).

Weight loss in endocrinal disorders is either due to increased metabolism (increased energy expenditure) seen in hyperthyroidism and pheochromocytoma; or increased energy loss such as type I diabetes mellitus or due to diminished food intake i.e. anorexia nervosa, hypercalcaemia and adrenal insufficiency. Weight loss with increased appetite is invariably seen in hyperthyroidism and diabetes mellitus, while weight loss with poor appetite is characteristic of anorexia nervosa.

Weight gain

Weight gain is a symptom of certain endocrinal and metabolic disorders. The cause of weight gain in different endocrinal disorders are given in Table 2.30.

Table 2.30: Cause of weight gain in endocrinal disorders

Cause	Disorder
Low metabolic rate resulting in low energy expenditure.	Primary hypothyroidism.
Redistribution of fat in central areas (truncal obesity) with paradoxical thinning of extremities	Cushing's syndrome
Energy intake more than expenditure.	Simple obesity (Read Chapter 3 also)
Genetic predisposition to weight gain.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prader-Willi syndrome • Laurence-Moon-Biedle syndrome (autosomal recessive) • Alstrom, Cohen and Carpenter syndromes (autosomal recessive, cause childhood obesity) • Frolich's syndrome

Muscle weakness/myopathy

Many endocrinal disorders cause muscle weakness and symmetrical proximal myopathy characterised by difficulty in climbing up-stairs, rising from a sitting position and boarding a train or bus. The proximal groups of muscles involved are the hip and shoulder girdle muscles, hence, resemble girdle myopathy. This can be subclinical but can be demonstrated by Gower's sign by asking the patient to rise from the sitting position. The endocrinal and metabolic causes of myopathy are listed in the Box 2.27. The painful myopathy of endocrinal causes can be confused with polymyositis, polymyalgia rheumatica as well as spinal motor root/plexus disease.

Box 2.27: CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH MYOPATHY

Painless	Painful
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hyperthyroidism • Cushing syndrome • Acromegaly • Hyperparathyroidism 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vitamin-D deficiency. • Osteomalacia. • Hypothyroidism (e.g. Debre-Kocher-Semelaigne syndrome, in children and Hoffman's syndrome in adults).

Contd....

Contd....

- | | |
|--|--|
| • Steroid-induced myopathy | • Diabetic myopathy (ischaemia or infarction of muscles) |
| • Conn's syndrome (primary hyperaldosteronism) | • Hypoparathyroidism (generalised tetany). |

Temperature intolerance (heat or cold)

Thyroid disorders predispose the patients to temperature intolerance due to change in basal metabolic rate.

Cold intolerance is a feature of hypothyroidism in which a patient feels abnormal sensation of cold which is out of proportion to that experienced by normal individuals. This is due to low metabolic rate (hypometabolism). This symptoms is different from coldness of hands due to vasospasm seen in Raynaud's phenomenon (e.g. a tricolour response with coldness of hands).

Heat intolerance, a symptom of thyroid overactivity is commonly seen in patients with hyperthyroidism. It is characterised by inability of the patient to tolerate heat or high temperature. The thyrotoxic patients feel comfortable at ambient temperature which others find unpleasantly cold. This is due to a high metabolic rate (hypermetabolism).

Increased sweating (hyperhidrosis) is a symptom of thyrotoxicosis, (excess of thyroid hormones) or hyperaldrenalism/phaeochromocytoma (excess of catecholamine), acromegaly (excess of GH), autonomic neuropathy (gustatory hyperhidrosis) and anxiety neurosis.

Loss of sweating (anhidrosis) or reduced sweating is a symptom of

1. Hypothyroidism.
2. Hypothermia.
3. Autonomic neuropathy.
4. Acute or subacute dysautonomia.
5. Hypoadrenalism.
6. Anticholinergics.
7. Vit. A deficiency.
8. Sjögren's syndrome.

Postural instability

It means a sensation of faintness or giddiness on standing (syncope) occurs due to a fall in diastolic blood pressure on standing (postural hypotension) as a result of reduced cardiac output or blood volume. If a patient complains of this symptom, one must measure the BP in lying and standing positions. The causes of postural hypotension are:

1. Reduced blood volume (hypovolaemia) due to bleeding or fluid loss.
2. Adrenal insufficiency (Addison's disease).
3. Autonomic neuropathy especially in long-standing diabetes (microvascular complications), beri-beri and amyloidosis.
4. Antihypertensive therapy and vasodilators.
5. After sympathectomy.
6. Prolonged bed rest or recumbancy in elderly.

The various accompanying symptoms with postural hypotension are given in the Box 2.28. The history of these accompanying symptoms or signs and drug history must be recorded.

Box 2.28:

ACCOMPANYING SYMPTOMS/SIGNS OF POSTURAL HYPOTENSION

- Loss or diminished lacrimation, sweating, and salivation.
- Loss of pupillary reflexes.
- Compensatory tachycardia, pallor or nausea may or may not occur.
- Impotence.
- Paresis of bladder and bowel.

Visual disturbance: Several endocrinal disorders produce visual symptoms;

- Graves' disease ophthalmopathy.** The proptosis or exophthalmos in Grave's disease may cause decreased visual acuity, ophthalmoplegia and congestive ophthalmopathy characterised by chemosis, conjunctivitis, diplopia, periorbital swelling, optic neuritis and optic atrophy. This is a mechanical complication occurring due to compression of optic nerve in the orbital space.
- Pituitary tumours.** The optic chiasma is located anterior to the pituitary stalk above the diaphragma sellae. The lateral walls of sella turcica abut on the cavernous sinuses which contain internal carotid arteries and III, IV, V and VI cranial nerves. Therefore, a pituitary tumour may compress optic chiasma and optic nerve by suprasellar extension leading to visual field defect. By lateral extension, it may compress the cranial nerves in cavernous sinus leading to diplopia. It may compress the optic radiation by infrasellar extension leading to quadrantic field defect.

Macropsia (apparent magnification of vision) can occur in hypoglycaemia and migraine.

Symptoms of sympathetic overactivity (e.g. tachycardia, tremors, perspiration)

These symptoms occur spontaneously due to excessive sympathetic drive, are seen in thyrotoxicosis,

phaeochromocytoma, acromegaly, diabetic ketoacidosis and anxiety neurosis. If these symptoms occur in fasting state, then they are mostly due to hypoglycaemia which can be induced by;

1. Insulinoma (insulin secreting tumour).
2. Drugs e.g. inappropriate insulin or excess of oral hypoglycaemic agents especially sulphonylureas administration in diabetic patients.
3. Hypopituitarism (e.g. corticosteroid deficiency with or without thyroxine deficiency—Schmidt's syndrome).
4. Primary adrenal failure.
5. Hepatic failure (rare cause).
6. Paraneoplastic syndrome e.g. tumours secreting insulin-like hormone/peptide.

Dysphagia

Dysphagia in endocrinal disorders is due to mechanical compression of oesophagus by either diffuse goitre (Graves' disease), simple large goitre or multinodular goitre. Motor dysphagia may occur due to reversible pharyngeal muscle weakness in severe hyperthyroidism.

Symptoms pertaining to genital system

Impotence. It is defined as the failure to achieve penile erection, ejaculation or both. Men with sexual disorders present with a variety of complaints either singly or in combination such as loss of libido (desire), inability to maintain an erection, ejaculatory failure, premature ejaculation or inability to achieve orgasm. Impotence can result due to;

1. Systemic illness or its treatment.
2. Specific disorders of urogenital and endocrinal systems.
3. Psychological disturbance.

Note: It was previously thought that the majority of men with erectile dysfunction had a psychological cause, but it has now become clear that most impotent men have a component of underlying organic disease.

Failure of erection (erectile impotence) may be due to a variety of causes (Table 2.31). *Premature ejaculation* seldom has an organic cause.

Table 2.31 : Causes of erectile impotence in men

- | |
|--|
| I. Endocrinal causes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Testicular failure (primary or secondary). • Hyperprolactinaemia. II. Drugs <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A. <i>Antiandrogens</i> e.g. H₂-blockers, spironolactone, ketoconazole. |
|--|

Contd....

Contd....

- | |
|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A. <i>Antihypertensives</i> e.g. sympatholytics (clonidine, methyl-dopa), betablockers, thiazides. C. <i>Anticholinergics</i>. D. <i>Antidepressants</i> e.g. MAO inhibitors, tricyclic E. <i>Antipsychotics</i> F. <i>Anxiolytics and sedatives</i>. G. <i>Toxic</i> e.g. alcohol, smoking. III. Penile diseases <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ischaemia due to atherosclerosis. • Penile trauma. • Previous priapism. IV. Neurologic diseases <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temporal lobe lesion. • Diseases of spinal cord. • Diseases of nerve roots, e.g. tabes dorsalis, radiculopathy. • Polyneuropathies especially diabetic autonomic neuropathy. V. Vascular disease <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aortic dissection (Leriche syndrome). • Atherosclerotic occlusion or stenosis of pudendal arteries VI. Psychological <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anxiety • Emotional disorders • Depression. |
|--|

Absence of emission is produced by retrograde ejaculation, sympathetic denervation, androgen deficiency or drugs. If libido and erectile functions are normal, the absence of orgasm is almost always due to a psychiatric disorder.

Loss of libido/desire may be due to androgen deficiency, psychological disturbance or to some types of habitually abused drugs.

Priapism: It refers to persistent painful erection of penis, often unrelated to sexual activity. Priapism differs from normal erection by the absence of tumescence of the glans penis. The causes of priapism are given in the Box 2.29.

Box 2.29: CAUSES OF PRIAPISM

- | |
|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Idiopathic • Sickle cell anaemia • Chronic myeloid/granulocytic leukaemia • Spinal cord injury • Injection of vasodilator agents (such as alprostadil) into the penis. |
|--|

Infertility

It means failure to conceive. Around 10% of couples have difficulty in conceiving children. One third of cases are attributed to infertility in female, other third to male and remaining one third belong to idiopathic group. Infertility is a common presenting symptom in female

but the couple has to be assessed for it. It must be stressed that one must ensure that the couple is having intercourse when the women is likely to be fertile (between 10 to 14 days after start of menstruation). The causes of male infertility are given in the Table 2.32.

Table 2.32: Causes of infertility in males

1. **Hypothalamic-Pituitary**
 - Panhypopituitarism.
 - Isolated gonadotropin deficiency.
 - Hyperprolactinaemia.
 - Haemochromatosis.
 - Congenital adrenal hyperplasia.
2. **Testicular**
 - A. *Developmental and structural defect*
 - Klinefelter's syndrome
 - Cryptorchidism.
 - Varicocele.
 - Immobile cilia syndrome.
 - B. **Acquired defect**
 - Infection e.g. orchitis.
 - Trauma, radiation.
 - Drugs e.g. spironolactone, ketoconazole, cyclophosphamide.
 - Granulomatous disease.
 - Associated with systemic diseases e.g. liver diseases, renal failure, sickle cell diseases, AIDS.
 - Neurological disease e.g. paraplegia, myotonia dystrophica.
3. **Obstruction to sperm transport**
 - Obstruction to epididymus or vas deferens e.g. cystic fibrosis.

Infertility in females

Infertility in female refers to the failure to become pregnant after 1 year of unprotected intercourse. The causes are given in the Table 2.33.

Table 2.33 : Causes of infertility in females

- I. **Hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian dysfunction**
 - Panhypopituitarism
 - Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (Kallmann's syndrome)
 - Craniopharyngioma.
 - Pituitary tumours e.g. hyperprolactinoma.
 - Anorexia nervosa.
 - Chronic debilitating diseases e.g. renal failure, malignancy, malabsorption etc.
- II. **Genital (ovarian/uterine/tubal/cervical) dysfunction**
 - Primary ovarian failure (polycystic ovarian syndrome, Turner's syndrome 46XO, enzyme deficiency syndromes-17 alpha-hydroxylase, resistant ovarian syndrome).
 - Tumours of ovaries (granulosa-theca cell tumours, Brenner's tumour, cystadenomas, Krukenberg tumour).
 - Anovulatory cycles (dysfunctional uterine bleeding).
 - Tubal diseases e.g. salpingitis, irradiation, trauma.
 - Endometriosis.
 - Congenital defects of vagina, i.e. imperforate hymen, transverse vaginal septae, mullerian agenesis (the Mayer-Rokitansky-Kuster-Hauser syndrome), hypoplasia of vagina.

Menstrual irregularities

Amenorrhoea. An acceptable definition of amenorrhoea is failure of menarche by age of 16 irrespective of the presence or absence of secondary sexual characteristics or the absence of menstruation for 6 months in a woman with previous normal menses. It is a common complaint among women. The common endocrinal causes are:

- Hypothalamic-pituitary dysfunction e.g. tumour (prolactinomas may produce galactorrhoea-amenorrhoea syndrome).
- Ovarian failure (primary or secondary) e.g. gonadal dysgenesis, deficiency of P₄₅₀, resistant ovarian syndrome etc.
- Thyroid dysfunction e.g. thyrotoxicosis
- Defects in lower genital tract development e.g. imperforate hymen, transverse vaginal septa, cervical stenosis, intrauterine adhesions, absence of vagina or uterus etc.

Precocious puberty

This is a symptom among girls. Puberty is said to be precocious if breast budding begins before age 8 or if menarche occurs before age 9. It can be isosexual or heterosexual. The causes are given in the Table 2.34.

Isosexual precocious puberty means developing sexual characteristics are appropriate for the genetic and gonadal sex i.e. feminization in girls and virilization in boys.

Heterosexual precocious puberty refers to sexual characteristics not in accordance with the genetic sex, namely virilization in girls or feminization in boys.

Table 2.34 : Causes of sexual precocity

Isosexual precocity

- A. *True precocious puberty* (premature appearance of sexual characters due to excessive secretion of gonadotrophins/LHRH).
 - Constitutional.
 - Congenital adrenal hyperplasia.
 - Organic brain diseases.
- B. *Precocious pseudopuberty* (enhanced oestrogen formation)
 - Ovarian tumours
 - Adrenal tumours.
 - Hypothyroidism.
 - Russell-Silver syndrome (short stature, and precocious feminization)
 - McCune-albright syndrome (Cafe-au-lait spots, cystic fibrous dysplasia of bones and sexual precocity).
- C. *Incomplete isosexual precocity* (i.e. premature development of a single pubertal event)
 - Premature thelarche (premature breast budding only).
 - Premature adrenarche and pubarche (appearance of axillary and/or pubic hair without any secondary sexual character development).

Heterosexual precocity

- Ovarian tumours.
- Adrenal tumours
- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

Gynaecomastia. Enlargement of the breast due to proliferation of breast tissue in males is called *gynaecomastia*. It can be physiological i.e. mild breast enlargement in the male may occur during puberty and may persist for several years. Growth of the breast in men, as in women, is mediated by oestrogen, hence, results from disturbed normal ratio of active androgen to oestrogen (Table 2.35).

Table 2.35: Causes of gynaecomastia (See Figs 9.7 and 9.8)

1. **Increased oestrogen/testosterone ratio**
 - Chronic liver disease (cirrhosis).
 - Hyperthyroidism.
 - Malnutrition.
 - Adrenal disease.
 - Phenytoin toxicity.
 - Oestrogen secreting tumour of testis.
 - Human chorionic gonadotrophin secreting tumour of testes.
2. **Androgen receptors antagonists:**
 - Spironolactone, digoxin.
 - Anti-androgen therapy for prostate carcinoma.
 - Cimetidine
3. **Androgen receptors defects** (inherited or acquired)
 - Testicular feminization syndrome.
 - Hypogonadism
 - Primary e.g. Klinefelter syndrome mumps orchitis, haemochromatosis, tuberculosis, chemotherapy or irradiation, cryptorchidism and autoimmune gonadal failure.
 - Secondary e.g. Hypopituitarism, Kallmann's syndrome, hyperprolactinoma.

Galactorrhoea: Galactorrhoea means nonpuerperal or inappropriate lactation in a female. No breast secretions whatsoever are detectable in normal regularly menstruating nulligravid women but breast secretions can be demonstrated in 25% of normal females who have been pregnant in the past. Occasionally, lactation may persist after breastfeeding following child-birth has ceased. The causes of galactorrhoea have been discussed in chapter 9.

Hirsutism (excessive hair growth): Hirsutism refers to excessive growth of thick terminal hair in an androgen-dependent distribution in women (upper lip, chin, chest, back, lower abdomen, thigh, forearm). It is most common presentations in endocrine disease. It differs from hypertrichosis which is generalised excessive growth of vellus hair. The causes of hirsutism are given in the chapter 4 (Read chapter 4).

Cryptorchidism: Cryptorchidism refers to undescended testes. It occurs in otherwise normal boys but may be the presenting feature of hypogonadism. High retractile testes, particularly in the obese boy, may be mistaken for cryptorchidism. In cryptorchidism, the testes may

remain in the inguinal canal, retroperitoneally or in the pelvis. In this condition, secondary sexual characters development may remain normal.

Proptosis (exophthalmos): Proptosis is an abnormal forward protrusion of eyeball. It can be unilateral or bilateral. It is measured by using a Hertel exophthalmometer. The causes have been discussed in chapter 5.

Symptoms of rheumatic diseases

The patients of musculoskeletal or rheumatological disorders present with a variety of complaints given in the Box 2.30. These may pertain to joint or periarticular soft tissue or bone.

Box 2.30: COMMON RHEUMATIC SYMPTOMS

1. Pain/tenderness joint
2. Stiffness
3. Swelling
4. Weakness/discuse atrophy
5. Joint deformity
6. Non specific symptoms

Note : These have been dealt with in details in chapter 17. (The locomotor system examination.)

Analysis of rheumatic complaints

The analysis of musculoskeletal complaint in terms of history and physical examination have been discussed.

The symptoms and signs that differentiate articular (joint) and periarticular diseases are given in the Table 2.36.

Table 2.36: Differentiation between articular (joint) and periarticular lesion

Sign	Joint	Periarticular (soft tissue rheumatism/extra-articular lesion).
Tenderness and pain	Diffuse over the joint (joint line)	Localised around the joint (away from joint line).
Restricted movement	Active and passive movement affected equally	Active more restricted than passive
Resisted active movement	Not painful	Painful
Swelling	Capsular pattern.	Localised, periarticular
Crepitus	Coarse or fine	Fine.

Features that differentiate inflammatory joint disease (synovitis) from noninflammatory joint damage are summarised in the Box 2.31.

Box 2.31: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN SYNOVITIS VS JOINT DAMAGE

Feature	Synovitis	Joint damage
• Stiffness (early morning, inactivity)	+++	±
• Increased warmth	+	-
• Stress pain	+	-
• Swelling of soft tissue	+	-
• Joint effusion	+++	±
• Crepitus	-	+++
• Deformity	-	+
• Instability	-	+

Arthritis

It is inflammation of the joint characterised by pain, swelling, stiffness, warmth and restricted movement. It can be acute (<6 weeks) or chronic (>6 weeks). The causes of acute and chronic arthritis are given in the Box. 2.32.

Box 2.32: CAUSES OF ARTHRITIS

Acute	Chronic
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infectious arthritis. • Gout. • Pseudogout. • Reiter's syndrome. • Acute presentation of chronic arthritis. 	A. Mono/oligoarthritis <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indolent infection. • Psoriatic • Reiter's syndrome • Pauciarticular juvenile arthritis

*Contd...**Contd...***B. Polyarthritis**

- (i) *Symmetric* (small joints).
 - Rheumatoid arthritis.
 - Collagen vascular disorders e.g. SLE, Scleroderma, polymyositis.
- (ii) *Asymmetric*
 - Psoriatic.
 - Reiter's syndrome.
- (iii) *Large joints arthritis*
 - Osteoarthritis.
 - Charcot arthritis
 - Ankylosing spondylitis.

The causes of polyarthralgia where pain occurs around the joint but without involving it are given in the Box 2.33.

Box 2.33: CAUSES OF POLYARTHRALGIA

- Viral infections
- Depression
- Fibromyalgia or soft tissue rheumatism
- Rheumatic fever
- Bursitis or tendinitis
- Hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism
- Metabolic bone disease
- A symptom of many systemic diseases

UNIT II

Physical Examination

Chapters

3. General Physical Examination	49 - 60
4. The Head, Scalp, Skin and Hair	61 - 80
5. The Eyes	81 - 100
6. The Mouth and the Pharynx	101 - 109
7. The Ear, Nose, Sinuses and Throat	110 - 121
8. The Neck	122 - 130
9. The Breast and the Axillae	131 - 138
10. The Extremities	139 - 151

3

General Physical Examination

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS

The general observation starts as soon as the patient enters the doctor's room. The physician/student tries to assess his/her general appearance which includes demeanour, personal cleanliness/hygiene and the nature and state of clothing. The things to be noted are given in the Box 3.1.

Box 3.1:	OBSERVATIONS AT A GLANCE
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Note facial appearance, built, complexion, state of clothing. Observe and define any abnormality of mental state, consciousness, gait, posture and movement. Identify any abnormal sound or odour. Assess the state of hydration, nutrition and oedema. Observe any change in colour of skin and mucous membrane. Measure the height and weight.




Facial appearance (Table 3.1)

1. Facial appearance/expression. Look for expression.

- Expressionless face is seen in parkinsonism.
- A startle look or staring look is seen in Grave's disease.
- Apathy or blunt expression is seen in depression.
- Agitation indicates hypomania.
- Toxic look with swinging temperature indicates septicaemia or toxæmia.

The typical gross appearances that pinpoint the diagnosis are given in the Table 3.1.

Table 3.1: Face as a clue to diagnosis

Face	Disease (Fig. 3.1)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rounded moon-faces with red cheeks indicate Cushing's syndrome (Fig. 3.1A) 	 <p>Fig. 3.1A: Moon-facies in Cushing's syndrome</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Large facies, elongated protruding jaw, coarse facial appearance, thick lips, elongated head, short stubby finger and stout built indicate acromegaly (Fig. 3.1B). 	 <p>Fig. 3.1B: Acromegaly</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dull puffy facies with non-pitting periorbital oedema. The hair on the eye brows are dry, coarse and loss of hair on outer third of eye brows indicate myxoedema. Fig. 3.1C. 	 <p>Fig. 3.1C: Myxoedema</p>

Contd....

- Periorbital oedema with puffy eyelids in the morning (on getting up) making the eyes to look slit-like indicate renal oedema due to nephritic or nephrotic syndrome (Fig. 3.1D).



Fig. 3.1D: Nephrotic syndrome

- Bilateral asymptomatic parotid glands enlargement indicates mumps, if acute, painful and tender (Fig. 3.1E)



Fig. 3.1E: Bilateral parotids enlargement

- A mask-like face with decreased facial mobility, infrequent blinking and vacant look indicate Parkinsonism (Fig. 3.1F)



Fig. 3.1F: Mask like face of Parkinsonism

- Disfigured scar red face due to superficial facial burns (Fig. 3.1G).



Fig. 3.1G: Disfigured charred face following burns

- There is small, flat face, upward slanting eyes, small nose with depressed bridge and protruded furrowed tongue with idiotic look. There was an accessory breast on right side, simian crease in hand with short stubby finger, short 5th metacarpal, clinodactyly and wide gap in 1st and 2nd toes with prominent longitudinal crease. Features are suggestive of Down's syndrome (Fig. 3.1H).



Fig. 3.1H: Mongolism in Down's syndrome

The recognition of looks of pain, fear, anxiety, anger and grief alert the physician to explore the possibility of underlying psychiatric disorder.

2. **Complexion:** Note whether patient has dark or fair complexion. Abnormalities of complexion may be noticed by the friends, relatives and even by the patient. The colour of the skin or face depends on the variation in haemoglobin, melanin and to a lesser extent on carotene. The unusual skin colour are described in the Chapter 4.

3. **State of clothing and personal hygiene:** Just inspection of clothing gives information about the personality and state of mind.

- Patients with dementia are shabbily dressed and may have faecal soiling of underwear.
- Excessive clothing may reflect the cold intolerance of hypothyroidism, or to hide the skin rash/disease or needle marks.

4. **Mental state/consciousness:** Is the patient conscious and co-operative? Patient's conscious level should be observed. Examination of unconscious patient is described separately (Read Chapter 16). Note whether patient is co-operative and answer your questions or noncooperative and avoids or overlook your questions. Other higher mental functions are discussed in the examination of nervous system.
5. **Posture, gait and abnormal movements:** The posture of the patient may give valuable informations. Severely ill patients are not comfortable in bed and adopt uncomfortable attitudes/postures.

Patients of congestive heart failure or cor pulmonale may sit up on the bed with legs hanging down the bed due to orthopnoea (Fig. 3.2). Patients with asthma are dyspnoeic at rest. Patients with abdominal colic are restless and toss in the bed in agony.



Fig. 3.2: COPD with cor pulmonale. A patient of COPD with acute exacerbation and cor pulmonale adopts a typical posture to relieve breathlessness and oedema. The patient is sitting along the edge of the hospital bed with legs hanging and arms supported on the cardiac table, so as to reduce increased work cost of breathing as well as venous return from the legs

Patients with neurological disorders produce characteristic posture, for example, neck retraction is seen in meningitis. Abnormalities of gait, posture and abnormal movements are either due to a neurological disorder or locomotor disorder, hence, are discussed in respective sections (Read Chapter 17)

6. **Sounds/voice/speech:** Normal speech is produced by coordination of the tongue, lips, palate, nose and voice box in the larynx. The speech disturbances are discussed under the examination of nervous system. However, some non-neurological causes may produce disturbance in speech such as cleft palate, nasal obstruction, loose denture and dryness of mouth. Hoarseness of voice may be due to local cause (laryngitis) or a neurological disorder. The low-pitched, slow deliberate speech which sounds thick is characteristic of myxoedema due to myxomatous deposition in voice box.

Some other sounds may help in the diagnosis. Wheezing, rattling or stridor help in differentiation of dyspnoea. Sounds during coughing may be characteristic of some disorders such as *whooping cough* is suggestive of pertussis, *brassy cough* indicate bronchial obstruction (adenoma), *barking cough* suggest tracheobronchitis. A *cry* may be heard during an epileptic fit.

Audible noises of cardiovascular and alimentary systems are discussed in appropriate sections. Abnormalities of speech are discussed in examination of nervous system.

7. **Smell/odour:** Normal smell or odour from the body is due to sweat. Pungent smell may be due to excessive sweating and poor personal hygiene. Malodour (odour of dirty and soiled clothing and smell of dried-out urine) occurs in elderly or physically disabled/bed ridden patients or those with dementia. The offensive/faecal smell from the body occurs in gastrocolic fistula. Some characteristic odours that help in the diagnosis are given in the Box 3.2.

Box 3.2: ABNORMAL SMELL FROM BREATH	
• <i>Malodorous breath</i>	Bronchiectasis, lung abscess, oral sepsis (stomatitis, gingivitis), extensive caries, atrophic rhinitis, smoking and idiopathic.
• <i>A fishy odour (fetus hepaticus)</i>	Hepatic failure.
• <i>Ammonical or urinary smell</i>	Uraemia/azotaemia.
• <i>A sweet or fruity odour</i>	Diabetic or starvation ketoacidosis.

Halitosis means malodorous breath which often goes unrecognised by the patient but is offensive to others. It occurs due to a variety of reasons/causes given in the Box 3.2.

8. **Built/physique:** Note whether height and weight are according to his/her chronological age. Is he/she tall or short, thin or muscular, asthenic or hypoasthenic? Are there any obvious deformities? Measure the height and body proportions if patient is too tall for his/her age.
9. **Measurement of height and weight:** Measurement of height and weight is important for their immediate value and for future reference. Measurements such as span, sitting height and pubis to ground height are made only where a more precise evaluation of growth and development is required especially in infants and young children (pre-pubertal). The significance of height is given in the Box (3.3) while causes of disorders of height are given in the Table 3.2. The normal height is equal to arm span (one fingertip to another finger-tip of outstretched arms) and twice the lower body segment (pubis to heel). For disturbance of these body proportions, read, "Bed side medicine without tears by prof. SN Chugh".

Changes in weight. Change in weight results from changes in body tissues or body fluid. Weight gain occurs when caloric intake exceeds caloric expenditure over a prolonged period of time or may be due to an abnormal accumulation of body fluids (oedema, ascites, etc.).

*Determine the weight by a weighing machine adjusted at O. Weight should be measured with clothing (*pajama and kurta*, and *salwar and kameez*), wherever necessary body mass index (BMI) may be calculated.

Obesity is a clinical condition in which there is excessive amount of body fat. In an adult of 70 kg male, the total body water accounts for 60-65% (45 kg) of weight while fat accounts for 10 kg of weight. In clinical practice, the body weight is considered indirectly the measurement of fat in a normal hydrated patient. The causes and consequences of obesity are given in Table 3.3.

The Framingham study demonstrated that 20% excess over desirable weight should be considered as obesity as this weight imparts a health risk. A National Institute of Health Consensus Panel on obesity agreed with this definition, which is now widely accepted.

An alternative method of estimating obesity and undernutrition is body mass index (BMI) and waist-hip ratio.

$$\text{BMI} = \frac{\text{Body weight (kg)}}{\text{Height (metre)}^2}$$

Table 3.2: Measurement of height in various disorders

Measurement of body proportions	Disease	Other associated Features
Total height, upper and lower segments of body increased.	Gigantism (\uparrow GH) (Fig. 3.3)	Coarse facial features, thick lips, prognathism, sturdy body.
Eunuchoidism (the sitting height from top of head to pubic symphysis is less than half of total height during standing (top of head to floor.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kallmann's syndrome (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism.) 	Anosmia or parosmia.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arm span (the span of extended arms) will exceed the standing height or will be twice or more of sitting height. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Klinefelter's syndrome (47 XXY) Marfan syndrome (Fig. 3.4) 	Gynaecomastia, small testes, loss of axillary and pubic hair, talkativeness. Long slender fingers (arachnoidactyly), webbing of fingers, high arched palate, ectopia lentis (slit lamp examination), dilatation of ascending aorta, positive thumb protrusion sign
Short stature. The actual height is less than the expected height according to his/her age and weight The built is stocky and short in achondroplasia (Fig. 3.6)	It may be hereditary (selective failure of GH) or genetic or chromosomal disorders (Turner's syndrome (45X0), chronic renal failure, coeliac disease. (Fig. 3.5)	Features of associated or underlying condition will be present. In Turner's syndrome, there is low hair-line and webbing of the neck in the girls. Features of renal failure or malabsorption may be present. Endocrinal disorders may have their characteristic manifestation e.g. cretinism, juvenile hypothyroidism and panhypopituitarism.

Box 3.3:**ANALYSIS OF HEIGHT**

- Assess any abnormality in stature
- Measure height on vertical scale with rigid adjustable arm piece with patient standing erect without shoes

Increased

- Gigantism (Fig. 3.3)
- Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (Kallmann's syndrome, Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome)
- Chromosomal abnormalities, e.g. Klinefelter's syndrome
- Marfan's syndrome

Decreased

- Hereditary**, e.g. constitutionally short
- Genetics**, e.g. Down's syndrome, Turner's syndrome and achondroplasia (Fig. 3.6)
- Nutritional**, e.g. protein energy malnutrition, rickets, intra-uterine growth retardation
- Systemic disease**, e.g. CRF, Steatorrhoea
- Endocrinal** e.g. hypopituitarism (cretinism, juvenile), hypopituitarism, craniopharyngioma
- GI tract** e.g. malabsorption (coeliac disease, Crohn's disease, cystic fibrosis)
- Cardiorespiratory**, e.g. congenital heart disease, suppurative lung disease
- Locomotor**, e.g. severe scoliosis



Fig. 3.3: Gigantism. Note the height (8 feet 2 inches). The hands and feet are large. The built is stout



Fig. 3.4: Marfan's syndrome. Note the tall stature. The height of patient is 6' and 1.5". Arm span 6' and 6"; upper segment: lower segment is 0.75



Fig. 3.5: Dwarfism. The child has coeliac disease



Fig. 3.6: Achondroplasia: An active mentally sound dwarf male with well developed sexual features. He has full-fledged family

Waist-hip ratio. It is determined in the erect position by measuring the girth at the level equidistant between costal margins and iliac crest and at the level of greater trochanter.

Depending on the percentage of weight reduction and BMI, the malnutrition is graded as mild, moderate and severe (see the Box 3.4). The two common types of protein-energy malnutrition are compared in the Table 3.4.

Box 3.4: OBESITY AND BMI (Kg/m²)		
Normal		18-25
Overweight	<30 (26-29)	
Obesity	>30 (30-39) (Fig. 3.7)	
Morbid obesity	>40	
Undernutrition and BMI		
Severity or grade	Body weight reduction 95% of international standard	BMI reduction (Kg/m ²)
Mild	From 90% to 81%	From 20 to 18
Moderate	80% to 71%	18 to 16
Severe	< 70%	< 16

Note. Nutritional intervention will be needed if BMI is less than 18 or if weight loss during an illness is greater than 10%.



Fig. 3.7: Obesity with BMI > 30

Table 3.3: Causes and consequences of obesity	
Causes	Consequences
I. Primary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Psychological • Socioeconomic reasons • Hereditary (genetic predisposition) • Physical inactivity • Drug induced, e.g. steroids, insulin, oral contraceptives, phenothiazines. 	I. Metabolic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Type 2 DM • Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) • Gallstones • Hyperuricaemia (gout)

Contd....

Contd....

II. Secondary	
A. Endocrinal	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Physiological</i>, e.g. puberty, pregnancy, menopause. • <i>Pathological</i> e.g. hypothyroidism, Cushing's syndrome, Frohlich's syndrome, Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome, Prader-Willi, syndrome 	
II. Mechanical	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Osteoporosis • Hernias (abdominal, diaphragmatic) • Varicose veins and thrombosis 	
III. Respiratory	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pickwickian syndrome • Sleep-apnoea syndrome 	
IV. Cardiovascular	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Atherosclerosis and IHD • Hypertension 	
V. Neurological	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stroke • Accident-prone 	
VI. Gastrointestinal	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hiatus hernia 	

Table 3.4: Comparison of two common types of protein energy malnutrition (PEM)

Parameter	Kwashiorkor	Marasmus (Fig. 3.8)
• Growth retardation	Mild to moderate	Severe
• Deficit in weight for height.	Mild	Marked
• Body weight as % of international standard	60-80	<60
• Oedema	Present	Absent
• Wasting, skin and hair changes	Skin and hair changes present	Wasting is marked
• Serum albumin	Low	Normal
• Physical state	Child is miserable	Child is alert

Weight loss: Weight loss is an important symptom that has many causes and explanations. Patients with weight loss present with history of loosening of clothes,



Fig. 3.8: Marasmus—protein energy malnutrition (PEM)

belt, bra, undergarments and also complain of fatigue and weakness.

In normal persons, weight is stable over long periods because food intake is matched with energy expenditure by neural activity in the hypothalamus. Because the system is usually effective, hence weight loss bring the patient to the physician.

Weight loss may be “*physiological*” due to dieting, exercise, starvation or the decreased nutritional intake which accompanies old age.

It is difficult to define weight loss in clear terms. In general, a reduction of 5% of body weight or 5 Kg is considered significant if lost over a period of 6 months.

Weight loss with poor food intake is due to psychiatric illness (anorexia nervosa), chronic infections, cardiac, pulmonary or renal failure or malignancy. On the other hand, weight loss with relatively high food intake suggests hyperthyroidism, diabetes mellitus, malabsorption or binge eating (bulimia).

Symptoms associated with weight loss often pinpoint the cause as does a good psychological history. Poverty, old age, social isolation, physical disability, emotional or mental impairment, lack of teeth or ill-fitting dentures, alcoholism and drug abuse increase the chances of malnutrition and weight loss.

Weight loss occurring as an isolated symptom is seldom associated with serious organic disease.

Nutritional status

Assessment of nutritional state of a patient is an important part of clinical examination because nutritional depletion may eventually result in malnutrition which has its functional consequences such as reduced immune response, muscle weakness, oedema, confusion or neuropathy etc. It is easy to detect gross malnutrition but lesser degree may be difficult to detect especially when oedema is present.

Parameters of assessment are:

1. Dietary history
2. Clinical assessment
3. Anthropometry
4. Biochemical assessment

I. Dietary history: In the history one should ask about the diet the patient has been taking. Is he/she taking diet regularly or has omitted any major meal? Is the appetite good? Is there any difficulty in eating? Ask about history of diarrhoea, vomiting or steatorrhoea. Is patient alcoholic or drug addict? Is there any history of psychiatric or neurological illness that interfere with his/her food intake? Has the patient lost weight recently? Does the patient avoid certain food stuffs for any reason?

Significance of dietary history

1. In *anorexia-bulimia*, a disorder usually affecting young women, there are cyclic changes in appetite and food intake.
2. Patients having dysphagia or other gastrointestinal disorders may develop malnutrition.
3. Patients with gluten sensitivity will avoid wheat products and in lactase deficiency will avoid milk because they have been advised to do so.
4. A strict vegetarian diet or vegan diet may lead to vit B₁₂ deficiency.
5. Purdah muslims ladies are more prone to get vitamin D deficiency.
6. Low fibre diet is associated with constipation and gall stones.

II. Clinical assessment: Wasting or thinness of muscles, oedema, pallor, weakness, loss of skin elasticity, and other signs of nutrients and vitamins deficiency are pointer towards poor nutrition or malnutrition. The primary illness may obscure or confuse signs of malnutrition.

III. Anthropometry: Measurement of body weight, measurement of subcutaneous fat and muscles by *mid-arm* circumference with a tape or measurement of *skin-fold* thickness by special calipers (Harpenden or Hotain calipers) are used for nutritional assessment in hospitalised patient. Serial measurements are essential.

The reference standards of mid-arm circumference are given in the Table 3.5.

Table 3.5: Mid-arm circumference in mm

Age	Men Percentile			Women Percentile		
	50th	10th	5th	50th	10th	5th
19-24	308	272	262	265	230	221
25-34	319	282	271	277	240	233
35-44	326	287	278	290	251	241
45-54	322	281	267	299	256	242
55-64	317	273	258	302	254	243
>65	307	263	248	299	252	240

Skin fold thickness: The triceps skin fold midway between acromion and olecranon is the preferred site. The measurement is done in vertical plane with arms hanging by the side in relaxed position. Normal values and 80% and 60% values are depicted in the Table 3.6.

Table 3.6: Skin fold thickness measurement (mm)

	Standard	80%	60%
Adult male	12.5	10.0	7.5
Adult female	16.5	13.0	10.0
Nutritional status	Normal	Moderate	Poor

Note. The 80% and 60% ranges are associated with moderate and severe nutritional depletion.

IV. Biochemical assessment: Biochemical tests are done in hospitalised patients to assess the nutritional status and micronutrients deficiencies. The various tests are:

- *Blood protein.* Estimation of serum proteins is sensitive parameter to detect undernutrition and to monitor nutritional repletion.
- *Serum albumin* (half-life 14 days) is the most useful predictor.
- *Serum transferrin, retinol binding protein*, etc.

State of hydration

In an adult of 70 kg, the body fluid is 45 litres (60-65% of the body weight) out of which two-thirds (30L) is intracellular; of the remainder, two-third is interstitial (10L) and rest 5L constitutes the circulating blood volume.

Parameters of assessment

The state of hydration is assessed by:

- Skin elasticity:** It is demonstrated by pinching up a fold of skin and then released. It remains as a ridge and subsides slowly if skin elasticity is lost otherwise it returns immediately to its normal position. Loss of elasticity is not true index of hydration as it is lost in old age and due to loss of collagen in the skin.
- Intraocular tension:** Low tension indicates dehydration. In dehydration, the eyeballs are soft and shrunken. (Fig. 3.9)
- Recording of BP:** Low blood pressure and postural drop in BP indicates dehydration and is a useful index of intravascular volume depletion due to diarrhoea, vomiting, excessive sweating and polyuria.
- Dry tongue and mouth:** A dry tongue and mouth may indicate dehydration but are commonly seen in smokers and mouth-breathers, hence, these signs may be deceptive.
- Measurement of weight:** A loss of weight may be a sign of dehydration if previous weight is known.
- Haemoconcentration:** Rise in haemoglobin, PCV and plasma osmolality provide evidence of severity of dehydration. The serial readings will indicate the replacement of effective fluid volume.
- Jugular venous pulse and pressure (JVP):** The jugular venous pressure is low in volume depletion, hence veins are collapsed and not visible.



Fig. 3.9: A dehydrated patient. *Note:* the sunken cheeks and eyeballs with dry tongue. Her systolic BP was < 90 mm Hg. The skin was dry, wrinkled with loss of elasticity

The causes of dehydration are given in the Box 3.5.

Box 3.5: CAUSES OF DEHYDRATION	
I. Gastrointestinal loss	III. Renal loss
• Diarrhoea	• Diabetes mellitus
• Vomiting	• Diabetes insipidus
II. Cutaneous loss	• Diuretics
• Burns	IV. Internal sequestration
• Perspiration	• Acute pancreatitis
	• Acute intestinal obstruction
	• Ascites

Vitals

The pulse: Count the pulse for at least 15 seconds if the rhythm and heart rate appear to be normal, multiply the reading by 4 to get the pulse rate or heart rate in beats/min (bpm). If the rate is too slow or too fast, then count the pulse for full one minute. The pulse should be analysed for *rate, rhythm, character, volume and presence or absence of radio-femoral delay*. When the rhythm is irregular, the heart rate should be evaluated by cardiac auscultation to know the *pulse deficit*. The pulse deficit (difference between heart rate and pulse rate) is because of nonconduction of weak cardiac beats to peripheral pulse.

Heart rate <60/min is called bradycardia and more than 100/min is called tachycardia. The causes of decreased and increased heart rate are given in the Box 3.6.

The rate of pulse varies from 60 to 90 bpm during activity in a normal healthy individual.

Box 3.6: CAUSES OF CHANGE IN HEART RATE	
Bradycardia	Tachycardia
• Physiological e.g. vagotonic individuals, athlete, during sleep and induced by carotid sinus compression.	• Physiological e.g. anxiety, excessive use of tea, coffee, smoking etc.
• Hypothyroidism	• Hyperthyroidism
• Hypothermia	• Arrhythmia
• Obstructive jaundice	• Acute pulmonary embolism
• Sick sinus syndrome	• CHF
• Hyperkalaemia/hypermagnesaemia	• During-induced, e.g. adrenaline, thyroid medications, nicotine or alcohol, atropine, caffeine, amyl nitrate, nifedipine
• Drugs e.g. β -blockers, calcium channel blockers	• Congenital heart disease
• Second and third degree (complete) AV blocks	• Pheochromocytoma (catecholamine excess)
• Raised intracranial pressure	
• Poisoning e.g. organophosphorous, aluminium phosphide, scorpion sting bite.	

Blood pressure: Blood pressure is measured using a Sphygmomanometer cuff wrapped around the upper arm. The method of measurement, a checklist for measurement are discussed in CVS examination. It is important to use the correct size of the cuff. The length of inflatable bladder of the cuff should be 30-35 cm and width should be 12.5 cm (12-14 cm) for an average adult.

Blood pressure should be taken in both the arms at least once. Normally there may be difference of <10 mmHg in both the arms. Subsequent readings should be repeated on the arm with high pressure difference.

An internationally recognised JNC VII classification which defines the normal and abnormal blood pressure is depicted in Box 3.7.

Respiration: Count the respiratory rate for a full half minute and multiply it by 2 to get respiratory rate per minute. This should be counted when patient's attention is diverted elsewhere for example count the respiratory rate when you are counting the pulse rate. Tachypnoea implies respiratory rate more than normal. The causes are given in the Box 3.8.

Normal respiratory rate in adults is 14-18 breaths/min.

Box 3.7: JNC VII CLASSIFICATION OF HYPERTENSION		
Category	Systolic (mm Hg)	Diastolic (mm Hg)
Normal	<120	<80
Prehypertension (previous term used in JNC VI as high normal replaced)	120-139	80-89
HYPERTENSION		
Stage 1	140-159	90-99
Stage 2 (JNC VI three stage 1, 2, 3, are replaced by two)	≥ 160	≥ 100

Box 3.8: CAUSES OF TACHYPNOEA	
(i)	Physiological, e.g. strenuous exercise, anxiety, nervousness
(ii)	Fever
(iii)	Hypoxia due to pulmonary disease
(iv)	CHF (congestive heart failure)
(v)	Pleuritis, pneumothorax
(vi)	Cerebral disturbance/hypoxia
(vii)	Metabolic acidosis
(viii)	Hysterical hyperventilation

Temperature: The warmth of the skin felt with back of the hand over covered body part (neck, chest, abdomen) provides a good indication of fever, but the skin of a patient with a normal temperature may feel cold and an apparently normal temperature does not exclude hypothermia.

Definitions

Fever or pyrexia refers to an elevated body temperature (>37.2°C or >99°F). The average oral temperature is usually quoted as 37.1°C (98.6°F). It may fluctuate considerably i.e. in early morning, it may fall as low as 35.8°C (96°F) and in the evening it may rise to 37.2°C (99.0°F). *Rectal temperature* is higher than oral temperature by an average of 0.4 to 0.5°C (0.7 to 0.9°F) approximately. In contrast, the axillary temperature is lower than oral temperature by approximately 1°C, hence, is considered less accurate than other two measurements.

Choice of site for recording: Most patients prefer oral to rectal temperatures. Oral temperature recording is not recommended in an unconscious patient or restless/violent patients as recordings may be less accurate and thermometer is likely to be broken.

Method: For oral temperature you may choose either a glass or electronic thermometer. When using a glass

thermometer, wash the mercury end of thermometer and then shake it down to 35°C (98°F) or below. Now insert it into the mouth under the tongue and ask the patient to close the mouth. Read the thermometer after 1 minute. This will tell the temperature of the patient.

Types of fever: (Fig. 3.10) Fever may be *continuous*, *remittent* and *intermittent*. It is said to be *continuous* when it does not fluctuate >1°C (1.5°F) during 24 hours and at no time touches the normal. If fluctuations (swings) exceed 2°C, it is called *remittent* and when fever manifests only for several hours in a day, it is called *intermittent*. The intermittent fever may appear daily (*quotidian*), on alternate days (*tertian*) and on every third day (*quartan*). Now-a-days, in era of antibiotics and other effective drug therapy, these types of fever are infrequently seen.

Note: Transient rise in temperature may occur due to a recent hot drink or a bath and even after smoking. In such situations, it is best to defer the measurement for 10 to 15 minutes.

Conventionally it is called *low grade* (<101°F or 38°C), *moderate grade* (<103°F) and *high grade* (>103°F).

Hyperthermia/Hyperpyrexia: It refers to extreme elevation in temperature above 41°C (106°F). It could be due to heat stroke, heat exhaustion or malignant hyperpyrexia (an inherited abnormality).

Hypothermia: It refers to an abnormally low temperature below 35°C (95°F) rectally. Low-reading clinical thermometers are available and should be used when hypothermia is suspected. Temperatures as low as 27°C are not uncommon and core body temperatures below 20°C have been recorded in patients who subsequently survived. The causes of hypothermia are tabulated—(Table 3.7).

Table 3.7: Causes of hypothermia

- | Table 3.7: Causes of hypothermia | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| I. | Excessive heat loss |
| • | Prolonged environmental exposure at low temperature, e.g. accidental, iatrogenic, unconsciousness. |
| • | Increased continuous blood loss (heat loss), e.g. burn, psoriasis, toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN). |
| II. | Inadequate heat production |
| • | Inadequate metabolism, e.g. malnutrition, starvation, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease, hepatic failure, diabetic ketoacidosis and hypoglycaemia. |
| • | Altered thermoregulation, e.g. sepsis, uraemia, head trauma, stroke, tumour, spinal cord injury and <i>Shapiro's syndrome</i> (episodic spontaneous hypothermia with hyperhidrosis). |
| • | Drug-induced, e.g. barbiturates, phenothiazines, opiates, lithium, benzodiazepines, alcohol |

Compilation of statement

After going through the general physical examination, one has to make statement as follows:

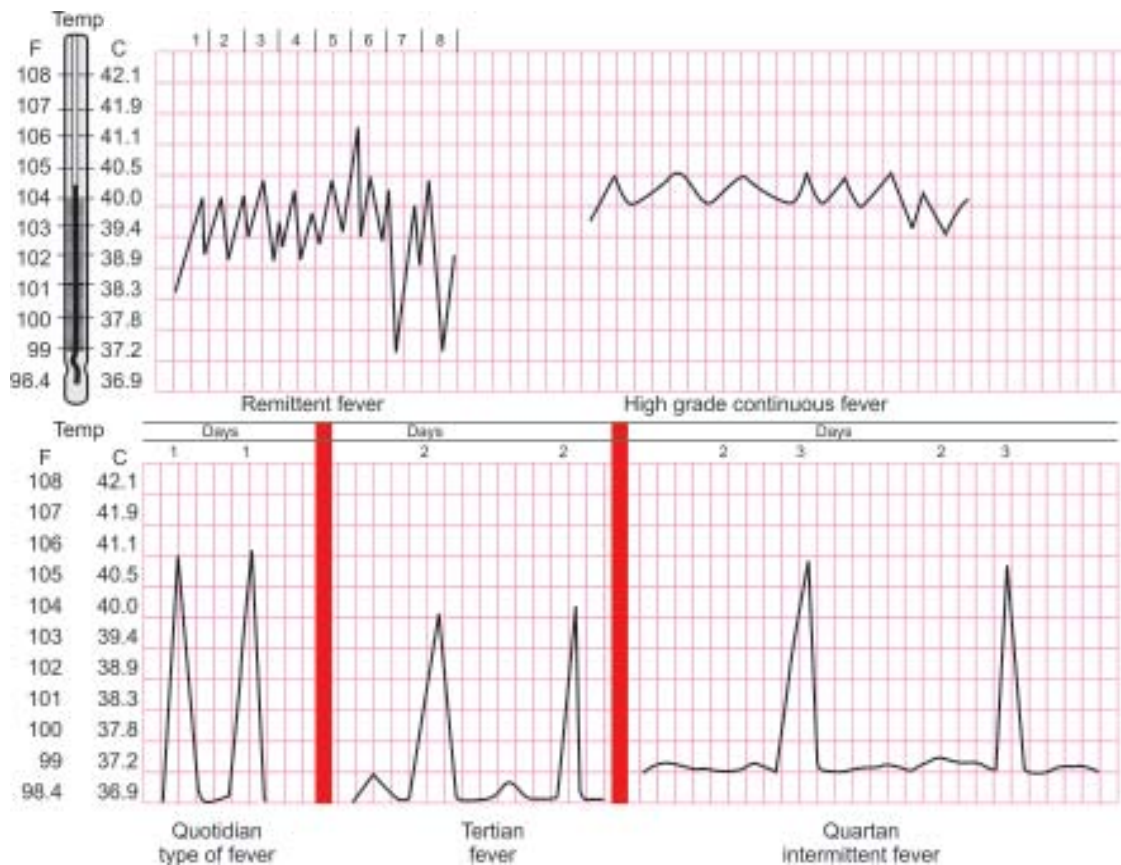


Fig. 3.10: Types of fever

1. Is patient conscious/semiconscious/unconscious?
2. Is he/she cooperative or uncooperative.
3. Is he/she lying or sitting comfortably or patient is uncomfortable.
4. Comment about normal/abnormal physical appearance, built, complexion, personal hygiene.
5. Comment about any abnormal sound/voice, abnormal smell/odour.
6. Is patient well nourished/poorly nourished?
7. Is patient well hydrated/dehydrated?
8. Is oedema present or absent.
9. Vital signs, e.g. pulse, BP, temperature and respiration normal or abnormal.

Comment as follows:

On general examination, the patient is fully conscious, cooperative and lying/sitting comfortably. He/she is having normal built, physical appearance and maintaining good personal hygiene. He/she is well nourished and well hydrated. There is no oedema. The pulse, BP, temperature and respiration are normal.

4

The Head, Scalp, Skin and Hair

HEAD AND SCALP

Applied anatomy and physiology

Regions of the head derive their names from the underlying bones of the skull (e.g. frontal, parietal, temporal and occipital area), knowledge of anatomy helps to locate and describe the clinical findings.

Common presentations

- Headache
- Abnormalities of the skull
- Hydrocephalus

History

Headache is an extremely common complaint that always requires careful evaluation, since a small fraction of headache arise from life-threatening conditions. Ask about the following attributes of headache:

1. **Location:** Where is it? Does it radiate? Is it unilateral or bilateral?
2. **Quality:** What is it like? Is it steady or throbbing? Is it continuous or comes and goes?
3. **Severity:** How severe is it?
4. **Timing:** When did (does) it start? How long did (does) it last? How often did (does) it come? Does headache recur at the same time everyday?
5. **Setting** in which it starts include environmental factors, personal activities, emotional reactions or other contributory circumstances.

6. **Aggravating or relieving factors:** Does anything make it better or worst? Ask whether coughing, sneezing or changing the position of the head have any effect (better, worse, or no effect) on headache.
7. **Associated symptoms:** Have you noticed anything else that accompanies it such as nausea, vomiting and neurological symptoms such as change in vision or motors/sensory deficits?

Examination

The scalp: Separate the hairs at several places and look for scaliness, naevi or other lesion.

Redness and scaling occurs in seborrhoeic dermatitis and psoriasis.

The skull (cranium): Note the size and contour. Look for any deformity, depression, lump or tenderness. The abnormalities are given in the Box 4.1. Some children may have larger head than normal according to his/her age (Fig. 4.1)

Common clinical conditions related to cranium

Headache: It means all aches and pains localised to head. It is a common symptom of a variety of both benign and malignant conditions, hence, carries dual significance and keeps the physicians alert. Fortunately, in most circumstances, it is benign either due to tension or fatigue and is reversible.

Box 4.1:

ABNORMALITIES OF SKULL

Anencephaly means absence of cranial vault, scalp and cerebral hemispheres. The brain is a compact mass of neurones, glial cells, nerve fibres and blood vessels.

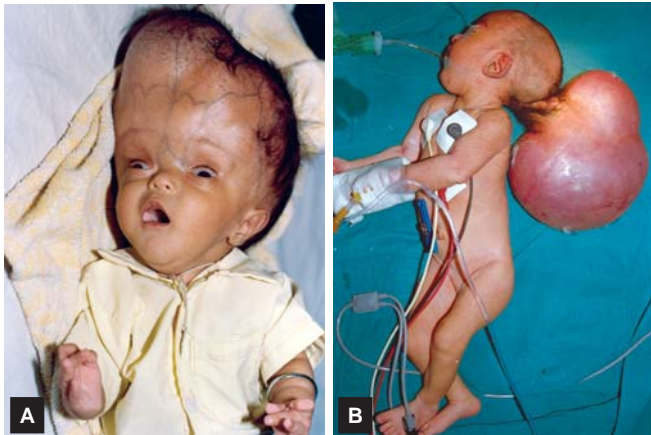
Microcephaly refers to small cranium and brain. It is seen as a part of many syndromes and also secondary to premature closure of the cranial sutures.

Macrocephaly or large skull is seen in hydrocephalus (Fig. 4.2A). There is enlargement of skull in Paget's disease. **Encephalocele** (Fig. 4.2B) refers to failure of midline defect resulting in evagination of brain tissue outside the skull.

Localised bony bossing is seen over meningioma. **Skull tenderness** is seen following trauma or temporal arteritis.



Fig. 4.1: Large head according to his age



Figs 4.2A and B: Macrocephaly. A. with evidence of congenital hydrocephalus. Note the large head with sun-setting sign and bulging fontanelle B. Encephalocoele

Mechanisms of production

It results due to stretching of the pain sensitive areas/ structures inside or outside head such as:

- Skin, subcutaneous tissue, muscles, arteries and periosteum of the skull.
- Intracranial dural venous sinuses or veins.
- Tissues of eyes, ear and nasal sinuses.
- Durameter at the base of brain and the arteries within dura and pia-archnoid mater.

Pathogenesis: Headache occurs due to'

- Distortions, inflammation, distension, traction, displacement of large intracranial extracranial vessels and/or dural sinuses.
- Compression, traction and inflammation of cranial and spinal nerves.

- Muscle spasms (voluntary or involuntary) or trauma to cranial or cervical muscles.
- Meningeal irritation and raised intracranial pressure.

Causes. The classification of headache is elaborate one but its practical version is given in the Table 4.1. Some common forms of headache encountered in clinical practice are enumerated in Fig. 4.3.

Table: 4.1: A practical classification of headache

1. **Acute primary headaches**(unknown cause)
 - Migraine
 - Tension-type
 - Benign exertional headache
 - Cluster headache
2. **Secondary headache** (secondary to some cause)
 - A. **Intracranial causes**
 - Vascular disorders e.g. embolic, thrombotic (arterial or venous), haemorrhagic, acute dissection
 - Infections e.g. meningitis, encephalitis, brain abscess
 - Inflammation e.g. vasculitis, arteritis
 - Tumors e.g. benign and malignant (primary, metastatic)
 - Miscellaneous e.g. benign intracranial hypertension, postspinal and post-traumatic-headaches
 - B. **Extracranial causes**
 - Involvement of eye, ear, sinuses, teeth, neck and temporomandibular joint.
 - C. **Systemic illnesses and acute intoxications**
3. **Neuralgias.**
 - Trigeminal
 - Glossopharyngeal
 - Occipital

A careful detailed history is the most important tool in the headache diagnosis. Moreover, headache is complaint, where, symptoms outweigh the signs and abnormal investigations are obligatory not the rule.

Analysis of symptom of headache

1. Onset, duration and progress

- (i) Acute onset of severe headache commonly suggests subarachnoid haemorrhage and meningitis.
- (ii) Progressively worsening headache suggests raised intracranial pressure or uncontrolled systemic disease. Focal or lateralizing signs make the diagnosis easier.
- (iii) A chronic recurrent headache or chronic nonprogressive daily headache represents a primary headache such as migraine, cluster headache or tension-type headache.
- (iv) The headache that develops over weeks or months (slowly evolving recurrent headache) may have a benign cause such as migraine or tension type headache or it could even be due to

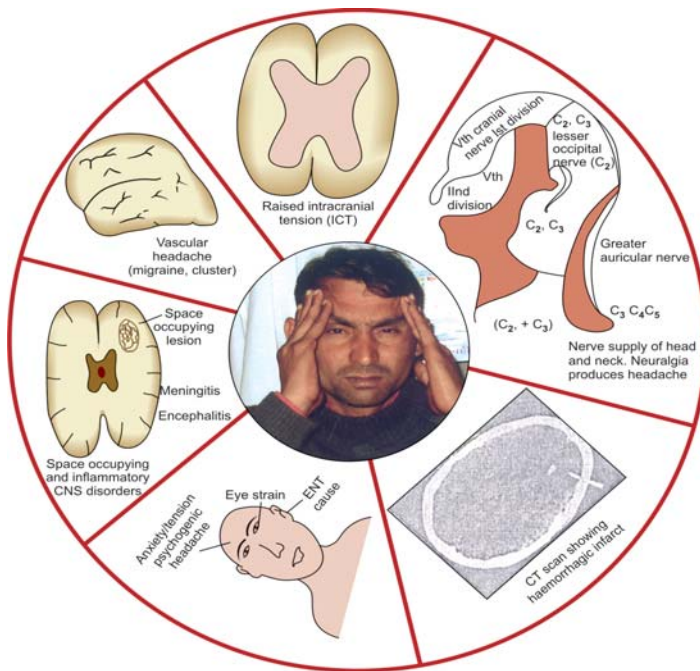


Fig. 4.3: Common headaches

a serious underlying cause (unruptured aneurysm)

- (v) Some headaches may show nocturnal frequency and awaken the patient at night or may occur at the same time of the day (cluster headache) or at specific occasion such as during menstruation or may increase towards the evening such as tension-type (psychogenic) headache.

The age of the patient is also a prime importance as migraine generally begins at a younger age, tension headache is more common in middle age and headache originating in older persons are usually due to organic causes.

The frequency and duration of headache also help to differentiate the episodic headaches from chronic progressive headaches. Many attacks of headache of short duration in the day would favour the diagnosis of cluster headache or chronic proxysmal hemicrania (a variant of cluster headache).

2. Site and quality of pain

- i. Unilateral pulsating or throbbing headaches are usually vascular such as migraine and cluster headaches (occur at the same location unilaterally).
- ii. Bilateral diffuse dull headache is usually of tension-type headache.

- iii. With secondary headaches of organic cause, the nature, location and severity of headache vary according to cause and mechanism of production.

3. Associated symptoms

- i. Associated features such as nausea, vomiting, hypersensitivity to light and noise along with headache suggest migraine but one should also consider the underlying organic cause in the absence of such associated symptoms.
- ii. Fever, arthralgia and malaise suggest a systemic illness or meningitis.
- iii. Transient visual symptoms (auras) are characteristic of migraine but can occur in transient ischaemic attacks, vascular anomalies or focal epilepsy secondary to space occupying lesions.
- iv. Behaviour following an acute attack of headache distinguishes migraine (patient tries to sleep undisturbed in a dark room) from cluster headache in which a patient is up and moving about.
- v. Headache may be related to menstruation, more common in morning (hypertensive) and worst on bending (sinusitis related), may occur towards the evening (eye strain headache) or follow a period of inactivity (cervical pain).

4. Provoking and relieving factors

Primary headaches such as migraine can be triggered by various stimuli including food items (see the Box 4.2). Headache due to intracranial pathology or raised intracranial tension worsens during coughing, straining or adopting the head in low posture.

Physical examination

1. The physical examination should evaluate vital signs (pulse, BP), the cardiac status, the extracranial structure (to palpate over the head and neck for detection of tender trigger-points, to auscultate over the skull, carotid vessels for bruit, to palpate the temporal artery for pulsation) and cervical spine for pain and limitations of movements. Examine the nose and sinuses, the teeth and temporomandibular joint, the ear and throat.
2. A short neurological examination includes:
 - Mental status and level of consciousness.
 - Cranial nerve examination including optic fundi.
 - Motor system examination e.g. power, tone, reflexes etc.
 - Look for neck stiffness and other signs of meningitis.

Common types of headache

Migraine

It is characterised by episodic, hemicranial or unilateral throbbing headache and often associated with nausea, vomiting and visual disturbances. In many patients, headache is bitemporal and generalised and there may not be any visual disturbances or focal neurological signs. It occurs in childhood, adolescent and adult life, more common in females than males (3:1). Family history may be positive in 60% patients.

Pathogenesis The symptoms of migraine are associated with changes in the cerebral blood flow secondary to changes in the vessels calibre. In migraine with aura (classical migraine), the prodromal phase and neurological symptoms are due to arteriolar constriction of cerebral vessels leading to oligoemia particularly in the occipital and parietal lobes. During the phase of headache, there is dilatation of extracranial vessels which may be related to fluctuations in blood 5-hydroxytryptamine levels.

Dietary factors including chocolate, coffee, tea, cheese and alcohol may precipitate attacks (Box 4.2). Some patients describe exposure to sunlight, exercise, tension, oral contraceptives, menstruation as increasing the frequency and severity of attacks. Stress and anxiety may initiate or lead to perpetuation of headache. Stress and migraine frequently co-exist.

About 50% patients of migraine have an affected relative suggesting a genetic predisposition.

The principal forms of migraine are depicted in Table 4.2.

Box 4.2: PROVOKING FACTORS FOR MIGRAINE	
1. Food item	Cheese, dairy products, fruits, chocolates etc.
2. Food additives	Caffeine (coffee), nitrates
3. Alcohol	Beer, red wine
4. Hormonal changes	Menstruation, pregnancy, ovulation
5. Visual triggers	Bright lights, glare
6. Auditory triggers	Noise and music
7. Olfactory triggers	Perfumes, odours
8. Others	Sleep, hunger, headache and neck trauma, stress and anxiety

Note: The clinical interview of an acute headache patient should be quick and systematic including onset, location of pain, the character, severity, duration of pain, precipitating and relieving factors. Past history of similar episodes, history of trauma, exertional aspect of headache, physical tests done earlier, any treatment taken earlier and relief obtained therefrom should be noted.

Table 4.2: Principal forms of migraine

Type	Symptoms and Signs
Classical migraine (migraine without aura)	Visual and sensory symptoms precede or accompany headache
Common migraine (migrain with aura)	Headache, nausea, vomiting, photophobia. No visual disturbance.
Hemiplegic migraine	Prolonged headache (hours or days) followed by transient hemiparesis, which recovers completely with time.
Basilar migraine	Occipital headache preceded by vertigo, diplopia and disturbance in speech. Visual or sensory disturbances may or may not occur.
Cluster headache (migraineous neuralgia)	Affects males, episodes of severe headache and pain occur around one eye associated with tears and nasal congestion.

Headache due to raised intracranial pressure

The raised intracranial pressure (ICP) produced by mass lesions leads to headache, the mechanism of which has already been described but full discussion is beyond the scope of this book. Here, the benign raised intracranial tension which produces headache resembling migraine or tension headache will be briefly discussed.

Benign raised intracranial tension: A benign condition seen in young obese women, in which raised intracranial tension occurs without space occupying lesion or hydrocephalus, hence, called *pseudotumour cerebri*. The aetiology is unknown but the condition is precipitated by drugs such as steroids, oral contraceptives or tetracyclines. The symptoms include: headache, nausea, vomiting, visual blurring and papilloedema. The diagnosis is confirmed by the exclusion of an intracranial mass or a meningeal tumour. Fundus examination reveals papilloedema. CT scan shows normal ventricular system. CSF examination is normal. The treatment is aimed at prevention of visual defects and other intractable symptoms by reducing CSF pressure by repeated lumbar punctures. This is the raised intracranial tension where lumbar puncture can be performed without herniation of brain. The offending or precipitating factors must be sought and removed. Patients refractory to above treatment may benefit from acetazolamide, frusemide or short-term corticosteroids therapy. The outlook for most patients is excellent but less than 5-10% patients may be left with permanent or recurrent visual defects.

Tension or psychological headache

Tension (stress or anxiety induced) headache is usually bilateral and extends to top of the head. Occipital, nuchal

Table 4.3: Characteristics of two common types of headache

	Migraine	Tension (psychogenic)
Site	Unilateral, hemicranial, bilateral or bitemporal	Generalised
Duration	Episodic	Constant
Character	Throbbing and/or dull ache	Non-throbbing and/or dull ache or pressure on head
Diurnal variation	Usually on awakening or later in the day	Continuous, throughout the day, varying intensity
Provoking factors	Bright light, noise, tension, alcohol, food articles and colours	Fatigue and nervous strains
Associated features	Nausea, vomiting, prostration, photophobia and visual disturbances	Anxiety, depression, nervousness, insomnia, etc.
Relieving factors	Sleep or dark room	None
Life profile	Occurs at irregular intervals of weeks to months, tends to disappear as age advances	Occurs at an interval of a month or months and continues for years.

(nape of neck) or bifrontal localisation is also common. It is characterised by dull ache rather than headache or there may be sensation of fullness of head, pressure over head or there may be constricting band around the head. The onset is gradual but pain may continue for weeks or months without interruption. The severity of headache varies and patient can usually continue normal activities.

There is no associated vomiting or photophobia during an attack of headache. The attack usually occurs when the patient is being observed and is less noticeable when patient is self-occupied. Local tenderness over skull vault may be elicitable in some patients. The characteristic features in comparison to migraine are summarised in the Table 4.3.

Investigations (Read nervous system)

Certain features in the history or examination should raise the suspicion of ominous disease warranting investigations. These signals are listed in the Box 4.3.

Box 4.3: DANGER SIGNALS WARRANTING TESTING

1. First severe headache ever
2. Subacute worsening or progressive over days and weeks.
3. Disturbs sleep or presents immediately after awakening
4. Abnormal neurological examination
5. Fever, nausea, vomiting or other systemic signs
6. Headache precipitated by Valsalva manoeuvre (cough, sneeze, bending, straining, position change, exercise and sexual activity)
7. New-onset headache in adult life (>40 years) or a significant change in a long-standing headache problem.

THE SKIN

Anatomy and physiology

The skin is a large organ of the human body covering an area of 2m^2 and forms a major interface between man and his environment. It has three layers (Fig. 4.4):

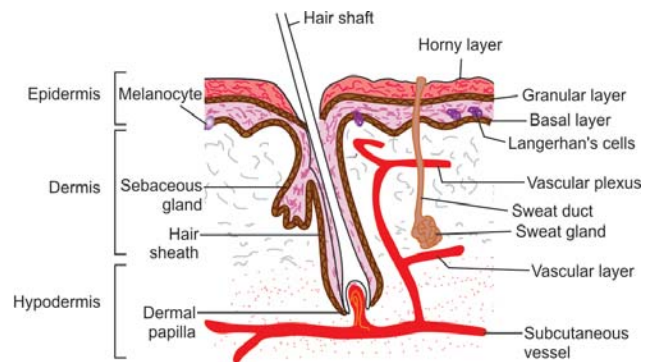


Fig. 4.4: Structure of the skin

- (i) The epidermis
- (ii) The dermis
- (iii) The hypodermis

(i) The epidermis

It is outer avascular epithelial layer consisting of two types of cells;

- (a) **Keratinocytes:** These make up 90% of the epidermal cells and synthesise insoluble proteins-keratins which constitute the horny character of the epithelium.

Genetic abnormalities of keratin have been demonstrated in epidermolysis bullosa complex, where clumping of abnormal keratin filaments is followed by cytolysis of basal cells which follows minor trauma to the skin. Similarly microscopic changes occur in another genetic disease of Keratin-epidermolytic hyperkeratosis where clumping is seen in suprabasal cells.

- (b) **Dendritic cells:** Two types of dendritic cells i.e. melanocytes and Langerhan's cells make up most of the remaining epithelial cells.

The melanocytes are present in basal cell layers, contain an enzyme- tyrosinase which synthesise melanin from

phenylalanine. Melanin is normally formed in the deepest layer of the epidermis and colours the skin brown or black. The amount of melanin is largely determined by hereditary influences. The pigment increases or decreases in amount with exposure to, or withdrawal from ultraviolet light.

The Langerhan's cells are immunogenic cells that originate in the bone marrow and circulate between local lymph nodes and the skin. They are capable of presenting antigen to lymphocytes and are antigen-trapping cells and can elicit an immune response. The T cells and keratinocytes of the skin and draining lymph nodes form the skin-associated lymphoid tissue (SALT) that maintain immunosurveillance. Thus, these cells play an important part in immunosurveillance of viral and tumour antigens.

(ii) The dermis

The dermis is supporting layer to epidermis and is separated from it by a basement membrane. It contains blood vessels, nerves, glands and hair. It has three principal components i.e.

- Cells (mainly fibroblasts and a few mononuclear phagocytes, lymphocytes, mast cells, and Langerhan's cells).
- Fibres (collagen, reticulin and elastin)
- Amorphous ground substance (mostly glycosaminoglycans, hyaluronic acid and dermatan sulphate).

Two types of glands are sweat glands and sebaceous glands. The sweat glands are of two varieties i.e. eccrine glands and apocrine glands. The eccrine glands are distributed all over the skin particularly the palm, but not present in mucous membrane. The glands are situated in the dermis and secrete a watery fluid rich in chloride, lactic acid, fatty acid, urea, glycoproteins and mucopolysaccharides. The apocrine glands are large sweat glands whose duct open into the hair follicles, hence, are present in hairy skin areas i.e. axillae, anogenital areas, nipple, areolae and scalp. They do not function until puberty. These glands produce wax in the ears.

The sebaceous glands are distributed all over the skin except on the palms and soles. They are most numerous on the scalp and face. Meibomian glands on the eyelids are modified sebaceous glands. They have no lumen. They secrete *sebum* which consists of fatty acids and cholesterol and is discharged into pilosebaceous follicle.

The nails

Nails are hard, translucent plates of keratin and grow from beneath the nail fold. A finger nail takes up to 6 month to replace itself and its growth is affected by malnutrition and disease.

Functions of the skin

1. *Physical barrier.* It provides a formidable barrier to antigens or bacteria.
2. *Preservation of a balanced internal environment.* It prevents excessive absorption or loss of water, electrolytes.
3. *Protection.* It protects against chemicals, particles and ultraviolet rays.
4. *Shock absorber.*
5. *Temperature regulation.*
6. *Synthesis.* The vitamin D is synthesised in the epidermis by sunlight.
7. *Sensations.* It contains receptors of specialised nerve endings of pain, touch and temperature, hence, these sensations can be distinguished.
8. It is involved in immunological reactions.

History

A complete history should be taken with special emphasis on the following points:

- Symptoms associated with lesions** e.g. itching, pain, burning or numbness. Ask about these symptoms as they form clues to clinical diagnosis. Itching is the most common dermatological symptom. In some diseases i.e. scabies, it is particularly worst at night. The causes of itching are given in the Box 4.4. Some skin disorders are not itchy (e.g. rash of secondary syphilis, xanthomas). Loss of sensation is prominent in leprosy.

Box 4.4: CAUSES OF PRURITUS (ITCHING)

1. Common skin disorders

- Scabies (Fig. 4.5)
- Atopic eczema, allergic contact dermatitis (Fig. 4.6)
- Candidiasis
- Urticaria (Fig. 4.7)
- Insect bites (e.g. flea, bed bug)

2. Systemic diseases with or without skin involvement

- Metabolic diseases**
 - Hypothyroidism, carcinoid syndrome
- Neoplastic diseases**
 - Chronic lymphatic leukaemia (CLL)
 - Lymphomas and other carcinomas
- Haematological disease**
 - Polycythaemia vera
- Renal failure**
 - Uraemia
- Liver diseases**
 - Cholestasis particularly primary biliary cirrhosis
- Miscellaneous**
 - Senile, psychogenic
 - Drug-induced



Fig. 4.5: Scabies. Note the burrow caused by the mite in the interdigital region



Fig. 4.6: Allergic contact dermatitis



Fig. 4.7: Urticarial rash/wheals

II. Evaluation of the lesions: Ask about;

- Site of involvement
- Duration of lesions
- Manner in which the lesion progressed or spread
- Associated aggravating or relieving factors
- Period of resolution or improvement in chronic skin lesions

III. Drug history. Ask in details about the medicines taken already and medicines being taken or being applied locally.

In our country self-applied remedies often cause irritant contact dermatitis.

IV. Associated systemic symptoms e.g. fever for infection and autoimmune condition, malaise, arthralgia (e.g. psoriatic arthropathy, pemphigus).

V. Past history. Ask about ongoing illnesses or past illnesses.

- A history of same condition in the past may be a clue to the diagnosis (e.g. recurrent herpes simplex, fixed drug eruptions).

VI. Family history. Family history is relevant in atopic skin conditions, psoriasis, genetic disorders such as ichthyosis (Fig. 4.8), infections (e.g. impetigo and dermatophyte infections) and infestations (e.g. scabies, pediculosis). A history of the same genital condition in the sexual partner may be obtained in conditions like genital candidiasis and other sexually transmitted diseases.

VII. Personal history. Ask about place of work, hobbies or recreational activities, use of cosmetics and ornaments and sexual exposure.



Fig. 4.8: Ichthyosis

Note the dry scaly lesions of the skin on the back

Table 4.4. : Review of skin lesions and systemic disorders

Skin eruptions	Associated	Enquire about
1. Erythema nodosum (Fig. 4.9)	• Sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, post-streptococcal infections, connective tissue disorders, drugs	• Cough and expectoration • Dyspnoea, • Sore throat, • Joint pains, • Drugs
2. Pyoderma gangrenosum (Fig. 4.10)	Ulcerative colitis, rheumatoid arthritis	Rectal bleeding and joint pains
3. Dermatitis herpetiformis	Gluten-induced enteropathy	Family history and change in bowel habits
4. Generalised purpura	Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, dengue and other blood disorders	Family history, haematuria, fever and weight loss
5. Dermatitis artefacta	Personality disorders	Stresses or anxieties

- Work contacts may produce irritant or allergic contact dermatitis
- Ornaments and cosmetics are incriminated in contact dermatitis
- Sexual exposure is important for diagnosis of sexually transmitted diseases, HIV
- History of photosensitivity in photodermatitis

VII. Review of systems. Some examples of skin lesions and systemic diseases are reviewed in the Table 4.4.

Examination

Dermatology is the branch of medicine where the correct diagnosis primarily depends on the careful inspection of the skin. A careful examination of the whole skin should be made as clues to the diagnosis may be evident on distant sites. The diagnosis of the skin is based on morphology, distribution and nature/character/configuration of the lesion. If the diagnosis of skin disease

is not apparent, a full general physical examination should be performed as the skin disorder may be a manifestation of a systemic disorder.



Fig. 4.10: Healed lesions of pyoderma gangrenosum



Fig. 4.9: Erythema nodosum



Fig. 4.11: Basal cell carcinoma. Note the brownish pigmented macule at the side of the nose

Sequence of examination

- Ask the patient to remove any dressing, wigs or make up
- Before inspecting any rash or lesion, inspect the colour of the skin
- Examine the lesion using uniform bright light with that part of patient undressed according to the spread of the lesion.
- Inspect the distribution of the lesion e.g. symmetrical or asymmetrical, centripetal or centrifugal etc.
- Note the morphology of the lesion using a lens if necessary. Palpate the lesion. Note whether lesion is smooth or rough, dry or moist and is there any sweating?
- Note the configuration/shape (a tumour. Fig 4.11 or ulcer) and arrangement of the lesion

Skin colour and pigmentation

The normal skin colour varies depending on life style, light exposure as well as constitutional and ethnic factors. The abnormal skin colouration is depicted in Box 4.5.

Pallor denotes paleness; can be *transient* due to haemorrhage or shock and intense emotional upset, or in patients with atopy—an inherited susceptibility to develop hay fever, asthma and eczema. It must be remembered that pallor does not mean yellowness or jaundice. A pale skin is also seen in hypopituitarism and hypogonadism (Kallmann's syndrome)

Box 4.5: ABNORMAL SKIN COLOURATION	
Colour	Disorder/state
• Shallow brownish discolouration	Uraemia
• Bluish tinge or abnormal discolouration	Cyanosis produced by abnormal haemoglobin (Sulph or methaemoglobin). It has been discussed under CVS and respiratory system examination
• Pink discolouration	Carbon-mono-oxide poisoning
• Yellow discolouration (Fig 4.12)	Mepacrine, jaundice (discussed under examination of abdomen)
• Red discolouration	Clofazemine, rash (Fig 4.13)
• Slate grey discolouration of exposed parts	Phenothiazines
• Loss of normal colour/pigment	Vitiligo (patchy Fig 4.14), albinism (total absence Fig. 4.15)

Contd....

Contd....

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Brown pigmentation of skin, mucous membrane and creases of the palm and scars | Addison's disease or hypopituitarism, idiopathic (Fig. 4.16) |
| • Blotchy pigmentation of the face, "melasma or chloasma" | Pregnancy, postpartum (Fig. 4.18) |
| • Pallor of skin and mucous membrane | Anaemia |
| • Black pigmentation of skin | Haemochromatosis, kala-azar |
| • Pink, plethoric complex | Polycythaemia, alcoholism, Cushing's syndrome |



Fig. 4.12: Yellow discolouration of skin due to jaundice



Fig. 4.13: Rash. A rash of viral fever producing reddish discolouration



Fig. 4.14: Vitiligo. Note the patchy loss of skin pigmentation



Fig. 4.15: Albinism. There is congenital widespread loss of pigment. Note the heterochromia (loss of pigment in the iris)



Fig. 4.16: Idiopathic pigmentation of face, and hand in a young adult

Loss of normal pigmentation (melanin) in the skin is usually congenital-called *albinism* (Fig. 4.15); if it is localised, it is called *piebaldism*. Patches of white and dark pigmented skin is seen in vitiligo (Fig. 4.14). *Vitiligo is an autoimmune disorder* of the skin characterised by a complete absence of melanocytes and is associated with other autoimmune disorders and positive family history. **Hyperpigmentation** refers to excess of pigmentation of the skin which is mostly due to melanin, but occasionally may be due to other pigments i.e. brawny pigmentation could be either drug induced (see the Box 4.6) or haemosiderosis of skin (e.g. chronic venous insufficiency). Orange discoloration suggests carotenaemia and a bronze colour of the skin is seen in haemochromatosis and chronic arsenic poisoning. *A different slate-grey hair is seen in argyria and in cachexia of advanced malignancy.* Pigmentation may also occur with chronic infestation by body lice. Hyperpigmentation may be localised or generalised. *Erythema ab igne*- a reticular pattern of pigmentation of legs is seen in women who habitually sit near the fire, can be seen on the back or belly with use of hot-water bottle.

Box 4.6: DRUG-INDUCED PIGMENTATION	
Drug	Pigmentation
Amiodarone (class III anti-arrhythmic)	Slate-grey, seen on exposed parts
Arsenic	Diffuse bronze with superimposed rain drop depigmentation
Bleomycin and Busulfan	Brown pigmentation
Chloroquine	Blue-grey pigmentation on exposed parts
Mepacrine	Yellow
Clofazemine	Red
Minocycline	Slate-grey, seen in scars, temples, shins and sclera
Phenothiazines	Slate-grey on exposed parts
Psoralens	Brown, seen on exposed parts

Localised hyperpigmentation: Patchy hyperpigmentation commonly is brown (epidermal) or bluish-black (dermal) following healing of an inflammatory disease (post-inflammatory). The causes of localised or patchy pigmentation are given in the Box 4.7. Localised pigmentation may be seen in pellagra and in scars of various kinds. It can be idiopathic (Fig. 4.16).

Box 4.7: CAUSES OF LOCALISED OR PATCHY HYPERPIGMENTATION	
Chloasma (Fig. 4.17)	A mask-like pigmentation of face associated with pigmentation of nipples and of linea alba. It is seen in pregnant women and women taking oral contraceptives
Melasma	A similar condition to chloasma, is seen in Asian and African males
Brown coloured naevoid lesion	Light brown discolouration of skin over trunk, buttocks, and thighs is seen in Albright's syndrome
Café-au-lait spots	Brown patches as localised lesions or as a manifestation of neurofibromatosis (more than 5 spots of >1.5 cm ² area are diagnostic)
Freckles or (ephelides) (Fig. 4.18)	Sharply defined light-brown macules seen on face or exposed sites in fair-skinned persons or are seen in xeroderma pigmentosum
Lentigines	Macules larger than freckles are seen on palms, soles and genitalia. Solar lentigines are seen over sun-exposed area.
Post-inflammatory hyperpigmentation	Following eczema and dermatophytosis, drug eruptions, lichen planus.
Congenital melanocytic naevi (Fig. 4.19)	Any part of the body may be involved
Melanoma	A single patch of variegated colour



Fig. 4.17: Facial pigmentation chloasma persisting in a postpartum female



Fig. 4.18: Freckles (ephelides). Note the hyperpigmented macules over the face in a fair complexioned woman



Fig. 4.19: Congenital melanocytic naevi over the face



Fig. 4.20: Diffuse pigmentation of skin in a patient with SLE. Note the butterfly rash (heliotrophic rash) over the face starting from the nose extending over the cheeks

Generalised hyperpigmentation. Diffuse/generalised hyperpigmentation over sun-exposed areas commonly occurs due to exposure to sunlight. Diffuse pigmentation is classically seen in Addison's disease (see Fig. 20.24). The diffuse dark brown pigmentation of Addison's disease is accentuated over sun-exposed areas, flexures, bony prominences, mucosal, mucocutaneous junctions, nipples, palmer creases and genitalia. Previously pigmented lesion or scars also become darker. Addison's like pigmentation is observed in many other conditions (Table 4.5).

Table 4.5 : Causes of diffuse generalised pigmentation

1. **Increased ACTH (MSH) production**
 - Addison's disease (see Fig. 20.24)
 - ACTH/MSH producing pituitary adenoma or ectopic ACTH producing tumour
 - Bilateral adrenalectomy (Nelson's syndrome)
 - Cushing's syndrome
 - Acromegaly
2. **Collagen vascular diseases**
 - SLE (Fig 4.20)
 - Dermatomyositis
3. **Drugs and metals**
 - Heavy metals
 - Cancer chemotherapy
4. **Debilitating diseases**
 - HIV infection
 - Kala azar, malaria, tuberculosis
 - Advanced malignancies
 - Megaloblastic anaemia
 - Alcohol abuse
 - Hepatic failure, biliary cirrhosis
 - Chronic renal failure
5. **Metabolic diseases**
 - Haemochromatosis
 - Porphyria
6. **Neurofibromatosis (Fig. 4.21)**



Fig. 4.21: Neurofibromatosis. Note the multiple small swellings on the skin with diffuse pigmentation



Fig. 4.22: Erythroderma (exfoliative dermatitis) induced by a drug. Note the diffuse erythema and exfoliation of skin

Abnormal redness of skin may be due to;

- Cherry-red colour in carbon-monoxide poisoning
- Overheating
- Extreme exertion
- Sunburn or photosensitivity
- Erythroderma (e.g. exfoliative dermatitis) in which majority of the skin surface is red, could be due to skin conditions, drugs (Fig. 4.22)
- In febrile illness
- Inflammatory skin disease
- Exanthematous skin disease
- Local redness may be due to telangiectasia or disseminated intravascular coagulation and purpura (Fig. 4.23).

Cyanosis refers to bluish discolouration of skin, produced by presence of reduced haemoglobin $>5\text{g}$ either locally,



Fig. 4.23: Redness of skin. Large purpuric or ecchymotic patches (Devil's pinches) indicated by an arrow in an old patient due to senility called senile purpura

as in impaired peripheral circulation, or generally, when oxygenation of the blood is defective. The presence of abnormal haemoglobin such as methaemoglobin or sulphaemoglobin may lead to cyanosis. The causes of methaemoglobin are given in the Box 4.8. Carboxyhaemoglobin in carbon-monoxide poisoning leads to cherry-red colour of the skin and cyanosis called *red cyanosis*.

Box 4.8:

CAUSES OF METHAEMOGLOBIN

Oxidising agents and drugs

- Aniline and its derivatives
- Chlorates
- Dapsone
- Local anaesthetic (e.g. benzocaine)
- Phenazopyridine
- Antimalarial (e.g. primaquine)
- Sulphonamides

Jaundice refers to various shades of yellow colouration of the skin and mucous membrane of conjunctivae by presence of increased bilirubin $>2.5\text{ mg\%}$. The level of bilirubin $<2.5\text{ mg\%}$ produce subclinical jaundice which may not be detected. The lemon yellow colouration of skin may be seen in haemolytic anaemia while deep yellow to orange or yellowish-green colouration is seen in obstructive jaundice (Fig. 4.12). **Orange-yellow** colouration to the skin may be due to carotenaemia from which jaundice has to be differentiated by examining the conjunctivae which are also orange-yellow in jaundice but not in carotenaemia.

Common abnormal skin lesions

I. Distribution of the lesion as a clue to the diagnosis

Skin disorders are generalised, localised or regional. Recognition of the characteristic distribution facilitates

the diagnosis greatly by narrowing down the diagnostic possibilities. The questions to be asked about distribution of the lesion are given in the Box 4.9.

Box 4.9:**QUESTIONNAIRE FOR DISTRIBUTION
OF THE LESIONS**

- Is the lesion/rash localised, universal, symmetrical?
- Does the lesion/rash follow an anatomical (dermatomal) pattern or central/peripheral distribution?
- Does it affect special sites (flexor or extensor areas)?
- Are areas/regions of predilection for some skin disorder involved?
- Are there other clues to the diagnosis at distant sites?
- Are there any incidental findings e.g. genitalia involved?

Universal, symmetric vs asymmetric lesion

- Localised distribution of lesion is seen in contact dermatitis e.g. necklace, ear-rings, lip-stick dermatitis
- Universal and symmetrical eruptions favour the systemic or constitutional cause
- Asymmetrical eruptions spreading from a single focus favour fungal, bacterial or viral infections

Anatomical pattern of central vs peripheral distributions

- Dermatomal distribution (Fig. 4.24) of the rash favours the diagnosis of herpes zoster infection. Some common diseases such as chicken pox (Fig. 4.25) and pityriasis are centripetal in distribution; while erythema nodosum, erythema multiforme and small pox are centrifugal (peripheral) in distribution.

Special sites or areas of predilection

- Photodermatitis involves sun-exposed areas and spares shielded areas (Fig. 4.26)
- Atopic dermatitis in children frequently involves the antecubital and popliteal fossae e.g. flexor surfaces; while psoriasis in adults involves extensor surfaces (Fig. 4.27)
- Psoriasis involves the extensor surfaces of joints (elbow, knee) scalp, natal cleft and nails.
- Cutaneous candidiasis produces maceration of the skin in body folds especially in the obese, induces erosion and intertrigo (Fig. 4.28). In infants, napkin may encourage candida infection.
- Seborrhoeic dermatitis is seen in areas where there is high density of sebaceous glands i.e. scalp, forehead, eye brows, nasolabial folds, presternal areas etc.
- Acne involves cheek (Fig. 4.29) forehead, shoulder and back
- Ring worm (Fig. 4.30) involves groin (tinea cruris) feet (tinea pedis), scalp (tinea capitis) and beard (tinea barbae)



Fig. 4.24: Herpes zoster infection. Note the distribution of skin lesion along the dermatome



Fig. 4.25: Chicken pox. Note the centripetal distribution of the skin eruptions in two brothers. A. Lesions over the face. B. Lesions over the back. Simultaneous infection in two brothers indicates direct transmission of infection



Fig. 4.26: Photodermatitis

- Swelling around the eyelids without redness indicates acute nephritic or nephrotic syndrome or trichinosis; whereas irritation around eyes indicates contact dermatitis



Fig. 4.27: Psoriasis. Note the dry scaly pruritic lesions over the extensor surface of the legs



Fig. 4.28: Cutaneous candidiasis. Note the maceration of the skin in the body folds (e.g. sacral folds) inducing erosions and intertrigo

Morphology of skin lesions

Skin lesions are said to be primary when they arise *de novo* as the first manifestation of skin disorder.

Secondary lesions: Secondary lesions arise from the changes in the primary lesions. They trace the evolutionary course of the primary into secondary lesions and are thus helpful to the clinical diagnosis. After the distribution of the lesion, the morphology of the lesion should be defined. Most lesions (primary as well as secondary) have special names (Table 4.6) which should be used to describe the skin lesion. Sometimes early



Fig. 4.29: Acne vulgaris—a chronic skin condition manifesting as comedones or black heads due to blockage of pilosebaceous glands commonly involves the face, chest and back where glands are present in abundance. The condition occurs commonly in adolescent males and females



Fig. 4.30: Tinea pedis (ring worm infection of foot). A moccasin distribution of a red rash with scales; note clear line of demarcation

primary lesion may be obscured by scratch marks, crusting and ulceration, therefore, these must be sought and when found, inspected closely.

The clinician/student should study the lesions carefully, if necessary by a lens and should ask the following questions and described them as per terminology used (Table 4.6)

1. What are their shapes?
2. What are their sizes?
3. What is their colour?
4. What are the characteristics of their margins and surfaces?

Table 4.6: Terminology used in skin lesions

Skin lesion	Description
I. Primary lesions	
Papule	A circumscribed, raised solid area of skin, less than 0.5 cm in diameter
Plaque	An elevated area of skin greater than 2 cm in diameter, can result from coalescence of papules
Macule	A flat circumscribed area of altered colour or texture
Vesicle	A small vesicle (<0.5 cm in diameter)
Bulla	A large vesicle (>0.5 cm in diameter)
Pustule	A pus-containing blister
Abscess	Collection of pus in a cavity, more than 1 cm in diameter
Wheal (urticaria)	A transient elevated reddened area associated with scratching and dermal swelling
Angioedema	A diffuse swelling or oedema that extends into the subcutaneous tissue (Fig. 4.31)
Nodule	A raised solid skin mass greater than 0.5 cm in diameter
Papilloma	A nipple-like mass projecting from the skin
Petechiae	Small pin-head size (<3 mm in diameter) macules containing blood. It occurs due to extravasation of blood into the skin
Purpura	Extravasation of blood into skin producing large macule or papule that does not blanch on pressure
Ecchymosis	A large petechiae (> 3 mm) is called ecchymosis
Haematoma	A localised collection of blood producing a swelling
Burrow	A linear or curved tract (particularly caused by a burrowing scabies mite)
Comedone (the black head)	A plug of keratin and sebum wedged in a dilated pilosebaceous orifice. It is a characteristic lesion in acne vulgaris
Telangiectasia	Dilatation of small cutaneous blood vessels
Annular lesions	Ring-shaped lesions
II. Secondary lesions	
Scales	Dried flakes of dead skin arising from the horny layer
Crust	Dried exudate (blood or fluid) on the skin looking like a scale
Erosion	A denuded area of skin with loss of epidermis
Ulcer	A denuded area of skin with loss of epidermis and a part of dermis
Excoriation	Linear marks or erosions produced by scratching
Fissure	A slit in the skin
Sinus	A channel or cavity that permits the discharge of fluid or pus
Scar	The healed area of the skin in which normal skin has been permanently replaced by fibrous tissue
Keloid scar	Excessive scar formation
Atrophy	Thinning of the skin
Striae	A streak-like linear, atrophic pink or white skin lesion caused by a change in connective supporting tissue



Fig. 4.31: Angioedema. Note the diffuse swelling over the body due to edema of subcutaneous tissue including face

Most skin lesions vary in colour; i.e.

- Violaceous scaly discrete flat-topped papules are seen in lichen planus
- Yellow coloured hue or tubercles are seen in xanthomatosis (Fig. 4.32)
- Slat grey colour of skin is seen in drug-induced pigmentation
- Depigmented or reddened anaesthetic skin lesions are seen in leprosy (Hansen's disease - Fig. 4.33). The lesions are located in the skin that is normally cooler than body temperature



Fig. 4.32: Tuberoeruptive xanthomata on the elbow of a patient with dyslipidemia



Fig. 4.33: Hansen's disease (leprosy)

- A pink heliotrophic rash over the cheeks is seen in dermatomyositis and SLE (See Fig. 4.20)
- Ash-leaf depigmented (Shagreen patch) lesion on the trunk and adenoma sebaceum on the face indicate tuberous sclerosis (Fig. 4.34)
- Port-wine stain (a tumour consisting of dilated capillary vessels) may be associated with Sturge-Weber syndrome (Fig. 4.35). A salmon-coloured patch due to capillary plexus may be seen as capillary naevus (naevus flammeus - Fig. 4.36)
- Cavernous haemangioma (Strawberry naevus— Fig. 4.37) de Morgan's spots (Fig. 4.38) are cherry-angiomas.



Fig. 4.34: Tuberous sclerosis A. Adenoma sebaceum over the face B. Shagreen (ash-leaf depigmented lesion) patch over the back



Fig. 4.35: Sturge-Weber syndrome. A. Portwine stain (capillary haemangioma) of left side of face B. CT Scan of the patient shows gyral calcification in the same patient. Patient had epilepsy for more than 10 years



Fig. 4.36: Capillary naevus (naevus flammeus). Note the salmon—coloured patch on the left side of the face



Fig. 4.37: Cavernous haemangioma (strawberry naevus) in a child. Note the well demarcated round, lobulated growth on the face at the base of the nose and obstructing both the eyes



Fig. 4.38: *de Morgan's spots*. Note the pinpoint pinkish spots (cherry angiomas) over the side of the chest

Configuration of the lesions as clue to the diagnosis

Once the morphology of the individual lesions and their distribution has been established, it is useful to describe their configuration on the skin. The terminology used in relation to the configuration of the lesion are given in the Table 4.7

The Hair (Fig. 4.39)

The hair consists of hair follicles which house the hair shaft. The germinal part of hair shaft is in the hair matrix.

Table 4.7: Description of configuration of individual lesions		
Lesion	Description	Significance
Nummular/ discoid	Ring or coin shaped	Nummular eczema, nummular/guttate psoriasis, discoid lupus erythematosus
Annular	Ring-like	Tinea corporis or by coalescence of adjacent lesions (annular granuloma annulare)
Circinate	Circular	Fixed drug eruptions
Arcuate	Curved	Scabies (curved burrows of scabies mite)
Gyrate/ serpiginous	Wave-like	Urticaria
Linear	In a line	Seen in insect bites, scratching (Koebner phenomenon) linear psoriasis, photodermatitis, linear warts
Grouped	Clustered	Grouping of vesicles is seen in herpes simplex infection, typical of bug-bites
Reticular	Net-like or Web-like	Allergic conditions, drug induced, photodermatitis. <i>Livedo reticularis</i> (e.g. vasculitis, SLE, Snedden's syndrome)

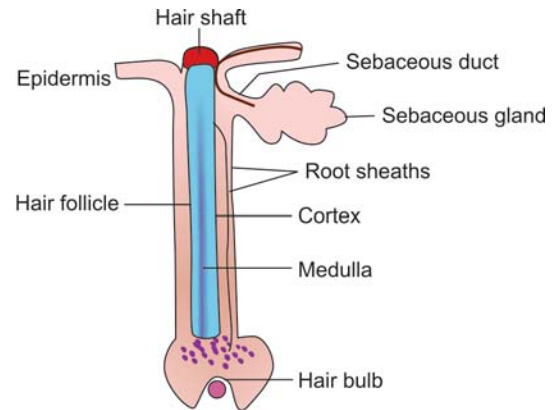


Fig. 4.39: Structure of hair

The melanocytes migrate into the matrix and give different colour to the hair by producing melanin.

Types of hair—There are three types of hair;

- Terminal*—coarse medullated hair e.g. scalp, moustaches, beard, *eyebrows*, pubic.
- Vellus-nonmedullated*, fine, short downy hair e.g. on the face of women and prepubertal boys.
- Lanugo*- hair covering the foetus

The growth of hair like other epithelial structures occurs by mitosis. The growth of hair is cyclic and continues throughout life and passes through alternating phases of active growth (*anagen*) and resting/shedding (*telogen*). The duration of these phases varies in different regions of the body. The *anagen* phase of scalp hair may last for upto 5 years, but this phase is shorter and the telogen phase is longer in eyebrow and sexually determined hair. The length of anagen phase determines the length of hair, hence, is longer in the regions where the hair are longer. Normally 85% of scalp hairs are in anagen and 15% in telogen stages. The *catagen* is the conversion phase from active to resting phase and usually lasts for few days.

Secondary sexual hair begins to appear at puberty and has characteristic male and female patterns. The hair growth occurs earlier in girls (average age 11.5 years) than in boys (average age 13.5 years). The development of pubic hair is related to androgen production (*adenarche*) in the absence of gonadotrophin secretion. This is the reason that in isolated gonadotrophin deficiency, the pubic hair are present but signs of puberty are absent. The axillary hair appear about 2 years later than the start of pubic hair, and, in boys, coincides with the development of facial hair. Last of all, body hair develops and its extent increases throughout the years of sexual maturity, with slight variations in its pattern.

Hair colour, amount and texture have familial and racial characteristics that are genetically determined. Asians tends to have straight hair, Negroids to have black curly hair and Europeans to have wavy hair. Mongoloids have sparse facial and body hair. Mediterranean people have more hairs than northern Europeans.

Examination sequence

First of all, inspect the scalp hair followed by body and secondary sexual hair for;

- Lustre, calibre, structure, strength and density
- Note the absence or loss of hair. If present, determine its cause
- For fungal infection, nits and lice
- Nature and distribution

Abnormalities of hair

I Too little hair II Too much hair

I. Too less hair and hair loss

A. Scalp

- *Temporal recession.* Certain follicles of the scalp regress with age to produce fine vellus hair instead of coarse terminal hair. This leads to thinning of hair and temporal baldness-called *temporal recession*. This pattern of baldness is androgen dependent, hence seen in males and not in females. In females, this pattern suggests virilisation.
- *Premature male-pattern baldness.* Vertical thinning is seen in association with marginal recession in both the sexes, indicates androgen excess called androgenic alopecia.
- *Thinning or loss of hair* over frontal region may be seen in myotonia dystrophica and also in systemic lupus erythematosus. Diffuse thinning of hair is seen in hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hypopituitarism, HIV infection and deficiency of protein, iron, biotin and zinc.
- *Alopecia* is the term used to describe hair loss which may be localised (e.g. scarring and nonscarring) or diffuse. There are many causes and patterns (Table 4.8).

Table 4.8: Classification of alopecia

1. Localised (patchy)

A. Nonscarring

- Tinea capitis
- Alopecia areata (Fig. 4.40)
- Androgenic alopecia
- Traumatic (trichotillomania, traction, cosmetic)

B. Scarring

- Idiopathic
- Developmental defects
- Discoid lupus erythematosus
- Herpes zoster
- Pseudopelade
- Tinea capitis/kerion

2. Generalised (diffuse)

A. Non-scarring

- Drug-induced (see the Box. 4.10)
- Telogen effluvium
- Androgenic
- Metabolic e.g. diabetes mellitus
- Thyroid disorders e.g. hypo and hyperthyroidism
- Hypopituitarism
- Nutritional deficiency
- HIV infection/disease
- Liver disease e.g. cirrhosis of liver
- Postpartum
- Syphilis

B. Scarring

- Discoid lupus erythematosus, sarcoidosis
- Radiotherapy
- Lichen planus pilaris
- Folliculitis decalvans
- Cutaneous metastases

In nonscarring alopecia, the hair shafts are gone but hair follicles are preserved. Primary cutaneous disorders such as *telogen effluvium*, *androgenic alopecia*, *alopecia areata*, *tinea capitis* and *trauma* are most common causes of localised or



Fig. 4.40: Alopecia areata. Note the patchy loss of hair over the scalp

diffuse nonscarring alopecia. In women androgenic alopecia indicates virilisation, therefore, others signs such as deepening of voice and enlarged clitoris may be sought and the possibility of an ovarian or adrenal tumour should be considered.

Drugs also can produce diffuse hair loss (see the Box 4.10) by inducing a telogen effluvium.

Box 4.10: DRUG-INDUCED ALOPECIA	
1. Anticoagulants	4. Vitamin A
• Warfarin	5. Betablockers
• Heparin	6. Antidepressants e.g. lithium
2. Antithyroid	7. Colchicine
• Propylthiouracil	8. Amphetamines
• Carbimazole	
3. Antimitotic	
• Daunorubicin	

In systemic lupus erythematosus, both scarring (discoid lupus) and nonscarring forms (lupus hair) of alopecia are seen. The lupus hairs are multiple short hairs, mostly seen in frontal scalp region in SLE (Fig. 4.41). In secondary stage of syphilis, scattered, poorly circumscribed patches of alopecia with a “moth-eaten” appearance may be seen.

Remember that nonscarring alopecia is reversible

In scarring alopecia, there is inflammation, fibrosis and loss of hair follicles resulting in nonreversible form of alopecia. Scarring alopecia is most frequently the result of primary skin disorders such as *lichen planus pilaris*, *folliculitis decalvans*, and *cutaneous discoid lupus*.

Alopecia areata

This is nonscarring alopecia which occurs in both the sexes and all races and is usually seen in young adults or



Fig. 4.41: Lupus hairs in a patient with SLE. There is nonscarring patchy hair loss with lupus hairs (multiple short hairs) over the scalp and forehead

children. There is often a personal or family history of atopy. It occurs in association with other autoimmune diseases i.e. thyrotoxicosis, Addison's disease, pernicious anaemia, vitiligo, atopy and Down's syndrome.

There are sharply defined non-inflamed patches of baldness seen usually on the scalp (Fig. 4.40) but may involve eyebrows and beard. Patches tend to regrow over the course of several months. Children with an atopic background may lose all scalp hair (alopecia totalis), which is less frequent in adults. Loss of hair from all body sites (alopecia universalis) may occur by extension from other sites but can also occur acutely. The extension of hair loss starts in peripheral fashion, at the advancing edge, the broken hair (exclamation mark hairs) provide evidence of disease activity.

Androgenic alopecia (male-pattern baldness)

Recession of hair margin is an ageing process. Androgenic alopecia (male-pattern baldness), is physiological in men over 20 years of age though rarely it may be extensive and develop acutely in late teens. It also occurs in females most obviously after menopause. The male-pattern baldness includes bitemporal recession of hair line and then loss of hair over the crown. This is attributed to increased 5α -reduction of testosterone to dihydrotestosterone (DHT) in frontal but not in occipital hair follicles. DHT is responsible for miniaturization of hair follicles, fine hair growth ensues and there is shortening of anagen phase of hair growth.

- Premature male-pattern baldness refers to early onset of hair loss both in males and females, indicates androgen excess. In females, androgen excess suggests virilisation.
- Secondary sexual hair on the face in the male and in the axillae and on the pubis in both sexes may fail to develop in hypogonadism, may diminish in old age or be lost in hypopituitarism.
- Eyebrows.** The amount of hair in the eyebrows varies widely. Thinning of hairs on outer third of the eyebrow is common in normal persons and abnormally seen in hypothyroidism and obstructive jaundice.

Too much facial and body hair

Hirsutism

It is the excessive growth of coarse terminal hair in a male pattern (androgenic distribution) in a female. Therefore, hirsutism in females involves those areas which have hairs in the male (male pattern) i.e. face (Fig. 4.42), trunk and limbs. The pubic hair spreads from its normal flat-topped distribution up towards umbilicus-called *male escutcheon*.



Fig. 4.42: Hirsutism. Note the excessive growth of hairs over the face, beard and moustache in a young female

Hirsutism is often racial (e.g. Mediterranean, Asians, Caucasians) and familial. Some degree of facial hair growth (hirsutism) is common after menopause. The hirsutism may or may not be associated with virilisation (Table 4.9). The causes of hirsutism are given in the Box 4.11.

Box 4.11: CAUSES OF HIRSUTISM (see Fig. 4.42)	
<i>Causes</i>	<i>Clinical characteristics</i>
Idiopathic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Often familial • Asian background
Polycystic ovarian syndrome (Stein-leventhal- syndrome)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obesity • Oligo or amenorrhoea • Infertility
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (21-hydroxylase deficiencies)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pigmentation • History of salt-wasting in childhood • Ambiguous genitalia or adrenal crisis when stressed. • Jewish background.

Contd....

Contd....

Exogenous androgen administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Athletes • Virilisation
Androgen-secreting tumour of the ovary or adrenal cortex	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rapid onset • Virilisation • Clitoromegaly, deep voice, balding, breast atrophy.
Cushing syndrome	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clinical features of Cushing's syndrome (moon faces, truncal obesity, striae).

Table 4.9: Differential diagnosis of hirsutism

Condition	Clinical presentation	Menstruation
A. Hirsutism without virilisation		
• Familial	Family history often long history, beginning after menarche	Normal positive,
• Idiopathic	Long history, beginning after menarche	Normal
• Mild polycystic ovarian syndrome	Long history, beginning after menarche	Normal to chaotic
• Late-onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia	Often before menarche, often short stature, sometimes acne or greasy skin	
B. Hirsutism with virilisation (e.g. enlarged clitoris, deepening of voice, male phenotype, greasy skin, acne)		
• Polycystic ovarian syndrome (severe)	Long history, beginning after menarche	Chaotic or amenorrhoea
• Ovarian neoplasm	Short history, an adult	Amenorrhoea
• Congenital adrenal hyperplasia	Infancy or childhood	
C. Drug-induced hirsutism (e.g. androgens, phenytoin, diazoxide, minoxidil, cyclosporine)		

Hypertrichosis is an excess growth of terminal coarse hair which does not follow an androgen-induced pattern (- a distinguishing feature from hirsutism). It may be due to drugs (minoxidil, cyclosporin), trauma and cutaneous porphyria.

5

The Eyes

THE EYES (FIG. 5.1)

Applied anatomy and physiology

The organs of vision are the eyes. Each eye is situated in the orbit—a bony cage. It consists of upper and lower eyelids, the upper eyelid covers a portion (one-eighth) of the cornea but does not overlap the pupil. The space between the two-eyelids is called *palpebral fissure*. The white colour of sclera on the sides of the cornea looks somewhat buff-coloured at its extreme periphery. Do not confuse this colour for jaundice, which is deeper yellow.

The *conjunctiva* is a clear mucous membrane with two visible components. The first component, the bulbar conjunctiva covers most of the anterior eye ball adhering loosely to the underlying tissue. It meets the cornea at the *limbus*. The other component, the palpebral conjunctiva lines the eyelids. The two parts/components merge in a folded recess that permits the eyeball to move.

Within the eyelids lie tarsal plates—firm strips of connective tissue. Each plate contains a parallel row of *meibomian glands*, which open on the lid margin. The *levator palpebrae superioris* muscle raises the upperlid and is innervated by 3rd cranial nerve. Smooth muscle innervated by the sympathetic nervous system also contributes to raising this lid. This is the reason that the upper lid droops both in 3rd nerve and sympathetic paralysis (Horner's syndrome).

A clear fluid called *tear fluid* protects the conjunctiva and cornea from drying, has anti-microbial action and gives a smooth optical surface to the cornea. This fluid comes from three sources, i.e. meibomian glands, conjunctival glands, and the lacrimal gland. The lacrimal gland lies within the orbit, above and lateral to the eyeball. The tear fluids after spreading through the eye drains into *lacrimal sac* and further into the nose through nasolacrimal duct.

The eyeball is a spherical structure that focusses light on the retina. The size of the pupil is controlled by the

muscles of the iris. Muscles of the ciliary body control the thickness of the lens allowing the eye to focus on near or distant objects.

The *aqueous humour* a clear fluid produced by the ciliary body, circulates from the posterior chamber through the pupil to anterior chamber, and drains out through the *canal of Schlemm*. The circulatory system helps to control pressure inside the eye (intraocular tension).

The posterior part of the eye that is seen through an ophthalmoscope is often called *the fundus* of the eye. Structures here include the retina, choroid, fovea, macula, optic disc and retinal vessels. The optic nerves with retinal vessels enters the eyeball at optic disc. Lateral and inferior to the disc, there is a dark circular area with a central depression—called *fovea centralis*, marked for central vision. The fovea is surrounded by macula which does not reach the optic disc. The eyeball behind the lens is filled by a transparent gelatinous material—called *vitreous body* that maintains the shape of the eye.



Fig. 5.1: The eyes

THE HISTORY

The ocular history should concentrate on the following symptoms:

1. **Disturbance of vision.** It may be sudden or gradual, may involve one or both the eyes. The patients may complain of halos around bright lights, flashes, floaters or may experience visual hallucinations. Objects may appear smaller (*micropsia*) or larger (*macropsia*).
 2. **Diplopia or blurring of vision.** These result due to disordered ocular movements.
 3. **Pain in the eye.** It may be felt like a foreign body sensation, often increased by eye movements. A deep seated pain within eye, or sometimes associated photophobia occurs in *iritis*. Severe ocular pain with vomiting may indicate an acute glaucoma. Migraine may present with visual symptoms and headache and pain may be referred to the eye from neighbouring structures.
 4. **Dryness or excessive watering of the eyes.** There may be abnormal secretions from the eye such as mucus or pus. In tear insufficiency, the eye feels dry. Excessive tear production (*lacrimation*) may indicate local ocular disease; while over-flow of tears (*epiphora*) suggests defective lacrimal drainage.
 5. **Redness of eyes**
 6. **Protrusion of the eyeball** (exophthalmos, proptosis)
- In addition to ocular history as discussed above, a routine general medical and surgical history is essential so as to know whether ocular symptoms pertain to local eye disease or eye involvement is part of a systemic disorder. **Past history** should include enquiries about presence of squint in childhood, a previous injury or wearing of glasses at any time. The **family history** may reveal a history of glaucoma, squint or the presence of neurological disease associated with visual loss.

Symptomatic inquiries and their analysis

Start your inquiry about eye and vision problem with following question:

- How is your vision?
- Have you had any trouble with your eyes?

Refractive errors most commonly explain blurring. Hyperglycaemia may also cause blurring.

If the patient reports a change in the vision, pursue the related details as follows:

Is the onset sudden or gradual? The causes of visual loss are given in the Box 5.1. Sudden loss of vision is mostly unilateral and often results from vascular disease.

Box 5.1:

CAUSES OF VISUAL LOSS

<i>Acute or sudden and transient</i>	<i>Chronic and progressive</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amaurosis fugax (TIA of retina) • Hypertensive crisis (vasospasm of retinal arterioles) • Retinal vein occlusion • Occlusion of central artery of retina (embolism of retinal vessels) • Optic neuritis (retrobulbar neuritis) • Leber's hereditary optic atrophy • Toxic optic atrophy • Papilloedema • Vitreous degeneration or haemorrhage • Retinal detachment • Transient ischaemic attacks or stroke • Factitious (functional) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cataract • Glaucoma • Macular degeneration • Diabetic retinopathy • Intraocular tumour • Retinitis pigmentosa • Macular hole

Sudden visual loss suggests retinal detachment, vitreous haemorrhage, occlusion of central artery of retina.

Is the problem of vision worst during close work or at distances?

Difficulty with close work suggests *hypermetropia* (far-sightedness) or *presbyopia* (aging vision); with distances, *myopia* (near-sightedness).

Is there blurring of the entire field of vision or only parts of it? If the visual defect is partial, is it central, peripheral, or only on one side?

Slow *central loss* of vision occurs in nuclear cataract and macular degeneration; *peripheral loss* is seen in advanced open-angle glaucoma; and one side loss in *hemianopia* and quadrant defects.

Are there specks in the vision or areas where patient cannot see (scotomas)? If so, do they move around in the visual field with shift in gaze or are they fixed.

- Moving specks or strands suggest vitreous floaters
- Fixed defects (scotomas) suggest lesions in the retinal and visual pathways.

Has the patient seen or sees light flashing across the field of vision? This symptom may be accompanied by vitreous floaters.

Flashing lights or new vitreous floaters suggest detachment of retina, warrants prompt eye consultation.

Does the patient wear glasses? Note the number.

Ask about pain in or around the eyes, redness, and excessive tearing or watering. The causes of red eyes are given in the Box 5.2.

Box 5.2: CAUSES OF RED OR PAINFUL EYE

- Trauma (blunt or penetrating)
- Corneal abrasion/exposure (5th, 7th nerve palsy)
- Foreign body
- Chemical exposure
- Contact lens (e.g. overuse or infection)
- Subconjunctival haemorrhage (Fig. 5.2)
- Conjunctivitis
- Episcleritis
- Ulceration of cornea
- Herpes keratitis and herpes zoster ophthalmicus
- Sjögren's syndrome (dry eyes)
- Dacryocystitis
- Blepharitis
- Iritis/iridocyclitis
- Endophthalmitis
- Acute close-angle glaucoma
- Pterygium
- Proptosis due to any cause (e.g. orbital cellulitis, cavernous sinus thrombosis (Fig. 5.3) retrobulbar tumour, Grave's disease)

Ask about headache. What is its character? Is it around the eyes? Does it radiate?

The characteristics of headache with eye disorders (e.g. error of refraction) are:

- (i) It occurs around and over the eyes, may radiate to occipital area
- (ii) It is dull, aching in character. It is steady/constant
- (iii) Gradual onset
- (iv) Variable in duration
- (v) It is probably caused by the sustained contraction of extraocular muscles, and possibly of the frontal, temporal and occipital muscles
- (vi) It may be associated with eye fatigue, "sandy" sensation in the eyes, redness of the conjunctiva
- (vii) It is relieved by rest to the eyes?

Ask about double vision or diplopia. Check for the presence of diplopia or double vision. If present, find out whether the images are side by side (horizontal diplopia) or on top of each other (vertical diplopia). Does diplopia persist with one eye closed? Which eye is affected? True double vision becomes single when one eye is closed.

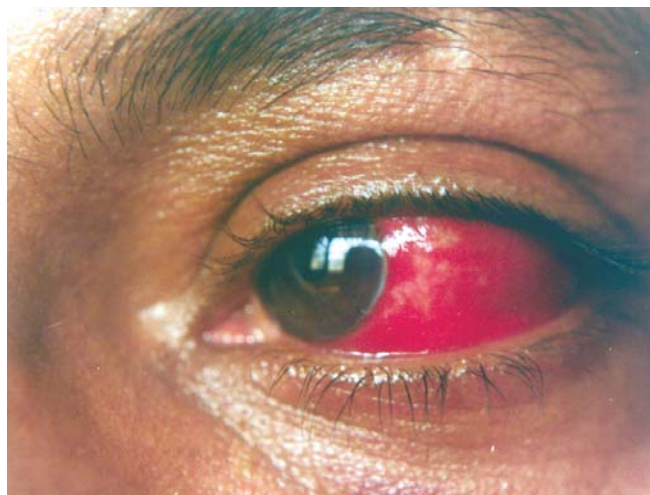


Fig. 5.2: Subconjunctival haemorrhage producing redness of the eye



Fig. 5.3: Bilateral red eyes due to bilateral cavernous sinus thrombosis following orbital cellulitis. Note the suffusion of face chemosis of conjunctivae, periorbital oedema and bilateral ptosis. There was proptosis also

- Diplopia in adults may occur either due to lesions of the *brain stem, cerebellum* or from weakness or paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles
- Horizontal nystagmus is due to palsy of 3rd and 6th cranial nerve while vertical nystagmus results from palsy of 3rd and 4th cranial nerves
- In *monocular diplopia*, the double vision (diplopia) persists in either eye after covering the other eye, results due to intrinsic eye disease, e.g. corneal aberrations (e.g. keratoconus, pterygium), uncorrected refractive error, cataract or foveal traction. Occasionally it may be due to malingering
- Diplopia alleviated by covering one eye is *binocular diplopia* and is caused by disruption of ocular alignment. The binocular diplopia is caused by a lesion of the 3rd, 4th or 6th cranial nerves (or a combination of these) or their nuclei or disease of

neuromuscular junction (myasthenia gravis) or the ocular muscles (see the Box 5.3) or due to ocular causes (refractory errors, incorrect spectacles, media opacities or macular disease).

Box 5.3:	CAUSES OF DIPLOPIA
1. Damage to 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves	
(i) <i>Brain-stem involvement</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Haemorrhage • Infarction • Demyelination • Tumour
(ii) <i>Meningeal involvement</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meningitis • Raised intracranial pressure • Aneurysms • Cerebellopontine angle tumour • Trauma
(iii) <i>Cavernous sinus involvement</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infection, thrombosis • Carotid artery aneurysm
(iv) <i>Superior orbital fissure</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tumour-meningioma • Granuloma
(v) <i>Orbit involvement</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cellulitis • Tumour • Trauma • Vascular (diabetic)
2. Diseases of myoneural junction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Myasthenia gravis
3. Diseases of the ocular muscles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia (Grave's disease) • Ocular myopathies • Orbital myositis

Is there any evidence of squint? If so, whether paralytic or nonparalytic. The paralytic squint may be convergent (lateral rectus palsy) or divergent (medial rectus palsy).

Squint is an abnormality of ocular movement, results when the visual axes do not meet at the point of fixation or there is failure of the normal co-ordination of the ocular axes. It may be paralytic (paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles) or nonparalytic (no paralysis of extraocular muscles (read Table 5.6).

Note whether diplopia is present.

Diplopia is present in paralytic squint as image on the paralysed side does not fall on the macula, hence, double vision. However, on the other hand, in nonparalytic squint the image formed by the defective eye is either rejected or suppressed by the occipital cortex.

Examination

The examination of the eye is an integral component of the clinical examination. The willingness of patient to maintain eye-to-eye contact may give valuable informations. It is also necessary to develop a routine for examination of the eye. This chapter describes an effective sequence; the common abnormal findings in the eye examination are given in the Box 5.4.

Box 5.4:	COMMON ABNORMAL FINDINGS ON EYE EXAMINATION
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduced visual acuity • Abnormal visual field • Red eyes • Hazy media • Diplopia • Squint • Abnormal pupil reaction • Retinal haemorrhage and exudates • Optic atrophy • Papilloedema

The overview of eye examination is given in the Box 5.5. It includes;

Box 5.5:	OVERVIEW OF EYE EXAMINATION SEQUENCE
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • General inspection of various components of eye • Tests for visual functions, e.g. visual acuity, visual field and colour vision • Internal examination/inspection with torch light • Checking of various ocular movements • Fundus examination

General inspection of eye e.g. the eyelids, eyeballs, lacrimal glands, sclera, conjunctiva, cornea to overview the external appearance

Detailed inspection of the eyes using torch or slit lamp, e.g. cornea, iris, size of pupil.

Testing of visual functions, e.g. measurement of visual acuity, visual field and colour vision. These are best performed before dazzling the eye with lights.

Checking of ocular movements. This involves checking of eye movements binocularly and uniocularly in all positions of gaze and carrying out cover/uncover test.

Ophthalmoscopy. This includes ophthalmoscopic examination of fundus after dilatation of pupil. This is carried out if indicated.

Visual function tests

The visual function tests are performed before any detailed eye examination.

Visual acuity

- I. **Tests for distant vision.** Distant visual acuity (VA) should be tested using distance spectacles (if worn)

with a Snellen's chart at 6 meters (Fig. 5.4). This test chart has a series of letters of varying sizes constructed so that the top letter is visible to the normal eye at 60 m (hence 60 is written at the top of the letter), and subsequent lines at 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 and 5 m. The numbers on the lines represent the distance in meters at which a normally sighted person can read that line. The visual acuity is written as:

$$VA = \frac{\text{Distance between the patient and the chart i.e. 6 m}}{\text{The letter/the line the patient can read at 6 m distance}}; \text{ for example}$$

6/6 is normal VA, which means a person can read the line having letters written at the top as 6 while standing at a distance of 6 meter.

- Normal visual acuity is 6/6
- Subnormal VA is 6/9
- Vision needed for driving licence is 6/9 or 6/12. legal
- Blindness is defined as vision of less than 3/60, which means an individual cannot see the line at 3 meters which a normally sighted person could read at 60 meters.

Other methods of testing for VA are available for children and people who cannot read.

Steps of examination

1. Test each eye separately. Patient wear the distance glasses (if he/she has one). The other eye should be totally occluded during examination.



Fig. 5.4: Testing for distant vision. The lines, from above downwards, should be read at 60, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6, 5, 4 m, respectively. At these distances the letters subtend a visual angle of 5 m

2. If possible, use a line rather than single letters; and use different letters for each eye, as patient/children can memorise them quickly.
 3. If vision is abnormal, check it again using a pinhole which partially corrects optic errors.
 4. If vision is less than 6/60, repeat the test with chart 3 meters away as 3/60 etc.
 5. If the vision is still less than 3/60, resort to finger counting at 1 meter distance from the face, to detect a moving hand or perceive light.
- II. **Tests for near vision:** Near vision is measured using standard near charts with the patient wearing reading glasses. If no near charts are available, use a newspaper and record the smallest print seen/read.

Colour vision

Colour vision examination assesses the function of retinal cones and optic nerve. *Ishihara plates* are most commonly employed for this purpose. They consist of a series of plates in which coloured spots contain shapes which the patient is asked to pick out. Error will be made if patient's colour vision is defective. The causes of abnormalities of colour vision are depicted in Box 5.6.

Box 5.6: THE CAUSES OF ABNORMALITIES OF COLOUR VISION SEEN

1. Congenital red/green colour blindness (sex-linked X chromosomal)
2. Age-related macular disease/degeneration
3. Optic nerve disease

Visual field

Testing visual field assesses the function of the peripheral and central retina, the optic pathways and the cortex. (Read chap 15 on nervous system).

Measurement of intraocular tension (Fig. 5.5): The rough estimate of intraocular tension can be made by fluctuating the eye gently with the index fingers. Accurate measurement is done with a *tonometer*.



Fig. 5.5: Measurement of intraocular tension

General inspection

First of all, look at the face and head for general appearance before making a detailed inspection of the eyes.

- An abnormal head posture suggests problems with ocular motility
- Asymmetry of face or head or facial dysmorphism indicates development abnormality
- Eczema can suggest the likelihood of associated allergic eye disease.

Sometimes, observation of behaviour may suggest the clinical problem.

- Patients with severe ocular pain or photophobia wear dark glasses
- Patients with diplopia (double vision) may close one eye
- Patients with hemianopia may bump into objects on the blind side
- When central vision is lost, person may not make eye-to-eye contact but looks to one side of the person whom he/she is addressing.

Now carry out the gross inspection of various components of the eye.

(1) **The eyeball** (position and alignment). Stand in front of the patient and survey the eyes for position and alignment with each other.

Protrusion of the eye ball is called proptosis or exophthalmos seen in Grave's disease. For causes and further details, read page 87.

(2) **The eyebrows.** Inspect the eyebrows for any scales on the skin and eyelashes.

- Scales are seen in seborrheic dermatitis
- Sparseness of hair in lateral third of eyebrow is seen in hypothyroidism.

(3) **The eyelids.** Note the position of the lids in relation to eyeballs. Inspect the palpebral fissure, position of the upper lid, any oedema of the lids, xanthelasma (Fig. 5.6) and redness of eyes. Evert both lids to examine the palpebral conjunctiva and the fornix.

- Pull down the lower lid while patient looks up.
- To evert the upper lid ask the patient to look down, grasp the eye lashes, press gently on the upper border of tarsal plate with a cotton tip and swing the lashes up (Fig. 5.7).

- Palpebral fissure is wide due to refraction of lids, seen in Grave's disease



Fig. 5.6: Xanthelasma of upper eyelids at inner canthus. These are seen in patients with hyperlipidaemia



Fig. 5.7: Method of eversion of the upper eyelid for examination

- The eyeball may be displaced inwards and becomes deeply set, called *enophthalmos* is seen in Horner's syndrome and *phthisis bulbi* or *microphthalmia*. It may be due to ageing (physiological)
- Narrow palpebral fissure is due to drooping of the upper lid (ptosis). Later due to gross drooping of the upper lid, palpebral fissure may get obliterated. The ptosis may be congenital or acquired due to 3rd nerve palsy, ocular muscle weakness and cervical sympathetic paralysis (Read the causes of ptosis in the Box 5.7)
- Blepharitis is an inflammation along the lid margins often with crusting or scaling.

Common ocular abnormalities related to medicine

1. Exophthalmos (proptosis)

It is defined as forward protrusion of one or both the eyes with the result a portion of white sclera is clearly visible above and below the cornea. Previously, it was defined as visibility of lower sclera of more than 2 mm when the patient looks straight.

Methods of testing

1. Stand in front of the patient and ask him/her to look straight forward. Observe the visibility of upper and lower sclera.

The visibility of the lower sclera is more important than upper in proptosis. Both are clearly visible in moderate to severe proptosis (Fig. 5.8).

2. Another method is to stand behind the patient. Tilt the patient's head backwards. Look vertically down the slanting forehead in the plane of superciliary ridges. Protrusion/visibility of the globe indicates proptosis.
3. It is measured using a Hertel exophthalmometer—a hand held instrument that records the position of anterior corneal surface relative to lateral orbital rim.

Types

- Unilateral
- Bilateral

Causes: The causes of unilateral and bilateral exophthalmos are given in the Table 5.1. Exophthalmos is a common sign of Grave's ophthalmopathy (For detailed

Table 5.1: Common causes of exophthalmos

Unilateral	Bilateral
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Early thyrotoxicosis (i.e. eyes are not necessarily involved) • Retrobulbar tumour. Painless, progressive exophthalmos • Cavernous sinus thrombosis (Proptosis, chemosis, 3rd, 4th, 6th cranial nerve palsy) • Orbital pseudotumour (pain, limited eye movements and proptosis) • Orbital cellulitis (i.e. pain, lid erythema, proptosis and conjunctival chemosis—Fig. 5.3) • Carotid cavernous fistula (i.e. proptosis, diplopia, glaucoma, redness of eye and a bruit may be heard on auscultation of head or orbit. It is called pulsating exophthalmos) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thyrotoxicosis (Fig. 5.8). • Superior vena cava syndrome (Raised JVP, congestion, chemosis and proptosis) • Craniostenosis • Bilateral cavernous sinus thrombosis • Cushing's syndrome

discussion, Read Grave's disease or hyperthyroidism as a case discussion in "Bed side Medicine without tears by Prof. SN Chugh").

Consequences of exophthalmos

Exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia. It refers to weakness of extraocular muscles due to increase in interstitial fluid volume and increase in retrobulbar pressure.

Malignant exophthalmos. Progressive bulging of the eyeballs, conjunctival oedema, corneal ulceration and visual loss are its clinical hallmarks.

Ptosis

Drooping of the upper eyelid is called *ptosis*. In complete ptosis, palpebral fissure is obliterated.

Types

- Congenital or acquired
- Complete and partial
- Unilateral or bilateral

Causes: Congenital ptosis may be unilateral or bilateral, results from dysgenesis of the levator palpebrae superioris or from abnormal insertion of its aponeurosis into the lid. Acquired ptosis can be unilateral 3rd nerve palsy and Horner's syndrome but is usually bilateral in tabes dorsalis, myasthenia gravis, snake bite and periodic paralysis etc. The common causes of ptosis are given in the Box 5.7.

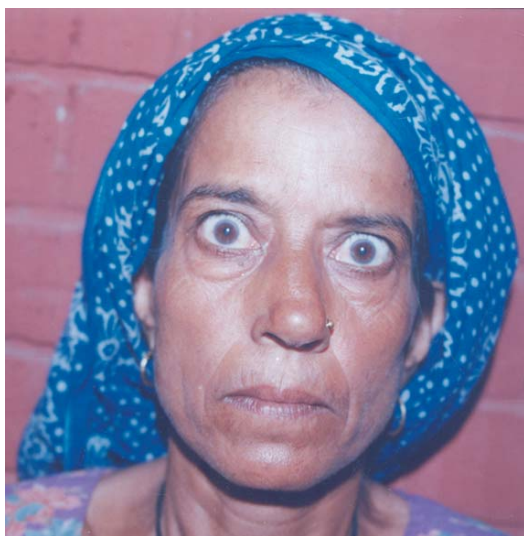


Fig. 5.8: Bilateral exophthalmos. Note the visibility of both upper and lower sclera with staring look. The palpebral fissures are wide



Fig. 5.9: Ptosis due to 3rd cranial nerve paralysis on left side



Fig. 5.10: Ptosis of right eye due to Horner's syndrome (pseudoptosis)



Fig. 5.11: Bilateral ptosis due to myasthenia gravis

Box 5.7: COMMON CAUSES OF PTOSIS

A. Unilateral

- 3rd nerve palsy (Fig. 5.9)
- Horner's syndrome (partial or pseudoptosis; Fig. 5.10)
- Mechanical ptosis (enlargement or deformity of upper lid due to infection, trauma, swelling on it)

B. Bilateral

- Tabes dorsalis
- Myasthenia gravis (Fig. 5.11)
- Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (due to mutations of mitochondrial DNA)
- Myotonia dystrophica
- Oculopharyngeal myopathy
- Congenital (uncommon)
- Snake bite
- Botulism
- Periodic paralysis
- Senile ptosis (seen in old persons)

Testing for ptosis

Stand in front to the patient (face to face).

Ask the patient to look upwards or elevate the upper eyelid voluntarily.

In ptosis, patient cannot elevate the eyelid voluntarily but sometimes he elevates the lid by exerting the frontal belly of occipitofrontalis, therefore, to rule it out, now push down the frontal belly of occipitofrontalis by your left hand and ask the patient to look upwards. Now if he/she cannot do so, ptosis is present.

Pseudoptosis. It refers to partial drooping of the upper lid. It is seen in Horner's syndrome (Fig. 5.10).

The differences between ptosis (3rd nerve palsy) and pseudoptosis or partial ptosis due to sympathetic involvement (Horner's syndrome) are summarised in the Table 5.2.

Table 5.2: Ptosis in 3rd nerve palsy and Horner's syndrome

3rd cranial nerve palsy	Horner's syndrome
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usually complete ptosis (palpebral fissure is obliterated) • Pupil dilated on involved side • Squint (paralytic, horizontal and vertical) • No enophthalmos • Ciliospinal reflex present • Extraocular muscle palsy present • No loss of sweating on the side involved 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Partial or pseudoptosis (palpebral fissure is narrowed) • Pupil constricted • No squint • Enophthalmos present • Ciliospinal reflex absent • Extra-ocular muscles are normal but there is paralysis of Muller's muscles • Anhidrosis on affected side present

Note any redness of the eye, if any. The causes of red and painful eye (Fig. 5.2 and 5.3) have already been listed in Box 5.2.

Oedema of the lids or periorbital oedema (puffiness of face) is a part of generalised oedema (Read oedema feet). The puffiness of face especially in the morning is a characteristic feature of nephrotic syndrome.

Inspection of lacrimal apparatus. Look at the regions of lacrimal glands by everting the upper lid (lateral part) and lacrimal sac (lies between medial canthus and the nose) for swelling. Look for excessive watering or dryness of eyes.

- Lacrimal gland may enlarge in viral infections (e.g. mumps), sarcoidosis, lymphoma and carcinoma
- Excessive watering may be due to increased tear production (conjunctival inflammation), or impaired drainage (ectropion and nasolabial duct obstruction)

- Blockage of nasolabial duct causes watering, sticky discharge and may result in dacryocystitis with abscess formation in the lacrimal sac
- Medical conditions associated with dryness of eyes include; dehydration, side-effect of anticholinergics and antidepressants, vitamin A deficiency and Sjogren's syndrome (Sicca syndrome).

The conjunctiva and the sclera. Ask the patient to look up as you depress both lower lids with each thumb, exposing the sclera and conjunctiva. Note their *colour, vascular pattern, any swellings or nodules*. For better view of the sclera and bulbar conjunctivae (not palpebral conjunctiva) of the upper lid, ask the patient to look to each side and down. For seeing jaundice, this is a better view because yellowness is better seen against white background.

- Conjunctivae are pale in severe anaemia
- Yellow discoloration of conjunctivae and sclera indicate jaundice (Read jaundice in Bed-side medicine by Prof. SN Chugh)
- Redness of conjunctiva (Read red painful eyes in the Box 5.2).
- Pinguecula are triangular yellow deposits beneath the conjunctiva between the canthus and the edge of the cornea. They develop with the advancing age, are of no significance
- Foreign body stuck under the upper lid may cause irritation and photophobia. They are easily removed on everting the lid.

Normal sclera is white in colour, its yellow colouration indicates jaundice. In osteogenesis imperfecta the sclera are thin and appear blue. Inflammation (scleritis) causes a dusky red colour with pain. It is a characteristic feature of rheumatoid arthritis, SLE and other connective tissue disorders. White spots (Bitot's spots) are seen at the sclera near the lateral part of cornea near the angle of the eye (Fig. 5.12) in chronic vitamin A deficiency. Scleritis may progress to *scleromalacia* and rarely to perforation.

Commentary about jaundice (Fig. 5.13) (Read jaundice as a symptom of liver diseases in examination of abdomen) Normal serum bilirubin is 0.2 to 1.2 mg%.

Subclinical jaundice occurs with serum bilirubin between 1.2 to 2.5 mg.

Clinical jaundice i.e., the jaundice manifests clinically when serum bilirubin is >2.5 mg.

Unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia is said to be present if unconjugated bilirubin exceeds 80% of the total bilirubin.



Fig. 5.12: Bitot's spots. Note the white spots (←) at the sclera near the lateral angle of the eye



Fig. 5.13: Jaundice. Note the yellowness of sclerae

Conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia is said to be present if conjugated bilirubin exceeds 50% of the total bilirubin.

The cornea and the lens

Normal cornea is transparent with blood vessels at the junction between cornea and conjunctiva—called *limbus*. Inspect the cornea for any *opacity, scar, ulcer, abrasion* etc. *Look at the lens for opacity.*

The common abnormalities are;

1. **General loss of transparency** occurs in corneal oedema, trauma with foreign body, herpes simplex infection, acute glaucoma. Acute severe damage to corneal epithelium occurs in exophthalmos, chemical corneal injury leading to abrasion and ulceration.

Damage to the epithelium is difficult to see, but can be detected by instilling yellow fluorescein drops, which stains the affected area.

2. **Vascular pattern.** The blood vessels around the limbus dilate in response to a corneal disease or an injury, and is called *ciliary congestion/flush*.
3. **Corneal arcus.** It is a greyish-white arc or ring near the outer margin of the cornea. It is normally seen in older people. In younger people, it suggests hypercholesterolaemia.
4. **Corneal scar.** A corneal scar is a superficial greyish-white opacity in the cornea secondary to an old injury or inflammation.
5. **Kayser-Fleischer ring** is yellow or brown deposits of copper at the periphery of cornea seen in Wilson's disease (Fig. 5.14A).
6. **Corneal calcification** suggests long-standing hypercalcaemia or hyperparathyroidism. Corneal opacification is seen in familial lecithin-cholesterol acetyl transferase deficiency (Fig. 5.14B).
7. **Dryness of cornea** occurs in Vit. A deficiency, severe dry eye syndrome (Sicca syndrome or Sjogren's syndrome), and use of anticholinergics.
8. **The 5th cranial nerve palsy** leads to loss of corneal sensation and predisposes the cornea to injury and infection.

The normal lens is not visible on inspection. Advanced cataracts can be seen as chalky (milky) whiteness in the central hole of cornea (Fig. 5.15).

The iris

Examine the iris with torch light for any colour change (discolouration). Normally the iris is black in colour and a circular hole in the centre is called the *pupil*. Heterochromia refers to different colours of the iris, indicates intraocular disease or albinism. In inflammation (*iritis*), the iris looks muddy with a small pupil and there is ciliary flush (congestion). Iritis may be a manifestation of rheumatoid arthritis; connective tissue disease or a manifestation of other systemic disease such as sarcoidosis.

The pupils

Inspect the pupils for size, shape and symmetry. If the pupils are large (> 5 mm), small (3 mm) or unequal on two sides, measure them with a card with black holes of varying sizes. Pupillary inequality of less than 0.5 mm (anisocoria) is considered as normal.

Assess the pupillary reactions to light (direct and consensual) and accommodation.

Methods. Ask the patient to look at a distant object and shine a bright light or pin-torch obliquely into each pupil in turn. Note the following:

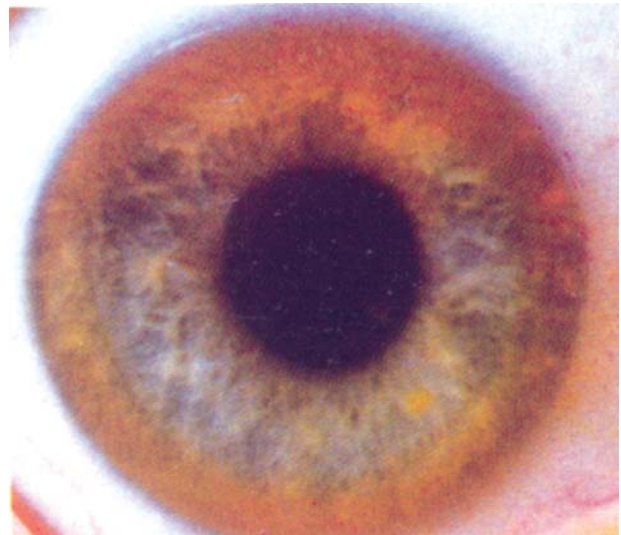


Fig. 5.14A: A Kayser-Fleischer ring. It is seen in Wilson's disease

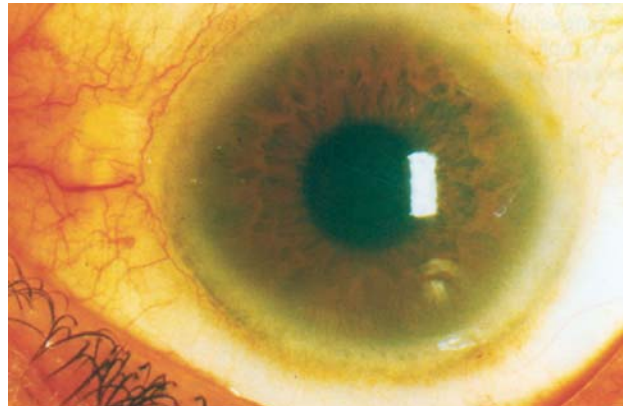


Fig. 5.14B: Opacification of the cornea is a striking clinical feature of patients with familial lecithin : cholesterol acyltransferase deficiency. The corneal opacification reflects the loss of reverse cholesterol transport from tissues of these patients

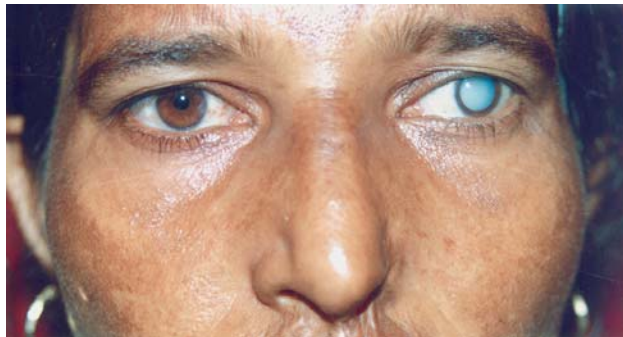


Fig. 5.15: Cataract (lens opacity) left eye

- Pupillary constriction in the same eye indicates direct reaction
- Pupillary constriction of the opposite pupil indicates consensual reaction.

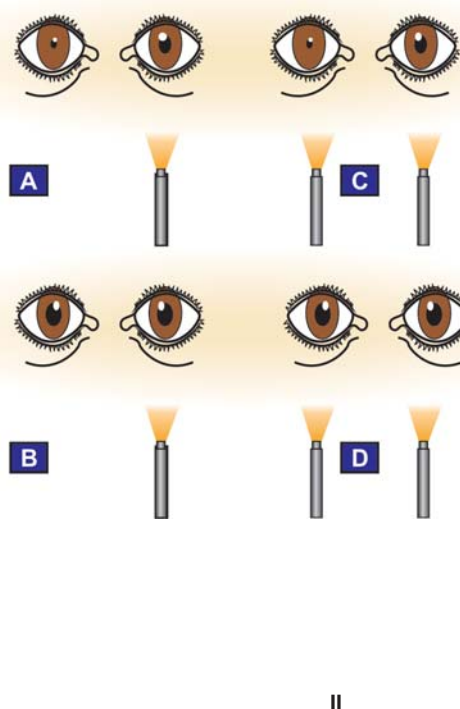
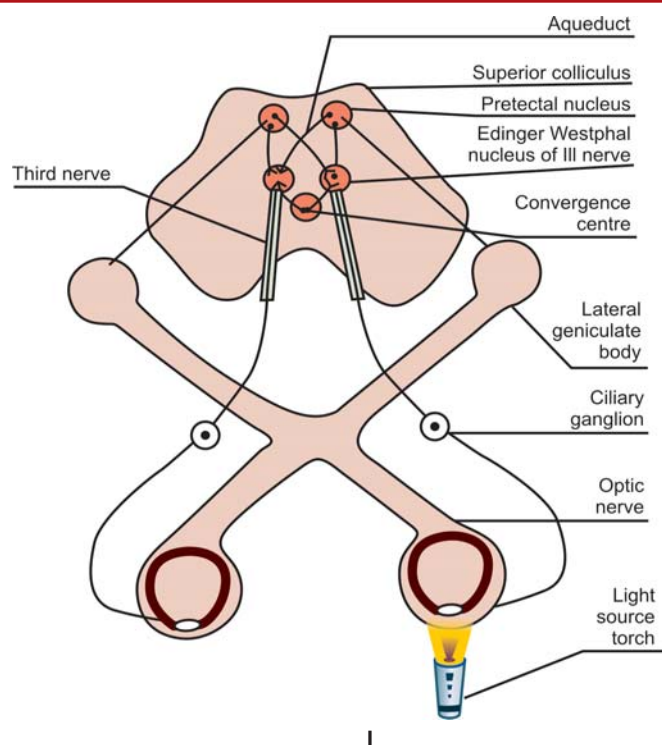


Fig. 5.16: The light reflex. I. Pathways, II. Direct and consensual light reflex and its interpretation.

I. Pupillary light reflex and its afferent and efferent pathways. Some fibres concerned with light reflex can bypass the lateral geniculate body to pretectal nucleus.

II. Direct and consensual constriction of pupils to light. Step 1: Shine a light source into the pupil in question. A. No direct constriction, consensual intact indicate topical mydriatics or Argyll Robertson pupil. B. No direct or consensual constriction indicates monocular blindness, Step 2: After 5 seconds, shine the light into the contralateral pupil. C. No direct constriction, but direct constriction of the contralateral pupil suggest topical mydriatics, Argyll Robertson pupil, or monocular blindness. D. No direct constriction of either pupil indicates death or profound brainstem damage

The light reflex pathways and interpretation of direct and consensual light reflex are presented in Fig. 5.16.

Warning: Always darken the room and use a bright light before labelling that a light reflex is absent.

If reaction to light is impaired or questionable, then test for near reaction or accommodation reaction in normal room light.

Method

To test the reaction to accommodation, ask the patient first to look into the distance and then at an object (finger or pencil) held at 10 cm distance from the face. Watch for pupillary constriction with near object (Fig. 5.17).

Bilateral pupillary constriction on convergence of the eyes to near object is called accommodation reflex.

Normal pupils are often described in the case notes by mnemonics *PERLA* (pupils equal and reactive to light and accommodation).

In Argyll-Robertson's pupil, the light reflex is absent and accommodation reflex (near reaction) is retained (Remember mnemonics AR pupil as Accommodation Retained).

In Adie's pupil, the light reflex is absent but accommodation reflex is slow.

Common abnormality of pupil (Table 5.3 and Fig. 5.18)

Unequal pupils (anisocoria)

Approximately 10-12% of normal individuals have a slight but clinically evident pupillary inequality. Such physiological unequal pupils react normally to light. Pathological pupils (variation >0.5 mm between two pupils) dilate and constricts abnormally. In the absence

Table 5.3: Pupillary abnormalities in common disorders

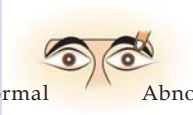
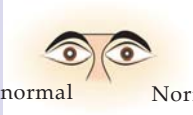

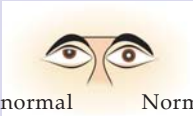
*Disorder	Size of pupil (Fig. 5.18)	Reaction
III cranial nerve paralysis or parasympatholytic agents use	 <p>Normal Abnormal</p> <p>A. Abnormal > normal side</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Efferent pupil defect • Light or accommodation reaction absent on the affected side • Normal side reacts consequently
Ciliary ganglion lesion (Adie's myotonic pupil)	 <p>Abnormal Normal</p> <p>B. Abnormal > normal side</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Light reaction absent on side affected • Accommodation reaction is slow and sustained
Retinal/optic nerve disease	— do — Abnormal > normal side	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Afferent pupil defect • Poor direct light reflex, normal consensual reflex (reaction) and normal accommodation reaction on the affected side • Reduced consensual reflex on the normal side
Neurosyphilis (pretectal lesion) Argyl-Robertson pupil	 <p>C. Small, irregular, unequal</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Light reflex absent • Accommodation reflex present
Sympathetic lesion (Horner's syndrome it consists of meiosis, ptosis, enophthalmos, anhidrosis, loss of ciliospinal reflex)	 <p>Abnormal Normal</p> <p>D. Abnormal < normal side</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reaction to light and accommodation present • Does not dilate with cocaine drops



Fig. 5.17: Testing for convergence

of local disease of the eye, the causes of constriction (meiosis) and dilatation (mydriasis) of pupil are given in the Table 5.4.

Test

From about 2 feet directly in front of the patient, shine a torch on to the patient's eye and ask the patient to look at it. Inspect the reflections in the cornea. Normally they should be visible slightly nasal to the centre of the pupils.

Asymmetry of the corneal reflections indicate a deviation from the normal ocular alignment (conjugate position)—called squint.

A *cover-uncover* test (Table 5.5) may reveal a slight or latent muscle imbalance not seen otherwise.

Squint

Deviation of eyes from their normally conjugate position is termed as *strabismus* or *squint*.

Classification

- I. **Paralytic.** It is caused by weakness or paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles.

Divergent: Due to paralysis of medial rectus.

Table 5.4: Causes of constriction and dilatation of pupils

Small pupil (constricted pupil)	Large pupil (dilated pupil)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sympathetic nerve fibres involved. Could be due to local eye disease or drug induced. Causes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cervical sympathetic compression in lymphomas (Horner's syndrome) • Brain-stem involvement (pontine haemorrhage). • Posterior inferior cerebellar artery infarction-lateral medullary syndrome • Neurosyphilis (Argyll-Robertson's pupil) • Local ocular disease e.g. iritis, iridocyclitis • Parasympathomimetic agents e.g. organophosphorous compounds, morphine, heroin etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3rd cranial nerve or ciliary ganglion is involved. It can be due to local disease of the eye or drug induced. Causes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3rd cranial nerve palsy in midbrain (nuclear) or outside it in cavernous sinus (cavernous sinus thrombosis) • Parasympatholytic agents/drops (atropine, scopolamine, hyocin) • A tonic pupil (Holmes-Adie pupil) • Ciliary ganglion lesions (herpes infection, trauma, ischaemia due to diabetes) • Ocular diseases e.g. acute glaucoma, retinal or optic nerve disease.

Convergent: Due to paralysis of lateral rectus (Fig. 5.19A).

- II. **Non paralytic** (concomitant). There is no paralysis of extraocular muscles. It is caused by an imbalance in ocular muscle tone (Fig. 5.19B).

The differences between paralytic and nonparalytic squints are given in the Table 5.5 and represented in Fig. 5.20.

Testing of ocular movements

- Testing movement in all directions of gaze is discussed in nervous system examination (read cranial nerves examination). Both eyes should move symmetrically with no diplopia. If diplopia is present, the most peripheral double vision is the one from the paretic eye.

Table 5.5: Differentiation between two types of squint

Feature	Paralytic	Non-paralytic
Cause	Paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles; may be convergent or divergent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No paralysis of the muscles • It is due to imbalance in ocular muscle tone, hence, mostly hereditary
Onset	Acute, acquired in later life	Slow, present since childhood
Movements	Restricted in the direction of paralysed muscle	Good in all the directions
Diplopia	Present	Absent
Associated symptom and signs	Long-standing paralytic squint often results in abnormal head posture with the head turned or tilted to minimize diplopia	As diplopia is absent in this type of squint (diplopia is centrally suppressed but amblyopia-lazy eye may result. There is no abnormal head posture)



Figures 5.19A and B: Squint. A. Paralytic (convergent squint due to 3rd nerve palsy) B. Nonparalytic. (concomitant)

Table 5.6: Analysis of paralytic and nonparalytic squint











Nonparalytic squint (imbalance of ocular muscle tone)		Paralytic squint (weakness of one or more extracurricular muscles)	
<p>Convergent</p>  <p>Cover Uncover test It is helpful to diagnose monocular nonparalytic squint (for example right) as described below :</p>  <p>Corneal reflections asymmetric</p>  <p>— Cover</p> <p>The right eye moves outwards to fix on the light. The left eye is not seen but moves inward to same degree</p>  <p>— Uncover</p> <p>The left eye moves outward to fix on the light. The right eye deviates.</p>	<p>Divergent</p> 	<p>Looking to the right</p>  <p>Eyes are conjugate</p> <p>Looking straight</p>  <p>Squint appears</p> <p>Looking to the left</p>  <p>Squint is maximum</p> <hr/> <p>Looking down and to the right</p>  <p>The left eye cannot look down turned inwards. Deviation is maximum in this direction</p> <hr/> <p>Looking straight a hand</p>  <p>The eye is pulled outward by the action of VIth nerve. Upward, downward and inward movements are lost. Ptosis and dilated pupil present.</p>	<p>Left VIth CN palsy</p> <p>Left IV CN Paralysis</p> <p>Left IIIrd CN paralysis</p> <p>A</p> <p>B</p>

Fig. 5.20: Deviation of the eyes due to squint A. Cover and uncover test for nonparalytic squint B. Paralytic squint due to 6th, 4th and 3rd nerve paralysis. CN means cranial nerve

- The cover/uncover test (Fig. 5.20). The cover/uncover test is particularly useful in detecting small concomitant squints in children.

Method (Fig. 5.20)

- Ask the patient to look at a distant object.
- Cover one eye
- Closely observe uncovered eye for any movements. If it moves to take up fixation, that eye is squinting
- Repeat the sequence for the other eye
- Tests for paralytic squint. Determine the direction of gaze that maximizes the deviation. The paralysis of left VI, IV and III are diagrammatically represented in Fig. 5.20B.

The ocular fundus

Examination of the ocular fundus constitutes an important part of complete medical examination. Fundus is seen with the help of an ophthalmoscope (Fig. 5.21). Valuable informations can be gathered about the state of the optic nerve head, and of the arteries and veins of the retina, in addition to the detection of local eye disorders.

In general, one should examine the fundus without dilating the pupil but it needs expertise and you can not see the peripheral parts very well. To see the more peripheral structures, to evaluate the macula well or to investigate unexplained visual loss, ophthalmologists or internists dilate the pupil with some mydriatic drops unless contraindicated (see the Box 5.8).

Box 5.8:

CONTRAINDICATIONS FOR MYDRIATIC DROPS

- Head injury and coma, in which continuing observations of pupillary reactions are essential
- Any suspicion of narrow-angle glaucoma (i.e. ask whether they have ever seen halos i.e. coloured rings around lights or the presence of shallow anterior chamber)

Steps of examination

- The patient should be examined either sitting or lying down in a darkened room.
- Ask the patient to look straight at a distant object and blink and breath normally.
- Stand or sit on the side to be examined at an arm's length from the patient and keep the eyes level with that of the patient.
- To look at the right eye, hold the ophthalmoscope with lenses at zero in the right hand (Fig. 5.21).
- Use your right eye to examine the patient's right eye and vice-versa (left eye for patient's left eye).

In case, if the examiner has difficulty using the nondominant eye, examine the patient from above while the patient is looking at a distant object.

- Switch on the instrument and shine it at pupil. The ophthalmoscope should then be brought as close as possible to the patient's eye and the light is directed slightly nasally.

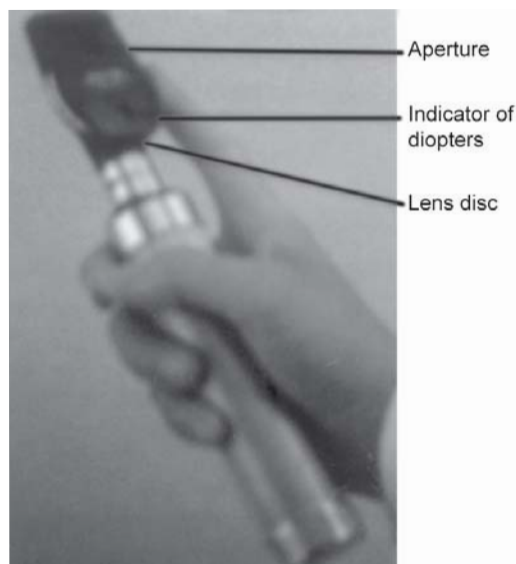


Fig. 5.21: Ophthalmoscope

- If the eye closes, open it gently.
- Demonstrate the red reflex of the fundus and note the nature of any opacities in the media.

Opacities in the media of the eye (cornea, anterior chamber, lens, vitreous) will appear as black specks or lines against the red glow.

- Keeping the beam pointing in the abovementioned direction and the red reflex in view, move close to the patient, stopping just clear off the lashes.
- In this way, optic disc can be found because of angle of approach. If, instead of disc, retinal vessels are in focus (seen), follow them to reach the fundus.
- If the optic disc is not in focus, the strength of the lenses of the ophthalmoscope should be gradually reduced until the disc becomes sharply focussed.
- *Examine the fundus systematically for:*
 - Optic disc (shape, colour, physiological cup, margins etc).
 - Retinal blood vessels.
 - Macula
 - The periphery of the fundus.
- Note any abnormality considering the fundus as a clock with the disc at the centre. The disc diameter (1.5 mm) is used as a unit of measurement; for example you can say haemorrhage seen at 3'O clock position at two discs diameter distance from the disc.

Uses of ophthalmoscopy including fundoscopy

1. **To detect opacities in the media.** The ocular media (cornea, lens and vitreous) are normally clear. Note any opacity while observing the red reflex. Dense

opacities completely obscure the reflex (e.g. cataract). The depth of the opacity can be determined by moving the ophthalmoscope.

- Corneal opacities move in opposite direction
- Lens opacity stay stationary
- Vitreous opacities move in the same direction of ophthalmoscope.

2. **Refractory errors** (e.g. myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism).

- *Myopia:* Minus (concave) lenses are required. Sometimes, it may not be possible to focus on the retina unless patient wears his/her glasses. The myopic disc often looks larger and pale with surrounding chorioretinal atrophy.
- *Hypermetropia.* Plus (convex) lenses are required. The hypermetropic disc appears pink and swollen (pseudopapilloedema)
- *Astigmatism.* The radii of curvature of the cornea in different planes are not regular. When severe, refractory errors cannot be corrected with ophthalmoscope. The disc may look distorted.

3. **To examine the fundus.** The steps of fundus examination have already been described. Here, the normal and abnormal fundi are highlighted.

A. Normal fundus

(i) The optic disc

Shape: Round or slightly oval (Fig. 5.22).

Colour: Pink with slight temporal pallor.

Physiological cup: a depression in the central part, is more pale than the surrounding disc and from it retinal vessels enter and leave the eye. It varies in depth and size but diameter should not exceed 50% of the disc.

Edge (margin) of the disc: Quite commonly, there is a surrounding white scleral ring, a dark pigmented ring or a stippled choroidal ring.

The retinal blood vessels: They radiate from the disc, dividing dichotomously into many branches as they pass towards the periphery. The arteries or arterioles have a smaller calibre than the veins, and have a bright red colour. Healthy vessel walls are not visible. Note the normal and abnormal pulsations.

Spontaneous venous pulsation is a normal finding; while spontaneous retinal artery pulsations are abnormal and occurs in glaucoma and aortic regurgitation.

Macular region. It is a portion of the posterior retina containing xanthophilic pigment (hence, macula lutea) and two or more layers of ganglion cells. The *fovea* (5.5 mm in diameter) lies at the

centre of macula and is devoid of blood vessels. Macular involvement produces greater reduction of the vision than similar changes in any other part.

Periphery of the fundus. It is examined only when pupil is dilated with a mydriatic (tropicamide 0.5% drops). Certain disease processes i.e. retinal tears and retinitis pigmentosa can be diagnosed.

B. The abnormalities of the fundus (Fig. 5.23 to 5.30)

1. Retinal atrophy

Old injuries and inflammation may result in atrophic scars. White patches of atrophic retina occur in congenital coloboma, high myopia and retinal degeneration.

2. Abnormal pigmentation

Macular degeneration (Fig. 5.23) occurs in old persons (age related process) in which retinal pigment epithelial changes cause hypopigmenta-

tion and pigment clumping at the macula. Central vision is poor.

Melanomas. Benign choroidal melanomas are flat dark lesions while malignant melanomas are raised, enlarge progressively and often metastasize.

Retinitis pigmentosa is associated with pigment deposits like bony spicules, seen in Laurence-Moon-Biedle Syndrome.

3. Abnormal exudates (Table 5.7)

4. Optic atrophy

It is defined as atrophy or death of optic nerve fibres leading to reduction or loss of tiny blood vessels. In this condition, the disc is paler than normal, and may even be white (Fig. 5.24).

In optic atrophy, the number of capillaries that cross the disc margin is reduced from normal 10 to 7 or less (Kestenbaum's sign).

The classification of optic atrophy into *primary* (disc is flat, chalky-white in colour with clear cut margins), *secondary* (atrophy follows papilloedema) and *consecutive* (glaucomatous) is confusing, hence, avoided.



Fig. 5.22: Normal fundus

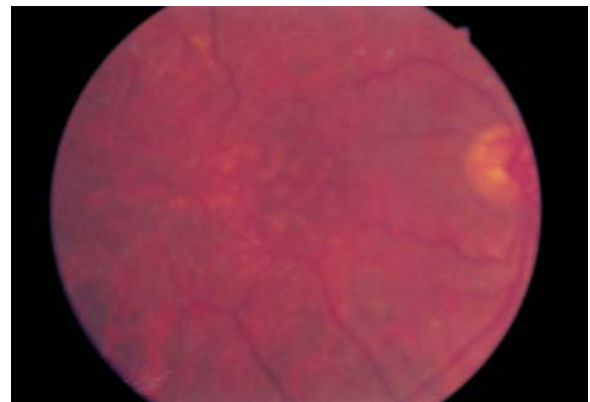


Fig. 5.23: Age related macular degeneration. Note the accumulation of drusen within macula. They appear as scattered yellow subretinal deposits

Table 5.7: Abnormal deposits on the retina

Character	Hard exudates (Fig. 5.29)	Soft exudates (Fig. 5.28)
1. Site	They are deep	They are superficial.
2. Margins	Well defined, deep seated (hence hard)	Irregular or ill-defined, superficial (hence soft)
3. Arrangement	They are often arranged in rings. At the macula, they may arrange in a star (macular star)	They look like deposits of cotton-wool
4. Pathogenesis	They are caused by leakage of proteins through an abnormal permeable blood vessel.	They occur around areas of infarcted retina and may be associated with other features of retinal ischaemia (venous dilatation, haemorrhage, new blood vessels). They are due to swelling of optic nerve fibre layer.
5. Causes	They are seen in hypertension, diabetes, and following retinal vascular occlusions.	They are seen in retinal artery ischaemia put it infarction due to hypertension or retinal vein occlusion

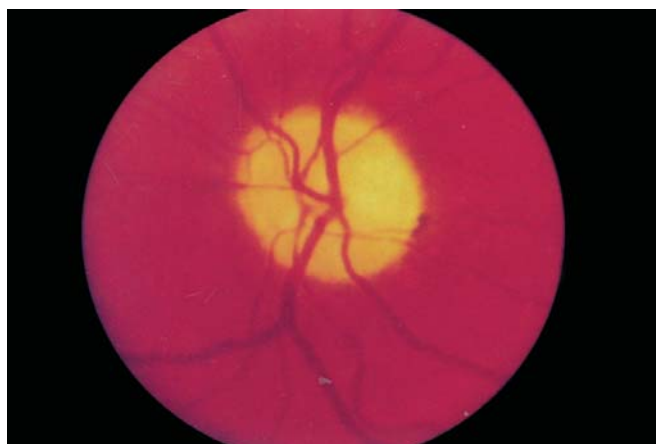


Fig. 5.24: Fundus photograph of a patient with optic atrophy. Note the pallor of disc with arteriolar narrowing

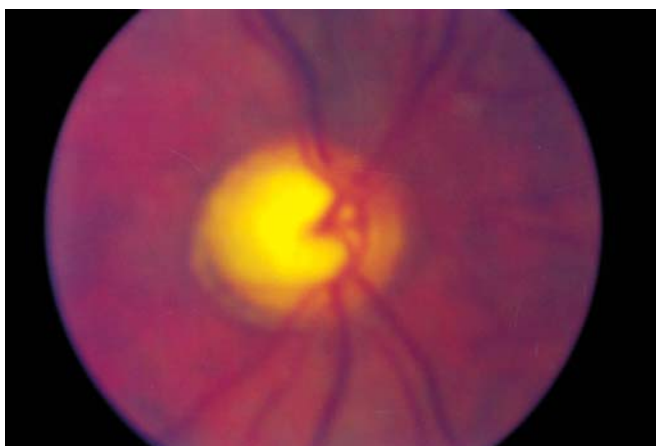


Fig. 5.25: Glaucomatous optic atrophy. The physiological cup is enlarged. The disc is pale. The retinal vessels are displaced nasally because of angulation of the optic cup

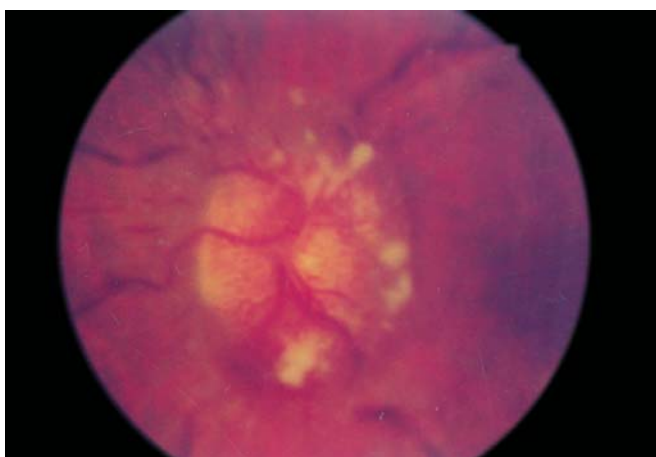
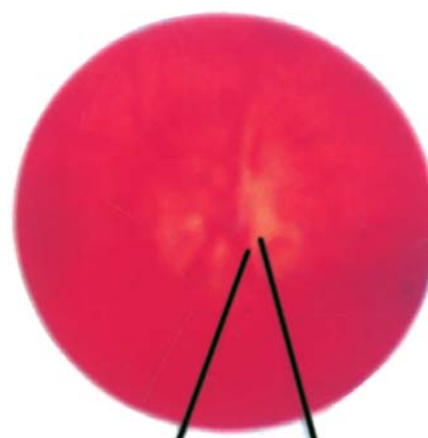


Fig. 5.26: Papilloedema. The fundus photograph was taken from a patient with raised intracranial pressure. Note the disc oedema, haemorrhage and cotton wool exudates



Clear focus here (periphery) at -1 diopter Clear focus here (disc) at $+2$ diopters

Calculation of papilloedema
 $+2 - (-1) = 3$, therefore disc
 is elevated by 3 diopters,
 hence, papilloedema is 3D
 (diopters)

Fig. 5.27: Calculation of papilloedema in diopters (read the text)

Causes: They are given in the Box 5.9.

Box 5.9:

CAUSES OF OPTIC ATROPHY

1. Inherited, e.g. Leber's optic atrophy
2. Toxic, e.g. ethambutol, methyl alcohol, carbon-monoxide and ethylene glycol (antifreeze)
3. Glaucoma (Fig. 5.25)
4. Extensive retinal disease
5. Ischaemic optic atrophy
6. Demyelinating disease, e.g. multiple sclerosis, Devic's disease
7. Trauma, e.g. avulsion of optic nerve
8. Tumours, e.g. pituitary adenoma, craniopharyngioma

5. Papilloedema

It is bilateral optic disc swelling from raised intracranial pressure. All other forms of optic disc swelling, e.g. from inflammation of optic nerve (optic neuritis) or ischaemic optic neuropathy should be called "optic disc oedema" rather than papilloedema. This convention is arbitrary but serves to avoid confusion. Disc changes in papilloedema are given in the Box 5.10 and Fig. 5.26.

Calculation of papilloedema in diopters: The elevated disc of papilloedema can be measured by noting the differences in diopters of the two lenses used to focus clearly on the disc and on uninvolved retina (Fig. 5.27).



Fig. 5.28: Central retinal vein occlusion. The veins are tortuous and enlarged, and haemorrhages of varying shapes are scattered throughout. The optic disk is obscured completely. A few cotton wool spots exudates can be seen on nasal side

Box 5.10: OPTIC DISC IN PAPPILLOEDEMA (FIG. 5.26)

- The swollen disc is pink and hyperemic
- Disc vessels clearly visible, more numerous, curve over the borders of the disc. There is venous dilatation and loss of venous pulsations
- The margins are blurred
- The physiological cup is not visible, i.e. cup is lost and full.

Causes: They are given in the Table 5.8.

Table 5.8: Causes of papilloedema

1. Raised intracranial pressure due to tumours, abscesses, meningitis, obstructive hydrocephalus, subdural haematoma, subarachnoid haemorrhages, dural sinus thrombosis and idiopathic.
2. Cerebral oedema
3. Accelerated or malignant hypertension (hypertensive crisis)
4. Haematological disorders, e.g. anaemia, leukaemia
5. Respiratory diseases, e.g. emphysema, carbon dioxide narcosis
6. Vitamin A deficiency or excess
7. Hypoparathyroidism
8. Optic nerve tumour (Foster-Kennedy syndrome) in which there is ipsilateral optic atrophy and contralateral papilloedema
9. Pseudopapilloedema due to drusen (optic nerve drusen are refractile deposits within substance of the optic nerve head)
10. Papillitis

6. Optic neuritis

It results from inflammatory, demyelinating or vascular disease leading to marked loss of vision. There may be retrobulbar involvement (retrobulbar

neuritis in which neither the doctor sees any abnormality of the fundus nor the patient sees anything, i.e. vision is lost. The difference between optic neuritis and papilloedema are summarised in the Box 5.11. Optic neuritis is frequently followed by optic atrophy, with residual reduction in visual acuity and scotomas (central or peripheral). It may occur alone, bilaterally (Devic's disease) or during the course of multiple sclerosis.

Box 5.11: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN OPTIC NEURITIS AND PAPPILLOEDEMA

Optic neuritis	Papilloedema
• Eye movements are painful	They are painless
• Ocular tenderness on compression	No such tenderness
• In papillitis, there is hyperaemia and some swelling of the disc	Marked swelling of the disc with loss of cup (e.g. cup is full)
• Severe visual loss	Minimal visual impairment
• There may be signs of inflammation, e.g. hazy vitreous and retinal exudates	No signs of inflammation

7. Retinal haemorrhages

Superficial retinal haemorrhage are flame-shaped because of tracking of the blood along the horizontally arranged nerve fibres. They occur in hypertension.

Deep haemorrhages are round blotches and spots contained by vertically arranged deep retinal layers. Microaneurysms also look very similar. Both occur in the dots (aneurysms) and blots (haemorrhage) of diabetic retinopathy.

Subhyloid haemorrhages, situated in front of retina, are occasionally very large round haemorrhage obscuring the underlying retina. They may occur following subarachnoid haemorrhage or follow bleeding from new retinal vessels in diabetic retinopathy.

Vitreous haemorrhage. The fundus is hidden by a dark haze of blood. The blood may be distributed diffusely through the vitreous gel or form clots which cause tadpole-like floaters. It is an important cause of sudden loss of vision.

Causes: They are given in the Box 5.12.

Box 5.12: CAUSES OF RETINAL HAEMORRHAGES

- Hypertension
- Diabetes
- Trauma
- Blood disorders, e.g. anaemia, sickle cell disease, leukaemia, bleeding diathesis
- Anticoagulants
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Retinal vein occlusion
- Age-related macular disease

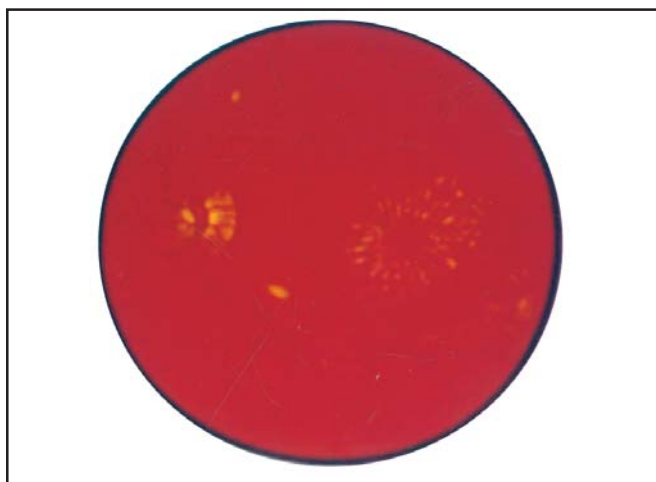


Fig. 5.29: Hypertensive retinopathy with macular star. Note the punctate hard exudates forming a macular star. Note also the flame-shaped haemorrhage and two small soft exudates



Fig. 5.30: Diabetic background retinopathy. Note the blot haemorrhages in different stages of resolution, microaneurysm (dots) and a few hard exudates in the lateral part of retina. This is a characteristic appearance as dot and blot appearance of fundus in diabetic background retinopathy

8. Occlusion of central artery of retina

It refers to sudden, and often total loss of vision. It is characterised by:

- Pale and swollen optic disc and surrounding retina
- A cherry-red spot at the macula
- The retinal arteries are narrow and thread-like.

It is due to embolic occlusion of retinal vessels from an atheromatous plaque.

9. **Retinal vein occlusion.** In central vein occlusion a little vision is retained. It is characterised by:

- Large flame-shaped haemorrhages and cotton-wool spots splashed over the fundus (Fig. 5.28)
- Swelling of the optic disc
- Gross venous dilatation.

10. **Retinopathy.** The two common types of retinopathy seen are hypertensive and diabetic. The fundus changes are given in the Box 5.13.

Box 5.13: FUNDUS CHANGES IN TWO COMMON RETINOPATHY

Hypertensive retinopathy Fig. 5.29	Diabetic retinopathy Fig. 5.30
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Diffuse or segmental narrowing of arterioles/arteries and thickening of their walls, <i>venous nipping</i>. The thick walled arterioles compress the veins at crossings giving "silver wiring" appearance 2. Flame-shaped haemorrhages 3. Hard exudates. Sometimes star-shaped exudates around the macula (macular star) 4. Papilloedema may occur especially in malignant hypertension 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Microaneurysms. Capillary microaneurysms are the earliest abnormality detected in background retinopathy 2. Dots and blots haemorrhage 3. Both hard and soft exudates (cotton-wool) 5. Neovascularisation—new vessels extend into vitreous and may bleed, are seen in proliferative diabetic retinopathy <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pre-retinal and vitreous haemorrhage • Fibrosis, retinitis proliferans and retinal detachment

Investigations for a case with eye disorder

1. **Refraction test.** It is done to ascertain the optical power of an eye. This is performed subjectively by placing neutralising lenses in front of the eye and simultaneously assessing the visual acuity. An objective refraction is also performed in conjunction with a retinoscope.
2. **Measurement of intraocular tension** (see the method. Fig. 5.5). It is measured by tonometry.
3. **Ophthalmoscopy.** It has already been discussed.
4. **A slit lamp examination.** It consists of a binocular microscope mounted on a table with an adjustable beam of light. This provides a magnified optical section of the various structures of the eye to be examined.

5. **Fundus photography and fluorescein angiography.** They are useful adjunct to the diagnosis of retinal and choroidal disorder. The fluorescein angiography is superior to plain fundus photography because a detailed assessment of retinal and choroidal vasculature is possible after injection of sodium fluorescein—a dye. The blue filter of fundus camera excites fluorescence as the dye circulates.
6. **Ultrasonography.** It is used to detect retinal detachments and intraocular or orbital tumours.
7. **Dacrocystography.** A contrast study is used to identify the obstruction in lacrimal drainage system.
8. **CT scan and MRI.** They are also useful in the diagnosis of orbital disease.
9. **Electrophysiological study:**
 - **Visual evoked potential (VEP).** If a stimulus is applied, for example, to the eye, it would normally be impossible to detect small EEG response evoked by it over the occipital cortex as the signal will be lost in background noise. However, if EEG data from repeated stimuli (100-

1000) are averaged electronically and the noise is removed then an evoked potential can be recorded whose latency (time interval between stimulus onset and its maximum positive wave of the evoked potential, P100 wave) and amplitude can be measured.

The abnormalities in evoked potential occur in the form of either conduction delay (increased latency) or reduction in amplitude of the wave form or both.

It is useful for diagnosis of lesion of the visual pathways, usually demyelinating optic neuritis (retrobulbar neuritis) seen in multiple sclerosis, compressive lesion of the optic pathway, toxic and nutritional amblyopias, Leber's optic atrophy and hereditary ataxia.

VEP can be used to distinguish hysterical from cortical blindness.

Electroretinograms are used in assessing the patients with hereditary or acquired retinal degenerations.

6

The Mouth and the Pharynx

THE MOUTH AND THE PHARYNX (FIG. 6.1)

The mouth is an open cavity. The lips are muscular folds that form the opening of the mouth. When mouth is opened, the gums (gingivae) and teeth are visible. Note the scalloped shape of the gingival margins and the pointed interdental papillae. The gingiva is firmly attached to the teeth and to the bone (maxilla or mandible) in which they are seated. In the lighter-skinned people, the gingiva is pale to coral pink and lightly stippled; while in darker-skinned persons, it may be diffusely or partly brown. A midline fold called *labial frenulum* connects each lip with the gingiva.

Each tooth, composed mostly of dentine, lies rooted in a bony socket with only its enamel-covered crown exposed. Small blood vessels and nerves enter the teeth through its apex and pass into the pulp. The adult has 32 teeth (16 in each jaw). Each half of upper and lower jaw, thus, has 8 teeth (2 incisors, one canine, two premolars and 3 molars).

The dorsum of the tongue is covered with papillae giving it a rough surface. Some of these papillae look like red dots on the thin white coat that often covers the tongue. The under surface of the tongue has no papillae. Note the midline *lingual frenulum* that connects the tongue to the floor of the mouth. At the base of the tongue, the duct of *submandibular glands* (*Wharton's ducts*) passes forwards and medially to open on papillae that lie on each side of the lingual frenulum.

Each *parotid duct* (*Stensen's duct*) empties into the mouth near the upper 2nd molar where its location is marked by a small papilla. The *buccal mucosa* lines the cheeks.

Above and behind the tongue, there is an arch formed by the *anterior* and *posterior pillars*, *soft palate* and *uvula*. The tonsils lie between anterior and posterior pillars on each side. In the adult, the tonsils are often small or absent. A meshwork of blood vessels may web the soft palate. Between the soft palate and the tongue, the pharynx is visible (Fig. 6.1).

Examination

The examination of mouth and pharynx is conducted with the patient sitting up comfortably either in bed or in a chair. A torch light, a tongue depressor (spatula) and a pair of gloves are essential. The examination sequence includes;

- Inspection of the lips, teeth, gums, tongue, palate and oropharynx
- Palpation of the sides of the tongue, floor of the mouth and tonsillar regions.

Inspection

The lips

The parts of the lips to be examined for their clinical significance are depicted in the Table 6.1.

The teeth

Ask the patient to show the teeth. If the patient has a denture, ask him/her to remove it and open the mouth

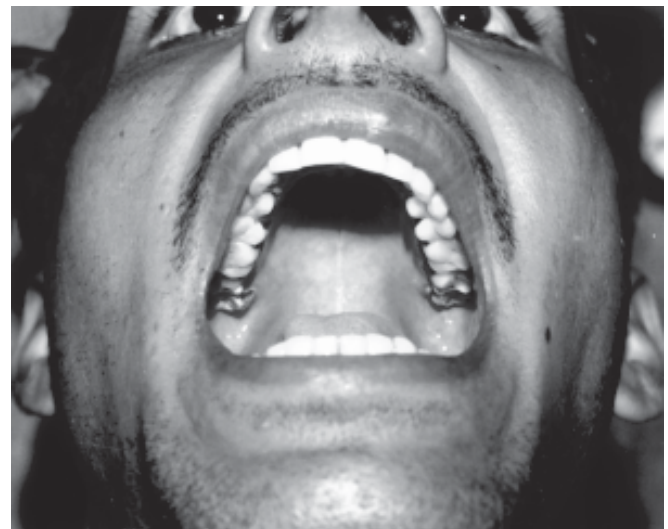


Fig. 6.1: The oral cavity—an inner view

Table 6.1: Inspection of lips

Site	Look for	Significance
Philtrum (the shallow depression running from nose to upper lip)	Any scar	Tell-tale scar indicates repaired cleft-lip (Fig. 6.2), therefore, if present inspect the palate for signs of a cleft
Angles or corners of the mouth	Cracks or fissures	Their presence indicate angular stomatitis. The cracks are reddish-brown superficial linear ulcers radiating from the angles of the mouth. The causes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Infection (perleche) in children - Ill-fitting or deficient denture in old persons - Severe iron deficiency anaemia - Vitamin B₂ (riboflavin) deficiency
Lips	Desquamation or inflammation of the lips (cheilitis)	Desquamation is common in cold weather Grouped vesicles on the lips on a red base with crusted lesions are seen in inflammation due to <i>herpes simplex labialis</i> (Fig. 6.3) Recurrent cheilitis with small blisters and exfoliation (a premalignant condition) is seen in fishermen and farmers exposed to sun and the wind
	Any ulcer	Carcinoma (epithelioma) occurs as an indolent ulcer on the lower lip with heaped up and indurated margins
	Any nodule	A keratoacanthoma (molluscum sebaceum) is a nodular lesion, commonly occurs on the upper lip due to overgrowth of stratum granulosum of the skin. It is a benign lesion, heals spontaneously.
	A granuloma	Pyogenic granuloma—a soft red raspberry like nodule on the upper lip occurs due to trauma
	An extragenital chancre	A small rounded, indurated lesion on the upper lip indicates secondary syphilis
	A crack	A crack in middle of lower lip seen in cold weather, is of no significance
	Any pigmentation	<i>Circumoral pigmentation</i> (multiple small brown or black spots on the skin around the mouth; may extend on to the lip and buccal mucosa) is seen in <i>Peutz-Jeghers syndrome</i> (inherited small bowel polyposis)
	Any telangiectasia	Their presence may signify the existence of others elsewhere in the small bowel
	Aphthous ulceration (Fig. 6.4)	Grasp and evert the lower or upper lip with the index finger and thumb of both the hands to display the mucous membrane of the lip. <i>Aphthous ulcers</i> are small superficial painful ulcers with a white or yellow base and a red narrow halo of hyperemia. Such ulcers are seen on the tongue, buccal mucosa and palate. Severe chronic aphthous ulceration may be seen in ulcerative colitis, Crohn's colitis, coeliac disease, malabsorption and Behcet's syndrome Behcet's syndrome is characterised by recurrent oral and genital ulcerations with gastrointestinal and neurological manifestations.
	Any cysts	Retention cysts of the mucous glands of the lower lips may be seen as rounded, bluish or white swellings.

widely. With the help of tongue depressor, retract first the lips and then the cheek so as to have a glimpse of all the teeth. Count the number of teeth present.

Look for any decay (caries)

- Dental caries is visible as chalky white area in the enamel surface of the teeth.

Caries- a common dental disease, occurs due to bad oral hygiene and is bacterial induced progressive destruction

of mineral and organic constituents of enamel and dentin.

Caries is related to lack of fluoride, hence to prevent teeth decay, most of the dental pastes contain optimal amount of fluoride.

Count the number of teeth present. Note any absence of teeth.

- The tooth most common missing is an impacted unerupted third mandibular molar (wisdom tooth)



Fig. 6.2: Stitched and repaired cleft lip. Note the characteristic scar



Fig. 6.3: Herpes labialis. Note the grouped vesicles on the upper lip with red base (↓)



Fig. 6.4: Aphthous ulceration. Note the superficial ulcers on inner aspects of both lips with hyperaemia. The ulcers have whitish base

- Missing teeth are most commonly molars as these are used for grinding rather than biting; their absence is associated with indigestion and other GI tract diseases.

Look for any change in colour

- Tartar deposits (brown deposits) occur on incisors and canine teeth in smokers.
- Reddish brown discolouration of teeth may be seen in chewers of betel nuts.
- Staining of permanent and deciduous teeth in the form of yellow-grey bands is seen in children (<8 years) treated with tetracyclines. Children of expectant mothers are also at risk of staining after 14 weeks of pregnancy if treated with tetracyclines.
- The teeth may be pitted or mottled yellow-brown (Maldon teeth) in fluorosis (Fig. 6.5).

Look for shape of the teeth

- Notching of incisors is common in those who persistently bite their nails or hold hair clips between their teeth.
- Notched, separated and peg-shaped upper incisors are seen in congenital syphilis (*Hutchinson's teeth*).
- The two central upper incisors are sometimes lost in *leprosy*.
- Teeth are poorly developed in *juvenile hypothyroidism*.
- Eruption of teeth may be delayed and transverse ridging is sometimes seen in *scurvy* and *rickets*.
- Enlargement of lower jaw (prognathism) in *acromegaly* leads to alteration of biting line so that lower teeth may close outside the upper ones.
- *Attrition of teeth*. Teeth are worn down by repetitive use in old persons leading to the recession of gums—called attrition. This process leads to apparent increase in the length of teeth.



Fig. 6.5: Teeth in fluorosis. Note the brownish mottled appearance and pitting of teeth

- **Look for any erosion.** Teeth may be eroded by chemical action of the acid. Erosion of incisors in children may be a sign of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GERD).

The gums

Inspect the gum along with teeth at the same time and note the followings:

- Normally, pink, healthy gums (gingivae) adhere firmly and closely to the teeth (Fig. 6.6).
- **Attrition of teeth-recession of gums.** With increasing age teeth become worn down and there is recession of the gums from the teeth so that the teeth appear longer and are prone to infection.
- **Look for signs of inflammation** (redness, pain or tenderness, exudation of the pus on gentle pressure and swelling of interdental papillae) and **any plaque** (a soft white film/line of salivary salts, proteins and bacteria that covers the teeth and leads to gingivitis).
- **Gingivitis** is inflammation of the gums. In *chronic marginal gingivitis*, the gingival margins are red and swollen.
- *Brushing the teeth often makes the gums bleed.* Plaque is not readily seen. Sometimes pus can be squeezed from them, (*pyorrhoea alveolaris*).
- *Acute herpetic gingivostomatitis* due to herpes simplex virus producing small vesicles on the gums is common among infants and children. The vesicles also appear on the lips, tongue, palate and cheeks.
- *Acute necrotising ulcerative gingivitis* (Vincent's infection) and *periodontitis*. It is an infection due to fusiform spirochaetes characterised by painful tender gums which bleed

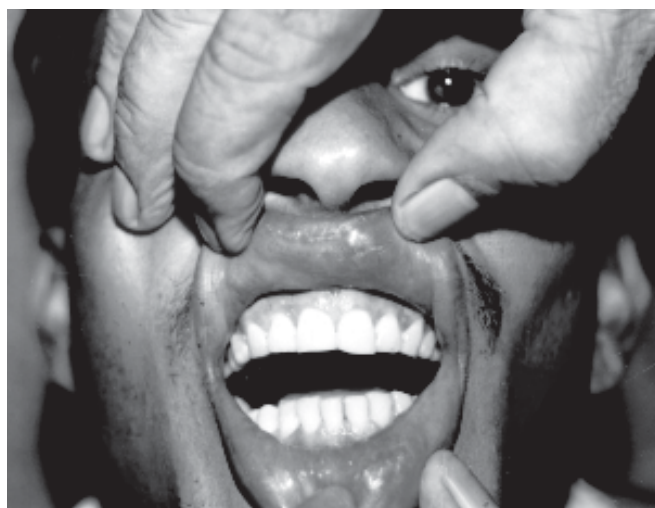


Fig. 6.6: Inspection of the gum and teeth

on pressure. There is gingival necrosis and ulceration. Breath is foul smelling (*halitosis*) and there is regional tender lymphadenopathy.

- In *chronic gingivitis and periodontitis*, the teeth become loose as the gum margins recede. A calculus (mineralised bacterial plaque) may be seen as hard cream coloured deposits on teeth and predispose to infection. The bacterial infection (*streptococcal viridans*) may predispose to bacterial endocarditis in patients suffering from congenital or valvular heart disease and in those having valve prosthesis.

Look for hypertrophy or bleeding

The gums may be involved in systemic disorders (see the Box 6.1). Gingival hyperplasia is also seen during puberty and pregnancy.

Box 6.1: GUMS IN SYSTEMIC DISORDERS	
Alteration	Disease/condition
Firm, hypertrophied gums (Fig. 6.7)	Phenytoin therapy
Soft, haemorrhagic gums	Scurvy
Hypertrophied and haemorrhagic gums (Fig. 6.8)	Thrombocytopenic purpura and acute leukaemia
Spongy and haemorrhagic gums	Cyanotic congenital heart disease
A punctate/stippled blue line on gums	Chronic lead poisoning (common); Bismuth and mercury poisoning (uncommon)

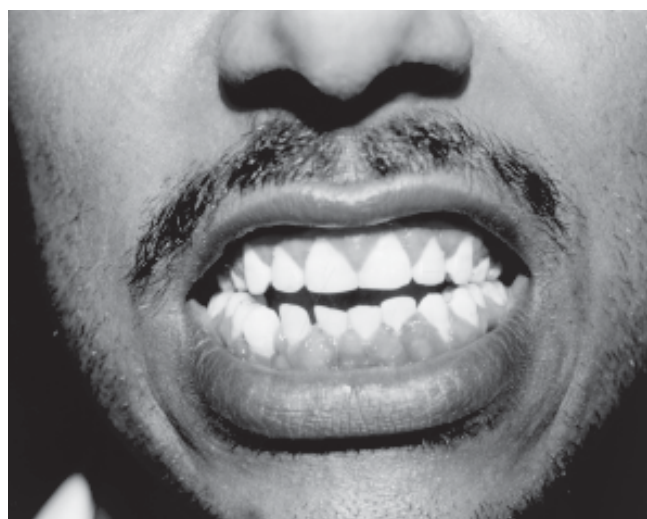


Fig. 6.7: Gum hypertrophy. Note the firm hypertrophied gums due to phenytoin toxicity



Fig. 6.8: Bleeding gums. There was hypertrophy and bleeding from the gums in a patient with acute leukaemia

Look for a granuloma or a ulcer

Ill-fitting denture can produce a granuloma or an ulcer on the gum at the point of pressure.

A carcinomatous ulcer (*in situ*) may arise in the gum, has to be differentiated from a traumatic ulcer of ill-fitting denture.

Epulis or *pyogenic granuloma* is a localised gingival enlargement like a tumour originating on interdental papilla. It is red and soft and usually bleeds easily. This is common during pregnancy (pregnancy tumour).

The tongue (Fig. 6.9)

Ask the patient to protrude the tongue. Inability to protrude (*ankyloglossia*) is seen in infants due to *tongue-tie* (a congenitally short frenulum linguae) or in advanced malignancy of tongue involving the floor of the mouth. In painful conditions of tongue, patient protrudes it slowly with a great difficulty.

Examine the tongue for following abnormalities;

- Deviation or asymmetry
- Size of the tongue
- Fasciculations and tremors
- Colour
- Moistness
- Fur
- Atrophy or hypertrophy of papillae.

1. **Asymmetry or deviation of tongue:** The deviation of the tongue may be due to asymmetry of the jaws, hemiplegia and XII cranial nerve paralysis (Read cranial nerve examination in nervous system).

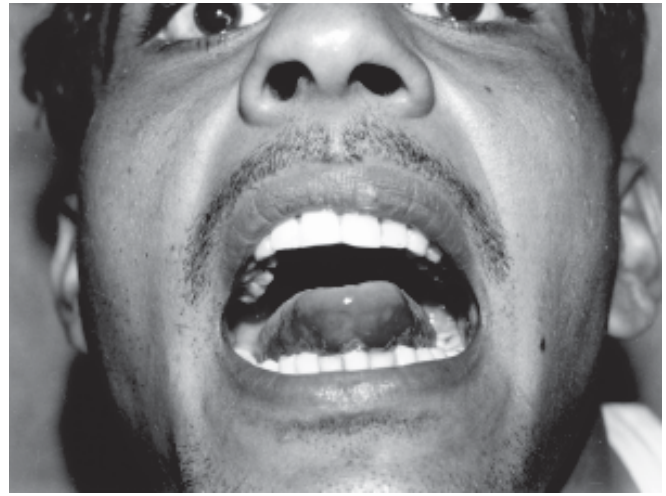


Fig. 6.9: Examination of the tongue. Inspect the tongue in the oral cavity and then ask him to protrude the tongue

2. **Size of the tongue:** The tongue is large (*macroglossia*) in acromegaly, cretinism, myxoedema, amyloidosis, Down's syndrome and lymphangioma.
3. **Fasciculations and tremors:** In early stage of XII cranial nerve or its nucleus involvement (infranuclear or nuclear paralysis of XII nerve), there may be fasciculations on the affected side of the tongue followed by wasting and atrophy. Fasciculations of tongue is a diagnostic feature of motor neuron disease.

Tremors of the tongue may be due to anxiety, thyrotoxicosis, delirium tremens and parkinsonism.

4. **Colour:** Is the tongue pale, red or discoloured? Pale tongue is seen in severe anaemia, magenta coloured in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency (Fig. 6.10). A clean tongue with prominent papillae can result from antibiotic treatment. Discolouration of tongue (Fig. 6.11) is most often due to the ingestion of coloured foods,

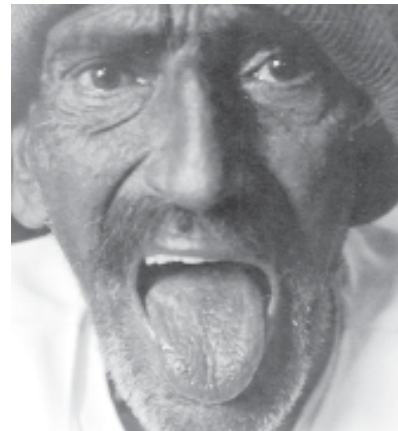


Fig. 6.10: Magenta-coloured tongue. Red, raw, painful tongue is seen in Vit. B complex deficiency



Fig. 6.11: Discolouration of the tongue



Fig. 6.12: Central cyanosis. Note the bluish colouration of the tongue



Fig. 6.13: Glossitis. Note the red, raw and rough tongue. The tongue was painful. There are cracks along the angles of the mouth (cheilosis)

e.g. red wine or coloured sweats or pan chewers; and may also be due to quantitative or qualitative changes in haemoglobin. Central cyanosis can best be assessed clinically by inspection of the tongue (Fig. 6.12). Glossitis may produce red, raw and painful tongue (Fig. 6.13).

5. **Moistness:** Is the tongue dry or wet? The state of hydration of the tongue is an indicator of hydration of the body provided the patient is not mouth

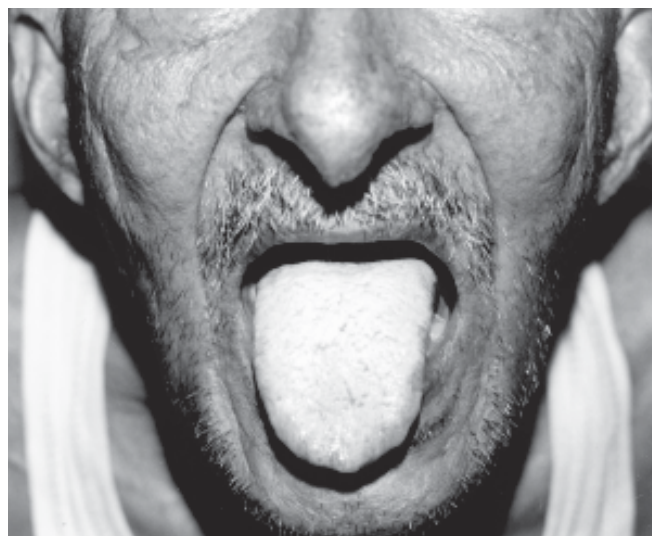


Fig. 6.14: Coated furred tongue in a person with bad oral hygiene

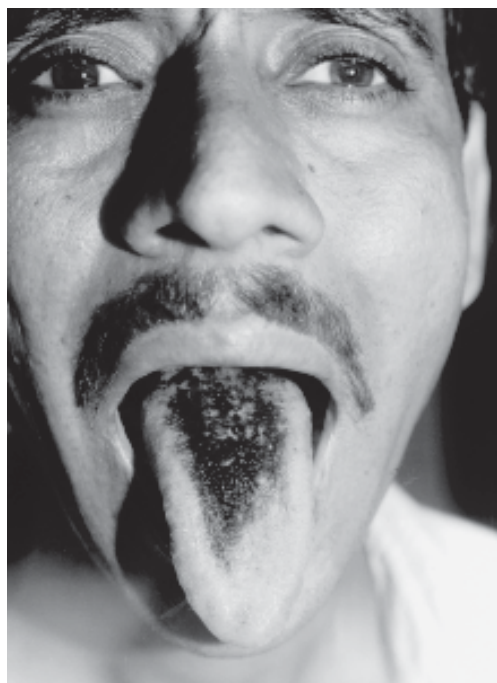


Fig. 6.15: Black tobacco staining in a smoker. Note the black staining which can also occur in patients receiving oral iron therapy especially the syrups



Fig. 6.16: Mouth thrush. White patches are seen over the tongue due to superinfection by *Candida* in a patient receiving anti-cancer therapy



Fig. 6.17: Leukoplakia of tongue. Note the white smooth patches with firm margins on the side of the tongue

breather. The causes of dry tongue are given in the Box 6.2. A dry, brown furred tongue may be found in severe illness, uraemia and acute intestinal obstruction.

Box 6.2: CAUSES OF DRYNESS OF THE TONGUE

- Mouth breathers
- Dehydration
- Vitamin A deficiency (xerosis)
- Anticholinergics
- Sjögren's syndrome (Sicca syndrome)

6. Fur: Is there any abnormal coating of the tongue? Furring of the tongue is of little significance, is often seen in persons with bad oral hygiene (Fig. 6.14), can occur with oral iron therapy especially syrup and heavy smokers (Fig. 6.15).

A black hairy tongue is seen in infection by fungi or chromogens.

The *Strawberry tongue* (bright red papillae standing out of a thick white fur) is seen in scarlet fever.

Hairy leukoplakia is characteristic feature of HIV infection.

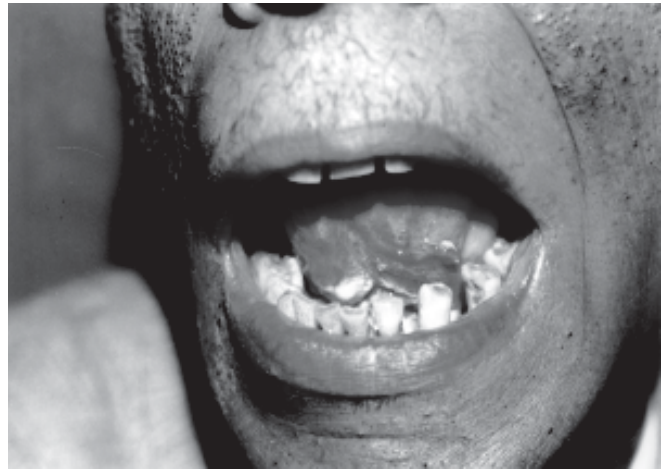


Fig. 6.18: Carcinoma of the tongue. Note the irregular growth with ulceration

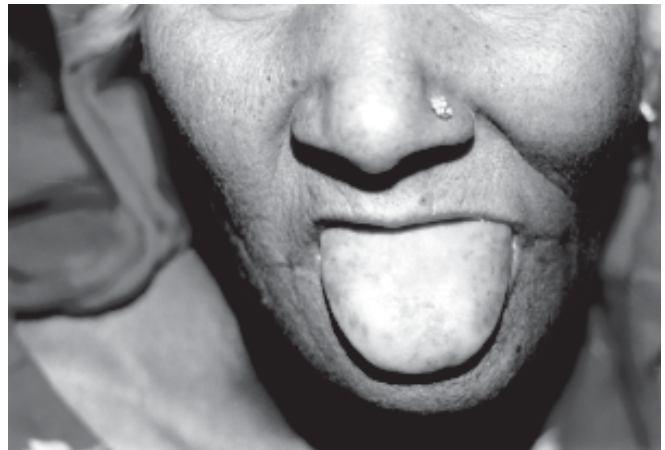


Fig. 6.19: Bald (atrophic) tongue. Pale, smooth, pigmented tongue with loss of papillae seen in the patient with iron deficiency anaemia

White mucous patches (mouth thrush) is seen in candidiasis (Fig. 6.16) and chronic leukoplakia (Fig. 6.17) of the tongue which is a precancerous condition. Any ulcer or growth on the tongue (Fig. 6.18) indicate carcinoma of the tongue, hence, must be biopsied.

7. The papillae: Is there atrophy or hypertrophy of the papillae?

Bald tongue (generalised atrophy of the papillae) is seen in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and severe iron deficiency anaemia (Fig. 6.19), coeliac disease, malabsorption and pellagra.

Fissuring of the tongue (surface is interrupted by several horizontal folds) is seen in chronic superficial glossitis and congenital fissuring of the tongue. In *rhomboid glossitis*, there is a lozenge-shaped area of loss of papillae and fissuring is seen in midline. It is of no consequence but has to be distinguished from

carcinoma and lingual thyroid (both are situated posterior to foramen caecum in contrast to rhomboid glossitis situated anterior to it).

Geographical tongue. It is characterised by denuded red patches wandering across the tongue due to papillary loss and its renewal giving the appearance of a map. This is asymptomatic condition seen in certain geographical areas/regions, hence, is inconsequential.

False geographical tongue. It appears similar to geographic tongue but is seen in children with fever.

The floor, sides and roof of the mouth

Ask the patient to open the mouth as wide as he/she can and protrude out the tongue fully to one side. Retract the cheek with a spatula. Now inspect the side and lateral surface of the mouth. Some patients may find difficulty to do so, then wrap a gauze piece around the tip of the tongue and with index finger and the thumb of left hand gently pull the tongue out and to one side. This will expose the side and lateral under surface of the mouth.

Examine these areas for any ulcer

Benign ulcers on the side or floor of the mouth are either inflammatory or traumatic (ill-fitting denture or broken carious teeth) in origin. In older persons, any ulcer at this site must be considered malignant until proved otherwise on biopsy. However, the malignant ulcer is a hard, indurated ulcer with raised everted margins (Fig. 6.18).

Now to inspect the under surface of the tongue and floor of the mouth, ask the patient to retract the tongue fully and elevate the tip to touch the roof of the widely opened mouth. Note the frenulum linguae and orifice of the submandibular duct opening on either side of the base of the frenulum. A stone or calculus formed in the submandibular salivary gland may be seen or felt at this site. The calculus is seen as a white or yellow bleb distending the ampulla.

Look for any ulcer on the frenulum

A small ulcer on the frenulum is sometimes seen in persistent coughing in children (e.g. whooping cough)

Look at the floor for any cyst

A *ranula*—retention cyst due to blockage of a mucous gland and *sublingual dermoid cyst* are common at this site.

The oral mucosa

Retract the cheek with a spatula to inspect the buccal mucosa. Note the opening of the parotid duct as a tiny swelling opposite the second molar teeth. The opening will be red, and oedematous in *parotitis*.

Now inspect the oral mucosa for discoloured spots, dots, ulcers, cysts

- **Koplik's spots (Fig. 6.20).** There are bluish-white spots surrounded by a red areola, may be seen on buccal mucosa against the molar teeth in children suffering from *measles*. These spots appear in the catarrhal stage before the appearance of rash.
- Dots of slate-grey or blue pigmentation on buccal mucosa are seen in Addison's disease.
- Mouth ulceration either aphthous or larger may be seen in variety of disorders (see the Box 6.3) including inflammatory bowel disease (e.g. Crohn's disease). Mouth ulcers in association with genital ulcers indicate Behcet's syndrome.
- White opalescent patches may be seen in leukoplakia while white patches/mouth thrush adherent to the mucosa may be seen in Candida infection. White milk curds are small patches seen in infants and children are of no consequence. The causes of thrush are given in the Box 6.4.

Box 6.3: COMMON CAUSES OF ORAL ULCERS

- Inflammatory bowel disease, e.g. Crohn's disease
- Behcet's syndrome (e.g. orogenital ulceration with GI tract and neurological involvement)
- Leucoplakia (a premalignant ulcer)
- Lichen planus
- Thrush (Candidiasis)
- Idiopathic aphthous ulceration
- Koplik's spots (measles)
- Malignant ulcer



Koplik's spots and rash over face

Measles rash over trunk on 2nd day

Fig. 6.20: A child suffering from measles

Box 6.4: COMMON CAUSES OF MOUTH THRUSH (ORAL CANDIDIASIS)

- Debilitated children
- Poor oral hygiene and unclean denture
- Patients receiving cytotoxic or immunosuppressive drugs
- Immunocompromised state, e.g. diabetes, AIDS
- Postoperative sepsis
- Patients being treated with broad spectrum antibiotics

The roof (e.g. palate, fauces), tonsils and pharynx

Method of examination. Make the patient sit comfortably. Ask the patient to put head right back and keep the mouth wide open. Inspect the hard and soft palates and note the position of uvula. Instruct the patient to speak 'ah' which will raise the soft palate and will increase the visibility of fauces, tonsils and oropharynx. To have a good view of these structures, one can use a spatula to depress the tongue and another spatula to retract the anterior pillar of the fauces.

1. *Look once again for any ulcer, erythema or vesicles.*

- Vesicles due to herpes zoster infection of maxillary division of Vth cranial nerve may be seen on one side of the hard palate. These are oval and painful. Similarly Herpes Zoster infection of IXth (glossopharyngeal) cranial nerve produces vesicles in the oropharynx.
- Malignant ulcers can be present on the hard palate, but less frequently and present the same appearance.
- A *hole* in the hard palate indicate;
 - Imperfect closure of cleft palate
 - Tertiary syphilis with gumma formation
 - Radionecrosis of bone following radiotherapy for local carcinoma
- A high arched palate is a congenital abnormality seen in *Marfan's syndrome*
- Petechiae on the hard palate are common in glandular fever, thrombocytopenia, rubella and streptococcal tonsillitis.

Examine the tonsils for exudate

- A white exudate over the tonsils is seen in glandular fever while yellow punctate follicular exudate is seen in streptococcal tonsillitis. Exudate with membrane formation, white to green in colour starting from the tonsils and spreading to fauces and pharynx is seen in *diphtheria*. If this condition is suspected, a swab should be taken for bacteriological examination.
- Finally examine the posterior wall of pharynx for any swelling, vesicles, ulcers or pus.
- *Small lymphatic nodules are normally common on the posterior wall of pharynx.*

- In *chicken pox (herpes varicella)*, there is erythema of pharyngeal and buccal mucosal followed by vesicles which progress to round or oval ulcers with a white slough. In *coxsackie virus infection (herpangina)* similar lesions may be present on the pharynx and soft palate.
- In the *common cold* (infection of nose or sinuses) mucus or pus may be visible trickling down the back of the throat. *Peritonsillar abscess (quinsy)* and *retropharyngeal abscess* are now-a-days less common.

Palpation

Palpation is a part and parcel of systemic examination but can be done during physical examination of any part. Palpation of mouth is essential in a patient with a solitary nodule or ulcer in the oral cavity. Bimanual palpation provides much information about such things as swellings in the floor of the mouth.

Method. First of all explain the patient about the procedure and ensure him/her that examination will be gentle. Put on a disposable glove or finger cot. Ask the patient to remove any denture and open the mouth widely and elevate the tongue. Put the index finger of your right hand underneath the tongue on one side of frenulum and sweep it back along the floor of the mouth. This will help to palpate a small stone or calculus in any part of submandibular duct. Now come forwards sweeping the finger along the lingual side of the tongue to the midline and return on the buccal side of the tongue towards the lower molar teeth. Examine the palatal and buccal aspects of the gums of the upper jaw by moving the finger up the mucosa covering the ascending ramus of the jaw (mandible).

If an ulcer is found, try to decide whether induration is present or not, for which the bimanual palpation is performed. With the right index finger already inside the mouth, put your finger tips of your left hand flat below the mandible or over the cheek outside the jaw. Palpate the ulcer between your index finger and finger tips of the left hand by gentle pressure.

Now palpate the tongue (dorsum, lateral and under surface) by the index finger. In case of atrophy of the one side of tongue, the bulk of the tongue can be palpated by asking the patient to protrude the tongue and hold it in a gauge between finger and thumb of left hand and perform bimanual palpation of one side with index finger and thumb of right hand.

Posterior third of the tongue, fauces and tonsils are examined last of all. Feel for any abnormality such as a swelling and study it for irregularity, ulceration and induration so as to detect a small or hidden carcinoma.

7

The Ear, Nose, Sinuses and Throat

THE EAR

Anatomy and physiology

The ear has three compartments; the *external ear* (auricle and ear canal), the *middle* (air filled cavity containing the three bony ossicles) and the *internal ear* (cochlea, utricle and three semi-circular canals).

Functions

1. The ears are concerned with hearing

Vibrations of sound pass through the air of the external ear and are transmitted through the ear drum and ossicles of the middle ear to the cochlea of inner ear. The cochlea senses and codes these vibrations and sends them up as nerve impulses to the brain through cochlear division of VIIIth cranial nerve. This pathway of hearing has two phases;

Conductive phase (from external ear to middle ear) and *sensorineuronal phase* (cochlea and cochlear nerve). The involvement of conductive phase produces conductive hearing loss while that of sensorineuronal phase produces sensorineural or nerve type of hearing loss.

Air conduction describes the normal first phase in the hearing pathway. An alternative pathway, known as *bone conduction* bypasses the external and the middle ear and is used for testing purposes. In *bone conduction* a vibrating tuning fork is placed on the head, sets the bone of the skull into vibrations and stimulates the cochlea directly.

In normal person, air conduction is better than bone conduction (AC > BC)

1. To maintain equilibrium

The labyrinth within the inner ear senses the position and movements of the head and thus helps to maintain balance.

Symptomatology of ear disease

The main symptoms of ear diseases are;

1. Aural pain (*otalgia*)
2. Ear discharge (*otorrhoea*)
3. *Deafness* (hearing loss)
4. *Tinnitus* (the sensation of sound in the absence of an appropriate auditory stimulus)
5. *Vertigo* (sensation of abnormal movements)

Otalgia

The pain in the ear (*otalgia*) may be due to involvement of pain sensitive structures i.e. external ear canal, tympanic membrane and middle ear. The pain may be referred to ear from other structures i.e. larynx and pharynx which share the sensory innervation. The sensory innervation of ear is 5th, 9th and 10th cranial nerves and branches of greater auricular and lesser occipital nerves. Since division of these cranial nerves also supply larynx, pharynx, temporomandibular joints and teeth, therefore primary involvement of these structures may give rise to referred ear pain. The causes of *otalgia* are given in the Box 7.1.

Box 7.1:

CAUSES OF OTALGIA

1. Diseases of the skin and auricular cartilage

- Infection (furunculosis)
- Trauma due to cotton buds used to remove the wax from ear canal or by using other articles
- A squamous-cell or basal cell carcinoma of external ear
- Perichondritis
- Subperichondrial haematoma due to external blunt trauma
- Polychondritis helix (tender nodules on helix)
- Tophaceous gout (gouty tophi on the helix)

2. Diseases of middle ear

- Acute suppurative otitis media secondary to upper respiratory or sinus infection in children

Contd....

Contd....

- Chronic suppurative otitis media
- Dural infection
- Malignancy within middle ear

3. Referred pain

- Disease of larynx, pharynx and base of the lung
- Temporomandibular arthritis
- Maloccluded teeth

Otorrhoea

It is defined as discharge (purulent, sanguinous or serous) from the ear. The ear discharge may be acute, intermittent or chronic.

1. Acute onset of ear discharge with pain indicates either an *otitis externa* or *acute suppurative otitis media* with perforation of tympanic membrane. The discharge of pus (mucopus) indicates the involvement of mucous secreting glands in the middle ear cleft.
2. Intermittent, profuse and offensive ear discharge suggests the tympanic membrane perforation with passage of infection from the nasopharynx into the eustachian tube (tubo-tympanic disease). Such an infection is unlikely to involve the meninges.
3. Chronic offensive ear discharge indicates serious middle ear infection (chronic suppurative otitis media) which may travel to meninges (causing meningitis), brain (encephalitis) and may involve the cranial nerves leading to their paralysis. From the middle ear, infection may involve internal ear leading to vertigo and deafness.
4. *Blood-stained discharge*. In chronically discharging ear, the onset of bleeding indicates malignant change within the middle ear.

Trauma (a blow) may cause perforation of the tympanic membrane resulting in pain, bleeding, ear discharge and hearing loss. More severe trauma may cause a dural tear and fracture of the tegmen tympani resulting in bleeding and subsequently CSF discharge from the external ear.

Deafness (hearing loss)

A loss of hearing can result from lesions in the external auditory canal, middle ear, inner ear or central auditory pathways. Lesions of external auditory canal, middle ear or tympanic membrane cause *conductive type* of deafness, while lesions of the inner ear or eighth nerve (cochlear division) or central auditory pathways cause *perceptive* or *sensorineural type* of deafness. The two types of deafness are compared in the Table 7.1 and causes of deafness are listed in the Box 7.2.

Box 7.2: CAUSES OF DEAFNESS	
Conductive deafness	Sensorineural deafness
I. Obstruction of external auditory canal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wax, debris and foreign body • Otitis externa (swelling of lining of the canal) • Canal stenosis • Neoplasm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ageing • Noise-induced deafness (occupational, loudspeakers, personal stereo) • Viral infections e.g. mumps, intrauterine rubella
II. Middle ear or tympanic membrane <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chronic otitis media (perforation of tympanic membrane) • Disruption of ear ossicles by trauma or infection • Otosclerosis (fixation of the ossicles) • Neoplasm of the middle ear 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ototoxic drugs e.g. aminoglycosides, gentamicin, frusemide, cytotoxic (cisplatin), betablockers, aspirin and quinine • Trauma (fracture of temporal bone) • Meningitis • Cochlear otosclerosis • Meniere's disease • Acoustic neuroma or other cerebellopontine angle tumour

Normally, a tone is heard louder by air conduction than by bone conduction. With a *conductive* deafness the

Table 7.1: Comparison of two types of deafness

Type	Site of lesion	Feature		
		Conductive tests	Auditory acuity	Speech discrimination
1. Conductive deafness	External ear, middle ear or tympanic membrane	Air conduction is impaired (thresholds for air conduction elevated) but bone conduction is normal	Retained	Normal
2. Perceptive or sensorineural deafness	Inner ear, cochlear nerve, central neural pathway	Both air and bone conduction are impaired (thresholds for both conduction elevated)	Impaired or fluctuates	Impaired

bone conduction stimulus is perceived louder than the air conduction stimulus. With perceptive or sensorineural deafness, both air and bone conduction perceptions are reduced but the air conduction stimulus is perceived louder as in normal hearing.

Tinnitus

It is defined as the perception of a sound when there is no sound in the environment. It is associated with a conductive or sensorineural (perceptive) deafness. The causes of tinnitus can usually be determined by finding the cause of deafness. Most cases of tinnitus complain of a ringing, rushing or hissing sound in the ear. Tinnitus must be distinguished from *autophony*- an abnormal perception of patient's own voice as well as the breath sounds. Autophony is similar to the sensation experienced when holding a sea shell to the ear. The commonest cause is patulous eustachian tube.

Vertigo

Vertigo is defined as a hallucinations of self or environment movements, most commonly perceived as a feeling of rotation, usually due to a disturbance in the vestibular system. The vestibular system is one of three sensory systems involved in spatial orientation and maintenance of posture. The other two systems are visual system and sensory (somatosensory) system.

The vertigo may be *central* (lesions of brain stem or cerebellum) or *peripheral* (labyrinthine in origin). Acute peripheral lesions cause vertigo of sudden onset, severe in nature, usually unilateral lasting for a few *seconds* or a few *days* and is often *recurrent* and associated with tinnitus. On the other hand, a central vertigo is chronic and mild in nature, often bidirectional and associated with other central abnormalities (Table 7.2). The common causes of vertigo are given in the Box 7.3.

Box 7.3: COMMON CAUSES OF VERTIGO

1. Peripheral

A. Hereditary

B. Acquired

i. Physiological

- Motion sickness
- Height vertigo
- Space vertigo

ii. Pathological

- Infection e.g. labyrinthitis, meningitis, vesicular neuronitis
- Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo
- Meniere's disease
- Posttraumatic
- Drug induced (e.g. diuretic, aminoglycosides, cytotoxic)
- Cerebellopontine angle tumour (e.g. acoustic neuroma, meningioma)
- Vascular compression of vestibular nerve
- Toxic e.g. alcohol

Central

- Brain-stem ischaemia or infarction
- TIAs (transient ischaemic attacks)
- Multiple sclerosis
- Vertebro-basilar insufficiency
- Acute cerebellitis (cerebellum) tumour
- Migraine (basilar artery)
- Epilepsy (temporal lobe focus)

The most common cause of pathological vertigo is vestibular dysfunction. The vertigo is frequently accompanied by nausea, jerky nystagmus, postural instability and gait ataxia. Since vertigo increases with rapid head movements, patients tend to hold their head still.

Labyrinthine dysfunction causes severe rotational or linear vertigo. When rotational, the hallucinations of movement whether of self or environment, is directed away from the side of the lesion. The fast phase of nystagmus is also directed away from the side of the lesion, and tendency to fall is towards the side of the lesion.

Table 7.2: Differentiation between central and peripheral vertigo

Feature	Peripheral vertigo	Central vertigo
Postural instability (imbalance)	Mild	Severe
Direction of nystagmus	Undirectional, fast phase opposite to lesion	Bidirectional or unidirectional
Pure horizontal nystagmus	Uncommon	Common
Vertical nystagmus	Never occur	May be present
Visual fixation	Attenuates or inhibits nystagmus and vertigo	No change
Direction of spin	Towards fast phase of nystagmus	Variable
Direction of fall	Towards slow phase	Variable
Nausea and vomiting	Severe	Mild to moderate
Tinnitus and/or deafness	Common	Rare
Onset of symptoms	Acute	Usually slow
Duration of symptoms	Finite (minutes, days, weeks)	Chronic
Neurological	Rare	Common

Positional vertigo is precipitated by recumbent head position either to the right or to the left. It may be benign paroxysmal positional vertigo following head trauma or idiopathic, or may be central positional vertigo due to lesions in and around the fourth ventricle. The differences between the two are summarised in the Table 7.3.

Table 7.3: Distinguishing features between benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV) and central positional vertigo

Features	BPPV	Central
Occurrence	Common	Uncommon
Latency (time between attaining head position and onset of symptoms)	3-4 sec.	None, immediate vertigo and nystagmus
Fatiguability (disappearance of symptoms with maintenance of offending position)	Yes	No
Habituation (lessening of symptoms with repeated trials)	Yes	No
Intensity of vertigo	Severe	mild to moderate
Reproducibility (reproduction of symptoms during each examination)	Variable	Good

Psychogenic vertigo, usually a concomitant of agoraphobia (fear of large open spaces or crowd) should be suspected in patients distressed by their symptoms so much that they remain confined to the house (house bound status). It differs from the *organic vertigo* in which despite discomfort patients attempt to work. Organic vertigo is invariably accompanied by the nystagmus but psychogenic is not.

The time course and duration of vertigo also help in the diagnosis.

- Recurrent episodes of brief positional vertigo (lasting less than a minute) indicate benign positional or post-traumatic vertigo. It can also be psychogenic.
- Recurrent spontaneous vertigo lasting for minutes or hours indicate Meniere's disease, vertebrobasilar insufficiency, migraine or autoimmune disorder.
- Vertigo, progressive hearing loss and tinnitus suggest Meniere's disease.
- Spontaneous prolonged attacks of vertigo lasting for a day or longer suggest labyrinthitis, multiple sclerosis, brain stem infarction.

Clinical work-up of a patient with vertigo

It includes;

1. Careful history
2. Checking of BP in standing position for orthostatic hypotension. Duplication of symptoms during orthostatic hypotension indicates cerebral ischaemia.
3. *Valsalva manoeuvre* exacerbates vertigo in patients with cardiovascular disease.

4. The simplest provocative test for vestibular dysfunction is *rapid rotation and abrupt cessation of movement in a swivel chair*. This manoeuvre always induces vertigo, differentiating it from false vertigo (e.g. dizziness).
5. In patients with perilymphatic fistula coughing or sneezing will induce vertigo. In patients with a fistula in the lateral semicircular canal, vertigo occurs in response to loud sounds (*Tullio's phenomenon*).
6. Hyperventilation causes dizziness (false vertigo), blunting of consciousness and light headedness in many anxious patients, is most important cause of dizziness and not of true vertigo. Forced hyperventilation for 1 minute is employed for this purpose.

Examination of the ear (Fig. 7.1)

1. **The auricle.** *Inspect each auricle and surrounding tissues for deformities, lump(s) or skin lesions.* Causes of lump(s) on or around the ear are given in the Box 7.4. The deformities of pinna are:
 - **Anotia**—absence of pinna
 - **Microtia**—incomplete development of pinna
 - **Macrotia**—a large pinna (bat-ear deformity)
 - **Melotia**—Displacement of pinna from its normal position.

Box 7.4:

LUMPS ON OR AROUND THE EAR

- Chondrodermatitis helices (painful tender nodule/papule on helix)
- Epidermoid cyst
- Squamous cell or basal cell carcinoma
- Gouty tophus/tophi
- Rheumatoid nodules
- Keloid
- Lepromatous leprosy
- Preauricular lymphadenopathy



Fig. 7.1: Inspection of the ear



Fig. 7.2: Elicitation of mastoid tenderness

If pain, discharge or inflammation is present, move the auricle up and down, press the tragus, and press firmly just behind the ear (Fig. 7.2).

- Movement of the auricle and tragus (*the tug test*) is painful in acute *otitis externa* but not in *otitis media*; while tenderness behind the ear may be present in *otitis media*.

Now look at the postauricular region for signs of a scar (previous surgery) or a nodule.

2. Ear canal and drum: *Examine the external auditory canal either with a aurioscope (otoscope) or with a head mirror using reflected light.*

The steps of examination are as follows:

- Select a speculum of appropriate length with the largest diameter that will comfortably fit into the ear canal.
- Gently retract the pinna upwards and backwards in adults and only backwards in children to straighten the external auditory meatus and ear canal, thereby facilitating the insertion of the speculum.
- Hold the aurioscope like a pin between thumb and index finger of right hand resting gently against the patient's head.
- Inspect the external meatus and ear canal for wax, keratin debris, pus or mucopus and any foreign body. Note any redness of the skin. Foreign bodies in the ear canal may be found in children and in patients with psychological illness. In *otitis externa*, the skin of ear canal is red, swollen and tender.

The lumen of ear canal may be congenitally narrow or may be narrowed due to recurrent bouts of *otitis externa*. Bony osteoma may rarely occlude the meatus

- Now inspect the ear drum noting its colour and contour. If the vision of the ear drum is obscured by wax, remove this by using a wax hook or by syringing with warm water. The water accumulates behind the wax and forces it out of the meatus. Syringing is contraindicated if there is history of pain and discharge from the ear since perforated membrane will be further damaged or infected.

Red bulging drum is seen in acute purulent *otitis media*.

- Identify the ear drum and handle of the malleus noting its position and inspect the short process of malleus.

- An unusually short prominent process and a prominent handle that looks more horizontal suggest a retracted membrane
- The retracted membrane is due to negative pressure in the middle ear. If negative pressure persists, this may lead to thinning and either hypermotility or hypomotility of membrane. Retraction into attic region of the middle ear and antrum may result in the formation of a *cholesteatoma*.

Mobility of the ear drum can be evaluated with a pneumatic otoscope.

Note any perforation of the ear drum (Fig. 7.3).

Perforation of the pars tensa are classified as marginal or central. Marginal defects extend to the annulus whereas the central perforations have a rim of membrane between the defect and the annulus. If the perforation involves most of the tympanic membrane it is called *subtotal*.

Assessment of hearing

Auditory acuity. It is possible to make a preliminary assessment of the severity of hearing impairment by;

- *Clinical history.* Ask the patient whether he/she can hear the doorbell or telephone (sound outputs around 60 dB) and ask if conversation in a quiet environment can be heard (normal levels about 40 dB). For example if the patient prefers a loud voice in a quiet environment, this implies a hearing loss of 70-80 dB in the speech frequencies.
- *Clinical testing (free-field voice testing).* It can be performed by asking the patient to repeat word spoken at varying intensities. This testing employs phonetically balanced words (e.g. baseball), number combinations (e.g. 9-4) or combinations of numbers and letters (e.g. 6-M-4). In such testing, one ear is tested at a time. The examiner stands to the side of the ear to be tested and occludes the other ear using

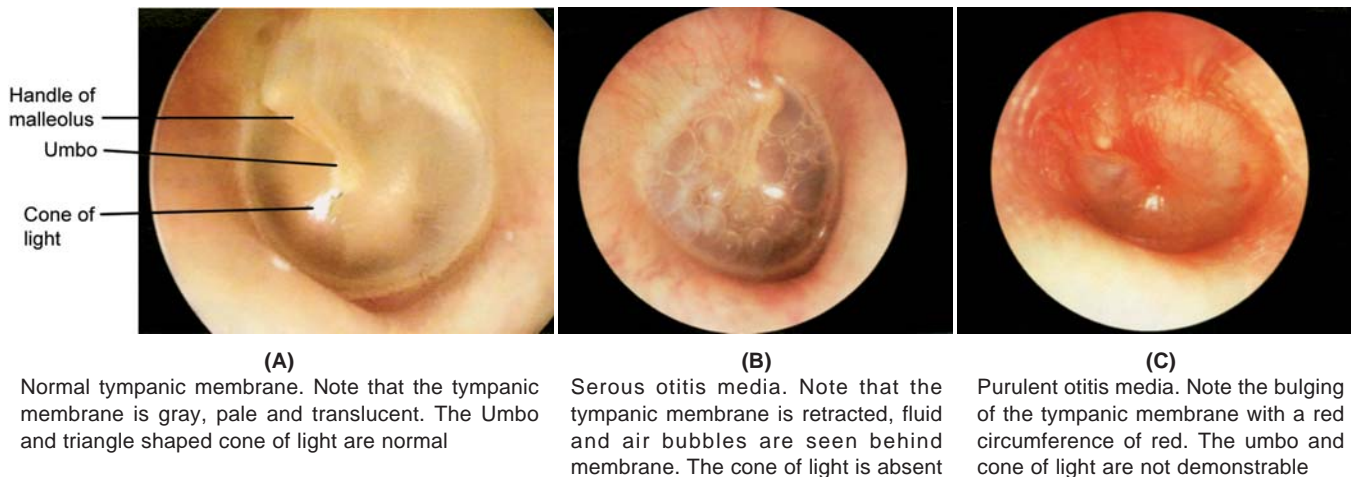


Fig. 7.3: Tympanic membrane. A. Normal, B. and C. Abnormal

tragal movement or a finger. The test starts with a whispered voice at 60 cm (2 feet) and proceeds with a whispered voice at 15 cm (6 inches). If necessary (e.g. no response to conventional voice at 60 cm) increase the intensity of your voice to a medium whisper, a loud whisper, and then soft, medium and loud voice. Note the response to voice in each ear. When auditory acuity on the two sides is different, this gives an idea of impaired hearing on one side. However responses in such a type of testing is difficult to quantify for which audiometry is necessary.

- **Air and bone conduction.** Further information about hearing may be obtained at the bed side by using a vibrating tuning fork. A tuning fork of frequency 512 Hz or 1024 Hz may be employed for such a purpose because forks with lower frequency may lead to overestimating bone conduction and can also be felt as vibrations.

Tuning fork test is used to distinguish between conductive and perceptive (sensorineural) deafness

In clinical practice two tests are used:

1. **Rinne test (It compares air conduction and bone conduction):** It is performed by placing the base of a vibrating tuning fork (set the tuning fork into vibrations by striking it between thumb and index finger or by tapping it on your knuckles and place it on the mastoid process, behind the ear at level with the canal (See Figure examination of VIII cranial nerve). When patient can no longer hear the sound, quickly place the fork close to the ear canal and

ascertain whether the sound can be heard again. Remember, here the "U" of the fork should not be touched and should face forward, thus maximizing its sound for the patient. Note which conduction (air or bone) is better. In conductive deafness, sound is heard through the bone as long as or longer than it is through the air ($BC = AC$ or $BC > AC$). Reverse happens in sensorineural deafness.

- If air conduction is better than bone conduction ($AC > BC$), the Rinne test is said to be positive. In normal persons air conduction is better than bone conduction and this response is also found in perceptive deafness (sensorineural deafness), therefore, in both the conditions, Rinne test is positive.
- In conductive deafness, Rinne test is negative.
- Rinne's test is less specific because false negative and positive results are common

2. **Weber test (test for lateralisation):** Place the base of a vibrating tuning fork firmly on the top of the patient's head or on the mid-forehead. Ask whether the patient hears it; on one side or both sides. Normally the sound is heard in the midline or equally in both ears (no lateralisation). If nothing is heard, try again, pressing the fork now more firmly on the head.

In unilateral conductive deafness, the sound is heard into (lateralised) the affected ear; while in unilateral sensorineural deafness sound is heard in the normal ear (lateralised to normal ear).

Audiometry

For quantitative assessment, audiometry is useful. It is also helpful in assessing the likely site of pathology in the auditory pathways.

Assessment of vestibular function

Balance and orientation of body in space depends on the sensory inputs from;

- Vestibular system
- The eyes
- Muscles, joints and skin receptors (somatosensory system).

This information is integrated and modulated in the brainstem and cerebellum. *Imbalance* or *unsteadiness* is defined as impaired ability to maintain postures in the intended orientation of the body in space. It generally manifests as difficulty in maintaining an upright posture while standing or walking; a severe imbalance may also affect the ability to maintain posture while seated. The imbalance results from disorder of spinocerebellar or vestibular sensory inputs. Vestibular input is composed of informations from the utricular maculae and the semicircular canals. The utricular maculae respond to changes in gravity and to linear acceleration whereas semicircular canals respond to the angular acceleration. This information is then integrated so as to allow compensatory eye movements through central pathways. These include vestibulo-ocular reflex and postural adjustments.

Nystagmus

It is voluntary, conjugate ocular movements with rhythmical oscillations of the eye. The direction of quickest movement decides the side of nystagmus. Nystagmus is either induced or spontaneous.

Generally, in vestibular disturbance, nystagmus is enhanced by movement of the eyes in the direction of fast phase and diminished movement in the opposite direction. In the destructive vestibular lesion, the contralateral vestibular system dominates being intact and drives the eyes to the side of the lesion. This movement to the side of the lesion will be slow phase and opposite to the lesion will be the fast phase. The nystagmus will be maximal when looking in the direction opposite to lesion.

In vestibular destructive lesion, nystagmus will be on the side opposite to the lesion.

1. *Visual fixation.* Vestibular nystagmus is enhanced without visual fixation i.e. visual fixation attenuates or inhibits nystagmus and vertigo. Nystagmus

should also be assessed by using Frenzel's glasses which have a 20 dioptre lens and, therefore, abolishes fixation.

Persistent positional nystagmus occurring with ocular fixation implies central lesion (brainstem disease and lesions in the region of fourth ventricle).

2. *Electronystagmography* is a graphic recording of eye movements which can be measured. As the eye acts as a dipole (the cornea as a positive and retina as a negative), eye movement results in an altered potential difference between the two electrodes on a moving paper strip. In this way, one can measure the velocity, amplitude and frequency of eye movements or nystagmus and permanent record can be obtained.
3. *Dix and Hallpike method.* Positional vertigo is precipitated by a recumbent head position either to the left or to the right. Positional vertigo is elicited by making the patient to sit on a couch and fix the eyes on the centre of the forehead of the examiner. The patient's head is turned 45 degrees to the left or right and then is rapidly lowered to 30° below the horizontal. The patient has to keep the eyes open during this procedure so that examiner can observe the nystagmus. The patient is instructed to report vertigo or dizziness during this procedure. The nystagmus is induced within the latent period of 2-5 seconds and disappears within few seconds.

This is most important sign of benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV). The nystagmus has fast component directed towards the lower most ear.

The repetition of the test will produce little abnormality (adaptation). Whatever may be the cause, the benign nature of this syndrome is characterised by disappearance of the symptoms with time in most of the cases. Alcohol abuse and psychotropics may induce transient positional vertigo.

4. *Romberg's sign* (discussed in detail in CNS examination). This is a sign of proprioception. Patients with uncompensated unilateral labyrinthine lesion show instability to the side of the lesion with their eyes closed which becomes more marked when their eyes are open. Patients with posterior column disease (sensory ataxia), will sway or fall with the eyes closed but will stand normally with the eyes open. Patients with central lesions sway to both sides with eyes open or shut.
5. *Caloric test.* This is most frequently employed test to assess the performance of vestibular end-organ. The test is performed by making the patient in recumbent position (lying down) and head is flexed at 30° in order to bring the lateral semicircular canal in

vertical position. The patient is instructed to fix on a point in the central gaze. The ear canal is irrigated with water at 30°C and then at 44°C for 30-40 seconds respectively. The test is based on the principle that a thermal gradient across the temporal bone by cold and hot water produce convection current within endolymph and thus induces nystagmus. Normally, cold water induces nystagmus away from the ear being irrigated and the warm water induces nystagmus towards the ear being tested. Each ear is tested at both temperatures with a suitable gap between each test. The evoked nystagmus may be recorded and analysed using electronystagmography.

A diminished response to caloric test on one side indicates peripheral vestibular lesion (canal paresis), whereas central lesions (brainstem) produce diminished response with directional preponderance of the nystagmus to one direction than the other. Visual fixation abolishes the caloric induced nystagmus in peripheral lesions.

Gait abnormalities. These are discussed in examination of nervous system.

Investigations for a case with the disease of ear

1. Radiological examination

- X-ray neck (lateral view) for any soft tissue swelling or a foreign body in postnasal space.
- Barium swallow for pharyngeal webs/pouch. Endoscopy is preferred investigation in such a case.

2. Audiometry

- *Pure tone audiometry.* In this test, the threshold for pure tone sounds introduced into each ear is measured for different frequencies. The threshold responses for air and bone conduction are recorded for evaluation of conductive or perceptive deafness. In perceptive (sensorineural) deafness, the air conduction thresholds and bone conduction thresholds are equal whereas in conductive deafness bone conduction thresholds exceed those for air. The difference between these thresholds called air-bone gap, measures the degree of conductive hearing loss.
- *Speech audiometry.* Speech audiogram is recorded for speech discrimination. In this test, patient is asked to repeat the words arranged in groups of 12 and delivered at different intensities to the test ear from a taped recording. A normal person can achieve a 100% discrimination at a sound intensity of 45-55 dB.

Patients with pure conductive deafness can achieve 100% discrimination like a normal one but only at much higher intensities; whereas patients with perceptive or sensorineural deafness are unable to achieve 100% discrimination at any intensity.

- *Impedence audiometry.* It is done to determine the state of tympanic membrane (thin or thick) and its mobility and compliance.

3. Evoked response of audiometry

In this test evoked responses in the brain are recorded as a waveform with 7 peaks following a sound applied to the ear. The averaged response displayed on an oscilloscope include a waveform with 7 peaks;

1st peak: from cochlear hair cells

Second peak: cochlear nucleus

Third peak: superior olivary nucleus

Fourth and fifth peak: inferior colliculus

Six peak: medial geniculate body

Seventh peak: auditory cortex

It is usual to measure the time taken for the impulse to travel from peaks 1 to 5 (I-V latency). The delay of the impulse as it travels along the nerve with increased I-V latency is seen in;

- Compressive lesions of acoustic (VIII cranial) nerve
- Brain-stem tumours
- Multiple sclerosis

4. Electrocochleography

This is done to assess the presence of endolymphatic hydrops which occurs in Meniere's disease.

5. Caloric testing

This has already been discussed.

THE NOSE AND PARANASAL SINUSES

Applied anatomy and physiology

About upper third of the nose is supported by bone and lower two thirds by cartilage. Air enters the nasal cavity by way of an opening called *anterior nares* on each side. The medial wall of nasal cavity is formed by nasal septum covered by a mucous membrane well supplied with blood.

Laterally, curving bony structures, the turbinates covered with a highly vascular membrane protrude into the nasal cavity. Below each turbinate, there is a groove or meatus, each named according to turbinate above it. The nasolacrimal duct opens into the inferior meatus while the most of the paranasal sinuses drain into the middle meatus. These opening are not usually visible.

The anterior nares (external opening of the nose) leads to a large widened area called *vestibule* which further leads through nasal passages to nasopharynx.

The paranasal sinus are air-filled cavities within the bones of the skull. They are lined by mucous membrane. Only the frontal and maxillary sinuses are readily accessible to clinical examination.

The nasal cavities or mucosa performs the following functions;

- Cleansing of air
- Humidification of air
- Temperature control of inspired air
- Protection against entry of foreign material.

Symptoms of nasal disease

The principal symptoms of nasal disease are:

- Nasal obstruction (blockage of the nose)
- Sinus pain
- Nasal discharge (rhinorrhoea), running nose
- Sneezing
- Disturbance of smell (Read olfactory nerve in CNS examination)
- Symptoms due to involvement of adjoining structures e.g. orbital pain, proptosis, diplopia, periorbital swelling and conjunctival chemosis may develop if the infection spreads to the orbit (orbital cellulitis) from the adjacent paranasal sinuses.

1. Nasal obstruction

Blockage of the nasal passages is often associated with local discomfort, nasal discharge, and causes difficulty in breathing, may lead to mouth breathing and dryness of the mouth, persistent sore throat and snoring. Acute nasal obstruction may be secondary to trauma leading to subperichondrial haematoma or to deviated nasal septum. Vasomotor rhinitis or seasonal allergic rhinitis with swollen intranasal mucosa is the common cause of nasal blockage of varying severity. Long standing nasal obstruction suggests either persistent deflected nasal septum or a nasal polyp. Nasal obstruction may be unilateral or bilateral, and seasonal or perennial.

2. Nasal discharge (rhinorrhoea)

It is a common symptom of acute inflammation or infection of the nose, may be watery (nasal catarrh), mucoid, purulent or blood-stained. The discharge is often bilateral but may be unilateral. A unilateral blood-stained discharge with nasal obstruction indicates nasal or sinus malignancy.

Epistaxis means bleeding from the nose, can occur due to pathology in the nose or may be due to extranasal causes. The causes of epistaxis are given in the Box 7.5.

Box 7.5: CAUSES OF EPISTAXIS

1. Nasal disease

- Rhinitis
- Tumours
- Diphtheria
- Trauma
- Sinusitis

2. Haematological disorders

- (i) *Due to thrombocytopenia*
 - Leukaemia
 - Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
 - Aplastic anaemia
- (ii) *Qualitative platelet defects*
 - von Willebrand's disease
 - Glanzmann's disease
- (iii) *Coagulation disorders*
 - Haemophilia
 - Afibroginaemia /hypofibroginaemia
- (iv) *Miscellaneous*
 - Hypersplenism

3. Systemic disorders

- (i) *Infection*
 - Typhoid, malaria, measles
- (ii) Hypertension
- (iii) High altitude
- (iv) Collagen diseases

A bilateral watery or mucoid (whitish) discharge suggests a vasomotor or allergic rhinitis. A purulent discharge may be secondary to a foreign body in the nose or sinus infection. Postnasal discharge is common in sinus infection.

3. Pain

Nasal pain is a uncommon symptom, occurs during acute severe infection of the nose or may be secondary to infiltration of the anterior maxillary nerves as they pass along the nasal floor and lateral nasal wall.

Persistent localised pain centred over a sinus suggests sinus infection. Tenderness can be elicited over the involved sinus. Pain of trigeminal neuralgia or migraine may be referred to nose.

4. Sneezing

It is a protective expulsive reflex initiated by irritation of nasal airways. It helps to clear the nasal passages off irritants. Excessive sneezing is associated with vasomotor rhinitis or allergic rhinitis due to release of histamine and other mediators.

Examination of the nose and nasal sinuses

1. Inspect the anterior and inferior surfaces of the nose (Fig. 7.4)

Note any asymmetry or deformity of the nose

- Saddle-shape deformity of the nose may follow destruction of the bony septum from syphilis and the cartilaginous septum following tuberculosis or leprosy or, following trauma, septal haematoma or septal abscess.
- The nasal septum may be depressed in other destructive conditions, e.g. midline granuloma or Wegener's granulomatosis.
- Deviation of the nasal septum is a common deformity visible (Fig. 7.4B).

Gentle pressure on the tip of the nose with your thumb will widen the nostrils (Fig. 7.4B), and now with the help of a penlight or otoscope light, you can have a partial



Figs 7.4A and B: Inspection of the nose; A. External appearance
B. Visible deformity of the nasal septum

view of each nostril. If tip of the nose is tender, then manipulate the nose more gently and as little as possible.

- The tip of nose may be red in chronic alcoholics
- Tenderness of the nasal tip or alae suggests local infection such as furunculosis (Fig. 7.5), erysipelas, etc.
- Skin malignancy may involve the skin over the nose

2. Test for the patency of nasal airway. It may be assessed either by pressing on each *ala nasi* and occluding the front of each nostril in turn and asking the patient (child or adult) to sniff, or by holding a Lack's tongue depressor, beneath each nostril and comparing the surface misting of the depressor on the two sides.

Patency of the nasal passage is occluded by a variety of causes as listed under the symptom of nasal obstruction

3. Inspect the inside of the nose with the help of a biphong nasal speculum and reflected illumination from a head mirror.

*Look at the nasal mucosa that covers the septum and turbinates. Note its colour, any swelling, bleeding or exudate. The **atrophic rhinitis** or **Ozena** is characterised by atrophied mucosa overlaid by foul-smelling dry crusts (Greek-Ozein, "Stench").*

- In viral rhinitis, the mucosa is red and swollen; in allergic rhinitis, it may be pale, bluish or red.
- The most common disorder of vestibule (nasal cavity) is *furunculosis* and *vestibulitis*. In the later condition, the vestibule becomes crusted and excoriated as a result of infection usually secondary to repeated trauma from rubbing or cleaning the nose.

Look at the nasal septum for any area of granulation and for a septal perforation.

Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis causes *rhinoscleroma*-a granulomatous disease of upper respiratory tract. *Black eschars* in diabetics may be seen in nasal cavity in mucormycosis.



Fig. 7.5: Furunculosis of the nose

- Fresh blood from the nose may be seen in epistaxis. Causes of septal perforation include trauma (nose pricking) surgery and intranasal use of cocaine or amphetamines or inhalation of industrial products e.g. nickel and chrome.

Note any abnormalities on the lateral wall of the nasal cavity e.g. hypertrophy of nasal turbinate or a nasal polyp or an ulcer or a mass.

- When the air space is large, the inferior turbinate may undergo hypertrophy. In allergic rhinitis, it is hypertrophied and red.
 - *Nasal polyps* are pale, semitranslucent masses that usually come from the middle meatus. The polyp is nontender, hence, can be differentiated from hypertrophied inferior turbinate that is tender.
 - Ulcer may result from nasal use of cocaine or other drugs. e.g. pituitary preparations and blastomycosis (*Blastomyces dermatitidis*)
4. **Examine the postnasal space with the help of a small postnasal mirror.** The manoeuvre is best performed with the patient leaning forward, with mouth opened and the tongue firmly depressed with a tongue depressor. A postnasal mirror is warmed over the flame of a spirit lamp and passed into the mouth over the upper surface of the tongue until it lies in the space between the uvula, the tongue, and the faucial pillars.

Note the hypertrophy or any polyp in this space.

The site is common for;

- Carcinoma
 - Antrochoanal polyp- a benign polyp arising from the nasal septum and protruding through the middle meatus.
 - Hypertrophy of the posterior end of the inferior turbinate (*mulberry terbinat*e)
5. **Palpation for sinus tenderness.** Press up on the *frontal sinuses* from under the bony brows, avoiding pressure on the eyes (Fig. 7.6A). Then press up on the *maxillary sinuses* (Fig. 7.6 B).

Local tenderness together with pain, fever and rhinorrhoea suggest *acute sinusitis* involving the frontal or maxillary sinuses. Transillumination may be useful for diagnosis. Absence of glow on one or both sides on transillumination suggests either a thickened mucosa or secretion in the sinus involved.

THE THROAT

The throat comprises of the mouth, the oropharynx, the nasopharynx and the laryngopharynx. The oropharynx



Figs 7.6A and B: Elicitation of sinus tenderness
A. Frontal sinus tenderness
B. Maxillary sinus tenderness

opens anteriorly into the mouth, is bounded above by the soft palate and below by the epiglottis. The second and third cervical vertebrae form its posterior wall, and the tonsils are situated in its lateral wall between anterior and posterior pillars of the fauces. The laryngopharynx opens into larynx and is bounded above by the epiglottis and below by the cricoid cartilage. The 3rd to 6th cervical vertebrae form its posterior wall.

Clinical manifestations/presentations

Patient may present with one or more of the followings;

- Sore throat
- Stridor
- Hoarseness of voice
- Dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing)
- A lump in the neck

1. Sore throat

The mouth being an open cavity and the tonsils being the policemen of the mouth, are likely to be involved in a variety of conditions but the sore throat is the commonest presenting complaint. A sore throat due to tonsillitis may be associated with systemic

manifestations such as fever and chills in children, may also be associated with dysphagia and formation of an abscess at different sites such as peritonsillar area (*quinsy or peritonsillar abscess*), or retropharyngeal space (*retropharyngeal abscess* presenting as a bulge on posterior pharyngeal wall) or parapharyngeal area (e.g. parapharyngeal abscess presenting as a swelling around the angle of the mandible). A grey membrane in the area of tonsils and covering it is formed in *diphtheria*.

The ulceration due to *herpes zoster*, *glandular fever* and *rubella* may be seen in this area as already discussed in examination of the mouth and pharynx. Ill-fitting dentures or trauma may also result in ulceration.

Note: A throat swab should always be taken for culture and sensitivity in a child/adult suffering from acute tonsillitis

2. Stridor

Stridor (a noisy sound) occurs due to narrowing of the laryngeal airway, is common in children due to narrow diameter of larynx, results commonly due to acute infections within laryngopharynx and upper respiratory tract. Stridor is a common symptom of acute laryngitis, acute tracheobronchitis (croup) and acute epiglottitis. These acute infections of upper respiratory tract may be due to viruses (*rhinovirus, influenza and parainfluenza virus, coxsackie virus, adenovirus or respiratory syncytial virus*) and bacterial (*Streptococcal, M. Catarrhalis*) infections. These infections are characterised by fever, pharyngeal pain, drooling of saliva from the corner of the mouth, stridor (airway obstruction), dyspnoea and dysphonia (hoarseness of voice).

3. Dysphonia (hoarseness)

The hoarseness of voice results from involvement of vocal cord either locally or its paralysis due to damage to recurrent laryngeal nerve or the main trunk of the vagus. The hoarseness may be acute (irritation or inflammation of the cord) or chronic (nodule, papilloma or polyp of the cord). The causes of hoarseness are given in the Box 7.6.

Box 7.6: CAUSES OF DYSPHONIA (HOARSENESS OF VOICE)

A. Local

- (i) *Acute* e.g. smoke inhalation, exposure to dust
- (ii) *Chronic*
 - Laryngeal oedema (chronic laryngitis)
 - A vocal cord nodule (hyperkeratosis)
 - Papilloma of the cord
 - Foreign body
 - A polyp
 - Carcinoma of larynx

B. Neurological

- (i) *Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy*

Contd....

- Thyroid disorders e.g. neoplasia, thyroid surgery
- Neoplasia of oesophagus
- Neoplasia of apex of the lung (pancoast tumour)
- Aortic aneurysm
- A left atrial hypertrophy in mitral stenosis
- (ii) *Involvement of main trunk of vagus*
 - Juglar bulb involvement
 - Infiltrative nasopharyngeal carcinoma/bronchial carcinoma
- C. Systemic illness**
 - Myxoedema
 - Angioneurotic oedema

Dysphagia

The diseases of the oropharynx that produce dysphagia are;

- (i) Squamous cell carcinoma of distal oropharynx
- (ii) A pharyngeal pouch—a pulsion diverticulum consisting of mucosa interposed between two parts of inferior constrictor muscles. The pouch presents frequently on the left side.
- (iii) Involvement of hypopharynx by inflammation, webs (pharyngeal web-postcricoid web), stricture and tumours.

The other causes of dysphagia are discussed under GI tract symptoms.

Lump in the neck

Certain deep cervical lymph nodes may get enlarged and palpable in the neck due to diseases of the pharynx. The most commonly enlarged lymph node is jugulo-digastric which becomes enlarged in upper respiratory tract infection especially tonsillitis and in neoplasm of the pharynx.

In patients with enlarged lymph nodes at the angle of the mandible, the nose and throat should be examined before a fine needle aspiration biopsy of the node is taken and sent for cytological examination.

Examination

- The anterior oropharynx should be examined with a head light or with a head mirror. First check the lips, teeth, and gums, floor of the mouth and opening of submandibular duct and the buccal mucosa (Read Chapter 6).
- The more distal portion of oropharynx and larynx can be inspected only with a laryngeal mirror or fibre-optic laryngoscope.
- Examination of the neck (It is discussed as separate Chapter 8).

Contd....

8

The Neck

THE NECK

The neck should be inspected and palpated. Physical abnormalities in the neck are common. Swellings in the neck are usually palpated best from behind. The structures to be examined in the neck are:

1. The skin. It is to be examined as usual for any lesion
2. The lymph nodes
3. The salivary glands
4. The trachea and the thyroid
5. Neck movements (read Chapter on Nervous system examination)
6. Carotid and subclavian pulsations—Read peripheral vascular system examination under CVS examination
7. Jugular veins (Read CVS examination).

Inspection

- Inspect the neck, noting its length (Fig. 8.1), symmetry and any mass(es) or swelling(s)
- Look for enlargement of parotid or submandibular glands, and note any visible swelling or lymph node(s)
- Note any swelling in the region of the thyroid and any deviation of the trachea. If trachea is markedly deviated to one side, the sternomastoid muscle stands prominent on that side (Trail's sign)
- Note any visible pulsations in the neck
- Note any deviation of neck to any side (Fig. 8.2).

Palpation

Palpate the lymph nodes. The important groups of lymph nodes available for palpation are diagrammatically represented in Fig. 8.3.

Sites of lymph nodes in the neck:

1. **Preauricular**—in front of the ear—
2. **Posterior auricular**—superficial to mastoid process behind the ear.



Fig. 8.1: Abnormalities in the length of neck. A. A child with short neck as a congenital deformity. B. A young female with flat chest, short neck and low hair line suggestive of Turner's syndrome



Fig. 8.2: Torticollis (Wry neck) due to drug toxicity. Note the tilting of neck to one side due to muscular spasm

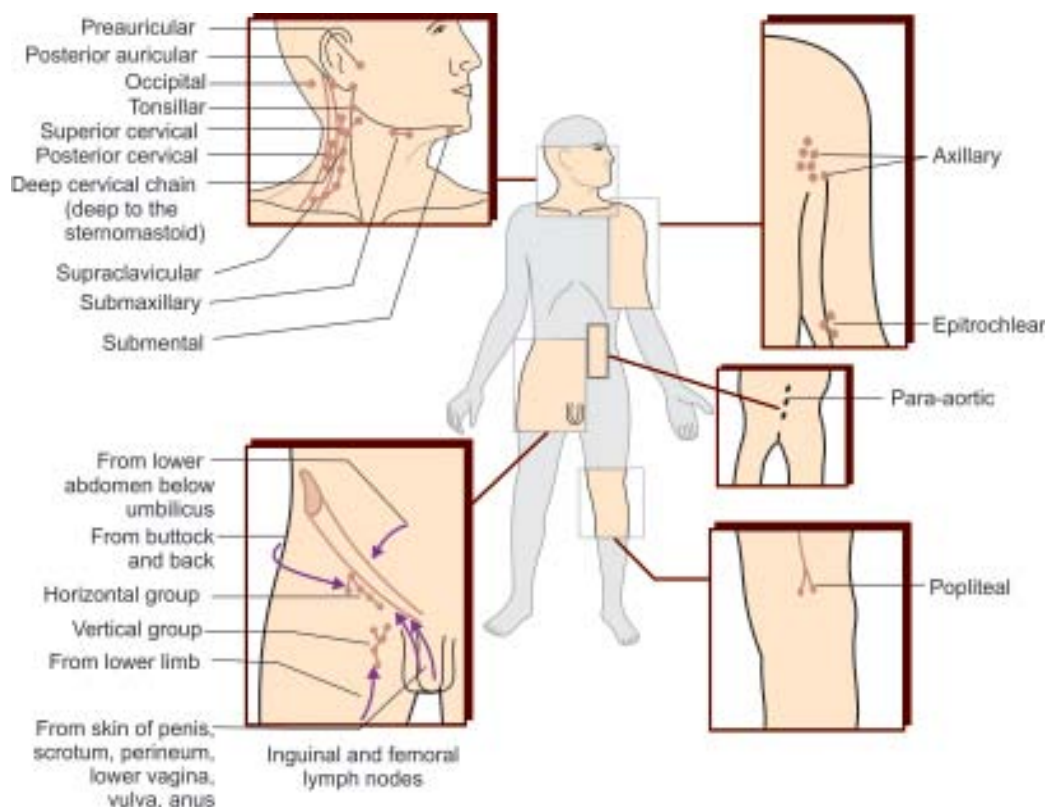


Fig. 8.3: Lymphadenopathy—Distribution of palpable lymph nodes throughout the body. Scalene node—an important gland has not been shown in the figure

3. **Occipital**—Below the occiput at the base of skull.
4. **Tonsillar**—At the angle of the mandible.
5. **Submandibular**—Midway between the angle and the tip of the mandible.
6. **Submental**—in the midline, a few centimeters behind the tip of the mandible.
7. **Superficial cervical**—Superficial to the sternomastoid.
8. **Posterior cervical**—along the anterior edge of the trapezius.
9. **Deep cervical lymph node chain.** Deep to the sternomastoid and often inaccessible to examination. Hook your thumb and fingers around either side of sternomastoid muscle to find them.
10. **Supraclavicular.** Deep in the angle formed by the clavicle and sternomastoid.
2. **Superficial lymphadenopathy** presents with visible or palpable mass or masses in cervical, axillary or inguinal regions. This may present as a discharging sinus or sinuses in these regions.
3. **Nonsuperficial presentations** (thoracic or abdominal) of lymphadenopathy are:
 - May be detected on routine chest X-ray or during work up of superficial lymphadenopathy.
 - May present as a lump or lumps in the abdomen (mesenteric or para-aortic).
 - May present with pressure symptoms:
 - Cough and wheezing from airway obstruction
 - Hoarseness and bovine cough from recurrent laryngeal nerve involvement
 - Dysphagia from oesophageal compression
 - Swelling of neck, face or arms due to compression of superior vena cava or subclavian vein
 - Paraplegia from spinal cord compression.

Symptoms of lymph nodes enlargement

Lymph node enlargement may be asymptomatic and an incidental finding:

1. **Acute lymphadenopathy** may present with fever, pains, sore throat, cough, indicate infection or inflammation as the cause. The cause may be found on ENT examination.

In clinical practice, the lymph nodes are often examined in piece meal and regionally. Here they are described together to avoid confusion.

Some glands can only be assessed by investigations, for example—a chest X-ray may reveal hilar (Fig. 8.4) or paratracheal lymphadenopathy and CT scan abdomen may disclose para-aortic lymphadenopathy.

In healthy subjects palpable glands can usually be detected especially in the axilla and the groin. They are usually less than 1cm in diameter. Lymph nodes ≥ 2 cm in groin are considered abnormal and pathological and biopsy should be taken for diagnosis of the cause.

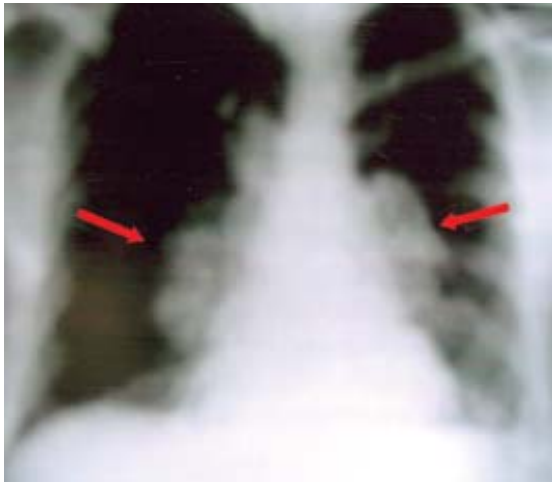


Fig. 8.4: Chest X-ray (PA view) showing bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy due to sarcoidosis

Examination sequence

The examination involves not only the detection of lymphadenopathy but also an assessment of its significance and the various features described in the Box 8.1 below. The causes of lymphadenopathy are listed in the Table 8.1.

Box 8.1: EXAMINATION OF A LYMPH NODE MASS OR ANY SWELLING

- Inspect the mass carefully, noting change in colour or texture of the overlying skin.
- Elicit any tenderness by gentle palpation. Note any change in skin temperature by palpation with dorsum of the fingers.
- Define the size, shape of the mass.
- Keep the hand on the mass to determine whether it is pulsatile.
- Assess the consistency, surface, texture and margins of the mass.
- Try to pick up a fold of the skin between fingers and thumb over the swelling to determine fixation to the skin.

Contd....

Contd....

- To determine fixation to the deeper underlying structures, try to move the mass in different planes relative to the surrounding structures.
- Look for *fluctuation* by compressing the swelling or mass suddenly with one finger, using another finger to determine if a bulge is produced. Positive fluctuation means a bulge is created.
- Confirm the presence of fluctuation in two planes.
- Auscultate the mass for vascular bruits and other sounds to differentiate between lymph node mass and any other vascular mass.
- Elicit transillumination in the dark. Press the lighted end of the torch into one side of the swelling (mass). A cystic mass will light up if the fluid is translucent provided that the covering tissues are not too thick. A solid lymph node mass is negative to transillumination.

Table 8.1: Common causes of lymphadenopathy

- 1. Infective**
 - (i) Bacterial**
 - Streptococcal, brucellosis, tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy, glanders, plague, diphtheria
 - (ii) Viral**
 - Epstein-Barr, HIV, infectious mononucleosis
 - (iii) Protozoal**
 - Toxoplasmosis, filariasis, leishmaniasis, trypanosomiasis
 - (iv) Fungal**
 - Histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis
- 2. Neoplastic**
 - (i) Primary**
 - Leukaemias (acute and chronic lymphatic leukaemia), lymphomas (Hodgkin's and Non-Hodgkin's)
 - (ii) Secondary**
 - Lung, breast, thyroid, stomach
- 3. Connective tissue disorders**
 - Rheumatoid arthritis
 - SLE
- 4. Others:**
 - Lipid storage diseases (Gaucher's, Niemann-Pick), sarcoidosis, amyloidosis, histiocytosis X.
- 5. Drug-induced**
 - Phenytoin (pseudolymphoma), gold, hydralazine, allopurinol.

Note: Localised lymphadenopathy is common with acute and chronic (viral, bacterial) infections and metastases (secondaries).

Method of palpation of different groups of lymph nodes

- 1. Preauricular (Fig. 8.5):** Using the pads of the 2nd and 3rd fingers, palpate the preauricular nodes with a gentle rotatory motion.
- 2. Posterior auricular and occipital lymph nodes.** Palpate them in similar manner as described above by standing in front of the patient (Fig. 8.6).



Fig. 8.5: Preauricular node



Fig. 8.8: Palpation of submandibular lymph nodes



Fig. 8.6: Posterior auricular lymph node



Fig. 8.9: Palpation of supraclavicular lymph nodes



Fig. 8.7: Palpation of cervical lymph nodes in anterior cervical chain



Fig. 8.10: Palpation of scalene lymph node



Fig. 8.11: Palpation of axillary lymph nodes



Fig. 8.12: Palpation of epitrochlear lymph node

3. **Cervical lymph nodes:** Examine the cervical lymph nodes with the patient sitting. Palpate the anterior cervical chain, located anterior and superficial to the sternomastoid (Fig. 8.7). Standing in front of or behind the patient palpate the submental, submandibular glands (Fig. 8.8) and supraclavicular (Fig. 8.9) and scalene node (Fig. 8.10).
4. **Axillary lymph nodes:** Sit or stand in front of the patient, supporting the arm on the side under examination. Palpate the right axilla with left hand and vice versa (Fig. 8.11). Insert the finger tips into the vault of the axilla and then draw them downwards while palpating the medial, anterior and posterior axillary wall in turn.
5. **Epitrochlear lymph node:** Support the patient's left wrist with the right hand and grasp the partially flexed elbow with the left hand and use



Fig. 8.13: Palpation of inguinal lymph nodes



Fig. 8.14: Palpation of popliteal lymph node

the thumb to feel for the epitrochlear lymph node (Fig. 8.12).

6. **Inguinal lymph nodes (Fig. 8.13):** Let the patient lie down for examination of inguinal and popliteal lymph nodes. Palpate in turn over the horizontal chain, which lies just below the inguinal ligament, and then over the vertical chain along the saphenous vein.
 7. **Popliteal lymph nodes (Fig. 8.14):** Use both hands to examine the popliteal fossa with the knee flexed to less than 45°. Occasionally, a lymph node may be mistaken for a band of muscle or an artery. To differentiate between them, roll the mass or node in two directions; up and down; and side to side. The lymph node moves in both the directions; while muscle or an artery moves from side to side only.
- If enlarged or tender lymph nodes found, proceed for;
- Reexamination of the region they drain.
 - Careful assessment of lymph nodes elsewhere so that you can distinguish between regional and generalised lymphadenopathy.

- Look for the presence or absence of enlargement of the liver and spleen to determine whether the cause of lymphadenopathy is infection or primary malignancy.
- Look for any haematological manifestations, e.g. bruising, purpura or petechiae.

Differential diagnosis of lymphadenopathy depending on its characteristics

1. **Consistency.** The consistency of the lymph nodes may provide the following informations.

- In Hodgkin's disease, the lymph nodes are "rubbery" soft.
- In tuberculosis, the lymph nodes are firm and may be matted. There may be discharging sinus or involvement of skin (scrofuloderma Fig. 8.15)
- In metastatic carcinoma, they feel hard or "craggy" calcified nodes feel stony hard.

2. **Tenderness:** Tenderness of the nodes is a feature of acute infection. Therefore, if the lymph nodes are acutely tender, look for the evidence of infection in the region they drain, for example, the possibilities for tender cervical lymphadenopathy include; dental sepsis, tonsillitis and mastoiditis. In acute leukaemia, the lymph nodes are tender. Nodes in lymphoma and metastatic cancer are nontender.

3. **Fixation:** The lymph nodes which are fixed to the underlying or overlying structures are usually malignant.

4. **Site of involvement:**

- Supraclavicular nodes enlargement occurs in tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, toxoplasmosis, metastatic cancer (*Virchow's gland*—enlarged left supraclavicular).
- Axillary lymphadenopathy is common due to injuries, infection in the upper extremities.
- Inguinal lymphadenopathy is due to:
 - Infection of lower limbs, plague
 - Trauma to lower extremities
 - Sexually transmitted diseases, e.g. syphilis, lymphogranuloma venereum, chancroid, genital herpes.
 - Lymphomas
 - Metastases from genital or rectal or lower limb malignancy.
- Mediastinal (hilar) lymphadenopathy is due to;
 - Sarcoidosis (bilateral)
 - Tuberculosis (unilateral)
 - Primary lung cancer (in smoker)
 - Lymphomas



Fig. 8.15: Tubercular lymph node enlargement with extension into the skin (scrofuloderma→)

- Metastatic carcinoma
- Fungal infection
- **Intra-abdominal or retroperitoneal**
 - Lymphomas
 - Tuberculosis (tabes mesenterica)
 - Metastatic

Work up of a patient with lymphadenopathy (see the Box 8.2).

Box 8.2: LYMPHADENOPATHY CLINICAL WORK-UP

1. **Medical history.** It includes:

- Patient's age, sex, occupation, exposure to pets, sexual behaviour and use of drugs.
- Ask for symptoms of cough, fever, sore throat, night sweats, fatigue, weight loss, pain in the nodes.

2. **Physical examination**

- Look for the site and size of lymph nodes, texture, presence or absence of tenderness, signs of inflammation over the node, skin lesions (petechiae, purpura) and splenomegaly.
- A thorough ear, nose and throat (ENT) check up

3. **Laboratory tests**

- Complete blood count for infections, leukaemia.
- Serological tests for EBV, CMV, HIV, SLE, toxoplasmosis, brucella.
- Chest X-ray for tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, lymphoma, lung cancer or metastatic cancer.

4. **Biopsy** lymph node is indicated when:

- Lymph node size is >2 cm in diameter
- Recent onset, rapid progression
- Location e.g. supraclavicular or cervical
- Age >40 years
- Hard, nontender lymph nodes
- ENT cause is excluded

Table 8.2: Lymphoid leukaemia and lymphomas

Features	Lymphoblastic leukaemia	Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Hodgkin's lymphoma
1. Cellular derivation	80% B, 20% T cells	90% B; 10% T	Unresolved
2. Age	Children	Young age	Middle age around 30-40 years
3. Site of the disease			
• Localised	Uncommon	Uncommon	Common
• Nodal spread	Common, non-contiguous lymph nodes involved.	Discontiguous nodes involved	Contiguous nodes involved
• Nodal characteristics	Discrete, painful, soft	Painless, discrete lymph nodes, soft to firm	Rubbery consistency.
- Common groups involved	Cervical and axillary groups	Involvement of Waldeyer's ring, Epitrochlear node	Cervical group is involved early, but later all groups may be involved
- Mediastinal (pressure symptoms e.g. superior vena cava, bronchus, spinal cord compression)	Common	Common	Common
- Abdominal	Uncommon	Common	Uncommon
4. Extranodal involvement	Common	Common	Uncommon
5. Bone marrow involvement	Always	Common	Uncommon
6. B. symptoms (e.g. fever, weight loss, night sweats)	Common	Uncommon	Common
7. Chromosomal defects	Common (translocations, deletion)	Common (translocations, deletion)	Common (aneuploidy)
8. Curability	40-60%	30-40%	75-85%

The sudden onset of lymphadenopathy with rapid progression indicates malignancy involving the lymph node. The three common conditions, e.g. lymphoid leukaemia, non-Hodgkin's and Hodgkin's lymphoma are compared in the Table 8.2.

Acute lymphadenitis

- Enlarged, tender and fixed lymph nodes.
- Overlying skin may be red, hot and indurated.
- Primary infective focus may be found.

Chronic lymphadenitis. Two common groups of diseases are compared in the Table 8.3.

Table 8.3: Chronic infective lymphadenitis (septic vs tubercular)

Septic	Tubercular
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lymph nodes are discrete, firm, slightly tender and non-matted • Symptoms of sepsis may be present, e.g. high temperature, tachycardia, tachypnoea, sweats. • Abscess formation common, hence, fluctuation in the centre is common. • Rupture is uncommon 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lymph nodes may or may not be tender, firm and often matted may be adherent to skin • Fever, weight loss, night sweats and respiratory symptoms present • Occasionally caseation may lead to cold abscess formation • The lymph nodes may extend to involve skin and may burst forming tuberculous ulcer or sinus

THE THYROID GLAND (Read also endocrine system)

Applied anatomy and physiology

The normal thyroid gland—an endocrine gland is made up of two lobes connected by an isthmus in the middle. It lies in the anterior part of the neck just below the thyroid cartilage. Occasionally, the gland may extend into superior mediastinum or may be entirely retrosternal. Rarely, the gland may be located along the line occupied by the thyroglossal duct. When situated near the origin on the dorsum of tongue, it is called *lingual thyroid*. The normal thyroid is palpable in about 50% of females and 25% of male. It is divided into pseudolobules which are further divided into thyroid follicles lined by cuboidal epithelium and contain a protein called *thyroglobulin*. The thyroid hormones are synthesised and stored in thyroglobulin. Parafollicular or 'C' cells present around the follicles secrete another hormone—*calcitonin* which plays role in calcium homeostasis.

Thyroid hormones are:

- T₃ (Triiodothyronine)
- T₄ (Tetraiodothyronine)
- Calcitonin.

Steps of hormogenesis

1. *Uptake of iodine* by the thyroid in the form of iodide.
2. *Formation of iodotyrosine* (MIT and DIT) from oxidation of iodides and its subsequent combination with tyrosyl group of thyroglobin to produce monoiodotyrosine (MIT) and di-iodotyrosine (DIT).
3. *Coupling reaction* occurs between these iodotyrosines. One molecule of diiodotyrosine combines with one molecule of moniodotyrosine to form triiodothyronine (T_3) and two molecules combine to give tetra-iodothyronine (T_4) respectively.
4. *Release of T_3 and T_4* by proteolytic enzymes, i.e. proteases and peptidases.

The hormone T_4 is produced in the thyroid whereas T_3 is mainly produced in the peripheral tissue by conversion of T_4 to T_3 by deiodination. About 20% T_3 is also produced in the thyroid gland also.

Functions of thyroid hormones

- They control the general metabolism by regulating the rate of oxidation and production of energy. They maintain the basal metabolic rate (BMR) of the body.
- They promote growth of body tissues and development of mental functions during infancy and childhood.
- They sensitize the tissues to the action of endogenous catecholamines. Therefore, excess of these hormones lead to symptoms and signs of sympathetic over-activity especially seen in hyperthyroidism.

Clinical presentations

Disorders of the thyroid gland present in three different ways:

1. Symptom and signs of excess of thyroid hormone (thyrotoxicosis read case discussion in bed-side medicine without tears by Prof. SN Chugh)
2. Symptom and signs of thyroid hormone deficiency (hypothyroidism read case discussion in bed-side Medicine without tears by Prof SN Chugh).
3. Enlargement of thyroid (goitre or thyromegaly)

Goitre. The enlargement of thyroid gland is called *goitre*. It may be physiological (puberty) or pathological. It may be diffuse (Grave's disease, Hashimoto's thyroiditis, iodine deficiency, congenital or dysmorphogenesis) or nodular (single nodular or multinodular toxic or nontoxic goitre).

By definition, the lateral lobes of the thyroid have a volume in excess of the terminal phalanges of the thumbs of the subject. Goitre is noticed as a cosmetic defect by the patient, friends or relatives but many subjects are unaware of it. The vast majority are asymptomatic. Tenderness is associated with various forms of thyroiditis (viral, autoimmune) and acute pain may occur following bleeding into a thyroid cyst. Dysphagia can occur if there is marked enlargement of thyroid; its presence may suggest malignant process. The cause of goitre are given in the Box 8.3.

Box 8.3: CAUSES OF GOITRE

1. *Physiological*
 - Puberty (Fig. 8.16A)
 - Pregnancy
2. *Autoimmune*
 - Grave's disease (see Fig. 20.4)
 - Hashimoto's disease (Fig. 8.16 B)
3. *Thyroiditis*
 - Acute (de Quervain's thyroiditis)
 - Chronic fibrotic (Riedel's thyroiditis)

Contd....



Figs 8.16A to C: A. Puberty goitre (physiological). The thyroid is mildly enlarged in a 14 year girl. B. Hashimoto's thyroiditis. The thyroid is diffusely enlarged. C. Multinodular goitre. Note: the multiple thyroid nodules enlargement of the thyroid

Contd....

4. *Iodine deficiency goitre*
5. *Dyshormogenesis*
6. *Goitrogens* (e.g. sulphonylureas)
7. *Multinodular goitre* (Fig. 8.16 C)
8. *Diffuse goitre* (unknown cause)
 - Colloid
 - Simple
9. *Cysts and tumours*
 - Adenoma
 - Carcinoma
 - Lymphoma
10. *Miscellaneous*
 - Sarcoidosis
 - Tuberculosis

There is a WHO grading of goitre:

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| Grade 0: | Neither palpable nor visible goitre |
| Grade 1: | Palpable goitre |
| | A: Goitre detectable only on palpation. |
| | B: Goitre palpable and visible with neck extended |
| Grade 2: | Goitre visible with neck in normal position |
| Grade 3: | Large goitre visible from a distance |

Examination of thyroid (Read chapter 20)

It includes inspection, palpation and auscultation.

Abnormalities and their interpretations

1. *Shape.* The regular, smooth, symmetric enlargement of thyroid occurs in Grave's disease and thyroiditis; while irregular enlargement is seen in multinodular goitre.
2. *Size.* Large goitres are usually autoimmune, multinodular or malignant in origin whereas small goitres are seen during puberty, pregnancy, thyroiditis and dyshormogenesis.
3. *Mobility.* Most goitres move upwards with swallowing except very large goitre occupying the all available space in the neck. However, absence of mobility indicates invasive thyroid carcinoma leading to fixation of thyroid gland.
4. *Consistency.* The goitre is soft in Grave's disease, firm in Hashimoto's thyroiditis, and hard in malignancy.
5. *Surface.* The surface is smooth in Grave's disease, thyroiditis (Hashimoto's or viral) and iodine deficiency or puberty goitre. It is nodular in multinodular goitre or malignancy of thyroid.
6. *Tenderness.* Diffuse tenderness indicate infection or inflammation of thyroid (thyroiditis) while localised tenderness may occur following bleeding into a cyst.
7. *Bruit and a thrill.* A palpable thrill or an audible vascular bruit may be associated with Grave's disease, indicates increased blood flow through the thyroid gland (murmur), must be distinguished from a murmur arising in the carotid artery or transmitted from the aorta and from a venous hum originating in the internal jugular vein.

8. *Other features.* The goitre may or may not be associated with systemic features. All the systemic features may not be present in a patient with toxic goitre. It is, therefore, necessary to look for other signs of hyperactivity or hypoactivity of the thyroid in a patient presenting with goitre. It is made clear that facial appearance and some systemic features are excellent guide to the diagnosis. The systemic features of both hyper and hypothyroidism are described in case discussion in Bed side medicine without tears by prof. SN Chugh.

Investigations of a patient with thyroid disease

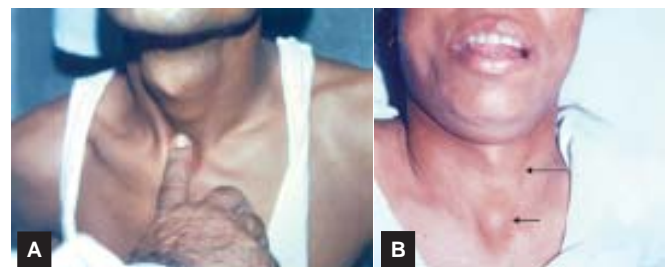
(Read Chapter 20—The Endocrine system)

The trachea

To orient yourself to the neck, identify the thyroid and cricoid cartilages and the trachea lies below them.

Steps of examination

- Inspect the trachea from the front for any deviation from its usual midline position.
- Now *palpate it for any deviation* (Fig. 8.17A). For this, place your finger along one side of the trachea with neck slightly flexed to accommodate the finger. Note the space between it and the sternomastoid muscle. Compare it with the other side. Normally, the spaces should be symmetric and equal. A small space on one side indicates shift of trachea to that side.
The prominence of sternomastoid muscle on one side may suggest tracheal shift (Trail's sign; Fig. 8.17B) which may be confirmed on palpation.
- Masses in the neck may shift the trachea to the opposite side.
- Tracheal deviation may also signify mediastinal shift—an important problem in the thorax. For separate mediastinal shift and concomitant shift of trachea—Read examination of respiratory system.



Figs 8.17A and B: A. Palpation of trachea, B. Trail's sign. The sternomastoid muscle stands out prominently on the side of the trachea is shifted (left side in this case ←)

The carotid arteries and jugular veins

You will prefer to defer the examination of these vessels until the patient lies for cardiovascular examination (Read cardiovascular examination).

9

The Breast and the Axillae

THE BREAST AND THE AXILLAE

Applied anatomy and physiology

The female breast lies against the anterior chest wall extending from the 2nd rib down to the 6th rib, and from the sternum across the midaxillary line. Its surface is rectangular rather than circular. The breast overlies the pectoralis major.

The stages in the development of the female breast are diagrammatically illustrated (Fig. 9.1). The commonest site for nipple development is the 4th intercostal space on the midclavicular line, but accessory breast/nipple tissue may develop anywhere down the nipple line (*axilla to groin*).

To describe the clinical findings, the breast is often divided into the nipple, the areola and four quadrants based on the horizontal and vertical lines crossing at the nipple (Fig. 9.2). The nipple consists of erectile tissue covered with pigmented skin, which also covers the axilla. The opening of the lactiferous ducts may be seen near the apex of the nipple.

Alternatively, instead of quadrants, finding can be localised as the time on the face of a clock (e.g. 6 O'clock) and the distance in centimeters from the nipple.

The size and shape of the female breast vary widely and are influenced by hereditary factors, sexual maturity and the phase of menstrual cycle, parity, pregnancy and lactation and the general state of nutrition. The amount of fat and stroma surrounding the glandular tissue largely determines the size of the breast except during lactation (e.g. breast enlargement is glandular).

The breast is hormonally sensitive tissue, responsible to the changes of monthly cycling and ageing. In premenopausal women, its consistency may vary considerably in response to fluctuations in oestrogen and progesterone levels during menstrual cycle and in pregnancy. Swelling and tenderness due to fluid retention and prominence of the glandular elements of

the breast are more common in premenstrual phase. With advancing age, there is a reduction in the amount of glandular tissue with a corresponding increase in the amount of fat. Therefore, the breasts become softer in consistency and more pendulous. The breasts of lactating mothers are swollen and engorged with milk, hence, are best examined after breast-feeding or milk expression.

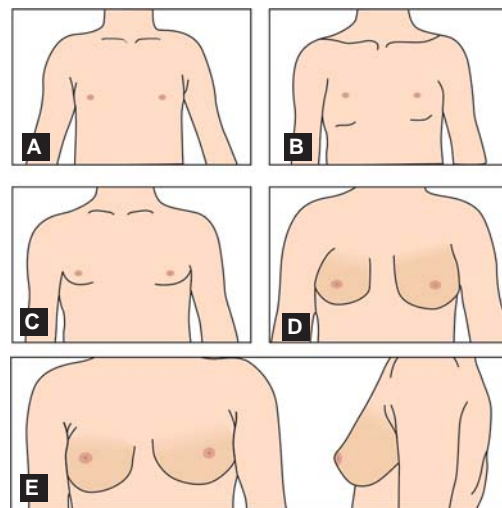


Fig. 9.1: Stages of development of female breast (diag). A. Pre-pubertal breast, B. Breast budding (initial stage), C. Enlargement (primary mount), D. Secondary mount formed by areola, E. Contour of breast and areola

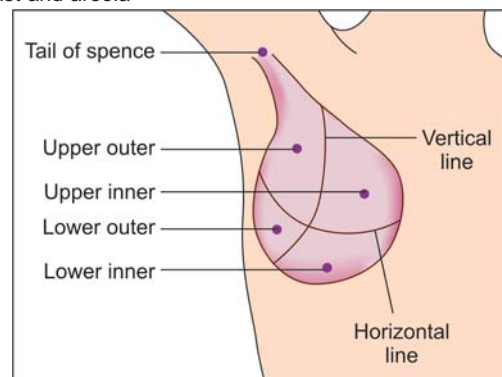


Fig. 9.2: Various quadrants of the breast (diag)

Each male breast consists chiefly of a small nipple and areola. It overlies a thin disc of undeveloped breast tissue that may not be distinguishable clinically from the surrounding tissues. A firm button of the breast tissue 2 cm or more in diameter has been described in one-thirds of adult men. The limits of normal adult male breast have not yet been established.

Clinical presentations

The common symptoms of the breast disease are:

1. Breast lump or mass
2. Breast pain or discomfort
3. Nipple discharge
4. Nipple retraction
5. Skin changes
6. Galactorrhoea (milk ejection)
7. Men may present with gynaecomastia

Breast lump

The common causes of breast lump include; carcinoma of breast, fibrocystic change, fibroadenomas, cysts and breast abscesses. The commonest cause of breast lump varies with age (Table 9.1)

- **Carcinoma of breast:** This is one of the commonest malignancy in the women and its incidence increases with age. It is customary to regard any mass in the breast as potentially malignant until proven otherwise on histopathology. Cancer of the male breast is uncommon and there is strong genetic factor.

Characteristically carcinoma are solid masses with an irregular outline, often painless but firm or hard in consistency and can not be delineated clearly from the surrounding tissue. The tumour may be localised within breast tissue or extend into the overlying structures such as skin or, pectoral fascia, pectoral muscle or metastasise to regional lymph nodes through lymphatics or spread to distant organs through systemic circulation. When a tumour is fixed to the chest wall, it is immobile when the pectoral muscle is relaxed. When tethered to the pectoral fascia, but not muscle, it will be mobile when pectoral muscle is relaxed and adherent when the muscle is tensed. The current TNM (tumour, nodes, metastases) classification of breast tumour is given in the Table 9.2.

Risk factors for breast cancer

1. **Age.** Advanced age is a risk factor. More than three-fourths breast cancer cases occur in women 50 years or older; more than half in women older than 65. For women between ages of 35 and 55 years without

Table 9.1: Palpable masses of the breast

Age (in years)	Lesion	Characteristics
15-25	Fibroadenoma	Usually fine, soft to firm in consistency, round, mobile and tender. It is well demarcated from surrounding tissue, retraction sign absent
25-50	Cysts	Usually single, soft, round, mobile, often tender, retraction sign absent
	Fibrocystic changes	Nodular, rope like, bilateral changes (lumps), firm
	Carcinoma	Irregular in outline, stellate, firm to hard, not clearly demarcated from surrounding tissue, may be fixed to skin and underlying tissue. Retraction sign may be present
Over 50	Carcinoma unless proved otherwise	-As above
Pregnancy/lactation	Lactating adenomas, cysts, mastitis (abscess) and carcinoma	-As above

major risk factors, the chance of developing breast cancer is approximately 2-5%.

2. **Family history.** Risk from familial breast cancer falls into two patterns; (i) family history of breast cancer and (ii) genetic predisposition. First degree relatives, namely a mother or sister with breast cancer establish a "positive family history". The first degree relatives with breast cancer who are premenopausal with bilateral disease confers the highest risk. Inherited disease (genetic predisposition) in women carrying mutations in the breast cancer susceptibility genes BRCA1 and BRCA2 accounts only 5 to 10% of breast cancer. However, these genes confer a 50% risk of the disease in women under 50 which increases further to 80% by age of 65.
3. **Menstrual history and pregnancy.** Early menarche, delayed menopause, and first live birth after 35 or no pregnancy, all raise the risk of breast cancer two to three folds.
4. **Associated conditions/diseases**
 - (i) **Breast conditions and diseases.** Benign breast disease with biopsy findings of atypical hyperplasia or lobular carcinoma *in situ* carry significantly increased risk.
 - (ii) **Fibrocystic changes.** This is another cause of breast lump in the young women (35-50 years), is characterised by irregular nodularity of the breast

Table 9.2: TNM Classification of breast cancers

Tumour (T)	
T _x	Can not be assessed
T ₀	No evidence of primary tumour
T _{is}	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i> , intraductal carcinoma, lobular carcinoma <i>in situ</i> , Paget's disease of the nipple
T ₁	Tumour <2 cm in greatest dimension <ol style="list-style-type: none"> < 0.5 cm > 0.5 to 1 cm > 1 cm to 2 m
T ₂	Tumour >2 cm to <5 cm in greatest dimension
T ₃	Tumour > 5 cm in greatest dimension
T ₄	Direct extension into the chest wall or skin irrespective of the size <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Extension to chest wall Oedema including <i>peau d'orange</i> or ulceration of overlying skin 4a + 4b Inflammatory carcinoma
Nodes (N)	
N _x	Regional lymph nodes can not be assessed
N ₀	No lymph node metastasis
N ₁	Metastases with movable ipsilateral axillary nodes
N ₂	Metastases to ipsilateral axillary nodes fixed to one another or to other structures
N ₃	Metastases to ipsilateral internal mammary nodes
Metastases (M)	
M _x	Presence of distant metastases can not be assessed
M ₀	No distant metastases
M ₁	Distant metastases including supraclavicular nodes

Note: This classification is also applicable for classification of other primary malignancies.

especially in the upper outer quadrant. Usually the tissue is rubbery in consistency and varies in size with the hormonal cycle, being the largest premenstrually. These changes are bilateral.

- (iii) **Fibroadenomas.** These are the abnormalities of normal development and involution due to outgrowth of elements derived from terminal ductal lobules. These present as small, round, smooth mobile discrete rubbery lumps in young women (<35 years of age). The distinction between a juvenile fibroadenoma and phylloides tumour (giant fibroadenoma) is made on distinct histopathological grounds and both are regarded as distinct pathological entities.
- (iv) **Breast cysts.** These are a feature of the involuting breast which is still subject to hormonal stimulation. They are the commonest cause of lump in women between the ages of 35-50 (Table 9.1). Their clinical picture depends on the intracystic tension. They present as smooth lumps, which may be soft and fluctuant when intracystic

tension (pressure) is low, become hard and painful when the cyst is under high tension or pressure. Cysts may occur in multiple clusters. Occasionally, a cyst may represent a malignant change.

Any cyst in which aspirate is blood-stained or there is residual mass following aspiration or which recurs after several aspiration should be excised and subjected to histopathology to exclude malignancy

(v) **Breast abscess.** The two distinct types of breast abscess are:

- Lactational abscess (es).** These occur in women who are breast-feeding or lactating and are usually peripheral in distribution.
- Nonlactational abscess (es).** These occurs as an extension of periductal mastitis and have a classical distribution at the edge of the nipple, often associated with nipple inversion. They are common among young women smokers. Occasionally, a nonlactating abscess may rupture spontaneously forming a fistula to the exterior at areolocutaneous border.

Skin changes

- (i) **Skin dimpling** may be just a benign simple skin dimpling due to retraction of the skin or may be as a result of indrawing of the skin due to infiltration of the dermis by tumour. The differentiating feature between the two is mobility of the skin. In simple dimpling, the skin remains mobile over the tumour but in malignancy, the tumour is fixed to the skin and is immobile. Similarly if the tumour is tethered to the chest wall (pectoral fascia), the tumour appears solid with the chest wall when pectoral muscle is contracted but it is possible to move it when the muscle is relaxed. In contrast, the tumours which infiltrate the chest wall become fixed when the pectoral muscle is both relaxed and contracted.
- (ii) **Lymphoedema of the breast** is another skin change produced by obstruction of the intramammary lymphatics by the tumours. The skin is attached to the hair follicles but is swollen in between, giving the appearance of the skin of an orange (*peau d'orange*- Fig. 9.3)
Eczematous changes of the nipple may be a part of a generalised skin disorder. Localised eczematous changes around the nipple raise the possibility of Paget's disease of the nipple. There may be fulgrating growth of the breast producing disfigurement (Fig. 9.4).

- (iii) **Nipple inversion:** The nipple retraction may be benign (due to shortening of the nipple ducts due to inflammation and fibrosis) in which the nipple retraction is symmetrical and slit-like. Nipple retraction due to malignant disease is



Fig. 9.3: Peau d' orange of the breast. The intramammary lymphatic obstruction by the tumour results in swollen (lymphoedema) breast and typical appearance like skin of an orange (Peau d'orange)



Fig. 9.4: Disfigurement of breast due to a fulgating growth



Fig. 9.5: Fulgating growth causing disfigurement of breast (right) and displacement and retraction of the nipple



Fig. 9.6: Galactorrhoea. Note the drops of milk coming out of the breasts in a nonlactating mother due to hyperprolactinaemia. A white drop of milk attached to the left breast is visible

asymmetrical and disfiguring pulling the nipple away from the central position (Fig. 9.5).

- (iv) **Nipple discharge:** A small amount of clear fluid from the breast on massage is normal. Persistent single duct discharge or blood-stained (macroscopic or microscopic) is abnormal should be investigated. A milky discharge from multiple ducts in non-lactating mother is called *galactorrhoea* (Fig. 9.6). The causes of galactorrhoea are given in the Box 9.1. It is commonly associated with hyperprolactinaemia.

Box 9.1:

COMMON CAUSES OF GALACTORRHOEA

- Prolactin secreting pituitary tumour
- Hypothalamic-pituitary stalk lesions
- Drug-induced (phenothiazines, dopamine antagonists and dopamine depleting agents)
- Ectopic production of prolactin e.g. hydatidiform moles, choriocarcinoma, lung cancer, hypernephroma
- Primary hypothyroidism
- Sucking reflex and breast trauma
- Renal failure
- Idiopathic.

Gynaecomastia (Figs 9.7 and 9.8)

Gynaecomastia refers to enlargement of breast in the males, occurs in about 50% of pubertal boys probably due to elevated oestradiol levels. Growth of the breast in men, as in women, is mediated by oestrogen and results from disturbances of the normal ratio of the active androgen to oestrogen. Growth of the breast ensues in men when the normal ratio decreases as a result of diminished testosterone production or action, enhanced oestrogen formation, or both processes occurring simultaneously.

Enlargement of the male breast can be a normal physiological phenomenon at certain times of life (puberty) or the result of several pathological states (Table 9.3).

Table 9.3: Common causes of gynaecomastia

1. Physiological gynaecomastia
• Newborn
• Adolescents (Fig 9.7)
• Ageing
2. Pathological gynaecomastia
A. Deficient testosterone production or action
• Klinefelter's syndrome, testicular feminisation and Reifenstein's syndrome
• Orchitis (viral)
• Trauma
• Defects of testosterone synthesis
• Congenital anorchia
B. Increased production of oestrogen
• Testicular tumours
• Carcinoma of lung or other tumours producing hCG
• Adrenal disease
• Cirrhosis of the liver
• Thyrotoxicosis
• Malnutrition
C. Drug-induced
• Oestrogen used for treatment of prostate cancer
• Diuretics e.g. spironolactone
• Acid suppressants e.g. cimetidine, omeprazole
• Antimitotic drugs e.g. busulfan, cisplatin
• Antihypertensive e.g. methyldopa, calcium channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors
D. Idiopathic

Examination of breasts

The clinical breast examination is an important part of women's health case; it enhances detection of breast cancers that may otherwise go undetected and also provides an opportunity to demonstrate techniques for self examination to the patient. Clinician is advised to adopt a more standard approach especially for palpation and to use a systemic and thorough search pattern, varying palpation pressure and a circular motion with the finger pads.

Examination includes **inspection** and **palpation** of breasts in different positions as described below:

Steps

- As you begin the examination of the breasts, be aware that women and girls may feel apprehensive. Reassure the patient and adopt a gentle and courteous approach.



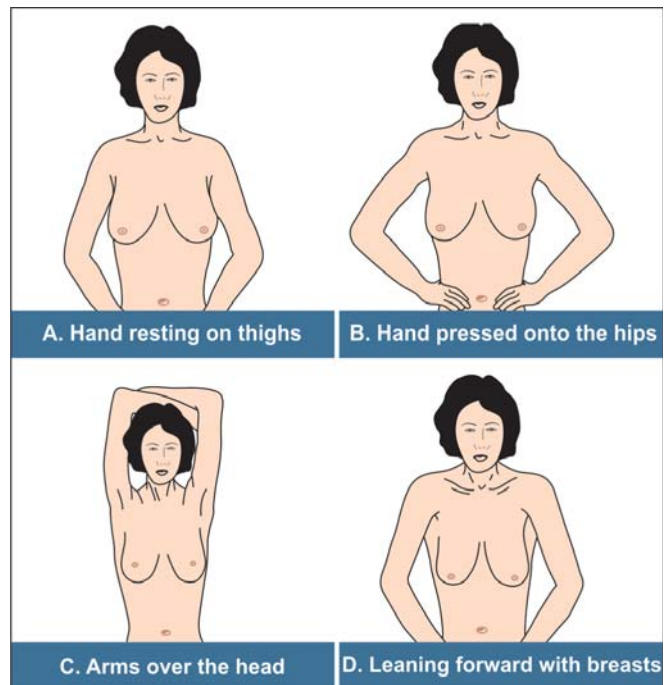
Fig. 9.7: Gynaecomastia in an adolescent male, more on the left than the right. It appears physiological. (to be investigated)



Fig. 9.8: Gynaecomastia in a patient with cirrhotic portal hypertension. Note the ascited with inverted umbilicus

- Before you begin, explain to the patient that you are about to examine her breasts. Explain the purpose for the examination also.
- An adequate inspection requires full exposure of the chest. Ask the patient to sit upright on a well-illuminated chair/couch, undressed to the waist and with the hands resting on the thighs, so that the pectoral muscles are relaxed (Fig. 9.9A).
- Sit facing the patient and look for the size, symmetry, contour, local swelling and changes in the skin. Inspect the nipples also for size, shape, direction in which they point (Fig. 9.10), any rash or ulceration or any discharge.

- Redness of a breast may be due to mastitis (local inflammation or inflammatory carcinoma).
 - Thickening and puckering of the skin may suggest infiltrating carcinoma. Flattening of the normally convex breast, skin dimpling, *peau d'orange* and *blood-stained*, nipple discharge suggest breast (s) carcinoma
 - Asymmetry of direction in which nipple points suggests an underlying cancer. Rash or ulceration of nipple occurs in Paget's disease of the nipple
5. Repeat the inspection with the patient's *hands pressed firmly on hips* (Fig 9.9B) thereby contracting the pectoral muscles, then with arms raised above head (Fig. 9.9C) to stretch the pectoral muscles and the skin over the breasts, and finally leaning forward so that the breasts become pendulous (Fig 9.9D). Such actions expose the whole breast and exacerbate skin dimpling.
 6. Ask the patient to lie supine with the head supported on one pillow and with the hand on the side to be examined under the head (Fig. 9.11). Breast tissue gets flattened in this position.
 7. With the hand held flat to the skin, palpate the rectangular area extending from the clavicle to the bra line, and from the midsternal line to the posterior axillary line and well into the axilla for the tail of the breast. Use the fingerpads of middle 3 fingers (2nd, 3rd, 4th) keeping them slightly flexed and compressing the breast tissue gently against the chest wall.
 8. To localise the lesion, consider the breast as a face of a clock and carefully examine each hour of the clock from outside towards the nipple, not forgetting the tissue directly under the nipple. Compare the texture of one breast with that of other.
 9. Define the following characteristics of a mass, if found:
 - *Location*- by quadrant or clock, with centimeters from the nipple
 - *Size*- in centimeters
 - *Shape*- round, or cystic, disc like, or irregular in outline
 - *Consistency*- soft, firm, hard
 - *Limits/extent*-well circumscribed or not
 - *Tenderness*- present or absent
 - *Mobility*- in relation to the skin, the pectoral fascia and the chest wall. Gently move the breast near the mass and watch for dimpling. Next try to move the mass itself by holding it between thumb and forefingers while the patient relaxes her arm and then while she presses her hands against her hip to contract the pectoral muscle.



Figs 9.9A to D: Examination of the breast in different positions



Fig. 9.10: Elevation of nipple in underlying carcinoma breast. The scar of biopsy is visible above the left nipple. Left nipple is elevated and facing medially, while right nipple is directed laterally



Fig. 9.11: Positioning for palpation of the right breast

Hard, irregular, poorly circumscribed nodule or nodules, fixed to the skin or underlying tissues strongly suggest malignancy (Fig. 9.12)

Note: Because breasts tend to swell and become more nodular before menses as a result of oestrogen stimulation, the best time for examination is 5 to 7 days after the onset of menses.

10. Examine the axillary tail between the thumb and finger as it extends towards the axilla.
11. Palpate each nipple by holding it gently between index finger and thumb and note its elasticity and try to express any discharge.
12. To examine the lateral portion of the breast, ask the patient to roll onto the opposite hip, placing her hand on her forehead but keeping the shoulders pressed against the bed or examining table. This flattens the lateral breast tissue. Now start the palpation from the axilla and move towards bra line. To examine the medial portion of the breast, ask the patient to lie with her shoulders flat against the bed or examining table, placing her hand behind her neck and lifting up her elbow until it is even with her shoulder. Palpate in a straight line down from the nipple to the bra line.



Fig. 9.12: Carcinoma of right breast producing an irregular hard poorly defined nodule in the breast. There is an associated lymphoedema of right upper and lower limbs due to metastases in the axillary and inguinal lymph nodes (biopsy has been taken)



Fig. 9.13: Enlargement of axillary and neck lymph nodes (↑)

13. Complete the examination by palpating the regional lymph nodes, including the supraclavicular group.

The Axillae

Examine the axillae with the arm relaxed in order to expose the apex of the axilla.

Inspect the skin of each axilla for any rash or infection or unusual pigmentation.

Deeply pigmented, velvety axillary skin suggests *acanthosis nigricans*, one form of which is associated with internal malignancy

Palpate the axillary region for any nodule or lymph node enlargement (Fig. 9.13) by asking the patient to alternately contract and relax the pectoral muscles by pressing her hands on to the hip.

Nodules in the tail of the breast are sometimes mistaken for enlarged lymph nodes

Investigations for breast disease

1. Fine-needle aspiration for histopathological examination
2. Trucut biopsy for confirmation of diagnosis
3. Mammography (Fig. 9.14). It is useful to detect a lesion before it becomes palpable
4. Ultrasound to differentiate cystic from solid lesion and to discriminate between benign and malignant lesion.
5. **MRI.** Breast MRI is increasingly being used in the assessment of breast cancers. Its sensitivity is high (as 100%) but specificity is low resulting in high false positive results. It has a role in specific situation such

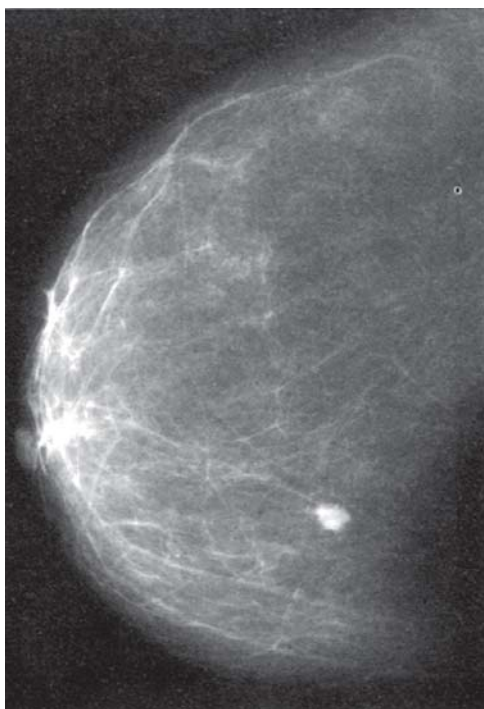


Fig. 9.14: Mammographic image of a breast cancer



Fig. 9.15: MRI of patient with breast cancer. Note the suspicious mass—speculated borders

as a suspicious mass on clinical examination with negative findings on USG and mammogram (Fig. 9.15)

10

The Extremities

EXAMINATION OF EXTREMITIES

After examination of head and neck, axillae and breasts, now turn to the examination of extremities. The formal physical assessment often begins with examination of hands followed by feet.

The hands and the nails

Applied anatomy and physiology

The hand is a well developed structure and its cortical (cerebral) representation occupies a larger area (Remember, the smaller parts have wider cortical representation). The examination of hands begins with inspection for gross abnormality and then examination of individual structures on an anatomical basis.

The keratinous nail plate is produced mainly in the nail matrix which lies in the nail fold on the back of the terminal phalanx of each digit. The matrix runs from the end of the floor of the nailfold to the distant margin of the lunula ("half moon"), and from it, the nail plate grows forward covering the nail bed. A small part of the nail and the under surface are formed from the cells in the nail bed. Nail grows throughout life. Finger nails grow faster than foot nails, the growth in the finger nails being approximately 1 cm in 3 months.



Fig. 10.1: Acromegalic hands. Note the short hand with short stubby stout fingers

Steps of examination

1. *Inspect the general features of the dorsal and palmar aspects of the both hands.* The abnormalities are given in the Box 10.1.

Box 10.1: HAND AS A DIAGNOSTIC TOOL	
Morphological feature	Diagnosis
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flexed posture of hand and arm • Large hands and palms • Short spade-like hands • Wrist drop • Ulnar deviation of hand • Main De'accoucheur or obstetric hand • Deformity • Claw hand (main-en-griffe) • Oedema of hands 	<p>Hemiplegia (Fig. 1.33th in Bed side medicine without tears by prof SN Chugh)</p> <p>Gigantism (see Fig. 3.3), Marfan's syndrome (see Fig. 3.4)</p> <p>Acromegaly (Fig. 10.1)</p> <p>Radial nerve palsy, lead neuropathy, other peripheral neuropathies</p> <p>Rheumatoid arthritis</p> <p>Tetany (Fig.10.2)</p> <p>Trauma, rheumatoid arthritis</p> <p>Paralysis of interossei and lumbricals</p> <p>May be part of generalised oedema, may be due to local venous or lymphatic obstruction or disuse in hemiplegia</p>



Fig. 10.2: De' accoucheur's hand (also called obstetric hand). Note the spontaneous carpopedal spasm producing flexion of the thumb and adduction and apposition of fingers

2. Now shake hand with the patient and note the temperature, sweating and grip strength (Box 10.2).
3. Note the specific changes in the nails (Box 10.3), fingers (Table 10.1), tendons and joints.

Box 10.2: INFORMATION GATHERED FROM HAND SHAKE	
Feature	Condition
Temperature (warm, cold hands)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Warm, moist hands in hyperthyroidism, high output states, cor pulmonale, respiratory failure • Cold but moist hands in anxiety, low cardiac output (e.g. CHF), acromegaly • Cold, dry and rough hands in myxoedema
Weak hand grip	Weakness of small muscles of hand or flexors of hand
Inability to relax the grip	Myotonia
Thick, rough palm	Hyperkeratosis (vitamin A deficiency) tylosis, occupational (Fig. 10.3), arsenic poisoning, myxoedema



Fig. 10.3: Hyperkeratosis of palms in a maid servant



Fig. 10.4: Palmar erythema in a patient with cirrhotic portal hypertension. Note the redness of palms

Box 10.3: CHANGE IN THE NAIL COLOUR AS A CLUE TO DIAGNOSIS	
Change	Diagnosis
Pale	Anaemia
Orange or lemon yellow	Carotenaemia, mepacrine toxicity
Yellow	Jaundice
Bluish	Cyanosis (see Fig. 10.18)
Red	Palmar erythema (Fig. 10.4), carbon-monoxide poisoning, polycythaemia, embolic lesions of subacute bacterial endocarditis, vasculitis (Fig. 10.5)
Black (melanin)	Read the causes of pigmentation (Fig. 10.6)
Petechiae, purpura, ecchymosis	Bleeding or coagulation disorders
Rash	Disease or drug-induced



Fig. 10.5: Vasculitic changes in the skin

Table 10.1: Finger deformities as a sign of disease

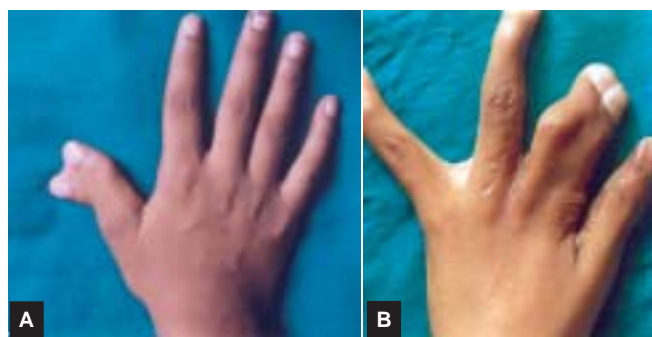
Deformity	Disease/condition
Arachnodactyly (long, slender fingers—Fig. 10.7)	Marfan's syndrome, Kallmann's syndrome (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism)
Polydactyly (an extra finger, 6th finger Fig. 10.8A)	Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome, congenital heart disease
Syndactyly (United or jointed fingers Fig. 10.8B)	Poland's syndrome, congenital heart disease
Sclerodactyly (tight skin over phalanges. Fig. 10.9)	Scleroderma
Broad, short, stubby, stout fingers (Fig. 10.1)	Acromegaly, pseudohypoparathyroidism
Short metacarpals i.e. brachydactyly (short fingers)	Down's syndrome, Turner's syndrome, mucopolysaccharidosis
Clubbing of the fingers	Read finger clubbing discussed below



Fig. 10.6: Pigmentation of hands and creases of the palms in pellagra



Fig. 10.7: Arachnodactyly. Note the long slender fingers from a patients with Marfan's syndrome. Webbing of fingers is present. Thumb protrusion sign is positive



Figs 10.8A and B: Deformities of fingers. A. polydactyly (an extra thumb) B. Syndactyly

Nails: Growth is slowed by acute illness and ischaemia. It is increased in psoriasis. Injury is the commonest cause of nail deformity. Some important changes in the nails are depicted in the Table 10.2.

Clubbing

Definition. It is bulbous enlargement of soft tissue of the terminal phalanges with both transverse and



Fig. 10.9: Sclerodactyly

Table 10.2: Important changes in the nails

Change	Association
Bitten nails (Fig. 10.10)	Personality disorder
Splinter haemorrhages (See Fig. 11.3)	Minor trauma, systemic vasculitis, SABA
Pitting of nails	Psoriasis, eczema
Koilonychia (Fig. 10.11)	Chronic iron deficiency anaemia
Oncholysis	Trauma, psoriasis, lichen planus, ring worm infection
Platynychia (flat nails) (Fig. 10.12)	Hereditary, iron deficiency
White nails or Terry's nails (leuconychia)	Hypoalbuminaemia, chronic liver disease, other wasting diseases
Transverse ridging	Acute illness, Zn deficiency
White line (transverse across the nails i.e. Beau's line Fig. 10.13)	Arsenic poisoning
Absent nail	Nail-patella syndrome
Fungal infection (thickening, crumbling and discoloration) (Fig. 10.14)	Candidiasis, ring worm
Red half-moons (red lunula)	Congestive heart failure
Blue half-moons (blue lunula)	CuSO ₄ poisoning, Wilson's disease
'Half and half' nails (see Fig. 14.8)	Chronic renal failure (CRF)

longitudinal curving of the nails due to increase in anteroposterior and transverse diameters of the nails. The soft tissue swelling is due to interstitial oedema and dilatation of arterioles and capillaries.

Method of examination

Bring the patient's finger at your eye level and look tangentially (Fig. 10.15). Look at the *onychodermal angle*



Fig. 10.10: Thimbling of nails in nail biters



Fig. 10.11: Koilonychia. Note the spoon-shaped nails



Fig. 10.12: Platynychia (flat nails)



Fig. 10.13: Beau's line. Note the transverse lines across the nails



Fig. 10.14: Nail changes in HIV disease (e.g. fungal infection of nails with seborrheic dermatitis)



Fig. 10.15: Position of the finger for inspection for clubbing. Hold the finger in front of your eye for onychodermal angle at base of the nail

(angle formed between the nail bed and the adjacent skin fold); if it is more than 180° or more (angle is lost), clubbing is said to be present.

Normal onychodermal angle is about 160° , clubbing appears when either the angle is lost or is $\geq 180^\circ$

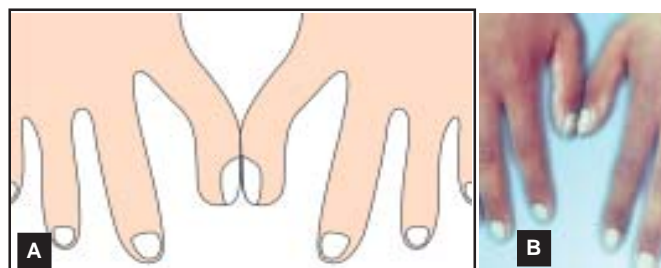
Now look for the fluctuation of the nail bed (Fig. 10.16). Fluctuation is due to softening of the nail bed. It is observed by gentle pressure over the base of the nail by tip of right index finger while holding the patient's finger (say middle finger) between the thumb and index finger of left hand and supporting the pulp of the finger over the pulp of the right thumb.

Alternative method (Schamroth's window test)

Approximate the nails of two fingers preferably the thumb of both hands and look for the normal lozenge-shaped gap between the two nails and the proximal nail folds. In clubbing, this diamond/lozenge shape gap is either reduced or obliterated (Fig. 10.17).



Fig. 10.16: Elicitation of fluctuation of the nails bed (e.g. fluctuation sign for clubbing is positive)



Figs 10.17A and B: Schamroth's window sign for clubbing (an alternative method for clubbing) A. Diagrammatic illustration showing normal lozenge—Shaped gap, B. Positive sign in clubbing of fingers

Causes. They are given in the Box 10.4.

Box 10.4:	CAUSES OF CLUBBING
1. Cardiac	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital cyanotic heart disease (Fallot's tetralogy (Fig. 10.18A)) • Subacute infective endocarditis • Atrial myxoma • Eisenmenger's syndrome
2. Respiratory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchiectasis (Fig. 10.18B) • Lung abscess • Bronchogenic carcinoma • Empyema thoracis • Mesothelioma • Fibrosing alveolitis • Pulmonary arteriovenous communication • Rarely fibrocaceous tuberculosis
3. GI tract	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ulcerative colitis • Crohn's disease • Malabsorption • Polyposis
4. Hepatobiliary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Biliary cirrhosis • Hepatocellular failure
5. Genetic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familial

Grades

- I. Softening of nail bed with obliteration of onychodermal angle
- II. Grade I *plus* increased AP and transverse diameters of nails as well as nails become tense, shiny with loss of longitudinal ridges.
- III. Grade II *plus* increase in pulp tissue resulting in Parrot's beak or drumstick appearance.
- IV. Grade III *plus* hypertrophic osteoarthropathy.

Unilateral clubbing. Clubbing is mostly bilateral but may be unilateral due to:

- Presubclavian coarctation of aorta
- Cervical rib
- Pancoast's tumour
- Aneurysm of a subclavian artery
- Erythromelalgia
- AV fistula involving brachial vessels

Differential clubbing. Clubbing may be limited to the upper limbs in chronic obstruction of the veins (phlebitis of upper extremities as seen in IV drug users) or may be present in the lower limbs only in infected abdominal aortic aneurysm and PDA with reversal of shunt (Eisenmenger's syndrome).



Figs 10.18A and B: Clubbing of fingers. A. Clubbing (drumstick appearance) with cyanosis in a patient with cyanotic congenital heart disease, B. Clubbing of fingers without cyanosis. This was recorded from a patient with bronchiectasis

Pathogenesis

Clubbing may appear acutely in acute lung suppuration but usually it is of slow onset. The exact pathogenesis is not known but hypotheses are:

- Anoxaemia due to any cause leading to vasodilatation and proliferation of subcutaneous tissue of nail bed. There is increase in capillary permeability leading to interstitial oedema.
- *Toxaemia*. Clubbing in SABA is considered due to this factor and hormonal influence.
- Metabolic and hormonal: Clubbing seen in endocrine disorders, e.g. hyperthyroidism, acromegaly, hyperparathyroidism.
- Pressure changes between radial and digital arteries.
- Reduced ferritin by escaping oxidation in the lungs leads to dilatation of AV anastomosis.
- *Hereditary*

Tip: Drumstick clubbing in combination with cyanosis in an adult indicates cyanotic congenital heart disease, commonly Fallot's tetralogy Fig. 10.18A.

Nail folds. Examination of the nail folds should accompany examination of nails but here they are described separately. *Paronychia* or *whitlow* refers to inflamed, bolstered and swollen nail folds. The causes are:

- Poor peripheral circulation
- Persons involved in wet-work
- Diabetes
- Persons overenthusiastic in manicuring their cuticles.

Vascularity and pulsations

- **Palmar erythema.** It is a mottled, bright-red cutaneous vasodilation seen mainly on the thenar and hypothenar eminences. It is normally found in some persons, but is also a sign of liver cell failure.
- **Arteritis** may cause small necrotic lesions at the base of the nail and on the pulps, is seen in endocarditis, SLE and connective tissue disorders.
- **Capillary pulsations** are seen by putting the tip of a pintorch under the pulp. They are characteristically seen in aortic incompetence.
- **Raynaud's phenomenon.** Read peripheral vascular examination.
- **Venous abnormalities** are seldom seen, but the linear marks or phlebitis (Fig. 10.19) caused by intravenous injection of drugs in addicts ('mainliners') are characteristics.
- **Absent pulsation** (radial or digital) is seen in embolisation to small vessels.



Fig. 10.19: Thrombophlebitis of right forearm vein following IV cannulation (Branula has been removed)

Swellings. Look for any swelling. The different swellings and their significance are discussed in the Box 10.5.

Box 10.5: SIGNIFICANT SWELLINGS IN THE HANDS	
Swelling	Significance
• <i>Osler nodes</i> (tender papules on the pulp of the fingers)	Subacute bacterial endocarditis
• <i>Heberden's nodes</i> (hard bony nodules on dorsum of distal interphalangeal joints Fig. 10.20)	Osteoarthritis (See also Fig. 17.10)
• <i>Bouchard's nodes</i> (hard nodules on dorsum of proximal interphalangeal joints Fig. 10.20)	Osteoarthritis (See also Fig. 17.10)
• <i>Rheumatoid nodules</i> (firm painless subcutaneous nodules (See Fig. 17.9))	Rheumatoid arthritis

Deformities. Look for any deformities. Deformities of the hands may occur due to involvement of the joints, muscles, tendons, bones and nerves (Table 10.3).

Palmar creases. Look at the palmar creases for paleness, pigmentation or any other abnormality. Palmists can predict the future by examining these lines but clinicians have to be careful to examine these lines for any abnormality (Box 10.6).

Box 10.6: PALMAR CREASES AID TO DIAGNOSIS	
Creases/line	Disease/condition
• <i>Pale creases</i>	Anaemia
• <i>Red creases</i>	Polycythaemia
• <i>Pigmented creases</i> (Fig. 10.7)	Addison's disease,
• <i>A single palmar crease</i> (<i>Simian crease</i>)	Down's syndrome (Mongolism)

Involuntary movements. Read neurological examination.

Table 10.3 : Analysis of hand deformities

Deformities	Significance
A. Joints	
• <i>Spindle shaped</i> (swelling of PIP joints)	• Rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma
• <i>Swan-neck</i> (hyperextended PIP joints and flexed DIP joints, (see Fig. 17.18), and <i>Boutonniere'</i> or <i>button-hole</i> deformity (flexed PIP and hyperextended DIP joints-see Fig. 17.18)	• Rheumatoid arthritis Fig. 17.15
• <i>Volar subluxation with ulnar deviation of hand, Z-deformity</i> of thumb	• Rheumatoid arthritis
• Swelling of distal interphalangeal joints (DIP)	• Osteoarthritis, psoriatic arthropathy
• <i>Claw hand</i> (hyperextension of metacarpophalangeal joints and flexion of PIP and DIP)	• Paralysis of interosseous and lumbricals
• Jaccoud's arthritis	• Very rarely seen in rheumatic arthritis
B. Subcutaneous tissue	
• Dupuytren's contracture (thickening and shortening of palmar fascia resulting in flexion deformities of the 4th and 5th fingers)	• Repeated trauma, alcoholic cirrhosis, phenytoin therapy, diabetes mellitus and working with vibrating tools
C. Tendons	
• de Quervain's tenosynovitis (swelling over the tendon sheath) and trigger finger or thumb flexor tendon	• Excessive use of the tendon
D. Muscles	
• Flattening of palm, prominent knuckles and hollow interosseous spaces	• Wasting of small muscles of the hand (read the causes in case discussion in Bed side medicine by prof. SN Chugh).
• Carpal tunnel syndrome	• Rheumatoid arthritis, Disuse atrophy, diabetes, amyloidosis, autoimmune hypothyroidism, acromegaly, pregnancy
E. Bones	
• Tapering and conical finger tips with or without trophic changes	• Hyperparathyroidism, leprosy
• Bone deformity due to pathological fractures or bowed legs	• Paget's disease of the bone (Fig. 10.21), surgical conditions, trauma
F. Nerves	
• Trophic changes e.g. ulcerations, burns	• Peripheral neuropathies



Fig. 10.20: Herberdon's and Bouchard's nodes on the fingers

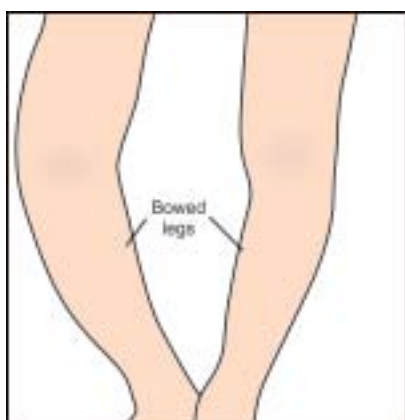


Fig. 10.21: Deformities (bowed legs) in Paget's disease of the bone

The feet and the legs

The examination of feet is done by *inspection* and *palpation*. The examination of feet is just similar to examination of hands.

Inspection. Look at the feet for:

- **Morphology** e.g. *pes cavus* or *pes planus*. *Pes cavus* (Fig. 10.22) is a fixed deformity where both feet are more or less symmetrically high-arched which can be demonstrated by observing the arch of foot when patient stands on the floor (there is exaggeration of the longitudinal arch in *pes cavus*) or by taking a foot-print on a white paper after painting the foot with some colour or after immersion of the feet in water and asking the patient to walk barefooted. The *pes cavus* (claw foot) results from wasting of small muscles (interossei and lumbricals) of foot due to polio myelitis, spina bifida, Friedreich's ataxia, syringomyelia, peroneal muscle atrophy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease), familial peripheral neuropathies (Refsum's disease) and may be idiopathic. *Talipes equinus varus* (Fig. 10.23) is a congenital abnormality



Fig. 10.22: Pes cavus. Note the high arching of both the feet leading to hollowness of soles



Fig. 10.23: Talipes equinus varus—a congenital abnormality of the feet

seen in infants/children. There may be supernumerary toe or under developed toes (Fig. 10.24).

- **Posture.** Plantar flexion of the foot in hemiplegia, which may be associated with extension and adduction of lower limb. Foot drop is seen in sciatic or common peroneal nerve palsy or peripheral neuropathies.
- **Size.** Feet are large and broad in acromegaly. There is increase in the size of the shoes. Oedema feet also cause increase in feet dimensions.
- **Colour.** By and large changes in the colour of the skin of the feet are similar to those of the skin in general. Read changes in skin colour. The trophic changes (varicose ulcer, black-staining) at or around the ankle are seen in varicosity of veins or venous insufficiency (Fig. 10.25). There is central pallor with atrophy and erythematous borders of plaques seen in Necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum (Fig. 10.26).
- **Nails.** Changes in nails are similar to nails of hands. (Fungal changes in nails Fig. 10.27). Paronychia (whitlow) occurs due to infections of nail folds



Fig. 10.24: Underdeveloped and maldeveloped toes of left foot



Fig. 10.25: Varicose veins (↙) with varicose ulcer (→). Note the brown pigmentation around the ankle (→)



Fig. 10.26: Necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum. Note the plaques with central pallor, atrophy and erythematous border



Fig. 10.27: Fungal infection of nails



Fig. 10.28: Paronychia (whitlow) of great toe (left)

leading to bolstered and swollen nail folds (Fig. 10.28).

- **Temperature.** The feet are warm or cold similar to hands (Read examination of temperature of hands). The toes become cold, red and then blue due to chilblain (cold injury) (Fig. 10.29) producing pain due to vasospasm. (Fig. 10.31)
- **Vessels and pulsations.** Veins stand out prominently over the calf and the ankle in varicosity and venous thrombosis. Pulsations may be absent in embolisation to the vessels or arteritis (pulseless disease or Takayasu's arteritis, Buerger's disease). Digital gangrene may occur due to arterial obstruction. Vasculitis (palpable purpura, urticarial rashes, maculopapular eruptions) may be seen in SLE, infections and may be due to drugs.



Fig. 10.29: Chilblain. Note the red erythematous plaques over the toes due to cold injury

- **Joints.** Arthritis may involve small joints of the foot in rheumatoid arthritis and psoriasis. The ankle may be involved in osteoarthritis. Swelling of ankle may be due to trauma or bleeding into joints (hemarthrosis) in coagulation disorder e.g. haemophilia. Painful swelling of joints of big toe is seen in gout. (podagra)
- **Nerves.** Neuropathy may involve the peripheral parts and the joints. Neuropathic joint (charcot joint) commonly involves the knee, hip and ankle producing painless huge swelling of the joint with presence of loose bodies in the joint. Crepitus may be felt over the joint.
- **Trophic ulcers** may be seen in neuropathy commonly in diabetic neuropathy at pressure points i.e. sacrum (Fig. 10.30), heel and pad of great toe. In diabetic foot (Fig. 10.31), there is vasculopathy, neuropathy and dermopathy, and there may be loss of digit.
- **Oedema (Fig. 10.32).** Look at the feet for oedema. Oedema means collection of fluid in the interstitial tissue as a result of either increased hydrostatic pressure (e.g. CVS disease) or reduced oncotic pressure (e.g. hypoproteinaemic states) or due to increased capillary permeability or local venous or lymphatic obstruction.

Testing of dependent oedema

1. Ankle oedema

Inspection of the feet for the swelling.

It is checked by applying firm pressure with the right thumb (e.g. till the nail blanches) for at least 5-10 sec.



Fig. 10.30: Pressure sores over the sacrum (→) and iliac crest (↑) formed in a patient who was lying in an unconscious state for a long period



Fig. 10.31: Diabetic foot. There is blistering of the skin with amputation of left big toe. There is impending gangrene of other toes



Fig. 10.32: Oedema of feet and legs



Figs 10.33A and B: Demonstration of pitting ankle oedema. A. Pressure by the thumb above medial malleolus, B. Production of a pit after thumb removal



Fig. 10.34: Oedema over the back near or at sacral area. Pressure over the skin and subcutaneous tissue with the thumb against the vertebral column left behind a pit (↑)

not exceeding 30 seconds at the ankle above the medial malleolus, lower end of tibia or upper part of shin bone and then the pressure is released. Presence of a pit staying for >30 seconds indicates pitting oedema (Fig. 10.33).

- The extent of oedema is assessed by spread over the tibia; in the medial thigh, in sacral area and abdominal wall.

2. Sacral oedema

It is demonstrated by putting pressure with the right thumb over the subcutaneous tissue in sacral area while the patient is lying prone or on one side. Presence of a pit indicates oedema (Fig. 10.34). Otherwise also, pitting of sacral area may be seen in oedematous patients confined to bed for prolonged period.

3. Abdominal wall oedema (parietal oedema)

Usually oedema is demonstrated by the presence of a pit by applying firm pressure over subcutaneous tissue in an area against the hard surface usually the bone.

- Oedema of abdominal wall or thigh can be demonstrated by pressing the chest piece of the stethoscope (Fig. 10.35A) or the tips of the fingers of right hand and looking for the pit.
- It can also be demonstrated by pinching the skin between the thumb and index finger for few seconds (Fig. 10.35B) and then released. Presence of pits at the sites of pressure indicate oedema.

Types

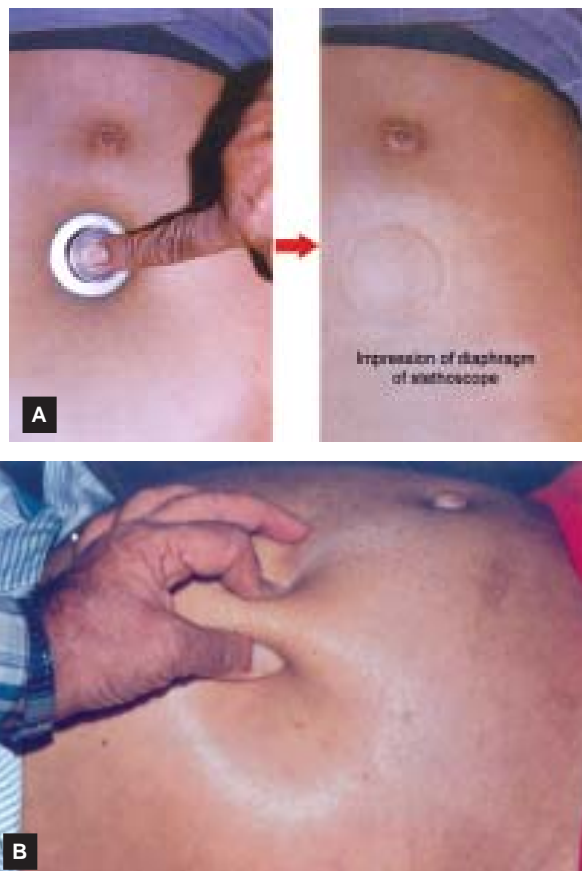
A. Pitting oedema

1. **Generalised oedema.** It is present throughout the body; is due to disorders of heart, kidney, liver, gut etc. It can be nutritional or idiopathic. It may be associated with ascites or hydrothorax.
2. **Localised oedema.** It involves a part of the body, is due to venous obstruction, allergy or inflammation. It is unilateral.
3. **Postural oedema.** It may occur due to prolonged standing, old age, hemiplegia but is unimportant.
4. **Unilateral oedema.** cyclical oedema may be unilateral.
5. **Nonpitting oedema.** Occurs in lymphatic obstruction, i.e. lymphoedema (Fig. 10.36) or myxoedema. (Table 10.4).

Distribution of oedema

When oedema is due to fluid retention, then its distribution is governed by gravity. This is the reason that oedema first appears in dependent parts such as legs, back of thighs and sacral region in the semirecumbent position. If the patient lies flat, it may involve face and hands; for example oedema due to renal disease appears first on the face early in the morning just getting up from the bed, then subsequently gets distributed over the legs when patient is ambulatory.

The cardinal sign of subcutaneous oedema is pitting of the skin. Pit appears with application of firm pressure of the thumb due to displacement of extracellular fluid which disappears after release of pressure due to return of displaced fluid.



Figs 10.35A and B: Detection of abdominal wall oedema. A. Pressure by diaphragm of stethoscope leaves behind a circular impression on the wall after withdrawal of stethoscope, B. Pinching of the abdominal wall will leave behind the pits at the sites of pressure by the thumb and index finger



Fig. 10.36: Unilateral lymphoedema. Note the huge swelling, thickening and induration of skin of upper extremity. The lymphoedema occurred due to removal of lymph nodes during surgery for carcinoma of the breast. Note the scar of mastectomy

Causes (See Table 10.4)

Table 10.4: Causes of oedema

1. Pitting oedema

- (A) **Increases hydrostatic pressure**
 - Congestive heart failure or cor pulmonale
 - Pericardial effusion
 - Constrictive pericarditis
 - Budd-Chiari syndrome
- (B) **Reduced oncotic pressure**
 - Cirrhosis of the liver
 - Nephrotic syndrome
 - Hypoproteinaemia (nutritional, malabsorption, protein losing enteropathy)
- (C) **Increased vascular permeability/vasodilatation**
 - Beri-beri
 - Epidemic dropsy
 - Drugs, e.g. nifedipine/amlodipine
- (D) **Retention of salt and H₂O**
 - Cushing syndrome or corticosteroids use
 - Oral contraceptives (e.g. oestrogen)
 - Liquorice
- (E) **Venous obstruction**

2. Nonpitting oedema

- Myxoedema. It may become pitting if CHF is superadded over myxoedema
- Lymphatic oedema, e.g. filariasis or lymph node removal. It is recurrent and intractable oedema, lymphogranuloma venereum, radiation, malignancy, congenital abnormality
- Angioneurotic oedema
- Scleroderma (painless oedematous induration)

Pathogenesis of generalised oedema

It is also called *anasarca*

1. **Increased hydrostatic pressure** results in transduction of fluid from intravascular to interstitial compartment resulting in oedema. The causes are given in the Table 10.4.
2. **Reduced oncotic pressure.** The oncotic pressure depends on the plasma proteins. The conditions associated with hypoproteinaemia result in oedema as a result reduced oncotic pressure (for causes read the Table. 10.4).
3. **Renin-angiotensin system.** Stimulation of renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (cirrhosis and renal diseases) results in retention of sodium and H₂O and may contribute to oedema.

The renal excretory capacity may be reduced by the disease of the kidneys or by extra-renal factors. For sake of example, in the early stages of CHF, there is fall in renal blood flow due to reduced stroke output leading to fall in GFR and stimulation of *renin-angiotensin-aldosterone* system resulting in secondary hyperaldosteronism. The rise in aldosterone secretion increases the reabsorption of Na⁺ and Cl⁻.

Secondary hyperaldosteronism also occurs in patients with hepatic cirrhosis and nephrotic syndrome also.

4. **Release of ADH.** Reduction in effective fluid volume result in release of ADH to conserve water.
5. **Stimulation of anti-natriuretic hormone or peptide (ANP).** In CHF, there is stimulation of anti-

natriuretic hormone from the distended right atrium which inhibits salt loss and conserves Na^+ and H_2O .

Differential diagnosis of oedema

The characteristic features of oedema due to various causes/conditions are given in the Box 10.7.

Box 10.7: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF OEDEMA					
<i>Cirrhotic</i>	<i>Renal</i>	<i>Cardiac</i>	<i>Angioneurotic</i>	<i>Lymphoedema</i>	<i>Venous oedema</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oedema appears on the legs with ascites. • Signs or stigmata of chronic liver disease may be present • Signs of portal hypertension e.g. caput medusae, ascites, fetor hepaticus and splenomegaly may be present • Past history of jaundice or hepatitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oedema starts on the face (puffiness of face) then on the legs • Oedema is usually noticed in the morning, • Ascites is common • Sacral oedema in nonambulatory patients • Evidence or history of a renal disease in the past • Urine shows massive albuminuria • Other features of hypoproteinaemia and hypercholesterolaemia may be present 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oedema appears first on legs then on face • Patient will be dyspnoeic • Raised JVP, cyanosis • Tender hepatomegaly • Signs of RVH may be present • Evidence of a cardiac disease e.g. cardiomegaly, 3rd heart sound, murmurs etc. • Ascites may also be present 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is solid or non-pitting oedema • Results from hypersensitivity Involves eye-lids, tongue, lips, face etc. • It is acute in onset • Associated with itching • Congenital variety due to C_1 esterase deficiency • May become life-threatening emergency if glottis is involved 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oedema is soft in early stage, becomes indurated, hard and nonpitting • Mostly unilateral, may be bilateral • Skin thickening present • Oedema involves legs, feet and toes • Caused by lymphatic obstruction due to tumour, fibrosis, inflammation, radiation and lymph node removal • Congenital variety is due to hypoplasia of lymph vessels, (Milroy's disease) • Oedema is intractable and recurrent 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Soft pitting ankle oedema • Skin thickening may be present • Ulceration and pigmentation over ankle and foot common • Usually unilateral, occasionally bilateral • Caused by venous obstruction or valvular incompetence of the deep veins

UNIT III

Systemic Examination

Chapters

11. The Cardiovascular System	153 - 202
12. The Respiratory System	203 - 235
13. The Abdomen	236 - 283
14. The Urogenital System and Sexually Transmitted Diseases	284 - 314
15. The Nervous System	315 - 402
16. The Examination of Unconscious Patient	403 - 412
17. The Locomotor System	413 - 455
18. The Blood	456 - 473
19. The Psychiatric Assessment	474 - 490
20. The Endocrinal System	491 - 515

The Cardiovascular System (CVS)

HISTORY

Symptoms

- Dyspnoea, orthopnoea, PND, cough and sputum.
- Palpitations
- Chest pain, haemoptysis
- Syncope, fatigue, tiredness
- Oedema.

Present history

Past history

- Rheumatic fever, H.T. IHD, diabetes, CHD.

Family history

- H.T. diabetes, TB., Similar illness.

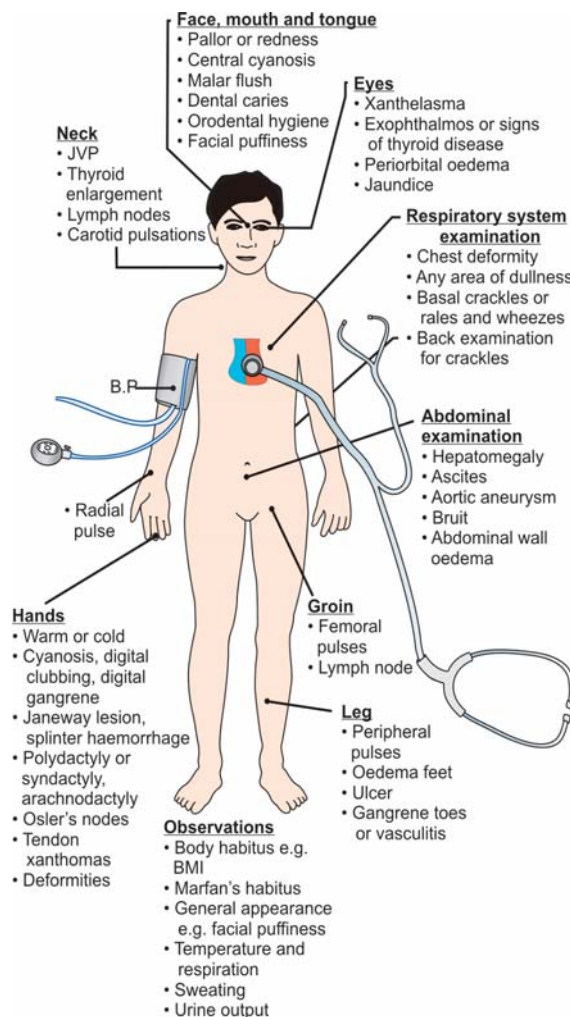
Personal history

- Habits, nutrition, smoking, alcohol.

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- **Head, scalp, hair** e.g., deformity, loss of hair
- **Face** e.g. pallor, redness, puffiness, bluishness, malar flush, oedema.
- **Mouth, oral mucosa, tongue, lips** e.g. dryness, cyanosis, orodental hygiene.
- **The skin** : rash, purpura or bleeding spots.
- **The eyes** e.g. *xanthelasma* exophthalmos, jaundice, oedema, fundus examination
- **The ear, nose, paranasal sinus, throat** for discharge, infection, tenderness
- **The neck** e.g. JVP, thyroid enlargement, pulsations, lymph nodes, etc.
- **The axillae**, for lymph node.
- **The hands and upper extremity**
- **The legs and lower extremity**
- **The genitalia** for oedema, hydrocoele

N.B. Examine the above structures and record your findings.



FORMAT FOR CVS EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Inspection

- Chest deformity /spinal deformity
- Shape of chest/precordium
- Trachea
- Visible pulsations e.g. apex beat, left sternal, epigastric, suprasternal
- Scars, dilated veins, sinuses.

Palpation

- Apex beat e.g. note its site, rate, character
- Parasternal heave
- Palpable pulsations e.g. epigastric, suprasternal, pulmonary, arterial
- Other palpable sounds/thrills/pulsations in any other area of precordium
- Venous hum

Percussion

- Cardiac dullness e.g. percuss right and left borders of the heart
- Percuss 2nd left intercostal space.
- Percuss for upper border of liver dullness and define liver span.

Auscultation

- **Mitral area** for S1, and S2 (loud, muffled absent), murmurs and other sounds.
- **Tricuspid area** e.g. S1 and S2, murmurs and other sounds
- **Aortic area** (A1 and A2) for S2, murmurs, other sounds. Hear splitting of S2 (normal, narrow, wide, paradoxical) and auscultate other big vessels e.g. carotid, femoral, renal arteries for bruit.

Other systems examination

Respiratory system

Abdomen

CNS

Investigations

- EGG, stress tests, Holter's monitoring, radiology and other specialized investigations.

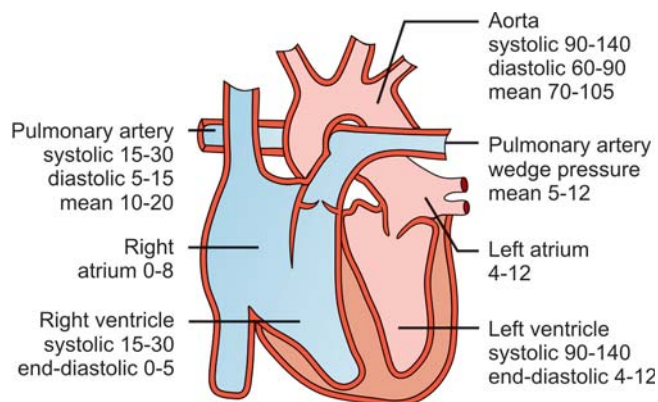


Fig. 11.1: The cardiovascular system

THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM (FIG. 11.1)

The applied anatomy and physiology

Understanding cardiac anatomy and physiology is important in the examination of the cardiovascular system.

- (i) **Surface projection of heart and great vessels.** The human heart consists of 4 chambers (two atria and two ventricles). The right ventricle occupies most of the anterior cardiac surface, lies behind and to the left of sternum. Pulmonary artery arises from it at the level of sternum or base of the heart—a clinical term that refers to the right and left 2nd interspaces close to the sternum. The inferior border of the right ventricle lies below the junction of the sternum and the xiphoid process. Enlargement of right ventricle produces parasternal lift (heave) and pulsations in the epigastrium.

The left ventricle forms the left border of the heart, lies behind the right ventricle and to the left. Its tapered inferior tip forms the cardiac apex. It is clinically important because it produces *apical impulse* (*apex beat*), sometimes called *the point of maximal impulse*. This impulse is located in the precordium, within 10 cm left to midsternal border beyond which it is considered as shifted. The left ventricular enlargement shifts the apex beat down and out.

The right border is formed by right atrium, the chamber which is not identifiable on physical examination. The left atrium is situated posteriorly, hence, can not be examined directly. However, its small atrial appendage may make up a segment of left border of heart between pulmonary conus and the left ventricle, becomes visible prominently in mitralised heart. The left atrial enlargement may compress trachea, oesophagus and recurrent laryngeal nerve.

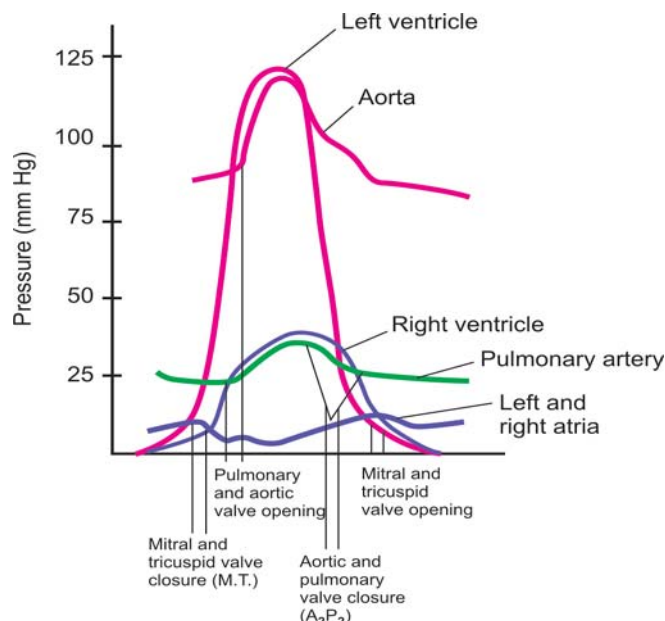


Fig. 11.2: Events in a cardiac cycle. Normally the left ventricular system precedes the onset of pressure rise in the right ventricular system, the mitral valve, thus, closes before the tricuspid valve. Because the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure is lower than aortic diastolic pressure, the pulmonary valve opens before the aortic valve. It means pulmonary ejection sound occurs closer to the S₂ than do the aortic ejection sound. During systole pressure in the ventricles slightly exceeds the pressure in the greater vessels. Towards the end of systole, the pressure in the ventricle falls below the pressure in great vessels and when diastolic pressure is reached, the semilunar valves close. Producing S₂ (A₂P₂). Normally aortic valve closure precedes pulmonary valve closure. The mitral and tricuspid valves open at the point at which ventricular pressure falls below the corresponding atrial pressure

The positions of the great vessels e.g. pulmonary artery, aorta, superior and inferior vena cavae and circulation through them are depicted in the Fig. 11.1. The mitral valve (bicuspid) and tricuspid valves are called *atrioventricular valves*. The aortic and pulmonary valves are called *semilunar valves* (three cusps constitute a shape like a half-moon). As the heart valves close, the heart sounds are produced by vibrations emanating from the leaflets, the adjacent cardiac structures and the flow of the blood.

Cardiac cycle and its events (Fig. 11.2)

The heart serves as a muscular pump and generates varying pressures during contraction and relaxation. Systole is the period of ventricular contraction and augmentation of pressure from 5 mmHg in resting stage to a normal peak of 120 mmHg. Diastole is the period of ventricular relaxation and fall of pressure to below 5 mmHg and flow of blood from the atrium to the ventricle. During systole, aortic and pulmonary valves

open and blood flows into aorta and pulmonary artery while mitral valve and tricuspid valves are closed to prevent regurgitation of blood from the ventricles to atria. In contrast, during diastole, the aortic and pulmonary valves get closed to prevent regurgitation of blood from the aorta and pulmonary artery back to ventricles. The mitral and tricuspid valves allow the blood to flow from atria to ventricles.

Understanding the interrelationship of the pressures into these chambers—left atrium and ventricle, aorta and pulmonary artery together with the position and movement of the valves is fundamental to understanding of the heart sounds. These changing pressures and the sounds that result are traced here through one cardiac cycle.

Cardiac murmurs

Heart murmurs result from vibrations set up in the blood stream and the surrounding heart and great vessels as a result of turbulent blood flow, the formation of eddies and cavitations (bubble formation as a result of sudden decrease in pressure). Heart murmurs are distinguishable from heart sounds by their longer duration. They may be “benign” or “innocents” when cardiac output is increased such as in fever, exercise, pregnancy. These are called *flow murmur*, heard across the pulmonary and aortic valves in the second left or right 2nd intercostal spaces respectively.

Abnormally, they may arise across a stenotic valve that obstructs the blood flow or across an incompetent valve that allows the regurgitation of blood or blood flows through an abnormal communicating channel (VSD, PDA). The features of the murmur to be observed are given in the Box 11.1.

Box 11.1: CHARACTERISTICS OF A MURMUR	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Timing of murmur i.e. systolic or diastolic • Intensity or loudness • Site where it is best heard 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Radiation • Duration • If associated with thrill or not • Quality/character

Types of murmurs

Depending on the timing, they can be *systolic*, *diastolic* and *continuous murmur*.

The main differences between systolic and diastolic murmur are given in Table 11.1.

Whether a murmur is *systolic* or *diastolic* is decided by its timing with apex beat or carotid pulse. Therefore, while hearing the murmur, fingers must be put on carotid pulse to time it. Carotid pulse normally coincides

with first heart sound. A *systolic murmur* is heard between 1st and 2nd heart sounds. A *diastolic murmur* is heard between 2nd and 1st heart sound, i.e. during diastole. A *continuous murmur* is heard both in systole and diastole. The loudness or intensity of murmurs is graded on a scale of 1-6. The murmur associated with thrill is graded IV loud murmur. Grade I is difficult to hear and Grade VI is heard with stethoscope without touching the chest, i.e. by lifting the stethoscope for a smallest distance from the chest. The location of a murmur and direction of radiation reflect the direction of turbulent flow. The grading of murmur is as follows:

- Grade I : Murmur is faint and audible under ideal conditions.
 Grade II : Soft, quite but heard immediately after placing the stethoscope
 Grade III : Moderate intensity
 Grade IV : Loud murmur associated with palpable thrill.
 Grade V : Very loud with thrill, may be heard when the stethoscope is partly off the chest
 Grade VI : Heard with stethoscope without touching the chest.

Table 11.1: Distinguishing features of two commonly encountered murmurs

Systolic	Diastolic
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Soft and blowing • Crescendo-decrescendo • Shows radiation. Mitral murmurs radiate to left axilla and aortic to neck vessels • Are ejection systolic, midsystolic, pansystolic and late systolic • Appears between 1st and 2nd heart sound 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rough and rumble (mitral) or blowing (aortic and pulmonary) • Decrescendo in character • Nonradiating • Early and mid-diastolic • Appears between 2nd and 1st heart sound.

Systolic murmurs

The ejection or midsystolic murmurs are associated with ventricular outflow obstruction, occur in early or midsystole and possess crescendo-decrescendo character. Pansystolic murmurs extend from 1st heart sound throughout systole and maintain a constant intensity. Late systolic murmurs occur during the end of systole.

Diastolic murmurs

Mid-diastolic murmurs occur due to turbulent flow across mitral and tricuspid valves. Early diastolic murmur occurs due to regurgitation of blood flow from

aortic and pulmonary valves into the heart. They are decrescendo and blowing in character.

Benign (physiologic) murmurs

They do not occur beyond early or midsystole. The characters of these murmurs are given in the Box 11.2.

Box 11.2: CHARACTERISTICS OF A BENIGN OR INNOCENT MURMUR

- They are soft and musical
- Mostly mid-systolic or ejection systolic
- Heard at the left sternal edge
- They do not radiate
- Not associated with thrill
- No other cardiac abnormality

Continuous murmurs

These usually result from combination of systolic and diastolic flow across a communicating channel between heart and a vessel or between two vessels having different pressures. These murmurs start with the onset of systole, pass through the systole with increasing intensity and, then pass through 2nd heart sound to enter into diastole (Waxing and waning character). There is constant gradient during systole and diastole. They are heard in patients *with patent ductus arteriosus, aorto-pulmonary window and an arteriovenous communication, coronary arteriovenous fistula and communication between sinus of valsalva and right side of the heart.*

The types of murmurs, their location and conditions in which they are produced are given in Table 11.2.

Effects of certain physiological and pharmacological interventions on heart murmurs

Certain manoeuvres that increase or decrease the blood flow across the valves alter the intensity of the murmur (Tables 11.2 and 11.3). Right sided murmur increases due to increase in venous return to the heart (e.g. inspiration). The systolic murmurs of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) and mitral valve prolapse (MVP) become louder with valsalva manoeuvre and during standing.

Table 11.2: Effects of certain manoeuvres on heart murmurs

Manoeuvre	Effect
Respiration	Right sided murmurs of TR, PS, TS and PR increase during inspiration. Left sided murmurs become louder during expiration
Valsalva manoeuvre. This procedure helps to	Most murmurs decrease in length and intensity. Two murmurs that become

Contd...

Contd...

differentiate murmur of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) from aortic stenosis. It helps to identify a prolapsed mitral valve.

Positional change

Exercise

Pharmacological interventions

louder include systolic murmurs of HCM and mitral valve prolapse (MVP). The systolic murmur of aortic stenosis decreases which differentiates it from HCM.

With standing (decreased venous return i.e. preload) and decreased vascular resistance most murmurs diminish but systolic murmur of HCM, becomes louder while that of MVP increases in length and intensity (click moves earlier in systole and murmur lengthens). *With squatting* (increased venous return as well as peripheral vascular resistance) there is decrease in the intensity of murmur of HCM and MVP but increase in the intensity of murmur of aortic stenosis.

Murmurs due to rapid blood flow across normal or obstructed valves (e.g. MS, PS) become louder with both isotonic and isometric (hand-grip) exercise.

During amyl nitrate inhalation (hypotensive response), the murmurs of MR, VSD and AR decrease while murmur of aortic stenosis increases. The response in MVP is biphasic (first softer and then louder than normal) The phenylephrine (vasoconstrictor) tends to produce opposite effects.

Cardinal symptoms of cardiovascular disease (Read Chapter 2.1.)

The presenting symptoms once again are enumerated here.

1. Dyspnoea, orthopnoea, PND
2. Increase in heart beat (palpitations)
3. Chest pain; exertional in IHD, tearing in aortic dissection and dull or sharp continuous and central in pericarditis that increases with movement and change in posture.
4. Swelling of the legs (peripheral oedema). It is a common symptom of congestive heart failure.
5. Syncope, tiredness or fatigue are symptoms of those cardiovascular diseases which produce low cardiac output and CHF.
6. Nocturia is a symptom of CHF
7. Anorexia, nausea, vomiting are symptoms of CHF (congestive hepatomegaly and gastroenteropathy) or digitalis toxicity.

EXAMINATION OF CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM (CVS)

A clinical approach to a patient with cardiovascular disease include:

Table 11.3: Murmurs, their location and characters

Timing of murmurs	Location	Radiation
1. SYSTOLIC MURMURS		
Ejection systolic (crescendo-decrescendo) murmurs		
Aortic stenosis	2nd right space (A1 area)	To neck vessels
Pulmonary stenosis	2nd left space (pulmonary area)	None
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	At lower left sternal border	None
Fallot's tetralogy	At pulmonary area	None
Atrial septal defect	At pulmonary area	None
Pansystolic		
Mitral regurgitation	At apex	Radiation towards left axilla
Tricuspid regurgitation	Left sternal edge	Radiation towards left axilla
Ventricular septal defect (low pitched, harsh, rasping)	4th space left sternal edge	Across the sternum
Late systolic		
Mitral valve prolapse	Apex	Radiates to left axilla
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	Apex	None
2. DIASTOLIC MURMURS		
Early diastolic murmurs		
Aortic regurgitation	Left sternal edge	
Pulmonary regurgitation (Graham-Steell's murmur)	Left sternal edge	
Mid-diastolic murmurs		
Mitral stenosis	Apex	
Austin-Flint due to aortic regurgitation	Left sternal edge	
3. CONTINUOUS MURMURS		
Patent ductus arteriosus	Upper left sternal edge below left clavicle	
Aorto-pulmonary window	Upper left sternal border	

1. *General physical examination:* It is important to note certain peripheral signs of a cardiovascular disease or its complications (e.g. CHF, endocarditis, rheumatic activity, arrhythmia, thromboembolism etc.)
2. *Systemic examination.* It includes examination of heart (precordium)
 - Inspection
 - Palpation
 - Percussion
 - Auscultation
3. *Examination of vascular system (arteries and veins).*

General physical examination

After taking the history and before proceeding to examination of the heart, following points given in the Box 11.3 are to be observed on general physical examination.

Box 11.3: POINTS TO BE NOTED ON GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cyanosis (e.g. central or peripheral or mixed) • Oedema (pitting or nonpitting) • Anaemia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Painful fingertips (osler's nodes) • Palmar erythema (Janeway lesion) • Splinter haemorrhage

Contd...

Contd...

- Extremities (cold or warm, • Jaundice
gangrene of toes or fingers)
- Clubbing of the fingers • Lymphadenopathy
- Malar flush over cheeks • Pulse, BP and temperature

Cyanosis

Bluish discolouration of skin and mucous membrane is called *cyanosis*. It may be peripheral or central or mixed.

Peripheral cyanosis

It occurs due to extraction of O₂ from the blood when circulation is slow either due to congestive cardiac failure or due to shock leading to vasoconstriction. It can occur in healthy persons when extremities are too cold, and warmth abolishes it. It is seen on lips, nails, tip of nose, ear lobule, etc.

Central cyanosis

It is due to poor oxygenation of blood in the lungs due to interference in exchange of gases (O₂ and CO₂) such as in respiratory failure or pulmonary oedema. It is also seen in certain congenital heart disease where

unoxygenated or deoxygenated blood from right side mixes with oxygenated blood from the left, brings down the oxygen saturation of blood, i.e., cyanotic congenital heart disease. Central cyanosis is seen on the under surface of the tongue, mucous membrane of oral cavity and palate.

Mixed cyanosis

A combination of peripheral and central cyanosis is seen in congestive cardiac failure.

Temperature of extremities

Cold extremities in warm environment indicates congestive cardiac failure. Warm moist palms on the other hand, indicate anxiety or thyrotoxicosis.

Clubbing of fingers (see Fig. 10.18)

Clubbing of fingers in a cardiovascular patient indicates cyanotic congenital heart diseases or subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Splinter haemorrhages (Fig. 11.3)

These are flame-shaped or linear haemorrhages under the nail bed, seen in infective endocarditis.

Painful finger-tips/toes

It is seen in infective endocarditis (Fig. 11.4) due to embolisation of peripheral vessels. There can be gangrenous fingers or toes due to impaction of an embolus.

Janeway lesion

Redness of hypothenar or thenar prominence occurs due to vasculitis in infective endocarditis.

Malar flush

A blush hue is seen over cheeks in fair complexed person in mitral stenosis (MS) due to low cardiac output.



Fig. 11.3: Splinter haemorrhages. Multiple purple lesions and splinter haemorrhages in the finger nails due to endocarditis



Fig. 11.4: Painful finger-tips in a patient with RHD with endocarditis. This was due to embolisation of the brachial artery. There was loss of radial pulse

The arterial pulse

With each contraction, the left ventricle ejects a volume of the blood into the aorta and then into the arterial system. The ensuing pressure wave moves rapidly through the arterial system, where, it is felt as the arterial pulse. The radial pulse is palpated for analysis (Fig. 11.5). Method of examination of various pulses is demonstrated in peripheral vascular system examination.

The pulse is observed for (i) *rate* (ii) *rhythm* (iii) *character* (iv) *volume*, (v) *radiofemoral delay* and (vi) *condition of the vessel wall*. All the peripheral pulses should be examined.

Rate: To assess the rate, radial pulse is frequently used as it is superficially placed. Count the beats for at least half a minute if pulse is regular and multiply it by 2 to get the rate in beats per minute (bpm). If pulse is



Fig. 11.5: Method of examination of radial pulse. The patient should sit or lie on the bed or couch. The arm should be by the side, elbow slightly flexed and forearm mid-pronated so as to avoid kinking of artery and to have proper transmission of pulse wave. Use three fingers for palpation. Use fingers of the right hand for palpation of patient's right radial pulse

irregular, count the pulse for full one minute to get the approximate rate.

If pulse is irregular, then also count the heart rate with stethoscope for one minute and calculate the pulse deficit.

Pulse deficit = Heart rate *minus* pulse rate. **Note:** vice versa is not true because pulse rate can never be faster than heart rate. The pulse deficit is due to non-conduction of feeble heart beats to the pulse resulting in their non-palpability, hence, the deficit. The pulse deficit >10 beat/min occurs in atrial fibrillation and less than 10 beats/min in ventricular ectopics but this is not a hard and fast rule.

A normal resting pulse rate is between 60-100 bpm in an adult and 80-200 bpm in a child. Pulse rate (heart rate) less than 60/min is called *bradycardia* and more than 100/min as *tachycardia*. The causes of fast and slow pulses are given in the Box 11.4.

Box 11.4: CAUSES OF FAST AND SLOW PULSE RATE (e.g. HEART RATE)	
I. Bradycardia (HR<60/min)	
<i>Sinus bradycardia</i>	<i>Arrhythmic bradycardia</i>
• Sleep	• Carotid sinus hypersensitivity
• Athletic heart	• Sick sinus syndrome
• Hypothyroidism	
• Hypothermia	
• Second degree AV block	
• Raised intracranial pressure	• Complete heart block
• Obstructive jaundice	
• Drugs e.g. betablockers, calcium channel blocker, digoxin, etc.	
• Poisoning e.g. OP compounds	
II. Tachycardia (HR>100/min)	
<i>Sinus tachycardia</i>	<i>Arrhythmic tachycardia</i>
• Physiological e.g. exercise, fever, use of tea, coffee etc.	• Atrial fibrillation
• Pain	• Atrial flutter
• Anxiety/excitement	• Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)
• Thyrotoxicosis	• Ventricular tachycardia (VT)
• Heart disease e.g. CHF, congenital heart disease	
• Drugs e.g. sympathomimetics, vasodilators	
• Pheochromocytoma	

Rhythm. The normal rhythm of the heart originates from the SA node, hence, called *sinus rhythm*. Sinus rhythm is seldom completely regular because heart rate increases during inspiration and decreases during expiration, a condition called *sinus arrhythmia*. The sinus

arrhythmia is most obvious in children, young adults and athletes.

When the pulse is irregular, it is important to identify the nature of irregularity and to determine whether it is present continuously or intermittently. Some common causes of irregular pulse are enumerated in the Box 11.5. An occasional irregularity is caused by ectopic beats or extrasystoles which can be atrial or ventricular. Frequently the pulse wave produced is too weak to be felt at the wrist resulting in missing of a beat. In case of irregularity or missing of beat, pulse deficit may be calculated.

The multiple ventricular ectopics produce *regularly irregular pulse*. Ventricular ectopics do not penetrate the SA node, hence, do not reset it, therefore, a compensatory pause results following an ventricular ectopic which is seen on ECG. Sometimes, ectopic beats occur regularly, i.e. an ectopic alternates with a sinus beat regularly called *pulsus bigemini* and may give an erroneous impression of a very slow pulse.

Atrial fibrillation (AF) causes a totally random heart rhythm leading to a pulse which is irregular in both timing and volume. This is often described as an “irregularly irregular pulse”. The pulse deficit is more in atrial fibrillation than in ventricular ectopics. The causes of atrial fibrillation are given in the Table 11.4.

Box 11.5: CAUSES OF IRREGULAR PULSE	
Irregularly irregular pulse	Regularly irregular pulse
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sinus arrhythmia (respiratory or non respiratory) • Atrial ectopics (extrasystoles) • Ventricular ectopics (extrasystoles) • Atrial fibrillation with variable response • Second degree AV block with variable response 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ventricular ectopics in bigemini or trigemini pattern • Atrial flutter with fixed AV conduction

Table 11.4: Causes of atrial fibrillation	
Common	Uncommon
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rheumatic heart disease (e.g. MS and MR) • Thyrotoxicosis • Coronary artery disease • Cardiomyopathy • Myocarditis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Constrictive pericarditis • Cor pulmonale • Congenital heart disease (e.g. ASD, Ebstein's anomaly) • Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome • Left atrial myxoma • Heart surgery • Idiopathic (lone AF)

Volume: It is the amplitude of the pulse that is judged by the palpating finger. It depends on the pulse pressure and graded as *good or high volume* (high pulse pressure > 60 mmHg) or *normal* (pulse pressure between 30-60 mmHg) and *low volume* (pulse pressure <30 mmHg). The method to decide volume of pulse is given Box 11.6.

A *good volume* or *bounding* or *collapsing pulse* (read collapsing pulse) occurs due to diastolic “run off” the blood from aorta (aortic regurgitation, PDA) or from the left ventricle (MR, VSD) or high output states or vasodilatation. The causes of high volume pulse are given in the Box 11.7.

Low volume pulse is characterised by small amplitude, is due to either low systolic pressure or raised diastolic pressure resulting in low pulse pressure. The causes of low volume pulse are also given in the Box 11.7.

Box 11.6: METHOD TO DECIDE VOLUME OF THE PULSE

Pulse volume is decided by the amplitude by which the finger is displaced during palpation with each beat.

- Normally, pulse is felt without lifting of the fingers.
- Pulse volume is said to be good or high if lifting of fingers occurs
- If pulse is felt with difficulty, it is said to be low volume pulse.

Box 11.7: CAUSES OF CHANGE IN VOLUME OF THE PULSE

Good volume pulse (augmented stroke output)	Low volume pulse (reduced stroke volume)
<p>I. <i>Physiological</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exercise • Emotion, anxiety • Heat • Pregnancy <p>II. <i>Pathological</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fever • Thyrotoxicosis • Anaemia • Peripheral AV shunts • Paget's disease of the bone • Beriberi • Cor pulmonale • Vasodilators • Aortic regurgitation • Mitral regurgitation • Left to right shunt (PDA, VSD) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valvular stenosis (aortic, mitral, tricuspid and pulmonary) • Tachycardias • Left ventricular outflow obstruction (fixed) • Shock • Pump failure following massive acute myocardial infarction • Congestive heart failure • Peripheral vascular disease. • Dilated cardiomyopathy

A *varying volume pulse* is either a *pulsus alternans* or *pulsus paradoxus*.

Pulsus alternans is a regular pulse but alternate beats are strong and weak. It is difficult to appreciate pulsus alternans by the palpating fingers, but is diagnosed while measuring the blood pressure. When the mercury is being lowered, the stronger beats are heard first and on further lowering, the weaker beats also become audible, thus, suddenly doubling the number of audible beats.

Pulsus alternans is a sign of severe myocardial disease, resulting in left heart failure.

Pulsus paradoxus describes a pulse that increases in volume during expiration and decreases in inspiration—an exaggeration of normal phenomenon. Technically, the term is a misnomer because this variation (BP fall of <10 mmHg on inspiration) is physiological, is most accurately assessed using a appropriate, blood pressure cuff to measure the difference in systolic pressure between inspiration and expiration; a difference of >10 mmHg or a fall > 10 mmHg in BP during inspiration is pathological and confirms pulsus paradoxus.

Pulsus paradoxus is seen in conditions associated with restricted diastolic filling of right side of the heart during inspiration (e.g. constrictive pericarditis, cardiac tamponade or massive pericardial effusion), increased respiratory effort in severe asthma during inspiration or lowered left ventricular stroke volume in shock.

Character. The normal character of the pulse is fairly rapid rise, rounded peak and fairly rapid fall. The waveforms consists of “a percussion wave, a tidal wave, a diastolic wave and a notch”.

It is usually not possible to detect slight variations from the normal, but in certain diseases the character of the arterial pulse is detectably abnormal. Some classical pulses seen in certain conditions and their characteristics are given in the Table 11.5 and Figure 11.6.

Radiofemoral delay: Delay of femoral as compared to radial pulse is seen in coarctation of aorta and occlusive aortic disease. The coarctation of aorta is nothing but constriction or narrowing of a part of aorta resulting in slow transmission of pressure wave, hence, the delay.

Arterial wall: The aorta and large arteries stiffen with age as they become atherosclerotic. As the aorta becomes less distensible, a given stroke volume causes a greater rise in systolic blood pressure; systolic hypertension with a widened pulse pressure often ensues. Peripheral

Table 11.5: Characteristic pulses and the conditions associated with them

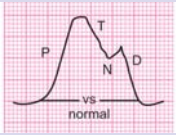
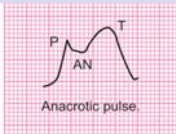
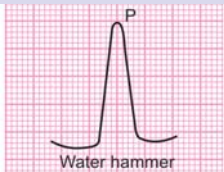
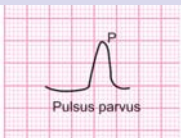
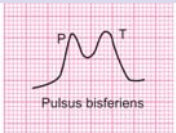


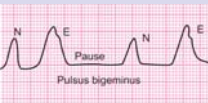
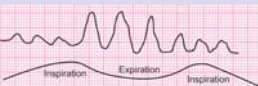
Pulse	Characteristic (Figs 11.6A to I)	Condition (s)
<i>Normal</i> It has a fairly rapid rise, rounded top and fairly steep fall	 <p>Normally seen (Fig. 11.6A)</p>	<p>Normal pulse wave</p> <p>P = Percussion wave</p> <p>T = Tidal wave</p> <p>D = Diastolic wave</p> <p>N = Notch</p> <p>VS = Ventricular systole</p>
<i>Anacrotic</i> It is a slow rising, small volume, well-sustained pulse. It is now-a-days called <i>pulsus tardus</i> . An anacrotic notch (AN) between percussion and tidal wave is present.	 <p>(Fig. 11.6B)</p>	<p>Aortic stenosis. It is due to obstruction to ejection of left ventricle leading to delayed and small peak.</p>
<i>Collapsing or Water Hammer or Corrigan's pulse.</i> It is characterized by a rapid upstroke (forceful, high percussion wave) which gives a tap to the palpating finger similar to feeling of a water-hammer, and rapid downstroke or descent producing collapsing character due to sudden disappearance of the pulse wave from the palpating hand. The method of palpation of water hammer pulse is described in Fig. 11.7	 <p>(Fig. 11.6C)</p>	<p>This is found in aortic regurgitation, PDA, AV fistula and other high output states (Read good volume or bounding pulse)</p>
Pulsus parvus. It is low volume ill-sustained pulse, differs from pulsus tardus where pulse is low-volume but well sustained.	 <p>(Fig. 11.6D)</p>	<p>It is seen in mitral stenosis. Low stroke volume produces malar flush.</p>
Pulsus bisferiens. It is double peak pulse. The first peak is due to quick rising percussion wave and second peak is due to delayed tidal wave, with a notch in between, thus both the peaks have same amplitude	 <p>(Fig. 11.6E)</p>	<p>It is seen in aortic regurgitation alone, combined aortic stenosis and aortic regurgitation and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM)</p>
Diastolic pulse. It is characterized by two palpable waves, one in systole and one in diastole, separated by an accentuated normal diastolic notch.	 <p>(Fig. 11.6F)</p>	<p>It is frequently seen in patients with a low stroke volume particularly dilated cardiomyopathy. It is also seen in high grade fever.</p>
Pulsus alternans large and small volume pulses alternate	 <p>(Fig. 11.6G)</p>	<p>It is seen in CHF and dilated cardiomyopathy</p>
Pulsus bigeminus or trigeminus or quadrigeminus. The pulse is regularly irregular and is due to fixed unifocal extrasystoles coming after every normal beat or after every two or three normal beats with the usual pause after the extrasystole	 <p>(Fig. 11.6H)</p>	<p>It is seen in patients with multiple unifocal ectopics with fixed pattern.</p>
Pulsus paradoxus Volume of pulse decreases during inspiration and increases during expiration	 <p>(Fig. 11.6I)</p>	<p>Pericardial effusion, shock, acute asthma</p>



Fig. 11.7: Method of palpation for water-hammer pulse. The patient should lie or sit on a couch/bed. Raise the patient's arm above the head to bring radial and brachial artery in line with aorta for better palpation of the pulse wave. Hold the patient's right hand with your left hand. Put the three fingers of your right hand either on the radial or brachial artery. Feel for the rapid upstroke and rapid downstroke of the pulse

Water hammer pulse is better appreciated in the big vessel e.g. better in the brachial than the radial.

arteries tend to lengthen, become tortuous and feel harder, hence, vessel wall becomes palpable. Normally vessel wall is not palpable due to resilient arteries but becomes palpable in old age and in hypertensives due to stiffness and hardening of arteries (arteriosclerosis and atherosclerosis).

Blood Pressure (BP)

This is the pressure at which blood is flowing in the arterial system. It is due to pressure exerted by the intravascular blood volume laterally on the vessel wall. Systolic BP depends on the cardiac output and diastolic BP depends on peripheral resistance.

In western societies, the systolic BP tends to rise from childhood through old age. Diastolic BP stops rising, however, roughly around the sixth decade.

Clinically the BP is measured by a mercury sphygmomanometer or instrument. To measure the BP accurately, one must choose a cuff of appropriate size i.e.,

- Width of standard cuff should be about 40% of upper arm circumference (about 12-14 cm for an average adult)
- The length of the cuff should be about 80% of upper arm circumference (almost long enough to encircle the arm)
- If aneroid instrument is used, recalibrate periodically before use because it becomes inaccurate with repeated use.

Note. Cuff that are too short or too narrow may give falsely high readings. Using a regular – size cuff on an obese arm may lead to a false diagnosis of hypertension. For children, a variety of cuffs of different widths are available for use.

Technique (Fig. 11.8). While assessing the BP, you must take following steps to make sure that your measurement is accurate. The examination sequence is as follows.

- Ideally ask the patient to avoid smoking or drinking caffeinated beverages for 30 minutes before BP is measured, and person should rest for at least 5-10 minutes.
- Support the arm comfortably at about heart level
- Remove all the clothing from the arm.
- Apply the cuff to the arm and identify the brachial pulse.
- Inflate the cuff until the pulse is impalpable. Note the pressure on the manometer which is rough estimate of systolic pressure.
- Now inflate the cuff another 20-30 mmHg above and listen through the stethoscope over the brachial artery.
- Deflate the cuff slowly until the regular heart sounds (called Korotkoff sounds) can be heard. This is systolic pressure which should be measured to the nearest 2 mmHg.
- Continue to deflate the cuff slowly until the sounds disappear.
- Record the point at which the sounds just disappear or get muffled. It is diastolic BP. Usually as the sphygmomanometer cuff is deflated the Korotkoff sounds get gradually louder, then suddenly become muffled just before they disappear.

Occasionally the muffled sounds persist, in which case, the point at which they first become muffled gives the diastolic BP. A checklist for BP measurement is given in the Table 11.6.



Fig. 11.8: Measurement of blood pressure

In some people, muffling point and the disappearance point are further apart. Occasionally as in the regurgitation, the sounds never disappear. If there is more than 10 mmHg difference in muffling and disappearance point, record both figures as 150/80/68.

Note: An unrecognized gap on auscultation (Fig. 11.9) may lead to serious underestimation of systolic BP (e.g. 140/90 mm in the example below) in such a situation, record your findings completely (e.g. 200/90 with an auscultatory gap from 160 to 140 in the example below).

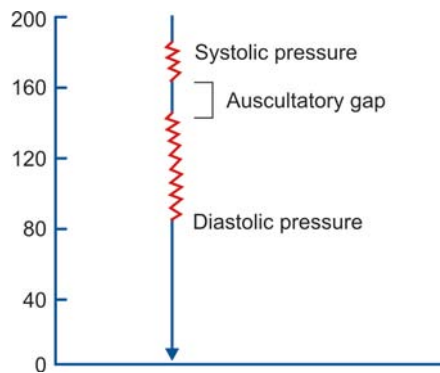


Fig. 11.9: The korotkoff sounds and an auscultatory gap. If you find an auscultatory gap, record your finding as follows; BP-130/90 with an auscultatory gap from 160-150 mmHg

How to write BP. The blood pressure is written as systolic/diastolic, for example 140/90 mmHg means 140 mm is systolic and 90 mmHg is diastolic BP.

Blood pressure should be taken in both arms at least once. Normally there may be a difference of 5 mmHg and sometimes upto 10 mmHg, beyond this, it is abnormal hence, repeated measurements are to be taken in case of abnormality.

Definitions of normal and abnormal level

Blood pressure varies with excitement, stress and environment. Repeated measurements are required before a patient should be identified as hypertensive. In some patients, the measurement of just BP by the doctor as soon as the patient approaches the doctor cause BP to rise-called *white coat hypertension*. This may come to normal after sometime when the patient is relaxed and as soon as he/she comes out of doctor's chamber. Ambulatory BP monitoring helps to distinguish these patients from those with sustained hypertension.

Recently, the 7th joint national committee (JNC VII) report on prevention, detection, evaluation and treatment of hypertension, has defined normal and abnormal values of BP (see the Box 11.8). According to

it, 120./80 mmHg is taken as upper limit of normal. This report has superseded the previous VIth JNC report in which 130/85 mmHg was taken as normal. The normal pulse pressure (difference between systolic and diastolic) is around 30-60 mmHg.

Box 11.8: JNC VII CLASSIFICATION OF HYPERTENSION

Category	Systolic (mmHg)	Diastolic (mmHg)
Normal	<120	<80
Prehypertension (previous term high normal replaced)	120-139	80-89
Hypertension		
• First Stage	140-159	90-99
• Second Stage	> 160	> 100

Table 11.6: Checklist for measurement of BP

Patient	Relaxed, arm supported at heart level. All clothings removed from the arm
Cuff	Neatly applied. appropriate size for arm. No leaks
Manometer	Well supported, Upright, If aneroid, calibrated regularly
Doctor/Student	Check systolic pressure by palpation. Release pressure slowly. Avoid parallax error (eye at same level as manometer). Avoid end-digit preference (record to nearest 2 mmHg)

In patients taking antihypertensive treatment or elderly patients or patients with symptoms of faintings or syncope, or patients with depletion of blood volume, take the BP in *supine*, *sitting* and *standing* positions (unless contraindicated). Normally, as the patient rises from the horizontal to a standing position, systolic pressure drops slightly or remains unchanged, while diastolic pressure rises slightly. Another measurement after 1 to 5 minutes of standing may identify orthostatic hypotension missed by earlier readings. The repetition is especially useful in elderly. A fall in systolic BP \geq 20 mmHg especially when accompanied by symptoms indicates *orthostatic (postural) hypotension*.

In suspected coarctation of aorta, it is useful to compare the systolic BP in the arm with that in the leg; the patient lies prone and an 18 cm cuff is used above the knee to measure the systolic BP over the popliteal artery.

Special problems and the remedial measures

Some specific problems may produce difficulty as well as erroneous record of BP. The problems and the remedial measures are given in the Table 11.7.

Table 11.7: Specific problems related to BP and their remedial measures

Problem/condition	Measure (s)
<i>Anxious or apprehensive patient.</i> There may be a high reading during an initial visit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try to relax the patient Repeat your measurements later Some patients will say their BP is only elevated in the office or just during recording (white-coat hypertension), they need to have their BP checked several times at home or in a community setting
<i>The obese or very thin arm</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For obese arm, use a wide cuff (15 cm). If the circumference of the arm exceeds 41 cm, then use thigh cuff (18 cm wide) For the very thin person, a pediatric cuff may be used.
<i>Weak leg pulses and pressure.</i> A femoral pulse that is weak (smaller) and comes later than radial pulse indicates coarctation of aorta or occlusive aortic disease.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compare the volume and timing of the radial and femoral pulses. Compare the BP in the arm and leg. BP is lower in the legs than in the arms in these conditions. To rule out coarctation of the aorta, two observations must be made at least once in the hypertensive patient. Use thigh cuff (18 cm) for recording of BP in the leg. To intensify the Korotkoff sounds, one of the following method may be useful; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Raise the patient's arm before and while you inflate the cuff. Then lower the arm and take the BP. Inflat the cuff. Ask the patient to make a fist several times and then take BP. When you can not hear the Korotkoff sounds at all, estimate the BP by palpation method or alternatively by Doppler technique.
<i>Weak or inaudible Korotkoff sounds.</i> The causes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Erroneous placement of stethoscope Failure to make full contact with the bell. Venous engorgement of the patient's arm from repeated inflations of the cuff. Patient in shock. 	
<i>Arrhythmias.</i> Irregular rhythms produce variations in pressure and therefore, unreliable measurement.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ignore the effects of an occasional extrasystole With frequent VPCs or atrial fibrillation, determine the average of several observations.

Jugular venous pulse and pressure (JVP)

The neck veins (internal and/or external jugular veins) are used to analyse the venous waveforms and to estimate the Jugular Venous Pressure (JVP). In most patients, the right internal jugular vein is the best for both the purposes because:

- There are no valves between right atrium and the internal jugular vein. It follows that degree of distension of the veins is directly proportional to the pressure in the right atrium and there is direct transmission of waveforms of right atrium to internal jugular vein, hence, venous waveforms, provide valuable information about cardiac function.
- Because of its deep position, the internal jugular vein can only be examined when the neck muscles are relaxed. Only a diffuse pulsation can be seen if the vein is not visible. The external jugular vein is visible but it is not routinely examined because it is prone to kinking and partial obstruction as it traverses deep fascia of the neck.
- The venous pulsations in the neck when the veins are not visible cause confusion with carotid pulsations. The differentiating features between the two are tabulated (Table 11.8).

Table 11.8: Distinctions between jugular and carotid artery pulsations

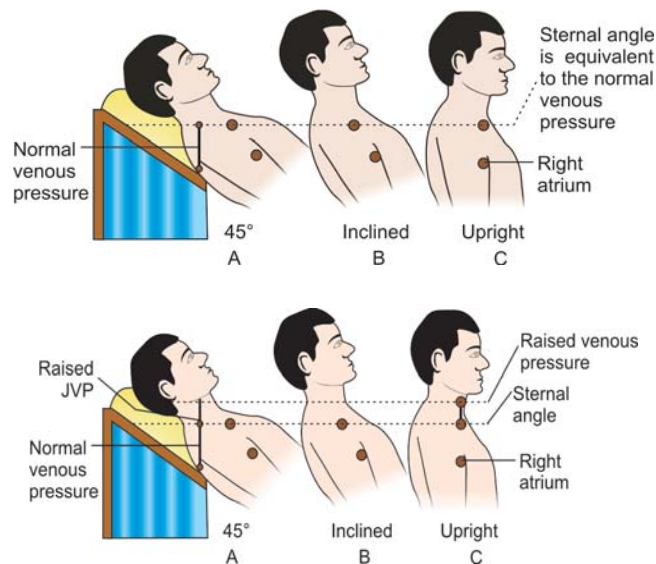
Internal jugular pulsations	Carotid pulsations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not palpable They have rapid inward movement Two peaks per heart beat in sinus rhythm Pulsations can be diminished or obliterated by pressure at root of the neck Level of pulsations changes with position i.e., drops as the patient becomes more upright Level of pulsations usually descends with inspiration Veins can be made prominent with abdominal pressure (abdomino-jugular reflux) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Palpable Rapid outward movement A vigorous thrust with a single peak per heart beat Pulsations unaffected by such pressure. Position does not have any effect Pulsations not affected by inspiration. Abdominal pressure has no effect

Normal Jugular Venous Pressure (JVP)

The normal mean right atrial pressure is < 9 cm of H₂O or < 8 mmHg. Since the sternal angle (*angle of Louis*) is approximately 5 cm above the right atrium, therefore,

the normal jugular venous pulse should not extend beyond 4 cm above the sternal angle (Fig. 11.10) When a normal person sits upright the pulse is hidden behind the clavicle and sternum. When the patient is reclined to 45°, the top of the pulsations is normally just at the level of the clavicle. If pulsations are not seen at this inclination, then a normal right atrial pressure is confirmed by applying pressure over the centre of the abdomen for 5-10 seconds (abdominojugular reflux). This manoeuvre increases the venous return to right side of the heart and leads to transient rise in right atrial pressure of 1-3 cm which is reflected in the height of jugular venous pulse.

A hypovolemic patient may have to lie flat before you see the veins; while normally venous pulsations are



Figs 11.10A and B: Jugular venous pulsations and jugular venous pressure

Upper: Normal jugular venous pressure. In normal subjects, when body is inclined to 45° to the horizontal, (A) the venous pulsations are just visible in the internal jugular vein just above the clavicles (B). As patient tries to adopt upright position, the distance between the right atrium and sternal angle remains constant, regardless of the position of the thorax. However, in sitting (upright) position (C), the venous pulsations, become hidden behind the clavicle which is just situated equivalent to the sternal angle. Therefore, for JVP, the inclination of 45° is must to see the venous pulsations.

Lower: Raised jugular venous pressure (↑JVP). When JVP gets elevated, the internal jugular vein becomes full and venous pulsations appear in the neck which can be appreciated. To differentiate them from carotid pulsations, perform hepatojugular reflux which not only makes the veins prominent but gives an idea of upper column of pulsations. The JVP is measured as vertical distance between top of the pulsations and sternal angle. When JVP is markedly elevated the venous pulsations get hidden behind the angle of jaw, hence, it is beyond measurement

visible just above sternal angle when reclined at 45°. In contrast, when jugular venous pressure is raised, reclination upto 60° or even 90° may be required to see the pulsations which may be hidden behind the angle of the jaw. In all these positions, the sternal angle usually remains about 5 cm above the right atrium as illustrated in the diagram (Fig. 11.10).

Waveform. Identification of the jugular venous pulse waveform requires experience. It has two positive waves; *a* wave and *v* wave, and two descents *x* and *y*. There is a third positive wave called '*c*' wave is not visible (Fig. 11.11).

The '*a*' wave or first positive wave occurs due to right atrial contraction just before the first heart sound.

- The '*a*' wave becomes prominent in pulmonary hypertension, pulmonary stenosis, and tricuspid stenosis. Giant '*a*' wave (cannon wave) occurs due to forceful atrial contractions against closed tricuspid valve, is seen in complete heart block, supraventricular (junctional) tachycardia and ventricular tachycardia.
- The '*a*' wave is absent in atrial fibrillation.

The '*c*' wave, often not observed in the JVP is a positive wave produced by bulging of the tricuspid valve into right atrium as right ventricular pressure rises.

The '*v*' wave is the third positive wave produced by the increasing volume of blood into the right atrium during ventricular systole when the tricuspid valve is closed. Tricuspid regurgitation causes the *v* wave to be more prominent while tricuspid stenosis diminishes it.

The *x* descent is the first negative wave that follows '*a*' wave (*c* is not visible). This is produced by atrial relaxation. It is accentuated in constrictive pericarditis but is diminished in right ventricular dilatation and obliterated in tricuspid regurgitation.

The combination of a prominent '*v*' wave and obliteration of '*x*' descent results in a single large positive systolic wave, characteristically seen in tricuspid regurgitation.

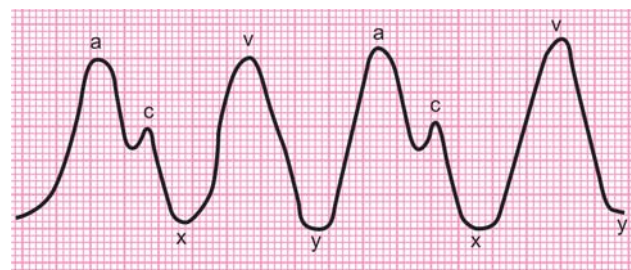


Fig. 11.11: The waveforms of jugular venous pulse

The 'y' descent is the second negative wave (trough), produced by the opening of the tricuspid valve and the subsequent rapid inflow of the blood into the right ventricle.

- A sharp y descent is seen in patients with constrictive pericarditis, or with right-sided heart failure.
- A slow y descent indicates obstruction to the right ventricular filling, is seen in patients with tricuspid stenosis or right atrial myxoma.

The absent venous pulsations with prominent dilated neck veins are characteristically seen in *superior mediastinal compression* or *superior vena cava obstruction*.

Examination of jugular venous pulse and measurement of JVP

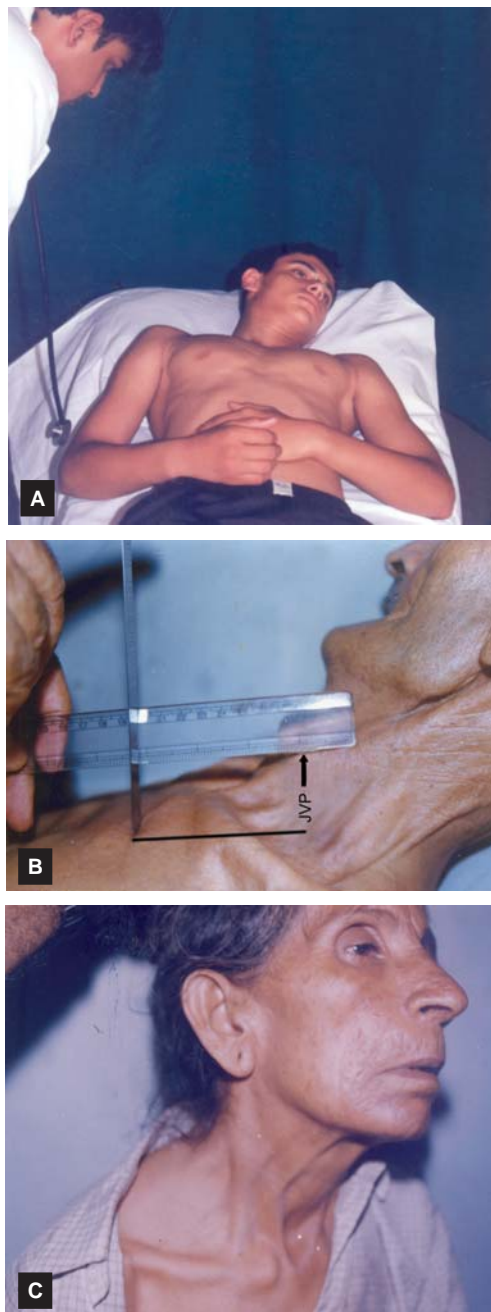
The steps for assessing the jugular venous pulse are as follows:

1. Make the patient comfortable with the head resting on a pillow to relax the sternomastoid muscles.
2. Raise the head of the patient to 45° in supine position by putting the pillows behind the head or by raising the head of the bed or examining table.
3. Turn the patient's head slightly away from the side you are inspecting. Use good light for examination.
4. Look at the neck veins from the side of the patient (Fig. 11.12A).
5. Identify the internal jugular pulsations especially on the right side. Focus on the pulsations and note the highest point of pulsations, if necessary, by means of abdominojugular reflux.
6. Measure the JVP (Fig. 11.12B) by vertical distance in centimeter between the top of venous pulsation and the sternal angle. This distance measured in centimeters above the sternal angle is the JVP.
7. Now readjust the position of the patient, if necessary, to make the waveforms clearly visible.
8. Now identify the pattern of waveforms of venous pulsation and note any abnormality.

Increased JVP suggests:

- Right sided heart failure due to any cause or congestive cardiac failure (Fig. 11.13)
- Constrictive pericarditis
- Tricuspid stenosis
- Superior vena cava obstruction (JVP is raised but pulsations may be absent)

Effect of respiration on JVP. Normally, the JVP decreases during inspiration, the paradoxical rise of JVP during inspiration (opposite to normal decrease) is called *Kussmaul's sign*, is most often caused by constrictive pericarditis, severe right-sided failure or right ventricular infarction.



Figs 11.12A to C: Measurement of JVP. A. Looking at the neck veins for JVP, B. Actual measurement at 45°. C. JVP raised beyond measurement, say, JVP is raised upto the angle of jaw and above

In patients with chronic obstructive lung disease (COPD), venous pressure may be elevated on expiration only. The veins collapse on inspiration. This finding does not indicate congestive heart failure.

Unilateral distension of the external jugular vein is usually due to local kinking or obstruction.



Fig. 11.13: Raised JVP with cyanosis in a patient with CHF. Note the distended pulsatile neck veins (\Rightarrow)

Even though students may not see clinicians making these measurements very frequently in clinical settings, practising exact technique for measurement is important. With experience, the physicians and cardiologists come to identify the JVP and estimate its height visually.

Abdominojugular reflux test/ manoeuvre: In patients suspected of having right ventricular failure who have a normal JVP at rest, the abdominojugular reflux test may be helpful. It is performed by applying firm pressure with the palm of the hand over the abdomen for 10 seconds or more. In normal persons, this manoeuvre does not alter JVP significantly but when incipient or compensated right heart failure is present, the upper level of the pulsations usually increases, hence, positive test.

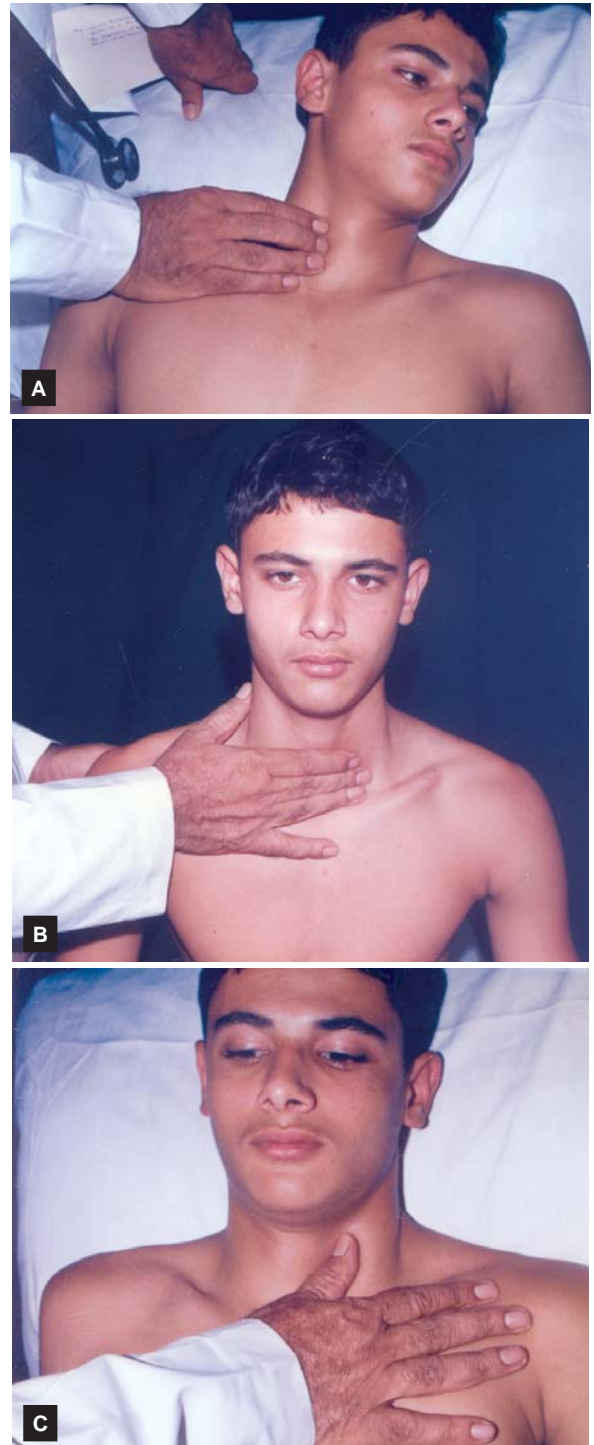
The carotid pulse

After measuring the JVP, move on to assessment of carotid pulse in the neck. The carotid pulse is useful for detecting stenosis or regurgitation of the aortic valve and in evaluation of a case with stroke. Assess the quality of carotid upstroke, its amplitude and contour, and presence or absence of any thrill or bruit.

Method. To assess the amplitude and contour, the patient should be lying comfortably on the bed with the head of bed elevated to 30°. Inspect the neck for carotid pulsations. These may be visible just medial to sternomastoid muscles. Then place your right index and middle fingers (or left thumb) on the right carotid artery in the lower third of the neck, press posteriorly and feel for pulsations (Figs 11.14A to C).

Caution: Avoid pressing on the carotid sinus which lies at the level of the top of the thyroid cartilage. Pressure on the carotid sinus may cause reflex bradycardia or hypotension.

Never press both carotids simultaneously as this may reduce blood supply to the brain and induce syncope.



Figs. 11.14A to C: Method of palpation of carotid pulse. A. Palpation by index and middle fingers. B. Palpation of the opposite carotid. C. Palpation of left carotid with left thumb

Abnormalities

- A tortuous or kinked carotid artery may produce a unilateral pulsatile bulge

- Delayed carotid pulsations may be seen in cardiac pump failure or in atherosclerotic narrowing or occlusion of the artery
- Small thready carotid pulse is seen in cardiogenic shock
- Delayed carotid upstroke occurs in aortic stenosis.

Feel for thrills and hear for bruits. A carotid bruit with or without thrill in a middle aged or older person suggests arterial narrowing. An aortic ejection systolic murmur may radiate to the carotid artery and sound like a thrill.

Conditions of other peripheral pulses

Look for the various peripheral arterial pulses as discussed under examination of peripheral vascular system. Pain or diminished pulses suggest arterial insufficiency, hence, look for postural colour changes. (Read examination of peripheral vascular system).

Oedema

Compare one foot and leg with the other, noting their relative size and the prominence of veins, tendons and bones.

Oedema causes swelling that may obscure the veins, tendon and bony prominences.

Check for pitting oedema. (Read examination of extremities).

If you suspect oedema, measurement of the legs may help you to identify it and to follow its course. A difference of more than 1 cm just above the ankle or 2 cm at the calf is unusual in normal persons and suggests oedema.

Jones criteria

Rheumatic fever is a multisystem disorder that typically follows an episode of sore throat (streptococcal) and usually presents with fever, anorexia, joint pains and



Fig. 11.15: Erythema marginatum in a patient suspected to be a case of acute rheumatic fever. Note the red macules with serpiginous borders over the swollen knee joints

lethargy. Arthritis is common presentation, occurs in 75% of patients; other features include skin rashes, carditis and neurological changes. The Jones criteria for diagnosis are given in the Box 11.9.

Box 11.9: JONES DIAGNOSTIC REVISED CRITERIA FOR RHEUMATIC FEVER

Major	Minor
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carditis • Polyarthritis • Chorea • Erythema marginatum 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fever • Arthralgia • Previous history of rheumatic fever or rheumatic heart disease • Raised ESR, or positive C-reactive protein • Leucocytosis • First degree or second degree AV block on ECG

Interpretation. The diagnosis is suggested by

- Two or more major criteria *plus*
- One major and two or more minor criteria *plus*
Evidence of preceding streptococcal infection is also required such as increased ASO titre, positive throat culture for group A streptococci or other antistreptococcal antibodies or echocardiographic evidence of endocarditis.

Clinical significance

In a patient suspected of rheumatic heart disease, past history of sore throat, joint pains (fleeting character), fever and skin rash must be asked. For evidence of rheumatic fever one should look for:

- *Sore throat, lymphadenopathy, fever*
- *Swelling of large joint (s) if any*
- *Erythema marginatum*, i.e. red macules with pale centre (appear as red rings). They are seen on the trunk and extremities. (Fig. 11.15) They may not be visible in dark—complexioned persons.
- *Subcutaneous nodules*. Palpate for small painless nodules over the bony prominences and tendons on the extensor surface of forearms and legs. These nodules are smaller than those of rheumatoid arthritis.
- *Involuntary movements (chorea)*. Look for wide flung dancing irregular movements of extremities. These are quasi-purposive and usually recover and may be accompanied or followed by rheumatic carditis.
- *Arthralgia*. A migratory polyarthritis involving one or two large joints at a time is common presentation. A common corollary about acute rheumatic fever “*it licks the joint and bites the heart*”, is true and widely accepted.

Acute rheumatic activity

A patient of chronic rheumatic heart disease is prone to either another attack of rheumatic fever (if not previously protected by penicillin) or to infective endocarditis. Rheumatic activity in a patient with chronic rheumatic valvular disease should be suspected in the presence of fever with one or two manifestations of Jones criteria. Therefore examination of Jones criteria is mandatory in patients suffering with chronic valvular heart disease.

Peripheral manifestations of infective endocarditis (Read case discussion on infective endocarditis in Bed-side medicine without tears by Prof. S.N. Chugh)

Infective endocarditis is a microbial infection of mural endocardium, a heart valve or valves (native or prosthetic) or lining of a blood vessel or a congenital defect (septal defect). The infection may develop insidiously or suddenly, may pursue a fulminant or prolonged course and is fatal unless treated.

The clinical manifestations are highly variable and occur as a result of:

1. *Infection* such as fever, nausea, vomiting, night sweats, weight loss, headache and weakness
2. *Immune complex vasculitis*. e.g. splinter haemorrhages, Janeway lesion (palmar erythema), haematuria (glomerulonephritis) etc.
3. *Septic embolisation* to peripheral vessels (loss of pulse(s) or gangrene, Osler's node), to viscera, e.g. lung (haemoptysis, pleuritic pain), spleen (splenomegaly) to the eyes (Roth's spot) and to the brain (e.g. hemiplegia or monoplegia)
4. *Anaemia and its consequences*. Anaemia develops due to infection and haematuria. This along with toxemia or septicemia may produce change in the previous murmur or appearance of new murmurs.

Therefore, in a patient with rheumatic or congenital heart disease or having prosthetic valve, always look for the following signs of infective endocarditis;

1. Record pulse and temperature for tachycardia and fever.
2. Look for peripheral pulses for diminished or absent pulsations. Examine peripheral parts for gangrene. Look for anaemia.
3. See the nails and fingers for clubbing, splinter haemorrhages, Osler's node, Janeway lesion
4. Examine skin for haemorrhages and purpuric spots
5. Examine eyes for subconjunctival haemorrhage. Look at the fundus and retina with ophthalmoscope for Roth's spot, optic atrophy or haemorrhage.

6. Examine the abdomen for liver and spleen enlargement.

Examination of the precordium

The part of anterior chest overlying the heart is called *precordium*. Examination of the precordium is the main component of clinical cardiology and reflects indirect examination of heart and great vessels.

Surface anatomy of the heart. A knowledge of surface anatomy of the heart is important for;

- Radiological outline of the heart on chest X-ray (Read radiology of the heart—Bedside medicine by prof. SN Chugh)
- Auscultation of the heart in different areas (Fig. 11.16) The auscultatory areas do not correspond with the markings of the heart valves. The locations on the chest wall where you hear heart sounds and murmurs help to identify the valve or chamber where they originate. Sounds and murmurs arising from the various valves are best heard in certain areas as depicted in the Table 11.9.

Table 11.9: Surface anatomy of heart valves for auscultation

Valve	Surface projection (Fig. 11.16)
Mitral	At and around the cardiac apex
Tricuspid	Lower left sternal border
Pulmonary	2nd left interspace close to the sternum
Aortic	Right 2nd intercostal space. Aortic murmurs may be heard any where from this space to the apex. Left third space is called second aortic area (A ₂) for auscultations of aortic events

N.B. These areas are not applicable in a patient with dextrocardia.

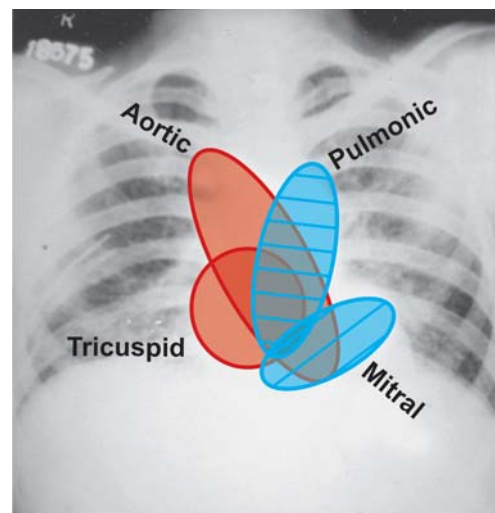


Fig. 11.16: Surface anatomy of the heart valves for auscultation of different areas

These areas usually overlap, hence, one will need to correlate the auscultatory findings with other parts of cardiac examination to identify the sounds and murmurs.

Examination sequence

1. Inspection
2. Palpation
3. Percussion
4. Auscultation



Procedure. Inspect the precordium with patient resting 45° on the bed or couch with shoulders horizontal (Fig. 11.17). Look for chest deformity, any scar, and pulsations in the parasternal area (parasternal lift), suprasternal notch and epigastrium.



Fig. 11.17: Inspection of the apex beat. The consultant is pointing the apex beat to the students with the help of index finger

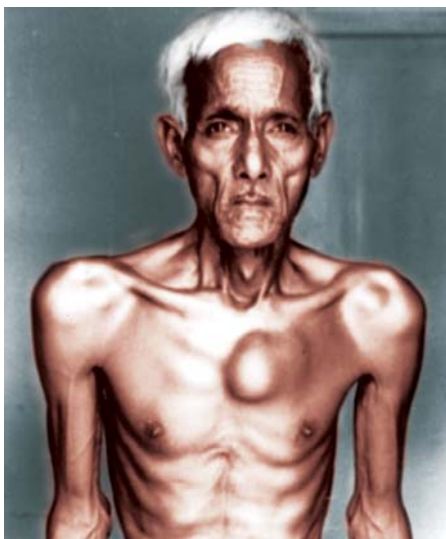


Fig. 11.18: A localised bulge at 2nd left space due to long-standing aortic aneurysm in a patient



Fig. 11.19: Pectus excavatum. Note the central mid-sternal depression (→)

Now look for the apex beat which is the lowest and outermost point of the cardiac pulsations seen. This can be confirmed on palpation.

Normal apex beat lies in the 5th intercostal space (the space below the 5th rib) within 10 cm from the midsternal line or within the midclavicular line in an adult in the sitting or lying down position.

Normal apex beat may not be visible in a patient with asthma or COPD due to hyperinflation, obesity or thick chest or when it lies behind the rib or in pericardial effusion. It may sometimes be hidden behind the pendulous breasts in females.

Common abnormalities on inspection may include:

- Any localised bulge (Fig. 11.18) or depression
- *Chest deformities*, e.g. pectus excavatum (Fig. 11.19) pectus carinum, and barrel shaped chest.
- *Scars* (e.g. midline sternotomy scar of coronary bypass surgery or valvotomy—Figs 11.20 A and B). A mark of needle prick may be seen at the site of tapping of pericardial effusion. This will be recognised either by attached cotton fibres or a scab. Note any keloid or hypertrophied scar (Fig. 11.20C).
- *Pulsations*. Prominent pulsations may be seen in suprasternal notch in anxiety, in aortic incompetence, high output states and aortic aneurysm. The epigastric pulsations may be visible in thin persons, in right ventricular dilatation, aneurysm of the descending aorta and hepatic venous pulsation of tricuspid regurgitation. The pulsations of dilated pulmonary artery in pulmonary hypertension may be seen in 2nd left intercostal space. With severe degree of cardiac enlargement,



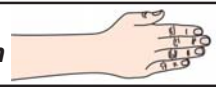
Figs 11.20A to C: Scars. A. Sternotomy scar, B. Scar of coronary bypass surgery, C. A keloid

the whole pericardium may be shaky. In coarctation of aorta, pulsations may be felt and even seen overlying the scapulae on posterior chest wall. These are due to collaterals formation. A localised pulsatile bulge may occur due to long-standing aortic aneurysm (Fig. 11.18).

Displacement of apex beat may be seen to the same side or to the opposite side. It may be displaced because of mediastinal shift in which trachea is also deviated. The causes of displaced apex beat are discussed under palpation because apex beat is better felt than seen.

In *dextrocardia*, the apex beat is normally seen to the right side. If you do not see the apex beat on the left, try to see it on the right also.

Palpation



It is just to confirm the findings seen on inspection.

Method: The best way of palpation of heart is put flat of right hand on the precordium to get a general impression of cardiac activity (Fig. 11.21).

Now localise the apex beat (Fig. 11.22) if necessary, ask the patient to roll on to the left side.

Apex beat on palpation is the outermost and lowest point of cardiac impulse where the finger is lifted during systole (i.e. definite impulse or thrust is felt). It lies within 10 cm from the midline or just inner to midclavicular line.



Fig. 11.21: Palpation of the apex beat



Fig. 11.22: Localisation of apex beat

The apex beat may be deviated to the same side due to pull or to the opposite side due to push. The causes of displaced apex beat are given in the Box 11.10.

Box 11.10: CAUSES OF DISPLACED APEX BEAT	
To the same side	To the opposite side
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Left ventricular hypertrophy/enlargement Due to pull in pulmonary conditions such as lung fibrosis, collapse or removal of the lung 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pleural effusion when it is massive Large pneumothorax

The apex beat is neither visible nor palpable on the left side in,

1. Extreme obesity or thick chest
2. Large pericardial effusion
3. Apex beat hidden behind the rib or behind pendulous breast in a female
4. Asthma or COPD
5. Dextrocardia

Character of the apex beat. The character of the apical impulse is more important than its location.

- A forceful and sustained apex beat is seen in left ventricular hypertrophy (pressure overload) due to HT and aortic stenosis
- Diffuse apex beat which is less forceful, is felt in left ventricular dilatation (dilated cardiomyopathy) and ischaemic heart disease (ischaemic cardiomyopathy)
- *Tapping apex* beat is found in mitral stenosis. Actually, it is nothing but a palpable first heart sound
- A *double apex beat* is characteristic of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy where left ventricle is divided into two chambers by hypertrophied septum. The first thrust comes in lower space followed by second upper thrust due to pulsations in upper spaces. It also occurs in left ventricular aneurysm.

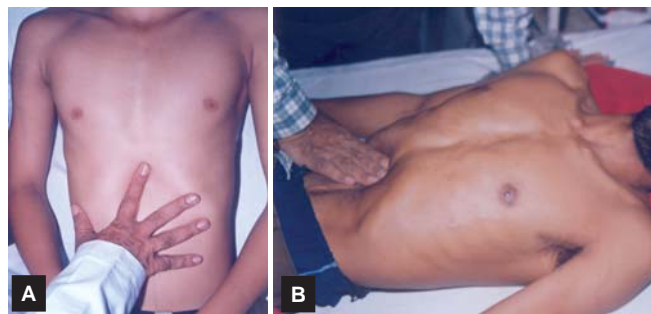
Palpate for parasternal heave, any palpable sound or thrill and pulsations.

Heaves: These are palpable impulses from either the right or left ventricle which lift the examiner's hand from the chest. The left parasternal heave is usually abnormal in adults and indicates of right ventricular hypertrophy i.e. pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary hypertension. The method of palpation of parasternal heave and its grading is depicted in the Figure 11.23.

Epigastric pulsations: They are palpated by the method described in the Figure 11.24. In right ventricular



Fig. 11.23: Grading of parasternal heave. Put the ulnar border of right hand or hypothenar eminence over the left sternal border. It is graded into: *Grade I* (parasternal left may just be palpable but not visible), *grade II* (parasternal left palpable as well as visible and *grade III* (parasternal lift is visible from a distance)



Figs 11.24A and B: Epigastric pulsations. A. It is palpated by keeping one finger below xiphisternum and pressing it a little backwards and upwards, B. Alternative method for right ventricular pulsations

hypertrophy, pulsations indicate pulmonary hypertension/stenosis while ill sustained right ventricular pulsations occur in left to right shunt. Epigastric pulsations may be normal due to aorta in thin persons, but can occur abnormally due to aortic aneurysm.

Pulsations if pulmonary (left 2nd interspace) and aortic (right 2nd interspace) are felt in haemodynamic circulation, e.g. high output states due to anaemia, thyrotoxicosis, fever, etc.

Sounds: The heart sounds normally are not palpable but may become palpable in certain conditions, i.e. first sound may become palpable in mitral stenosis and second sound in pulmonary hypertension.

Thrills: Thrills are palpable murmurs which impart vibrations to the examiner's hand like purring of a cat.

Usually loud murmurs are associated with thrills. Low pitched vibrations are better heard than felt. The important thrills and the associated conditions are given in the Box 11.11.

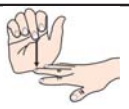
Box 11.11: COMMON THRILLS AND ASSOCIATED CONDITIONS

Thrill	Condition (s)
• A systolic thrill at apex	• Mitral regurgitation
• A diastolic thrill at apex, best felt in left lateral position (Fig. 11.25)	• Mitral stenosis
• A systolic thrill across the lower part of sternum	• Ventricular septal defect (VSD)
• A systolic thrill in 2nd right intercostal space, may be transmitted to carotid vessels in the neck	• Aortic valvular stenosis
• A diastolic thrill in 2nd right intercostal space	• Acute aortic regurgitation, dissection of aorta and rupture of aortic valve cusps (trauma, endocarditis).



Fig. 11.25: Palpation for diastolic thrill in left lateral position. Roll the patient to left side and put flat of right hand over the mitral area

Percussion



In most cases, chest X-ray and echocardiogram have replaced percussion in the estimation of heart size. When you cannot feel the apical impulse, however, percussion may suggest where to search for it. Under these circumstances, cardiac dullness often occupies a large area. Starting from the left on the chest, percuss from resonant towards dull area in the 3rd, 4th and 5th and possible 6th space from the anterior axillary line towards sternum so as to define the left border of the

heart. The second space on the left as well as on the right may also be percussed for any dullness (normally they are resonant). To define the right border, percuss right 4th space from resonant to dull area (normally right border of the heart lies just right to right sternal border).

- Undue dullness on the left side beyond apex and on the right side beyond right sternal border indicates pericardial effusion.
- Cardiac dullness is masked or lost in patients with chronic obstructive lung disease (obstructive emphysema) and left side pneumothorax.

Auscultation



Auscultation of the heart is a rewarding and an important skill of examination that leads directly to several clinical diagnoses. An understanding of the events of the cardiac cycle (see Fig. 11.1) is a useful basis for auscultation. It is essential to identify the systole and diastole correctly. Palpation of the carotid artery provides a systolic time reference and it is wise for the beginners to feel the carotid artery while auscultation. The first heart sound precedes the carotid pulse; the second sound follows it.

The auscultation of the heart is done with the use of a stethoscope fitted with both bell and a diaphragm.

High pitched sounds such as aortic diastolic murmur, all systolic murmurs, both the heart sounds (S_1 and S_2) and opening snap are heard with the diaphragm firmly pressed against the chest. Low-pitched sounds such as third (S_3) and fourth (S_4) heart sounds and mitral diastolic murmur are heard with the bell loosely applied on the chest wall.

Auscultatory areas

The auscultable areas of the precordium are customarily named according to the valve from which sounds or murmur arise (Table 11.9). They are mitral (M), tricuspid (T), aortic (A_1 are a lies in 2nd right interspace and A_2 left 3rd interspace) and pulmonary (P) area. They have already been represented in Fig. 11.16.

Some authorities discourage the use of these name. Since murmurs of more than one origin may occur in the given area and a murmur originating from a valve may not be best heard in that area; for example, systolic murmur originating from aortic valve (aortic stenosis) is best heard at the apex (mitral area).

Auscultation involves identifying and describing the followings:

- The heart sounds (first and second)

- Extra heart sounds (third and fourth)
- Additional sounds (clicks and snaps)
- Splitting of the sound (second heart sound)
- Murmurs

Method. It is advisable to have a fixed pattern for auscultation (Fig. 11.26). Listen to the heart with your stethoscope placed first in the right 2nd intercostal space close to the sternum, then along the left sternal border in each interspace from 2nd through the fifth and lastly at the apex. This will form a 'Z' shape pattern (Fig. 11.26). Recall that upper margins of the heart are, sometimes, termed the base of the heart. Some clinicians begin auscultation at the apex, and others at the base. Either pattern is satisfactory. One should listen on an area where you detect a murmur and then listen in areas adjacent to murmurs to determine its origin (loudest at the site of production).

Listen over the precordium first with the diaphragm with the patient supine. Use the bell at the apex, then move along the left sternal border to hear S_3 and S_4 and mid-diastolic murmur if present. Remember, the bell should be lightly placed on the chest because pressing the bell firmly on the chest makes it function like the diaphragm by stretching the underlying skin and with this technique the S_3 and S_4 (low-pitched sounds) may disappear, hence, may be missed.

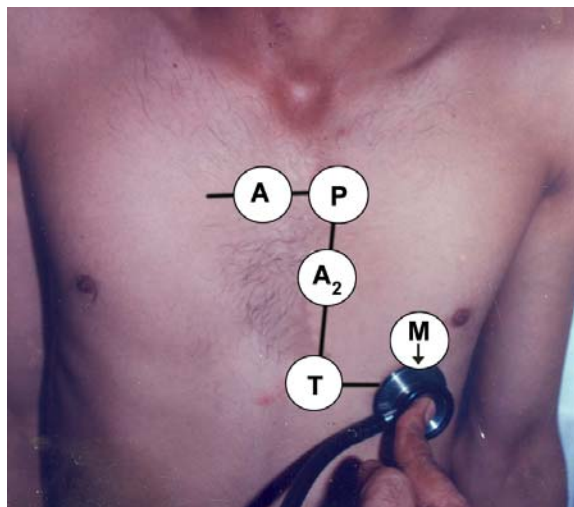


Fig. 11.26: Method of auscultation of precordium. Start either from aortic (A_1) area or mitral (M) area and proceed auscultation in Z shape manner

Step of examination

1. With the patient sitting semirecumbent, auscultate all the areas over precordium, listening in turn at the base of the heart, right and left sternal edges and

apex (Fig. 11.27) with both bell and diaphragm. Also auscultate, over the carotids and where appropriate into the axilla.

2. At each site, identify the S_1 and S_2 and assess the intensity, character and splitting of these sounds.
3. Then listen for added heart sounds and murmurs.
4. Roll the patient to left lateral position and hear for the diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis (Fig. 11.28).
5. Make the patient sit and lean forward and hear for the murmur of aortic stenosis or incompetence in left 2nd interspace with diaphragm.
6. Note the features of the murmur if present.

Effect of positions

1. *Left lateral decubitus position:* Ask the patient to roll partly onto the left side. The left lateral decubitus position brings the left ventricle close to the chest wall. Auscultate the heart with bell of stethoscope.

This position accentuates S_3 and S_4 and mid-diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis.

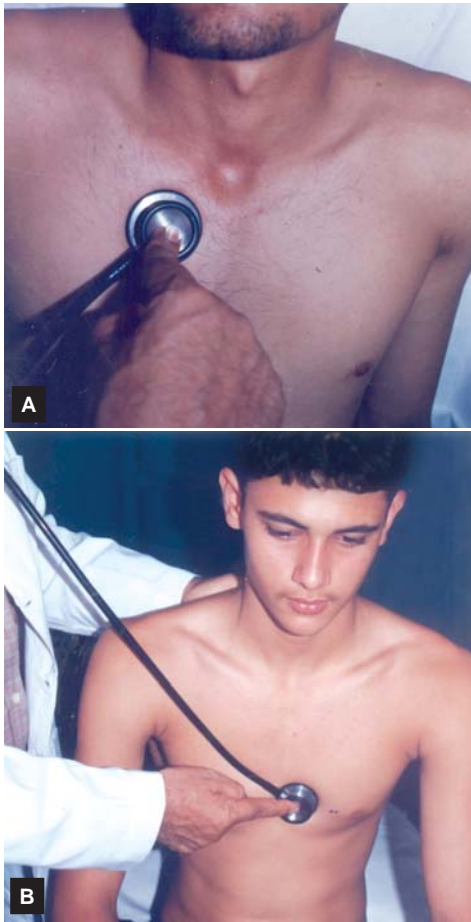
2. Ask the patient to sit up, lean forward, exhale completely and stop breathing in expiration.



Fig. 11.27: Auscultation at the apex for mitral events. Put the diaphragm at the apex with the patient lying comfortably on the bed/couch and time it with carotid pulse



Fig. 11.28: Position for mitral diastolic murmur. Roll the patient to left lateral position with stethoscope at mitral area



Figs 11.29A and B: Auscultation of aortic areas (A_1 and A_2). Ask or make the patient to bend forward and hold her/his breath in expiration. Hear for the aortic murmurs at. (A) Aortic (A_1) area in 2nd right interspace and (B) aortic (A_2) area in 3rd left interspace

Auscultate the chest with diaphragm along the left sternal border and at the apex (Fig. 11.29).

This position accentuates or brings out aortic murmurs (soft diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation) which is likely to be missed unless you use this position.

Heart sounds

Listen the heart sounds, note their intensity and splitting.

Normal heart sounds

The closure of the valves produce sounds called *heart sounds*. The opening of valves do not produce any sound. **The first heart sound (S_1).** It is produced due to closure of mitral and tricuspid valves at the start of ventricular systole. It is best heard at the apex.

The second heart sound (S_2). It is produced by the closure of pulmonary and aortic valves at the end of ventricular systole and best heard at the left sternal edge. It is louder and higher pitched than the first heart sound. Normally, its both components are audible; the aortic component is louder than pulmonary with a narrow normal split.

The third heart sound (S_3). It is low pitched sound heard with the bell of stethoscope at the apex. It is due to rapid filling phase, heard after the second sound as *lub-dub-dum*. It normally occurs in children, young adults and during pregnancy.

Abnormalities of the heart sounds

The following abnormalities may be noted

- The sounds may have a different intensity, i.e. either decreased or increased
- The sound may exhibit abnormal splitting
- Low frequency heart sounds (extra-heart sounds) in diastole-third or fourth sounds may be heard
- Additional high-pitched sounds (click, snaps) may be heard.

Changes in the intensity

Heart sounds are feebly audible in individuals with thick chest wall, obesity and in those with COPD (emphysema). This is due to the fact that production of the sounds is normal but conduction through chest wall is decreased. Conversely, in the presence of severe heart disease, the sounds may be quite normal. Thus, it becomes clear that alternations in the intensity of the heart sounds should be considered significant only when other features of the heart disease corroborate them. The abnormalities of first heart sound are given in the Box 11.12.

Box 11.12: ALTERATIONS IN INTENSITY OF FIRST HEART SOUND

Loud	Quiet/feeble	Variable
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High cardiac output and large stroke volume (e.g. high output states) • Mitral stenosis • Atrial myxoma • Short P-R interval (WPW syndrome) • Tachycardias • Atrial septal defect 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low cardiac output • Poor left ventricular function e.g. LVF • First degree AV block • Mitral regurgitation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Atrial fibrillation • Extrasystoles • Complex AV block

The abnormalities of the second heart sound are listed in the Table 11.10.

Table 11.10: Alterations in the intensity of second heart sound

Loud	Quiet/feeble
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Systemic hypertension (A_2 is loud) Pulmonary hypertension (P_2 is loud) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low cardiac output Calcific aortic stenosis Aortic incompetence Pulmonary stenosis (pulmonary component is quiet)

The aortic component (A_2) of second heart sound is muffled or reduced in intensity in calcific aortic stenosis and aortic regurgitation and pulmonary component (P_2) in pulmonary stenosis. Second heart sound is loud both in systemic and pulmonary hypertension.

Splitting

First sound. The mitral valve closes slightly earlier than tricuspid and this gives rise to split first sound. Normally, first heart sound splitting is difficult to detect because the two components (M_1 and T_1) are separated

by a short interval. When it is present, it does not indicate a heart disease and is not of any significance except it may be confused with an ejection click. It is a sign of right bundle branch block (RBBB).

Second sound. The splitting of second sound is easier to appreciate because the two components (aortic A_2 and pulmonary P_2) are widely separated. Aortic component (A_2) is louder and audible in all the areas while pulmonary component (P_2) is normally audible in the pulmonary area and for a short distance down the left sternal edge. When P_2 is loud, then it becomes also audible over a wider area of the precordium.

Note: Normal splitting of the second sound is best heard at and close to the pulmonary area i.e. 2nd left interspace close to the sternum.

Normally P_2 follows A_2 (physiological splitting); is widest during inspiration and narrowest in expiration. The normal and pathological splitting are depicted in Figure 11.30 and causes of pathological splitting are given in the Table 11.11.

Table 11.11: Normal and pathological splitting of second heart sound

Splitting	Diagram (Fig. 11.30)	Cause (s)
Normal or physiological split widens in inspiration and narrows in expiration	<p>Normal splitting</p>	Seen in normal individuals. A single sound (S_2) in inspiration is normal in adults.
Fixed splitting of second heart sound. The splitting does not change during inspiration and expiration.	<p>Wide and fixed splitting</p>	Wide and fixed splitting is characteristic of atrial septal defect (ASD)
	<p>Narrow splitting</p>	Wide but not fixed splitting occurs in right ventricular hypertrophy due to pulmonary stenosis and right bundle branch block.
Reversed or paradoxical splitting (e.g. splitting occurs maximally in expiration and decreases during inspiration. Even in inspiration, splitting is so narrow that it may appear as single S_2 as shown in diagram)	<p>Paradoxical splitting</p>	In pulmonary hypertension, splitting may be normal, narrow or wide, depending on its cause and pulmonary vascular resistance. Reversed splitting occurs in left ventricular outflow obstruction, a large aorto-pulmonary shunt, systolic hypertension, left bundle branch block.

The third heart sound (S₃). The third heart sound is pathological after the age of 40 years. Its presence usually indicates impairment of LV function, AV valve regurgitation (MR or TR) or other conditions that increase the rate or volume of ventricular filling. It is often associated with heart failure and disappears with its treatment. The *triple or gallop rhythm* is the term used for the presence of S₁, S₂ and S₃ in a patient with congestive heart failure associated with tachycardia. It is so called because it is said to resemble the sound of a galloping horse. The causes of third heart sound are given in the Box 11.13.

Box 11.13: CAUSES OF THIRD HEART SOUNDS	
Physiological	Pathological
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Healthy young adults • Athletes • Pregnancy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHF • Large poorly contracting left ventricle • Fever • Mitral regurgitation.

The third heart sound may originate from the left side (rapid left ventricular filling in MR or LVF), is best heard at the apex while right-sided S₃ originating from RVF or TR is heard at left sternal border with the bell of stethoscope.

The fourth heart sound (S₄). It is a low pitched sound, produced by forceful atrial contractions during presystole, is best heard with bell of stethoscope. The sound is absent in atrial fibrillation. The S₄ is pathological, occurs when there is increased resistance to ventricular filling forcing the atria to contract forcibly, hence, it is present in patients with hypertension, aortic stenosis, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, IHD and acute mitral regurgitation. Most patients with an acute MI and sinus rhythm have an audible S₄. The right-sided S₄ is present in right ventricular hypertrophy secondary to pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary hypertension and accompanies a prominent 'a' wave of jugular venous pulse.

Added sounds (Fig. 11.31)

These have to be distinguished from normal heart sounds described above.

Ejection clicks (Fig. 11.31B): These are high pitched sounds occurring in early systole and closely follow the first heart sound, occur in the presence of semilunar valve stenosis or dilatation of aorta or pulmonary artery. (see the Box 11.14) Remember, the click will become absent in aortic stenosis if valve is calcified (calcific aortic stenosis) because the cusps become rigid and non pliable.

Box 11.14: CAUSES OF EJECTION CLICKS	
Aortic	Pulmonary
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aortic stenosis • Aortic regurgitation • Dilatation of aorta • Site. It is best heard at apex or second right intercostal space just near to sternum (aortic area) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulmonary stenosis • Pulmonary regurgitation • Idiopathic dilatation of pulmonary artery • Site. It is heard in second left interspace or upper left sternal border (pulmonary area).

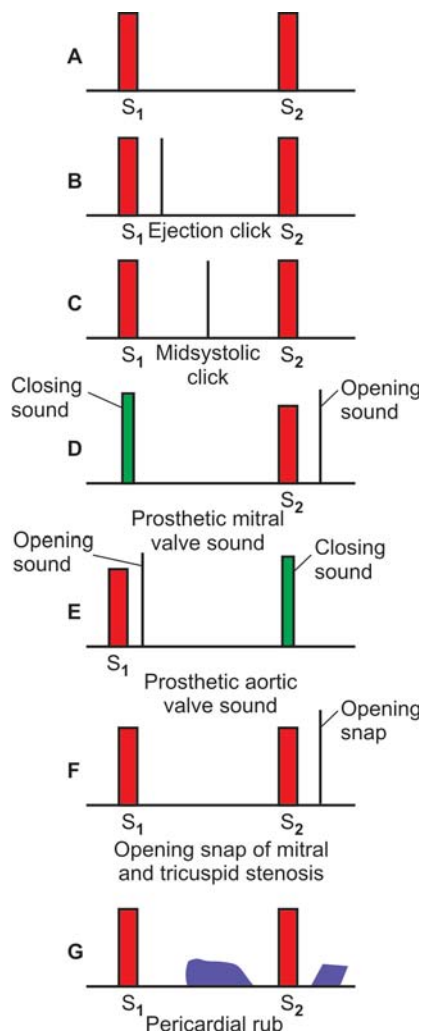
Non-ejection or midsystolic clicks (Fig. 11.32C): They occur late in systole with or without late systolic murmur; often denote prolapse of one or both leaflets of the mitral valve (*MVP—click murmur syndrome*). They may also occur in tricuspid valve prolapse. They probably result from prolapse of mitral or tricuspid valve due to redundant chordae tendinae which are functionally abnormal. Systolic clicks may be single or multiple. These clicks are high pitched sounds best heard either at the apex or along the lower left sternal border and are influenced by certain manoeuvres which have been already discussed.

Metallic sounds: These are high pitched sounds produced by mechanical heart valves both during closing and opening. They are commonly palpable and often audible without a stethoscope. A mechanical mitral valve replacement makes a metallic first heart sound and a sound like a loud opening snap (Fig. 11.31D); mechanical aortic valves produce loud, metallic heart sounds, and an opening sound like an ejection click (Fig. 11.31E). They are associated with a flow murmur.

Opening snap (OS). It is a brief, high pitched, early diastolic sound which is usually due to stenosis of mitral valve and rarely tricuspid valve (Fig. 11.31F). It is best heard at the apex or left sternal border in case of mitral stenosis. It is produced by restricted opening of stenosed valve. It only occurs when the valve is stenosed but mobile, hence, is likely to disappear in calcific or fenestrated valve.

Opening snaps occur in early diastole, just after the second heart sound (S₂). A₂-OS interval is inversely proportional to severity of mitral stenosis i.e. the near the OS to second heart sound, the severe is the stenosis.

Pericardial rub (knock): It is high pitched superficial scratching sound having both systolic and diastolic components (Fig. 11.31G), is best heard at the left sternal border with the diaphragm of the stethoscope with the patient sitting and leaning forward during expiration. It is a characteristic sign of acute pericarditis. Like the pericarditis, its intensity may alter from time to time as well as with the position the patient.



Figs 31A to G: Added sounds on cardiac auscultation

It is intermittent, occurs due to sudden stretching of adherent pericardium during early diastole.

A *pericardial rub* has to be distinguished from *pleuropericardial rub*. In both, the sounds coincide with the cardiac cycle but the pleuropericardial rub is also influenced by respiration and is pleural in origin.

Murmurs

As already discussed in the beginning of this chapter that murmurs arise flow due to turbulent flow across a narrowed valve or rapid large flow across a normal valve or across an abnormal communication within the

heart. It follows that loudness of a murmur depends on the size of the orifice or defect, i.e. smaller the orifice or defect, the louder is the murmur. In large orifices such as large VSD, MR or AR, the murmurs are soft. Therefore, one should not make deductions about the importance of the murmur from its loudness.

Not all murmurs are produced by a structural heart disease, some of them may arise due to abnormal rapid flow across a normal valve. These are called *flow murmurs*. These are benign in nature. Their characteristics have already been discussed (Read innocent murmurs).

Flow murmurs are most commonly seen in children, young adults, athletes and in the elderly. They also occur in high output states.

Mammary souffle. Many women have a murmur heard both in systole and diastole during late pregnancy and during lactation. These are secondary to increased blood flow in their breasts. It can be heard over the breast but is best heard in the 2nd and 3rd interspace on either side of the sternum.

Venous hum. These are continuous murmur heard both in systole and diastole, soft in character, heard above the medial third of clavicle. They arise from the jugular veins commonly in children and young adults, hence, can be obliterated by pressure on the jugular veins.

Arterial bruits Murmurs occurring at the site of arterial occlusion are called *bruits*.

Points to be noted about the murmur have already seen listed in the Box 11.1.

The classification of murmurs (Figs 11.32A to H)

1. Systolic

- Ejection systolic
- Midsystolic
- Pansystolic
- Late systolic

2. Diastolic

- Early diastolic
- Mid-diastolic

3. Continuous, i.e. both systolic and diastolic

Causes. The causes of various types of murmurs are tabulated (Table 11.12).

Table 11.12: Causes of murmurs

I. Systolic murmurs**A. Ejection systolic (Fig. 11.32A)**(a) *Normal or reduced flow through stenotic valve*

- Aortic valvular stenosis
- Pulmonary valvular stenosis

(b) *Abnormal rapid flow through normal valves (innocent flow murmurs)*

- Fever
- Athletes
- Pregnancy
- High cardiac output states, e.g. beriberi, thyrotoxicosis, Paget's disease, AV fistula, etc.
- Atrial septal defect (pulmonary flow murmur)

(c) *Other causes*

- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (obstruction of left ventricular outflow—subvalvular stenosis)
- Acute aortic regurgitation (aortic flow murmur)

B. Midsystolic murmur (Fig. 11.32B)

- Mitral valve prolapse. There is associated midsystolic click.

C. Pansystolic (Fig. 11.32C)

These are caused by a systolic leak from a high to lower pressure chamber

- Mitral regurgitation
- Tricuspid regurgitation
- Ventricular septal defect
- Leaking mitral or tricuspid prosthesis
- Mitral valve prolapse
- Rupture of cordae tendinae in acute MI

D. Late systolic murmur (Fig. 11.32D)

- Papillary muscle dysfunction

II. Diastolic murmurs**A. Early diastolic (Fig. 11.32E)**

- Aortic regurgitation
- Pulmonary regurgitation (Graham-steele's murmur)

B. Mid-diastolic (Fig. 11.32F)

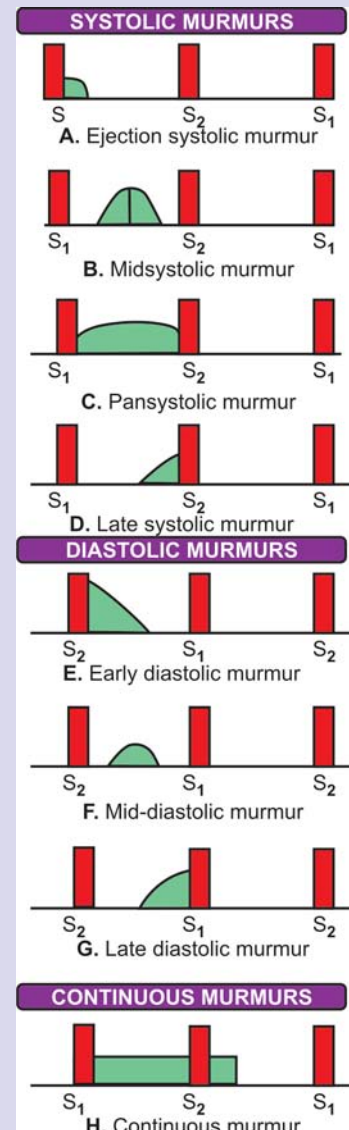
- Mitral stenosis
- Tricuspid stenosis
- Austin Flint murmur of functional mitral stenosis caused by a jet of blood in aortic regurgitation.
- Carrey—Comb's murmur of mitral valvulitis.

C. Late diastolic or presystolic (Fig. 11.32G)

- Presystolic murmur may be heard in mild MS, while presystolic accentuation of MDM indicates moderate to severe MS

III. Continuous murmur (Fig. 11.32H)

- PDA
- Aortopulmonary window
- Rupture of sinus of Valsalva into right atrium
- Coronary arteriovenous fistula



Figs 11.32A to H: Classification of murmurs

Investigations for a case with cardiovascular disease

1. Conventional procedures

- Electrocardiogram (ECG)
- Chest X-ray and fluoroscopy
- Echocardiogram and colour doppler study.

2. Specialised procedures

- Nuclear scanning
- Computerised tomography (CT)
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

Electrocardiography

It is defined as recording of electrical potentials generated in the heart on a paper with the help of a machine. The fundamental basis of ECG is that electrical activation of heart muscle causes its depolarization, which is propagated along the length of whole muscle fibre or adjoining cells. This wave of depolarization passes through the heart and sets up electrical currents/potentials which are detected by surface electrodes, which are amplified and displayed as waveforms on the electrocardiogram. Depolarization is followed by a wave of repolarization, therefore, each lead of ECG represents summation of depolarization and repolarization across the heart.

Standard 12-lead electrocardiogram

The standard 12-leads consists of

I. Frontal plane leads

- Leads I, II, III, called 'Limb leads'.
- Leads aVR, aVL, aVF, called 'Augmented limb leads'.

II. Horizontal plane leads

- Leads V_1 - V_6 are called 'Chest leads'

These reflect electrical activation of the heart from various positions in the horizontal plane.

The electrocardiographic symbols and abbreviations used are depicted in Figure 11.33, showing an ECG complex.



Fig. 11.33: An ECG complex

Pathway of electrical activation of the heart (Fig. 11.34)

Normally, SA node is the pacemaker that generates a wave of excitation. It has an intrinsic property to

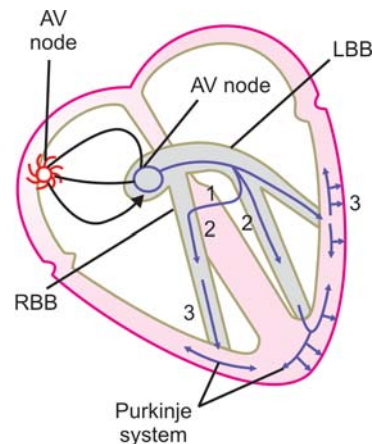


Fig. 11.34: Electrical excitation of heart by passage of an impulse from SA node to AV node through internodal of pathways. 1. Septal activation from left to right 2. Ventricular excitation through bundle branches 3. Ventricular depolarisation through Purkinje system

produce it, the mechanism of which is not known. This wave of excitation is not recorded on ECG. The wave of excitation (depolarization) then spreads to atria through internodal conduction pathways producing an upright 'P' wave in all leads except aVR (P wave is negative). From atria, it reaches AV node where slight normal delay occurs and conduction through AV node is slow. It then rapidly goes to *bundle of His*, travels through its right and left branches to reach ventricles, which are activated to produce QRS complex in all the leads. The time taken by the wave to reach AV node from atria is called *P-R interval*. The QRS complex is dominated by 'R' wave, which is an actual ventricular depolarization wave of left ventricle. 'S' wave of QRS complex is produced when depolarization wave, after activating the septum and ventricles, gets deflected to basal part of left ventricle producing its activation. Therefore it will be seen dominantly in those leads which are not facing (away from) the depolarization wave. The leads are I and aVR where 'S' wave is prominent. The frontal plane QRS axis is the mean frontal plane vector of QRS and is determined roughly by seeing which frontal plane leads (I, II, III, aVR, aVL, aVF) have the biggest 'R' wave. Normally, it lies between 0° - 90° . The axis is determined as follows:

0° = 'R' wave is largest in lead I with smallest 'S' wave. The aVF shows a small complex or an equiphasic complex.

90° = 'R' wave is largest in lead aVF with smallest 'S' wave. The lead I shows a small complex or an equiphasic (RS) complex.

In left axis deviation the QRS complex is upright in lead I and negative in lead III and by placing the lead III below lead I, the complexes of leads drift apart from each other.

Conventions used in ECG. These are given in the Box 11.15.

Box 11.15:	ECG CONVENTIONS
•	Upright wave means positive deflection from baseline, e.g., the P, R and T waves are positive
•	Downward wave means negative deflection from baseline e.g. the Q and S waves
•	If a wave in QRS complex is, > 5 mm in any lead, it is written in capital letters i.e. QRS while less than 5 mm is written as small letters i.e., qrs.
•	Standardisation or sensitivity is 10 mm = 1 mV.
•	Paper speed = 25 mm second
•	Each small square = 1 mm = 0.04 sec.
•	Each large square = 5 mm = 0.2 sec.

Calculation of heart rate on ECG

It is calculated as follows:

$$\text{HR / minute} = \frac{1500}{\text{R - R interval (mm) in any lead}}$$

For example, if Rb - R is 20 mm, then
HR/min is $1500 \div 20 = 75/\text{min}$.

Indications of ECG

It is useful in following situations:

1. Atrial and/or ventricular hypertrophy
2. Myocardial ischaemia and infarction. The success of thrombolytic therapy for acute myocardial infarction is governed by it
3. Diagnosis and management of cardiac arrhythmias and conduction defects. It is a gold standard test.
4. Myocardial and pericardial diseases, e.g. myocarditis, pericarditis
5. Effects of drugs, electrolytes and poisons on the heart.
6. Detection of efficiency of various cardiac intervention procedures e.g. angioplasty, bypass surgery
7. More advanced ECG technology include stress ECG to diagnose asymptomatic coronary artery disease. Holter monitoring is used to relate symptoms to ECG. Signal-average ECG is used to determine the prognosis of arrhythmias.
8. For pacemaker functioning/dysfunctioning.

Normal and abnormal ECGs: Normal ECG is depicted in Figure 11.35. For ECG abnormalities—Read Bedside Medicine by Prof. SN Chugh.

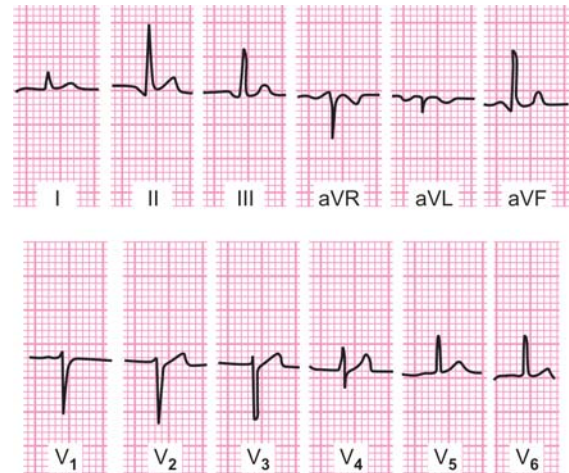


Fig. 11.35: Normal ECG

Stress (Exercise) Electrocardiography

Unfortunately, the diagnosis of ischaemic heart disease is often difficult to establish especially in those patients who are asymptomatic for the disease, and in those who have atypical chest pain associated with normal resting ECG. In such a situation, early diagnosis is mandatory to plan medical versus surgical therapy before permanent damage occurs.

Types of stress tests

- Exercise tests
- Pharmacological stress tests, e.g. adenosine, dipyridamole and dobutamine. These tests are done when exercise test is not feasible due to disability or due to some other reason.

Stress (exercise) test is a noninvasive method to evaluate myocardial function. It has become popular in early detection of ischaemic heart disease but its major drawback is its higher *false-positive* and *false-negative* results. Since, it is simple and safe method of study, it can be repeated to assess the functional progress of the heart disease as well as to judge the efficacy of therapy. The indications and contraindications are given in the Table 11.13.

Method

A 12 lead ECG is recorded during exercise on a treadmill (Fig. 11.36) or bicycle. The limb leads are placed on the shoulders and hips rather than the wrist and ankles. The most frequent protocol used for treadmill test is *Bruce protocol* which employs a relatively higher initial

workload with greater subsequent work increments. The subject starts at 1.7 mph speed on a 10% incline (gradient). Bruce protocol is given in the Box 11.16.

Box 11.16: BROUCE PROTOCOL FOR TREADMILL		
Stage	Speed (mph)	Gradient (% incline)
1	1.7	10
2	2.5	12
3	3.4	14
4	4.2	16
5	5.0	18

Note : Each stage lasts for 3 minutes

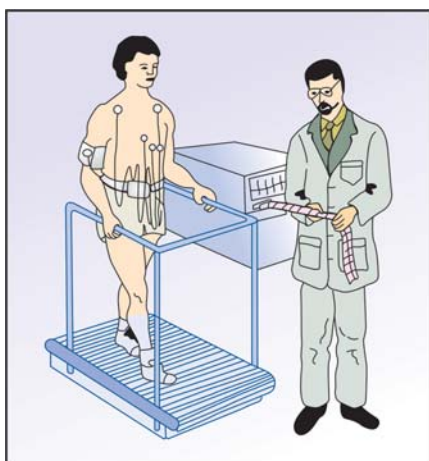


Fig. 11.36: Exercise treadmill test

Table 11.13: Indications and contraindications of stress (exercise) testing

Indications	Contraindications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To confirm the diagnosis of angina To evaluate stable angina and post-myocardial angina. To assess prognosis following myocardial infarction. To test effectiveness of coronary revascularisation e.g. coronary angioplasty and bypass surgery To diagnose and evaluate the treatment of exercise induced arrhythmias 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unstable angina with recent chest pain. Advanced AV blocks Uncontrolled hypertension Severe congestive heart failure Left main coronary artery disease. Severe aortic stenosis Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy Acute associated disease e.g. systemic illness, pulmonary or renal insufficiency, diabetes or thyrotoxicosis Ventricular aneurysm.

Result of stress test

- Normal exercise electrocardiogram:** When heart rate increases during exercise, certain predictable changes occur in normal ECG. The P-R, QRS and QT intervals shorten, the P wave becomes taller and atrial depolarization wave (Ta wave) becomes prominent causing depression of PR segment. This results in depression of J point for a short period of 0.04 sec. The normal ST segment with exercise is upsloping and slightly convex in form and returns to baseline within 0.04 to 0.06 sec. after J point.
- Abnormal or positive test (Fig. 11.37):** The test is said to be positive for provokable ischaemia when there is depression of J point >1 mm with horizontal ST segment ≥ 1 mm persisting for 0.08 sec (two small squares) from the J point in three successive beats.

End points for termination of stress tests. Exercise tests are terminated when the patient develops symptoms and signs of myocardial ischaemia as given in the Table 11.14.

Table 11.14: Indications for termination of the stress test

I. Symptoms and Signs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anginal pain Dyspnoea Dizziness/syncope Unsteady gait 	III. Abnormal ECG <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal ST segment depression (≥ 1 mm) or elevation (≥ 1 mm) in non-q wave leads Hypotension in presence of pain or abnormal ECG.
II. Arrhythmias e.g. bradyarrhythmias and tachyarrhythmias e.g. multiform VPCs or VT	IV. Blood pressure abnormalities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Systolic BP >250 mmHg Hypotension V. Heart rate e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreasing heart rate.

Pitfalls

The results of an exercise test are inconclusive due to false negative and false positive results. Exercise testing is an unreliable screening method because in low-risk population (e.g. asymptomatic middle aged women) an abnormal response is more likely to represent a false positive than a true positive test. Nevertheless, certain findings on exercise testing are predictive of severe underlying disease called high risk change (see the Box 11.17).

Box 11.17: HIGH RISK FINDING ON STRESS ECG

- Low threshold of ischaemia, e.g. ischaemic changes appear within stage 1 or 2 of Bruce protocol.
- Fall in BP on exercise
- Widespread, marked or prolonged ischaemic ECG changes
- Exercise induced arrhythmias.

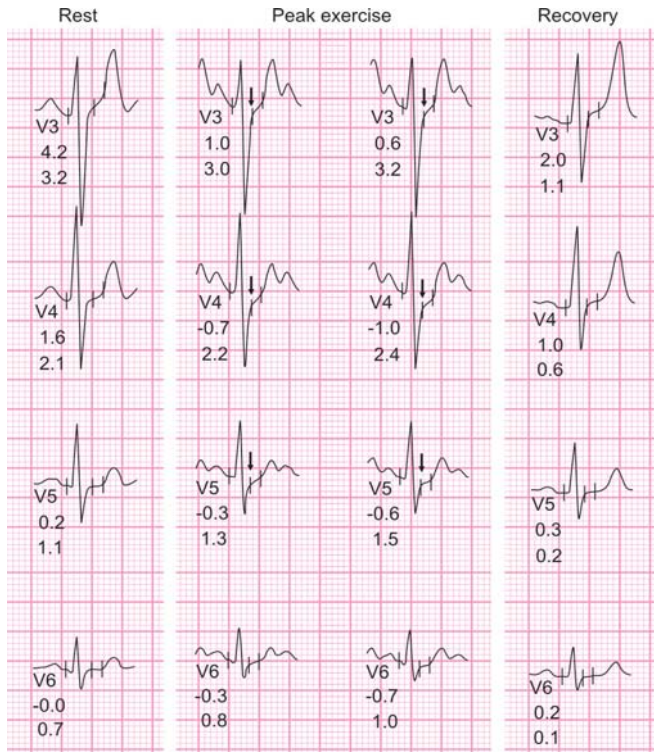


Fig. 11.37: Positive stress test (Leads V₃–V₆ depicted). Resting ECG is normal. The ECG during exercise showed depression of J-point and ST segments > 2 mm staying for > 80 msec (25 small squares) which reverses during the recovery period

Continuous ambulatory electrocardiographic recording (Holter monitoring)

Continuous ambulatory ECG recording (Holter monitoring) is a method of recording one or more leads of ECG for extended period of time (24 hr Holter monitoring) by attaching a small *portable solid state tape recorder* to the patient (Fig. 11.38). This technique is

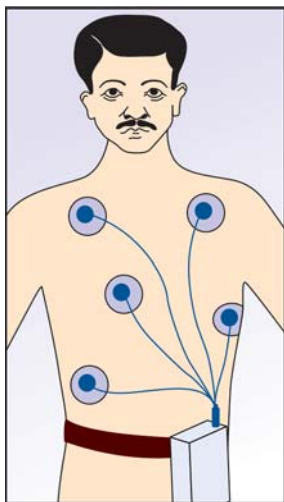


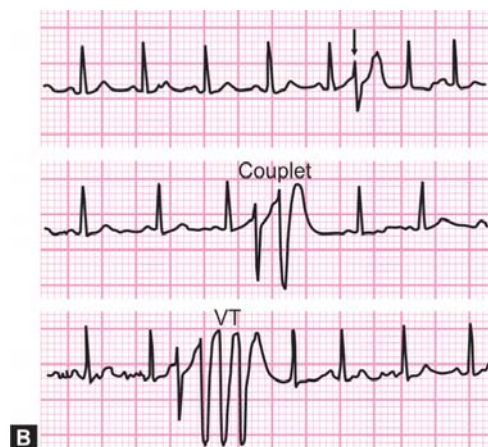
Fig. 11.38: Holter monitoring. Placement of electrodes on the body surface for continuous recording of one or two leads of ECG over a period of hours (24 hr) or days

useful because ECG is recorded when patient is up and about performing normal activities. It is especially useful for detecting transient episodes of arrhythmias or ischaemia which are likely to be missed on 12-lead routine ECG recording (Fig. 11.39).



A

Top strip shows sinus rhythm with normal AV conduction
Second strip shows sinoatrial block and third strip also shows second degree SA block – both these episodes were asymptomatic.
Bottom strip shows a ventricular extrasystole followed by complete heart block with ventricular standstill. The patient lost consciousness due to this Stokes-Adams attack.



B

Samples from three separate 24-hour records made at weekly intervals

Top strip shows sinus rhythm with an ectopic (↓)
Second record shows a couplet (pair) of ventricular extrasystoles (no symptoms noted)
Third record shows a short run of ventricular tachycardia, which corresponded to the patient's complaint of palpitations.

Figs 11.39A and B: Holter's monitoring. A. From a patient with Stokes-Adams attacks B. From another symptomatic patient of syncope

A variety of hand-held or implantable patient—activated devices are available to record the ECG during symptomatic episodes (*called event-recorders*). These are suitable for investigating those patients who have infrequent but potentially serious symptoms. Many of these devices also have the facility to transmit ECG recording to a cardiac centre through the telephone.

Chest X-ray

A postero-anterior (PA) chest X-ray renders most informations regarding the size and shape of the heart, state of pulmonary vasculature and lung fields. Antero-posterior (AP) chest X-ray is not preferred because it magnifies the cardiac shadow by divergence of radiographic beam and may give false impression of cardiomegaly when it does not exist. It is done only in bed-ridden patients.

An estimate of heart size is determined by 'cardio-thoracic ratio', which is ratio of the heart size to the maximum transthoracic diameter.

The cardiothoracic ratio >0.5 ($> 50\%$) indicates cardiomegaly.

The normal cardiac shadow/silhouette

In standard PA view of the chest (Fig. 11.40), the heart is interposed between two translucent lungs as a flask-shaped shadow with one third of its area to the right and two-thirds to the left of the midline. The apex is internal to the mid-line.

The *right border* of normal heart shadow is constituted by two curves from above downwards:

- (i) The upper curved portion consists of superior vena cava with ascending aorta.
- (ii) The lower convex portion consists of right atrium the lower margin of which lies on the diaphragm.

The left border is constituted from above downwards by;

- (i) Aortic knuckle produced by arch of the aorta
- (ii) Straight line of the pulmonary conus (pulmonary artery)
- (iii) Left atrial appendage
- (iv) The wide sweep of the left ventricle ending as apex where it rests on the diaphragm.

Indications of chest X-ray

- (i) The overpenetrated PA film can visualize the left atrium very well if enlarged and aorta is particularly seen for calcification. Calcification of pericardium as well as of the valves can also be better seen.
- (ii) The right lateral view is of value in localizing right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH) when the anteriorly placed right ventricle is seen closer to the sternum than normal.
- (iii) For detection of common alterations in diseases of heart such as;

(a) Displacement of the heart in the chest.

- To the opposite side, i.e. pleural effusion, pneumothorax
- Shift to the same side abnormally, i.e. collapse of the lung, atelectasis, fibrosis and removal of a part or whole lung. In scoliosis, the heart is shifted to the left with convexity towards right.
- In narrow chests and in patients with COPD, the heart lies centrally and seems smaller and tubular.

(b) Abnormal shape and size of the heart.

- (i) Cardiomegaly (heart is enlarged and shadow is enlarged)
 - Valvular heart disease such as aortic, mitral (mitralised heart), pulmonary and tricuspid valves diseases.
 - Hypertension
 - Dilated cardiomyopathy, myocarditis
 - Ventricular aneurysm
- (ii) No cardiomegaly but heart shadow is enlarged
 - Pericarditis with effusion or cardiac tamponade
 - Cardiac rupture.

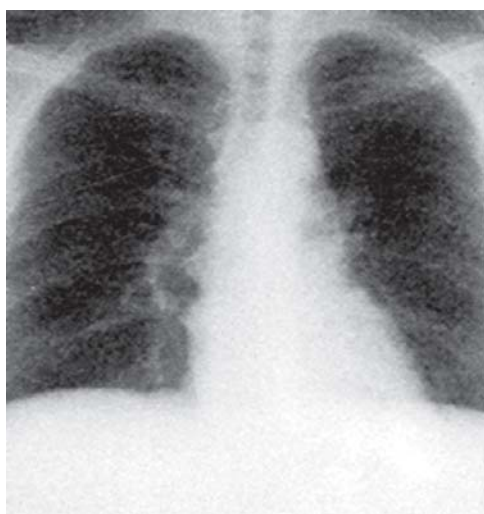


Fig. 11.40: Normal cardiac shadow on chest X-ray (PA view)

- Secondaries in pericardium
- Mediastinal obstruction leading to widening of heart shadow by widening the mediastinum.

Dilatation of individual cardiac chamber can be assessed by the alterations they cause to the cardiac silhouette (heart shadow).

- Left atrial enlargement results in prominence of shadow of left atrial appendage on the left border of heart and a double cardiac shadow to the right of sternum. These changes are characteristically seen in patients with mitral stenosis (read mitral stenosis in bed-side Medicine by Prof. SN Chugh)
- Right atrial enlargement produces prominence and enlargement of right border of the heart towards right lower lung field.
- Left ventricular dilatation causes prominence of left border of heart and enlargement of cardiac shadow (Fig. 11.41).
- Right ventricular dilatation increases heart size and displaces the apex upwards.

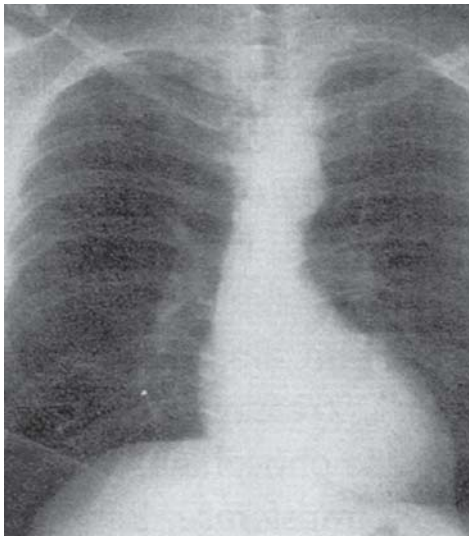


Fig. 11.41: Left ventricular enlargement. Note the boot shaped heart

- (iv) Detection of abnormalities of shape and size of great vessels and pulmonary vasculature.

(a) Aorta

- *Dilatation of ascending aorta* occurs due to Marfan's syndrome, cystic medial necrosis, aneurysm of aorta, syphilis, atherosclerosis and acute dilatation occurs in aortic dissection. Post-stenotic dilatation is seen in severe aortic stenosis,
- Unfolding of aorta (both ascending and descending aorta may be involved) is seen in patients with hypertension and old age.

- (b) *Prominent superior vena cava shadow*: It is seen in the upper part of right border of the heart in patients with;
- Right ventricular failure.
 - Superior vena cava obstruction.
- (c) *Prominent pulmonary artery (conus)*. The enlargement of pulmonary artery causes prominence of pulmonary conus in patients with
- Pulmonary hypertension due to any cause
 - Post-stenotic dilatation in pulmonary stenosis
 - Idiopathic dilatation of pulmonary artery.
- (d) *Prominent pulmonary vasculature*. The pulmonary vasculature becomes prominent in raised left atrial pressure producing congestion in the lungs characterized by:
- Prominent hilar shadows
 - Kerley's B lines. These are short horizontal lines extending out to the lung edges or the bases of lung
 - Prominence of upper lobe veins
 - Interstitial pulmonary shadowing either as diffuse haziness or a bat-wing appearance of acute severe pulmonary oedema (haziness from hilum extending towards periphery).
- (e) *Pulmonary plethora*. The main branches of the pulmonary arteries are dilated and engorged. This occurs in;
- Left to right shunt (e.g. ASD, VSD, PDA). This is best seen on fluoroscopy (screening) discussed below.
- (f) *Pulmonary oligoemia*. The pulmonary vasculature is inconspicuous in;
- COPD where there is pruning of peripheral vessels due to compression by the hyperinflated alveoli.
 - Fallot's tetralogy.

Radiographic findings in heart failure

Characteristic radiological findings are observed on chest X-ray in patients with left heart failure. These are mainly due to elevation of pulmonary venous pressure and interstitial oedema. These are:

1. Abnormal distention of upper lobe pulmonary veins.
2. Vascularity of lung fields is increased and pulmonary artery is dilated.
3. Kerley's 'B' lines become evident at costophrenic angles due to interstitial oedema. These lines represent thickened interalveolar septa and dilated lymphatics.

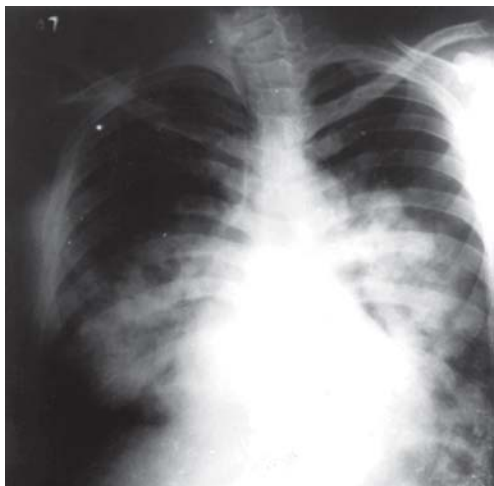


Fig. 11.42: Heart failure. Chest X-ray (PA view) shows enlarged cardiac shadow with nonhomogenous opacification of the lungs from hila to periphery (pulmonary oedema)

4. More advanced cases show non-homogenous opacification spreading from the hilar regions to periphery (Fig. 11.42).

5. There may be interlobar effusion and hydrothorax.

The abnormal cardiac conditions and their radiological features have been discussed in bedside medicine by Prof. SN Chugh.

Fluoroscopy for hilar dance

Hilar dance is a radiological finding seen in congenital heart disease with moderate left to right shunt. Pulmonary vascular markings are prominent and pulmonary artery is dilated. Pulmonary arteries show increased pulsations from hilum to periphery which can easily be seen on fluoroscopy of chest. This is due to increased blood flow through pulmonary vessels.

Screening of the heart is primarily of value in visualising the calcification and in detecting a left ventricular aneurysm.

Echocardiography

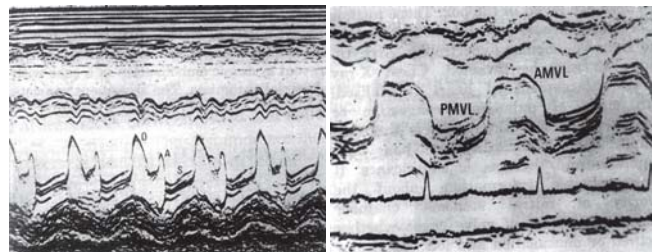
Echocardiography is ultrasound imaging of heart and great vessels. Ultrasound is reflected at interfaces between blood and solid tissues because velocity of sound is constant in body tissues. These sounds are then gathered and they collectively give the anatomical dimensions of the structure to be studied. Therefore, it is useful in studying the blood flow, the structure of the heart and movements of valves and cardiac muscles. It is done by placing a transducer on the chest which

passes sounds and collects the reflected sounds which are displayed and studied.

Type of studies

Three types of study are performed

1. **M-mode echocardiography:** A single transducer along a single line provides an 'ice pick' view of heart. The ECG is recorded simultaneously permits accurate measurement of the timings of cardiac events including opening and closing of valves. Characteristic patterns are seen in mitral stenosis and pericardial effusion (Fig. 11.43).

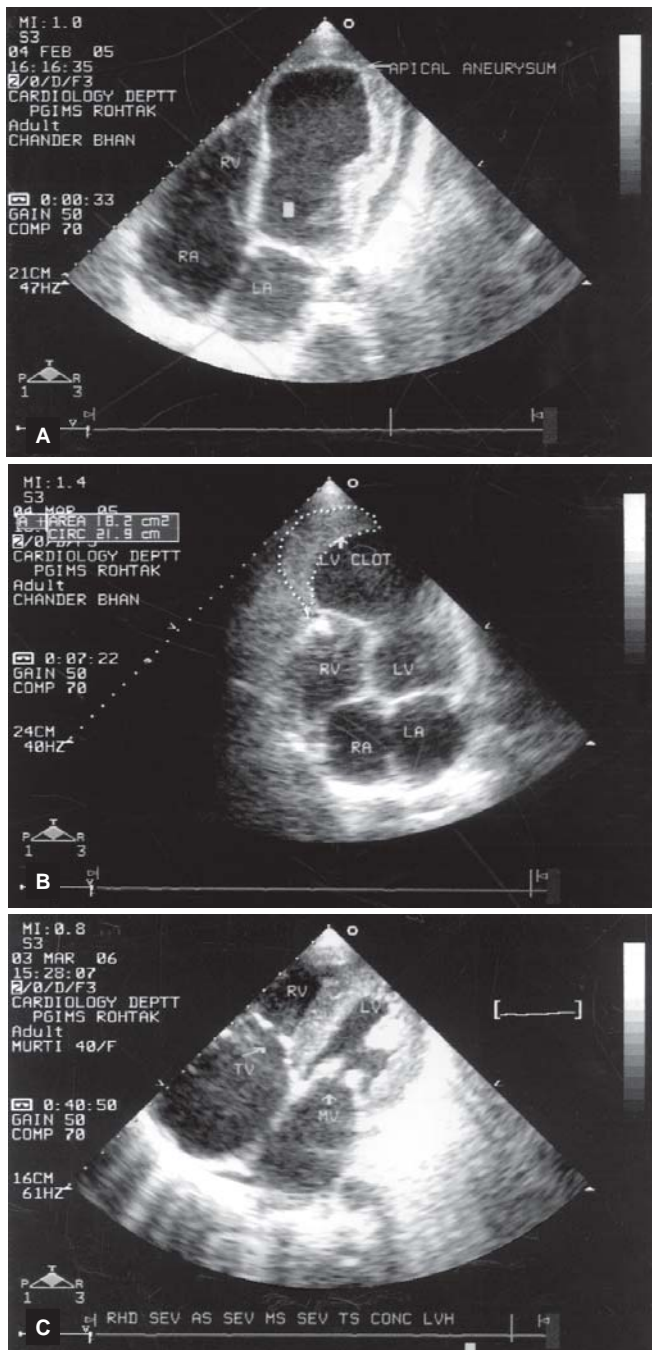


Pericardial effusion

Mitral stenosis

Fig. 11.43: Echocardiogram

2. **Two-dimensional echocardiography:** It produces an image in two distant dimensions by swinging the ultrasound beam rapidly back and forth over an area or sector. The information is collected and displayed on a television screen and it can be synthesized into two dimensional map also. The structures shown will depend on the position and orientation of the ultrasound probe. This type of echocardiography is practically helpful in detecting an aneurysm (Fig. 11.44A), intra-cardiac masses such as clots, thrombus (Fig. 11.44B), tumour or vegetations, etc. It is specially useful in congenital heart diseases such as atrial septal defects, ventricular septal defects (Fig. 11.44C) etc.
3. **Doppler echocardiography:** The basic principle of Doppler studies is that sound waves reflected from moving objects such as RBCs in blood, undergo frequency shift. The speed and direction of movement of RBCs in blood can be detected in the heart chambers and great blood vessels. The information is presented as a colour overlay on a two dimensional real time echo picture (colour flow Doppler). It is useful to detect abnormal direction of flow of blood through valves (aortic and mitral regurgitation; Fig. 11.45), through septal defects (ASD, VSD) and in measuring pressure gradient across a stenosed valve.



Figs 11.44A to C: Two dimensional echocardiogram. The four chamber view shows; A. An apical aneurysm, B. A ventricular clot, C. Ventricular septal defect

Radionuclide scanning

This is a noninvasive technique to study the cardiac functions by using a gamma-emitting radionuclides with a short half-life. The gamma rays are detected by means of a scanner or a tomographic camera that permits the images of the heart to be reconstituted. There are two techniques.

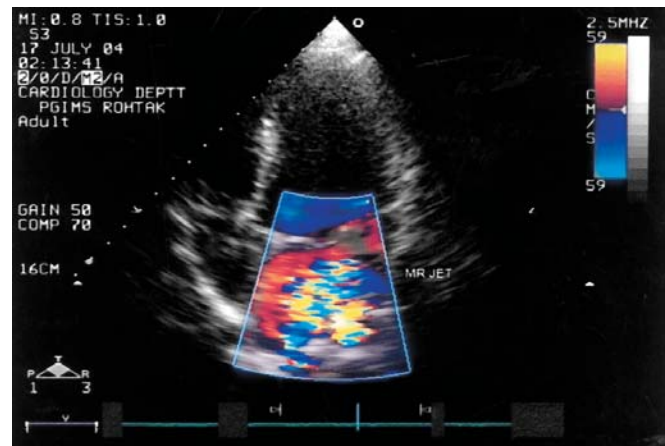


Fig. 11.45: Colour doppler study showing regurgitant jet across mitral valve in mitral regurgitation (MR)

1. **Blood pool scanning:** The isotope is injected intravenously and mixes with the blood. The gamma camera detects the amount of isotope emitting blood in the heart at different phases of cardiac cycle and also the size and shape of cardiac chambers. By linking gamma camera to the ECG, information over multiple cardiac cycles are collected and then 'gated' to the systolic and diastolic phases of the cardiac cycle. This type of scanning gives an accurate information of left ventricular functions. It is most useful to detect ventricular aneurysms.
2. **Myocardial scanning:** This technique uses gamma camera scintigraphy. Radioactive thallium or tracers are used to distinguish ischaemic from non-ischaemic myocardium. Radioactive pyrophosphate is used to distinguish between normal and infarcted segment.

Invasive cardiac investigations

Cardiac catheterisation and angiocardiology

This is an invasive investigation in which a catheter is introduced through a vein or an artery and manipulated through the heart under fluoroscopic guidance. Cardiac catheterisation is used for this purpose. The indications and contraindications of cardiac catheterisation and angiography are given in the Table 11.15.

Coronary angiography

It is a procedure of opacification of the coronary arteries by injecting a radio-opaque material through a catheter which is passed either through the brachial or femoral artery (a common route). These catheters are preshaped, hence, entry to the coronary vessel is easy. Generally Judkin's catheters are used for coronary angiography.

Indications. These are given in the Table 11.16.

Table 11.15: Indications, contraindication and complications of cardiac catheterization and angiography

Indications	Contraindications
A. Diagnostic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To study cardiovascular anatomy in patients with congenital or acquired heart disease. To study intracardiac/intravascular pressures and to measure flow e.g. cardiac output and regional blood flow To determine gradient across a valve and to identify and quantify valvular regurgitation To assess ventricular function To perform coronary angiography A swan-ganz catheter is used in ICU to monitor pulmonary capillary wedge pressure To perform endomyocardial biopsy B. Therapeutic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For administration of thrombolytic agents For selective therapeutic embolisation of vessels For performing balloon dilatation (valvular or vascular) or related procedures e.g. stenting For cardiac pacing (temporary or permanent) For nonsurgical closure of ASD, VSD, PDA For nonsurgical destruction of foci of cardiac arrhythmias and pathways of aberrant conduction in patient with re-entrant arrhythmias 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refusal of the study by the patient Ventricular instability with risk of VT or VF Electrolyte disturbances Digitalis toxicity Severe systemic hypertension Concurrent systemic illness e.g. systemic infections, pulmonary or renal insufficiency, severe anaemia Gross CHF (untreated) Gross LV dysfunction Complications <p>A. Systemic</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Myocardial infarction Cerebrovascular disease Hypotension and arrhythmias Embolisation (systemic and pulmonary) <p>B. Local</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Arterial damage and perforation of heart and great vessel Vasovagal and pyrogen reactions Local infection

Table 11.16: Indications for coronary angiography

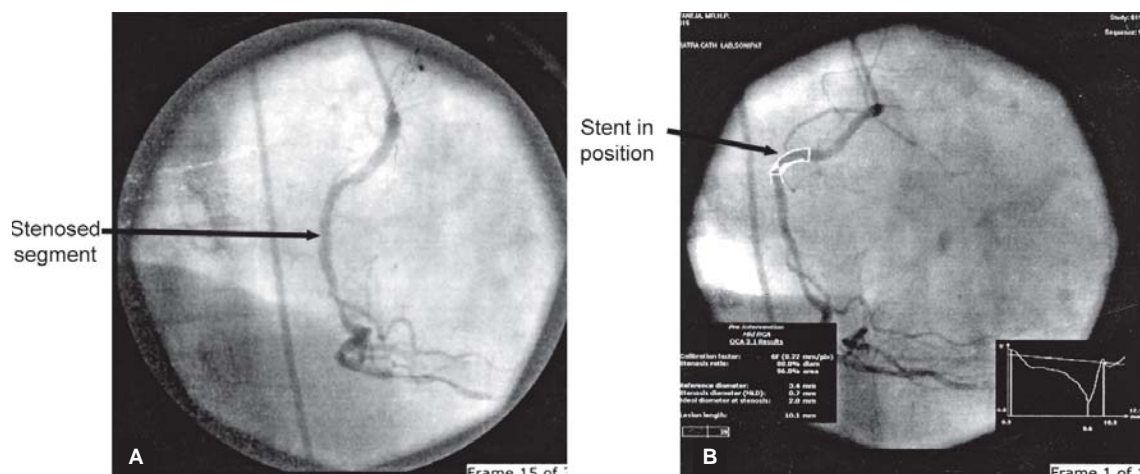
1. Unexplained chest pain with high degree of suspicion of coronary artery disease (Fig. 11.46A and B).
2. To detect the presence, site and severity of coronary artery disease in patients with symptomatic angina.
3. Prior to coronary angioplasty and bypass surgery. It is repeated after angioplasty (stenting done) to study the re-establishment of circulation and for postoperative study of bypass grafts and native circulation.
4. Prior to intracoronary thrombolytic therapy
5. Strongly positive stress test at low level of exercise.
6. Patients with equivocal symptoms, ECG and stress testing but with high risk occupations, e.g. pilots. It is also done to clarify the coronary status for life insurance purpose
7. Patient suspected to have coronary AV fistula.

Contraindications

- Gross CHF
- Uncontrolled cardiac arrhythmias
- Incurable noncardiac disease, renal failure and bleeding diathesis.

Complications

- Myocardial infarction
- Arrhythmias
- Cerebrovascular disease
- Death (incidence is low $\leq 0.1\%$.) It is now-a-days considered as a safe procedure.



Figs 11.46A and B: Coronary angiography in a patient with angina. A. Before angioplasty. There is narrowed segment in one of the branches of coronary artery (→). B. After angioplasty and stenting, the coronary circulation is resumed

PERIPHERAL VASCULAR SYSTEM

Historical background: In developed countries and in people belonging to high socioeconomic status, the peripheral artery disease is common after the age of 60 years. Underlying atherosclerosis involving the large and medium sized arteries is the common cause in majority of the patients. The risk factors for peripheral artery disease include diabetes, smoking, hyperlipidaemia, sedentary habits, hypertension, obesity and familial aggregation. The general history should accordingly focus on the family history of premature arterial disease and on the risk factors associated with atherosclerosis/atheroma. Diabetes is specifically important in this regard. Furthermore, the clinical manifestations of diabetic arterial disease are frequently exacerbated by co-existing peripheral neuropathy and microangiopathy.

About two thirds of patients with clinically detectable peripheral arterial disease (PAD) may be asymptomatic, hence, early diagnosis is mandatory because of following reasons:

1. The initial manifestation of peripheral arterial disease (PAD) may be with life-threatening complication.
2. Evidence of PAD is a marker for premature cardiovascular and cerebrovascular death.
3. The presence of PAD may affect the outcome of medical and surgical treatment for a range of other conditions. For example, betablockers should not be prescribed in patients with PAD as they may precipitate the onset of claudication. Likewise, cardiac surgery (bypass surgery) may lead to stroke in patients with severe but asymptomatic carotid artery stenosis.

Classification

Peripheral arterial disease occurs as a result of any of the following three processes:

- Occlusive arterial disease (commonest type)
- Vasospastic disorders
- Aneurysmal disease.

Occlusive arterial disease

An aetiological classification of occlusive PAD is given in the Table 11.17.

Table 11.17: Aetiological classification of occlusive PAD

I. Acute arterial ischaemia

- A. *Thrombosis* e.g. atherosclerotic obliterans, thromboangitis obliterans (Buerger's disease), arteritis (connective tissue disease, giant cell and Takayasu's arteritis), myeloproliferative diseases (polycythaemia) and hypercoagulable status
- B. *Embolic* e.g. cardiac origin (valvular disease, prosthetic valve, AMI, AF with atrial thrombus, infective endocarditis, cardiomyopathy, left atrial myxoma); atherosclerotic plaques (in aorta or big vessels), trauma and arterial spasm.

II. Chronic arterial disease

- Atherosclerotic obliterans
- Thromboangitis obliterans
- Arteritis e.g. connective tissue disorders, temporal arteritis (giant cell) and Takayasu's disease .
- Miscellaneous e.g. trauma, entrapment, congenital arterial narrowing

Clinical presentations

The PAD may manifest in four major ways;

1. Limb symptoms
2. Neurological symptoms
3. Abdominal symptoms
4. Vasospastic symptoms.

Limb symptoms

A. Lower limb symptoms

- (i) Acute lower limb ischaemia manifests with *pain, paraesthesias, paralysis, pallor, pulselessness* and *perishingly cold limb* (denoted by 6 Ps). There may be pain on squeezing the muscles (calf tenderness). Any one or all of them may be present. Any "*cold limb*" with suspected acutely ischaemia must be discussed immediately with vascular surgeon because a few hours can make the difference between amputation and complete recovery of the limb function. Differentiation of acute embolic from thrombotic occlusion is important (Table 11.18) because treatment and prognosis are different.

B. Chronic ischaemia of limb

- (i) Lower limb symptoms. There are four well defined stages of lower limb ischaemia, i.e.
 - Asymptomatic
 - Intermittent claudication
 - Rest pain
 - Tissue loss (ulceration/gangrene).

Asymptomatic lower limb ischaemia is identified by a reduced ankle brachial pressure index (ABPI). It is

Table 11.18: Acute limb ischaemia (thrombosis vs embolism)

Clinical feature	Embolism (Fig. 11.47)	Thrombosis
1. Onset	Sudden (seconds or minutes)	Hours
2. Severity	Complete (no collaterals)	Incomplete (collaterals)
3. Embolic source	Yes (atrial fibrillation common)	No
4. Previous claudication	Absent	Present
5. Central pulses present	Yes	No
6. Upper limb affected	Commonly (25%) leg: arm (3:1)	Rare Leg: arm (10:1)
7. Palpation of artery	Soft, tender	Hard, calcified
8. Bruits	Absent	Present
9. Contralateral leg pulses	Present	Absent
10. Multiple sites	Upto 15% (sometimes)	Rare
11. Diagnosis	Clinical	Angiography
12. Treatment	Embolectomy, warfarin	Thrombolysis
13. Prognosis	Loss of life > loss of limb	Loss of limb > loss of life

common in middle aged and elderly. Such patients are also at high risk of developing complications.

Intermittent claudication refers to cramp like muscle pain in calf, buttock or thigh on walking which is rapidly relieved by taking rest.

Male patients with gluteal claudication, due to internal iliac disease, are almost invariably impotent. Enquiry into sexual activity should be made if not told by the patient.

The term claudication just denotes pain in the leg on walking, could also be due to neurological and musculoskeletal disorder of the lumbar spine (neurogenic claudication) and due to venous outflow obstruction from the leg (venous claudication). However, all these claudications are much less common than arterial claudication and can easily be distinguished on history and examination (Table 11.19). The questions to be asked for intermittent claudication are given in the Box 11.18.

Box 11.18: QUESTIONNAIRE FOR INTERMITTENT CLAUDICATION

- Have you ever had any pain or cramping in your legs on walking or exercise?
- How far can you walk without pain?
- Does the pain get better with rest ?
- Ask also about coldness, numbness, or pallor in the legs or feet or loss of hair over the anterior tibial surfaces

Night/rest pain: It may be the first manifestation of PAD. The patient goes to bed and is woken up after 1-2 hours by pain in the foot, usually in the step. This is due to loss of beneficial effects of gravity on limb perfusion on recumbency. Sleep also causes reduction in heart rate, BP and cardiac output. Patients usually get

relief by hanging their leg out of bed or by getting up and walking around. When the patient returns to bed symptom recurs. Rest pain usually indicates the presence of multi-level disease.

Tissue loss (ulceration and/or gangrene). It is frequently caused by critical limb ischaemia. In such cases, trivial injury will fail to heal and provide a portal of entry for bacteria leading to gangrene and/or ulceration. Without revascularization, the ischaemia will rapidly progress.

Examination

The physical examination

The general physical examination includes looking for:

- Anaemia and cyanosis
- Signs of cardiac failure
- Direct or indirect evidence of vascular disease (see the Box 11.19 for signs and their related vascular disease).



Fig. 11.47: Feet in a patient with bacterial endocarditis. Note digital embolisation

Table 11.19: The clinical characteristics of arterial, neurogenic and venous claudication

Feature	Arterial	Neurogenic	Venous
Cause	Stenosis or occlusion of major limb arteries	Lumbar nerve root or cauda equina compression (spinal canal stenosis)	Obstruction to the venous outflow of the leg due to iliofemoral venous occlusion
Site of pain	Calf, but may involve thigh and buttock	Ill-defined. Whole leg pain, may be associated with numbness and tingling	Whole leg pain, bursting in nature.
Lateralisation	Unilateral, can be bilateral	Often bilateral	Nearly always unilateral
Onset	Gradual, occurs after walking some distance	Often immediate after walking or even standing up	Gradual, often from the moment walking starts
Relieving factors	Cessation of walking abolishes pain immediately	Relief is achieved on bending forwards and stop walking. May have to sit to obtain full relief	Elevation of leg relieves discomfort
Colour	Normal or pale	Normal	Normal or increased
Temperature	Normal or low (cold)	Normal	Normal or increased
Oedema	Absent	Absent	Present
Straight leg raising	Normal	May be limited	Normal

A thorough search should be made for these signs in addition to the detailed examination of arterial pulses

of pulses, and a search for oedema or an arterial bruit (see the Box 11.20).

Box 11.19: SIGNS SUGGESTIVE OF VASCULAR DISEASE	
Sign	Suggested vascular disease
1. Hands and arms	
• Nicotine stains	• Smoking
• Purple discoloration of finger tips	• Atheroembolism from a subclavian aneurysm
• Pits and healed scars on finger pulps	• Secondary Raynaud's phenomenon
• Cyanosis and visible nail - fold capillary loops	• Scleroderma and the CREST syndrome
• Wasting of small muscles of the hand	• Thoracic outlet syndrome
2. Face and neck	
• Corneal arcus and xanthelasma	• Hypercholesterolaemia
• Horner's syndrome	• Carotid artery dissection or aneurysm
• Hoarseness of voice and bovine cough	• Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy from a thoracic arch aneurysm
• Prominent veins in the neck and over shoulder and anterior chest	• Axillary/Subclavian vein occlusion
3. Abdomen	
• Epigastric/umbilical pulsation	• Aortoiliac aneurysm
• Mottling of abdomen	• Ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm or saddle embolism occluding aortic bifurcation
• Evidence of weight loss	• Visceral ischaemia

Areas of examination

Assessment of the peripheral vascular system relies primarily on **inspection** of the arms and legs, **palpation**

Box 11.20: IMPORTANT AREAS OF EXAMINATION	
The extremities	Systemic examination
1. The arms	
• Size, symmetry, skin colour, nail beds and skin texture	1. Heart and vessels
• Pulses e.g. radial and brachial	
• Epitrochlear lymph nodes, axillary or cervical lymph nodes	• Look for the evidence of valvular heart disease or ischaemic heart disease.
2. The legs	
• size, symmetry, skin colour, nail growth, texture of skin, hair loss	• Record systolic BP in the upper (brachial BP) and lower limb (ankle BP on posterior tibial or dorsalis pedis artery). Calculate the ankle/brachial systolic BP ratio or index
• Pulses e.g. femoral, popliteal, dorsalis pedis, posterior tibial	• Auscultate the abdominal aorta or other major vessels for any bruit
• Inguinal lymph nodes	2. Nervous system examination
• Peripheral (pedal) oedema	• Look for the evidence of any neurological deficit
• Any pigmentation, rashes, scales, ulcer, gangrenous toe	

Examination sequence

Inspection

Inspect both the arms (hands, finger tips, nail beds, skin) and legs (feet, toes) for size, symmetry, change in temperature, colour of the skin and nail beds. Note any area of pigmentation, rashes, scales, ulcer (Fig. 11.47) or gangrene.

Palpation

- (i) *Palpate upper limb vessels*
- (ii) *Palpate lower limb vessels*

Measure the blood flow or grade the volume of the pulse as follows:

Normal	+
Reduced	±
Absent	–
Aneurysmal	++

Note: If the examiner is in any doubt about which pulse is being felt (i.e. his or her own or patient's pulse), it is useful for the clinician to palpate his or her own pulse at the same time. Lack of synchronization implies that it is the patient's pulse.

Now palpate for the lymph nodes (axillary, epitrochlear, cervical and inguinal) for any enlargement.

Palpate the feet for pitting or nonpitting oedema.

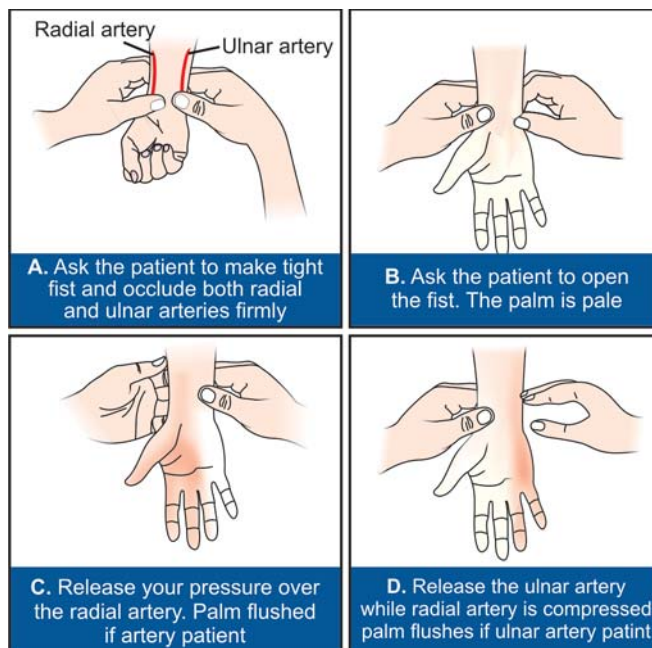
Special techniques to test arterial supply of hands

- The allen test for patency of ulnar and radial artery.** Ask the patient to make a tight fist of one hand. Compress both the radial and ulnar arteries between your thumb and fingers at the wrist. Now ask the patient to open the hand into a relaxed and slightly flexed position. The palm becomes pale in this position (Figs 11.48A and B).

Patency of the radial artery may be tested by releasing the radial artery while still compressing the ulnar (Fig. 11.48C).

Release your pressure over the ulnar artery. If artery is patent the palm flushes within 3-5 seconds (Fig. 11.48D). Persisting pallor indicates occlusion of ulnar artery or its distal branches.

- Adson's test:** This is performed for presence of subclavian artery compression by a cervical rib or scalenus anticus (*thoracic outlet syndrome*). While the patient is sitting, palpate the radial pulse on the affected side (i.e. there is pain or diminished pulse on that side). Then patient is asked to inhale and hold the breath and turn his chin upwards and towards the affected side. A decrease in or absence of radial pulse indicates positive test for subclavian artery compression.
- Postural colour changes for chronic arterial insufficiency (Buerger's test):** If pain or diminished pulses suggest arterial insufficiency, look for postural colour changes. Raise both the legs while the patient lying supine to about 60° until maximal pallor of the feet develops usually within 60 seconds. In this position, a slight pallor is normal response, but marked pallor suggests arterial insufficiency.



Figs 11.48A to D: The Allen test for patency of the vessel

Now ask the patient to sit up with legs dangling down. Compare both feet, noting the time required for return of normal pink colour (usually returns within 10 seconds) and filling of veins of the feet (normally fills within 15 seconds).

The abnormal response indicates arterial insufficiency.

Persistence of rubor (dusky redness) on dependency indicates positive test for arterial insufficiency.

Normal responses accompanied by diminished arterial pulsations indicate that a good collateral circulation has developed around the arterial occlusion.

Colour changes may be difficult to see in darker-skinned persons.

Palpation of various peripheral pulses

Palpate the various pulses of upper and lower limbs for pulsations (normal, increased, diminished or absent).

The arterial pulses are detected by gently compressing the vessel against some firm underlying structure such as bones. The method of palpation of various pulses is illustrated in the Figure 11.49 in the Box 11.21.

Other areas of examination**The heart**

- Examine the heart for any evidence of valvular heart disease or ischaemic heart disease that predispose

Box 11.21: PALPATION OF VARIOUS PULSES






Pulses	Method (Fig. 11.49)
1. The brachial artery is palpated in the antecubital fossa by compressing it against the humerus. The examiner should use the index, middle fingers or thumb of opposite hand. With your free hand, flex the elbow to varying degree to get optimal palpations (see Fig. 11.14).	
2. The carotid artery is palpated in the neck by gently compressing it against the transverse process of cervical vertebrae when the patient is resting on the bed or couch. Use the left thumb for right carotid and vice versa.	
3. The femoral pulse is palpated in the thigh between the iliac crest and the pubic ramus by compressing the artery against the underlying femur	
4. The popliteal artery is palpated in the popliteal fossa. With the knee flexed at an angle of 120°. The finger tips are used to palpate the artery while the thumb rests on the patient's patella.	
5. The posterior tibial is palpated behind the medial malleolus of the tibia with the foot relaxed between plantar and dorsiflexion.	
6. The dorsalis pedis. It is palpated on the dorsum of foot by compressing it against tarsal bone. The left dorsalis pedis is palpated with fingers of right hand and vice versa.	



Fig. 11.49A: Examination of brachial pulse with thumb



Fig. 11.49B: Palpation of femoral artery pulsations



Fig. 11.49C: Palpation of popliteal artery pulsations



Fig. 11.49D: Palpation of posterior tibial artery



Fig. 11.49E: Palpation of dorsal-is pedis artery pulsations

to atrial or mural thrombosis which may lead to systemic embolisation Figure 11.50.

- Record systolic blood pressure in the upper and lower limbs to calculate the ankle/brachial pressure index or ratio (ABPI)
- Auscultate the abdominal aorta or any other major vessel, i.e. carotid artery for any bruit (Fig. 11.51).

The abdomen

Look at the abdomen for aortic pulsations and auscultate for any bruit.

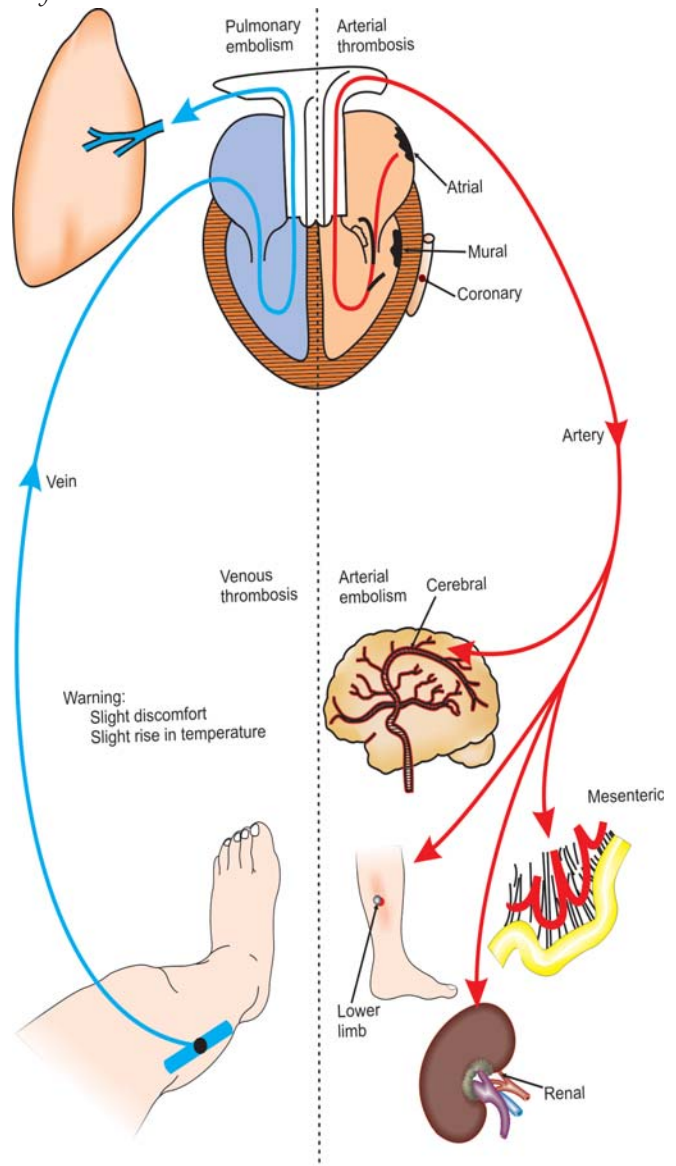


Fig. 11.50: Thrombosis and embolism

1. Right side of figure shows venous thrombosis of leg and its embolism
2. Left side of figure shows arterial thrombosis (mural left ventricular or atrial) and its subsequent embolism



Fig. 11.51: Carotid artery auscultation for bruit. Note that the bell of the stethoscope is placed gently on the skin overlying the angle formed by the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the lower jaw

Note: Auscultate all the major vessels for bruit if there is an evidence of diminished pulsations.

The nervous system

Examine the nervous system for any neurological deficit. Vascular disease may present with transient ischaemic attacks (TIA), stroke or multi-infarct dementia,

A significant proportion of strokes and TIAs are due to atheroemboli originating from a tight atherosclerotic stenosis or the origin of internal carotid artery. The signs of internal carotid artery occlusion include ocular (loss of vision in the ipsilateral eye-called *amaurosis fugax*) often described by the patient as a curtain coming across the field of view lasting for few minutes. Less commonly there may be permanent monocular blindness and cerebral/hemispheric signs such as hemiplegia, hemianaesthesia and dysphasia (if dominant hemisphere is affected).

Vertebrobasilar arterial insufficiency presents with giddiness, collapse, with or without loss of consciousness, transient occipital blindness or complete loss of vision in both the eyes.

Patients with subclavian artery stenosis or occlusion proximal to the origin of the vertebral artery may experience vertebrobasilar symptoms, as part of the *subclavian steal syndrome*. This happens when the arm is exercised. The increased blood supply to the arm is met by stealing the blood from posterior cerebral circulation producing symptoms and signs of vertebrobasilar insufficiency. Signs of this include asymmetry of pulses



Fig. 11.52: Buerger's disease

and BP in the arms and sometimes a bruit over the subclavian artery in the supraclavicular fossa may be heard.

Buerger's disease (thromboangitis obliterans)

This is an inflammatory obliterative arterial disease different from atherosclerosis. It presents in young (<30 yr) male smokers and characteristically affects the peripheral arteries giving rise to intermittent claudication in the feet or rest pain in the fingers and toes. This disease has a strong genetic basis.

The condition also affects the veins, and superficial thrombophlebitis is common. Wrist and ankle pulses are usually absent but brachial and popliteal pulses are characteristically palpable. Arteriography shows narrowing or occlusion of arteries below the knee with relatively healthy vessels above that level. The conditions usually remit if patient stops smoking. In severe disease, there may be ulceration and gangrene of the toes (Fig. 11.52).

Vasospastic disorders

Vasospastic disorders involve the small vessels (arteries and arterioles), hence, are characterized by changes in the skin colour and temperature rather than intermittent claudication and gangrene. The various vasospastic conditions are given in the Box 11.22.

Box 11.22: COMMON VASOSPASTIC CONDITIONS**1. Raynaud's phenomenon**

- Primary (Raynaud's disease)
- Secondary due to connective tissue disease, occlusive arterial disease, hypothyroidism, pheochromocytoma

2. Livedo reticularis

- Primary
- Secondary to connective tissue disease, vasculitis, myeloproliferative disorders

3. Acrocyanosis**4. Chronic pernio syndrome (chilblains)****5. Reflex sympathetic dystrophy**

- 1. Raynaud's phenomenon (Fig. 11.53):** It is the commonest vasospastic disorder characterized by brief, intermittent triphasic colour response, i.e. pallor, cyanosis and redness of the digits due to constriction followed by dilatation of small vessels (arteries, arterioles) precipitated by exposure to cold or emotional stress. This could be:
- *Primary* (idiopathic, Raynaud's disease) owing to vasospasm of digital vessels of unknown cause.
 - *Secondary* (Raynaud's syndrome) is due to digital artery obstruction caused by;
 - Connective tissue disease (most commonly systemic sclerosis)
 - Vibration injury (secondary to use of power tools)
 - Atheroembolism from a proximal source such as subclavian artery aneurysm.

Initial evaluation includes;

- History of tricolour response precipitated by cold and emotion
 - Drug history includes intake of betablockers and ergot preparation
 - Allen's test
 - Look for thoracic outlet compression.
- 2. Livedo reticularis:** It is purplish mottling of skin due to spasm of the dermal arterioles, seen commonly in lower extremities and is more prominent in cold weather. Recurrent ulceration around the ankle may occur in primary livedo reticularis.
- 3. Acrocyanosis:** It is characterized by coldness and cyanosis (bluish discolouration) of the acral parts (hands, fingers, feet and toes). It is always a primary and commonly occurs in women. Cyanotic heart disease and methaemoglobinaemia must be excluded before making the diagnosis.
- 4. Chronic pernio syndrome:** It results from cold injury and is characterized by abnormal reaction of the blood vessels to changes in environmental

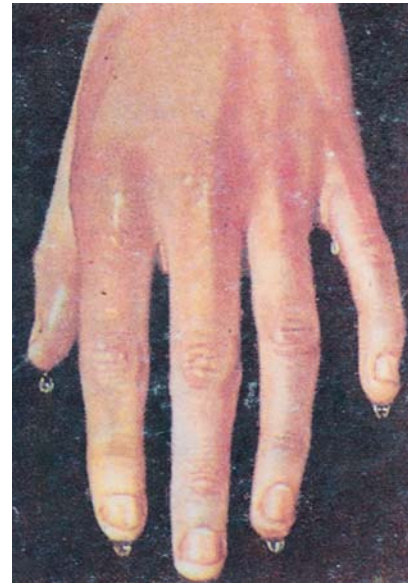


Fig. 11.53: Raynaud's phenomenon after immersion of the hand in cold water

temperature. There are often erythematous, cyanotic, haemorrhagic or ulcerative lesions of the toes during the colder months, and they disappear in warm weather.

Reflex sympathetic dystrophy: It is probably a neurological disorder that occurs following trauma, characterized by pain, oedema, warmth, hyperhidrosis, coldness and colour changes.

Vascular occlusion by embolism or vasculitis. There may be involvement of big vessels due to embolism (Fig. 11.50) and small vessels in vasculitis.

Aneurysmal disease (abdominal aortic aneurysm –AAA)

Aortic aneurysm is commoner in men than in women, occurs after the age of 65 years. The presenting complaints include *abdominal and/or back pain or pulsations*. Many patients may remain asymptomatic until aneurysm ruptures. There is usually a mural thrombus in the aneurysm often leading to complete thrombosis and distal embolisation.

In the extremities, the most common aneurysms encountered are in the femoral, popliteal and subclavian artery.

Clinically abdominal aortic aneurysm presents with a pulsatile mass in the epigastrium. A pulsatile mass below the umbilicus suggest an iliac artery aneurysm.

The diagnosis of ruptured aortic aneurysm is made by the classical features of abdominal and/or back pain, pulsatile abdominal mass and hypotension.

Atheroembolism may arise from abdominal arch aneurysm and lead to “blue leg toe syndrome” characterized by purple discolouration of the toes/forefoot.

Investigations of PAD

For peripheral vascular disease, one should choose an investigation which is cheap and provides the most information and least risk to the patient. Ultrasound has replaced invasive angiography in many instances. The various investigations for PAD are given in the Table 11.20.

Test	Indications and uses
Doppler ultrasound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For calculation of ankle brachial pressure index (ABPI) Pulse waveform analysis
B-mode ultrasound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abdominal aortic aneurysm Popliteal artery aneurysm
Duplex ultrasound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occlusion/stenosis of limb arteries, carotid arteries, renal arteries Surveillance of limbs after venous bypass graft or angioplasty
Computed tomography (CT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CT abdomen for abdominal aortic aneurysm CT head for cerebral infarct/haemorrhages Spiral or helical CT scanning is useful in imaging of cerebral, carotid and abdominal arteries.
Plethysmography	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For stenotic or occlusive vascular lesions
Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AV malformations Carotid artery stenosis
Angiography	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute or chronic limb ischaemia Carotid artery stenosis

Measurement of Ankle/Brachial Pressure Index (ABPI): Measurement of ABPI is useful in assessing the severity of chronic lower limb ischaemia. This index has predictive value in the healing of the ischemic ulcers.

It is performed using a hand-held Doppler and a Sphygmomanometer. The probe is held over the three pedal arteries (posterior tibial, dorsalis pedis, perforating peroneal) in turn while a BP cuff wrapped round the ankle is inflated. The pressure at which Doppler signal disappears gives the systolic BP in that artery. The ratio of the highest pedal artery pressure to highest brachial artery pressure is ABPI.

Normally the ABPI index is ≥ 1.0 in supine position (ankle systolic BP is equal to or higher to brachial systolic BP) while in patients with various types of occlusive PAD, the index is below 0.9 and in some cases below 0.5.

In diabetics, crural arteries are hard and incompressible, hence, may falsely raise the pedal pressures, and thus, the ABPI. In such circumstances, an alternative is to “isonate” the artery while elevating the foot. The height above the bed in centimeters at which the Doppler signal disappears is approximately equal to the perfusion pressure in mmHg.

VENOUS SYSTEM

General considerations

The venous system can be classified as either superficial or deep. The superficial venous system is thick walled and muscular that lies underneath the skin. Deep venous system, on the other hand, is thin-walled and less muscular. Both systems are interconnected by perforating veins. The presence of venous valves regulates the blood flow. Alterations in the function of valves cause venous disorders.

Clinical presentations

Venous disease is much more common in the legs than in the arms. It usually presents in one of the four following ways:

1. Deep vein thrombosis (DVT)
2. Superficial thrombophlebitis
3. Varicosity of veins
4. Chronic venous insufficiency.

Clinical assessment

The clinical assessment is primarily concerned with:

- Determining the nature and severity of any venous problem
 - Identifying any underlying or precipitating factor(s).
- The assessment include; history, physical examination and investigations.

The history

The patients usually present with one or more of the four cardinal symptoms of the venous disease (see the Box 11.23). The common area of involvement is lower limbs.

Box 11.23: CARDINAL SYMPTOMS OF VENOUS DISEASE

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pain • Swelling | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Discolouration • Ulceration |
|--|--|

1. **Pain** of deep vein thrombosis is deep seated and associated with oedema below the level of obstruction. The superficial venous thrombophlebitis

produces a red, painful area overlying the vein involved.

Patient with uncomplicated varicose vein may complain of an aching pain/discomfort in the leg, itching and a feeling of swelling due to prominence of venous system. Symptoms are aggravated by prolonged standing and are worst towards the end of the day. Varicose ulceration is painless, but if pain occurs, it is relieved by elevation of the limb.

2. **Swelling:** It is associated invariably with deep vein thrombosis and deep venous reflux. It may be present with varicose veins.
3. **Discolouration:** Deep blue/black to purple or even red discolouration may be complained on the medial aspect of the lower part of the leg by the patients suffering from chronic venous insufficiency. The discolouration is due to deposition of haemosiderin in the skin leading to lipodermatosclerosis.
4. **Ulceration:** A venous ulcer occurs on the lowest dependent part especially the ankle in patients with varicose vein. This is associated with pigmentation around it. Patients with venous ulceration may not seek medical attention for many years. Bleeding from the ulcer and secondary infection at the site of ulcer are common.

Ask about the followings in a patient with venous system disease.

- Recent bed rest or operation on the leg or pelvis
- Recent travel (e.g. long air flight)
- Prolong forced immobilization, especially following bone fracture, trauma, plaster of Paris splintage.
- Pregnancy or history of taking oral contraceptive
- Previous deep vein thrombosis
- Family history of thrombosis
- Recent central vein catheterisation, injection of drugs or prolonged IV drip through a cannula in the upper limb (for superficial thrombophlebitis)
- History of weight loss (if patient has recurrent thrombophlebitis, due to suspected malignancy).

Examination of venous system

It is done under two heads:

1. Inspection
2. Palpation.

Inspection

- Examine the legs with the patient standing and then lying supine
- Expose the limbs adequately and inspect it for *swelling*, any *superficial venous dilatation* and *tortuosity*. *Look the skin for any colour change or ulcer.*

Palpation

- Palpate for any differences in the temperature
- Elevate the limb to about 15° above the horizontal and note the rate of venous emptying.
- If appropriate, perform the Trendelenburg test.

Specific Conditions

I. Deep vein thrombosis (DVT)

Deep vein thrombosis commonly involves the legs (Fig. 11.54) but can also involve the arm (axillary vein thrombosis). The precipitating and predisposing factors for deep vein thrombosis are given in the Table 11.21. The incidence of deep vein thrombosis is increasing because of greater utilization of indwelling central venous catheters.

Table 11.21: Deep vein thrombosis; predisposing and precipitating factors

Predisposing factors	Precipitating factor (s)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Venous stasis • Oral contraceptives • Prolonged bed rest or immobilization • Hypercoagulable state • Old age • Smoking • Pregnancy • Dehydration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congestive heart failure • Orthopedic procedure (total hip replacement) • Malignancy (e.g. pancreas, lung, ovary, testes) • Nephrotic syndrome • SLE and antiphospholipid syndrome • Inflammatory bowel disease • Polycythaemia • Protein C and S deficiency • Homocystinuria



Fig. 11.54: Deep vein thrombosis of leg. Note the swelling over the foot and leg on left side

Table 11.22: Clinical manifestations of DVT of leg and arm

Feature	DVT of leg	DVT of arm
Veins involved	Iliac, femoral or popliteal	Subclavian or axillary vein
Pain	Calf pain, increases during walking	Arm pain exacerbated by activity especially occurs on holding the arms above the head.
Tenderness	Calf tenderness on squeezing the calf	Arm tenderness on squeezing
Swelling	Unilateral leg oedema	Unilateral arm oedema
Warmth	Present	Present
Increased tissue turgor	Present	Present
Skin colour	In some patients, a cyanotic hue present due to deoxygenated haemoglobin in stagnant vein—a condition called <i>phlegmasia cerulea dolens</i> . In others, there may be pallor due to increased interstitial tissue pressure—a condition called <i>phlegmasia alba dolens</i> .	The skin is often cyanosed and mottled especially on dependency.
Visible distended veins	Distention of superficial veins over the calf and around the ankle or over foot	Superficial distended veins acting as collaterals are seen in the upper arm, over the shoulder and anterior chest wall.
Palpable vein	A cord may be felt in the calf region	A cord may be felt in the arm region.



Fig. 11.55: Homan's sign

Clinical features

The clinical features of DVT of lower limb (leg) and upper limb (arm) are given in the Table 11.22.

Homan's sign (Fig. 11.55): It is unreliable diagnostic sign of DVT of leg where increased resistance or pain occurs during dorsiflexion of foot. It is now-a-days not performed due to risk of dislodgement of thrombus.

Investigations

- *Duplex venous ultrasonography* (B-mode i.e. two dimensional, imaging and pulse wave Doppler

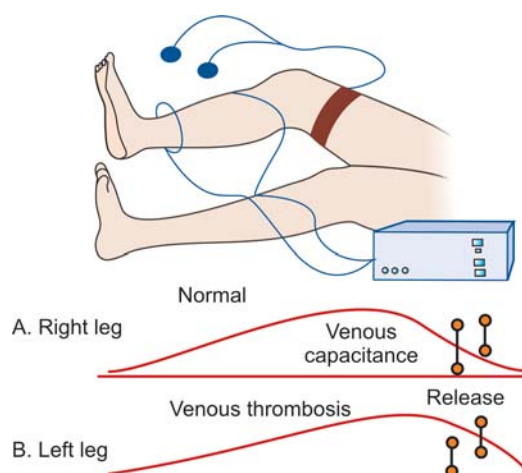


Fig. 11.56: Impedance plethysmography. In venous occlusion, there is increased venous outflow resistance in venous capacitance

interrogation) is quite accurate in the diagnosis of deep vein thrombosis.

- *Impedance plethysmography* (Fig. 11.56): It measures the rate of venous return from the lower extremities. It detects the increased venous resistance in the deep veins of proximal lower extremities. Venograms are occasionally used now-a-days, because they have been currently replaced by ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging—a noninvasive method.

Differential diagnosis

DVT must be differentiated from a variety of disorders that cause unilateral leg pain or oedema such as;

- Muscle rupture
- Muscle haematoma due to trauma or haemorrhage
- A ruptured popliteal cyst
- Lymphoedema. The skin over the oedema is thickened, indurated and pigmented (brawny). The oedema is non-pitting.
- Postphlebotic syndrome. It results from acute recurrent deep vein thrombosis.

Complications

- Chronic venous insufficiency and ulceration
- Pulmonary embolism. It can occur even without symptoms of venous thrombosis (see Fig. 11.50).

II. Superficial venous thrombophlebitis (Fig. 11.57)

This is a usually sterile inflammation of superficial veins, may be associated with intraluminal thrombosis. The most common cause is central indwelling catheters or needles used for intravenous fluids. Sometimes, it is secondary to trauma or carcinoma of pancreas (recurrent superficial thrombophlebitis). Primary superficial venous thrombosis is often seen in pregnancy, postpartum state and in thromboangitis obliterans.

The clinical features include dull aching pain, swelling, erythema and induration along the vein involved. There may be associated fever and chills as constitutional symptoms.

III. Varicose veins and chronic venous insufficiency

Varicose veins are defined as abnormally dilated, tortuous superficial veins of the lower extremities involving commonly the saphenous vein and its branches.



Fig. 11.57: Superficial venous thrombophlebitis

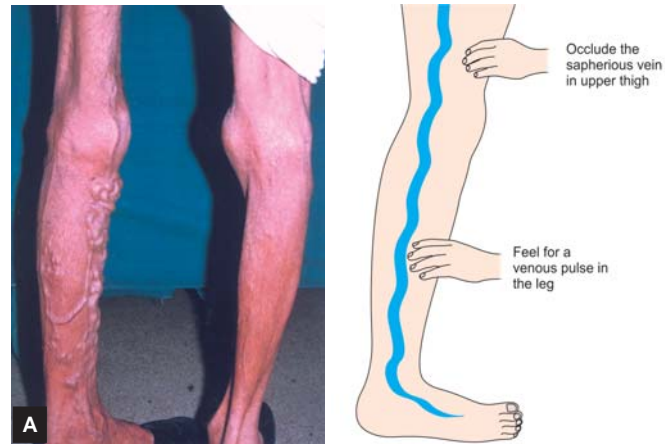


Fig. 11.58: Varicose veins. A. The dilated and tortuous veins of the left leg indicate varicose vein. B. Trendelenburg's test for valve incompetence

Trendelenburg test (Fig. 11.58)

It is done to assess the valvular competence in both the communicating veins and saphenous venous system.

Method

- Start with the patient lying supine
- Elevate the limb to empty the superficial veins by "milking" the leg
- With the leg still elevated, the upper end of the vein is then occluded by finger pressure on the saphenous opening. The saphenous opening lies 2-3 cm below and 2-3 cm lateral to pubic tubercle.
- While the examiner maintains this pressure, the patient stands
- If the valves (saphenofemoral junction) are incompetent the veins will fill rapidly from above (retrograde filling) when the pressure is released.

Results

1. Rapid filling of the superficial veins while the saphenous vein is occluded indicates incompetent valves in the communicating system.
2. Positive Trendelenburg test indicates saphenofemoral junction incompetence.

Types

1. **Primary:** The incompetency of venous valves is of unknown cause. This may be inherited. Incompetent valves of the perforating veins in the thigh and lower limbs, communicate the pressure from the deep veins to superficial veins and make them to swell

elongated and tortuous. Pregnancy and prolonged standing (e.g. in policemen, farmers) are common precipitating factors.

2. **Secondary.** This is due to damage to the venous valves due to neoplasms or thrombophlebitis.

Symptoms and signs. The varicosity of veins may be asymptomatic, but if symptoms occur, then patients usually complain of a dull ache or pruritus. The involved veins are dilated and tortuous (Fig. 11.58). In long standing cases, chronic venous insufficiency develops producing skin changes in the lower leg, e.g. varicose eczema, lipodermatosclerosis (brownish discolouration and induration), venous ulcerations due to sustained venous stasis and increased pressure.



Fig. 11.59: Chronic venous ulcerations and pigmentation. Note the oedema of leg, venous ulceration (↓) and pigmentation of right foot and leg

Table 11.23: Differentiation between various trophic ulcers

Feature	Arterial insufficiency	Chronic venous insufficiency	Neuropathic ulcer
Site	Toes, feet or in areas of trauma	Around the ankle	Pressure points in areas with diminished sensation, as in diabetic neuropathy
Skin around the ulcer	No callous, excess of pigment, may be atrophic	Pigmented	Calloused
Pain	Severe unless neuropathy present	Not severe	Absent, hence, ulcer often goes unnoticed
Associated gangrene	May be present	Absent	Absent in uncomplicated ulcer
Other signs	Decreased pulses, pallor of the foot on elevation, dusky rubor on dependency	Oedema, pigmentation, stasis, dermatitis	Decreased sensation and absent ankle jerk.

IV. Chronic leg ulceration

Deep vein thrombosis is a common cause of chronic venous insufficiency, which, in turn, is the commonest

cause of leg ulceration (Fig. 11.59). Vast majority of the leg ulcers can be ascertained by clinical examination (Table 11.23).

12

The Respiratory System

HISTORY

Symptoms

- Cough and expectoration
- Haemoptysis
- Pain chest
- Dysphagia, hoarseness of voice

Present history

Past history

Measles, whooping cough during childhood, diabetes, T.B., H.T, pneumonia, chest injury, epilepsy, pregnancy and exposure to STD and HIV.

Family history

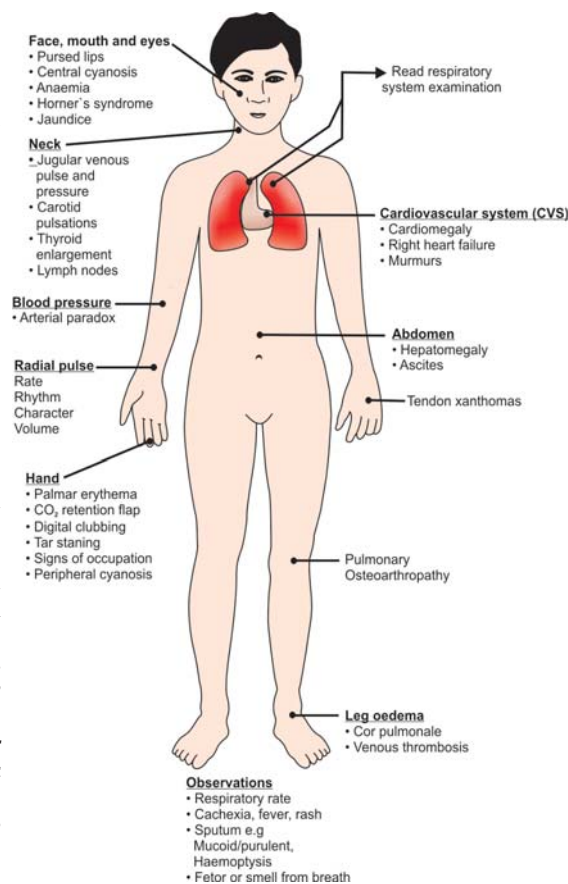
Allergy (e.g. hay fever, asthma), T.B. etc.

Personal history

e.g. record occupation and menstrual history in female

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION (GPE)

- **Built, nutrition, consciousness**
- **Facial appearance** e.g. puffiness, pallor, bluishness, dyspnoea
- **Skin** e.g. pallor, purpuric spots
- **The eyes** e.g. for jaundice, anaemia, suffusion, periorbital oedema
- **The ear, nose, throat** e.g. sinus tenderness, tonsils enlargement or for any septic focus
- **Mouth, pharynx and posterior pharyngeal wall** for any septic focus and foul breath
- **Lips and tongue** for purselip breathing, cyanosis
- **Neck** e.g. lymph nodes, JVP carotid pulsations, thyroid, trachea and activation of extra-respiratory muscles
- **Hands and feet** e.g. clubbing, cyanosis, oedema



FORMAT FOR RESPIRATORY SYSTEM EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Inspection

- Deformity (e.g. pectus excavatum),
- Scars,
- Intercostal indrawing/recession
- Symmetry of chest expansion
- Paradoxical/abnormal movements
- Movements of extra-respiratory muscles
- Apex beat e.g. visible or not, displaced or normal

Palpation

Cervical lymphadenopathy
Trachea: Central or displaced
Cardiac apical impulse: displaced or normal
Chest expansion (measurement)
Intercostal spaces (wide, narrow, normal) vocal fremitus (e.g. normal or abnormal)

Percussion

- Percussion note (resonant, dull, stony dull)
- Define cardiac dullness and liver dullness (increased, normal/ masked/shifted)

Auscultation

- Breath sounds (e.g. normal, bronchial, louder or softer)
- Added sounds e.g. wheezes, crackles, rub
- Vocal resonance; absent (effusion) increased (consolidation), normal
- Bronchophony (if vocal resonance is increased)
- Whispering pectoriloquy (if vocal resonance is increased)

Other systems examination

The cardiovascular system

The abdomen

The CNS

Provisional diagnosis

- Anatomical (site of lesion)
- Pathological (type of lesion)
- Aetiological (cause of lesion)
- Complications, if any

Differential diagnosis and Investigations

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Applied anatomy and physiology

The chest is a bony cage bounded anteriorly by sternum, laterally by the ribs on both sides and posteriorly by the vertebral column, contains heart and great vessels; lungs and the pleura.

Important landmarks

The lungs and its covering pleura are well protected within the thoracic cage, however, the approximate location of the underlying lobes can be deduced from the surface markings. The abnormalities of the chest are described in relation to certain landmarks in two dimensions;

1. To make vertical locations, one must be able to locate the sternal angle (*angle of Louis*) which is considered the best guide.

To locate this, place your finger in the hollow curve of suprasternal notch, then move your finger down 5 cm to the horizontal bony ridge joining the manubrium to the body of the sternum. This is *sternal angle*. adjacent to 2nd rib and costal cartilage. Second intercostal space is below the 2nd rib. From here, you can count down the spaces using two fingers, one space at a time on an oblique line illustrated by red circles with numbers inside e.g. 2,3 to 9 (Fig. 12.1 and 12.2A). Do not try to count interspaces along the lower edge of the sternum as ribs are too crowded there. In a women, count the spaces by displacing the breast laterally or palpate a little more medially.

Note: First 7 ribs articulate with the sternum, the cartilages of 8th, 9th and 10th ribs articulate with costal cartilages just above them, and the 11th and 12th ribs-called “floating ribs” have no anterior attachments.

Posteriorly, the 12th rib is an important surface mark for counting the ribs and interspaces. It helps to locate the findings on the lower posterior chest and provides an option when anterior approach is unsatisfactory. With fingers of one hand, press in and up against the lower border of the 12 rib, then “walk up” the interspaces numbered in red circle (Fig. 12.2B) or following a more oblique line up and around to the front of the chest. The other important anatomical landmarks are given in the Box 12.1.

Box 12.1: IMPORTANT ANATOMICAL LANDMARKS ON POSTERIOR WALL OF CHEST (Fig. 12.2B)

1. The inferior tip of the scapula lies at the level of 7th rib or interspace.
2. *Spinous processes of vertebra*. They are useful landmarks. When the neck is flexed forward, the most protruding process is spine of C₇ vertebra; and if there are two prominent processes, then they are spines of C₇ and T₁. You can palpate them and count the spinous process below them for vertebral localisations.

Localisation around the circumference of the chest

A series of vertical lines are used for localization of lesion on the circumference of the chest. The *midsternal* and *vertebral* lines are precise; the others are estimated.

Anteriorly, the three lines are (Fig. 12.3A);

- *Midsternal line* drops vertically in middle of sternum.
- *Midclavicular line* drops vertically from the midpoint of the clavicle.
- *Anterior axillary line* drops vertically along the anterior axillary fold.

Laterally (Fig. 12.3B), the three lines represents the axillary area of the chest;

- Anterior axillary line along anterior axillary fold

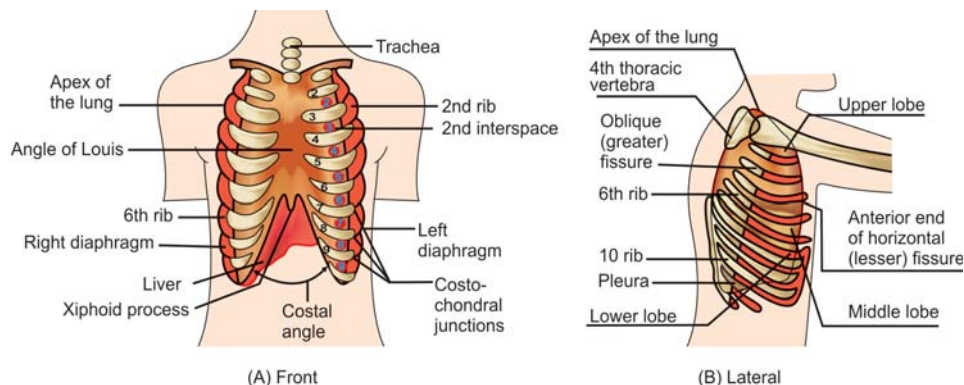
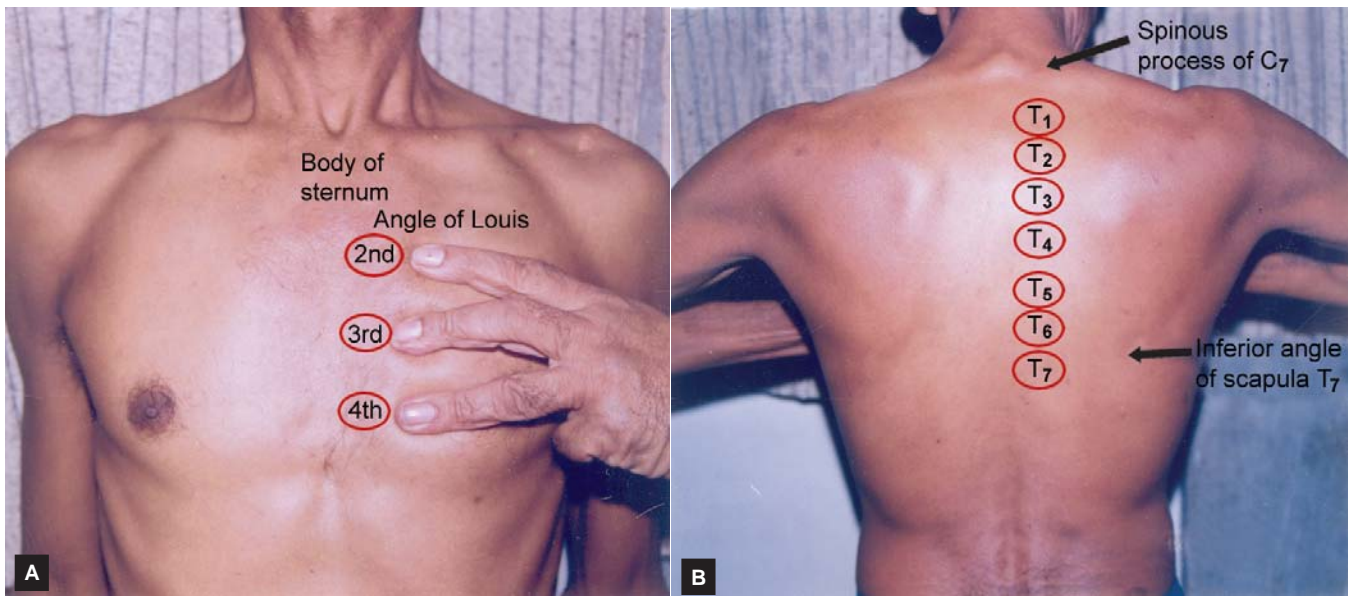


Fig. 12.1: Surface anatomy of respiratory system A. Front view B. Lateral view



Figs 12.2A and B: Important landmarks on the chest. A: Location of the sternal angle (angle of Louis) and counting down the interspaces below it as 2nd, 3rd and 4th by fingers. B: Surface marking on the back of chest

- Posterior axillary line along posterior axillary fold
- Midaxillary line drops vertical from apex of the axilla

Posteriorly. The two vertical lines are (Fig. 12.3C)

- *Vertebral line* overlies the spinous process of the vertebrae
- *Scapular line* passes across the inferior angle of scapula

Lungs, fissures and lobes

The upper respiratory tract includes the nose, the nasopharynx and larynx. It is lined by vascular mucous membranes with ciliated epithelium. The lower respiratory tract includes trachea and bronchi which further divides and subdivides to form terminal bronchioles and thus form an interconnecting tree of conducting airways. The terminal bronchioles with alveoli form *acini*. The lower respiratory tract is lined by ciliated epithelium upto the terminal bronchioles. The larynx and bronchi are supplied with sensory receptors involved in the cough reflex.

An *acinus* is the basic fundamental functional unit of the lung. The alveoli are lined by flattened epithelium on inner side and are supplied by pulmonary capillaries on outer side, thus form an *alveolar-capillary* membrane through which gaseous exchange occurs.

Surface markings of the lung. Anteriorly, the apex of each lung rises about 2 to 4 cm above the inner third of the clavicle. The lower border of the lung crosses the 6

rib at the midclavicular line and the 8th rib at midaxillary line. Posteriorly, the lower border of the lung lies at about the level of T₁₀ spinous process, and on inspiration, it descends further. (Fig. 12.4 posterior view)

Lobes of the lungs. Each lung is divided into two halves by an oblique (major interlobar) fissure. This fissure can be represented by a line from the second thoracic spine (T₂) running obliquely down and around the chest to the 6th rib in the midclavicular line. The left lung has only this fissure and thus has two lobes; upper and lower. As the posterior end of this fissure is higher than anterior, the upper lobes lies largely above and in front of the chest (Fig.12.4 anterior view). This landmark is clinically important because upper lobe lesions produce physical signs on front of the chest while lower lobe mainly on the back.

The right lobe has three lobes due to presence of two fissures; the oblique and the transverse. The right oblique fissure as described above separates the lower lobe from rest of the lung. The transverse fissure can be represented by a horizontal line from the sternum at the level of the 4th costal cartilage, drawn to meet the line of the oblique fissure thus, marks the boundary between the upper and middle lobes (Fig. 12.4 anterior view). The middle and upper lobe on the right similar to upper lobe on the left occupy most of the area on front of the chest. In the axillary regions, parts of all the lobes are accessible (Fig. 12.4 lateral and oblique views).

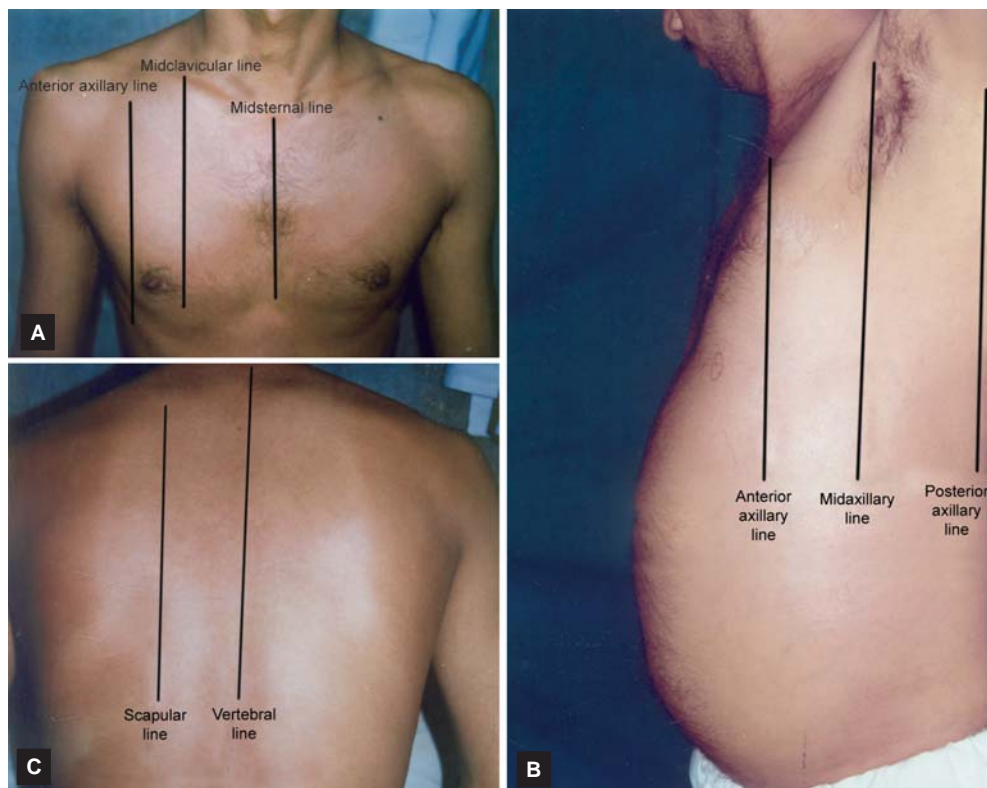


Fig. 12.3: Important landmarks around the circumference of the chest for localisation of the lesion

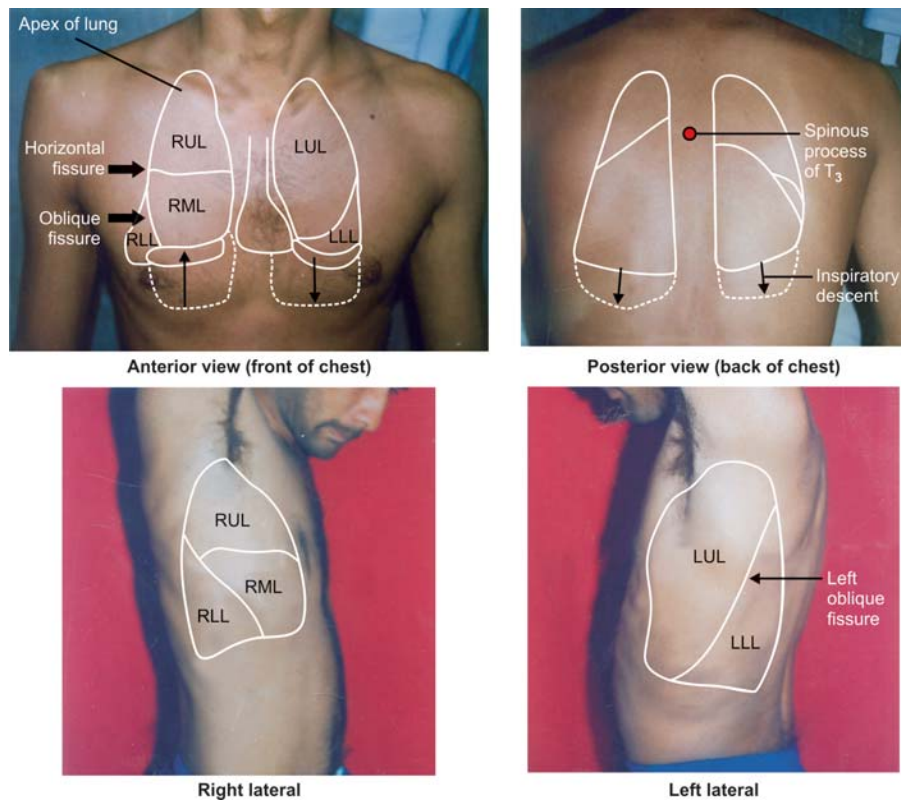


Fig. 12.4: Surface markings of the lungs in different views. Read the division of lungs into lobes by the fissures from the text

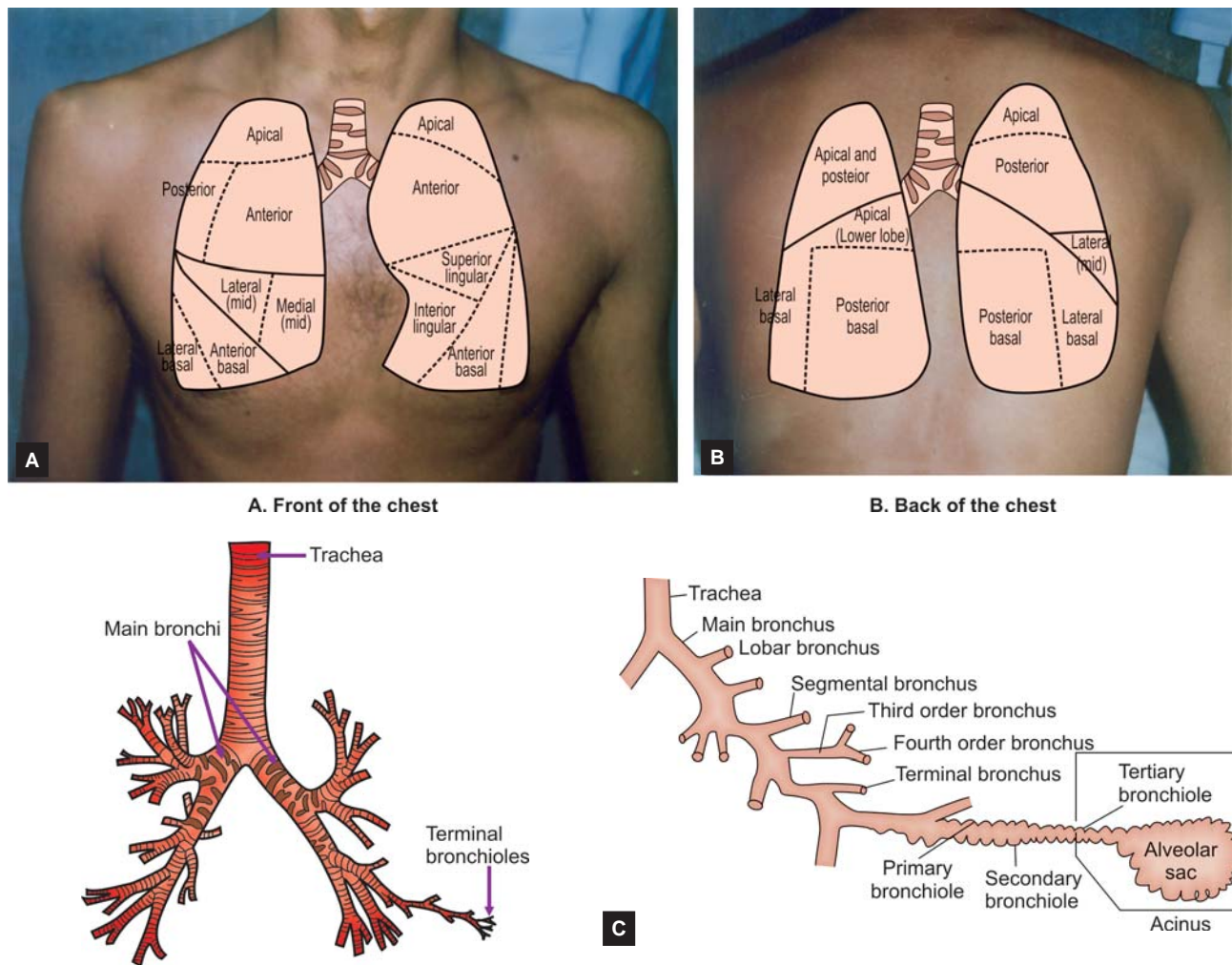


Fig. 12.5: Bronchopulmonary segments of the lungs. The continuous lines show the interlobar fissures while dotted lines represent the bronchopulmonary segments. A. Front B. Back C. Diagrammatic illustration of tracheobronchial tree and distal airway

The bronchial divisions, bronchopulmonary segments of various lobes of both lungs are represented in the Fig. 12.5.

Remember. A knowledge of the anatomy of the bronchial tree is essential while performing bronchoscopy and interpreting the findings.

Locations on the chest. One must be familiar with the terms used to locate chest findings. (see the Box 12.2).

Box 12.2: IMPORTANT REGIONS ON THE CHEST (FIG. 12.6)	
Supraclavicular	– above the clavicles
Infraclavicular	– below the clavicles
Infrascapular	– below the scapula
Interscapular	– between the scapulae
Suprascapular	– above the scapula
Bases of the lungs	– the lowermost portions of upper, middle and lower lung fields.

You may derive conclusion about what part (s) of the lung (s) are affected by the disease/lesion. Signs in the right upper lung field, for example, almost certainly originate in the right upper lobe. Signs in the right middle lung field laterally, however, could come from any of the three different lobes.

Presenting symptoms of respiratory disease

- Symptoms of upper respiratory tract (nose, paranasal sinuses, pharynx, larynx and trachea have been discussed in Unit II Chapter 7 Read the ENT examination and also summarised in Unit I, Chapter 2).
- Symptoms pertaining to lower respiratory tract (bronchi, bronchioles and lung parenchyma have already been described and analysed in Unit-I, Chapter 2. Read symptoms pertaining to various

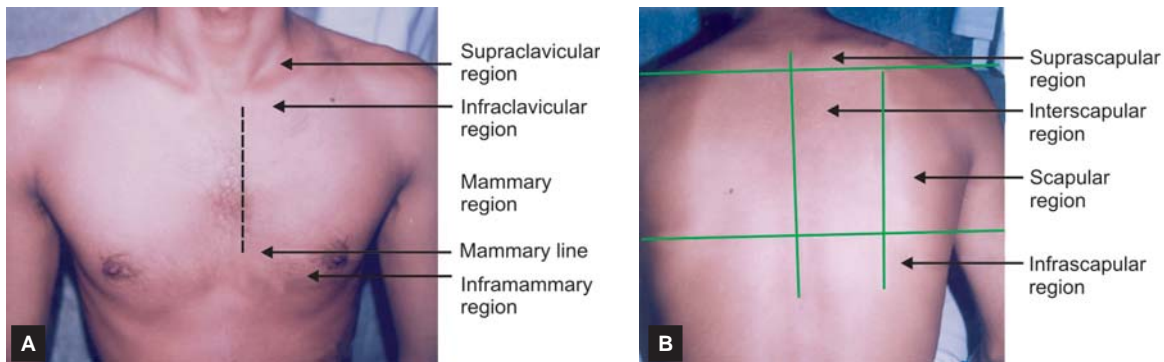


Fig. 12.6. Important areas on the chest A. Front B. Back

Box 12.3: SYMPTOMATOLOGY OF RESPIRATORY TRACT	
<i>Upper respiratory tract (nose, sinuses, pharynx, larynx and trachea)</i>	<i>Lower respiratory tract (bronchi, bronchioles and lung parenchyma (i.e. alveoli)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Nose and nasopharynx</i> e.g. nasal discharge, nasal obstruction, <i>sneezing</i>, headache, epistaxis. • <i>Pharynx</i> e.g. sore throat, fever, cough • <i>Larynx</i> e.g. hoarseness, cough, stridor, pain • <i>Trachea</i> e.g. pain, cough, stridor and dyspnoea and symptoms of mediastinal compression (dysphonia, dysphagia) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cough • Sputum (expectoration) • Haemoptysis • Pain chest • Breathlessness (dyspnoea). The differential diagnosis of an acute severe dyspnoea has been discussed. • Apnoea • Wheeze

systems and their analysis). However, for reference sake, they are given in the Box 12.3.

History

Present history

Describe according to symptoms in chronological order.

Past history

In respiratory case, history of past illness is valuable in diagnosis, prognosis and planning the treatment. If

there is history of same respiratory illness in the past and X-ray of chest has been done, summon the previous X-ray since comparison with the previous films or at least the reports, help to reach at the correct diagnosis easily. Important consequences of some common previous disorders/events are highlighted in the Table 12.1.

Family history

Ask about the following respiratory diseases in the family.

- **Tuberculosis.** It is not a familial condition but may

Table 12.1: Significance of past history

History	Relevance and Consequences
Tuberculosis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May have relapsed • Reactivation of past lesion • Development of tubercular bronchiectasis or a fungal ball (aspergilloma) in a tubercular cavity in a patient with past lesion.
Pneumonia (pleurisy)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May have caused bronchiectasis • Recurrent pulmonary infections is common in bronchiectasis, bronchial tumour, aspiration of gastric or pharyngeal contents, alcoholism, AIDS, hypogammaglobulinaemia.
Measles and whooping cough during childhood	Can be complicated by pneumonia, bronchitis and bronchiectasis
Allergic rhinitis	May lead to bronchial allergy (nasobronchial allergy) or asthma

Contd...

Contd...

Chest injury	Trauma to the chest may lead to haemothorax. Multiple fractures of ribs may lead to <i>flail chest</i> . Thickening of pleura following resolution of haemothorax may splint the lung (" <i>frozen chest</i> ").
Recent general anesthesia or loss of consciousness	Inhalation (aspiration) of nasopharyngeal secretions or a foreign body (e.g. tooth) during anaesthesia or epileptic fit may lead to pneumonia or lung abscess.
Pregnancy, prolonged immobilization, surgery, drugs such as oral contraceptives.	May lead to deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and pulmonary embolism.

be transmitted from one person to another. Any history of contact with the infected person in the family or in neighbourhood is, of course, important than the family relationship.

- Certain allergic disorders e.g. asthma, eczema and hay fever have familial or inherited predisposition.
- Chronic bronchitis is not again a familial disease but several members of a family are likely to suffer if there are poor living conditions and smoking habits in a family.

Personal and occupational history

- **Habits** e.g. alcohol, smoking. Always record smoking habits. Cigarette smoking is the single most important cause of chronic lung disease such as chronic bronchitis and emphysema, hence, can be relevant to current problems, even if the patient gave up smoking some years ago. Lung cancer is also associated with smoking.
- **Occupation** A detailed history of past and present occupations is essential. Numerous chemicals, moulds, organic dust and animal proteins can cause occupational asthma (see the Box 12.4) and extrinsic

allergic alveolitis (Table 12.2). Nonorganic particles such as silica, coal dust and asbestos are important causes of pneumoconiosis and malignant diseases (Table 12.3) Exposure to coal, silica and gold dust, welding fumes and chemical at work increases the risk of COPD (Fig. 12.7).

Box 12.4: OCCUPATIONAL ASTHMA	
Cause	Source
Non- Ig E mediated	
Isocyanates	Varnishes and industrial coating
Colophony fumes	soldering and electronic industry
Ig E-mediated	
Animals and insects allergens	Laboratories
Allergens from flour and grain	Farmers, millers and grain handlers
Proteolytic enzymes	Manufacturers of biological washing powder
Platinum salts	Metal refining
Acid anhydrides and polyamine, hardening agents	Industrial coatings

Table 12.2: Extrinsic allergic alveolitis

Disease	Cause/Source	Antigen
Farmer's lung	Mouldy hay or any other mouldy vegetable material	Aspergillus fumigatus and micropolyspora faeni
Bird fancier's lung	Handling pigeons	Avian excreta, proteins and feathers
Malt worker's lung	Turning germinating barley (moulty maltings)	Aspergillus clavatus
Humidifier fever	Contamination of air –conditioning	Thermophilic actinomycetes
Cheese workers's lung	Mouldy cheese	Aspergillus clavatus
Maple bark stripper's lung	Bark from stored maple	Cryptostroma corticale

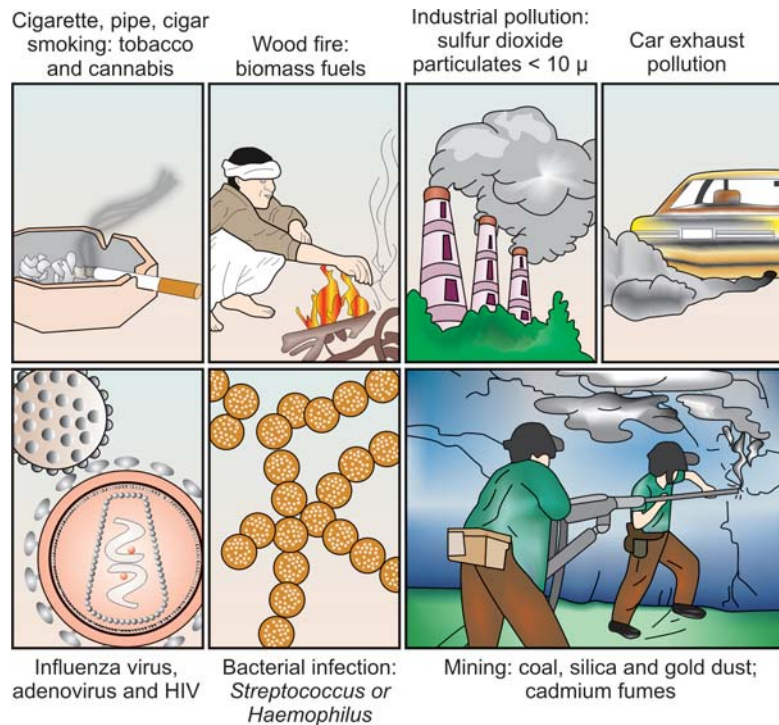


Fig. 12.7: Risk factors for COPD; Environmental factors

Table 12.3: Occupational lung diseases caused by exposure to inorganic dust

Cause	Occupation	Disease
Coal dust	Coal mining	Coal worker's pneumoconiosis
Silica	Mining, quarrying, stone dressing, metal grinding, pottery, boiler scaling	Silicosis
Asbestos	Demolition, ship - breaking, fireproof insulating material and brake-pads, pipe	Asbestosis or asbestos related diseases, interstitial fibrosis, pleural disease/ calcification, carcinoma of bronchus.
Beryllium	Aircraft, atomic energy and electronic industries	Berylliosis

Drug history: Full details of drugs already been taken or are being taken should be asked, because certain drugs may precipitate the asthma (e.g. penicillins, sulphonamides, aspirin, NSAIDs, contrast agents), may induce lung injury (amiodarone, hexamethonium, paraquat, continuous O₂, busulphan, bleomycin) or predispose to opportunistic lung infections (corticosteroids, cytotoxic drugs). ACE inhibitors are known to produce benign intractable cough.

General physical examination (GPE)

General assessment should be made by making the patient resting on a bed inclined at an angle of 45° and supported by pillows. In this chapter physical signs related to respiratory system are enumerated, which have already been detailed in Unit II on general physical examination. The points to be noted are:

1. *General appearance, rate and nature of breathing.*

Normal breathing is quiet with larger inspiration than expiration. The respiratory rate is about 14-20/min in normal adults. The various abnormal breathing patterns seen in various respiratory disorders are given in the Box 12.5.

2. *Note whether patient is comfortable or dyspnoeic at rest (Fig. 12.8). Note the grade of dyspnoea. Also inspect whether alae nasi or accessory muscles of respiration working.*

Activity of alae nasi, contractions of extrarespiratory muscles e.g. scalenei and sternomastoids on inspiration indicate severe airflow obstruction.

3. *Note the form, physique, state of nutrition and hydration. Record the weight.*

Box 12.5 BREATHING PATTERNS IN RESPIRATORY DISORDERS

Pattern	Disorder
• Rapid shallow breathing (tachypnoea)	• Restrictive lung disease • Elevated hemidiaphragm
• Slow breathing (bradypnoea)	• Respiratory depression • Narcotic poisoning
• Kussmaul's breathing (deep and rapid respiration)	• Ketoacidosis (diabetic, alcoholic and starvation) • Uraemia (renal failure)
• Cheyne-Stokes breathing (periods of hypernoea alternate with periods of apnoea)	• Normal in children • Respiratory failure • Left ventricular failure • Raised intracranial pressure • Narcotic poisoning
• Biot's breathing (ataxic, irregular breathing)	• Respiratory depression • Meningitis • Raised intracranial pressure
• Deep, stertorous breathing (rattling noise breathing)	• Deep coma • Deep sleep
• Sighing respiration	• Dying patients • Hyperventilation, hysteria

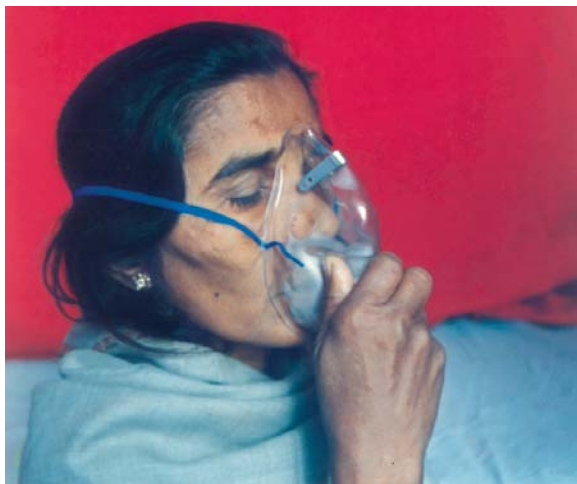


Fig. 12.8: Dyspnoea at rest in a patient with respiratory disease

4. Note any cough (long inspiratory whoops in whooping cough, loss of expiratory character of cough – bovine cough is seen in recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis), wheeze (audible inspiratory wheeze due to narrowing of upper trachea or larynx), stridor (laryngeal or tracheal obstruction) and hoarseness (recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis). Note any smell in breath.

Foul smelling breath indicates lung sepsis or bronchiectasis

Wheeze audible both to the patient and doctor occurs in cardiac and bronchial asthma



Fig. 12.9. Pursed –lip breathing in COPD. Note the sprouting of the lips during inspiration

5. Examine the face, mouth, lips and tongue for anaemia, polycythemia, central cyanosis.

Pursed -lip breathing suggests severe COPD (Fig. 12.9). This is often associated with overactivity of extrarespiratory muscles and intercostals recession during inspiration indicating severe airway obstruction and non-compliant lung.

6. Examine the eye as it is likely to be involved in many respiratory disorders;

- Phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis suggests primary tuberculosis
- Iridocyclitis may be a manifestation of tuberculosis or sarcoidosis.
- Horner's syndrome may occur due to involvement of cervical sympathetic in lung carcinoma or a tubercular lymph node mass.
- Conjunctival chemosis, suffused face, retinal vein dilatation and papilloedema may be seen in type II respiratory failure or superior vena cava obstruction.

7. Examine the neck for the followings (Read also the Chapter 8)

Look excavation of the suprasternal and supraclavicular fossae.

Excavation of the suprasternal and supraclavicular fossae during inspiration occurs in COPD, suggests advanced airflow obstruction.

Look for carotid pulsations.

Bounding carotid pulsations are seen in hypoxia and hypercapnia (type II respiratory failure).

Look for Jugular venous pulse and pressure (For this, read CVS examination)

However, raised JVP and distended neck veins indicate right ventricular failure (cor pulmonale) or superior vena cava obstruction. The difference between the two are given in the Table 12.4.

Cervical lymphadenopathy: Palpate for enlargement of lymph nodes in supraclavicular fossa, cervical and axillary regions (Read Chapter 8 examination of neck). The scalene node in particular be examined by dipping the palpating finger behind the clavicle through the clavicular insertion of sternomastoid muscle (see Fig. 8.10). The enlarged lymph nodes have a variety of causes (read lymphadenopathy as case discussion in Bed-side medicine without tears by Prof. S. N. Chugh) but infection (e.g. tuberculosis) and malignancy (lung cancer) need special mention. If malignancy lung is suspected, the abdomen should be examined for liver enlargement (secondaries liver).

Cervical nodes >1 cm in diameter are considered as abnormal, need further evaluation

In *subcutaneous emphysema* and *mediastinal emphysema*, the air usually escapes into the neck leading to localise or diffuse swelling of neck which gives crackling sensation on palpation.

The trachea: Note the position, palpable length above suprasternal notch and 'tracheal tug'. Normally the trachea is either central or slightly to the right. Normally a good length of trachea is palpable in the neck. The method of

Table 12.4: Differential diagnosis of distended neck veins

Superior vena cava obstruction	Right ventricular failure
Distended neck veins with absent venous waveforms or pulsations	Distended veins with prominent V and Y collapse
The face is swollen, plethoric with conjunctival chemosis	Swollen face without suffusion or chemosis
Prominent veins over chest	Visible veins on the chest
Associated features such as stridor (due to tracheal obstruction) or dysphagia (oesophageal obstruction) may be present	Other associated features of CHF such as cyanosis, pitting peripheral oedema, hepatomegaly and ascites may be present

palpation of trachea has been demonstrated in examination of the neck Chapter 8 in Fig. 8.17.

A reduction in palpable length of trachea and tracheal tug indicate severe airflow obstruction

The hands and feet (Read Chapter 10). The hands should be examined for *pallor* (anaemia), *redness* (polycythaemia, CO₂ narcosis), *peripheral cyanosis* and *clubbing of the fingers*. The feet are examined for *pitting oedema*.

The Skin: Skin examination as a whole is important for respiratory system. Some of the skin and subcutaneous lesions associated with respiratory diseases are listed in the Box 12.6.

Vital signs. Look for temperature, pulse, BP and respiration.

Box 12.6: SKIN LESIONS AS AN AID TO DIAGNOSIS OF RESPIRATORY DISEASE	
Lesion	Associations
<i>Erythema nodosum</i>	May be a manifestation of tuberculosis and sarcoidosis
<i>Cutis vulgaris, sacrofuloderma</i>	May indicate tuberculosis elsewhere
<i>Scar and sinus</i>	May be due to ruptured cold abscess or actinomycetes of lymph node
<i>Bruises/purpuric spots</i>	Bleeding disorder
<i>Cutaneous sarcoids and pernio</i>	May be associated with intrathoracic malignancies
<i>Herpetetic vesicular eruptions (painful)</i>	May indicate the cause of unilateral chest pain
<i>Skin metastases or subcutaneous nodules</i>	May indicate malignancy lung
<i>Enlarged vascular (arterial) anastomotic channels</i>	Coarctation of aorta
<i>Distended veins on the chest wall</i>	Superior vena cava obstruction
<i>Diffuse swelling of the chest wall, neck and face with crackling sensation on palpation</i>	Subcutaneous emphysema (air leakage into subcutaneous tissue- a complication of intercostal tube drainage or a pneumothorax or acute severe asthma)

Other features

In a patient of respiratory disease, one should look for the signs of complications such as

- Low grade fever, weight loss and malaise indicate tuberculosis and cachexia of malignancy.
- Peripheral signs of right ventricular failure e.g. orthopnoea, raised JVP, cyanosis, pitting oedema and hepatomegaly.
- Peripheral signs of type II respiratory failure (CO₂ narcosis) should be sought because these patients may not appear distressed despite being critically ill.
- Look for level of consciousness (response to command and ability to cough) and signs of CO₂ retention (warm extremities, bounding/collapsing pulses and flapping tremors on outstretched hands).
- Look for signs of anaemia (pale conjunctivae, tongue, mucous membrane, nails and palmar creases) and polycythaemia (suffused face, cyanosis).

Examination of chest

Examination of chest includes examination of anterior (including lateral) and posterior chest. It is described under four heads;

1. **Inspection** – looking at the chest.
2. **Palpation** – confirming the findings of inspection.
3. **Percussion** – to define resonant and dull areas on the chest.
4. **Auscultation** – to hear normal and abnormal sounds.

Examination of anterior chest including lateral chest

The patient should be examined in the supine position with arms somewhat abducted. A patient who is having difficulty in breathing on lying down, should be examined in the sitting position or with the head of the bed elevated to a comfortable level.

Persons with severe COPD prefer to sit leaning forward, with lip-pursed during expiration and arms supported on their knees or a table (Fig. 12.9).



1. **Shape of the chest.** Observe the followings
 - Symmetry
 - Antero-posterior (AP) and transverse diameter
 - Hollowing, flattening or bulging
 - Subcostal angle
 - Position of shoulders and spine

The normal shape of the chest is described in the Box 12.7 and abnormalities/deformities of the chest are given in the Table 12.5 and demonstrated in Fig. 12.10.

Box 12.7: NORMAL SHAPE OF THE CHEST AND ITS DIMENSIONS

- Normal chest is bilaterally symmetrical with smooth contours and slight recession in infraclavicular regions.
- It is wider than it is deep. Its transverse diameter is more than the AP diameter, the ratio being 7:5. On cross section, it is ellipsoidal.
- The subcostal angle is acute (<70°)
- The interspaces are oblique; wider anteriorly than posteriorly

Unilateral prominence of the chest. One side of the chest may become prominent or protuberant in pleural effusion, pneumothorax tumours, aneurysm and empyema necessitans. **Localised bulge** may occur in aortic aneurysm (see Fig. 11.19), pericardial effusion, liver abscess etc.

Unilateral or localized depression of the chest: Chest may be unilaterally depressed in fibrosis, collapse, thickened pleura and unilateral muscle wasting of chest.

Flat chest: The AP diameter is decreased and chest becomes flat. It is seen in children due to adenoid/lymphoid hypertrophy, rickets and advanced tuberculosis.

2. Respiratory rate and rhythm

The adult respiratory rate is 14-20 min and respiratory rhythm is regular with inspiration longer than expiration. Abnormal respiratory pattern have already been given in the Box 12.5.

3. Type of breathing movements

Note the type of breathing and the presence of any abnormal inspiratory or expiratory movements.

- In majority of the males and some females, the normal breathing is *abdominothoracic* (mainly abdominal because men rely more on the diaphragm for respiration).
- In majority of females, the normal breathing is *thoracoabdominal* (mainly thoracic as females rely on intercostals muscles than diaphragm for respiration).

Abnormal breathing movements are:

- (i) **Thoracic breathing.** The respiratory movements are exclusively thoracic. This occurs when diaphragmatic movements are inhibited either by paralysis or by abdominal pain or restricted by raised intra-abdominal pressure caused by ascites, gaseous distension of the bowel, a large ovarian cyst or pregnancy.

Table 12.5: Deformities of the Chest**Deformity****Fig. 12.10**

Barrel shaped chest: The A.P. diameter is increased, becomes equal or more than transverse. The subcostal angle is wide (obtuse). The sternum is more arched, spines become unduly concave forwards. The ribs become less oblique. This shape is normal during infancy but abnormally seen in COPD (emphysema)



Funnel chest: (Cobbler's chest, pectus excavatum). There is hollowing of the sternum. Compression of heart and great vessels may cause murmurs. Due to sternal depression, the normal heart shadow may appear enlarged on chest X-ray (Pomfret's heart). This may be a congenital, or an occupational deformity in cobbler's.



Pigeon chest: (Keeled chest, pectus carinatum). The sternum is displaced anteriorly, increasing the AP diameter and leading to depression on either side of sternum. This is characteristically seen in rickets. Other signs of rickets (*rickety rosary* – beading of costochondral junctions, Harrison's sulcus – a transverse groove passing outwards from the xiphisternum to the mid-axillary line) may be present.



Traumatic flail chest: The side of the chest is depressed due to fracture of multiple ribs resulting in paradoxical movement of the thorax i.e. the injured area moves inwards during inspiration and outwards during expiration.



Dumbbell shape chest. The chest is protuberant anteroposteriorly at its middle and the heart is placed obliquely in it.



Kyphoscoliosis: There is backwards bending (kyphosis) due to thoracic convexity and lateral bending (scoliosis) due to lateral and rotatory curvature of thoracic spines. This deformity may be congenital and associated with hereditary ataxias. The asymmetry of the chest may decrease the size of thoracic cage and restrict lung expansion.



(ii) **Abdominal breathing.** The respiratory movements are exclusively abdominal with minimal thoracic movements. It occurs when there is restriction of chest movements either by ankylosing spondylitis or paralysis of intercostals muscles or pleural pain.

4. Lesion on the chest wall (skin and subcutaneous tissue)

Look for *cutaneous* (e.g. eruptions, purpuric spots, bruises, scars, sinuses) and *subcutaneous lesions* (e.g. inflammatory swelling, subcutaneous tumour, nodule, sebaceous cyst, sarcoid nodules, vascular anomalies). These have already been highlighted during general physical examination.

For lesion of the breasts (Read Chapter 9).

5. Movements of the chest (expansion of the chest)

Observe the chest movements and compare the range of chest movements on the two sides during normal and deep breathing.

- To compare the range of movements in the infraclavicular regions, position the patient supine, shoulders relaxed and symmetrical with the head resting on a pillow and the head and trunk in a straight line. Then ask the patient to take deep steady breaths while inspecting the infraclavicular regions tangentially.
- Assess lower anterior chest movements by inspecting the patient semirecumbent and breathing deeply.
- Note the intercostals recession or indrawing of the intercostals spaces during movements of the chest.
- Observe the prominence of accessory muscles of respiration.

Normally both sides of the chest move more uniformly without any indrawing of intercostals spaces. Accessory muscles of respiration are usually not required for act of breathing, hence, are not prominent. The alae nasi are not active.

During the movements of the chest, there is usually expansion of the chest, hence, both are interchangeably used. The causes of diminished movements or expansion of the chest are given in the Table 12.6.

Table 12.6: Causes of diminished movement/expansion of the chest

Unilateral diminished movements/ expansion	Bilateral diminished movements/ expansion
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Massive collapse of the lung (a foreign body, bronchial adenoma/carcinoma) • Consolidation • Consolidation collapse • Fibrosis of the lung 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchial asthma
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thickened pleura • Pleural effusion • Pneumothorax or hydropneumothorax 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • COPD • Extrinsic allergic alveolitis • Bilateral pulmonary fibrosis (idiopathic, drug induced) • Guillain-Barre syndrome • Respiratory muscle paralysis • Poisonings e.g. narcotics

There can be diminished movements/expansion of the chest in a localized part due to underlying lung or pleural disease such as fibrosis, collapse of the lung, localised pleural effusion.

A good test of the diaphragm is to ask the patient to sniff vigorously; patient with diaphragmatic paralysis is unable to do so.

In normal movements of the chest, the lower parts move first followed by the upper part, but in COPD (emphysema) with barrel-shaped chest, the chest moves as a whole (*en bloc*).

- If the patient is breathless, examine him/her in semirecumbent or sitting position. Note any abnormality of inspiratory or expiratory movement.
 - (i) Abnormal inspiratory movements produced by contractions of accessory muscles of respiration (sternomastoids, scaleni and trapezii) are seen in patients with gross overdistension of lungs (emphysema or severe asthma Fig. 12.11). More violent inspiratory movements of similar character are seen in laryngeal or tracheal obstruction. The intercostal recession or indrawing of the ribs, excavation of supraclavicular fossae and suprasternal notch and widening of the subcostal angle invariably accompany these movements in patients with COPD (Fig. 12.12).
 - (ii) Paradoxical movements of chest occur in flail chest (read abnormalities of chest).
 - (iii) Abnormal expiratory movements are produced by contractions of abdominal muscles and latissimus dorsi. These are observed when either the compliance of the lung (elastic recoil of the lung)



Fig. 12.11: Severe asthma in a young person. Note the presence of indrawing or recession of intercostal spaces and contraction of extrarespiratory muscles of respiration

is reduced (e.g. emphysema) or there is severe airway obstruction (bronchitis or bronchial asthma). Such patients prefer to sit upright, gasping on a bed table or the back of a chair. Many patients have purse-lip breathing. (Fig. 12.9).

6. The cardiac apex, trachea and mediastinum

Look at the position of the apex beat- (Read CVS examination)

Look at the trachea for any deviation. This finding has to be confirmed on palpation (the method of palpation has been discussed under examination of neck-thyroid and trachea Chapter 8)

On inspection, sternomastoid muscles become unduly prominent on the side to which trachea has been shifted. This is called Trail's sign (Fig. 8.19)

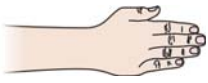
- Look for mediastinal shift. The position of the mediastinum is decided by the position of the trachea and that of cardiac impulse (apex beat). The mediastinal shift occurs in a variety of diseases given in the Box 12.8

Box 12.8 POSITION OF THE MEDIASTINUM IN RESPIRATORY DISEASES

Central	Pulled to the same side	Pushed to the opposite side
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchitis • Asthma • Pulmonary suppuration e.g. lung abscess, bronchiectasis • Consolidation • Emphysema • Interstitial fibrosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Collapse • Fibrosis • Thickened pleura • Pneumonectomy or lobectomy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pleural effusion • Pneumothorax • Hydropneumothorax or pyopneumothorax



Fig. 12.12: Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Note the barrel shaped chest, excavation of the supraclavicular fossae, prominence of sternomastoid and recession of intercostal spaces

Palpation**Palpation has four potential uses**

1. Identification of tender areas.
2. Assessment of observed abnormalities (e.g. to confirm the findings of inspection).
3. Further assessment of chest expansion by measurements
4. Assessment of tactile vocal fremitus.

Steps of examination

Palpate the chest wall for any swelling or bony prominences

Fluctuation sign is positive in an abscess on the chest wall

Rickety rosary or scorbutic rosary produce swelling of costochondral junctions

Bony swelling is a hard mass

A crepitus (crackling sound) will be produced on palpation of subcutaneous emphysema

Identify the site of tenderness so as to find out the cause of pain. The causes of pain and tenderness are given in the Box 12.9.

Box 12.9:**CAUSES OF PAIN AND TENDERNESS OF CHEST**

- A recent chest wall injury
- Inflammatory myositis
- Fibromyalgia- musculoskeletal pain where, as a rule, localised tender spots can be discovered on pressure.
- Secondaries in the ribs
- Herpes zoster intercostal neuralgia.
- Pleurisy (a pleural rub may be palpated)
- Pericarditis (a pericardial rub may be palpated).

Note the position of cardiac impulse. Palpate the trachea for any deviation

Displacement of cardiac impulse alone may occur in chest deformities such as scoliosis (the commoner form, with convexity to the right causing displacement of the cardiac impulse to the left and vice versa) and funnel chest central depression (displaces the cardiac impulse to the left). The displacement may be due to cardiovascular causes (Read CVS examination) and respiratory causes (Read displacement of the apex beat under inspection of anterior chest).

The shift of the trachea and the mediastinum may be due to pull or push. The causes of mediastinal shift have already been discussed in Box 12.7.

- Assess the other abnormalities seen on inspection.



Fig. 12.13A: Manual measurement of chest expansion on the front. Note the placement of hands for this measurement



Fig. 12.13B: Manual measurement of chest expansion on the back

Confirm the findings of inspection by palpation such as skin lesion, pulsations, venous hum or thrill.

- **The observed asymmetrical expansion of the chest must be confirmed by palpation.** The method is described in the Box 12.10. Measurement of expansion is done by a tape measure (Fig. 12.14).

Box 12.10:**MEASUREMENT OF EXPANSION BY PALPATION (FIGS 12.13A AND B)**

Place your thumbs along a costal margin, your hands along the chest wall laterally. Shift the tips of the thumbs a bit medially so that they meet in the centre. Ask the patient to inhale deeply. Observe how far your thumb diverge as the thorax expands. The distance between the thumbs indicate degree of chest expansion. If one thumb remains closer to the midline, this confirms the diminished expansion on that side. This gives you an idea of expansion of each side as well as total chest expansion. Repeat the process on the back

Record with a tape measure the maximum inspiratory/ expiratory difference in the lower chest (at the level of nipple in males and 4th or 5th intercostal space in females). This gives you actual total expansion not expansion of each hemithorax.



Fig. 12.14: Measurement of expansion of the chest by measuring tape. Encircle the tape around the chest at the level of nipple. Note the reading of the tape. Ask the patient to take breath as deep as he can while you let loose the tape. Now note the reading during full inspiration. The difference between the two reading indicates expansion of chest

Palpation of intercostals spaces. *In case of abnormal chest, palpate the intercostal spaces with pulp of the fingers on each side at corresponding levels to know any widening or narrowing.*

Narrowing or overcrowding of intercostal spaces on one side occurs in atelectasis, collapse, fibrosis, thickened pleura, pneumonectomy/lobectomy. Bilateral narrowing is seen in interstitial lung diseases or bilateral pulmonary fibrosis. Widening of spaces on one side occurs in pleural effusion and pneumothorax; and on both sides in emphysema (COPD).

Assessment of tactile vocal fremitus. Tactile vocal fremitus refers to perception of vibrations transmitted to

chest wall from the voice box (larynx) via the tracheobronchial tree during the act of phonation.

Mechanism: During production of sound, vibrations are produced from the larynx (voice box) which get transmitted from the larynx to trachea, bronchi, lungs and then to the chest wall and set the chest wall to vibrate. These vibrations may be detected by palpation with the palm of the hand placed flat on the chest.

Variations. The tactile vocal fremitus is diminished or absent in females because the fundamental frequency of female voice is often higher than that of the lungs. On the other hand, vocal fremitus can be better appreciated in children than in adults because fundamental frequency though also high in children but corresponds to fundamental frequency of small lungs.

Method (Fig. 12.15)

Vocal fremitus is detected and compared on both sides of the chest using the ball or ulnar surface of the hand when patient is asked to repeat some words, say, *ninety-nine* or *one-one-one*. The examining hand perceives distinct vibrations. Points to be noted in tactile vocal fremitus are given in the Box 12.11. The causes of increased, decrease or absent tactile vocal fremitus are listed in the Table 12.7. The sites of vocal fremitus are given in Fig. 12.3C.

Box 12.11: POINTS TO NOTED DURING TACTILE VOCAL FREMITUS

- Intensity of the sound perceived i.e. increased, decreased or absent.
- To determine whether change in intensity is localized or generalized. This is done by comparing the vocal fremitus in corresponding areas on the two sides of the chest. (Fig. 12.15).
- Do not include cardiac area for comparison of vocal fremitus on the corresponding area on the other side as it is normally diminished in this area.



Figs 12.15: Vocal fremitus. A. Comparison is made on the both sides at corresponding areas from above downwards toward lower part of chest. B. Sites for palpating vocal fremitus

The causes of increased, decreased or absent tactile vocal fremitus are listed in the Table 12.7.

Table 12.7: Abnormalities of tactile vocal fremitus		
Increased	Decreased	Absent
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consolidation • A large superficial cavity 	<p>A. Bronchopulmonary diseases e.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchial asthma • Emphysema • Pulmonary fibrosis • Lung collapse with obstructed bronchus <p>B. Pleural disease e.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thickened pleura 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pleural effusion • Pneumothorax • Hydro or pyopneumothorax

Other palpable vibrations

Normal lung does not produce any vibrations during breathing, but sometimes can be felt in certain diseases: *A palpable pleural friction rub*: It is produced due to rubbing of the parietal pleura against visceral pleura towards the end of inspiration or during beginning of expiration. It occurs in pleurisy due to any cause e.g. pleurodynia, consolidation, pulmonary infarction, early pleural effusion. It is felt over the area of pleura involved.

Palpable crackles or rales: Coarse crackles or rales may become palpable in bronchiectasis and pulmonary fibrosis.

Palpable wheeze/rhonchi: Wheeze may be audible as well as palpable in bronchial asthma and in acute exacerbations of COPD.



The aim of percussion is to compare the degree of resonance over equivalent areas on the two sides of the chest and to define any area of abnormality on percussion note.

Normal areas of resonance and dullness

The regions of the thorax where a resonant percussion note is normally found correspond approximately to the surface marking of the lungs. The heart normally produces an area of dullness to the left of the sternum from the 3rd to 5th space. Percuss the left lung lateral to it. The liver dullness starts from the 5th intercostal space downwards on the right side.

Method: The technique of percussion is illustrated in the Fig. 12.16. The steps of percussion are discussed in the Box 12.12.

Box 12.12: THE METHOD OF PERCUSSION FOR RIGHT HANDED DOCTOR/STUDENT (FIG. 12.16)

- The middle finger (pleximeter finger) of the left hand is placed on the part to be percussed usually an intercostal space and others fingers of the hand are slightly separated from the middle finger.
- Make a good contact of the middle finger by pressing the finger firmly
- Strike the back of middle phalanx with the tip of the right middle finger held at right angle. The movement should be at the wrist rather than at elbow so as to produce 'hammer effect'
- As soon as the blow is delivered, the striking finger must be raised each time
- Compare the note obtained from identical sites on two sides
- Map out the area of impaired dullness (including cardiac and hepatic) by percussing from a resonant to a dull area but not otherwise.
- In woman, to enhance percussion, gently displace the breast with your left hand while percussing with the right.

Mechanism. Percussion of the chest sets the chest wall and underlying tissues into motions, producing audible sounds and palpable vibrations. Percussion helps you to establish whether the underlying tissues are air-filled (pneumothorax), fluid filled (pleural effusion) or solid (tumour). It penetrates only about 5-7 cm into the chest, therefore, will not help to detect the deep seated lesions.

Note: "Practice makes the man perfect". Percussion is a crude method of examination, can be rather uncomfortable to the patient if performed repeatedly and inexpertly. Therefore, at first percussion can be practiced on any surface. As you practice, listen to different percussion notes at different area of material and different parts of the body.

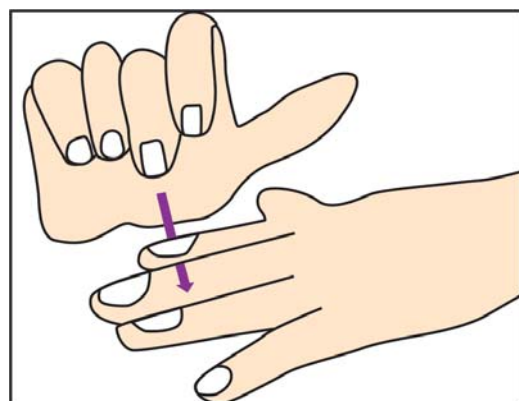


Fig. 12.16: Method to deliver the stroke with plexor (tapping finger on pleximeter finger) The corresponding areas to be percussed are labelled in Fig. 12.17

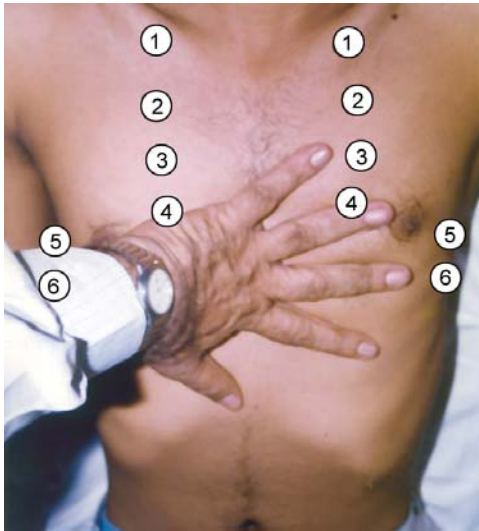


Fig. 12.17: Percussion of the front of the chest. Note the placement of fingers parallel to intercostal spaces. The areas to be percussed are labelled and encircled

Percussion notes. With your plexor or tapping finger, deliver the lightest percussion that produces a clear note (Fig. 12.16). A thick chest wall may need heavier percussion than a thin one. However, if a louder note is needed, apply more pressure with the pleximeter finger (this is more effective for increasing the percussion note volume than tapping harder with the plexor finger).

While percussing the lower posterior chest, stand somewhat to the side rather than directly behind the patient. This allows you to place your pleximeter finger more firmly on the chest and your tapping is more effective, making a better percussion note.

While comparing two areas, use the same percussion technique in both areas. Percuss or strike twice in each locations (Fig. 12.17). It is easier to detect differences in percussion notes by comparing one area with another than by striking respectively in one place.

Rules of percussion

- Always percuss from resonant to dull area over one side of the chest. The vice versa is not true.
- Compare the corresponding areas on two side of the chest simultaneously.

While the patient keeps both arms crossed in front of the chest, percuss the chest in a symmetric fashion from above (apices) to below (bases of the lung). Percuss first one side of the chest and then the other at each level and at similar locations marked in Fig. 12.17. Omit the

areas over the scapulae as thickness of the muscles and bone alter the percussion note over the lungs. Identify and locate the area of any abnormal percussion note.

Normal lung resonance is replaced by dullness when fluid or solid tissue is interposed between air containing lungs and the chest wall beneath your percussing fingers, for example.

- Dull note over consolidation is due to solidification of the lung as the alveoli are filled with fluid and blood cells. Similarly dull note on percussion is elicited in a solid growth (tumour) or collapse (airless alveoli) and fibrosis of the lung.
- Stony dull note (a marked resistance to pleximeter finger on percussion) is elicited when either the fluid (pleural effusion) or blood (hemothorax) or pus (empyema) occupies the pleural space.

Learn to identify five percussion notes. You can practice few of them on yourself. Normal lungs are resonant. The other percussion notes are described along with illustrations in Fig. 12.18 given in the Box 12.13.

Box 12.13: PERCUSSION NOTE	
Type (Fig. 12.18)	Detected over
Tympanic (drum-like resonance)	Stomach or air filled hollow viscus, pneumothorax, superficial empty cavity
Resonant	Normal lung
Hyper-resonant	Pneumothorax, emphysema, asthma, air filled large bulla or a thin walled cavity, eventration of diaphragm
Impaired/dull note	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consolidation • Collapse • Fibrosis
Stony dull	Thickened pleura Pleural effusion, empyema

Normal liver dullness and span (Fig. 12.19). Percuss for liver dullness on the right side from above downwards in midclavicular line and mark the point of dullness. Now percuss from below (right lumbar region) upwards and make the point of dullness. The distance between two points indicates liver span. The normal liver dullness lies in the right 5th intercostal space in mid-clavicular line, in the 7th space in anterior axillary line and in the 9th space in scapular line.



Fig. 12.19: Normal liver dullness and liver span

Liver dullness is pushed up (e.g. 4th intercostal space or above) in mid clavicular line in amoebic and pyogenic abscess of the liver, collapse of the lower lobe of the lung, diaphragmatic paralysis and eventration of right dome of diaphragm. It may be pushed down to 6th space in emphysema and right-sided pneumothorax and right-sided subphrenic abscess.

Normal liver span is 10-14 cm in midclavicular line. Liver is said to be shrunken if span is <10 cm and enlarged if span is >14 cm. Liver span is reduced in acute fulminant hepatitis and enlarged in hepatomegaly due to any cause. However, change in liver span elicited on percussion must be confirmed on USG of liver because reduction of liver span carries prognostic and therapeutic significance.

Normal cardiac dullness. The normal cardiac dullness is defined in the 3rd and 4th left interspace along the parasternal line and 5th space upto midclavicular line by starting percussion from anterior axillary line (i.e. the lowest cardiac dullness corresponds to the apex beat).

The cardiac dullness is masked or obliterated in severe obstructive emphysema or left sided pneumothorax. It may be increased in cardiomegaly and pericardial effusion.

It may get merged with dullness of left pleural effusion, if fluid is massive.

Normal Traube's area of resonance (Fig. 12.20). It is bounded above by the lung resonance, below by the costal margins, on the right by left border of the liver dullness and on the left by normal splenic dullness.

Percussion note is resonant because normally stomach occupies this area (tympanic note). It becomes dull in left-sided pleural effusion. Fluid or solids in the stomach or colon may also produce dullness in this area. This area is known for splenic dullness but normally splenic dullness is hidden within dullness of other posterior tissues. Tympanitic note of the Traube's area is also lost in splenomegaly.

Identification of descent of diaphragm or diaphragmatic excursion by tidal percussion. First, define the level of diaphragmatic dullness on anterior chest in midclavicular level during quiet respiration. You can infer the probable location of the diaphragm from the level of dullness.



Fig. 12.20: Percussion for the Traube's area

To estimate the extent of diaphragmatic excursion, one has to determine the distance between the level of dullness on full expiration and the level of dullness on full inspiration. Tidal percussion is used for this purpose but this procedure is of little practical value. This estimate usually does not correlate well with the radiological assessment of diaphragmatic movement.

Normal diaphragmatic excursion is 5 to 6 cm. An abnormal high level of diaphragmatic dullness suggests subpulmonic pleural effusion, or a high diaphragm as in atelectasis or diaphragmatic paralysis

Abnormalities of percussion note

The various abnormal percussion notes and the conditions in which they can be elicited have been listed already in the Box 12.13.

When an abnormality of the percussion note is due to lung consolidation or collapse, it is usually possible to identify the lobe or lobes involved by reference to the surface marking of the fissures but unless a lobe is totally solidified (consolidated), the area over which the percussion note is impaired is often much smaller than would be expected from the surface marking. This is even more striking when a lobe is collapsed.

With a pleural effusion the area of stony dull note is unrelated to the surface anatomy of the lobes. In localized effusion, however, the area of dullness is limited while in small effusion, dullness occurs to over the lower part of the hemithorax. Large effusions may have dullness that rises in the axilla (rising dullness) but this sign is lost in case fluid is replaced by pus (empyema thoracic) or it gets loculated. Pleural effusion of considerable size may not be detected during examination of anterior chest when the patient is in a semirecumbent position because gravity causes the pleural fluid to accumulate posteriorly. When there are no pleural adhesions, the chest X-ray shows an effusion to have a curved upper border.

The pitfalls of percussion are discussed in the Box 12.14.

Shifting dullness. The dullness in the pleural effusion is due to fluid but there is no shifting dullness because there is no space for the fluid to shift. In case of hydropneumothorax in sitting position, the upper area occupied by the air is hyper-resonant, while the lower area occupied by free fluid is dull/stony dull. On changing the posture to lying down (supine), this area of dullness changes along the lower part of the whole anterior chest as fluid splashes over a wider area by displacing the air. This is called *shifting dullness*, is

Box 12.14:

PITFALLS OF PERCUSSION

Do not rely too much on percussion note alone in localizing the pulmonary or pleural lesion. Percussion combined with auscultation for breath sounds and voice sound are more rewarding. However, small lesions, such as areas of segmental collapse or consolidation and deep-seated lesions may not produce any abnormal physical signs. Even with larger lesion, the signs may be partly or completely obscured if the lungs are emphysematous. Generalized hyper-resonance on both sides is rarely of diagnostic significance.

- A small lesion may not cause any change in percussion note.
- Pleural fluid <200ml may not be detected on percussion, needs USG for confirmation.

characteristic of hydropneumothorax or a large cavity or a cyst containing both air and fluid.

To elicit the horizontal fluid level in hydropneumothorax

Patient is made to sit comfortably with arms above the head and chest fully exposed.

Percussion is done from above downwards in the front along midclavicular line, lateral chest wall along midaxillary line and back (along scapular line) in the conventional way. During such percussions a point of dullness is reached on the front, lateral chest wall and back where these points are marked with skin pencil. These three points are joined transversely and horizontal line is drawn encircling the affected chest wall. This is upper border of fluid level.

At the upper border of fluid level in hydropneumothorax, there is stony dull area but above it there is hyperresonant area due to air. The transition between the two different notes gives a clear cut horizontal level.

Percussion myokymia is noticed during percussion in chronically ill debilitated cachexic patients where a percussion stroke over the front of chest causes a transient twitchings of the muscles, more marked on the affected side. This may be seen in an advanced case of pulmonary tuberculosis.

Hyper-resonance. A percussion note having pitch in between normal resonance and tympany is taken as hyper-resonant. It can normally be elicited over the normal lung tissue when the chest is held in full inspiration. Pathologically, it occurs in pneumothorax, emphysema, a large cavity or cyst or bullae and in eventration of the diaphragm (see the Box 12.13).

A hyper-resonant note with a boxy quality is elicited just above the level of pleural effusion. This is called *skodaic resonance*.

A band of lung resonance (*Kronig's isthmus*) 5 to 6 cm in width is present in the lower part of the neck connecting the anterior and posterior aspects of side of the chest. It is bounded medially by neck muscles and laterally by shoulder muscles. Its absence on either side indicate apical pulmonary fibrosis while its increased width bilaterally suggest voluminous lungs of emphysema.

Auscultation



Auscultation of the lungs is the most important examining technique for assessing the airflow through the tracheobronchial tree. Together with percussion, it also helps to assess the condition of the surrounding lungs and pleural space. It is extremely valuable for diagnosis of most of the pulmonary as well as pleural lesions. In contrast, auscultation is unhelpful in the early diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis, which may reach an advanced stage before any abnormality can be detected. Auscultation involves;

1. Listening to the sounds generated by breathing (breath sounds)
2. Listening for any added or adventitious sounds
3. If abnormality is suspected, listening to the sounds of the patients spoken or whispered voice (words) as they are transmitted through the chest wall.

The points to be noted on auscultation are given in the Box 12.15.

Box 12.15. POINTS TO BE NOTED ON CHEST AUSCULTATION

1. Breath sounds

- Vesicular
- Bronchovesicular
- Bronchial

2. Vocal resonance (increased or decreased). If increased, then hear the transmitted sounds.

- Bronchophony
- Whispering pectoriloquy
- Aegophony

3. Adventitious (added) sounds

- Crackles (crepitation word replaced)
- Wheezes (rhonchi)
- Pleural rub

Method of auscultation (Fig. 12.21)

- The patient should be in the usual position for examining the chest

- Listen with diaphragm of a stethoscope after explaining the patient to breath deeply through an open mouth. You can switch on to hear with the bell of stethoscope if you suspect abnormal sounds being produced by the diaphragm, sounds from bed clothes, gowns and chest itself
- Pattern of auscultation is similar to percussion, moving from one side to the other and comparing corresponding areas of the lungs. (see Fig. 12.17)
- If you hear or suspect abnormal sounds, auscultate adjacent areas so that you can fully describe the extent of any abnormality.
- Listen to at least one full breath in each location.
- Auscultate in two stages; compare first the amplitude of the breath sounds and then vocal resonance.

Avoid prolonged deep breathing as it may cause giddiness or tetany and also avoid auscultation with 2-3 cm of the midline.

Auscultate anteriorly from above the clavicle down to 6th rib, laterally from the axilla to the 8th rib and posteriorly down to the level of the 11th rib.

While listening to the breath sounds;

- Note the quality and amplitude of inspiration and expiration.
- Identify if there is a silent gap between inspiration and expiration.
- Listen for added (adventitious) sounds.

Intensity of breath sounds may decrease when airflow is decreased or when transmission of the sound to the chest is poor.

A gap suggests bronchial breath sounds.

Added sounds are discussed further in this chapter



Fig. 12.21: Auscultation of the anterior chest

Auscultation in special situations

1. If there is difficulty in distinguishing between coarse crackles and a pleural rub, repeat auscultation after the patient has been asked to cough forcefully

Forceful coughing changes the character or intensity of crackles but not of pleural rub.

2. Do not ask the patient with a severe pleuritic pain (consolidation) to take frequent deep breaths or to cough. Test the vocal resonance first, if an area of increased vocal resonance is found, then ask the patient to take one or two deep breaths, and now bronchial breathing will be audible in the same area.
3. When the abnormal breath sounds are heard, define the extent of the area by moving the stethoscope with each breath from the normal to abnormal zone and note the level at which the intensity of breath sounds changes sharply.

Breath sounds

Breath sounds are produced by passage (rushing) of the air through tracheobronchial tree. The breath sounds have intensity and quality. The intensity of breath sounds may be normal, reduced or increased (see the Box 12.16). Since the intensity and quality of breath sounds being variable from patient to patient and in different situations, it is only by repeated auscultations of the chest of many patients one becomes familiar with normal variations and learns to recognize the abnormalities

Classification

Breath sounds are classified into three main types e.g. *vesicular*, *bronchial* and *bronchovesicular*. Normally when person breathes, air enters through the tracheobronchial tree and the breathing remains bronchial upto tertiary bronchioles (air passes through conduit pipes), gets filtered by the alveoli and converted into vesicular which is heard over the chest. This is the reason, that we have a normal loud bronchial breathing over trachea. Any disease process that either causes collapse of the alveoli or destroys the alveoli, or solidifies the alveoli produces bronchial breathing (as heard in collapse, consolidation, etc.) because the filtering effect of alveoli is abolished.

The type of breath sound depends on the *intensity*, *pitch* and the *relative duration of their inspiratory and expiratory phases* (Table 12.8).

Box 12.16: INTENSITY OF BREATH SOUNDS		
Diminished	Increased	Absent breath sound
A. Decreased airflow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Localised airway obstruction • COPD • Paralysis of respiratory muscles B. Extensive destruction of the lung e.g. interstitial fibrosis C. Poor transmission of the sounds <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obesity (thick chest wall) • Oedematous chest wall • Thickening of pleura • Pleural effusion/empyema • Pneumothorax • Emphysema 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thin chest persons • Bronchovesicular or bronchial breath sounds are louder than vesicular breath sounds (Read the causes of bronchial sounds) but this is not hard and fast rule. It is possible for bronchial sounds to be much quieter than the vesicular sounds heard elsewhere in the chest as, for example, when there is a pleural effusion overlying consolidation (synpneumonic effusion) • Fibrocavitary lesions or bronchiectasis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large pneumothorax • Massive pleural effusion • Collapsed of the lung with obstructed bronchus

Vesicular breath sound (Fig. 12.22A)

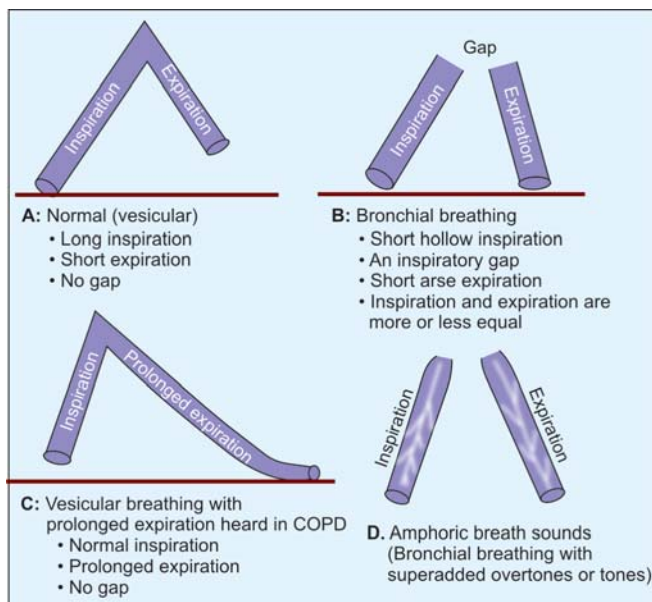
It is the sound produced by passage (rushing) of air in and out of the alveoli. Normally the alveoli of the lung selectively filter out or dampen the higher frequency sounds but transmit the lower frequency sound, hence the breath sounds are quieter and vesicular in type. It is normally heard all over the chest.

Variations. Common variations are;

1. *Diminished vesicular sound* - The causes have already listed in the Box 12.16.
2. *Vesicular breath sounds with prolonged expiration* (Fig. 12.22C). This is due to increased airway resistance during expiration either due to spasm or obstruction resulting in prolongation of expiration which becomes equal to inspiration. The causes are;
 - Bronchial asthma
 - Chronic bronchitis and emphysema (COPD)
3. *Harsh vesicular*. In this intensities of both inspiration and expiration are increased. It is heard in compensatory emphysema.

Table 12.8: Characteristic of breath sounds

Type	Character	Intensity	Duration	Gap between inspiration and expiration
<i>Vesicular</i> Fig. 12.22A (produced by passage of air in and out of alveoli)	Rustling (sound like dry leaves blown by the wind or rustling of hair in front of ear)	High pitched, low intensity sound, heard normally all over the chest	Expiration is louder than inspiration	No gap (i.e. continuous sound)
<i>Bronchial</i> Fig. 12.22B (Alveolar part is cut off, bronchial part intact)	Blowing or hollow	Low or high pitched, high intensity. Inspiration being active is louder than passive expiration. It is an abnormal sound	Intermediate Inspiratory phase is equal or shorter than expiratory phase	Definite silent gap present (discontinuous sound)
<i>Bronchovesicular</i>	Harse	Intermediate between vesicular and bronchial	Expiration is slightly longer, may be normal or abnormal	Gap may or may not be present.



Note: The width of bar indicates intensity

Figs 12.22 A to D: Respiratory breath sounds (diagram)

Bronchial breath sound (Fig. 12.22B)

It is the sound produced by passage of the air through larger airways (bronchi and bronchioles), and the lung between these airways and the chest wall is airless with the result sound is conducted from the bronchial tree to the chest wall without undergoing the process of filtration by alveoli (alveolar part of inspiration is cut off resulting in a gap between inspiration and expiration). The causes of bronchial breathing are given in the Table 12.9.

Note: the confirmatory sign of bronchial breath sound is increased vocal resonance with whispering pectoriloquy over the area of bronchial breathing.

Table 12.9: Causes of bronchial breath sounds

High-pitched bronchial sound	Low-pitched bronchial sound
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pneumonic consolidation. Large superficial pulmonary cavity Collapsed lung or lobe when surrounding large bronchi are patent Above the level of pleural effusion (effusion compresses the lung alveoli and brings the patent bronchus near the chest) Tension pneumothorax (sometimes) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Localised areas of pulmonary fibrosis e.g. chronic pulmonary tuberculosis, chronic suppurative pneumonia (lung abscess) <i>Amphoric</i> (Fig. 12.22D). It is low-pitched bronchial breathing with superadded tones and overtones, or with a metallic tone. The sound resembles the whistling sound produced by blowing air across the mouth of a narrow neck glass bottle. It is produced in; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bronchopleural fistula (open pneumothorax) A big thin-walled cavity connected with a narrow patent bronchus

Vocal resonance

Vocal resonance refers to listening of the vocal sounds (laryngeal vibrations) with the help of stethoscope as the patient repeats some words such as “*ninety-nine, one-one-one*”. Normally, the ear perceives not the distinct syllables but a resonant sound, the intensity of which depends on the loudness and depth of the patient’s voice and the conductivity of the lungs.

Palpation for local fremitus is closely allied to listening for vocal resonance. High-pitched sounds which are not easily palpable can be heard as vocal resonance. The vocal resonance like vocal fremitus has to be compared on each side of the chest. Each point examined on one side must be compared with corresponding point on the other side. Normal vocal resonance gives the impression of being produced near the chest piece of stethoscope. If it seems to be near to the ear than the stethoscope, the resonance is said to be increased. If the intensity of the sound is diminished,

then it is designated as decreased vocal resonance. The causes of increased or decreased vocal resonance are tabulated (Table 12.10). Remember, the causes are more or less same as discussed in tactile vocal fremitus.

Table 12.10: Causes of variations in vocal resonance

Increased	Decreased	Absent
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consolidation • A cavity communicating with bronchus • Bronchopleural fistula. • At the apex (just above) of pleural effusion posteriorly. • Fibrosis of the lung 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thickened pleura • Emphysema 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pleural effusion • Pneumothorax • Collapse of lung due to obstructed bronchus

Once the vocal resonance is found to be increased, proceed further to decide whether it is;

1. **Bronchophony.** This is increased vocal resonance where spoken sounds are clearly audible but the words are indistinguishable. It conveys the impression that the sound is being produced near the ear piece of stethoscope rather than chest piece. This is heard in consolidation.
2. **Whispering pectoriloquy.** It is the further increase in vocal resonance where even the whispered sound (voice) or words are not only clearly and loudly audible but are clearly distinguishable. It conveys the impression that they are being uttered directly into the examiner's ear.
It is heard in;
 - A cavity communicating with bronchus.
 - A large consolidation where both bronchophony and whispering pectoriloquy are present.
3. **Aegophony.** When the nasal or bleating character is imparted to the spoken sound, it is called *aegophony*. It is heard in;
 - Open pneumothorax
 - At the apex of pleural effusion on posterior chest.

Added (adventitious) sounds

The sounds which are superimposed on or added to the usual breath sounds are called *added or adventitious or extrasounds*. They may arise in the pleura or in the lung. Certain extraneous sounds which resemble the added sounds and cause confusion in the diagnosis are;

1. Sound resembling crackles may be produced by movement of the stethoscope on hairy skin of the patient. The shaving of chest or wetting of the hair may eliminate the error.
2. Sounds resembling pleural rub may be produced by movements of the stethoscope on the patients' skin.

This error is eliminated by firmly pressing the stethoscope on the chest.

3. Sounds of muscular contractions in a shivering patient makes the auscultation difficult and useless. Change in the position may eliminate the noise.

Types of adventitious/added sounds

A. Lung sounds

1. **Discontinuous.** These are intermittent, nonmusical and brief sounds such as *crackles* or *rales*.
2. **Continuous sounds:** These are musical sounds that persist in most of the respiratory cycle or through out the cycle (both inspiration and expiration). These include *wheezes* (high-pitched sound) or *rhonchi* (low-pitched) sounds.

B. Pleural sound

- **Pleural rub.** It may be continuous or discontinuous.

C. Other sounds

Crackles or rales

These are short, explosive sounds often described as bubbling or clicking noises.

Mechanisms of production

1. They may result from a series of tiny explosions when small airways deflated to residual volume during expiration open during inspiration. This gives rise to fine crackles.
2. They may result from air bubbles flowing through the secretions or lightly closed airways during respiration (both inspiration and expiration). This mechanism explains coarse crackles or rales of bronchiectasis or a cavity.

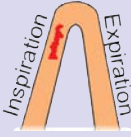
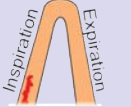
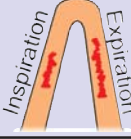
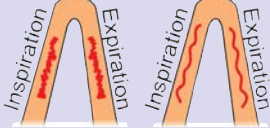
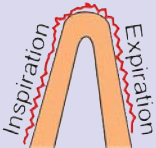


The types of crackles and their causes are illustrated in the Table 12.11 and Fig. 12.23.

Wheezes and rhonchi

These are continuous sounds produced by air buzzing through large airways. They occur due to narrowing of the airways either by spasm or by secretions or by extraneous compression. The causes of wheezes have been enumerated in the Table 12.11. There are two types of wheeze.

1. **Monophonic.** This is a single musical sound arising from fixed, persistent, localized narrowing of a single bronchus by a tumour or a foreign body. It may be inspiratory, expiratory or both and may not change in intensity with position.

Table 12.11: Causes of different crackles/rales

Fig. 12.23	Phase of respiration	Character	Aetiology
A. Crackles 	Late inspiratory crackles. They begin in mid-inspiration and continue into late inspiration.	Profuse, fine and persist from breath to breath	They are heard at the bases of the lungs, spread upwards as the condition worsens. They shift to dependent region with changes in posture. They are heard in early congestive heart failure (pulmonary oedema) and interstitial lung disease or lung fibrosis.
	Early inspiratory crackles. They are heard in early part of inspiration	Scanty, coarse in nature	They occur in chronic bronchitis and asthma
	Mid-inspiratory and expiratory crackles. They are heard during middle of inspiration and throughout expiration.	Coarse and profuse.	Heard in bronchiectasis, a cavity and in lung abscess.
B. Wheezes and rhonchi 	Wheezes are high pitched sounds having hissing or shrill quality. Rhonchi are low pitched sounds with snoring quality. They are heard either in expiration or in both phases of respiration	Musical sounds produce by air buzzing past the airways. Rhonchi suggest secretions in large airways.	Causes include bronchial asthma, bronchitis, COPD, cardiac asthma (LVF), localized obstruction due to malignancy, carcinoid syndrome.
C. Pleural rub 	Pleural rub. It is heard in both phases of respiration, does not change its character with coughing. It is accentuated by increased pressure over the chest.	*Rubbing or creaking superficial continuous sound *Disappears on holding the breath	It occurs in pleuritis due to any cause such as pleurodynia, pulmonary consolidation, pulmonary infarction and following pleural biopsy
D. Mediastinal crunch 	Mediastinal crunch has no relation to respiration but is synchronous to heart beat. Best heard in the left lateral position	Precordial crackling or crunching sound produced by compressing the sternum	It occurs in mediastinal emphysema (pneumomediastinum)
E. Stridor 	Stridor is a loud inspiratory wheeze or sound produced by closure of glottis	Wheezing sound	It occurs in partial obstruction of trachea (tracheal stridor) or larynx (laryngeal stridor).

2. **Polyphonic.** Widespread polyphonic wheezes are the commonest type, particularly heard during expiration, contain several notes of different pitches. They are heard in bronchial asthma and chronic bronchitis. These wheezes are probably due to dynamic compression of the several bronchi, which is accentuated in expiration when airway narrowing is present.

Occasionally, in severe COPD, the patient is no longer able to force enough air through the narrowed bronchi to produce wheezing. The absence of wheezing leads to silent chest. This is a cause of immediate concern and should not be mistaken for improvement, actually is a bad prognostic sign.

Pleural rub

A continuous rubbing or creaking sound generated by rubbing of roughened surfaces of both parietal and

visceral pleura is called *pleural friction/rub*. It differs from crackles (Table 12.12)

Table 12.12: Differences between pleural rub and coarse crackles

Plural rub	Coarse crackles
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rubbing or creaking sound • Audible during both phases of respiration • Usually confined to a smaller area of chest wall. • Not altered by coughing • Accentuated by firmly pressing the chest piece of stethoscope over the chest wall. • Associated with pain and tenderness • Caused by rubbing of roughened pleural surfaces 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bubbling or clicking sound • May be inspiratory or inspiratory and expiratory. • Audible over a large area or heard diffusely over the chest • May change its character or intensity on coughing • No accentuation • Usually not associated • Caused by tiny explosions produced by sudden opening up of smaller airways deflated during expiration or due to air bubbles flowing through secretions.

Stridor (Fig. 12.23E)

It is a loud monophonic wheeze associated with laryngeal spasm or tracheal stenosis (Read it as a respiratory symptom). The noise is often inspiratory and expiratory.

Other sounds

There are certain sounds heard following some manoeuvres.

1. **Succussion splash** (Fig. 12.24): It is a splashing sound produced by movement of fluid in a cavity or hollow viscus containing both fluid and air so as to allow the movement of fluid.

Method: Define the upper border of dullness in lateral chest wall along the mid-axillary line in sitting position. Now place the diaphragm of stethoscope at this point and shake the patient vigorously from side to side. A splashing sound is audible with every jerk. Sometimes this sound can be heard without stethoscope. The causes are;

- (i) Hydropneumothorax
- (ii) A large cavity containing thin fluid and air
- (iii) Eventration of diaphragm with herniation of stomach into the thorax on left side

2. **Post-tussive suction.** When signs of a lung cavity are present, then patient is asked to cough violently. A sucking inspiratory sound heard over the chest following coughing is called *post-tussive suction*,



Fig. 12.24. Elicitation of succussion splash

suggests that the cavity is thin-walled and compressible. It carries no significance.

3. **Post-tussive crackles/rales.** The crackles which are not heard during normal respiration, but are heard following coughing are called *post-tussive crackles*. They signify that the cavity is filled with secretions which are dislodged during coughing allowing the air to bubble through the fluid/secretions, producing the crackles/rales.
4. **Coin test** (Fig. 12.25): In hydropneumothorax, at the junction of air and fluid, the metallic quality of the sound produced by striking one coin over another placed on the chest can be heard appreciably at the diametrically opposite side of the chest wall.



Fig. 12.25: Coin test. Place the coin on the anterior chest and strike the coin with another coin. Place the stethoscope on posterior chest diametrically opposite to the coin to hear the metallic sound

Examination of the posterior chest

It has to be carried out in similar fashion as examination of anterior chest. Therefore, the specific findings pertaining to the posterior chest wall will be highlighted here only.

Inspection

Inspect from the midline position behind the patient,

- Observe the shape of the chest for asymmetry or deformities.
In addition to the deformities mentioned under the examination of anterior chest, note any deformity of the spine (e.g. gibbus, scoliosis), prominence of scapulae (scoliosis, winging of scapulae in myopathy).
- Observe skin and subcutaneous tissue for swelling or nodules, purpuric spots and bruises.
- Observe the type of breathing. Note abnormal retraction of the intercostal spaces during inspiration.
- Observe the respiratory movements and expansion of the chest. Note any abnormality on one side or both sides of the chest.

Palpation

As you palpate the chest, focus on areas of tenderness and abnormalities in the overlying skin, respiratory movements and chest expansion. Compare the tactile vocal fremitus on both sides and note any abnormality either on one side or on both the sides.

Note any widening or narrowing of the intercostal spaces on either side of the chest

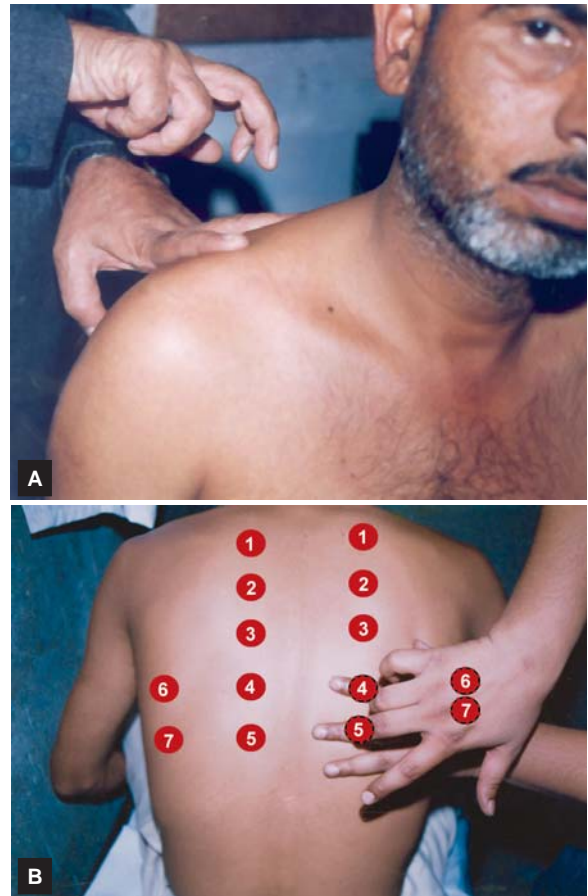
Percussion

For percussing the lower posterior chest, stand somewhat to the side rather than behind the patient. This will allow you to place your pleximeter finger more firmly on the chest and your plexor will be more effective and will make a better percussion note.

When percussing the two areas, use the same percussion technique and compare the corresponding areas on both sides. Percuss or strike twice in each location (Fig. 12.26) It is easier to detect differences in percussion note by comparing one area with another rather than by percussing the same area repetitively.

Percuss one side of the chest and then the other at same level. Omit the areas over the scapulae. Identify and locate the area and quality of any abnormal percussion note.

The sites for percussion are represented in Fig. 12.26B.



Figs 12.26: Percussion A. Method and point of start of percussion and auscultation on the back, B. Final stages of percussion and areas to be percussed and auscultated are labelled

Auscultation

The areas to be auscultated are same as used for percussion (Fig. 12.26B)

Points to be noted are same as discussed in auscultation of anterior chest i.e., breath sounds, vocal resonance and added sounds.

Examination of other systems

- (i) **CVS examination.** It is to be examined for any evidence of chronic cor pulmonale or associated pericardial effusion (polyserositis – Meig's syndrome, a complication of pneumonia or as a complication of anasarca).
- (ii) **GI tract and hepatobiliary system.** It is examined for
 - Ascites
 - Hepatosplenomegaly or hepatomegaly for chronic cor pulmonale or may be palpable in

obstructive emphysema, or ruptured amoebic liver abscess into pleural space.

- Any abdominal mass e.g. para-aortic lymphadenopathy in patients with tuberculosis and lymphoma.

(iii) Nervous system

Neurological complications such as meningitis, brain abscess and raised intracranial tension (due to type 2 respiratory failure) are common. Therefore, look for;

Neck stiffness/rigidity may be present in meningism in pneumonia and tubercular meningitis. Patient may have other signs of meningitis.

Higher function may be altered in encephalopathy (type 2 respiratory failure, meningitis or encephalitis)

Any neurological deficit for brain abscess.

Physical signs in common respiratory disorders. They are briefly discussed in Table 12.13.

Investigation of a patient with respiratory disease

Routine haematological and biochemical tests

- Haemoglobin, to detect the presence of anemia or secondary polycythaemia.
- TLC and DLC for evidence of an infection or to detect eosinophilia
- Packed cell volume (PCV) for secondary polycythaemia which occurs in COPD
- Routine biochemistry e.g. sugar, urea, electrolytes, creatinine
- Other blood investigations sometimes required include;
 - α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency for emphysema
 - IgE to specific allergen (RAST; radio allergosorbent test)
 - Aspergillus antibodies

Sputum examination

(i) Sputum should be inspected for gross appearance

- Mucoid sputum (clear, whitish, sticky) is characteristic of chronic bronchitis
- Yellow-green indicates infection or allergy
- Black sputum indicates bronchopulmonary aspergillosis
- Purulent, fetid sputum suggest bronchiectasis or lung abscess
- Pink-frothy sputum indicates pulmonary oedema
- Blood in sputum is called *haemoptysis* (read the causes of haemoptysis)

- Thick, viscid rusty sputum occurs in lobar pneumonia
- Anchovy-sauce appearance of sputum indicates rupture of amoebic lung abscess into the lung

(ii) Microscopic examination

- Pus cells
- Organisms
- Fungal hyphae
- Dumb-bell shaped asbestos bodies

(iii) Microbial examination

- Gram's staining for cocci and bacilli
- Acid-fast staining for AFB (Fig. 12.27)
- For malignant cells if carcinoma lung is suspected

(iv) Culture and sensitivity

- For bacteria, virus and fungi
- for acid-fast bacilli

Fluoroscopy of the chest

It is valuable in detecting pulsatile lesions such as aortic aneurysm and hilar pulsations (hilar dance) in left to right shunts. It is also done to see the movements of diaphragm in patients with diaphragmatic paralysis.

Chest X-ray

(read radiology section of Bed-side medicine without tears by Prof S.N. Chugh.). The points to be noted on chest X-ray are enumerated in the Box 12.17. The importance of X-ray in evaluation of respiratory disorders is depicted in Figs 12.28A to E.

Box 12.17:

EXAMINATION OF CHEST X-RAY

Points to be noted

- Position of trachea, mediastinum and domes of diaphragm
- Homogenous/non-homogenous opacity or opacities
- Area /areas of reduced or increased translucency of lungs
- Cavity with well-defined margins
- Cavity with any fluid level
- Obliteration of costo or cardiophrenic angles
- Nodule/s or coin-shaped shadows.
- Multinodular lesions
- Infiltration; localised or diffuse
- Honey-Coomb appearance
- Hilar lymphadenopathy
- Cardiovascular markings
- Thoracic cage abnormalities such as scoliosis, widening or narrowing of intercostal spaces and fracture or tumours of the ribs

Computed tomography (CT scan)

Conventional CT scan is useful in evaluation of hilar and paratracheal lymph nodes enlargement, to differentiate localised collection of fluid from a tumour

Table 12.13: Important differential physical signs in various respiratory disorders

Sign	Lobar consolidation	Lobar collapse	Fibrosis/bronchiectasis	Cavity or lung abscess	Pleural effusion	Pneumothorax	Acute or chronic bronchitis	Bronchial Asthma	Emphysema
1. Shape of the chest	N	Retraction on the side involved	Retraction on the side involved	N or slight retraction on the side involved	N	N	N	N	Hyper-inflated or barrel shaped
2. Chest wall movement	Reduced on the side involved	Reduced on the side involved	Reduced on the side involved	Slightly reduced on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	N	Bilateral diminished	Bilateral diminished
3. Expansion of chest	Reduced on the side involved	Reduced on the side involved	Reduced on the side involved	Slightly reduced on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	N	B/L reduced	B/L reduced
4. Activity of extra-respiratory muscles	A	A	A	A	A	A	P	P	P
5. Position of trachea and mediastinum	N	Shifted to the side involved	Shifted to the side involved	Shifted to the side involved	Shifted to opposite side	Shifted to opposite side	N	N	N
6. AP and transverse diameter	N	N	N	N	N	N	N or abnormal	N	Abnormal AP > T
7. Vocal fremitus	Increased on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	Increased over the area involved	Increased over the area involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	Reduced or absent on the side involved	N	N	N or reduced on both sides
8. Percussion note	Dull on the side involved	Dull on the side involved	Impaired over the area involved	Impaired over the area involved	Stony dull on the side involved	N or hyper-resonant on the side involved	N	N or hyper resonant	Hyper-resonant
9. Breath sounds	High-pitched bronchial over the area involved	Diminished or absent over the area involved	Low pitched bronchial over the area involved	Amphoric bronchial over the area involved	Absent or diminished over the area involved	Absent or diminished on the side involved	B/L vesicular with prolonged expiration	B/L vesicular with prolonged expiration	B/L vesicular with prolonged expiration
10. Intensity of breath sounds (vocal resonance)	Increased over the area involved. <i>Bronchophony and whispering pectoriloquy present</i>	Decreased over the area involved	Increased over the area involved	Increased over the area involved <i>whispering pectoriloquy present</i>	Decreased over the area involved	Decreased on the side involved	N	N	N or diminished
11. Added sounds	Fine crackles early, coarse crackles later on the area involved	None	Coarse crackles on the area involved	Coarse crackles on the area involved	Pleural rub in some cases over the area involved	None	Rhonchi with some coarse crackles on both the sides	Rhonchi/ wheezes mainly expiratory and high-pitched.	Expiratory rhonchi/ wheezes

Abbreviations: N = normal; B/L = bilateral; P = present; A = absent; AP = antero-posterior

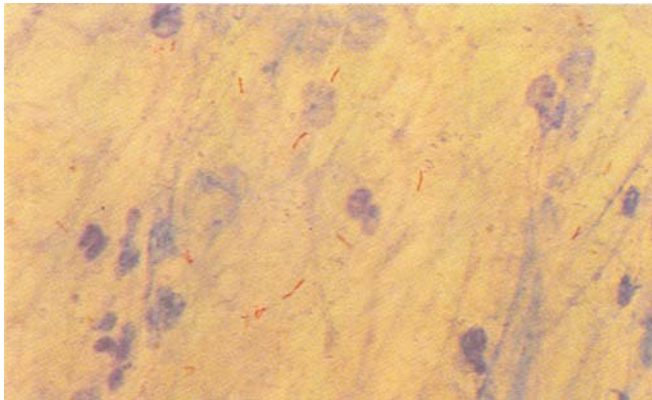
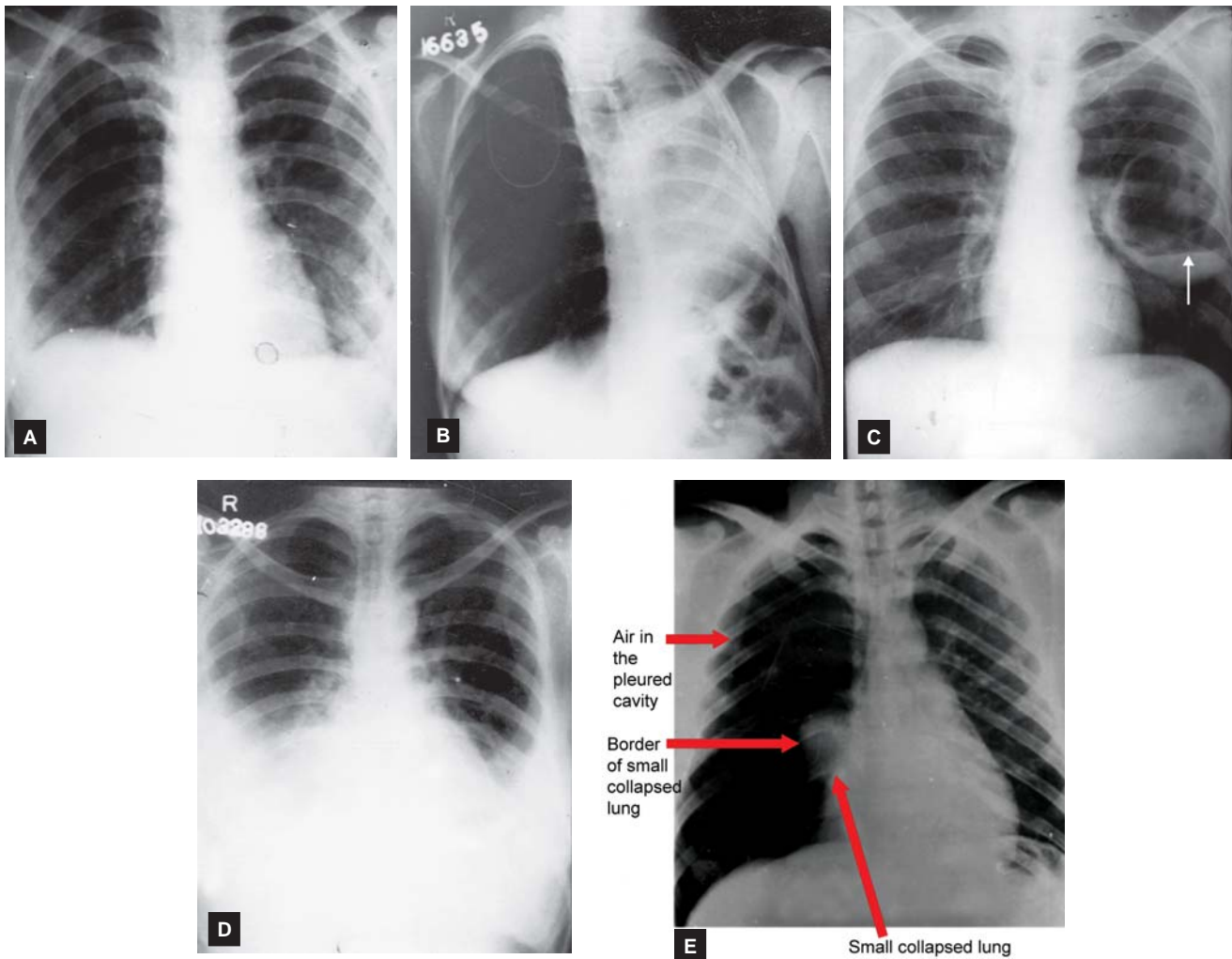


Fig. 12.27: Sputum examination for AFB. AFB are seen as pink rods in the specimen of sputum

(Fig. 12.29), to determine the position and size of pulmonary nodule and in pre-operative assessment of lung cancer to detect mediastinal spread. Enhanced CT (contrast CT) is done by injecting a contrast media to enhance the outlines of mediastinal vessels to differentiate vascular mediastinal lesions. CT scan is also useful to make the site for pleural aspiration.

Microbial examination

Sputum, pleural aspirate, bronchial washings obtained through bronchoscope must be subjected to isolation of bacteria, fungi and viruses and also for culture and sensitivity. Isolation of acid fast bacilli from these specimens is diagnostic of pulmonary tuberculosis. The microbial findings must be interpreted in conjunction with clinical and radiological findings so as to reach to a conclusive diagnosis.



Figs 12.28A to E: Chest X-ray (PA) view in different parenchymal lung disease. A. Chronic obstructive lung disease, B. Collapse of the left lung due to malignancy, C. Lung abscess (left lung), D. Bilateral pleural effusion, E. Pneumothorax

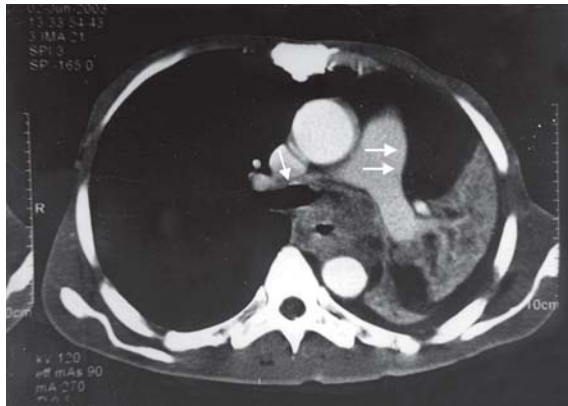


Fig. 12.29: CT scan showing bronchogenic carcinoma (→) and pleural effusion (⇨)

Histopathological and cytological examination

The biopsy material or bronchial lavage obtained through transbronchial route by bronchoscope must be subject to histopathological examination as they may yield valuable information regarding suspected malignancy of lung in some cases.

The exfoliated cells in the sputum and other specimens (pleural fluid and bronchial washings) are examined cytologically for malignancy and inflammatory disorders. Pleural fluid is studied biochemically to confirm its nature i.e. exudate or transudate. These specimens can also be used for microbial culture and sensitivity.

Skin tests

Tuberculin (Mantoux) test is useful for diagnosis and detection of tuberculosis. Kveim test is meant for sarcoidosis. Skin tests are also employed to find out an allergan or allergans in allergic disorders.

Serological tests

They are based on detection of either antigens or antibodies in the blood or sputum. The detection of pneumococcal antigen by counter-immuno-electrophoresis establishes the diagnosis of pneumococcal pneumonia. Higher titres of the antibodies in the serum may help in diagnosis of microbial infections of lungs.

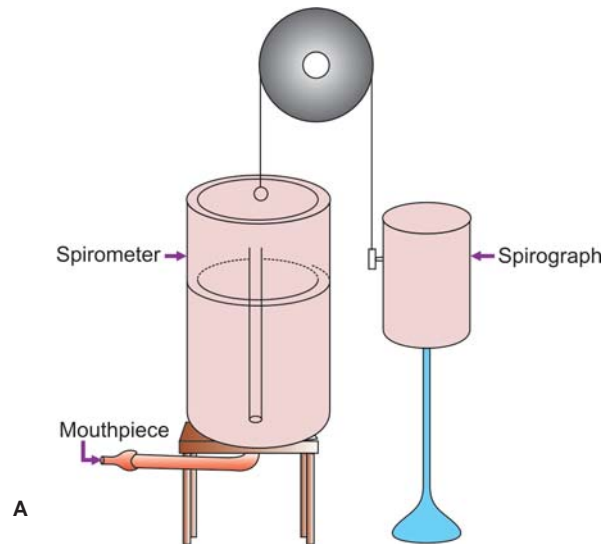
Pulmonary function tests

These tests aid to assess functional impairment, effect of treatment and progress of the disease.

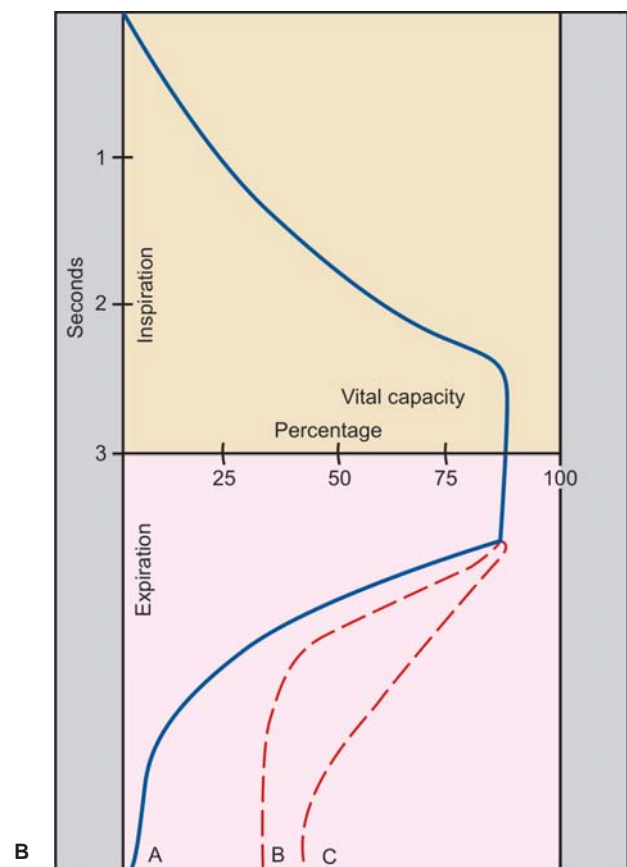
A. Tests for ventilation

The forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV_1), forced vital capacity (FVC) or vital capacity (VC) and

their ratio FEV_1/VC are important parameters to assess ventilation. These are recorded by spirometer (Fig. 12.30A) after maximum forced and relaxed expiration. The volume of air exhaled between 0.25 sec. and 0.75 sec. (middle half second) on spirometer graph constitutes peak expiratory flow volume (Fig. 12.30B). For interpretation of results, the values obtained in



A



B

Figs 12.30A and B: A. Spirometer, B. The expiratory spirogram

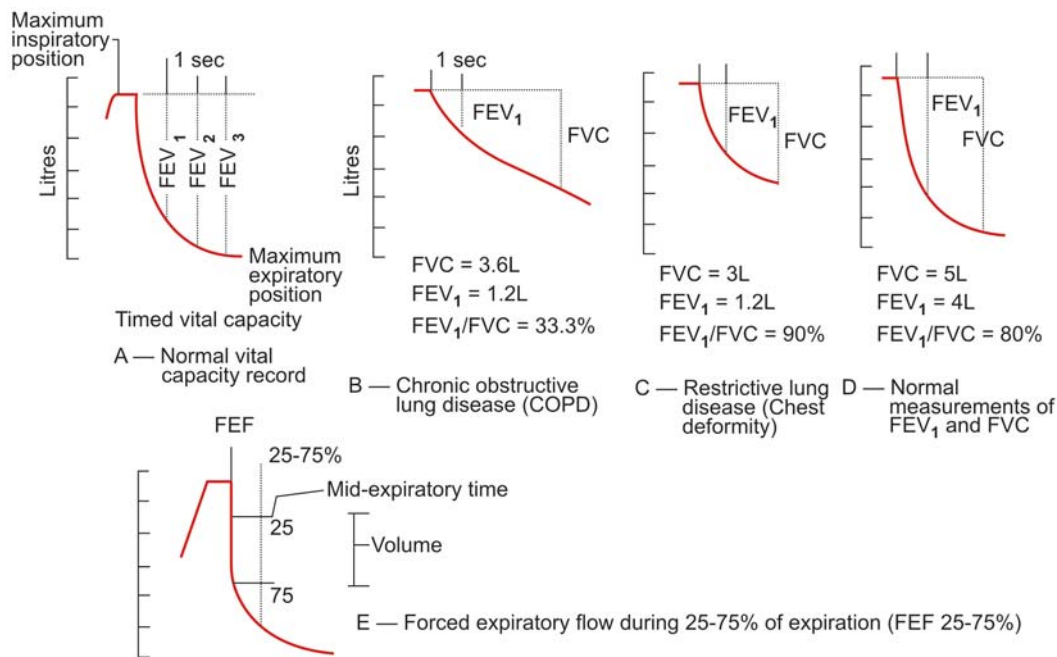


Fig. 12.31: Measurement of forced expiratory volume (FEV_1), forced vital capacity (FVC) and maximum mid-expiratory flow ($MEF_{25-75\%}$) in normal individuals and in various lung disorders

spirometer are compared with predicted values based on age, sex, height and body constitution. Two types of defects are noticed (Table 12.14).

- (i) **Obstructive ventilatory defect (Fig. 12.31B):** FEV_1 is reduced, vital capacity (VC) remains normal or is slightly reduced. Their ratio FEV_1/VC is reduced. On the basis of airway obstruction, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease can be graded for severity by GOLD criteria.
- (ii) **Restrictive ventilatory defect (Fig. 12.31C):** FEV_1 is reduced, VC is also reduced but their ratio FEV_1/VC is increased or may sometimes be normal.

These tests of ventilation are repeated in reversible obstructive pulmonary diseases after full doses of bronchodilators to monitor the response to therapy in cases of bronchial asthma and early cases of chronic bronchitis.

B. Peak expiratory flow (Fig. 12.32)

It is measured during forced expiration by a simple flowmeter. It is useful to detect airflow obstruction, response to treatment and reversible changes. It has supplementary role to spirometry in obstructive lung diseases. It has no role in restrictive lung disorders.

C. Lung volumes

(Normal lung volumes are given in Fig. 12.33)

The values of these lung volumes are obtained either by diluting inert gas helium into the gases in the lungs or by whole body plethysmography. The values are compared with normals. The commonly measured lung volumes are functional residual capacity,

Table 12.14: Pulmonary function tests in obstructive and restrictive ventilatory defects

Test	Obstructive lesion	Restrictive lesion
FEV_1	Markedly reduced	Slightly reduced
VC	Reduced or normal	Markedly reduced
FEV_1/VC	Reduced	Increased or normal
PEF	Reduced	Normal
FRC	Increased	Reduced
RV	Increased	Reduced
TLC	Increased	Reduced
T_{co} & D_{co}	Normal	Low
PaO_2	Decreased	Decreased
$PaCO_2$	Increased	Low or normal

Abbreviations

- FEV_1 = Forced expiratory volume during one second.
- VC = Vital capacity
- PEF = Peak expiratory flow
- FRC = Functional residual capacity
- RV = Residual volume

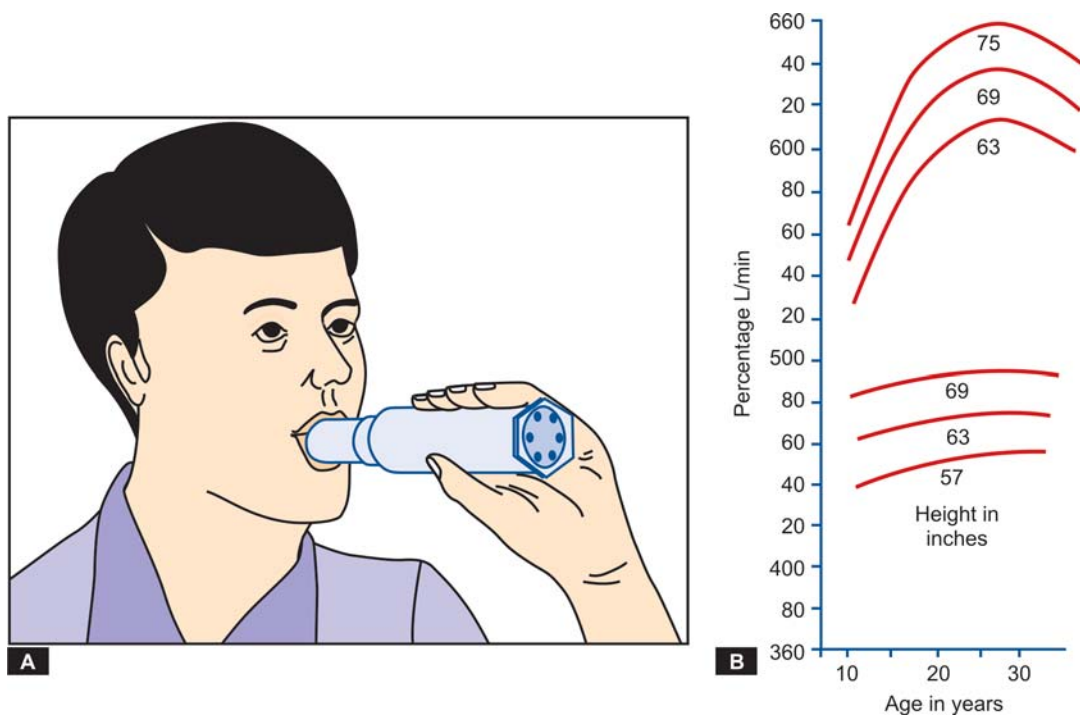


Fig. 12.32: Peak expiratory flow. A. Simple flow meter B. Graph showing normal values

T_{co} = Gas transfer factor for carbon monoxide
 TLC = Total lung capacity
 D_{co} = Diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide
 PaO_2 = Partial pressure of oxygen in arterial blood
 $PaCO_2$ = Partial pressure of CO_2 in arterial blood.

FRC and residual volume (RV). Both are increased in obstructive ventilatory defect and decreased in restrictive ventilatory defect (Table 12.14)

A. Exercise tests

Asthma induced on exercise is called *exercise induced asthma* which will become evident by these tests.

A simple 6 minute walking test is widely employed to assess disability and response to treatment in patients with exercise induced asthma and chronic bronchitis.

B. Forced expiratory time

The test assesses the expiration which is typically prolonged in COPD. Ask the patient to take a deep breath in and then breath out as quickly and completely as possible with mouth open. Listen over the trachea with diaphragm of the stethoscope and note the time for expiration.

A forced expiration time of 6 or more seconds suggests COPD.

Invasive procedures

Laryngoscopy

It is done by Otolaryngologist and the instrument used is fiberoptic bronchoscope or laryngoscope which gives magnified views of larynx to detect small lesions.

Bronchoscopy

The instrument used to have direct and magnified view of bronchi is called *bronchoscope*. Two types of bronchoscope are available, fiberoptic and rigid. The fiberoptic bronchoscope is best suited for lesions in small bronchi and bronchioles. Structural changes are seen

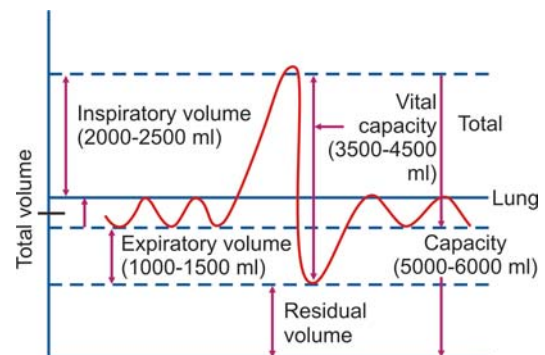


Fig. 12.33: Normal pulmonary air volumes

through bronchoscope in the form of obstruction or distortions of airways. Through bronchoscope, one can collect bronchial secretions, bronchial washings or lavage and brushings (exfoliative cytology) for histopathological and cytological examination. The biopsy of the lesion can be taken under direct vision through bronchoscope and studied for histopathological changes.

Mediastinoscopy

It is an important procedure. Mediastinoscope is passed through the suprasternal notch into mediastinum to have its direct view. It is performed in mediastinal lesions such as lymphadenopathy and bronchial carcinoma.

Thoracentesis or pleural aspiration (Fig. 12.34)

Pleural fluid is aspirated with the help of an aspiration needle or by an intercostal tube/catheter introduced into the pleural cavity through one of the intercostal spaces overlying effusion or empyema. The fluid is removed and sent for cytological, biochemical and microbial examinations to find out the cause of pleural effusion.

Ventilation perfusion scan

These are actually two scans performed simultaneously; one by inhalation of radiostope ^{133}Xe gas (ventilation scan) and another by intravenous injection of radioisotope $^{99\text{m}}\text{Tc}$ labelled macroaggregates of albumin (perfusion scan). The corresponding areas are compared both on perfusion and ventilation scan for pulmonary thromboembolism. A defect on perfusion scan with normal ventilation scan indicates pulmonary thromboembolism. The small filling defects which match on perfusion and ventilation scans indicate distortion of blood vessels and lung parenchyma, are seen in COPD and interstitial lung diseases.



Fig. 12.34: Drainage of empyema thoracic. Note the greenish creamy coloured pus

Pulmonary angiography

This is done by pushing the dye into main pulmonary artery via a catheter introduced through one of the femoral veins and advanced into main pulmonary artery through right side of the heart. The digital subtraction angiography (DSA) is a better, useful and sensitive technique to obtain high quality images. The angiography is valuable for diagnosis of pulmonary thromboembolism. If an embolism is detected, the catheter used for angiography can be employed to instil streptokinase for thrombolysis.

Lung biopsy

Transbronchial biopsy taken through bronchoscope is studied for bronchial lesions. Transthoracic needle biopsy of the lung is done under CT guidance for peripheral pulmonary lesions. In some cases, open needle biopsy is recommended for peripheral lesions.

13

The Abdomen

HISTORY

Symptoms

Upper GI symptoms, e.g. dysphagia, heart burn, vomiting, haematemesis.

Lower GI symptoms, e.g. pain abdomen, diarrhoea, abdominal distension, rectal bleeding, weight loss.

Hepatobiliary symptoms e.g. jaundice, mass abdomen, ascites, haematemesis etc.

Present history

- Ask about time of onset of symptoms, progression, relation to meals, aggravating and relieving factors, history of prior surgery and medication etc.

Past history

e.g. DM, HT, past surgery, history of jaundice, haematemesis, drug etc.

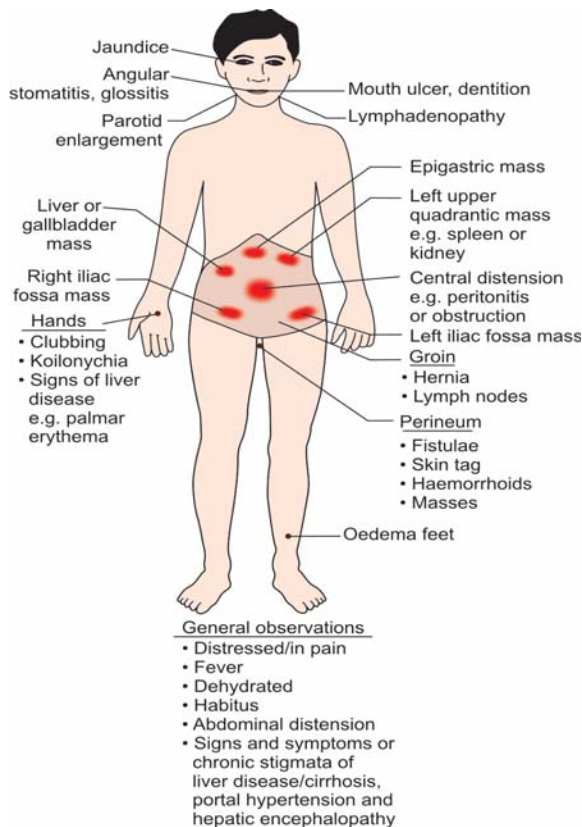
Family history

Personal history

- Habits, e.g. alcohol, smoking

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- **Face** e.g. expression, agony, pallor, pigmentation
- **Eyes** e.g. jaundice, pallor
- **Mouth** e.g. ulceration, cracks at the angle, fissuring of lips, vesiculation.
- **Teeth and gums** for discolouration, staining, gum bleeding, erosion
- **Tongue** for asymmetry, coating, dehydration, pigmentation, atrophy
- **Neck** for JVP, carotid bruit, lymph nodes enlargement.
- **Skin** e.g. bleeding spots, telangiectasia, pigmentation
- **Hands and feet** e.g. clubbing, koilonychia, platynychia, oedema (pedal, sacral), signs of liver disease (palmar erythema).



FORMAT FOR THE ABDOMINAL EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Inspection

- Shape, symmetry and movements of abdomen.
- Umbilicus e.g. position, contour, inflammation, hernia
- Any abdominal pulsation
- Hernial sites, groin, scrotum
- Skin of abdomen for scar, striae, veins, pigmentation, bleeding, rash

Palpation

- Feel for tenderness, rebound tenderness, rigidity or guarding
- Palpate for any enlarged viscera/ mass.
- Palpate for abdominal pulsations
- Elicit the fluid thrill if ascites is suspected.
- Palpate for divarication of recti

Percussion

- Percussion note of abdomen i.e. normal/abnormal (dull note or hyperresonant note)
- Percuss over the mass, flanks for dullness.
- Define upper and lower borders of liver and calculate the liver span
- Elicit shifting dullness for ascites if suspected.

Auscultation

- Hear bowel sounds, any venous hum, bruit or rub (hepatic or splenic)

Examination of other systems

Diagnosis and Differential diagnosis

Investigations

THE ABDOMEN

It includes

- *Gastrointestinal system*
- *Urinary system*—it is dealt separately as a Chapter 14.
- *Hepatobiliary system*

Applied anatomy and physiology

For descriptive purposes, the abdomen is conveniently divided into 9 regions by intersection of imaginary planes; two horizontal and two sagittal. The upper horizontal plane is transpyloric, lies at the level of L1 vertebra, midway between the suprasternal notch and the symphysis pubis. The lower plane passes through

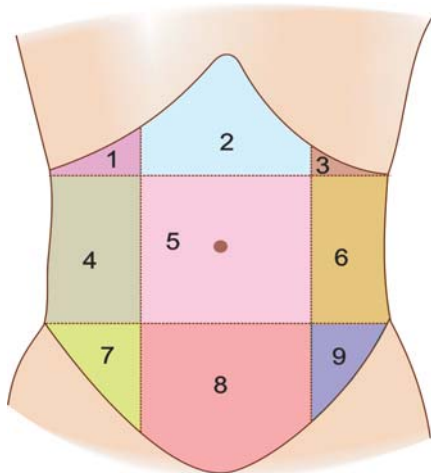


Fig. 13.1: Regions of the abdomen (diagram). 1. Right hypochondrium, 2. Epigastrium, 3. Left hypochondrium, 4. Right lumbar, 5. Umbilical, 6. Left lumbar, 7. Right iliac, 8. Hypogastrum, 9. Left iliac

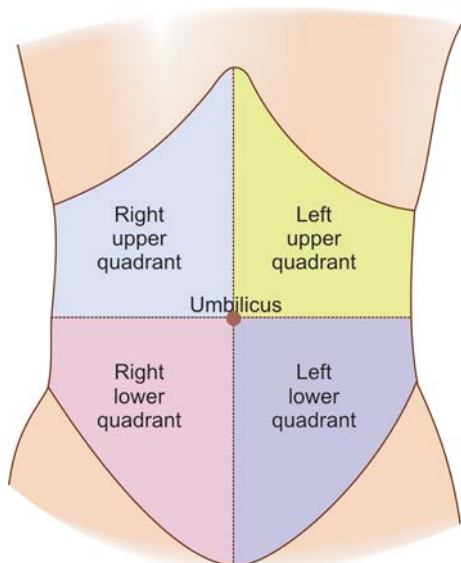


Fig. 13.2: The quadrants of abdomen

the upper borders of the iliac crests. The sagittal planes are indicated on the surface by lines drawn vertically from the mid-inguinal points towards the midclavicular points (Fig. 13.1).

The resultant regions are artificial but are used to localise the mass lesions. An alternative method is to divide the abdomen into 4 quadrants by imaginary lines crossing at the umbilicus, forming the right upper, right lower, left upper and left lower quadrants (Fig. 13.2).

Normal palpable structures in the abdomen (Fig. 13.3)

While examining the abdomen, you may be able to feel several normal structures. Sigmoid colon is palpable as firm tube in the left lower quadrant; while the caecum and part of the ascending colon forms a soft wider tube in the right lower quadrant. Portions of transverse and descending colon may also be palpable. None of these structures should be mistaken for tumour.

The liver is difficult to be felt through the abdominal wall but its lower margin or edge descends 1-3 cm during deep inspiration, hence, often becomes palpable in the right upper quadrant. Also in the right upper quadrant, but usually at a deeper level lies the lower pole of the right kidney. It can also become palpable in thin individuals with relaxed abdomen. The normal left kidney is less often palpable.

Pulsation of abdominal aorta are frequently visible and as well as palpable in the upper abdomen, while pulsations of the iliac arteries may sometimes be felt in the lower quadrants.

The abdominal cavity extends up under the rib cage to the domes of the diaphragm. The spleen lies against and posterior to the left mid-axillary line. It is lateral to and behind the stomach and just above the left kidney. The tip of the normal spleen is not palpable below the left costal margin.

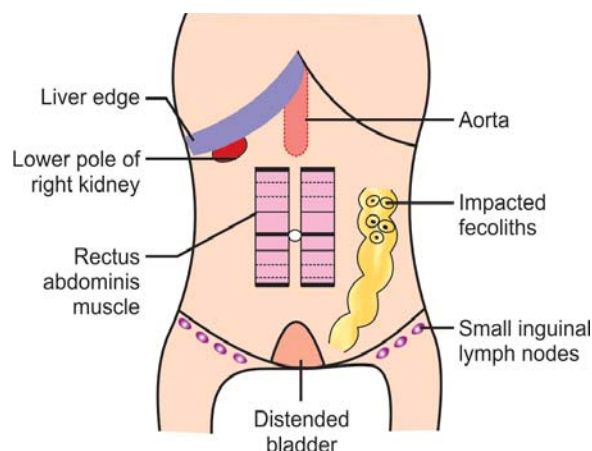


Fig. 13.3: Normally palpable structures in the abdomen

The gallbladder lies deep to the liver, cannot be distinguished separately. The duodenum and pancreas lie deep in the upper abdomen, hence, are not palpable.

A distended urinary bladder may be palpable above symphysis pubis.

Other structure that becomes palpable in the lower abdomen include the *uterus* enlarged by pregnancy or fibroids, may rise above symphysis pubis and the sacral promontory, the anterior edge of the first sacral vertebra.

The *kidneys* are retroperitoneal structures and lie along the vertebrae. The costophrenic angle (the angle formed by the lower border the 12th rib and the transverse process of the upper lumbar vertebrae) defines the region to be assessed for renal tenderness. Quiet respiration is mainly diaphragmatic particularly in males, so that the abdominal wall moves out during inspiration.

Anatomical landmarks and their significance

The anatomical landmarks of the abdomen help to localize the disease in one of the region, from which it becomes easier to diagnosis the disease and to differentiate it from other conditions as illustrated in the Fig. 13.4. For differential diagnosis, one should know the abdominal structure (s) present in that region.

Presenting symptoms (Read unit I, chapter 2)

The GI tract and hepatobiliary symptoms have already been listed and discussed in appropriate section

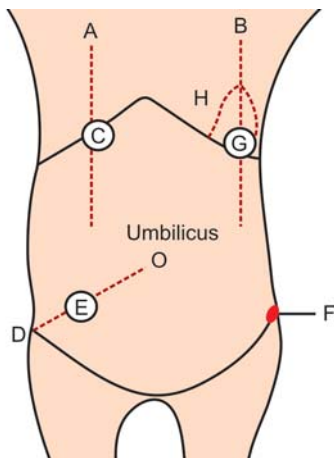


Fig. 13.4: Anatomical landmarks of the abdomen. A. Right mid clavicular line (MCL) used to assess the liver, B. Left axillary line (AAL) used to assess spleen, C. Murphy's point at the intersection of right MCL and the 10th rib, D. Mc Burney's line between anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) and the umbilicus, E. Mc Burney's point, 3 cm medial to ASIS on the line used to assess appendix, F. Anterior superior iliac spine, G. Traube's area a space formed by the left costal margin, 7th rib and AAL, is used to assess spleen

(Chapter 2) For ready reference, they are again listed below; (Box 13.1).

Box 13.1: SYMPTOMS OF GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM	
A. Symptoms of upper GI tract	
<i>i. Symptoms of disease of mouth, pharynx oesophagus and stomach</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dryness of mouth • Painful lips, tongue and mouth • Bad breath (halitosis) • Heart burn and acid reflux • Retrosternal chest pain • Nausea, vomiting • Haematemesis and malena 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive salivation • Disturbance of taste i.e. altered (dysgeusia) or foul taste (cacageusia) • Feeling of lump in throat (globus) • Dysphagia and odynophagia (painful swallowing) • Hiccups • Dyspepsia, belching and flatulence • Anorexia
B. Symptoms of lower GI tract	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Abdominal pain • Diarrhoea • Rectal bleeding (Haematochezia) • Weight loss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Abdominal distension • Constipation • Black tarry stools (malena)
<i>Note: There is no clear cut demarcation between upper and lower GI symptoms</i>	

Gastrointestinal system

The present illness should be described according to the symptoms arranged in chronological orders. The history of the patient with suspected GI disorders have a bearing on the clinical diagnosis, i.e.

1. *Timing (onset) of symptoms:* Symptoms timing can suggest specific aetiology
 - Symptoms of short duration, i.e. acute onset suggests acute infection, toxins exposure and an abrupt inflammation or ischaemia.
 - Long-standing symptoms indicate underlying chronic inflammatory or neoplastic condition or a functional bowel disorder.
2. *Relation to meal.* Some GI symptoms are either aggravated or relieved after taking food, i.e.
 - Peptic ulcer symptoms are relieved by taking food or antacids.
 - Conversely meal ingestion worsens the symptoms of mechanical obstruction, ischaemia, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and functional bowel disorders.

3. *Pattern and duration of symptoms*
 - Ulcer pain is intermittent, spasmodic, nocturnal and last for minutes to hours; pain of acute pancreatitis or acute inflammation lasts for days to weeks or for months.
 - Biliary colic (e.g. stone) is of acute onset and lasts for several hours.
4. *Relation to fasting and stress*
 - Diarrhoea from malabsorption improves with fasting while secretory diarrhoea persists without oral intake.
 - Meals elicit diarrhoea in some cases of inflammatory blood diseases (IBD) and irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).
 - Stressful situations exacerbate the symptoms of functional bowel disorders.
5. *Relation to defaecation*
 - Bowel evacuation or defaecation relieves the symptoms of IBD and IBS.
6. *History of prior surgery.*
 - Obstructive symptoms with prior abdominal surgery suggest adhesions, whereas loose stools after gastrectomy or gallbladder excision suggest dumping syndrome or just cholecystectomy diarrhoea.
7. *Recent travel*
 - Symptoms onset after recent travel suggest enteric infection (Traveller's diarrhoea).
8. *Medications/drugs*
 - Medications/drugs produce pain, altered bowel habits or GI bleeding.
9. *Upper GI bleeding* results from the diseases of oesophagus and stomach. Lower GI bleeding likely results from diseases of colon (neoplasm, diverticula or vascular lesions) or IBD or anorectal abnormalities (fissure, piles, proctitis etc.)
10. *Sexual contact*
 - A sexual contact raise the suspicion of sexually transmitted disease or immunodeficiency.
11. *Rome criteria*
 - The most widely accepted symptom based criteria is "Rome criteria" for IBS (see the Box 13.2) which improves diagnostic accuracy and obviates the need for unnecessary investigations.

Box 13.2:	ROME II CRITERIA FOR IBS
•	Symptom duration of at least 12 weeks in preceding 12 months such as abdominal pain or discomfort with any of the two of three features; <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Relieved by defaecation 2. Onset associated with change in frequency 3. Onset associated with change in stool form

Hepatobiliary system

The clinical history should focus on the symptoms of the liver disease—their nature, pattern of onset, progression and the potential risk factors.

The presenting symptoms (Box 13.3) should be analysed in a chronological manner with regards to onset, duration of symptoms, their pattern and progression, their relation to meals or defaecation, any known aggravating or relieving factors and other associated symptoms referable to hepatobiliary system or other systemic disorders presenting with hepatobiliary symptoms. The change in colour of stool and urine must be asked.

Box 13.3: SYMPTOMS OF HEPATOBILIARY SYSTEM

1. **Nonspecific symptoms or constitutional symptoms**
They neither point out the cause nor they are specific to liver or gallbladder disease.
 - Fatigue
 - Nausea, vomiting
 - Malaise
 - Weakness
 - Poor appetite
 - Pain abdomen
2. **Liver specific symptoms.** These symptoms relate to hepatitis and/or cirrhosis (portal hypertension and end stage liver disease)
 - Haematemesis
 - Jaundice
 - Hepatomegaly (mass in right hypo-chondrium)
 - Change in colour of the stool or urine
 - Mental features (hepatic encephalopathy)
 - Malena
 - Ascites
 - Oedema (swelling feet)
 - Pruritus/itching

Present history

The following points to be noted in the present history in a patient with GI/hepatobiliary disease

- **Alcoholism**
- **Smoking**
- **Medications**, e.g. NSAIDs, oral contraceptives, laxative, steroids, immunosuppressive drugs.
- **Arthritis** (peripheral, ankylosing spondylitis) is associated with IBD.
- **Eye symptoms** of conjunctivitis (red eye, watering of eyes), uveitis/irritis, blurring of vision, episcleritis (e.g. ocular pain, photophobia, blurred vision, headache) must be noted.
- **Skin manifestations**, (e.g. erythema nodosum and pyoderma gangrenosa) are common in IBD (ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease).
- **Psychiatric symptoms**, e.g. anxiety, apprehension and depression may be symptoms associated with functional bowel disorders. Stress is related to peptic ulcer and functional disorders of intestine.

- **History of expulsum of worms.** Patient may complain of it or even may bring the worm (round worm) to the clinician for inspection.

Past history

Ask for the followings:

- **Past history of similar symptoms.**
- **Surgery:** Any gastrointestinal surgery may lead to adhesions (pain abdomen), diarrhoea or malabsorption due to resection of the gut (small bowel syndrome) or bacterial overgrowth or dumping syndrome.
- **Diabetes:** It may lead to gastroparesis, malabsorption and predispose to GI infection and vascular insufficiency
- **Hypertension** may predispose to vascular disease (ischaemia) of intestine
- **Drugs:** Past history of oral contraceptive and NSAIDs may predispose to GI tract and hepatobiliary diseases (veno-occlusive disease)
- **Alcohol and cigarette smoking** are important for peptic ulcer disease as well as for IBD.
- **Blood transfusion, tattooing or body piercing.**

Family history

Although many GI diseases result from environmental factors, other exhibit hereditary components, therefore, family history is important for the followings:

- Family members of inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) patients show a genetic predisposition to disease development themselves.
- Colonic and oesophageal malignancies arise in certain inherited disorders (e.g. polyposis).
- Hereditary pancreatitis is caused by mutation in the cationic trypsinogen gene.
- Familial clustering is even observed in functional bowel disorders but is not proved.
- A family history of hepatitis, liver disease and liver cancer is important. Familial α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency causes liver disease (Wilson's disease)
- Congenital or hereditary syndromes of bilirubin metabolism (Gilbert's, Crigler-Najjar and Dubin-Johnson) are well known.
- Haemochromatosis—a disorder of iron metabolism runs in families.

Personal history

- **Dietary history.** History of eating shellfish (for hepatitis)
- **History of smoking, alcohol, drug abuse, blood transfusion.**
- **Sexual contact history** for sexual related disorders.

General physical examination (GPE)

Examination of mouth and pharynx (Read Chapter 6).

Look at the lips for:

- Desquamation or inflammation (cheilitis)
- Any ulcer
- Nodule/granuloma
- Extragenital chancre
- Any crack
- Pigmentation
- Telangiectasis
- Aphthous ulceration

Look at the teeth for:

- Decay (caries)
- Any missing teeth
- Change in colour/staining
- Shape of the teeth
- Any erosion

Inspection and palpation of the gums for:

- Recession of gums
- Redness or hypertrophy
- Bleeding (spontaneous or on gentle pressure)
- Granuloma/ulcer
- Tenderness
- Exudation of pus from the gums on gentle pressure

Inspection and palpation of the tongue for:

- Deviation or asymmetry
- Size
- Fasciculations/tremors
- Colour, moistness
- Fur
- Atrophy/hypertrophy

Look at the oral mucosa for:

- Discoloured spots/dots/ulcers/cysts

Inspect the roof (palate, fauces), tonsils and pharynx:

- Ulcer/erythema or vesicles
- Any hole or abnormal arching of the palate
- Exudation from the tonsils or pharynx.

Examination of throat

When there is complaint of dysphagia, watch for the act of swallowing to solids and liquids. This may reveal the organic cause and the site of the lesion.

If swallowing is followed by distressing cough, then either a neuromuscular disturbance (bulbar or pseudobulbar palsy) or a fistula between the trachea and oesophagus is the likely possibility.

Examination of neck for JVP, carotid pulsations and lymph node enlargement (Read Chapter 8)
Examination of extremities (See Fig 13.1)

Systemic examination of the abdomen



Sequence of examination

Position: The patient should be lying in comfortable supine position with arms by the side and the head and neck supported by one or two pillows in order to relax the abdomen. Use extra pillows to support a patient with severe kyphosis.

Do not ask the severe breathless patient to lie flat. A sagging mattress make the palpation difficult, hence, use a good non-sagging mattress.

Light and exposure: Make sure that there is good light, the room is warm and your hands are also warm. A shivering patient cannot relax the abdomen and makes the palpation difficult.

While examining the patient in bed, pull down all the clothes except the upper sheet. The clothing should be drawn upto xiphisternum and sheet is folded down across the upper thighs so as to have a good look of the groins and genitalia. This position facilitates the good inspection of the whole abdomen. Once inspection of groin and genitalia has taken place, the sheet may be pulled upto the level of symphysis pubis. The point to be observed on inspection are given in the Box 13.4.

Box 13.4: POINTS TO BE NOTED ON INSPECTION



Fig. 13.5: Inspection of the abdomen

Method. Stand on the right side of the patient (Fig. 13.5) and inspect for the followings:

1. *The skin* for scars, striae, dilated veins, rashes and pigmentation
2. *The umbilicus* for its contour and location, any signs of inflammation and hernia
3. *Shape* of the abdomen including its symmetry
4. *Movements* of the abdominal wall and peristalsis
5. *Any abdominal pulsations*
6. *Hernial sites, groins and scrotum.*

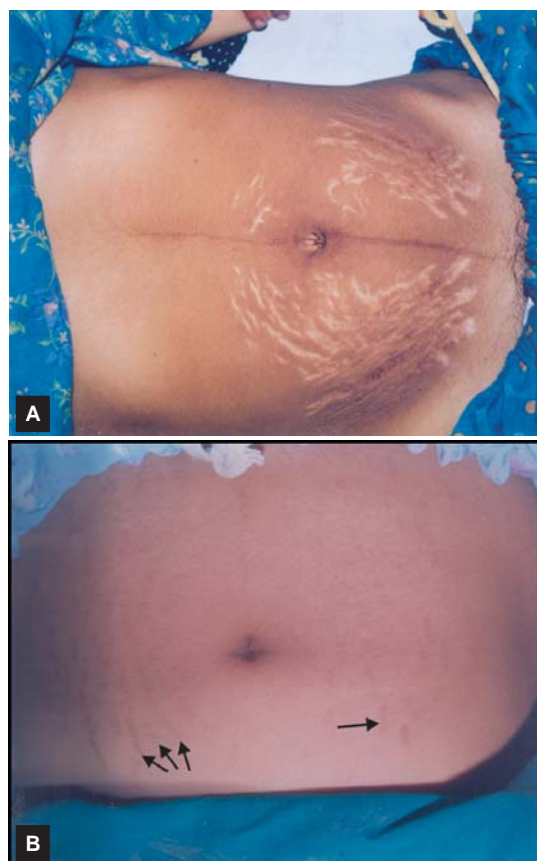
Common abnormalities

1. The Skin

- i. In elder patients *seborrhoeic warts* (pink, brownish or black) and *haemangiomas* (Campell de Morgan spots) are common.
- ii. *Smooth and glossy skin* indicates abdominal distension; whereas *wrinkled skin* suggests old distension that may be disposed of as normal changes.
- iii. *Striae*. These (*atrophic* or *gravidarum*) are white or pink wrinkled stretch marks on the abdominal wall produced by any condition that stretches the abdominal wall abnormally and causes the rupture of elastic fibres and indicate recent change in size of the abdomen.

Ascites, pregnancy or postpartum (Fig. 13.6A), wasting diseases or severe dieting can cause silver striae on the abdomen.

- *Wide, pink-purple striae* (Fig. 13.6B) are characteristics of Cushing's syndrome or prolonged steroids therapy



Figs 13.6A and B: Abdominal striae: A. White silvery striae in a postpartum female, B. Wide pink-purple striae

Box 13.5:**COMMON SURGICAL SCARS****I. Non specific incisions**

- Midline (upper, lower) — ① and ④
- Paramedian (right) — ②
- These are vertical incisions used for general access.

II. Specific incisions

- Subcostal (Kocher's) for gallbladder — ③
- Suprapubic for bladder, prostate, gynaecology — ⑤
- Mc Burney's point for appendix — ⑥
- Inguinal for hernia — ⑦
- Laparoscopic incisions are usually below the umbilicus and may be difficult to see.

III. Surgical stomas

- An ileostomy mark — ①
- A colostomy mark — ②
- A loop colostomy mark.

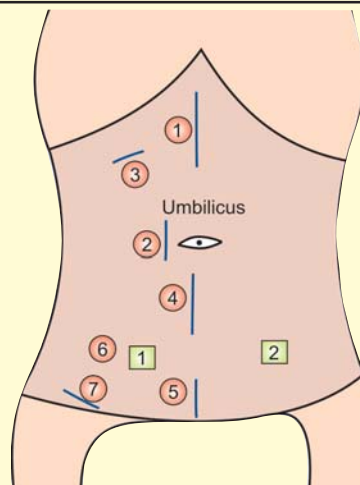


Fig. 13.7: Common sites of scars produced by abdominal incisions. The common sites of surgical stomas are illustrated in small boxes i.e. ① and ②

- iv. *Scars.* Note any surgical scars and identify whether they are old (white) or recent (red/pink), linear or stretched. This is important because surgical scars may be weak and bulge under raised intra-abdominal pressure resulting in hernias called *incisional hernias*. The common examples of various surgical incisions are illustrated in Fig. 13.7 and Box 13.5.
- v. *Dilated superficial veins.* The three common sites are given in the Box 13.6. The method to detect the flow of blood in a vein is illustrated in the Fig. 13.8A to D.

- vi. *Any rash/lesion or pigmentation.* Note any rash (drug induced, viral, vasculitic) or lesion (vesicular or vesicopapular or papular) or pigmentation (linea nigra or erythema ab Igne).

Linea nigra—a pigmentation in the midline below the umbilicus is a sign of pregnancy.

Erythema ab Igne—a brown mottled pigmentation produced by heat to the skin (e.g. hot water bottle or heat pad)



Figs 13.8A to D: Demonstration of direction of flow of blood through dilated tortuous veins around the umbilicus (caput medusae). The flow of blood is away from the umbilicus in cirrhotic portal hypertension (A) Dilated tortuous veins in epigastrium and around the umbilicus. (B) Empty the veins with the pressure of the thumbs. (C) First release the pressure of the upper thumb and note the filling of veins. The vein does not fill. (D) Now repeat the same procedure again and release the lower thumb. The vein fills indicating the direction of blood flow from below upwards (away from the umbilicus)

Box 13.6: DILATED VEINS OVER THE ABDOMEN AND DIRECTION OF FLOW		
Site	Significance	Flow
1. Small thin veins over the costal margin	No significance	Normal (away from umbilicus)
2. Distended veins on the abdominal wall and chest wall with oedema of limbs, buttocks and groins	Inferior vena cava obstruction (Fig. 13.9)	Below upwards
3. Distended veins around the umbilicus (caput medusae) The other signs of portal hypertension should also be seen (e.g. splenomegaly, fetor hepaticus and oesophageal varices)	Portal hypertension (cirrhotic or noncirrhotic) leading to formation of anastomotic channels between portal and systemic veins other sites are; • Oesophagus • Rectum • Behind the kidney and liver • Lungs	Away from the umbilicus (Fig. 13.9)



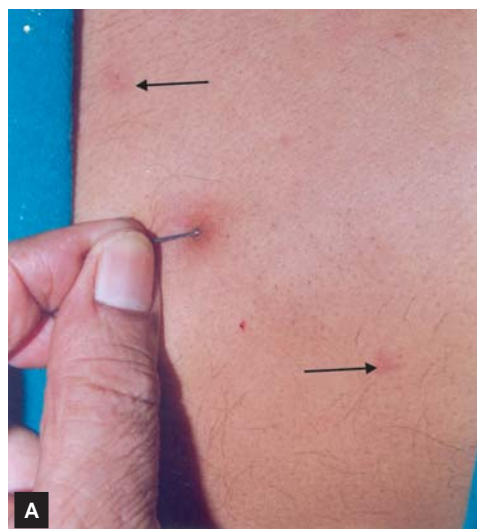
Fig. 13.9: Dilated and tortuous veins over the abdomen and chest in a patient with inferior vena cava obstruction

- vii. *Spider angiomata*. Look for spider like capillary dilatation or pin-head size red macules over the upper abdomen and thorax (Fig. 13.10A). The spider or macular lesion blanches with pressure by the head of pin (Fig. 13.10B).

2. The Umbilicus

Observe its contour, location, signs of inflammation or hernia.

- Umbilicus may be pulled up and down in lower abdominal and upper abdominal muscles paralysis respectively.
- A mass may distort the position of the umbilicus
- Umbilicus is slit transversely (smiling umbilicus) due to stretching by the distended flanks (ascites), antero-posteriorly in central abdominal distension



Figs 13.10A and B: Spider angiomata. A. A red macule with spider leg appearance. B. It blanches on pressure with pin-head and reappears after release of pressure

(pregnancy, distended bladder, any central mass, obliquely in pressure from one side (ovarian cyst).

- A swelling around the umbilicus (umbilical/paraumbilical hernia) may evert it.
- Umbilicus is red or erythematous in inflammation or sepsis.
- Frequently a concentrate of inspissated desquamated epithelium and other debris (amphalolith) may be seen in the umbilicus of elder women.

Normally umbilical is retracted and inverted, but may get everted, pushed up and down, slit (transversely/anteroposteriorly or obliquely in different conditions).

3. Shape of the abdomen

Note whether abdomen is of normal contour, full or distended. Is it sunken (scaphoid)? Do the flanks bulge or is there any local bulge? Is the abdomen symmetrical? Are there any visible organs or masses?

Normal shape of the abdomen is boat-shaped or slightly scaphoid, i.e. the abdominal wall sinks within the bony margins of the abdominal surface and receding towards the centre.

Common abnormalities

A. **Generalised distension/fullness** is indicated by 5 F's i.e. fat, flatus, fluid, foetus, faeces.

- **Fatty abdomen (obesity).** Fat is the most common cause of generalised protuberant abdomen due to fatty, thick abdominal wall. The umbilicus may be everted (sunken).
- **Fluid (ascites).** Fluid collects in the flanks during lying down, hence distension is either in the flanks (mild to moderate ascites) or generalised with protruding flanks in massive ascites (Fig. 13.11). In sitting or standing position, the distension is central or lower abdominal as fluid gravitates into lower abdomen. The percussion note is dull.
- **Flatus (gas).** Gaseous distension may be localised or generalised depending on the site of intestinal obstruction, is invariably generalised in paralytic ileus. The percussion note is tympanitic.
- **Foetus (pregnancy).** Pregnancy causes central distension, tympany in the flanks and palpable foetal parts per abdomen.
- **Faeces.** Impacted faeces (faecoliths) in the colon during severe constipation cause generalised distension with tympanitic percussion note.



Fig. 13.11: Ascites. Note the central distension and a umbilical hernia

B. Localised distension

- Visible enlargement of the bladder, uterus or ovary (ovarian tumour or cyst) may be evident as a characteristic swelling arising from the pelvis. The swelling is predominantly central than peripheral.

Full distended bladder produces a suprapubic bulge which is cystic, rounded, dull on percussion and disappears after micturition.

- Visible bulges may also be due to gross enlargement of viscera (liver, spleen, kidney) or to large tumours, for example an ovarian tumour produces bulge in the lower abdomen thereby increasing the distance between umbilicus and symphysis pubis than between xiphisternum and the umbilicus. Hepatomegaly and massive splenomegaly may produce a bulge in right and left hypochondrium (Fig. 13.12) respectively.

Distension of stomach in pyloric obstruction produces a localised bulge in the upper part of abdomen with positive succussion splash and visible peristaltic waves from left to right.

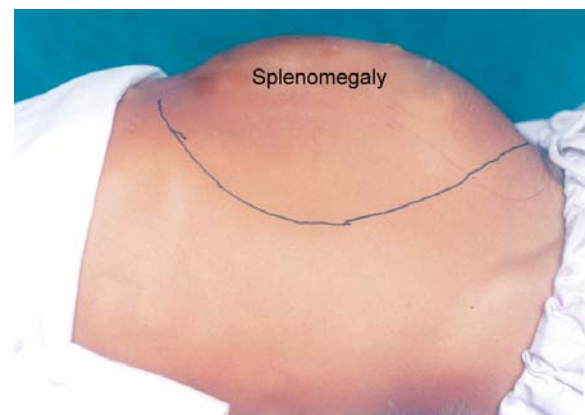


Fig. 13.12: Splenomegaly. Note the bulge in left hypochondrium



Fig. 13.13: Divarication of the recti. Note the midline ridge or linear bulge (↑) when the patient raises his head and shoulders. This is due to ascites (e.g. note the generalised distension of the abdomen and umbilical hernia in this patient)

- C. *Sunken abdomen* (or *scaphoid abdomen*) may be seen in undue starvation or wasting diseases such as malignancies.
- D. *Divarication of the recti* (*diastasis recti*). Divarication of the recti (Fig. 13.13) is separation of the two recti through which abdominal contents bulge in the midline as a ridge when the patient raises head and shoulders. It may either be a congenital defect or due to raised intra-abdominal pressure as a result of repeated pregnancies, ascites, obesity and chronic lung disease.

Abdominal movements

Note the abdominal movements for any abnormality.

Normally the abdominal wall bulges during inspiration and falls during expiration. The movement are free and equal on both sides.

In *generalised peritonitis*, the abdominal movements become diminished or absent to limit the spread of infection and peritoneal irritation/pain.

In *diaphragmatic paralysis*, the abdomen bulges during expiration (paradoxical abdominal movements).

Peristalsis

Note any abnormality in peristaltic movements.

Peristalsis is best observed by watching the abdomen for sometime. If it is not visible, an attempt should be made to visualise it either by asking the patient to swallow some fluids or by applying a sharp tap with fingers over the abdomen.

Small intestinal peristalsis may be seen through a thin abdominal wall, or if there is divarication of the recti abdominis or an incisional hernia. It is normal finding, hence, of no consequence.

Peristaltic waves may be seen passing across the upper abdomen from left to right i.e. from epigastrium to right hypochondrium in pyloric stenosis (congenital or acquired). Peristalsis waves due to large intestinal obstruction (transverse colon) are also seen in the same region but moving from right to left.

Peristaltic waves in distal small gut obstruction (ileocaecal region being the commonest site) are seen in the centre of the abdomen in a "step-ladder pattern" with distended coils of the gut with "hyper-resonant note."

Pulsations

Note any pulsation in the epigastrium or other abdominal regions.

Normally pulsations are not visible over the abdomen except epigastric pulsations of abdominal aorta in thin anxious patients or in anaemic patients:

- *Abnormal pulsations* seen in epigastrium or right hypochondrium are;

Aortic aneurysm produces expansible pulsations in the epigastrium in any position.

Transmitted pulsations may be seen in the same region in patients having a tumour overlying the aorta. These pulsations arise from the aorta, are transmitted to the surface through the tumour hence, disappear when the patient adopts a "knee-elbow" position in which tumour falls away from the aorta.

Right ventricular pulsations are seen and felt over the right hypochondrium corresponding with the apex beat in patients with tricuspid regurgitation.

Even congested liver, sometimes, in addition, produces pulsations posteriorly, in tricuspid regurgitation.

Hernias

Look at the following sites for hernias (Fig. 13.14)

- Incisional scar (Fig. 13.15)
- Umbilicus (Figs 13.11 and 13.13)
- Abdominal wall (ventral hernia Fig. 13.16)
- Groin/Inguinal region (Fig. 13.17A)
- Femoral hernia (Fig. 13.17B)

If there is no swelling, the patient is asked to stand up, turn his head to one side and cough. The positive impulse (protuberance on coughing) suggests hernia.

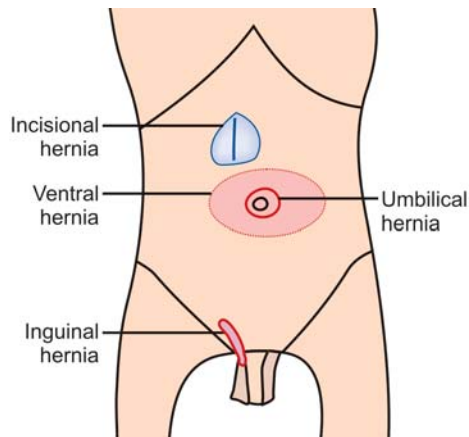


Fig. 13.14: Sites for hernias



Fig. 13.15: Incisional ventral hernia. Note the incisional scar (←) and protuberance around the scar (e.g. ventral hernia)



Fig. 13.16: Nonincisional ventral hernia. Note a localised bulge of anterior abdominal wall due to ventral hernia (←). There is a small umbilical hernia also (↔)



Fig. 13.17A: Inguinal hernia. It lies above and medial to pubic tubercle

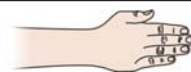


Fig. 13.17B: Femoral hernia

To differentiate between femoral and inguinal hernia, the index finger of the examiner is placed on the pubic tubercle (traced up along the tendon of adductor longus to inguinal canal) and the patient is asked to cough. If the impulse is medial and above the index finger, it is *inguinal hernia*. If the impulse tends to bulge straight through the posterior wall of the inguinal canal, it is *direct*, whereas, if it travels obliquely along the inguinal canal, it is *indirect inguinal hernia*.

Ventral hernia (e.g. epigastric hernia) is a small midline bulge through a defect in the *linea alba*, some where between the xiphisternum and the umbilicus. Ask the patient to raise both head and shoulders off the table or bed or couch, if hernia is present, a central bulge will appear.

Palpation



Palpation forms the most important part of the abdominal examination and is divided into three phases: (1) light (2) deep and (3) palpation during respiration.

Instruct the patient to relax as best as they can and to breath quietly. Assure him that you will be as gentle as possible. Enquire about the site of any pain. Make your hands warm by rubbing them against each other. All these points will be helpful in gaining the confidence of the patients.

The *dipping* technique/method may be employed during deep palpation in patients with marked ascites to detect the enlargement of liver or spleen that might otherwise be missed because of the ascites. The sudden displacement of the fluid gives a tapping sensation over the surface of liver or spleen.

1. Light palpation (Fig. 13.18)

- Ask the patient to place the arms alongside the body to help relax the abdominal muscles.
- Place the examining hand on the abdomen and thereafter maintain the continuous contact with the patient's abdominal wall.
- Ask the patient to report any tenderness elicited during palpation and observe the patient's face for any grimace/wince indicative of local pain/discomfort.
- Enquire about the site of any pain and examine that region last.
- Test the muscle tone by light dipping movements over symmetric areas commencing at a point away from the site of any pain. Guarding is local or generalised rigidity encountered as resistance due to increased muscle tone.
- To elicit rebound tenderness, press the examining hand gently but firmly into the abdomen and then suddenly release the pressure. Observe for any



Fig. 13.18: Superficial (light) abdominal palpation. Put the hand lightly into abdomen after warming it by rubbing the hands against each other. Explain the procedure to the patient so that he/she voluntarily relaxes the abdomen

grimacing/wincing of face due to pain. Sudden withdrawal causes pain due to movement of the inflamed organ.

2. Deep palpation (Fig. 13.19)

- Palpate the abdomen more deeply and firmly with the flat of the hand. The predominant use of finger tips should be avoided as it is likely to induce muscular spasm or resistance.
 - You can use both hands one over the other for deeper palpation if necessary
 - Examine each region in turn, starting away from any area of tenderness; start preferably from the left iliac fossa and proceed anticlockwise as follows:
 - feel for the left kidney
 - next feel for the spleen
 - feel for the right kidney
 - feel for the liver
 - feel for the urinary bladder
 - feel for aortic pulsations and para-aortic glands.
 - Feel also the femoral vessels/pulses
- If a swelling is palpable, spend some time in eliciting its features, i.e. size, shape, outlines, tenderness, adherence to underlying or overlying structures, movements and expansion.
- Now palpate both groins and examine the external genitalia.

Method

Start by placing the right hand flat on the abdominal wall in left iliac fossa with the wrist and forearm in the same horizontal plane. Do not hold the hand rigid but



Fig. 13.19: Deep abdominal palpation

mould it to the abdominal wall. Palpate gently with firm pressure with the fingers held straight with slight flexion at the metacarpophalangeal joints.

Avoid sudden poking with fingertips which is likely to induce muscle spasm and making the palpation rather difficult. Palpate the each quadrant of the abdomen. Note any area of tenderness and rigidity. If necessary, repeat the palpation using both hands; putting the left hand over the right to exert increased pressure so as to facilitate palpation in an obese or muscular patients.

In patients who are unable to relax their abdominal muscles, the best way of examination is to ask them to breath deeply, bend their knees up and distract their attention by talking to them.

Note. A little will be gained from palpation of a poorly relaxed abdomen, hence, every attempt must be made to relax it by bending their knees up and talking to them while palpation.

Common abnormalities

1. *Feel of the abdomen*

Doughy feel indicates plastic type of tubercular peritonitis.

2. **Tenderness.** Tenderness means pain on pressure. Resistance accompanies tenderness, indicates inflammatory lesions of the underlying viscera and the surrounding peritoneum (see the Box 13.7)

Box 13.7: PAIN AND TENDERNESS AS A CLUE TO DIAGNOSIS

Site	Condition
1. Epigastrium	Peptic ulcer
2. Right hypochondrium (intercostal tenderness)	Hepatitis, (Fig. 13.20) liver abscess, cholecystitis (gall stone)
3. Spine	Pott's disease
4. Mcburney's point or right iliac fossa	Appendicitis
5. Lumbar region/lion	Renal colic

Rebound tenderness may reveal deep-seated inflammation (parietal peritonitis) where local guarding may not be present.

3. **Guarding.** Guarding is the resistance offered by the patient during palpation. It is a protective or defense mechanism against pain in which abdominal muscles contract resulting in increased tone. It is commonly seen in anxious patients who are unable to relax their abdomen. This finding can be confirmed by reduction in resistance during the early phase of respiration and when the patient is in a comfortable position and his/her attention has been

distracted by talking and explaining that no undue pain will be caused by the examination.

4. **Rigidity.** Rigidity is a protective mechanism similar to guarding but can not be, voluntarily, relaxed.

- *Generalised 'board-like' rigidity* invariably indicates peritonitis due to any cause. In peritonitis, abdomen does not move during respiration and bowel sounds are absent but rebound tenderness is present. The causes of localised (limited to one side according to the organ affected) and generalised rigidity are given in the Box 13.8.

Box 13.8: CAUSES OF RIGIDITY OF ABDOMEN

- Perforation of a hollow viscus
- Acute pancreatitis, cholecystitis, salpingitis
- Peritonitis (generalised rigidity)
- Intestinal strangulation
- Superior mesenteric artery thrombosis
- Ruptured ectopic gestation
- Twisted ovarian (cyst) or torsion of a fibroid.

The various structure which are normally palpable during the abdominal examination and likely to be misinterpreted as enlarged, are illustrated in the Fig. 13.3.

5. **Skin elasticity or turgor.** The elasticity of the skin provides clue to state of hydration; *loss of turgor* indicates dehydration, on the other hand, *redundant skin folds* indicate weight loss. *Laxity of skin* may be seen with advancing age, after child birth and ascitic tap.

Palpation of various viscera during deep inspiration

The liver, gallbladder, spleen and kidneys are palpated in turn during deep inspiration because they lie at some point with the contact of diaphragm.



Fig. 13.20: Elicitation of tenderness in right hypochondrium in a patient with hepatomegaly. The liver is tender as with firm pressure over right hypochondrium, the patient winces due to pain

A. The liver

The patient must be lying in supine position with hips and knees flexed. Place both hands side-by-side flat on the abdomen in the right subcostal region with the fingers pointing towards the ribs. If resistance is encountered, move the hands further down until no resistance is felt. Now ask the patient to breathe as deeply as can and at the height of inspiration, press the fingers firmly inwards and upwards to feel the lower edge. If liver is palpable it will be felt as a sharp, firm edge during inspiration. Try to locate the liver edge both laterally and medially. Once you feel the liver edge, lighten the pressure of your palpating hand(s) slightly so that liver can slip under your fingerpads and you can feel its anterior surface.

Conventional method is to place the right hand below and parallel to right subcostal margin. Palpate the edge of the liver with radial border of the index finger of right hand during deep inspiration which will be felt as something striking your hand (Fig. 13.21).

The '*hooking technique*' may be useful in obese persons. Stand on the right side of the patient, place both hands, side by side, on the right abdomen below the costal margin. Press in with your fingers and up towards costal margin (Fig. 13.22). Ask the patient to take deep breath. The liver edge becomes palpable with the fingerpads of both hands.

The liver is often palpable in normal persons without being enlarged. Hepatomegaly is described in centimeters below the right costal margin in midclavicular line.

Describe the liver enlargement as follows:

- *Enlarged* by so many centimeters



Fig. 13.21: Palpation of liver (conventional method)



Fig. 13.22: Palpation of liver by hooking method

- *Surface*. Rough or smooth, tender or nontender
- *Consistency*. Soft, firm or hard.
- *Tenderness* present or not
- Bimanually palpable or not
- Ballotable or not
- Movement with respiration
- Pulsatile or not (Fig. 13.23)
- Fingers can or cannot be *insinuated* behind the costal margin

The characteristics of liver mass are discussed in Box 13.9.



Fig. 13.23: Method to elicit pulsatile liver. Make the patient sit. Position the hands as if you are bimanually palpating the liver. Note the separation of hands during quiet breathing

Abnormalities

Differential features of enlarged liver:

- (i) Liver is smooth, soft and tender in hepatitis, congestive heart failure, Budd-Chiari syndrome, and fatty infiltration
- (ii) Liver is firm and regular in obstructive jaundice and cirrhosis
- (iii) Painless, hard, nodular liver indicates malignancy of liver (primary or secondary)
- (iv) Liver is pulsatile in tricuspid regurgitation
- (v) Riedle's lobe enlargement is characteristic of Budd-Chiari syndrome.
 - *Assessing the tenderness of a nonpalpable liver.* Place your left hand flat on the lower right rib cage and then gently strike your hand with the ulnar surface of your right fist. Ask the patient to compare the sensation with that produced by a similar strike on the left side.
 - *Thumping sign* (Fig. 13.24). Strike your right fist over the lower right rib cage and note whether the patient winces/grimaces or feel pain. Tenderness by this manoeuvre indicates inflamed liver.

Causes of hepatomegaly (Read case discussion on hepatomegaly in Bed side Medicine by Prof. S.N. Chugh)

The gallbladder

The gallbladder is a pear-shaped organ lying under the right lobe of the liver with its fundus located anteriorly behind the tip of the 9th costal cartilage. Its body and neck pass posteromedially towards the porta hepatis. Its cystic duct joins the common hepatic duct to form the common bile duct.



Fig. 13.24: Thumping sign for intercostal tenderness. Note the wincing following a gentle thump with fist of right hand

The gallbladder is palpated in the same way as the liver.

Method

Place the examining fingers over the gallbladder area and ask the patient to take a deep breath. Gallbladder if palpable is felt as a firm, smooth, rough or globular swelling with distinct borders, just lateral to the edge of rectus abdominis near the tip of 9th costal cartilage. Its upper border merges indistinctly with the lower border of the right lobe of the liver or disappears underneath the costal margins so that its only fundus and a part of the body is palpable when it gets enlarged.

When the liver is enlarged or the gallbladder gets grossly distended, the latter may be felt not in the hypochondrium but in the right lumbar region or even as low down as the right iliac fossa.

Once the gallbladder is palpable, note its shape, surface, consistency, tenderness and percussion note.

The characteristics of gallbladder mass/ palpable gallbladder

1. The gallbladder mass is rounded or globular structure with well defined margins.
2. It moves freely with respiration similar to liver
3. It is superficially placed, dull on percussion
4. It is neither ballotable nor bimanually palpable
5. The upper border of the mass cannot be reached.
6. The renal angle on the back is not full.

The differences between palpable gallbladder and palpable right kidney are given in the Table 13.1.

Common abnormalities

- *Tenderness over gallbladder area* (Murphy's sign). In acute cholecystitis, the gallbladder gets inflamed,

Table 13.1: Distinctive features between palpable gallbladder and right kidney

Feature	Gallbladder	Right Kidney
1. Shape of mass	Globular, firm, smooth	Boat-shaped, firm, smooth
2. Movements with respiration	Free movement	Restricted movements
3. The upper border of the mass defined or not	Not defined, merges with the liver	Defined
4. Ballotability	Not ballotable	Ballotable
5. Bimanually palpable	No	Yes
6. Percussion note over the mass	Dull	Colonic resonance over the renal mass present sometimes

swollen, painful and tender. Often, an extremely tender gallbladder can be palpated as an indefinite mass. Ask the patient to take deep breath and palpate for the gallbladder in the normal way. At the height of the inspiration, the breath is arrested with a gasp as the mass is felt. This represents, *Murphy's sign*. This sign is not found in chronic cholecystitis or uncomplicated gallstones. Hepatic tenderness may also increase with this manoeuvre but is usually not localised.

Enlargement of the gallbladder

The gallbladder becomes enlarged and palpable in the following conditions;

1. **Carcinoma of the head of the pancreas or any other cause of malignant obstruction of the common bile duct.** The gallbladder and biliary duct become dilated painlessly and progressively leading to deep jaundice with palpable gallbladder (*Courvoisier's sign*).
2. **A stone in common bile duct (CBD).** If a stone is present in CBD, then there is intermittent colic, intermittent jaundice and fever with chills and rigors. By Courvoisier's law, gallbladder is not palpable but becomes palpable in an impacted stone, stricture or fixed luminal obstruction.
3. **Mucocoele of the gallbladder.** Occasionally, the inflammation may be mild and subsides quickly sometimes leaving a gallbladder distended by mucocoele. In this condition, there is pain with palpable gallbladder.
4. **Empyema of gallbladder.** It is a complication of acute cholecystitis, where the infection involves the whole wall of the gallbladder giving rise to localised peritonitis and acute pain. Occasionally, the gallbladder may become distended with pus (an empyema).
5. **In carcinoma of the gallbladder.** The gallbladder will be felt as a stony hard, irregular swelling unlike the firm and regular swelling of the above two mentioned conditions.
6. **Porcelain gallbladder.** The gallbladder wall may get calcified due to chronic inflammation. It may become palpable.
7. **Emphysematous gallbladder.** Especially seen in diabetics and following hepatic artery embolisation. This is severe form of cholecystitis with gas forming organisms. On plain X-ray abdomen, air within gallbladder wall may be identified.
8. **Mirizzi's syndrome.** This consists of obstruction of common hepatic duct or common bile duct by a stone impacted in the cystic duct with surrounding inflammation. (*Mirizzi's type-I*). In *Mirizzi's type II*, the stone erodes into the common bile duct creating a fistula. (*calculous cholecystitis*).
9. **Chronic cholecystitis and cholelithiasis.** It is characterised by pain in the right hypochondrium radiating to inferior angle of the scapula, aggravated by a fatty meal and relieved by frequent belching or vomiting. The gallbladder may become palpable and *Murphy's sign* may be positive.

The Spleen

When the spleen enlarges, it expands anteriorly, downwards and medially, often replacing the tympany of the stomach and colon with the dullness of a solid organ in *Traube's region* (Fig. 13.25). It then becomes palpable below the costal margin.

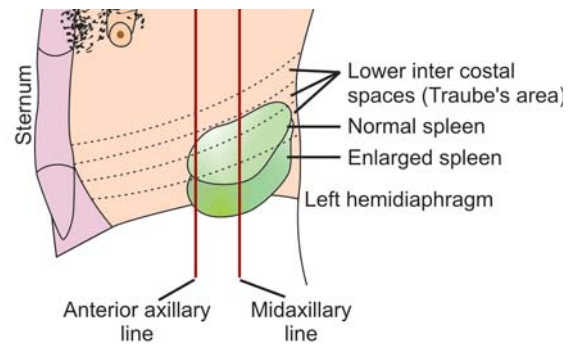


Fig. 13.25: Traube's area/region (diagram). It lies underneath the lowest inter costal spaces (9th to 11th). Normally, this area is resonant, becomes dull on percussion in splenomegaly and left-sided pleural effusion

Spleen can be palpated by the following methods:

1. **Bimanual method** (Fig. 13.26) The examiner's left hand is placed on the lower rib cage so as to pull the skin towards the costal margin, allowing the finger tips of the right hand to feel the tip of the spleen as it descends while the patient inspires quietly and deeply. Palpation is begun with the right hand in the left lower quadrant with gradual upwards movement towards the left costal margin thereby identifying the lower edge of the enlarged spleen. Once the splenic tip is felt, the finding is recorded by measuring the enlargement in centimeters below the left costal margin at some fixed point i.e. *left midclavicular line*, the *xiphisternal junction* or *from midpoint of umbilicus*. Bimanual examination can be done in supine or right lateral position.
2. **Hooking method** (Fig. 13.27): The patient is put in right lateral position and the examiner stands on the left



Fig. 13.26A: Palpation of spleen by bimanual method for mild splenomegaly. Tip of the spleen will strike the fingertips of palpating hand



Fig. 13.26B: Palpation of spleen by bimanual method for massive splenomegaly. Start palpation from the right iliac fossa and proceed towards the umbilicus obliquely



Fig. 13.27: Palpation of spleen by hooking method

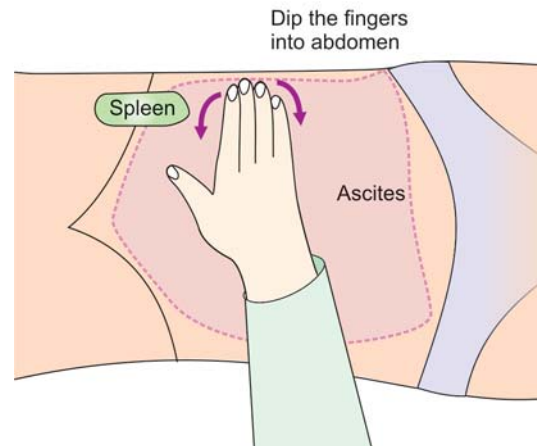


Fig. 13.28: Palpation of spleen in the presence of ascites (dipping method)

side behind the patient, hook your both hands over the left costal margin. The tip of the spleen can be felt striking the pulp of fingertips when the patient takes deep breath.

3. *Dipping method* (Fig. 13.28). This method is used to palpate the spleen in presence of ascites where other methods are likely to displace the spleen. Stand on the right side of the patient. Palpate the spleen starting from the right iliac fossa moving towards the left hypochondrium. Dip your fingers into the abdomen with each palpation so as to displace the fluid to the side. If spleen is enlarged, it will strike back your hand, following each dip. By this method you can just judge the enlargement only while other characteristics are difficult to judge.

Note: Spleen is normally not palpable. It can become palpable only when it has enlarged two to three times its usual size.

Splenomegaly

Palpable spleen does not mean enlargement as it may be pushed down by the low descending diaphragm in emphysematous patients. Therefore to define its extent of enlargement, its upper and lower borders have to be defined and span of the spleen may be measured. The spleen enlargement may be graded as mild (1-2 cm), moderate (3-7 cm) and severe (7 cm or more).

Causes (For causes, read case discussion on splenomegaly in Bed side Medicine by Prof. SN Chugh) However, common causes include infections (hepatitis, malaria, kala azar, typhoid, endocarditis), congestion (pericardial effusion, CHF, portal vein or hepatic vein thrombosis) haemolytic anaemias, collagen vascular

Table 13.2: Distinguishing features between palpable spleen and left kidney

Feature	Spleen	Kidney
1. Mass is smooth and regular in shape	More likely	Mass is irregular
2. Mass moves with respiration	Yes, moves superficially and obliquely The movements are free	Yes, moves deeply and vertically movements are restricted (e.g. slight movement possible)
3. Able to insert fingers between the mass and costal margins	No	Yes
4. Palpable notch on the medial surface	Yes, if enlarged massively	No
5. Bilateral masses palpable	No	Sometimes (e.g. polycystic disease)
6. Percussion note over the mass	Dull usually	Resonant usually
7. Direction of the mass	Anterior, downwards and obliquely towards right	Anteroposterior
8. Mass extends beyond midline	Sometimes, if massively enlarged	Never (except with horseshoe kidney)
9. Renal angle	Empty	Full
10. Ballotability	No	Yes

disease (SLE) and infiltrative disorders (lymphomas and leukaemias).

The characteristics of splenomegaly are described in the Table 13.2.

The kidneys

Adult kidneys are 11-14 cm (three lumbar vertebral bodies) in length, lie retroperitoneally on either side in lumbar region. The right kidney is usually a few centimeters lower because liver lies above it. Both kidneys rise and descend with respiration because the upper pole of each kidney is in contact with diaphragm.

Kidneys are usually not palpable but the lower pole of the right kidney unlike the left may be palpable bimanually in thin patients as a smooth, rounded swelling which descends on inspiration. The kidneys being retroperitoneal structure enlarge anteroposteriorly in the lumbar region filling the costovertebral angle (renal angle).

Method

- A bimanual method is used to palpate the kidneys.

Palpation from the same side (bimanual method)

A. Left kidney

- Move to the patient's left side. Place your right hand posteriorly just below the costal margins with your fingertips just reaching the costovertebral angle (renal angle). Place your left hand anteriorly in the left upper quadrant.
- Push the two hands together firmly but gently as the patient breathes out.
- Feel for the lower pole as it moves down between the hands (i.e. try to capture the kidney between

your hands) as the patient breathes in deeply. The lower pole of the kidney, when palpable, is felt as a rounded solid swelling between two hands i.e. bimanually palpable.

- *Test for ballotability.* Kidney can be pushed from one hand to the other. Push the kidney from back to the front with one hand and feel its movement with the other. This is known as *balloting*.

Kidney is a ballotable structure.

- Assess the *size, surface* and *consistency* of a palpable kidney.
- B. *Right kidney (Fig. 13.29)*
The method of palpation is same. Now you have to stand on the right side and repeat the above process in the manner described above. Now use the left hand posteriorly and right hand anteriorly.



Fig. 13.29: Palpation of the right kidney by bimanual method from the same side

Palpation from the opposite side

A kidney can be palpated from the opposite side by standing on the right side as follows:

- The left kidney can be palpated by placing the left hand posteriorly in the left loin and right hand anteriorly on the left upper quadrant. Feel the kidney's lower pole between two hands as described above.
- The right kidney can also be palpated by placing left hand in right loin and right hand anteriorly over the right quadrant. Feel the kidney's lower pole between two hands as described above.

Elicitation of tenderness of the kidney (Fig. 13.30). The tenderness of the kidney is elicited posteriorly by gently tapping the renal angle using a fist or fingertips with the patient sitting forward.



Fig. 13.30: Elicitation of renal tenderness

Common abnormalities

1. *Congenital horseshoe kidney.* The two kidneys are joined at their lower poles and may be palpable straddling the midline.
2. *Enlarged kidney(s).* Owing to the varying degree of thickness of the abdomen, kidney enlargement is difficult for the inexperienced to assess unless there is gross enlargement. Irregularity of the surface or an abnormal consistency is more easily appreciated. The causes of enlargement are given in the Box 13.9.

Box 13.9: CAUSES OF ENLARGEMENT OF KIDNEY(S)

<i>Unilateral</i>	<i>Bilateral</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Renal tumour • Hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis • Unilateral cystic disease (medullary cystic disease, medullary spongy kidney) • Compensatory hypertrophy of one kidney due to renal agenesis or hypoplasia affecting the other kidney or following nephrectomy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polycystic kidneys • Lower urinary tract obstruction with hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis • Acute pyelonephritis in children • Amyloidosis • Diabetic nephropathy • Acromegaly

3. *Small kidneys.* The kidneys are smaller and naturally *nonpalpable* in chronic renal disease (e.g. chronic renal failure) where the diagnosis is suggested on the history rather than from the clinical examination. Ultrasound confirms the diagnosis.
4. *Tenderness over the renal angle* may be elicited in inflammatory disease of the kidneys or in musculo-skeletal disorder.

The characteristics of the renal mass. The salient features of the renal mass and its differentiation from liver on right side and spleen on left side have already been described in the Tables 13.1 and 13.2 respectively.

Urinary bladder

The bladder normally cannot be examined unless it is full or distended above the symphysis pubis.

The characteristics

- Distended bladder produces a globular swelling in the hypogastrium arising from the pelvis and extending to the umbilicus. Its lateral and upper borders can be made out but it is not possible to feel its lower border.
- The lump is smooth and tender.
- Pressure over the lump may produce sensation of urination.
- It is dull on percussion
- The mass disappears after micturition or catheterisation.

Abnormality

- Bladder distension occurs from outlet obstruction due to urethral stricture, prostate enlargement, drugs

and medications and also from neurological disorders such as stroke, multiple sclerosis as well as in spinal cord compression.

- *Suprapubic* tenderness indicates cystitis.

Aortic and other pulsations

Aortic pulsations are not readily felt but can easily be made out with practice on deep palpation a little above and to the left of umbilicus. In older patients particularly women with marked lumbar lordosis and in thin individuals, the aortic pulsations are more easily palpable.

Method

- Fingertips are used as a means of palpation.
- Palpation is done to detect the pulsations and to assess the width of the aorta
- Press the extended fingers of both the hands, held side by side deeply into the upper abdomen on each side of aorta as illustrated (Fig. 13.31). Make out the left wall of the aorta on that side and note its pulsations.
- Remove both hands and repeat the procedure slightly to the right of the midline in upper abdomen. Make out now the right wall of the aorta by noting its pulsations.
- The width of the aorta, in this way, is assessed by measuring the distance between pulsations on either side of midline. Increased width more than normal suggests either a merely tortuous aorta or an aortic aneurysm (a pathologic dilatation of the aorta), hence, an ultrasound is a means to distinguish between the two.



Fig. 13.31: Palpation of aortic pulsations (e.g. aortic aneurysm)

Roughly, a normal aorta is 1-3 cm (average 2.5 cm) wide in adults; increase in width suggests an aneurysm.

Femoral vessels. (palpation of femoral vessels is described under CVS examination in Chapter 11).

An abdominal lump, if any

When a mass or a swelling is palpable in the abdomen, first of all make sure that it is not a normal structure. The normal palpable structures are already depicted in the Fig. 13.3.

Next consider whether it could be due to enlargement of liver, spleen, right or left kidney, gallbladder, urinary bladder, aorta or para-aortic lymph nodes. The mass in relation to these structures as well as other masses in the abdomen are discussed further in this chapter.

Now palpate the mass carefully again and localise it to one of the anatomical regions and try to study the pathological nature of the mass. The points to be described about a mass include its *site, size and shape, surface, edge and consistency, mobility and adherence*, and whether it is *bimanually palpable* or *ballotable* or *expansile*. If the mass is expansile, then decide whether pulsations are intrinsic to the mass or are transmitted aortic pulsations.

Physical examination of an abdominal lump/mass

I. General

- *Appearance*, anaemic or pale, emaciated or jaundiced.
- *Lymph nodes* at different sites especially supraclavicular
- *Pedal oedema*.

II. Local

A. Inspection (look at)

- Site
- Size and shape
- Surface, edge
- Movements with respiration
- Skin overlying the mass

B. Palpation (to elicit and define)

- Tenderness
- Rigidity
- Confirm the findings of inspection regarding size, shape, edge and surface
- *Margins*, i.e. ill defined or well defined.
- Notch present or not

- **Consistency** i.e. soft, firm or hard. Hard Swelling are usually malignant. Soft swellings are usually cystic. A solid undefined, tender mass suggests an inflammatory mass.
- **Abdominal (parietal) or intra-abdominal position.** To determine whether the mass lies in the abdominal wall or inside the abdomen, ask the patient to lift his/her head while you press firmly against the forehead. Now feel the swelling and decide whether it disappears or becomes prominent or does not change.

If swelling becomes less prominent or disappears it is intra-abdominal.

If it becomes more prominent, it is extra-abdominal. If it remains the same, it must be within the layers of the abdominal wall.

- **Mobility or adherence.** Move the mass in all directions, i.e. from side to side and above downwards.

A mass arising from the small bowel, transverse colon, cysts in mesentery and large secondary deposits in the omentum move freely in all directions.

Fibroid uterus or pregnant uterus move from side to side that differentiates it from bladder and ovarian mass.

A fixed mass indicates either an adherent inflammatory mass or infiltration of malignant tumour into the abdominal wall and surrounding structures or the mass is situated retroperitoneally (e.g. pancreas).

- **Boundaries or limits.** If the mass lies in the upper abdomen, feel the upper border and decide if it is possible to "get above it". Similarly, if the mass lies in the lower abdomen decide whether one can "get below it".

If one cannot get above the mass (i.e. disappears under the costal margins), a hepatic, splenic, renal or gastric origin of the mass must be suspected.

If one cannot get below it (i.e. arising from the pelvis, a bladder, uterus, ovary or rectal origin should be suspected).

- **Movements on respiration**

Swellings arising from the structures that lie in contact with diaphragm, i.e. liver, spleen, kidneys, gallbladder and distal stomach descend on inspiration.

Swellings originating from structures that have a mesenteric or other broad base of attachments do not move with respiration.

- **Pulsations, if present.** Feel the pulsations and decide whether these are intrinsic (expansile mass) or extrinsic (transmitted aortic pulsations) to the mass. Put two fingertips at some distance over the mass and look what happens to them during systole. If fingers are separated while being lifted, it is expansile swelling, (e.g. aneurysm), and if just lifted not separated, it is transmitted pulsation. Secondly, disappearance of the pulsations in knee-elbow position (mass is off the aorta) suggests transmitted aortic pulsations.
- **Bimanual palpation and ballotability.**

Renal mass is bimanually palpable and ballotable while a gallbladder mass may only be bimanually palpable. Actually, any mass that can be caught between two hands in bimanually palpable.

- C. **Percussion.** Light percussion should be employed.
- *Decide whether mass is resonant or dull.*

Masses originating from liver and spleen are dull or percussion while renal mass may be resonant.

- D. **Auscultation.** Auscultate over the mass for rub (hepatic or splenic) or an arterial bruit (hepatic haemangiomas, renal artery stenosis). The areas of auscultation over the abdomen are diagrammatically represented (Fig.13.39).

Differential diagnosis of a mass in abdomen

I. Mass in the abdominal wall (e.g. cold abscess)

- A cystic swelling with no signs of inflammation (cold)
- Fluctuation sign is positive
- Swelling becomes prominent when patient is asked to raise head and shoulder against resistance (i.e. abdominal muscles contract and make the swelling prominent)
- There may be irregularity in the affected rib or a gibbus or deformity of the spine (i.e. it usually arises from the caries of the spine or the rib).

II. Intra-abdominal mass (e.g. mass in right hypochondrium)

The differential conditions producing a mass in right hypochondrium are detailed in the Box 13.10.

Box 13.10: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF A MASS IN RIGHT HYPOCHONDRUM				
<i>Liver</i>	<i>Gallbladder</i>	<i>Subphrenic abscess</i>	<i>Gastric or duodenal</i>	<i>Hepatic flexor of colon</i>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It moves with respiration (descends during inspiration) but is not mobile from side to side 2. It has a sharp edge 3. Fingers cannot be insinuated between it and the costal margins 4. It is dull on percussion Dullness of the mass is continuous with liver dullness 5. Bimanual palpable but nonblottable mass 6. Liver span is increased (> 10 cm) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pear-shaped or globular swelling of the size of an egg • Cystic and smooth • Upper border is not reachable (hidden behind liver) • Moves with respiration • Can be moved from side to side but cannot be pushed down to the loin like kidney 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A diffuse tender swelling with fever and signs of toxæmia, e.g. sweating, tachycardia, rigors and chills and tachypnoea • Shallow respiration due to pain with frequent breath holding • Pain in right hypochondrium referred to shoulders • Fluoroscopy shows raised and fixed diaphragm with gas under it 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An irregular, firm lump that fully moves with respiration • Patient is anorectic, emaciated with weight loss • If pyloric obstruction, present, peristalsis is visible from left to right • Succession splash is positive • Percussion note is tympanitic • Enlarged supra-clavicular gland, if malignant • Barium meals may show a filling defect 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carcinoma of colon occurs in old age, produces alternate diarrhoea and constipation. The lump is firm and irregular, poorly moves with respiration. Stools are positive for occult blood • Barium enemas shows a filling defect • <i>Intussusception</i>. It occurs commonly in children, produces curved sausage-shaped lump in the line of colon with its convexity towards umbilicus. There is sudden intermittent pain and vomiting. Absolute constipation present without faecal odour. The lump may harden with screaming. Barium enema is diagnostic

Box 13.11: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF MASS IN THE EPIGASTRIUM			
<i>Ventral hernia</i>	<i>Stomach and duodenum (e.g. pyloric stenosis)</i>	<i>Pseudopancreatic cyst</i>	<i>Aortic aneurysm</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A small midline swelling in the abdominal wall due to defect in linea alba, lies between xiphoid process and the umbilicus • Dragging pain or discomfort after food resembles peptic ulcer 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A well defined lump felt in the epigastrium in an infant • Projectile vomiting and wasting • Visible peristalsis from left to right 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It is a collection of fluid in the lesser sac of peritoneal cavity due to trauma or pancreatitis • The mass/swelling is smooth, rounded, cystic fluctuation sign positive • USG and barium meal study will show the mass posterior to the stomach (in the bed of stomach) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An expansile mass situated in the midline • It can be differentiated from transmitted pulsations by knee elbow position in which transmitted pulsations will disappear

III. Mass in epigastrium (see the Box 13.11)

IV. Mass in the left hypochondrium

The splenic mass has been differentiated from the left kidney (Table 13.2).

V. Mass in right and left lumbar regions (see the Box 13.12)

VI. Periumbilical mass

It could be either due to peritonitis or intestinal obstruction, their characteristics have been highlighted in Table 13.6.

VII. Mass in right iliac fossa

The masses in the right iliac fossa are related to either appendix, caecum, ileocaecal junction, ascending colon, iliopsoas sheath, uterus and its appendages.

Box 13.12: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF LUMBAR REGION MASS			
<i>Umbilical hernia</i>	<i>Desmoid tumour of the rectus sheath</i>	<i>Tabes mesenterica</i>	<i>Retroperitoneal tumour (sarcoma)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Swelling is around the umbilicus Impulse expansion on coughing present Swelling is reducible Common in multiparous women after the age of 40 yrs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is a fibroma arising from rectus muscle either spontaneously or following surgery Firm, round swelling which recurs after surgery Recurrent growth becomes malignant 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An irregular, ill-defined mass of lymph nodes and mesentery seen in children and young adults Mass can be moved along the line of mesentery (a line passing from right hypochondrium to left anterior superior iliac spine) There may be signs of subacute intestinal obstruction Evidence of tuberculosis either in the lung or lymph node 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Young patient Firm, nodular mass attached to the posterior wall of the abdomen Oedema feet if there is pressure on inferior vena cava

1. Appendicular mass—characteristics

- An irregular firm, tender mass initially fixed, may show slight mobility later on.
- Tympanitic note on percussion.
- History of severe pain around the umbilicus, settling down to the right lower quadrant.
- Early voluntary guarding may be replaced by involuntary muscular rigidity.
- Rebound tenderness suggests peritoneal inflammation around the appendix.
- A positive Rovsing's sign.* Pain in the right lower quadrant during left-sided pressure suggests appendicitis (Rovsing's sign). So does the right lower quadrant pain on sudden withdrawal (*referred rebound tenderness*).
- A positive psoas sign.* This can be elicited in different ways;
 - Place your hand just above the patient's right knee and ask the patient to raise it against resistance.
 - Or
 - Ask the patient to turn onto left side. Now extend the patient's right leg at the hip.

Increased pain on either manoeuvre constitutes a positive psoas sign indicating irritation of psoas muscle by an inflamed appendix.

- A positive obturator sign.* Flex the patient's right thigh at the hip, with the knee bent, and rotate the leg internally at the hip. This manoeuvre stretches the internal obturator muscle and produces pain.

2. Ileocaecal mass

- Hyperplastic ileocaecal tuberculosis*
 - An irregular, firm, tender mass that slips under your fingers.
 - Intermittent subacute intestinal obstruction (i.e. vomiting, distension).
 - Caecum is pulled up (may be detected on USG)
 - Other manifestations of tuberculosis of lung or abdomen (lymph nodes).
 - Barium meal study shows pulled up caecum and a filling defect.
(**Note.** Barium meal study should not be done in subacute intestinal obstruction).
- Carcinoma of caecum or ascending colon*
 - An irregular firm lump
 - Change in bowel habits, e.g. alternate diarrhoea or constipation
 - Occult blood in the stool
 - Patient is anaemic and emaciated
 - Age above 45 years
 - Filling defect on barium enema
- Amoebic typhilitis*
 - An irregular, firm, tender lump
 - History of amoebic dysentery (present or past)
 - Stools are positive for *E. histolytica*
- Impaction by a bunch of round worms*
 - Irregular lump
 - History of intermittent abdominal colic
 - History of passage of a large worm

3. *Ileopsoas abscess*

- It may be appendicular (read appendicular lump).
- It may be infection of a haematoma in the traumatised iliopsoas muscle producing pain, tenderness, guarding, rigidity etc.
- It may be a cold abscess gravitating down deep to the inguinal ligament into the thigh, fluctuation on either side of the inguinal ligament is positive. There may be Pott's disease of the spine (e.g. gibbus or spinal deformity).

4. *Gallbladder*

- A huge distended gallbladder with hepatomegaly may be palpable in this region as discussed (Read gallbladder mass).

5. *Unascended kidneys*

- Read characteristics of renal mass.

6. *Undescended testis*

- When palpable, it is pathological (i.e. atrophic)
- Hard, irregular lump
- Absence of testis in the scrotum.

7. *Uterus or tubo-ovarian mass*

- Usually a midline swelling extending into the right iliac fossa (uterine mass) or localised in the iliac fossa (tubo-ovarian).
- One cannot get below the mass.
- Mass moves from side to side.
- Menstrual disturbances are usual accompaniments.
- Vaginal examination will confirm the diagnosis.

VIII. Mass in the hypogastrium

1. *Distended urinary bladder* (Read the characteristic of bladder mass as already discussed).
2. *Uterus and its appendages*
 - A spherical midline mass arising from the pelvis lower limit cannot be reached.
 - Firmer than urinary bladder
 - Moves from side to side, not above downwards
 - Menstrual irregularity present.
 - Catheterisation will differentiate it from bladder mass (disappears after catheterization).
3. *Tubo-ovarian* (salpingitis, ovarian cyst or tumour)
 - Mass arising from one side of the pelvis, may become central later on.
 - Pain, fever and tenderness present in salpingitis due to surrounding pelvic peritonitis.

- Menstruation normal or scanty
- Ovarian cyst or tumour is dull on percussion but flanks remain resonant, i.e. a feature that distinguishes it from ascites.
- Vaginal examination confirms the diagnosis.

4. *Pelvic abscess*

- It may follow acute appendicitis, salpingo-oophoritis and puerperal sepsis.
- Constitutional symptoms, i.e. fever, pain abdomen, nausea
- Copious discharge of mucus per rectum due to irritation of rectum.
- Increased frequency of micturition due to irritation of bladder.
- Rectal examination shows bulging of anterior part of rectum.

IX. Mass in the left iliac fossa

I. *Normally palpable masses (Fig. 13.3)*

- Thickened sigmoid or descending colon
- Impacted faeces.

II. *Abnormal masses*

- A. *Cold abscess of abdominal wall.* (A) parietal swelling, may present in any quadrant.
- B. *Carcinoma of sigmoid colon*
 - Increasing constipation
 - Loaded colon proximal to obstruction, signs of malignancy, i.e. anaemia, weakness, cachexia.
 - Sigmoidoscopy/colonoscopy is diagnostic.
 - Barium enema shows a filling defect.
- C. *Diverticulosis/Diverticulitis*
 - Evidence of diverticulosis, e.g. history of recurrent pain, flatulent distension of lower abdomen, diarrhoea or constipation. Barium enema is diagnostic, i.e. shows saw-tooth appearance of the colon.
 - Diverticulitis evidence of inflammation, e.g. pain, fever, altered bowel habits, tender colon. Confirmation is done by CT after opacification of bowel.
- D. *Ileopsoas mass*—already discussed above
- E. *Undescended testis*—already discussed above
- F. *Unascended kidney*—already discussed above.

Fluctuation. Tap the mass from one side after fixing it between the fingers and thumb, if not already fixed, feel the impulse on the other side. Cystic mass and distended urinary bladder show fluctuation positive.

Measurement of abdominal girth. Abdominal girth is measured with a tape at the level of umbilicus. It is increased in conditions associated with generalised distension of the abdomen.



The aim of abdominal percussion is to distinguish between resonant (gaseous distension) and dull (ascites, solid or cystic mass) percussion note. Normal percussion note is resonant over whole of the abdomen.

Fluid gravitates into flanks during lying down, hence, flanks are dull on percussion in ascites.

Percussion is tympanitic in gaseous distension, e.g. ileus and intestinal obstruction, intussusception.

Solid (tumour or gravid uterus) and cystic (ovarian cyst) masses in the abdomen are dull.

Method

- Percussion is done from resonant to dull area. Start percussion in the centre and move to the periphery of the abdomen.
- Place the percussing finger on the abdomen parallel to the anticipated change in the percussion note.
- Percuss lightly for superficial structures such as lower border of the liver and firmly for the deeper structure, e.g. upper border of the liver. Measure the vertical span of the liver dullness (Fig. 13.32) by mapping out the upper border of the liver dullness by percussing the chest starting from 4th intercostal space downwards in midclavicular line, and lower border by percussing the upper abdomen starting from the umbilicus towards right hypochondrium in midclavicular line. The distance between the upper border of dullness and lower border of dullness is the vertical span of liver dullness. Normal liver span is 10-14 cm.

The span of liver dullness is increased when the liver is enlarged.

The span of liver dullness is decreased when liver is small and shrunken (fulminant hepatitis) or when free air collects below the diaphragm (perforation of a hollow viscus) or interposition of the colon between the liver and diaphragm—*Chilaiditi's syndrome*; serial observations may show a decreasing span of dullness with resolution of hepatitis, CHF or less commonly, with progression of fulminate hepatitis.

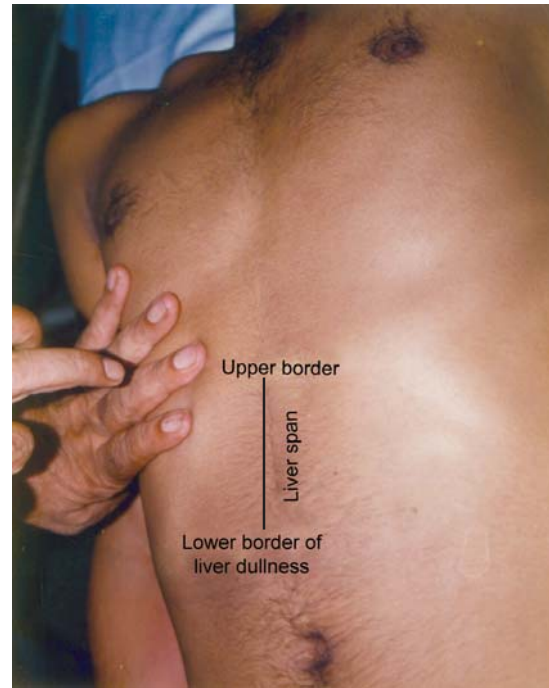


Fig. 13.32: Percussion for upper and lower borders of liver dullness and measurement of liver span (Remember the best way to define liver span is ultrasound)

Liver dullness may be displaced downwards by the low diaphragm in COPD (emphysema).

Abnormalities

Distention of abdomen

Three common causes of diffuse distension of abdomen are:

- Ascites
- A large ovarian cyst
- Obstruction of the large bowel, distal small bowel or both

Percussion distinguishes between the above three mentioned conditions Fig. 13.33.

A protuberant abdomen with bulging flanks suggests the possibility of free fluid in the peritoneum (ascites) while gas filled intestines float to the top (in the centre), therefore, percussion note is dull in flanks and resonant in the centre in ascites (Fig. 13.34A) while the whole abdomen is tympanitic in intestinal obstruction with increased peristalsis (Fig. 13.33C).

Signs of ascites

Two important techniques help to confirm the presence of ascites, although both may be misleading unless there

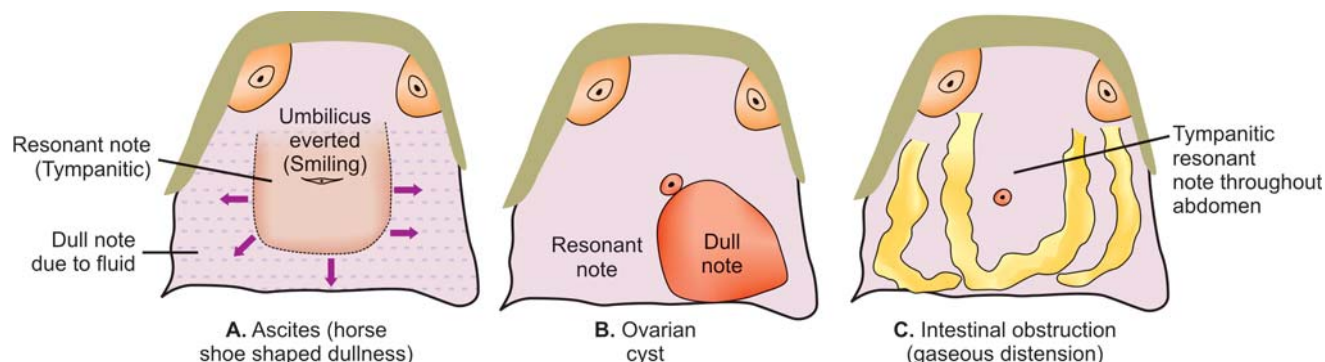


Fig. 13.33: Importance of percussion in a patient with distended abdomen. Percussion can distinguish the resonant structures from dull structures inside the abdomen. Fluid, (A) gaseous distension (B) can easily be distinguished (C) and solid mass or cyst

is sufficient free fluid present to give generalized enlargement of the abdomen.

1. **Shifting dullness (Fig. 13.34).** Ask the patient to lie supine. Percuss from the centre outwards towards one of the flank; say right flank keeping the fingers in the longitudinal axis, until dullness is detected. Normally the dullness is detected over the lateral abdominal musculature; while flanks are dull in ascites. Then keeping the hand on the abdomen, ask the patient to roll away from you on to the left side. Percuss again in the new position, if the previously dull note has now become resonant then ascitic fluid is probably present. To confirm its presence, repeat the manoeuvre on the left side of the abdomen.

The sign is positive in moderate ascites but may become absent when fluid is either too small or too large (no space to shift the fluid).

2. **Fluid thrill (Fig. 13.35).** Ask the patient or an attendant to put the edge or side of the hand in the midline of the abdomen and press firmly as shown in Fig. 13.35. This pressure will stop the transmission of waves or thrill through the fat in the abdominal wall. Place your one hand flat in one of the flank to detect the impulse while you tap or flick the opposite flank with your other hand (Fig. 13.35) for an impulse or thrill which will be transmitted to the receiving hand if fluid is present. Fluid thrill just suggests fluid under



Fig. 13.34: Elicitation of shifting dullness. Start percussing from resonant (A) area towards dull area (B) till you reach a dull area (C). Now while keeping the finger over dull area ask the patient to turn to the other side, now the area which was dull earlier on percussion becomes resonant due to shift of fluid, hence, shifting a dullness is present (D). To further define the area of shifting dullness, now start percussion again from this newly found resonant area toward umbilicus to know where the dullness has shifted. Mark the line of demarcation at the start of dull area now. The length of the space between the previous resonant area in D and newly found dull area on change of position indicates the area of shifting dullness, i.e. the space over which fluid has shifted (indicated between arrows by dotted lines \longleftrightarrow in Fig. 13.34D)



Fig. 13.35: Elicitation of fluid thrill

tension either in a cavity (peritoneal) or a cyst (ovarian).

Presence of fluid thrill indicates tense ascites. It may be absent in mild ascites.

3. *Horse-shoe shaped dullness*. This can be demonstrated in ascites by mapping out dullness from the umbilicus outwards in different directions (Fig. 13.34A). Dull area accumulates in the dependent parts and the resonant intestines float up in centre.
4. *Pudal's sign* (dullness in knee-elbow position). The centre of the abdomen is percussed as the patient adopts a knee-elbow position. The fluid collects (gravitates) in the centre in this position, making it dull on percussion.

Pudal's sign demonstrates minimal or mild detectable ascites (Fig. 13.36).

II. Cirrhosis of the liver

Flapping tremors (asteriaxis). Look for the presence of flapping tremors (Fig. 13.37) in a patient with cirrhosis of the liver with ascites. Ask the patient to outstretch his/her hands with widened fingers if patient is conscious. Note the flaps of the hands. In unconscious patient, hold the wrist with one hand and dorsiflex the patient's hand with your other hand and feel for the flap with palm of your hand.

III. Hydatid thrill/sign

It is elicited by placing 3 fingers over the swelling and percussing the middle finger. Afterthrill will be felt by other two fingers. This sign was used to demonstrate a hydatid thrill in the liver or in other abdominal structures, but is nowadays not practised because of doubtful significance.



Fig. 13.36: Pudal's sign for mild ascites



Fig. 13.37: Demonstration of flapping tremors in a patient with cirrhosis of liver and ascites. This should be demonstrated in sitting position in conscious patients, if not able to sit then in lying down position

Percussion for splenic dullness

It is accomplished with any of the three techniques described by Nixon, Castell, or Barkun.

1. *Nixon method*. The patient is placed on the right side so that the spleen lies above the colon and stomach. Percussion begins at the lower level of lung resonance in the posterior axillary line and proceeds diagonally along a perpendicular line towards mid and anterior axillary lines.

Normally, the upper border of dullness is 6-8 cm above the costal margin. Dullness >8 cm in an adult indicates splenomegaly.

2. *Castell's method*. With the patient supine, percussion in the lowest interspace in anterior axillary line (8th

or 9th) produces a resonant note during deep inspiration if spleen is normal in size. A dull percussion note on full inspiration suggests splenomegaly.

3. *Percussion of Traube's semilunar space.* The borders of the Traube's space are 4th rib superiorly, the left midaxillary line laterally, and left costal margin inferiorly. The patient lies supine with left arm abducted. During normal breathing, the space is percussed from medial to lateral margins, yielding a normal resonant sound. A dull percussion note suggests splenomegaly.

Note: All these techniques are less reliable in obese patients and in patients with full or distended stomach.

Percussion is of limited value in determining the size and position of the spleen as this can only be roughly assessed from the percussion note. However dull note over the left hypochondriac mass is invariably splenic in origin.

Splenic area of dullness may be masked by expanding left lung in COPD (emphysema).

Auscultation



The areas to be auscultated are represented in Fig. 13.38.

- i. Auscultate peristalsis bowel sounds for at least 3 minutes before deciding that they are absent. However, normal peristaltic activity of the gut produces a characteristic gurgling sound which may be heard from time to time by the unaided ear (borborygmi). Normal peristaltic sounds can be heard with stethoscope placed just above the umbilicus on either side. The sounds appear at an interval of 8-10 seconds though the interval varies greatly and they occur more frequently after meals.

Place the stethoscope preferably in the centre just right to the umbilicus and keep it pressed there until sounds are heard (Fig. 13.39). Normal bowel sounds are heard as intermittent low and medium pitched gurgles at a rate of 3-5/min with an occasional high-pitched noise.

- ii. *A vascular bruit over the aorta or other vessels.* Place the stethoscope lightly on the abdominal wall over the aorta in epigastrium above and to the left of the umbilicus and listen for bruit. For renal bruit, place the stethoscope similarly just above and to the side of umbilical (Fig. 13.40). Listen for bruit in the corresponding iliac fossae, and over the common femoral arteries in each groin. Listen for a bruit in right hypochondrium over the liver.

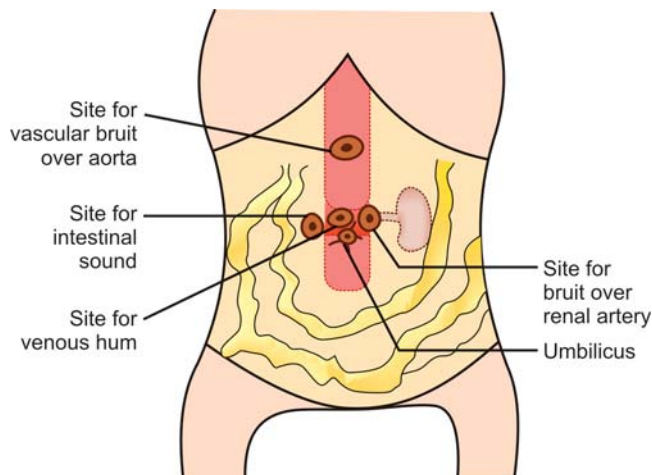


Fig. 13.38: Sites for auscultation over the abdomen



Fig. 13.39: Auscultation for the bowel sounds



Fig. 13.40: Site for auscultation for a bruit over the renal artery in a patient with renal artery stenosis

- iii. *Venous hum*. A humming sound may be heard between xiphisternum and the umbilicus in portal hypertension.
- iv. *Friction rub*. Auscultate over the splenic and hepatic area for any rub (friction sound).
- v. *Succession splash*. A splashing sound like shaking a half-filled bottle is termed as *succession splash*.

To elicit a succession splash in stomach, place one hand over the lower ribs and shake the patient quickly and rhythmically from side to side and auscultate over the epigastrium.

Abnormalities on auscultation

- i. **Abnormal bowel sounds**. Increased and exaggerated bowel sounds (borborygmi) are heard in mechanical small gut obstruction. If associated with bouts of colicky pain abdomen, then they are pathognomonic of it.
 - High-pitched tingling sound may be heard after every 10-30 seconds in a dynamic obstruction (paralytic ileus). This represents the fluid spilling over one distended gas or fluid filled loop to another. Later on the peristalsis ceases and, bowel sounds become absent.
 - *Silent abdomen* (absence of bowel sounds) occurs in;
 - Generalised peritonitis
 - Paralytic ileus.
- ii. **Vascular bruits**. Arterial bruits (harsh systolic murmurs) in the abdomen may arise from the aorta, or any other narrowed or partially obstructed vessel (renal artery stenosis in renovascular hypertension). Rarely, a systolic bruit may be heard over the liver in hepatoma (due to increased vascularity).
- iii. *Venous hum*. It is heard over well developed collateral circulation in portal hypertension (**Cruveilhier-Bamugarten syndrome**)
- iv. *Friction rub* over hepatic area indicates perihepatitis due to embolism, hepatoma or may occur following a liver biopsy. A splenic rub indicates perisplenitis due to splenic infarct (s) in embolisation and sickle cell anaemia.
- v. *Succession splash*. This can be produced in normal stomach upto 2 hours after food or drink. Abnormally, it occurs in pyloric obstruction, advanced intestinal obstruction with grossly dilated loops of gut and in paralytic ileus.

EXAMINATION OF THE GROINS AND BACK

Anatomy of the groin

Because hernias are relatively common in this region, it is important to understand the anatomy of the groin.

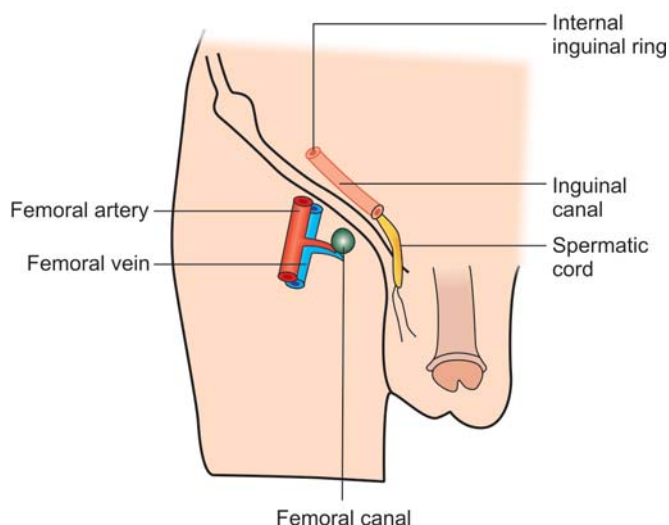


Fig. 13.41: Anatomy of inguinal canal

The basic landmarks are anterior superior iliac spine, the pubic tubercle, and the inguinal ligament that runs between them. Find these on yourself and a colleague.

The inguinal canal (a common site for hernia) lies above and parallel to the inguinal ligament, is a tunnel having an external opening called *external inguinal ring* and an internal opening called *internal inguinal ring* (Fig. 13.41) which lies just above the midpoint of inguinal ligament. Neither the canal nor internal inguinal ring is palpable through the abdominal wall normally. When loops of gut force their way through weak areas of inguinal canal, *inguinal hernias* appear and ring(s) become dilated and palpable.

Another potential site is femoral canal which lies below the inguinal ligament. Although you cannot see it, you can estimate its site by placing your index finger, from below, on the right femoral artery, your middle finger then overlies the femoral vein and your ring finger on the femoral canal. Femoral hernias protrude here.

Inspection and palpation on of groin

Inspection of the groin for the hernial sites has been described during examination of abdomen. Look for cough impulse while asking the patient to turn his/her head to one side and cough. If no bulge is apparent on inspection, then proceed to palpation. Place the left hand in left groin so that the fingers overlie and are in line with the inguinal canal; place the right hand similarly in the right groin. Now ask the patient to cough (strain) and feel for any bulge (expansible impulse) with each hand. A positive impulse indicates hernia. Normally,



Figs 13.42A and B: Inguinal hernia. (A) Note the swelling in the left inguinal region due to hernia (arrow). It is reducible. Patient can reduce the hernia himself. (B) Cough reflex. The hernia reappears on standing and coughing. It increases in size and becomes prominent during coughing

when patient coughs and raises the intra-abdominal pressure, a nonexpansible impulse is transmitted to the palpating hand which may be confused with small reducible inguinal hernia in unexperienced hand.

A bulge that appears on straining (coughing) suggests a hernia (Fig. 13.42).

Palpate for an inguinal hernia by placing your fingers or thumb on the anterior thigh in the region of the femoral canal (Fig. 13.43) Ask the patient to cough or strain down again. Note any thrust imparted to the fingers/thumb.

The difference between inguinal and femoral hernia has already been discussed (Read hernias under inspection of abdomen).

Palpation of the femoral arteries have already been discussed (read CVS examination Chapter 11). Auscultation of femoral artery for any bruit has also been described.

Now palpate for inguinal lymph nodes (Fig. 13.44) for any enlargement along the femoral artery, medially beneath the inguinal ligament towards perineum. Repeat this examination on the other side also.

When the patient complains of a lump in the groin, he/she should be examined lying down and standing up.



Fig. 13.43: Palpation for left inguinal hernia. The inguinal hernia is direct



Fig. 13.44: Inguinal lymph nodes. The biopsy of the lymph node has been done on right side and the wound is dressed. The left inguinal region shows a mass with discharging sinus (↓)

The back of abdomen

Inspect the back of abdomen for any swelling, skin lesion or deformity of the spine or a tuft of hair (spina bifida).

Palpate the spine and ribs for any deformity and tenderness.

A gibbus indicates Pott's disease of the spine.

Examination of genitalia

Male genitalia. Examination of genitalia have been discussed separately (Chapter 14). However, genital examination is also important when patient presents with abnormalities of the groin or acute or subacute

intestinal obstruction (disease of genitalia may lead to abdominal symptoms such as pain or tenderness).

Most of the complains pertaining to the groin include a lump in the groin. Most lumps in the groin are either hernias or enlarged inguinal lymph nodes. The inguinal hernias are more common than femoral.

Examination of the groins and scrotum also constitute a part of general examination. Lymphadenopathy in the groin may be a part of a generalised disorder such as lymphoma, leukaemia, hence, the lymph nodes should be examined as a whole throughout the body including cervical, axillary etc. not in isolation.

Method

Ask the patient to stand up in front of you, turn him to one side and inspect the site of swelling noting that it descends into the scrotum or not. Now ask him to cough loudly and look for cough impulse (expansile impulse) and try to decide whether it is above or below the inguinal ligament. If a cough impulse produces a bulge on inspection, it suggests hernia, so move to that side where the lump is present in the groin and stand by the side and a little behind the patient. If right groin is being examined, support the patient by putting left hand on the right buttock, and fingers of the right hand being placed over the inguinal canal. Ask the patient to strain (cough) and feel for an expansile impulse, if present, indicates hernia.

If hernia is confirmed to be inguinal, then proceed to decide.

1. Whether it is direct (Fig. 13.43) or indirect (this has also been discussed in inspection of abdomen-Hernias)
2. *Is the hernia fully reducible or not?* It is clinically important because nonreducible hernias are prone to strangulation. The best way to demonstrate it is to ask the patient to lie down; if protuberance disappears, hernia is reducible. You can also ask the patient about its reducibility, and if need to be confirmed, then ask the patient to reduce it himself.
3. *What are the contents of hernial sac?* The gut produces gurgle, is soft and compressible on palpation; while omentum in the sac feels firmer and doughy.

Differential diagnosis of inguinal hernia

The conditions that mimic inguinal hernia include;

- A large hydrocoele of tunica vaginalis
- A large cyst of the epididymis
- An undescended testis (scrotum will be empty in this condition)
- A lipoma or a hydrocoele of the spermatic cord.

Differential diagnosis of femoral hernia

In addition to inguinal hernia, the other conditions to be kept in its differential diagnosis include:

- A lipoma in femoral triangle
- A pulsatile aneurysm of the femoral artery
- A sphenovarix is a swelling containing varicose veins, hence, a bluish tinge is imparted to the swelling. The swelling disappears on lying down and a venous hum may be heard over it.
- A psoas abscess (mass is fluctuant and compressible)
- An enlarged lymph node. Look for any evidence of infection in the areas it drains, i.e. feet, legs, thigh, scrotum, pudental or perineal areas. If inflammatory in origin, it may be tender and skin temperature be raised (acute lymphadenitis).

Differential diagnosis of a scrotal swelling

The three ways used for accurate diagnosis and differential diagnosis of a scrotal swelling are:

1. Inspection (Fig. 13.45)
2. Palpation
3. Transillumination

Inspection

- Expose the groin and scrotum fully. Look for any abnormality or swelling.
 - If a swelling is present, proceed to determine the following characteristics on palpation.
1. *Can one get above the swelling?* To decide it, palpate the neck of the scrotum between fingers and thumb and determine:
 - Whether finger and thumb can be approximated or not. If they can be approximated (nothing is felt in between them) then the swelling is limited to spermatic cord (i.e. one can get above the



Fig. 13.45: Normal scrotum. Exposure of the patient for inspection of scrotum

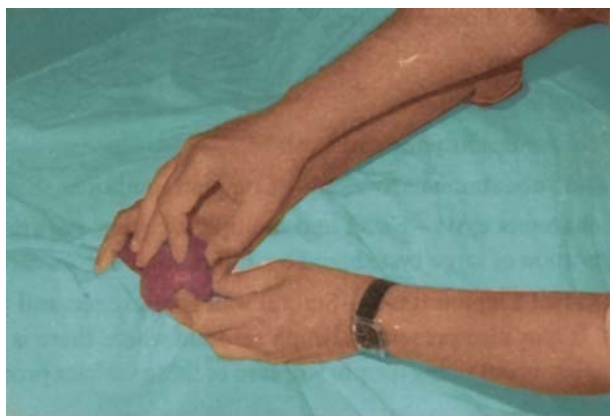


Fig. 13.46: Fluctuation test in a cystic scrotal swelling. Hold the swelling with fingers and thumb of both hands at two opposite ends. Now compress (or tap) the swelling on one side by one index finger (displacing finger) and feel the impulse on the other end by another index finger (watching finger)

swelling). If cannot be approximated due to presence of cord between the thumb and finger, then swelling is arising from the above, i.e. groin, and may be inguinoscrotal hernia (one cannot get above the swelling).

2. *Is the swelling cystic or solid?* This is decided by palpation (fluctuation test Fig. 13.46) as well as by transillumination.
3. Whether *transillumination* is positive? To decide it, first make the scrotal swelling tense by gently holding it, and place a bright pin-torch just behind the swelling. Transillumination of light across the swelling indicates it to be cystic in nature (i.e. an epididymal cyst or a hydrocoele of tunica vaginalis see Fig. 14.37). If the swelling is non-transilluminant, then it is solid, hence, palpate it again to decide whether it is epididymis (epididymitis produces a painful swelling) or testis (orchitis produces a painful swelling while malignancy is usually painless).
4. *A postural relation.* A swelling that is inapparent on lying down but it becomes apparent on standing could be a varicocele. If swelling is cystic and feel like palpating a bag of worms, it is a varicocele.

Female genitalia (read Chapter 14)

The various abnormalities on scrotal swelling are discussed under the examination of urogenital system Chapter 14.

The anus, rectum and prostate

Applied anatomy

The gastrointestinal tract terminates in a short segment called the *anal canal*. The anal canal is usually kept in

closed position by muscular action of the voluntary external anal sphincter and involuntary internal anal sphincter. The anal canal is directed along a line roughly between anus and umbilicus. The anal canal is demarcated from the rectum superiorly by anorectal junction which can be seen on proctoscopic examination as a stout band of muscle above which rectum balloons out and turns posteriorly into the hollow of coccyx and the sacrum.

The prostate gland surrounds the urethra, has two lateral lobes and one median lobe. The seminal vesicles, shaped like rabbit ears above the prostate are not normally palpable.

In female, the uterine cervix can usually be felt through the anterior wall of the rectum.

Common presenting symptoms of anorectal and prostate disorders

1. Change in bowel habits (occur in cancer)
2. Blood in the stool (polyps, cancer, piles, GI bleed)
3. Pain during defaecation, rectal bleeding and rectal prolapse.
4. Anal warts or fissures (*fissure in ano*)
5. Thinning of stream of the urine (prostate enlargement or urethral obstruction)
6. Increased frequency and burning during micturition (urinary infection).

Examination

The examination includes inspection of the perianal area, anus (Fig. 13.47) and digital (per rectum) examination of anal canal and rectum.



Fig. 13.47: Examination (inspection) of anus

Method

Make the patient to lie in left lateral position with knees drawn well up and buttocks projecting over the side of bed/couch. A good source of light should be used for inspection. Put a disposable glove on the right hand and stand behind the patient's buttocks facing the patient's leg (Fig. 13.48). Explain the procedure to the patient and assure him that you will be as gentle as possible.

Inspection

After separating the buttocks, inspect the anus and perianal area for any abnormality such as:

- *Inflammation of skin or dermatitis or rashes or excoriations.*
- *Anal skin tags* (occur in severe pruritus or prolapsed piles).
- *Anal warts (condylomata accuminata)* which are sessile or pedunculated papillomata with red base and white surface and are numerous.
- Note any *hole or dimple* near the anus with a tell-tale bead of pus or granulation (*Fissure-in-ano*).
- A *sentinal pile* is a tag of skin which is pathognomonic of anal fissure. The fissure can easily be demonstrated by drawing apart the anus to reveal the linear tear in the lining of anal mucosa. Anal fissures are common in proctitis and Crohn's disease
- A *perianal haematoma* (thrombosed external pile).
- *Prolapsed strangulated piles* (prolapsed pile which is deep red or purple is surrounded by oedema of the anus and perianal skin).
- An *abscess*. A tender fluctuant swelling which deforms the outline of the anus is perianal abscess - a point that distinguishes it from ischiorectal abscess where anal outline is maintained.
- Note the presence of any ulceration.
- *Rectal prolapse*. If rectal prolapse is suspected, ask the patient to bear down and note whether any pink rectal mucosa or bowel comes out through the anus.
- *Perineal bulge*. Note whether the perineum bulges itself downwards.

Downward bulging of the perineum during straining or coughing indicates weakness of pelvic floor muscles usually due to denervation of these muscles. This sign is also seen in women after childbirth, in women with urinary—faecal incontinence or in patients with severe constipation.

Palpation (digital examination)

Lubricate your gloved right index finger and place it flat on the anus. As the sphincter relaxes, gently insert



Fig. 13.48: Digital (per rectal) examination

the fingertip into the anal canal, in a direction pointing towards the umbilicus (Fig. 13.48). If severe pain is elicited by this manoeuvre then further examination must be stopped and now spread the anus with the fingers and examine it for any anal fissure which might explain this tenderness or pain.

If no pain or discomfort is elicited, then proceed further,

1. Note the sphincter tone of the anus. Normal tone of sphincter grips the finger.

Sphincter tightness occurs in anxiety, inflammation or scarring.

Sphincter is lax in neurological diseases.

2. Rotate the finger through 360 degrees in the anal canal and feel for any induration, thickening or irregularity of the wall of anorectum.

Induration may be due to inflammation, scarring or malignancy.

The irregular border or nodularity of border indicates rectal cancer.

To bring the lesion (nodularity, irregularity or induration) within a reach of palpating finger, first take out the finger and ask the patient strain down and palpate again.

3. Try to visualize the anatomy of the rectum which can be assessed by sweeping movements of the finger at 2, 5, 8 cm inwards or until the finger cannot be pushed further anymore into the rectum. Repeat these movements as the finger is being withdrawn. In this way, one can detect malignant ulcer, nodular

or stenosing carcinomas, polyps and villous adenomas.

4. Palpate also the hollow of sacrum and coccyx posteriorly and walls of the pelvis laterally for any abnormality.
5. In men, one should feel anteriorly the *rectovesical pouch*, *seminal vesicles* and the *prostate*. Normally, rectovesical pouch and seminal vesicles are not palpable. Abnormally, pus may collect in this pouch producing swelling (pelvic abscess) or it may contain malignant deposits which may be felt as hard nodules. Infection of the seminal vesicle produces a tender tubular swelling on one side of midline above the prostate.
6. *Palpation of prostate gland*. It is felt as a rubbery firm swelling about the size of a large chestnut. Move the finger over each lateral lobe which is normally smooth, regular and has rubbery consistency. Between the two lateral lobes is a palpable median sulcus (a faint depression running vertically between lateral lobes). Assess the prostate for enlargement and any other abnormality.

Benign prostatic hypertrophy produces smooth enlargement of prostate. Its consistency and median sulcus are preserved.

In carcinoma, the gland becomes hard, nodular, the lateral lobes tends to become irregular and nodular and there is distortion or loss of median sulcus.

In women, the cervix is felt as a firm, rounded mass projecting back into the anterior wall of the rectum. Above the cervix, there is rectouterine pouch (*pouch of Douglas*) which is a common site of abnormality in females. Thus, rectal examination is an essential part of pelvic examination in females.

The body of the retroverted uterus, a fibroid mass, ovarian cyst, malignant nodule or a pelvic abscess, all can be palpated in the pouch of Douglas—a common site of abnormality.

7. Gently withdraw your finger and wipe out the patient's anus or give him/her tissues or a piece of gauge to do it. Inspect your finger for mucus, blood or pus on the glove and test it for occult blood.

Investigations of gastrointestinal system

Radiological examination

Plain X-ray of abdomen: This is a simple and cheap investigation. This yields important informations, such as radio-opaque stones anywhere in the tract and gas and fluid levels. Normally gas in the intestine acts as

contrast media to assess the distribution of small intestine in the abdominal cavity. There may be a fluid level normally seen in the stomach because it contains both gas and fluid. In obstruction, there may be excessive gas and fluid in the bowel above the obstruction, films taken with the patient erect will demonstrate fluid levels. More than 3 levels in ascending manner (*step-ladder pattern*) indicate *acute intestinal obstruction*. The chest X-ray will show the position of diaphragm. Gas under the right dome of diaphragm indicates *perforation of a hollow viscus* (stomach, colon, intestine). A gas and fluid level below the right dome of diaphragm will indicate *subphrenic abscess*. Raised right dome of diaphragm may occur with large *amoebic liver abscess* or *phrenic nerve palsy*.

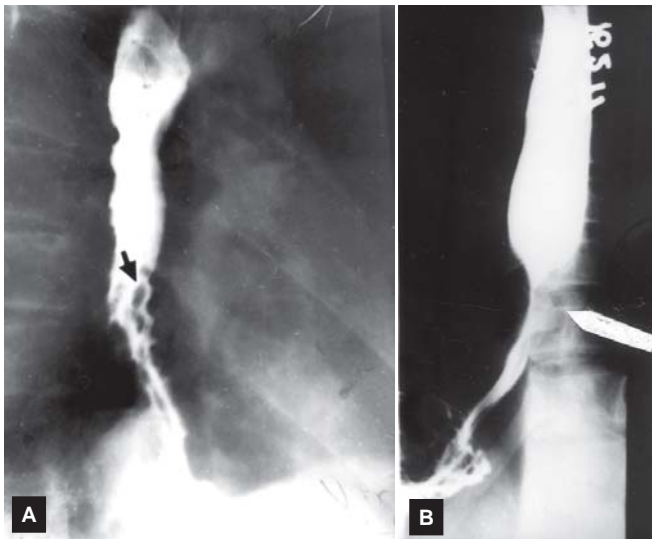
Barium studies: The radioopaque barium can visualise a break in the continuity of the outline of the gut mucosa, abnormalities in the appearance of mucosa and disorder of motility. The normal mucosa seen on barium meal study is shown in Fig. 13.49.

Barium swallow: The oesophagus can be studied easily with barium being swallowed. The procedure will show disorder of motility, a filling defect(s) caused by varices (Fig. 13.50A) or a tumour, a stricture (Fig. 13.50B), hiatus hernia or a diverticulum.

Barium meal examination by a double contrast study in which a small amount of barium is used together with introduction of gas to distend the stomach will show an ulcer as a small collection of barium with radiating folds of gastric mucosa. The ulcer and the mucosal



Fig. 13.49: Barium meal study of small intestine showing normal pattern of mucosa



Figs 13.50A and B: Barium swallow. A: There are irregular filling defects in barium filled oesophagus due to oesophageal varices, B: There is an oesophageal stricture (←)

pattern can be studied in double contrast study. Barium meal follow through study is useful to delineate the diseases of small intestines.

Barium enema is uncomfortable and exhaustive procedure, sometimes may induce arrhythmias in old persons. It is used to delineate the lower GI tract (rectum, colon and terminal ileum). Double contrast barium study is more useful than simple barium. Before barium enema, the patient is fully cleared of gas and faecal matter by taking laxative at night and a cleansing enema just before the barium enema. Barium alone or, for double contrast study, barium and air are introduced into the bowel through a self-retaining catheter. Radiographs are taken with colonic mucosa coated with barium and lumen of intestine filled with air. In this way colonic mucosa can be studied for motility disorder, inflammatory bowel disease (Fig. 13.51), polyposis and tumours of colon.

Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI): The usefulness of CT scan and MRI is comparable in diagnosing gastrointestinal disorders. They are useful for intra-abdominal diseases involving the inaccessible organs or regions such as pancreatitis, pancreatic tumours or abscess (Fig. 13.52), retroperitoneal masses such as lymph nodes etc.

Angiography: (coeliac axis or mesenteric artery). It is done in upper and lower GI tract bleed.



Fig. 13.51: Barium enema. There is loss of haustration and stem-pipe appearance of the colon indicating ulcerative colitis

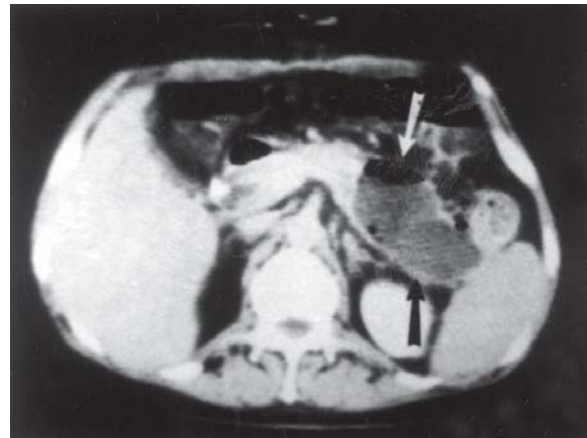


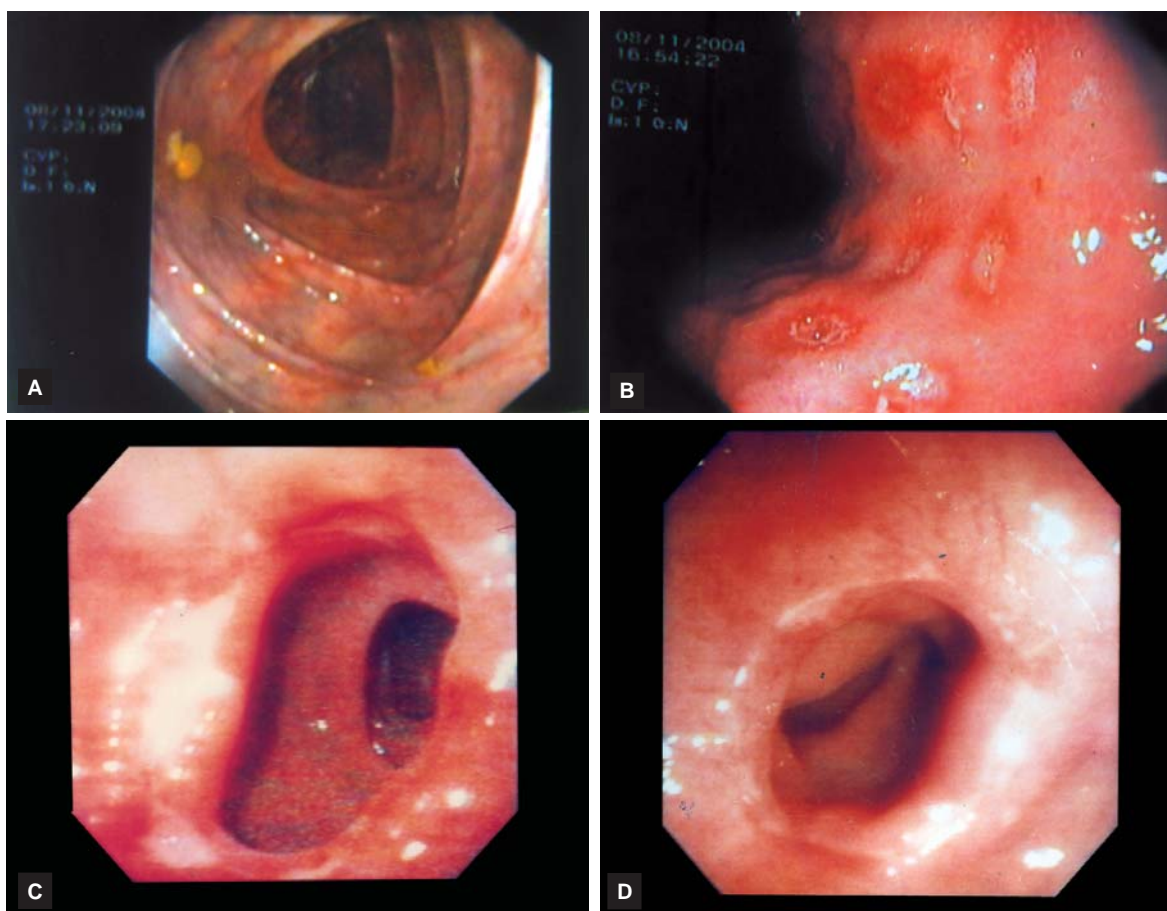
Fig. 13.52: Pancreatic abscess. CT scan shows a mass (arrow) containing fluid and gas arising from the tail of the pancreas

Endoscopy

It is done by a flexible instrument called *endoscope* which is passed through the mouth in upper GI tract endoscopy and through anus in lower GI endoscopy. The instrument can also be used for therapeutic purposes such as for taking a biopsy and removal of a stone or a polyp.

Upper GI endoscopy

This is done on both outpatients and inpatients. This is done on elective as well as on emergency basis. An



Figs 13.53A to D: Upper GI endoscopy (A) Normal gastric mucosa (B) Gastric erosions (C) Duodenal ulcer (D) Healing of duodenal ulcer after anti-ulcer therapy

outpatient with 12 hours fast is sedated with diazepam and pharynx is anaesthetised with local xylocaine. The fiberoptic instrument is passed into pharynx and patient is encouraged to swallow it gently. Where possible, the oesophagus, stomach and duodenum are also inspected (Fig. 13.53A) at the same examination because multiple lesions are not uncommon. This is particularly important in patients with haematemesis and melena where there may be more than one source of bleeding. In therapeutic endoscopy, the bleeding point or lesion is directly coagulated. The complications of the procedure include perforation of oesophagus or stomach, inhalation of secretions, cardiac arrhythmias and arrest. These complications are common when the precautions are ignored.

Oesophagoscopy and gastroscopy are part of upper GI tract endoscopy, done for diagnosis of oesophageal lesions such as oesophagitis, varices, motility disorder, and gastric lesion, such as erosions (Figs 13.53B), ulcer, malignancy of the stomach respectively. Therapeutic procedures such as dilatation of an oesophageal stricture

and injection of sclerosing material into oesophageal varices can be carried out. Follow-up of healing of a gastric or a duodenal ulcer can be done by serial endoscopy (Figs 13.53C and D). Biopsy can be taken from a space occupying lesions in the stomach.

Endoscopic retrograde cholangio-pancreatography (ERCP)

This investigation is most useful in liver disease. In addition to liver disease, it is useful in diagnosis of pancreatic diseases such as pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma. A stone or a tumour in the common bile duct producing obstruction can be visualised, and endoscopic papillotomy of *sphincter of Vater* (sphincterotomy) can be performed to allow removal of a stone or stones.

Lower GI endoscopy

Sigmoidoscopy and proctoscopy. These simple procedures, can be carried out on outpatient basis. These are done in patients with symptoms referred to lower GI

tract (anus, rectum and sigmoid colon), proctoscopy visualizes anus and 2-3 cm of rectum while sigmoidoscopy examines the rectum and lower few centimeters of pelvic colon. Digital examination should always be done before lower GI tract endoscopy to confirm that rectum is empty. Proctoscopy is used to demonstrate piles (haemorrhoids) and for injection of the piles. Sigmoidoscopy is useful to demonstrate polyps, cancer of rectum, ulcerative colitis or proctitis. Biopsy of the lesion can be obtained.

Colonoscopy (Fig. 13.54): It permits the visualization of whole colon but the procedure is little difficult. Most often short colonoscopes are used for lesions of sigmoid colon or left side of colon where most of the lesions occur. Before colonoscopy, the bowel must be carefully prepared. During colonoscopy, it is possible to carry out polypectomy (Removal of polyps) or biopsy of the lesion.

Warning: These invasive procedures should not be carried out during acute phase of inflammatory bowel disease because mucosa is friable and there are more chances of perforation.

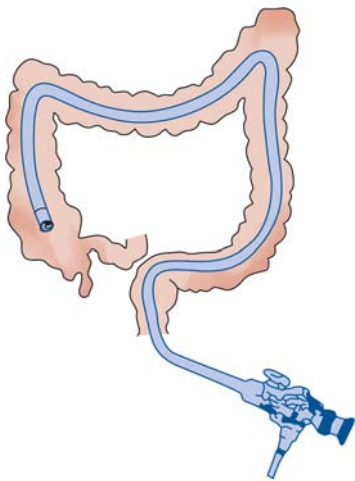


Fig. 13.54: Colonoscopy

Other procedures

Biopsy of small Intestine (Fig. 13.55)

This can be done in a patient with malabsorption syndrome. This is carried out by passing the *Crosby capsule* through mouth into the intestine, the procedure is time-consuming, hence, duodenal biopsy through endoscope may serve this purpose.

Secretory studies

The pentagastrin test: The basal and maximal acid output of stomach are studied in response to

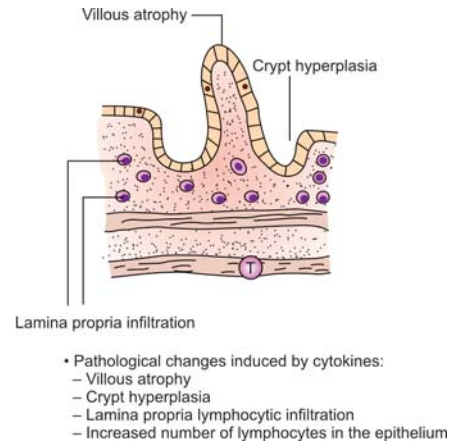


Fig. 13.55: Histopathological changes in coeliac disease

pentagastrin. The patient is prepared before the test by stopping H_2 receptors antagonists at least 2-3 days before the test and omeprazole (a proton pump inhibitor) at least 7 days before the test. The fasting gastric contents of stomach are aspirated and their volumes are measured and discarded; then the secretions are collected continuously for one hour. This is called *basal acid output*. Pentagastrin is injected subcutaneously and then the gastric acid secretions are collected for further one hour. This acid output during this one hour is called *maximal acid output*.

A large volume of fasting gastric juice indicates gastric outlet obstruction.

A very high basal acid output indicates *Zollinger-Ellison's syndrome*.

Pentagastrin fast achlorhydria indicates gastric atrophy or pernicious anaemia.

Insulin test: This is used to evaluate the completeness of vagotomy in patients who had undergone gastric surgery.

Tests for exocrine pancreatic function

These tests are carried out in patients having diarrhoea or steatorrhoea due to exocrine pancreatic insufficiency. The basis of these tests is to stimulate pancreas either exogenously (secretin-cholecystokinin test) or endogenously (Lundh test).

In secretin-cholecystokinin test, the hormones are injected intravenously and the pancreatic juice is collected for one hour for analysis for bicarbonate and enzymes (amylase or lipase). A special double lumen tube is used to collect gastric and pancreatic secretions separately so as to prevent neutralisation of bicarbonate by HCl of stomach juice.

Table 13.3: Biochemical tests and other investigations for malabsorption

Test	Normal values	Malabsorption (non tropical sprue)	Maldigestion (pancreatic insufficiency)
I. Fat absorption			
1. Faecal fat (24 hours excretion)	<6.0 g/day	>6.0 g/day	>6.0 g/day
2. Fat in stools (g%)	<6	<9.5 and >6	>9.5 (steatorrhoea)
II. Carbohydrate absorption			
1. D-xylose absorption (25.0 g oral dose)	5 hrs urinary excretion >4.5 g (>20% of dose)	Decreased	Normal
2. Hydrogen breath test (oral 50.0 gm lactose and breath hydrogen measured every hour for 4 hrs)	Less than 10 ppm above baseline in any sample	Increased	Normal
III. Protein absorption			
1. Faecal clearance of endogenous α_1 -antitrypsin measured in three days collection of stools	Absent in stools	Increased	Increased
2. Nitrogen excretion (3 to 5 days collection of stools)	< 2.5 g/day	>2.5 g/day	>2.5 g/day
IV. Vitamins absorption			
1. Radioactive B ₁₂ absorption test (0.5 µg of labelled Vit B ₁₂ is given orally followed 2 hours later by 1000 µg of non-labelled B ₁₂ given by i.m. injection. Radioactivity in the urine is seen after 24 hrs)	>16% radioactivity in urine	Frequently decreased	Frequently decreased
V. Other test			
1. <i>Breath test</i>			
a. Breath ¹⁴ CO ₂ (¹⁴ C xylose)	a. Minimal amount	Decreased	Normal
b. Bile salt breath test (radioactive)	b. <1% of dose excreted ¹⁴ CO ₂ in 4 hrs	Decreased	Normal
2. <i>Blood test</i>			
a. Serum calcium	9-11 mg/dl	Frequently decreased	Normal
b. Serum albumin	3.5-5.5 g/dl	Frequently decreased	Normal
c. Serum iron	80-150 µg/dl	Decreased	Normal
d. Serum vit A	>100 IU/dl	Decreased	Decreased
VI. Miscellaneous			
1. Bacteria (culture)	<10 ⁵ organisms/ml	Normal but abnormal in blind loop syndrome	Normal
2. Secretin test	Volume (1.8 ml/kg/hr) and bicarbonate (>80 mmol/L) concentration in duodenal aspirate	Normal	Abnormal
3. Barium study (follow through)	Normal pattern	Flocculation and segmentation of barium (malabsorption pattern—see text)	Normal
4. Small intestine biopsy	Normal mucosa	Abnormal	Normal

Lundh test is simple and tests the efficiency of pancreas in response to a liquid meal of fixed composition which is given orally. The duodenal aspirate is collected for analysis for enzymes (*trypsin and amylase*).

Both these tests are used to confirm the exocrine pancreatic insufficiency present in chronic pancreatitis and cystic fibrosis.

Malabsorption tests (see Table 13.3)

Biochemical test

Examination of stool: The importance of stool examination has been described at the end of this chapter. The stools should be examined for trophozoites, cysts and parasites also.

Occult blood in stool

Tests for occult blood using the *guaiac test* (Fig. 13.56) or immunological techniques detect small amounts in the stool and are performed for several successive days because bleeding is intermittent in GI disorders. Guaiac test is available as commercial kits. It is positive in bleeding at any level in GI tract while immunological test detects bleeding only from the colon.



Fig. 13.56: Guaiac-positive. Blue colour indicates organified iron, that is, haemoglobin

Investigations of hepatobiliary system

The diversity of the liver function tests and involvement of liver in diverse disorders precludes the use of any single test as reliable measure of overall liver functions while others may remain unaffected. Since no battery of tests is universally applicable, hence they should be selected appropriate to a given clinical problem, their diagnostic value and risks considered and the results obtained must be interpreted in the light of clinical findings.

Aims of investigations

1. To detect hepatic abnormality.
2. To measure the severity of the disease. Serial tests must be done during follow-up to evaluate the evolution and course of the disease.
3. To find out of the cause of underlying disease.
4. To investigate the consequences (sequelae or complications) of liver disease such as portal hypertension, ascites and hepatic encephalopathy.

Biochemical tests

Biochemical investigations are useful in revealing or confirming that liver is diseased, in indicating whether liver cells are primarily involved, in giving an indication of the extent of liver damage and in assessing the progress.

Bilirubin

The rise in bilirubin more than normal irrespective of type of bilirubin is called *hyperbilirubinaemia*. There are two fractions of bilirubin, *unconjugated* and *conjugated*, their estimation in the blood is necessary for evaluation of a case with jaundice.

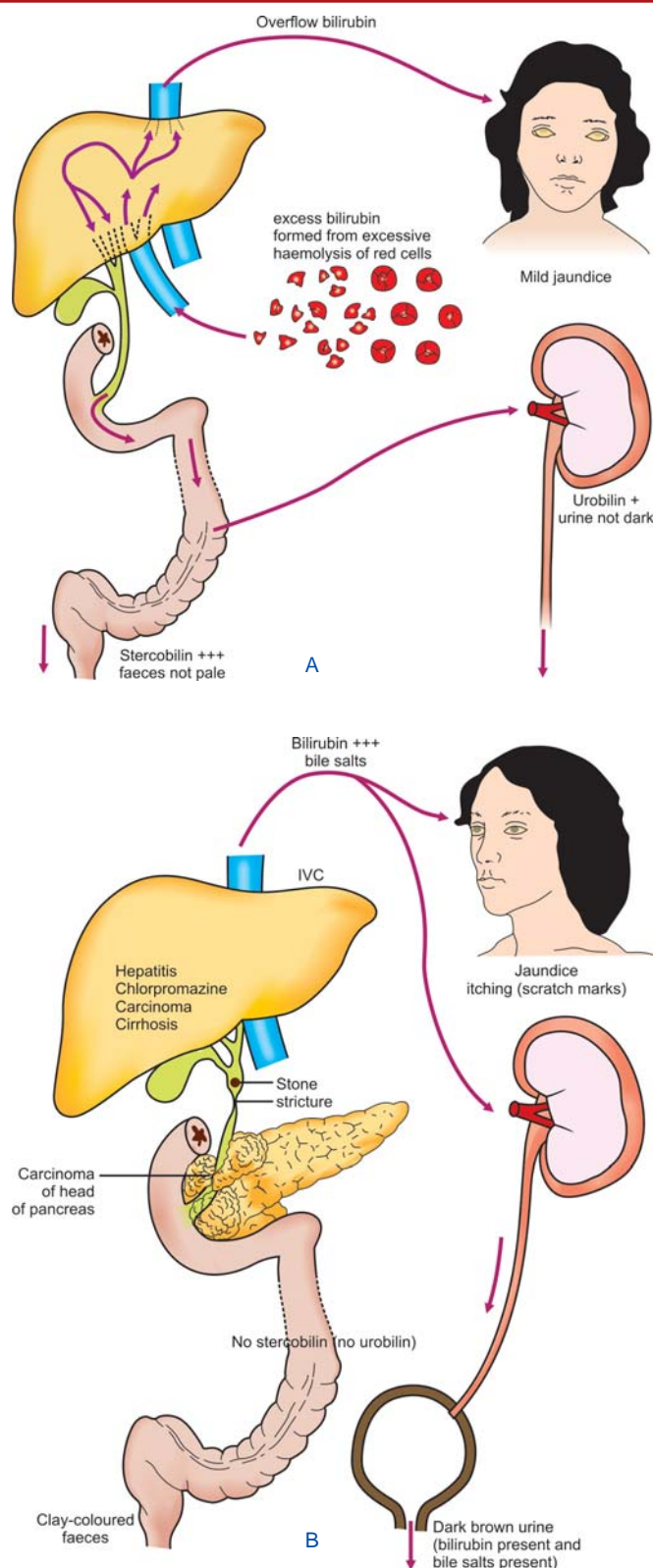
The unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia without any abnormality of liver function tests may result from haemolysis (Fig. 13.57A) or ineffective erythropoiesis or from defective uptake of bilirubin by the liver cells such as *Gilbert's syndrome* and *Crigler-Najjar syndrome* (congenital unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia). It may also occur in newborns due to immaturity of an enzyme *glucoconyl transferase*. The normal serum bilirubin is 0.3-1.2 mg out of which 20% is conjugated. Unconjugated bilirubin is not excreted in the urine, hence, bilirubinuria is absent in unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia.

The conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia becomes significant only when conjugated fraction becomes equal or more than unconjugated bilirubin (i.e. 50% or more of total bilirubin). The conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia in the absence of any abnormality of liver cell functions, may occur in congenital disorders such as *Dubin-Johnson* and *Rotor syndromes*.

Hyperbilirubinaemia in hepatobiliary disease is predominantly conjugated and bilirubinuria is present. The bilirubin stains the reticulin and produces yellowness of sclera. Which is visible if bilirubin is 72.5 mg%.

Urine tests

Normally, bilirubin being mainly unconjugated, is not excreted in the urine as it is not water soluble. In a patient with jaundice, absence of bilirubin in urine indicates unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia. The unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia leads to passage of increased amount of urobilinogen in the urine. Unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia with increased amount of urobilinogen and absent bilirubinuria are found in haemolytic diseases and with any cause leading to hepatic uptake dysfunction. On the other hand, bilirubinuria indicates conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia and points to hepatobiliary disease or biliary obstruction.



Figs 13.57A and B: Pathogenesis of jaundice and urinary and stool findings A. Haemolytic jaundice, B. The main causes and features of cholestasis

Enzymes

Liver cells contain many enzymes which are released into circulation during hepatocellular injury and their serial elevations may indicate liver disease. But there are certain limitations to enzymes elevation because these are raised in certain non-hepatic disorders, hence, only careful and proper interpretation may yield valuable informations. However, in practice, maximal information is obtained by measuring the activity of relatively a few enzymes. None of the enzymes is specific to the liver and alternative origins should be considered particularly where abnormalities have been detected incidentally.

Levels of SGOT (serum-glutamic-oxalo-transaminase) and SGPT (serum glutamic-pyruvo-transaminase) are raised in an acute liver damage but they have no prognostic significance in acute and chronic liver disease. The activity of SGOT and SGPT is greatly increased (10-100 times of normal value) in early phase of hepatitis after which activity falls rapidly. Equally high levels of these enzymes are also seen in drug-induced hepatitis and in exacerbations of chronic active hepatitis. High values of the enzymes (100-500 times than normal values) have been observed in paracetamol induced hepatotoxicity, while only mild rise (5 times than normal) may occur in alcoholic hepatitis and hepatitis due to infectious mononucleosis, cytomegalovirus infection and cirrhosis of the liver. In obstructive jaundice mild rise of these enzymes (2-5 times) may also be seen.

Alkaline phosphatase

Alkaline phosphatase arises from bone, intestine, liver and placenta. A number of different assays have been developed which utilise different substrates. The widely used methods are expressed in international units (normal 30-120 U/I), Bodansky units (normal 3-13 units). Normally serum alkaline phosphatase rises after meals and is of intestinal origin. In liver disease alkaline phosphatase rise is mild and does not signify the disease. However, in obstructive jaundice, its diagnostic accuracy is undisputed. A greatly increased serum alkaline phosphatase (>30 K.A. units or Bodansky units) indicate biliary obstruction but it does not provide any information about the site of obstruction.

This enzyme is not liver specific. Sometimes a raised plasma alkaline phosphatase activity is found incidentally and is the sole abnormality. Even in the presence of hepatobiliary disease, it is important to ensure that the alkaline phosphatase has no *extrahepatic* origin. Therefore, if gamma-glutamyl transferase which

is specific to liver is raised along with alkaline phosphatase, then possibility of liver disease is very high. Other causes of raised alkaline phosphatase activity include rickets, Paget's disease, hyperparathyroidism, bone metastases, multiple myeloma, pregnancy and normally in adolescence.

Gamma-glutamyl transference (γ -GT)

It is a microsomal enzyme. Increased plasma γ -GT activity is sensitive index of liver damage. Moderate rise is seen in acute and chronic liver disease but highest levels are seen in biliary tract obstruction. Gamma-glutamyl transferase in liver disease carries same diagnostic value as occupied by transaminases and alkaline phosphatase. It has high diagnostic value in alcoholic liver disease because alcohol is microsomal enzyme inducer.

Serum proteins

Albumin

It has long half life (20-26 days) and its concentration does not change much in acute liver cell injury but prolonged or chronic liver cell damage leads to hypoalbuminaemia which results in oedema and ascites of liver disease. Albumin is mainly synthesised in the liver, hence, decreased synthesis resulting in low plasma levels form an important diagnostic tool for chronic liver disease such as cirrhosis of the liver.

Globulins

Hyperglobulinaemia is associated with hypoalbuminaemia due to liver disease. It tends to persist once it rises. The causes of hyperglobulinaemia are not well understood, but rise is due to increased synthesis of immunoglobulin due to increased activity of immune system. Individual plasma immunoglobulins are variably increased in various liver disorders, i.e. IgG rise in autoimmune hepatitis, Ig in primary biliary cirrhosis and IgA in alcoholic liver disease.

Albumin and globulins ratio

Decrease in albumin and rise in globulins in liver disease changes or reverses the normal albumin and globulins ratio, but this carries no diagnostic significance other than individual variation in albumin and globulin concentration, hence, obsolete nowadays.

Coagulation factors

Liver synthesises important coagulation factors, such as factors II, V, VII, IX, X and needs vitamin K to activate these factors. Prothrombin time (PT) tests the integrity and activity of these factors. PT gets prolonged when the plasma concentration of any of these factors is below 30% of normal. Prolonged PT indicates severe liver disease. As coagulation factors have very short half life, hence, changes in PT occurs quickly when liver damage occurs. PT gets prolonged both in acute and chronic liver disease. The PT has most prognostic value in acute fulminant hepatitis. An increased prothrombin time indicates severe liver disease and an increasing value indicates worse prognosis. The normal blood prothrombin time is 11-16 sec and index is 100%. The prothrombin index is calculated:

$$\text{PTI (\%)} = \frac{\text{Normal PT}}{\text{PT of the patient}} \times 100$$

For example, if PT of the patient is 20 seconds against 14 seconds of normal person, then PTI of the patient is 70%.

Blood ammonia

Blood ammonia level rises in liver disease. Normally, ammonia is detoxified to urea. Rise in ammonia indicates severe liver disease, especially hepatic encephalopathy. But there is no correlation between ammonia levels and severity of encephalopathy.

Serum lipids and cholesterol

Abnormalities in serum lipids or lipoproteins are sensitive but non-specific indicators of liver disease. Acute parenchymal disease is associated with rise in serum triglycerides and decrease in cholesterol esters. In cholestasis, the situation is different. Serum unesterified cholesterol increases along with serum phospholipids. Lipoprotein X, a distinctive lipoprotein is encountered in cholestasis due to any cause.

Other biochemical tests

Ferritin

Increased serum ferritin levels ($>1000 \mu\text{g/L}$) indicates haemochromatosis but cannot, establish the diagnosis of its own because alcoholic liver disease may have such an increased concentration ($>1000 \mu\text{g/L}$) of ferritin.

Alpha 1-antitrypsin

This is an α_1 -globulin produced by the liver. The alpha 1-antitrypsin deficiency is associated with liver disease and pulmonary disease (emphysema). Increased loss in stools indicates protein malabsorption.

Ceruloplasmin and Copper

Ceruloplasmin is copper binding globulin produced by the liver. Low levels of ceruloplasmin are seen in Wilson's disease, fulminant hepatic failure, severe liver disease and protein-losing enteropathy. High serum concentration occurs in pregnancy, biliary obstruction, inflammatory and neoplastic diseases. Copper levels are very high in Wilson's disease, cholestasis and primary biliary cirrhosis. Urinary excretion of copper is high in these diseases.

Bromsulphalein (BSP) clearance

It is used nowadays only in the diagnosis of *Dubin-Johnson's syndrome* (congenital conjugated hyperbilirubinaemia) where its excretion is delayed.

Serological test for viral hepatitis (Read case discussion of hepatitis in bed-side Medicine without tears by Prof. SN Chugh)

Only one antigen is present against which an individual infected with HAV (hepatitis A virus) makes an antibody (anti-HAV), hence, anti-HAV (IgA and IgM type) appears in the incubation period and titres of this antibody fall to low levels within 3 months of recovery. IgG type of antibody also appears in HAV infection but has no diagnostic value and persists for years after infection, hence, is used to measure the prevalence of illness in the population. IgG antibody provides immunity to HAV infection.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) antigens and antibodies

The hepatitis B virus commonly contains three antigens; a surface (s), a core (c) and an envelope (e) antigen. These antigens and their antibodies are important in identifying HBV infection.

Acute Infection

Hepatitis surface antigen and antibody (HbsAg and anti-HBs). The hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) is a reliable marker of HBV infection. It appears in the blood late in incubation period, persisting for few days and disappearing even before jaundice appears; but it usually lasts for 3-4 weeks and may persist upto

6 months. Therefore, it should be sought early in infection. Antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) usually appear after 3-6 months and persists for many years or perhaps permanently. Presence of this antibody indicates past infection to HBV or person is immunised against HBV infection.

Hepatitis B core antigen and antibody (HBcAg and anti-HBc)

The hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg) is not found in the blood but antibody to it (anti-HBc) appears early in the course of illness, rapidly rises to high titres and then subsides gradually and persists. The early antibody is of IgM type which reveals an acute HBV infection when HBsAg has disappeared and anti-HBs have not developed, hence, indicates established infection. IgG antibody appears late and persists during convalescence from hepatitis B infection.

Hepatitis B envelope antigen (HBeAg) and antibody (anti-HBe)

The hepatitis B 'e' antigen appears transiently during illness, and is followed by production of antibody (anti-HBe). The HBeAg indicates active replication of virus particles in the liver.

Chronic Infection

The chronic HBV infection is marked by the presence of HBsAg and anti-HBe (IgG type) in the blood. Usually HBeAg or anti-HBe is also present; the HBeAg indicates continued active virus replication in the liver and anti-HBe implies that replication is occurring at lower rate and viral DNA is incorporated into host hepatocytes DNA. Hence, anti-HBe indicates chronicity of liver disease. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can show HBV-DNA in the blood and indicates ongoing viral replication.

Hepatitis C virus antibodies

The hepatitis C virus contains several antigens, against which antibodies appear and form a diagnostic tool for this infection. Current laboratory diagnosis depends not only to detect antibody against single antigen but to detect against several viral antigens in initial screening and then subject them to confirmation by polymerase chain reaction which can show HCV-RNA in the blood.

Hepatitis D-antigen and antibody

The hepatitis D virus (HDV) contains a single delta antigen against which an individual produces

antibodies (anti HDV). Delta antigen appears transiently in the blood and in practice, diagnosis depends on detecting anti-HDV. Simultaneous infection with HBV and HDV followed by full recovery is associated with the appearance of low titres of anti-HDV which generally disappears within 2 months after recovery. Superinfection by HDV of patients with HBV infection leads to production of high titres of anti-HDV and these patients then pass on to chronic infection by both viruses and ultimately to cirrhosis of the liver.

Hepatitis E virus antibody

Individuals infected with hepatitis E virus (HEV) produces anti-HEV which is used in making the diagnosis of hepatitis E.

Autoantibodies

Antinuclear antibody (ANA), anti-mitochondrial antibody (AMA) and anti-smooth muscles antibody are done for the diagnosis of various autoimmune disorders of the liver. Titres of these antibodies is low in normal persons. Antinuclear and antimitochondrial antibodies in high titres indicate connective tissue diseases and autoimmune thyroiditis etc. Anti-smooth muscles antibody has been reported in infectious mononucleosis and in a variety of malignant disorders. Auto antibodies are important in chronic liver disease rather than acute viral hepatitis. High titres are found in autoimmune hepatitis, cryptogenic cirrhosis and primary biliary cirrhosis. None of these autoantibodies damage the liver tissue, hence, have no aetiological significance.

Diagnostic Procedures

Imaging

Imaging techniques determine the site and general nature of the structural lesion of the liver and biliary tract.

Ultrasound

It is a noninvasive procedure. It detects gall stones, (Fig. 13.58), tumours of the liver, gallbladder and biliary tract, abscesses and cysts in the liver. It is a useful method for evaluation of a patient with jaundice. Dilatation of biliary system proximal to the site of obstruction indicates obstructive jaundice. Diffuse diseases of the liver parenchyma such as fatty liver, cirrhosis of liver, chronic active hepatitis are difficult to diagnose on ultrasound. Colour Doppler ultrasound will detect lesions of hepatic vessels such as Budd-Chiari



Fig. 13.58: Ultrasound of the gallbladder showing gallstones

syndrome, portal hypertension and venous invasions by tumours.

Abdominal X-ray

A plain X-ray of abdomen will detect radio-opaque gall stones (20%), can visualise soft tissue mass of inflamed gallbladder or gas in the biliary tract. It can pick up calcification in tumours, cysts and areas of infarction.

Barium swallow and meal examination

Varices in the oesophagus and stomach can be revealed by barium swallow and meal examination. Presence of varices (see Fig. 13.50A) indicates portal hypertension.

Computed tomography (CT)

CT scan has same diagnostic significance as that of ultrasound except that it can detect smaller lesions. Contrast CT is more helpful in demonstrating the cause of the liver or biliary system disease. It is less helpful in diffuse parenchymal liver disease and gallbladder disease (Fig. 13.59).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

It has same place in diagnosing focal lesions which is occupied by ultrasound and CT scan. It is not superior to them.

Radionuclide imaging

Technetium (^{99m}Tc) sulphur colloid as taken up by monocyte-macrophage system, is used to image the liver and the spleen. It can detect focal liver lesions, diffuse

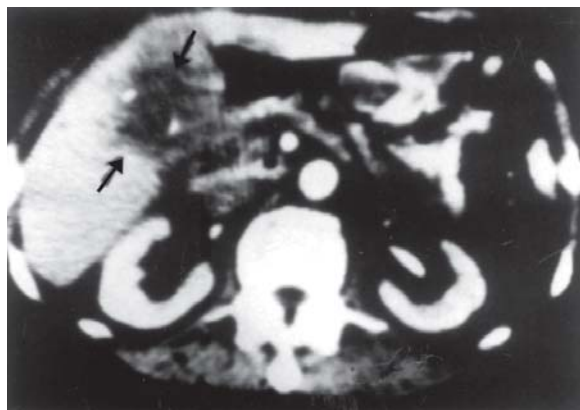


Fig. 13.59: Carcinoma of the gallbladder. CT scan shows a gallbladder carcinoma (→) that obliterates the normal landmarks of the gallbladder

liver disease and portal hypertension, but is less commonly used for this purpose nowadays.

Cholecystography

This is nowadays less commonly used than ultrasound, but is effective in demonstrating gallbladder functions and diseases. This is done by iodinated compounds given orally after preparation of the patient. These compounds are concentrated in gallbladder and excreted in the bile. The gallbladder gets opacified on cholecystography. Non-opaque gall stones and adenomas produce filling defects in the opacified gall bladder. Failure of the gallbladder to opacify is frequent in gallbladder disease and the gallbladder is said to be 'non-functional', which may be due to cystic duct stone or patient has not absorbed the tablets either due to vomiting, diarrhoea or malabsorption. Occasionally, normal gallbladder may fail to opacify for unknown reasons in some patients (20%), where the test is repeated with the same dose of contrast now given for 2 consecutive days. If under these circumstances, it is still not opacified then it is definitely diseased.

Endoscopic retrograde cholangio-pancreatography (ERCP)

The endoscope is passed into the duodenum and this allows direct examination of ampulla of Vater, where lesions such as carcinoma of ampulla can be biopsied under direct vision and contrast media can be injected for radiological examination of biliary tract and pancreatic duct. It is valuable in assessing a case of cholestasis of unknown origin. The procedure can be adopted for papillotomy at ampulla of Vater and removal of stones from the common bile duct. Dilatation

of benign strictures of common bile duct can be carried out through this procedure. Complications of the procedure include pancreatitis (1-3%) and cholangitis (rare).

Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC)

This is done by injecting the contrast material through a needle passed percutaneously into an intra hepatic duct. Excellent delineation of biliary tree (Fig. 13.60) is obtained but the technique is less useful than ERCP. Complications are uncommon, include bleeding and leakage of bile from the liver. This is invasive cumbersome procedure, uncommonly employed now-a-days if facility of ERCP is available.

Arteriography

Hepatic arteriography is useful for localizing lesions such as tumour in the liver before surgery. Hepatocellular carcinomas and highly vascular tumours in contrast to metastatic tumours, can be diagnosed easily. This is employed only before planning the surgery on the liver.

Portal venography

This is most useful investigation for the portal hypertension of unknown origin. It is also essential before



Fig. 13.60: Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography showing a common bile duct stone (arrow) obstructing the biliary tract and leading to dilatation of intrahepatic and extrahepatic biliary system above the obstruction

porto-systemic shunt surgery in patients with portal hypertension, though such surgery is done infrequently now-a-days.

Endoscopy

Upper GI tract endoscopy is superior to barium meal examination in diagnosis of oesophageal and gastric varices because small varices can easily be differentiated from mucosal folds on endoscopy. Endoscopy is also a valuable means of diagnosing congestive gastropathy of portal hypertension.

Abdominal paracentesis (removal of ascitic fluid)

The ascites can be tapped by passing a wide bore needle through the skin into peritoneal space (Fig. 13.61). The fluid removed is analysed biochemically and cytologically. The fluid is clear (transudate) in cirrhosis, its protein content is less than 3.0 g/l and cell content is less than 250 polymorphonuclear leucocytes/mm³. Blood stained ascites indicate malignant infiltration of peritoneum or tubercular peritonitis. *Chylous (milky) ascites* indicates obstruction of lymphatic ducts (Fig. 13.62). *Exudative ascites* (protein > 3.0 g/l) occurs most frequently in tuberculosis, malignancy, peritoneal infection, pancreatitis and hepatic vein obstruction. Amylase activity is high in ascites due to pancreatitis. Infections such as *spontaneous bacterial peritonitis* has polymorphonuclear leucocyte counts above 250/mm³ and positive bacteriological examination. The cytology of ascitic fluid can show malignant cells in malignancy but negative examinations do not exclude malignant disease.

Liver biopsy

This is performed by a special needle passed through an intercostal space under local anaesthesia. The patient should be assessed for haemostasis by bleeding, clotting and prothrombin time before biopsy. Biopsy yields only a small piece of liver and consequently the best results are obtained with diffuse liver disease. The procedure is essential for diagnosis of chronic hepatitis and to distinguish persistent, active or aggressive and lobular forms. It can also be essential in cases of cirrhosis to establish its cause such as alcohol induced or haemochromatosis. Focal diseases such as malignancy are first diagnosed by ultrasound or by laparoscopy, then subjected to biopsy for histopathological examination. Operative biopsy is useful for staging the lymphoma.



Fig. 13.61: Abdominal paracentesis. The ascitic fluid is being drained. The fluid should be sent for biochemistry and cytology

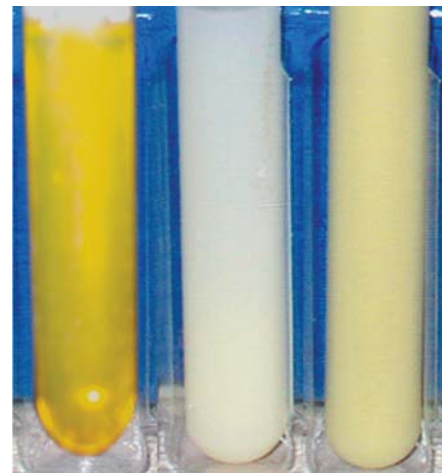
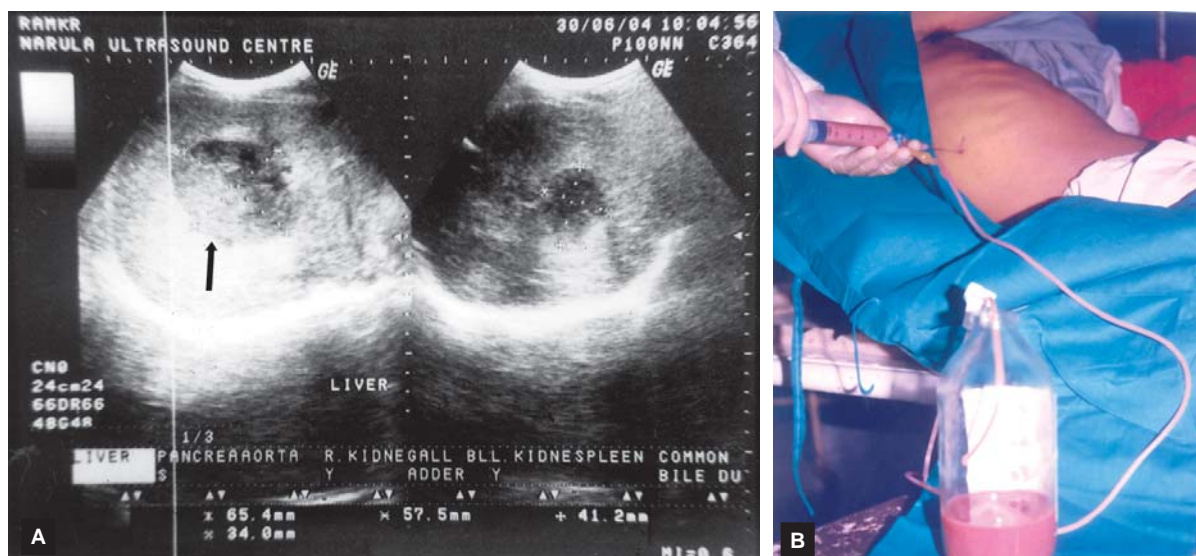


Fig. 13.62: Ascitic fluid characteristic A. Straw coloured fluid, B. Chylous (milky) fluid, C. Pus (greenish) sticky, creamy fluid

Liver aspiration (Figs 13.63A and B)

Aspiration biopsy is done by using a fine bore needle (20-22 gauge) usually guided by ultrasound, has become the initial method of choice for investigation of focal lesions such as abscesses, tumours and cysts (except hydatid cyst). This can be done satisfactorily without any risk. Diagnostic and therapeutic aspiration is attempted for large left lobe (>10 cm) amoebic abscess which threatens to rupture. Aspirated material is sent for cytological, histopathological and bacteriological examination.



Figs 13.63A and B: Amoebic liver abscess. (A) Ultrasound of the liver showing a big liver abscess in right lobe of the liver (↑) (B) Drainage of the abscess. Note the anchovy-sauce appearance of the pus

Laparoscopy

Modern laparoscopes of relatively small size can now be used under sedation and local anaesthesia. They provide excellent view of the inferior and anterior surfaces of the liver. The spleen, prominent blood vessels of portal hypertension and evidence of peritoneal disease may also be seen. Biopsies can be taken directly from diseased areas which is valuable in focal disorders especially malignant disease. The main contraindications are; marked ascites, haemostatic abnormalities and peritoneal adhesions of previous surgery.

Portal pressure

This can be measured directly by passing needles or catheters into the spleen, the portal vein or the hepatic parenchyma (sinusoids), but these methods are invasive,

hence, rarely, used nowadays. The pressure recorded by a catheter wedged in a hepatic vein (wedged hepatic venous pressure) reflects the portal venous pressure via the hepatic sinusoids. The portal venous pressure is calculated as the difference between the wedged hepatic venous pressure and the free hepatic venous pressure and is normally 3-5 mmHg and more than 6 mm indicates portal hypertension. Normal portal pressure measured indirectly through spleen is 10-15 mmHg. Pressure more than normal indicates portal hypertension. It is nowadays an obsolete investigation.

Examination of vomit

The character of the vomit varies with nature of food ingested and absence or presence of bile or blood (Table 13.4).

Table 13.4: Character of vomit as a clue to diagnosis

Character	Diagnosis
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Copious, sour smelling vomitus containing food eaten many hours before Dark red blood in the vomitus. Clots may be present. Altered (dark brown colour) blood in vomitus or coffee coloured appearance. Bright red/fresh unaltered blood in vomitus Brown feculent vomitus like vanised tea. It has faecal odour Vomit containing fecal matter 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pyloric stenosis Gastric ulcer, gastric erosions, Mallory-Weiss syndrome Haematemesis due to any cause where haemoglobin is converted into haematin in the stomach by HCl Intake of iron or red wine may produce similar appearance Epistaxis where the blood may be ingested Bleeding from nose or oropharynx Advanced intestinal obstruction. Gastrocolic fistula

Table 13.5: The abnormality of the stool on inspection and its significance

Abnormality	Diagnostic significance
1. <i>Amount</i>	
• Copious and foul smelling, porridge-like and frothy	• Steatorrhoea
• Scanty stool (pellets of faeces)	• Irritable bowel syndrome
2. <i>Colour</i>	
• Black-tarry stool	• High intestinal bleeding or gastric haemorrhage. Iron or bismuth ingestion
• Red currant jelly	• Intussusceptions
• Pale stools (achlouric stool)	• Obstructive Jaundice, acute diarrhoea, steatorrhoea
• Bright red colour	• Anorectal bleeding (piles)
3. <i>Odour</i>	
• Offensive	• Massive duodenal bleed with rapid transition, jaundice
• Odourless	• Cholera
• Odour like that of semen	• Acute bacillary dysentery, Amoebic dysentery
4. <i>Consistency</i>	
• Watery stool	• Diarrhoea and use of purgatives
• Rice-water stool	• Cholera
• Purulent or pus containing stool (viscid) may be mixed with blood	• Severe dysentery or functional bowel disorder
• Slimy stools (white mucus mixed with stool)	• Large bowel disorder

Table 13.6: Differential diagnosis of acute abdomen

Condition	History	Clinical examination
<i>Perforated peptic ulcer with acute peritonitis</i>	Vomiting at <i>onset</i> followed by acute severe abdominal pain, previous history of dyspeptic symptoms, ulcer disease, NSAIDs or corticosteroids therapy	Shallow breathing with diminished abdominal movements, generalised abdominal tenderness, guarding, board-like rigidity, distension of abdomen with absent bowel sounds
<i>Acute pancreatitis</i>	Anorexia, nausea, vomiting, epigastric pain radiating to back, previous alcohol abuse or cholelithiasis	Fever, <i>periumbilical</i> bruising (cullen's sign), loin bruising (Grey Turner's sign), epigastric tenderness, variable guarding or absent bowel sounds
<i>Ruptured aortic aneurysm</i>	Sudden onset of tearing, severe back/lion/abdominal pain, circulatory collapse, history of peripheral vascular disease and/or hypertension	Shock and hypotension, pulsatile tender epigastric mass with an overlying bruit, asymmetrical femoral pulses, sometimes hypertension due to renal artery ischaemia
<i>Acute mesenteric insufficiency</i>	Anorexia, nausea, vomiting, bloody diarrhoea, constant abdominal pain in an old person (>60 yrs), previous history of cardiovascular disease	Atrial fibrillation, cardiac failure, asymmetrical peripheral pulses, absent bowel sounds, variable tenderness and guarding
<i>Acute intestinal obstruction (strangulated hernia)</i>	Central colicky abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting and constipation	Surgical scars, abdominal mass, hernia, distension, exaggerated visible peristalsis, increased bowel sounds (borborygmi)
<i>Acute appendicitis</i>	Nausea, vomiting, central abdominal pain settling into right iliac fossa	Fever, tenderness, guarding in right iliac fossa, a mass in right iliac fossa, pelvic peritonitis (rebound tenderness)
<i>Ruptured ectopic pregnancy</i>	Premenopausal, delayed/missed menstrual period, feeling of fainting, circulatory collapse, unilateral iliac fossa pain or shoulder tip pain, vaginal discharge—'Late period', like prune juice	Suprapubic tenderness, periumbilical bruising (Cullen's sign), pain/tenderness on vaginal examination, swelling/fullness in the fornix on vaginal examination
<i>Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)</i>	Sexually active female, previous history of STD/PID, recent gynecological procedure, pregnancy or use of intrauterine contraceptive device, irregular menses, dysuria, dysprunia, lower or central abdominal pain, backache, pleuritic right upper quadrant pain (Fitz-Hugh-Cutis syndrome)	Fever, vaginal discharge, pelvic peritonitis, right upper quadrant tenderness (perihepatitis), pain and/or tenderness on vaginal examination (cervical erosions), swelling/fullness in the fornix on vaginal examination

Examination of faeces

The faeces in bedpan is ideal for examination because white surface of bedpan provides a contrast background for the detection of blood, pus and mucus. The abnormality of the stool and its significance is depicted in the Table 13.5.

Acute abdomen

The term '*acute abdomen*' is applied to conditions in which patient presents with acute distress related to an abdominal complaint/disorder. Patients with acute upper GI bleed present with acute abdomen and may require urgent management. Diagnosis and management of acute abdominal disorders depends on the history and clinical examination (Table 13.6).

14

The Urogenital System and Sexually Transmitted Diseases

HISTORY

Symptoms

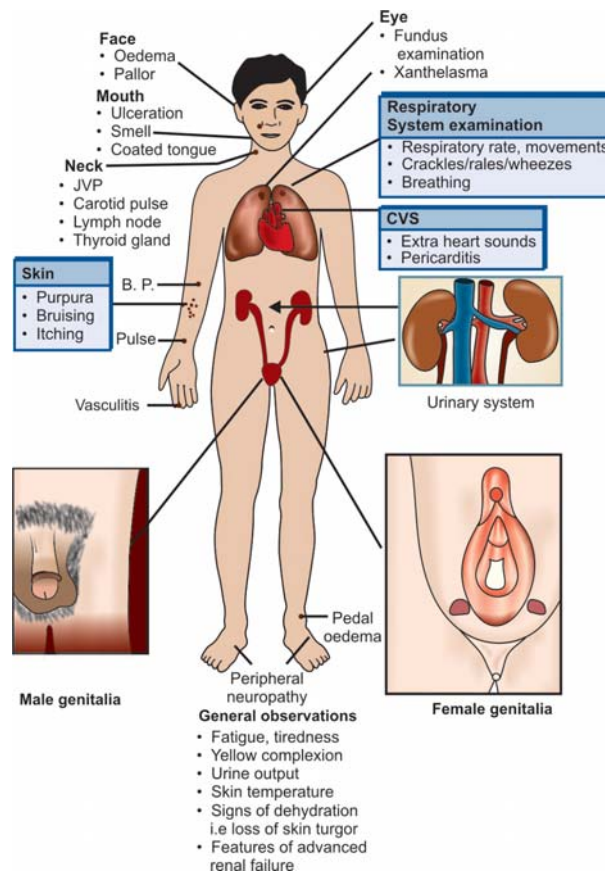
- Polyuria, oliguria, increased frequency, dysuria, nocturia
- Mass abdomen
- Hesitancy, precipitancy, incontinence, dribbling, swelling of face and abdomen,
- Sex related complaints e.g. sexually transmitted disease
- Menstrual complaints, discharge per vagina.

Present history, Past history

- DM, HT, colic arthritis etc.
- **Family history** of any heredo familial diseases.

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- **Face**-puffiness, pallor
- **Eyes** e.g. oedema, xanthelasma
- **Mouth, oral mucosa, tongue**
- **Ear** for tophi
- **Neck** for JVP for fluid overload, carotid pulsations
- **Skin** e.g. purpura, bruising, pruritus, uraemic frost
- **Extremities** for oedema, clubbing, peripheral neuropathy.



FORMAT FOR THE EXAMINATION OF GENITOURINARY SYSTEM

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Abdominal examination

- Inspection** for any local bulge
- Palpation** for enlarged kidneys, urinary bladder.
- Local tenderness in renal angle**
- Percussion** over the palpable kidneys/mass
- Auscultation** for renal or other arterial bruit

Genitalia examination

Male genitalia

- **Inspection** the penis and scrotum for; Infection, ulceration, rash, excoriation, abnormality of prepuce, penis, urethra for any discharge. Inspect scrotum for swelling, oedema, hernia.
- **Palpation** of penis and scrotum for discharge, epididymus and spermatic cord (tenderness, sensation), prostate enlargement

Female genitalia

- **Inspection** of cervical os, uterus, adnexa for any abnormality
- **Palpation** for any mass in relation to uterus, cervix, vagina and adnexa, papsmear examination

Provisional diagnosis

Differential diagnosis

Investigations

THE URINARY SYSTEM (Fig 14.1)

Applied anatomy and physiology

Kidneys are 11-14 cm in size, bean-shaped organs, placed in the retroperitoneal paravertebral space in relation to three thoracic vertebrae. Nephron is the fundamental, structural and functional unit of the kidneys. The kidneys are supplied by a pair of renal arteries, each arising from

the abdominal aorta. The glomerulus is a bunch of capillaries placed in the Bowman's capsule, the afferent of which receives blood from the systemic circulation and passes it through the glomerulus to the efferent arteriole, which arborises to supply blood to the proximal and distal convoluted tubules and collecting ducts (Fig. 14.2). The medulla is supplied by arterioles arising from the glomeruli in the deeper regions of the cortex. The

glomerulus and a part of proximal and distal convoluted tubules lie in the renal cortex and rest of the nephron is placed in the medulla. Juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA), a collection of specialized cells, lies in the cortex near the junction of afferent arteriole and distal convoluted tubules and secretes *renin*.

Glomerular filtration is a process of diffusion of water and solutes across the glomerular capillary membrane. It occurs due to pressure gradient of 10-12 mmHg across the membrane. The glomerular filtrate resembles chemically to plasma, except that it has no fat and contains little proteins. This glomerular filtrate while passing through the renal tubules undergoes modification by process of tubular reabsorption and tubular secretion and ultimately excreted as the urine.

Renal functions

1. The kidneys maintain volume and composition of body fluids by regulating the secretion of ADH.
2. The kidneys retain certain useful substances by maintaining the threshold called *renal threshold* which may get altered in renal diseases.
3. The kidneys excrete waste products (urea, uric acid, creatinine) which get retained in renal failure.

4. They play a role in homeostasis of electrolytes (K^+ , Mg^{2+}), minerals (calcium and phosphorous), anions and cations (H^+ , HCO_3^-), salt and water through renin-angiotensin- aldosterone system. Hydroxylation of Vit D_3 to 1-25 dihydroxycholecalciferol occurs in the kidney.
5. Kidneys perform metabolic and hormonal functions as follows;
 - Secrete renin which converts angiotensinogen to angiotensin
 - Secrete *erythropoietin*—a hormone that stimulates erythropoiesis. Decreased production of erythropoietin is an important factor in pathogenesis of anaemia in chronic renal failure
 - Reduced hydroxylation of Vit D_3 to 1-25 dihydroxycholecalciferol explains hypocalcaemia and osteodystrophy in renal failure.
 - They produce vasodilators (prostaglandins) and an enzyme (Kallikrein) which influence blood flow.

The ureters: These are conduit pipes which transmit urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder, thus, maintain urine flow. They lie retroperitoneally, likely to be pushed or pulled or compressed or stenosed by certain masses and in retroperitoneal fibrosis.

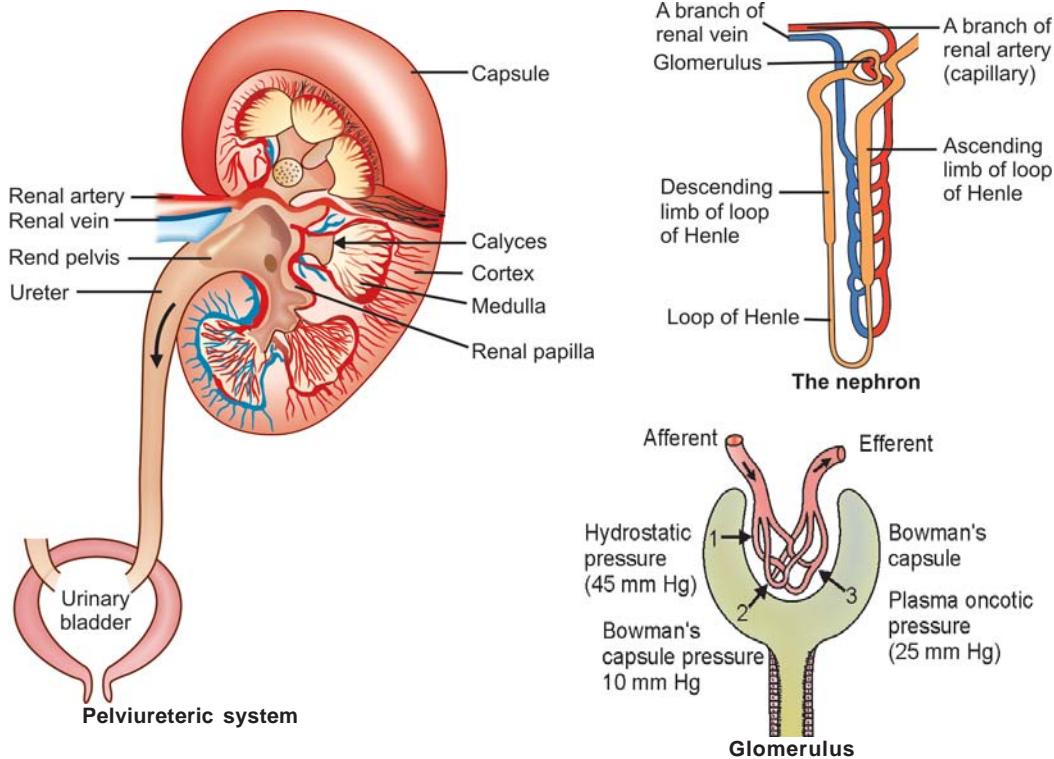


Fig. 14.1: The urinary system, the nephron and the glomerulus. The pressures controlling the rate of formation of GFR have also been depicted

The urinary bladder: It is situated in suprapubic region and collects urine. It is placed in front of uterus in females. It opens into urethra.

THE GENITALIA

The male genitalia

- A. *The penis:* The shaft of the penis is composed of three columns of erectile tissue; the *corpus spongiosum*, containing the urethra and two *corpora cavernosa*. The corpus spongiosum ends in a cone-shaped *glans*. In uncircumcised men, the glans is covered by a fold of skin – the *prepuce*. The urethra runs through the shaft of the penis. The urethra opens into a vertical opening called *urethral meatus* at the tip of the glans.
- B. *The scrotum:* It is a pouch divided into two compartments, each containing a testis. The testes are ovoid, somewhat rubbery structures, about 4.5 cm in length (3.5–4.5 cm) in an adult, the left lies somewhat lower than the right. On the posterolateral surface of each testis is the softer, comma-shaped epididymis. It is most prominent along the superior margin of the testis. The epididymus may be anteriorly placed in some persons (6–7%). Surrounding the testis is a serous membrane enclosing the potential cavity called *tunica vaginalis*—a site for hernia.

The *vas deferens*, a cord-like structure, begins at the tail of epididymus runs upwards through scrotal sac and passes through the external inguinal ring on its way to abdomen and pelvis. A duct from the seminal vesicle joins it behind the bladder and then it opens into the urethra within the prostate gland. Sperms formed in the testes pass through this passage into the urethra. Secretions from the vas deferens, the seminal vesicles, and the prostate, all contribute to the semen. Within the scrotum, each vas is closely associated with blood vessels, nerves and muscle fibres. These structures constitute the *spermatic cord*.

Functions

The testes produces spermatozoa and testosterone. Testosterone stimulates the pubertal growth of the male genitalia, prostate and seminal vesicles. It also stimulates the development of secondary sexual characters (the beard, body hair, musculoskeletal development and enlargement of larynx with the associated change in voice).

Clinical significance

Male sexual function depends on the normal levels of testosterone, adequate arterial blood supply, and intact neural innervation from α -adrenergic and cholinergic pathways.

Erection from venous engorgement of the corpora cavernosa results from the visual stimuli and tactile stimuli. Both sets of stimuli increase levels of nitric oxide and cyclic GMP resulting in local vasodilatation and erection of penis.

The female genitalia

The external female genitalia (vulva) include the *mons pubis* (a hair covered fat pad overlying symphysis pubis), the *labia majora* (rounded folds of adipose tissue), the *labia minora* thinner pinkish red folds that extend anteriorly to form prepuce and the clitoris. The *vestibule* is a boat-shaped fossa between the labia minora. In its posterior portion lies the vaginal opening (introitus), which in virgins may be hidden by the hymen. The term *perineum* is used to denote the tissue between the introitus and the anus.

The urethral meatus opens into vestibule between the clitoris and the vagina. The openings of *Bartholin's* glands are located posteriorly on either side of the vaginal opening, but are not usually visible. Bartholin glands themselves are situated more deeply.

The *vagina* is a hollow tube extending upwards and posteriorly between the urethra and rectum. Its upper third terminates in the cup-shaped *fornix*. The vaginal mucosa is thrown into folds called *rugae*.

The uterus sits over the vagina at right angle. The uterus has two parts i.e. the body (corpus) and the cervix which are joined together by the *isthmus*. The convex upper surface of the body is called *fundus* of the uterus. The lower part of the uterus, the *cervix*, protrudes into the vagina, dividing the fornix into anterior, posterior and lateral fornices. The vaginal surface of the cervix is seen easily with the help of a speculum. At its centre is a rounded, oval or slit-like depression called the *external os* of the cervix which marks the opening of endocervical canal. The cervix is covered by columnar (surrounding the os) and squamous epithelium merging with vaginal epithelium. The *Pap smear* is used for diagnosis of *cervical dysplasia*.

A fallopian tube connects the uterus to the ovary on each side. The two ovaries are almond-shaped structures

that vary in size from adulthood through menopause. The ovaries are palpable on pelvic examination in roughly half of the women during reproductive years. Normally fallopian tubes can not be felt. The term *adnexa* (meaning appendages) refers to the ovaries, tubes and supporting tissue.

The parietal peritoneum extends downwards behind the uterus into a *cul de sac* called the *rectouterine* pouch (*pouch of Douglas*). You can reach this area on rectovaginal examination, and is a common site of collection of pus in pelvic inflammations and nodules for malignancy of pelvic organs.

The pelvic organs are supported by a sling of tissues, composed of muscle, ligaments, and fascia, through which the urethra, vagina and rectum all pass.

Functions

The ovaries produce ova and hormones e.g. oestrogen, progesterone and testosterone. Increased hormonal production during puberty stimulates the growth of sexual as well as secondary sexual characters. The levels of the hormones fall during menopause.

Genitourinary symptoms

1. Symptoms pertaining to genitourinary tract have already been discussed in Chapter 2. They are summarised in the Box 14.1 and Fig. 14.2.
2. *Associated symptoms* e.g. fever, anorexia, nausea, malaise, weakness.
3. *Symptoms due to uraemia*. Most of the diseases of urinary system are complicated by uraemia (raised blood urea, nitrogen, creatinine). They are given in the Fig. 14.3.

Clinical patterns of renal disorders

The following clinical syndromes are seen in association with renal disease. No symptom or sign is specific for renal disease.

1. *Acute renal failure*: The occurrence of recent decline of renal functions over days leading to oliguria or anuria constitute syndrome of *acute renal failure*. In contrast, when functional decline is noted over weeks instead of days, the renal failure is categorised as rapidly *progressive renal failure*. In addition to reduced GFR, oedema, hypertension, abnormal electrolytes and urinary sediments may be noted but are not specific to this syndrome. It is caused by pre-renal, renal and postrenal disorders.
2. *Acute nephritic syndrome* It is characterised by acute onset of oliguria, haematuria (microscopic or macroscopic), proteinuria (<3 g/day), hypertension,

Box 14.1: SYMPTOMATOLOGY OF GENITOURINARY TRACT

A: Symptoms and signs related to urinary system

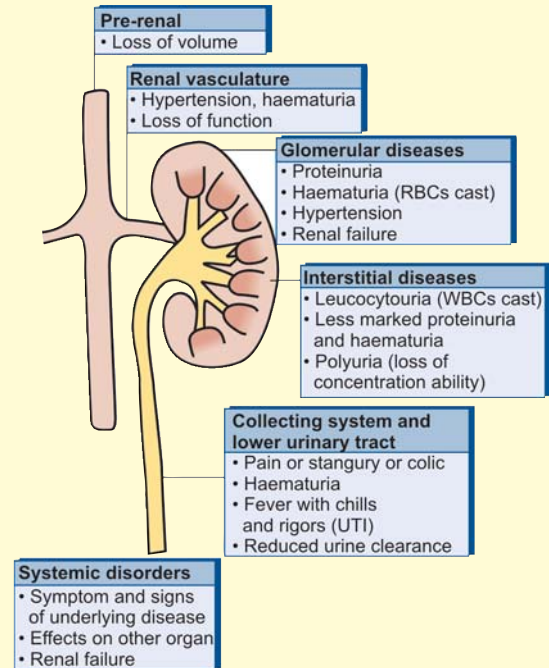


Fig. 14.2:

B: Symptoms related to genital tract

Female

- Stress urinary incontinence
- Menstrual irregularities
- Obstetric complaints
- Bleeding per vagina (e.g. intrauterine erosions, polyps, malignancy)
- Vaginal discharge e.g. sexually transmitted diseases or vaginal infection
- Altered sexual function i.e. dyspareunia (painful intercourse) or inactivity (loss of desire)

Males

- Delay in initiating micturition (hesitancy)
- Thinning of urinary stream
- Impaired urinary flow
- Post-micturition dribbling
- Urethral discharge (e.g. sexually transmitted disorder)
- Altered sexual function/activity (e.g. *impotence*)

oedema and azotaemia with urine of high specific gravity. and smoky in appearance. It invariably indicates acute glomerulonephritis due to any cause.

3. *Nephrotic syndrome*. It is defined as massive proteinuria (> 3.5 g/day), hypoalbuminaemia, periorbital or pitting pedal oedema, hyperlipidaemia and lipiduria (passage of fat globules in urine) and coagulopathy or hypercoagulable state due to urinary losses of antithrombin C and S and hyperfibrinoginaemia.

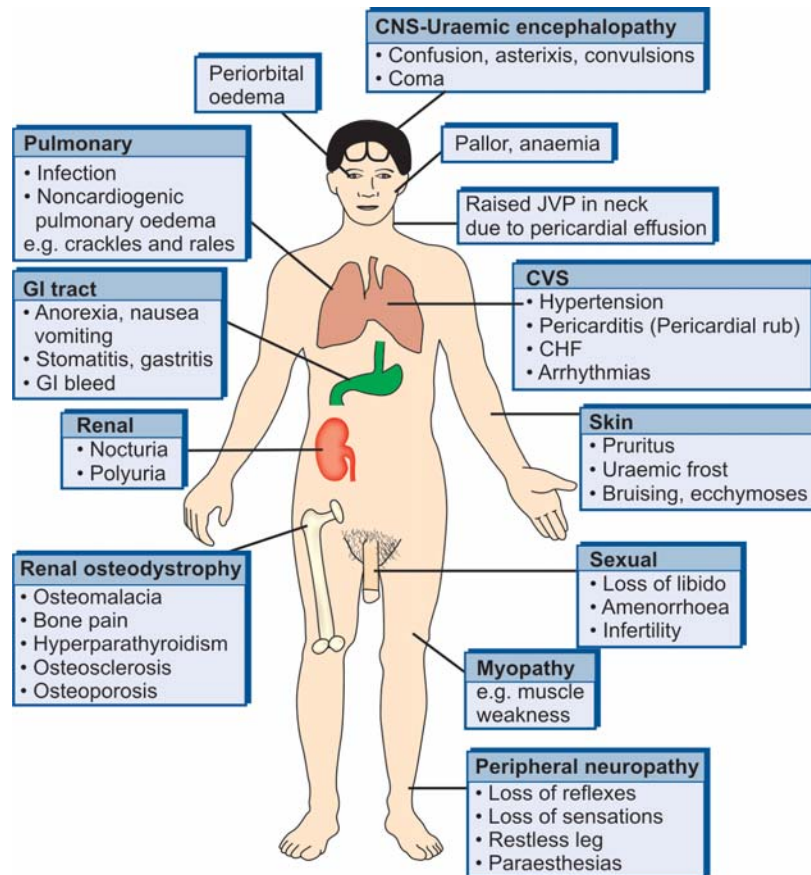


Fig. 14.3: Symptoms and signs of chronic renal failure (CRF)

4. *Chronic renal failure*: It is a clinical syndrome of uraemia occurring as a result of slow insidious irreversible deterioration of renal functions manifested by excretory, metabolic, neurological, haematological and endocrinal abnormalities. The diagnosis is made by documentary evidence of uraemia (raised blood urea and creatinine) for more than 3 months, small contracted kidneys on radiology or USG, renal bone disease and renal biopsy evidence of chronicity of the disease.

The occurrence of recent acute renal failure (e.g. oliguria, hypotension) in the presence of a previously compensated chronic renal failure has been termed as *acute on chronic renal failure*.

Anaemia, hypertension, hypocalcaemia, hyperphosphataemia; UTI, GI symptoms, electrolyte disturbance and renal osteodystrophy are some of the important clinical features of CRF in addition to low fixed specific gravity of urine and presence of broad hyaline casts (renal failure casts)

5. *Asymptomatic urinary abnormalities*: Detection of isolated haematuria, proteinuria or unexplained

pyuria during screening procedures or routine medical check up for employment or life insurance purposes constitutes *asymptomatic urinary abnormalities*. Many cases of asymptomatic glomerular disease are diagnosed from these abnormalities. Most asymptomatic glomerular haematuria is due to IgA nephropathy (*Berger's disease*) or thin basement membrane (TBM) disease (benign haematuria). A rare but, more ominous cause of isolated haematuria is hereditary nephritis (*Alport's syndrome*).

Between 0.5 to 10% of the population have isolated proteinuria, a radiologically normal urinary tract and the absence of known renal disease. Majority of these patients excrete proteins of <2 g/day, and more than 80% have an excellent prognosis (benign isolated proteinuria). A minority (10-25%) are found to have *persistent isolated proteinuria*, some of whom develop progressive renal insufficiency over a period of one to two decades.

Asymptomatic bacteriuria is defined as colony count $>10^5$ /ml in mid-stream urine sample of approximately healthy asymptomatic individual. About 1% children, 1% school girls, 0.03% school boys

and men, about 1% nonpregnant women and 5% pregnant women have asymptomatic bacteriuria. Otherwise, such colony count in urine indicates urinary infection.

6. *Urinary tract infection:* A mid-stream urine sample, appropriately collected under aseptic conditions, with colony counts $>10^5$ /ml indicates urinary infection in symptomatic patients. Under certain conditions, colony counts between 10^2 - 10^4 /ml in mid-stream sample or suprapubic aspiration of bladder may indicate urinary infection, needs further evaluation.

Fever, dysuria, increased frequency of micturition, leucocytouria or pyuria, burning micturition suggest upper urinary tract infection.

7. *Renal tubular defects:* Renal tubular defects (anatomical or functional) are either inherited or acquired. Anatomical defects such as cystic diseases (polycystic and medullary cystic) and medullary sponge kidney, are usually identified during investigations for haematuria, bacteriuria, flank pain or azotemia. USG and radiological diagnostic techniques confirm the diagnosis.

Functional renal tubular defects results in impaired secretion or resorption of electrolytes, H^+ , HCO_3^- or organic solutes or decreased urinary concentrating and diluting activity. Polyuria, nocturia, metabolic acidosis, disorders of fluid and electrolyte balance are its clinical manifestations. Diagnosis is dependent on individual tubular functions. Tubular syndromes cause pyuria, calculous disease, calcinosis, renal bone disease or renal failure.

8. *Nephrolithiasis:* Renal colic, painful haematuria, unexplained pyuria, dysuria and urinary frequency raises the suspicion of a renal stone. Passage of stone, visualisation of a stone on X-ray or on removal at surgery or on cystoscopy confirms the diagnosis of stone disease. Stones detected on X-ray include calcium containing and cysteine stones, while uric acid stones are radiolucent.
9. *Urinary tract obstruction:* Oliguria, anuria, polyuria, nocturia, urinary retention, azotemia, slowing of the urinary stream, enlarged prostate, large kidneys, flank pain or tenderness, a full bladder after voiding are some of the diagnostic clues to urinary tract obstruction which is confirmed on investigations and radiology.

Anuria is almost always associated with complete bilateral urinary tract obstruction. A palpable bladder after voiding is caused by lower urinary tract obstruction (e.g. due to urethral stricture, tumour, stone, neurogenic cause and prostate hypertrophy). Nocturia, increased

frequency and outflow incontinence, hesitancy also suggest outflow obstruction. Upper urinary tract obstruction may, at times, be asymptomatic especially when it is incomplete or unilateral.

NB: Syndromes in nephrology as discussed above serve to narrow down the diagnostic possibilities and thus limit the time and effort spent in arriving at the aetiological diagnosis.

History

Present history

Certain points in the **present history** act as clue (s) to diagnosis;

- Dysuria, frequency and urgency suggest the disorders of the lower urinary tract (bladder, prostate, and urethra). Commonly, it is due to urinary tract infection, tumour, calculi and urinary tract obstruction.
- Dysuria with urethral discharge indicates gonorrhoea.
- Dysuria with stangury indicates acute bladder neck obstruction due to a stone or blood clot.
- Painless haematuria in an adult is usually due to benign bladder papilloma or a renal, bladder or prostatic carcinoma.
- Change in colour of the urine after standing (fresh voided urine is of normal colour) indicates acute intermittent porphyria.
- Polyuria alone is due to renal disease, polyuria, polydipsia and polyphagia indicate diabetes, polyuria and polydipsia suggest diabetes insipidus and psychogenic polydipsia. Polyuria and nocturia suggest cardiac failure.
- Reduced force of urinary stream and thinning of urinary stream in males suggest bladder outlet obstruction (prostate enlargement, urethral stricture).
- Hesitancy, double voiding (need to pass urine again within few minutes of micturition), dribbling after micturition, increased frequency and nocturia due to incomplete bladder emptying or complete urinary retention are symptoms of prostatic outflow obstruction.
- Stress incontinence (leakage of urine in response to coughing, sneezing, or laughing) occurs in multiparous women due to weakness of pelvic floor muscles.

Past history

Ask about;

- Renal colic (intermittent colic due to stone or clot due to haematuria).
- Polyarthrititis (gout, rheumatoid arthritis, SLE)
- Hypertension and diabetes (diabetic nephropathy).

- Long history of chronic suppurative lung disease or tuberculosis (tuberculosis of kidney, amyloidosis).
- Malaria or filarial infection (nephrotic syndrome, chyluria).
- Poisoning, snake bite or insect stings and bites.
- Surgery.
- Sexually transmitted disease.

Family history

In certain heritable and developmental renal disorders which get transmitted from parent to offsprings, the family pedigree chart provides an important clue to presence of some or many of the manifestations in the index patient and in other members of the family. These disorders are;

1. Cystic renal diseases e.g. *polycystic kidney disease* (autosomal dominant or autosomal recessive), *tuberous sclerosis*, *Von Hippel-Lindau disease* and *medullary sponge kidney* or *medullary cystic disease*.
2. Hereditary nephritis (*Alport's syndrome*)
3. Hereditary metabolic disorders, (e.g. *Bartter's syndrome*, *Alport's syndrome*, *familial urate nephropathy*).
4. Hereditary renal tubular defects.
5. Hereditary systemic disorders with involvement of kidneys, e.g. diabetes, Wilson's disease, familial mediterranean fever, sickle cell disease.

Drug history

The kidneys play a major role in the excretion of many drugs, and has rich vascular supply, hence, is susceptible to the effects of various drugs/toxins. Exposure to these toxins may be accidental or deliberate. The drugs causing nephrotoxicity are given in the Box 14.2, their history of intake must be asked in each and every case of renal disease.

Box 14.2:	NEPHROTOXIC DRUGS/TOXINS
Drugs	
1. <i>Antibiotics</i> e.g., Aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, vancomycins, tetracyclines	
2. <i>Sulphonamides</i>	
3. <i>Antifungal</i> e.g. amphotericin	
4. <i>Antiviral</i> e.g. acyclovir	
5. <i>Antimitotics</i> e.g. cyclosporine, cisplatin, cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, cytosine arabinoside, thioguanine, 5-fluorouracil	
6. <i>NSAIDs</i> , or aspirin or phenacetin (analgesic nephropathy)	
7. <i>Diuretics</i>	
8. <i>Rifampicin</i>	
9. <i>Pentamidine</i>	
10. <i>Lithium</i>	
11. <i>Heroin-induced nephropathy</i>	

Contd....

Contd...

Toxins

- *Heavy metals* e.g. lead, mercury, cadmium, gold, pencillamine
- *Chemical and plant toxins* e.g. CuSO_4 , mushroom poisoning
- *Metabolic toxins* e.g. hyperuricaemia, hypercalcaemia, hyperoxaluria, cystinosis, Fabry's disease

Sexual history

Sexual dysfunction and sexually transmitted diseases are common (see the Box 14.3). Two aspects of sexually transmitted diseases are important. First, an infected individual/patient indicates that at least one other person (partner) is also infected, therefore, treatment in isolation will not control the spread of the disease. Second, a patient may harbour more than one sexually-transmitted disease. Remember that babies, innocent partners and victims of rape and sexual abuse can also be infected.

Box 14.3: SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (CAUSATIVE AGENTS)

1. Bacterial

- Syphilis (*T. pallidum*)
- Gonorrhoea (*N. gonorrhoeae*)
- Lymphogranuloma venereum (*chlamydia trachomatis*, LGV 1-3 serovars)
- Chancroid (*H. Ducreyi*)
- Granuloma inguinale (*Calymmatobacterium granulomatis*)
- Bacterial vaginosis
- Shigellosis, Salmonellosis
- Nonspecific genital infection (*ureaplasma*, *Mycoplasma*)

2. Viral

- Genital herpes (*Herpes simplex virus I and 2*)
- Genital Warts (*Human papilloma virus*)
- Molluscum contagiosum (*Molluscum contagiosum virus*)
- AIDS and related disease (*Human Immunodeficiency virus*)
- Hepatitis (*Virus A,B,C and delta viruses*)

3. Fungal

- Thrush/moniliasis/candidiasis

4. Ectoparasites

- Pediculosis pubis (*Phthirus pubis*)
- Scabies (*Sarcoptes scabiei*)

5. Protozoal

- Trichomoniasis (*T. vaginalis*)
- Amoebiasis (*E. histolytica*)
- Giardiasis (*G. lamblia*)

6. Nematode

- Enterobiasis (*E. vermicularis*)

The sexual history is important for sexual dysfunction as well as for sexually transmitted diseases in young adults. Although such topics are often avoided by patients because of embarrassment, it is particularly important to interview and examine the patient in privacy and with confidentiality. The staff should be sympathetic, without a disapproving or moralistic attitude.

The history should explore the two important aspects;

1. **Sexual function and activity:** Ask about sexual activity and whether they have any of the disorders known to predispose to sexual dysfunction i.e. diabetes, alcoholism, chronic renal failure, marital difficulty or psychological disorder.
2. **To explore the possibility of sexually transmitted disease** as listed in the Box 14.3. The points to be asked are listed in the Box 14.4.

Box 14.4:	POINTS TO BE ASKED IN SEXUAL HISTORY
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • How many sexual partners have you had in the last 12 months? • How many of your partners have been males and how many females? • How many of your partners have casual relationship? • Do you use condom most of the time, all of the time, or not at all? • Have you ever suffered from a sexually transmitted disease? <p>Males: Ask for any problem with sexual drive, erection, penetration, ejaculation or orgasm?</p> <p>Females: Ask for any problem with sexual drive, pain during intercourse or orgasm?</p>

The *incubation period* of infection – a pointer towards the cause of the disease, may be assessed from the date of exposure to the onset of symptoms. A history of intercourse with homosexual or bisexual men, I.V. drug users or with persons living in or from an area of high HIV endemicity may suggest AIDS as the cause.

The type of sexual practice must be asked such as:

- Straight sex (penovaginal intercourse)
- Oral sex (oro-penile intercourse)
- Gay sex (oro-anal sex) or (peno-anal intercourse)

Hepatitis B and HIV infection are common in those practising peno-anal intercourse.

Menstrual and obstetrics history

Ask about the followings:

- Age of menarche
- Age of menopause, if appropriate
- Use of contraceptive drugs or device, or hormone replacement therapy
- Date of the first day of last menstrual period

- Frequency, duration and regularity of menses
- Blood loss during menses i.e. scanty or heavy

The normal age of menarche varies from the ages 10-15 years. Failure to menstruate at all by this age indicates primary amenorrhoea.

The normal age of the menopause varies 45-55 years. Secondary amenorrhoea may be due to pregnancy, systemic illness, hyperprolactinaemia, androgens excess or hypopituitarism. It could be psychological also.

The obstetric history includes details of all pregnancies, successful or otherwise, and any problem experienced during pregnancy such as hypertension or urinary infection (see the Box 14.5). If a woman has never conceived, it is appropriate to ask whether this was by choice or whether difficulties in conceiving have been experienced.

If a female complains of vaginal discharge, then ask about its *colour*, *consistency* and *odour* (foul smell indicates anaerobic infection).

Vaginal bleeding following intercourse could be due to cervical erosions, polyp or carcinoma.

The presence of vaginal discharge, or intermenstrual, postcoital or postmenopausal bleeding is an indication for gynaecological assessment and examination

Box 14.5:	OBSTETRIC HISTORY
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of pregnancies and live births, miscarriages and termination • Any health problem during pregnancies or after delivery? • Were the previous deliveries vaginal or caesarean? • Were forceps or episiotomy used? • Ask about medical disorders complicating pregnancy such as anaemia, hypertension, diabetes mellitus, thyroid disease or urinary infection

Examination

It includes;

1. General physical examination
2. Examination of the abdomen.
3. Examination of genitalia.

General physical examination

- Look for consciousness. Is there any disturbance in consciousness?

Consciousness may be disturbed due to uraemic encephalopathy as a result of retention of waste substances or toxins.

- Look for anaemia at different sites.

Anaemia in renal disorders may occur due to gross haematuria, bleeding or coagulation defect or reduced production of erythropoietin in CRF or hypoplasia of marrow due to uraemic toxins or shortened span of RBCs (haemolysis).

- **The mouth and tongue:** Note any abnormality.

Buccal mucosa is pale in anaemia.

Tongue and mucous membrane are dry in dehydration. White deposits and ulceration of the mouth are seen in severely ill patients or patients receiving steroids or immuno suppressive drugs, indicate bacterial, viral or fungal infections.

- **The skin:** Look for any abnormality.

Facial puffiness may denote nephrotic syndrome.

Dry, pale and flaky skin is seen in uraemia. Uraemic frost (dirty brown appearance of skin) looks like dandruff on the forehead and is due to crystallisation of urea from the sweat. It is seen in terminal uraemia.

Bruises or purpura suggest bleeding or coagulation defect.

A butter-fly rash over face indicate SLE. (Fig. 14.4)

Scratch marks or excoriation of skin indicates pruritus.

The lustre and laxity of the skin can be demonstrated by pinching the skin between finger and the thumb. Skin turgor or lustre is lost in dehydration.

Subcutaneous calcium deposits in skin may occur due to hyperparathyroidism which may ulcerate.

Scars of vascular access surgery may be seen in forearms or ankles and the veins over dorsum of the hands may be dilated as a result of arteriovenous anastomosis constructed in the forearm in patients undergoing dialytic therapy (haemodialysis). Scars of lithotripsy for crushing of stone may be noticed (Fig. 14.5).

Pitting oedema of the ankles, scrotum and oedema of the genitalia may be present. This is due to hypoproteinaemia in renal disorders (e.g. nephrotic syndrome).

Wart and skin cancers are common in immunosuppressed patients with renal transplant.

The growth and development *to be examined especially in children.*

The growth is retarded and puberty delayed in children suffering from chronic renal failure.

- **Deformity.** Note, if present.

The *renal rickets* may cause valgus or varus deformity of the knees ('knock knees' or 'bow legs' Fig. 14.6), ankles swelling or beading of costochondral junctions (*rickety rosary*) and proximal muscle weakness so that patient is not able to get up from squatting position without levering up with the arms.



Fig. 14.4: Puffiness of face (periorbital oedema) due to SLE induced nephrotic syndrome



Fig. 14.5: A lithotripsy scar in left renal area



Fig. 14.6: Knocked knees in a child with renal rickets. Note the bowing of the legs also

Shortening of distal phalanges. Shortening of fingers due to shortening of terminal phalanges may occur as a result of resorption of bone secondary to hyperparathyroidism in chronic renal failure. There may be softening of the vertebrae with consequent curvature of the spine and loss of height may cause a rounded shoulder appearance.

- **The extremities** note any abnormality.

Flapping tremors of outstretched hands may be seen in uraemia (uraemic flaps). Other conditions that produce these flaps include hepatic encephalopathy and respiratory failure (CO₂ retention). There may be sporadic twitchings of the limbs and muscle cramps.

Restless leg—a uncontrolled desire to move their legs continuously may be seen in patients with CRF undergoing dialysis.

- **The nails.** Note any abnormality

White and opaque nails (leuconychia) are sometimes seen in nephrotic syndrome or CRF.

Beau's transverse lines are seen in severe illness or malnutrition.

Splinter haemorrhages in the nail beds suggest vasculitis or endocarditis.

Nail dysplasia with multiple osseous abnormalities (elbow and knees i.e. patella) are seen in Nail-Patella syndrome—an autosomal dominant disorder of kidney (hereditary nephropathy).

Half and half nails. Lower half white and upper half brown of a nail called *half and half syndrome* is seen in chronic renal failure (Fig. 14.7).

- **The eyes:** Note any abnormalities in the eyes

Pain and redness from conjunctivitis may be caused by local deposits of calcium due to hyperparathyroidism. Yellow deposits in the sclerae may also be seen. Thin curved white lines in corneoscleral junction may occur due to hyperparathyroidism.

Haemangioblastomas of retina occur in Von-Hippel-Lindau disease

Blurring of vision or visual loss may occur due to hypertensive retinopathy or retinal vascular thrombosis. Macular flecks and recurrent corneal erosions are seen in Alport's syndrome.

Retinal changes (exudates, haemorrhage- retinopathy) may occur due to hypertension, diabetes and vascular disorders.

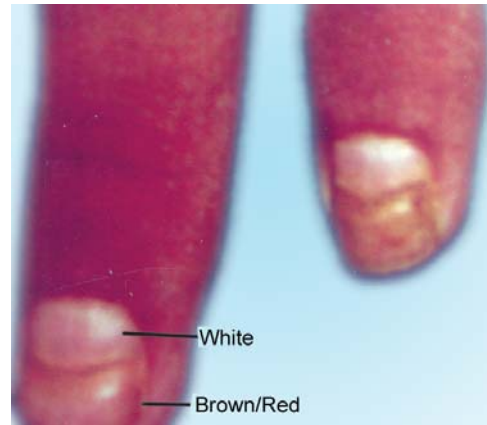


Fig. 14.7: Half and half nails' in a patient with chronic renal failure

The ear: Sensorineural deafness may be present in patients with *Alport's syndrome* (consisting of proteinuria, haematuria, renal failure and ocular abnormalities) and other forms of hereditary renal disease.

The abdomen (Read Chapter 13)

1. **Inspection.** Read Chapter 13.

2. **Palpation**

Normal kidneys, especially right one which is lower than the left due to presence of liver, may sometimes be felt in thin persons with relaxed abdomen. The palpable, enlarged kidneys are always abnormal, except compensatory hypertrophied kidney in response to removal of the other kidney.

The causes of enlargement of kidneys as well as palpation of a renal lump and its differential diagnosis has already been discussed in Chapter 13.

The characteristics of distended bladder due to delayed micturition, outlet obstruction or neuropathy (neurogenic bladder) has also been discussed in Chap. 13.

Fullness of renal angle and tenderness of kidneys (renal area) or bladder (suprapubic area) have been described already.

Remember. It should be remembered that a transplanted kidney lies in the iliac fossa, where it can be felt as a firm swelling underneath the skin and anterior abdominal musculature.

Diffuse oedema of the abdominal wall which indents or pits on finger pressure, sacral and pedal oedema have also been described, may be caused by salt and water retention, hypoproteinaemia due to nephrotic syndrome and chronic renal failure.

Prucussion

Percussion in urinary system disorders is done;

- i. To diagnose pulmonary complications such as pneumonia and pleural effusion.
- ii. To diagnose ascites (perform fluid thrill and shifting dullness) in nephrotic syndrome.

Auscultation

Auscultation in urinary system is not limited to the kidneys (renal vasculature) but also of the heart and lungs.

1. *Arterial bruits* may be heard over the kidneys posteriorly (renal angle) or anteriorly in the midline on either side of umbilicus by pressing the stethoscope in relaxed abdomen (See Fig. 13.40). Presence of bruit in patients with hypertension indicates renal artery stenosis. Ilofemoral bruit implies the presence of atherosclerosis and increases the possibility of renal artery stenosis when no bruit is heard in renal area.
2. *Pericardial and pleural rubs*. These may be heard in patients undergoing dialysis, and sometimes in conditions, such as systemic lupus erythematosus and vasculitis where kidney, heart and lungs are involved as a part of multisystemic involvement.

Investigations of a case with renal disease

Urine examination

The urine should be tested routinely in any medical illness because testing of urine often leads to discovery of unsuspected disorders such as diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus or chronic renal failure, jaundice or hypertension.

Urine passed into a clean vessel is suitable for chemical examination which should be carried out immediately on uncentrifuged and if necessary on centrifuged urine. Antiseptic or detergents may not be used during collection of urine for culture as they may cause false results. Mid-stream sample of urine should be collected for bacteriological and microscopic examination.

Physical characteristics

- A. *Volume*: Normal urine output per day is 800-2500 ml. Markedly decreased or no urine output may be due to urinary retention, oliguria or anuria. Oliguria indicates acute renal failure or acute on chronic renal failure, may be due to salt or water depletion resulting from diarrhoea, vomiting, fever, heat stroke, excessive burns, shock, severe heart failure or acute diffuse disease of the kidney i.e. acute glomerulonephritis or acute nephritic syndrome. Urinary retention differs

from anuria where urine formation occurs resulting in distention of urinary bladder. Polyuria refers to daily urine output of 3 litres, and differs from increased frequency of micturition where patient passes small amount of urine frequently, but patient's total output of urine remains normal polyuria results from tubulo-interstitial disorders, excessive water intake, increased diuresis and may be drug induced. Nocturnal polyuria indicates chronic renal failure.

- B. *Colour and transparency*: Urochrome and uroerythrin are pigments which give the normal colour (light yellow) to the urine. The exact tinge varies. Urine darkens on standing due to oxidation of colourless urobilinogen to coloured urobilin. The urine is abnormally pale when it is very dilute and in renal failure.

Abnormal colouration of urine occurs due to presence of blood in the urine called *haematuria* which may be microscopic or macroscopic, has to be differentiated from other coloured pigments in the urine (see the Box 14.6). A small quantity of blood gives the urine a smoky appearance (see in acute nephritic syndrome); larger quantities make it brownish or red.

Box 14.6: ABNORMALITIES OF THE URINE COLOUR (Fig. 14.8)

Orange-brown	Bilirubin (unconjugated) Rhubarb, senna Normal concentrated urine (dehydration)
Red-brown	Blood, myoglobin, haemoglobin Porphyrins, rifampicin, nitrofurantoin phenolphthalein, desferrioxamine Beet root, black berries
Brown-black	Bilirubin, melanin, methaemalbumin, L-dopa, homogentisic acid (alkaptonuria)

Urine is normally quite transparent and clear when freshly passed but pus, bacteria, precipitated urates and phosphates may make it *cloudy*. If cloudiness persists after filtration, it is due to bacteria. Stale or unrefrigerated urine often appears hazy or musky because of bacterial proliferation which occurs at body temperature.

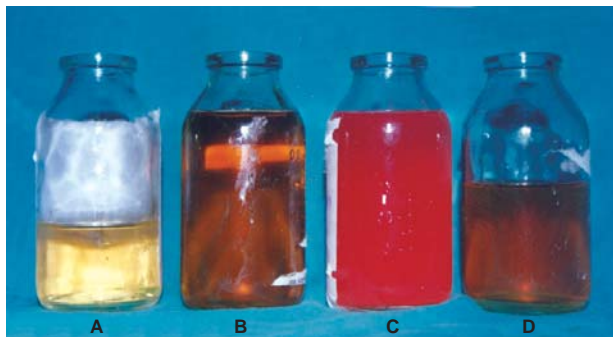


Fig.14.8 : Abnormal colouration of the urine. A. Normal, B. Urine from a patient with Jaundice, C. Haematuria, D. Patient on rifampicin

Phosphate and urates may precipitate in normal urine. Phosphate produces a white deposit in alkaline urine and warming increases their deposition because urine becomes more alkaline due to loss of CO_2 . Phosphate dissolves easily with acidification with acetic acid. Clear urine becomes cloudy at room temperature due to precipitation of urates which dissolves on rewarming or adding NaOH. Urate excretion increases in myeloproliferative disorders and in gout when purine breakdown is augmented.

C. *Urine concentration or osmolality*: Urine osmolality (mOsm) is determined by the number of solute particles/kg of H_2O . This is tested by water deprivation for 8 to 12 hours or administration of vasopressin. Normally, after 8 hours of water deprivation, urine osmolality reaches 800 mOsm/kg. The weight of patient should be recorded before and after the test. If weight loss is more than 3% of body weight, the test should be abandoned. Normal urine osmolality is 70-1200 mOsm/kg H_2O .

D. *Specific gravity of urine*: It is the measure of the quantity of the solutes (urea and sodium) in solution, approximately measures the urine osmolality. It is measured either by commercially available reagent strip or by urinometer. For urinometer, a sufficient quantity of urine is required to dip it, if quantity is not sufficient, then dilute the urine with equal amount of distilled water and the last two figures of urinometer reading doubled. The normal specific gravity varies from 1.002 to 1.025, is proportional to the urinary concentration of urea and sodium. It depends on the hydration of the patient and time of the day. It is greatest on arising in the morning. After 12 hours of water deprivation, it is more than 1.025 normally. Urine of low specific gravity (1.004) is passed in *diabetes insipidus*, in patients with *compulsive water drinking* and in certain disorders affecting the tubular function of the kidney (tubulointerstitial disorders) called *nephrogenic diabetes insipidus*. The specific gravity is low and fixed in chronic renal failure. The specific gravity is high in acute nephritic syndrome. If a random or pre-breakfast sample of urine is found to have specific gravity of 1.020 or more; it is presumed that kidney had normal concentrating capacity.

E. *Urine dilution*. It is tested by asking the patient to drink one litre of water and the urine is collected one hourly for next 4 hours. At least 750 ml of urine should be excreted normally during this period and osmolality of one of the samples should be less than 100 mOsm/kg. A number of conditions interfere with diluting ability of the kidneys such as tubulointerstitial diseases.

Chemical examination

Many of the chemical tests for routine urine examination are done by commercial tablets, or reagent 'stick' or 'strip'. It is imperative to follow the manufacturer's instructions in order to avoid false results. The strips should be kept dry in their closed containers and indicator ends of the strips are not handled. The reagent strip has to be dipped into the urine and its edge is wiped off by running it against the rim of the urine container. The colour change noted after a specified period of reaction between the reagent and the urine is compared with the colour chart of the manufacturer's drawn on the strip container. Most strips test several constituents of the urine. Try to read the strip at the specified time.

The pH

The pH of the urine is tested by commercial reagent strips. Normal fresh urine is slightly acidic except shortly after meals. Alkalinisation of the urine may be done for therapeutic purposes (forced alkaline diuresis in salicylate poisoning) by administering drugs. However, impairment of tubular acidification indicate tubular defect which can be confirmed by acidification test described below.

F. *Reaction of the urine and acid excretion*: Normal pH of urine varies from 4.3-8.0. Urea splitting organisms raise the pH beyond 8.0. It is an important diagnostic clue to infection by these organisms. The acidification of urine occurs when kidneys are not able to excrete sufficient amount of NH_4^+ . This can be tested by acidification test.

Procedure for test

- Give NH_4^+Cl , 1.0 g/kg in capsules orally.
- Collect urine every hourly for 8 hours in a container having some amount of liquid paraffin to prevent its exposure.
- Measure urine pH, total NH_4^+ and total titrable acid in each sample.
- During testing, patient should eat normally and drink sufficient amount of fluids (200 ml/hr).

Failure to reduce the pH of urine to less than 5.3 indicates renal tubular acidosis or chronic renal failure with metabolic acidosis.

Urinary constituents abnormalities

Proteinuria: Normal adult passes upto 150 mg of proteins in the urine daily, which is not detected by ordinary tests. Hence, we say, normally, there is no proteinuria. Proteinuria more than 150 mg is called pathological

proteinuria which may be *microalbuminuria* (30-300 mg/day or albumin excretion rate of 20-200 µg/min) or *overt proteinuria* (>500 mg/day). Microalbuminuria is detected by special tests only. Overt proteinuria can be detected by conventional tests. Normally, 10-15% of urinary proteins is albumin derived from plasma, rest of proteins are tubular in origin (*Tamm-Horsfall mucoproteins*) or some other fractions of plasma proteins. Albumin being a large molecule is usually not filtered normally, but in pathological conditions involving glomeruli, it is filtered in variable amount, constituting *nephritic* and *nephrotic syndrome*. In clinical practice, albuminuria is interchangeably used for proteinuria.

Consequences of proteinuria: Plasma proteins maintain plasma oncotic pressure, which falls in patients with albuminuria leading to retention of fluids. The retention of fluids in extravascular compartment, reduces effective blood volume and effective renal perfusion leading to stimulation of *renin-angiotensin-aldosterone cascade*, resulting in Na⁺ and water retention and oedema formation. Loss of urinary proteins, if not compensated by the synthetic capacity of the liver, results in hypoalbuminaemia and lowered oncotic pressure. There is rise in serum lipids in patients with massive albuminuria. A hypercoagulable state frequently accompanies severe proteinuria (nephrotic syndrome) due to urinary losses of antithrombin III, reduced serum levels of proteins S and C and hyperfibrinogenaemia. Therefore, consequences of massive albuminuria are; *hypoalbuminaemia, oedema, ascites, hyperlipidaemia, lipiduria and hypercoagulable state*.

Tests for proteinuria

1. **Heat coagulation method** (conventional method). It is done by heating upper portion of urine in a test tube. The white coagulum at the top indicates proteinuria.
2. **Dip stick test:** This is available as a bed side test and can be done by the patient himself, if his/her eyesight or colour vision is normal. The change in colour of the strip is compared to the colour on the bottle which quantifies the loss of proteins.
3. **Electrophoresis of proteins:** It is done to detect globulins in the urine. (Fig. 14.9)
4. **Immunoelectrophoresis:** It is done to identify the various fragments of immunoglobulins when there is a monoclonal peak on routine urine paper electrophoresis.
5. **24 hours urine for proteinuria:** It is carried out to separate cases of nephrotic syndrome (massive proteinuria >3.5 g/day) from other causes of proteinuria, where it is mild to moderate (1-2 g/day).

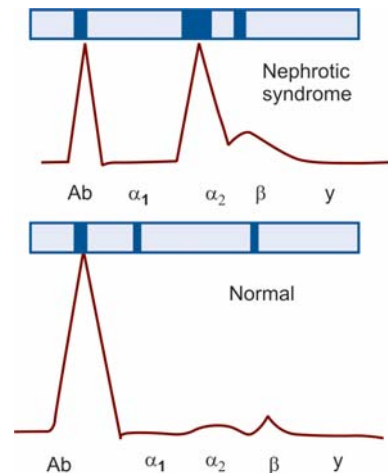


Fig. 14.9: Serum paper electrophoresis in normal person and in a patient with nephrotic syndrome. Note the reduced albumin and increased globulins (α and β) in a patient with nephrotic syndrome

Aetiopathogenesis of proteinuria

Tubular proteinuria: The disease producing damage more to tubules than to glomeruli has proteinuria ranging from 1-3 g/day, consists of only small molecular proteins but not albumin. In this type of proteinuria, oedema and hyperlipidaemia do not occur as there is no loss of albumin in the urine. There is no abnormal cell in the urine.

Glomerular proteinuria: Glomerular injury to basement membrane leads to albuminuria which, if persists, can also lead to filtration of large molecular proteins, such as globulins. Therefore, selectivity of proteinuria varies with the extent of glomerular damage. In selective proteinuria, the larger molecular proteins are absent but albuminuria present; in non-selective proteinuria, they are present in significant amounts along with albumin. The clinical utility of differentiating selective proteinuria from nonselective proteinuria has not been well defined, but it has been observed that patients with selective proteinuria respond to treatment better and have better life span than those with non-selective proteinuria.

Asymptomatic proteinuria: It is defined as chance detection of proteinuria during routine urine examination. It is frequently seen in younger persons who are undergoing medical examination for employment or insurance purposes. The proteinuria is considered as benign and it may be orthostatic (postural) or exercise induced. The renal biopsy is indicated if proteinuria exceeds 2g/day or there is associated hypertension, haematuria and impaired renal functions.

Orthostatic (postural) proteinuria: Some children, adolescents and healthy persons pass small amounts of proteins in the urine in relation to assuming the upright posture. This is again a benign condition without demonstrable renal disease. In such patients, urine formed during recumbent position i.e. morning sample of urine on rising is free from proteins. Urine formed during daytime activities or after vigorous exercise contains proteins. Other investigations are not required if renal disease is not suspected. Follow-up studies of such patients indicate that the condition is benign.

Microalbuminuria: The term is used to denote mild albuminuria (30-300 mg/day or albumin excretion rate of 20-200 µg/min) which is not detected by conventional methods. Special radioimmunoassay methods are used to detect it. Interpretation of results is very difficult because albumin excretion will increase with exercise as well as in certain other disorders. Nonetheless it is a useful diagnostic test for the detection of early diabetic nephropathy provided other causes of an increased urinary excretion of albumin have been excluded. Diabetic nephropathy is suspected when two of three samples collected at 2-3 months intervals are positive for microalbuminuria.

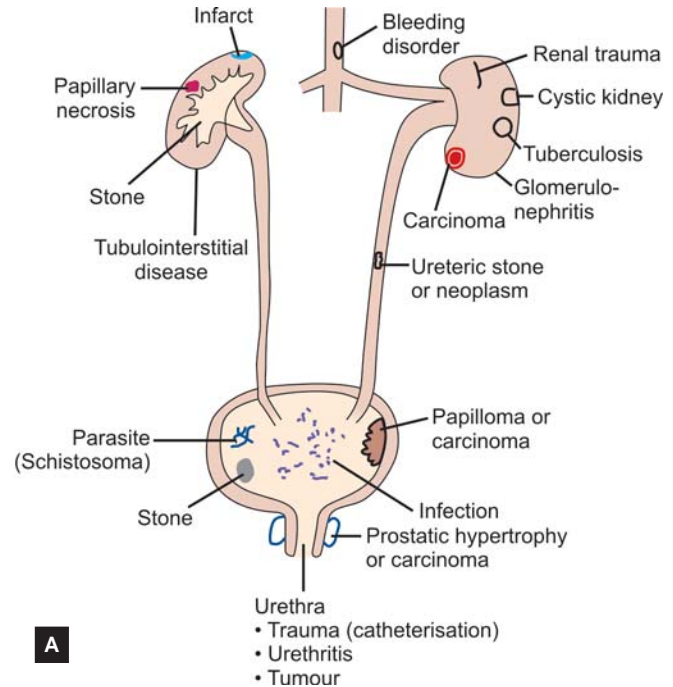
Bence-Jones proteinuria: These are light chain immunoglobulins (Bence-Jones proteins – a paraprotein) that appear in the urine in patients with monoclonal gammopathies. These proteins can be identified by immunoelectrophoresis of urine.

Haematuria: Blood or RBCs in the urine is called haematuria. Isolated haematuria occurs in bleeding anywhere in genitourinary tract (Fig. 14.10A). In such a situation, blood is mixed with urine giving it a red colour (Fig. 14.10B) or detected on microscopy by RBCs called microscopic haematuria. Bleeding in the beginning or at the end of micturition indicates prostatic or urethral disease.

Tests for blood

The haematuria (passage of intact RBCs in urine) and haemoglobinuria (passage of free haemoglobin in urine) give positive tests for blood in the urine, hence, can only be differentiated by presence of RBCs in urine on microscopy in haematuria not in haemoglobinuria.

Reagent strips: The blood in urine is quickly tested in bed-side laboratory by reagent strips. The reaction is based on *haemoglobin* or *myoglobin* which produces a patchy discolouration. *False-positive* results may be produced by



Figs 14.10A and B: Haematuria (A) causes and sites (diagram), (B) Urinary bag contains urine mixed with blood, collected from a patient suffering from haematuria

stale or infected urine because peroxides are produced by proliferating bacteria in the urine. Similarly presence of other oxidants (e.g. sodium hypochlorite or antiseptic solution) may also give false-positive results. Other pigments i.e. haemoglobin and myoglobin also produce false positive results. Reducing agents (e.g. Vit. C) may give *false-negative* results. Therefore, one must test the freshly voided urine for blood.

Clinical significance

- Menstrual bleeding is the most common cause of blood in the urine, hence, non-menstrual fresh urine should be examined if some renal disorder is suspected.

- ii. Microscopic examination of urine for RBCs not only separates haematuria from haemoglobinuria but also points to the site of injury i.e. RBCs in glomerular diseases are distorted because they pass through the tubules while they are undistorted if bleeding is from lower urinary tract.

Haemoglobinuria may occur;

- Following strenuous exercise in normal persons.
- Haemolysis due to any cause (Fig. 14.11)

Myoglobinuria can occur due to;

- Strenuous exercise.
- Crush injuries damaging the muscles.
- Metabolic myopathies.

- iii. Urine containing blood or haemoglobin invariably contains some protein usually in trace amounts that does not exceed 0.5 g/L in any case. This should be kept in mind in patients with haematuria.

Sugars in urine

The kidneys retain certain useful substances i.e. fats, proteins and glucose by maintaining threshold called *renal threshold* for that specific substance. The substance will appear in the urine if its concentration exceeds its renal threshold, for example, glucose appears in the urine when its plasma concentration exceeds 180 mg% (renal threshold for glucose).

Presence of glucose in the urine is called *glycosuria*, which may result from raised blood glucose levels (*diabetes mellitus*), defective renal tubular reabsorption (*renal glucosuria*) or GI tract disorders (*alimentary glucosuria*).



Fig. 14.11: Haemoglobinuria: Black-brown colouration of urine due to haemoglobinuria. The sample was taken from a patient with black-water fever (Falciparum infection). Urine was positive for haemoglobin

Several reducing sugars i.e. glucose (most common and important), lactose, fructose, pentose and galactose may be found in the urine and may give positive result with Benedict's reagent or clinitest. *Lactosuria* occurs in late pregnancy, and during lactation. *Pentosuria* may be caused by eating large quantities of certain fruits such as *plums, cherries and grapes*. Galactosuria and fructosuria occur usually due to a rare inborn error of metabolism.

NB: Sucrose is not a reducing sugar, hence, deliberate loading the urine (foul-play) with this substance does not produce positive clinitest but only raises the specific gravity of the urine—a diagnostic clue.

Reducing substances other than sugars, if found in the urine, may give *false positive results*. These include homogentisic acid (present in alkaptonuria – a rare disorder), ascorbic acid (vitamin C), cephalosporins, nalidixic acid, probenecid or aspirin used for treatment.

Tests for reducing sugars

Reagent strips. These strips tests are specific for glucose, and non-glucose reducing sugars give negative results. False positive reactions may be given by strong oxidising agents (e.g. hypochlorite, antiseptics, bleaches and detergents) and reducing agent (ascorbic acid).

Clinitest and Benedict's test. The clinitest is a convenient modification of Benedict's test (a solution) in a tablet form. It is nonspecific and less sensitive for glucose than the reagent strips.

Tests for ketones

Ketonuria: Ketones (e.g. acetoacetic acid and acetone) may appear in the urine of patients with severe diabetes mellitus (more common in type I than type 2), following starvation (starvation ketosis), or prolonged vomiting, diarrhoea and alcoholism.

Reagent strips. These utilise a modification of Rothera's nitroprusside test and are semi-quantitative. A *mauve* colour denotes the presence of acetoacetic acid. Acetone and hydroxybutyric acid do not react in this test.

False-positive results will occur if urine contains; bromsulphalein, phenylketones, benzopyridines and metabolites of L-dopa

Acetest. This is a modification of Rothera's test.

Gerhardt test (Ferric chloride test). Severe ketonuria is implied if this test is positive.

Remember that the urine must be fresh and unboiled when used for testing for ketones because acetoacetic acid (a ketone body) is easily decomposed by proliferating microorganism or heat.

Tests for bilirubin and bile pigments

Bile pigments: Bile pigments are passed in the urine in a patient suffering from jaundice, make the urine yellowish or brownish in colour and shaking the test tube containing urine may yield the formation of a stable yellow froth.

Bilirubin. It is an end-product of haem metabolism. It is conjugated in the liver by an enzyme *glucoronyl transferase*. The unconjugated bilirubin is fat-soluble, strongly bound to protein and is not excreted in the urine. Unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia is a characteristic feature of haemolytic process. On the other hand, conjugated bilirubin is water soluble, less bound to albumin and can be excreted in the urine.

The bilirubinuria in a patient with jaundice suggests either hepatocellular damage or obstructive jaundice. This could also be due to congenital hyperbilirubinaemia with bilirubinuria (*Dubin-Johnson syndrome*).

1. *Ictotest*. This is based on coupling of bilirubin with a diazonium salt.
2. *Reagent strips*. These are less sensitive than *ictotest*.

NB: Chlorpromazine or phenopyridine in the urine may give a false-positive result in both strips and tablet tests; while ascorbic acid gives false negative results.

Urobilinogen and urobilin: Urobilinogen is formed in the intestine by the action of intestinal bacteria on bilirubin excreted by the liver into the intestine. Some of the urobilinogen formed enters into the enterohepatic circulation to be transported to the liver for excretion again, while a small amount reaches the systemic circulation to be excreted in the urine. The colourless urobilinogen gets oxidised to urobilin on standing and imparts normal light yellow colour to the urine. Urine becomes deep-yellow or orange coloured if urobilinogen is passed in excessive amount as in a patient with haemolytic jaundice.

Urobilinogenuria in a patient without jaundice imply that urobilinogen is being formed in large amount and normal liver is unable to cope with it or that a damaged liver is unable to excrete the normal amount of urobilinogen being presented to the liver via enterohepatic circulation as in cirrhosis or early infective hepatitis.

Presence of excessive urobilinogen in urine followed by its disappearance subsequently in a patient with infective hepatitis indicates recovery.

Ehrlich's aldehyde test and its commercial modification into reagent strips

Ehrlich's aldehyde test or reagent strips are used to test the urobilinogen in the urine. The test is performed with freshly voided urine because as already discussed, the urobilinogen gets oxidised to urobilin on standing spontaneously, and does not give the reaction.

Porphobilinogen (excreted in the urine in intermittent porphyria or certain other porphyrias) is also converted into porphobilin which on standing imparts a bragandywine or portwine colouration to the urine (Fig. 14.12), also gives positive test result (a red colour), which does not disappear with alcohol extraction.

The commercial strips also give similar results as aldehyde test for urobilinogen and porphobilinogen. The false positive (e.g. sulphonamides, salicylates) and false negative (contamination with formaline) results for urobilinogen may also be obtained by these tests.

Microscopic examination (e.g. for RBCs, WBCs, cells and casts).

The cells, and the casts may be disrupted on prolonged standing and on rapid centrifugation, hence, it is essential to examine a fresh uncentrifuged specimen for this purpose. High-power magnification is necessary to distinguish RBCs from WBCs, yeasts and small crystals. Phase contrast microscopy is used to identify the casts and to assess red cell morphology. Polarised light can be used to identify urinary crystals.

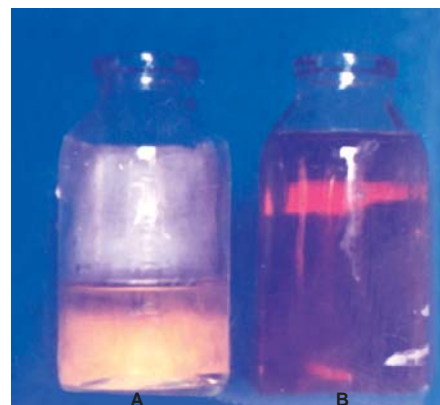


Fig. 14.12: Porphobilinogen in urine, (A) Freshly passed urine is normal in colour, (B) Dark-brown (bragandy-wine) urine on standing

Table 14.1: Various types of cells in the urine

RBCs	WBCs	Epithelial cells
RBCs in urine appear as a small (7µm approx.) rounded cells without nucleus. Dysmorphic RBCs (irregular in size and shape) indicate glomerular involvement rather than lower urinary tract. Phase - contrast microscopy is best to demonstrate them.	They are larger than RBCs and have round shape, bilobed nucleus and refractile granular cytoplasm. They are best seen in acidified urine which causes the RBCs to disintegrate. They can be differentiated from epithelial cells by phase-contrast microscopy. When numerous, they disintegrate rapidly, hence, urine should be fresh for their examination	Epithelial cells arise from the renal tubule, are larger than WBCs and have oval nuclei. They are present in urinary tract infection and to lesser extent in inflammatory conditions such as tubulointerstitial nephritis and glomerulonephritis. Transitional epithelial cells from bladder or ureters appear as large oval cells with single nucleus. Polygonal cells, sometimes in sheets, come from the urethral or vaginal secretions, if they are present in large numbers, the specimen is contaminated.
Normal urine contains not more than 3 RBCs/mm ³ of uncentrifuged urine or less than 1 per high power field of centrifuged urine	More than 3 cell/mm ³ in men are abnormal. In women, 10 cells/mm ³ in uncentrifuged mid-stream urine is abnormal and 3 to 10 cells/mm ³ are of doubtful significance	
Red cells may be confused with oil droplets (catheter lubricant) but latter are variable in size, have high refractile index and are more circular than RBCs. Yeast cells can be differentiated from RBCs by variability in the size and presence of budding forms.	Increased excretion of WBCs in urine indicates either active urinary tract infection for which urine should be cultured for confirmation. However sterile pyuria (pus cells are present in urine but culture is sterile) indicates either tuberculosis of the kidney or patient is of UTI on antibiotic therapy. A commercial strip test is also available which becomes positive if urine contains 10 or more cells/mm ³ . False positive (nitrofurantoin) and false negative (high specific gravity, glycosuria, and presence of tetracyclines, cephalosporins and oxalic acid) results are common with these strips.	
	Mid-stream sample showing pyuria indicates urethritis or prostatitis.	

Cells

Abnormal cellular elements in the urine are described in the Table 14.1.

Casts

These are cylindrical structures formed in the renal tubules.

Hyaline casts. These are relatively clear, homogenous cylindrical structures formed by the precipitation of Tamm-Horsfall mucoproteins in the renal tubules. It is unusual to see more than one cast per low-power field in health. A large number of them are seen;

- Following strenuous exercise
- In febrile illnesses
- In severe essential hypertension
- In chronic renal disease.

RBCs, WBCs and epithelial casts: These are formed by the precipitation of the tubular (mucoproteins) on the cells from which they derive their names, i.e. RBC cast (precipitation of protein on RBC), WBC cast (precipitation of protein on WBC) and epithelial casts (precipitation of protein on epithelial cells).

RBCs casts (Fig. 14.13) indicate haematuria of glomerular origin and are most often seen in acute glomerular disease such as diffuse proliferative glomerulonephritis.

WBC casts indicate acute renal infection or inflammation, are most often seen in acute pyelonephritis.

Granular casts. These are hyaline casts which in addition contain granules of albumin and immunoglobulins. They may also contain disintegrated

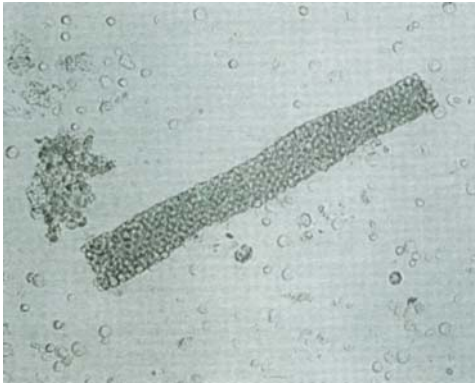


Fig. 14.13: Red cells (RBCs) casts in the urine. Note the red cells aggregation as a cast of the tubule

cellular debris to varying degrees in the form of fine or coarse granules (granular and cellular casts). They are pathological and found in glomerulonephritis, hypertension, diabetic nephropathy.

Very broad casts (*renal failure casts*) are nothing but hyaline or granular casts formed in large dilated surviving tubules of the kidney, hence, are so shaped and named.

Casts are easily missed if microscopic illumination is too bright and they disintegrate if the urine has been centrifuged too rapidly or for too long. They should be looked for towards the edges of the coverslip.

Crystals

These will form in any urine if left to stand for more than an hour. Crystals in fresh urine may indicate disease. Alkaline urine often contains 'coffin-lid' shaped crystals of ammonium magnesium phosphate (triple phosphate). Conversely an acidic urine may show envelop-shape crystals of calcium oxalate. Uric acid crystals occur in normal urine and may crystallize out in various shapes. Crystals are usually of no pathological significance unless passed in large numbers. Occasionally they may be of diagnostic importance i.e. urate crystals in gout or urate nephropathy, oxalate crystals in hyperoxaluric stone disease, cysteine crystals in cystinuria.

Micro-organisms

Bacteria, if motile, may be seen under high-power in uncentrifuged and unstained urine but are easily seen in Gram-stained centrifuged specimen. Their presence indicate that the urine is infected.

Trichomonas vaginalis (a pear-shaped or round parasite about twice the size of WBC with a unipolar flagellae) may be seen in the urine of woman either as a contamination of urine with vaginal secretion or due to

trichomonas vaginitis in patients with uncontrolled diabetes. Yeasts may also contaminate urine.

Ova of *Schistosoma haematobium* are best looked for in the last few millimeters of a stream of urine passed in 'mid-morning'. A spine projects at one pole of the ova. The ova of *S. mansoni* are less often found in the urine.

Microbiological examination

Urine for culture: For all suspected bacterial infection, a fresh, clean-voided mid-stream urine sample is most suitable for culture. The method of collection of mid-stream urine sample is given in the Box 14.7.

Box 14.7: COLLECTION OF MID-STREAM SAMPLE OF URINE IN FEMALE

In female

- The patient's bladder should be full
- The patient removes undergarments and stands over the toilet pan
- The labia are separated with the left hand
- The vulva is cleansed front to back with sterile swabs
- The patient voids downward into the toilet and continues until "half-done"
- Without stopping the urine flow, the sterile container is plunged into the stream of the urine with right hand
- Collect about 10 ml of urine
- The patient then completes voiding into the toilet.

In male

- The patient bladder should be full
- The foreskin (prepuce), if present, should be retracted
- The glans is cleansed with a sterile swab
- The patient voids into the toilet until "half-done"
- Without stopping the urine flow, the sterile container is plunged into the stream of urine to collect about 10 ml of urine
- The patients then completes the process of passage of urine

NB: The most satisfactory sample for culture is the first one collected after arising from the sleep because the bacteria in the bladder at night have sufficient time to multiply undisturbed for several hours. Urine should either be cultured within 2 hours of collection, or refrigerated at 4°C immediately in order to prevent contamination, if delay in transportation to the laboratory is anticipated.

In conscious patients or patients with retention of urine, a catheterised sample should be cultured quantitatively.

Occasionally, it may be important to obtain a sample free from urethral contamination. This is obtained by suprapubic aspiration of urine by inserting a sterile needle in suprapubic region after shaving and cleaning the skin with swabs soaked in water. Needle aspiration is to be attempted after confirming the distension of bladder by percussion.

Bacteriuria: In general, the findings of more than 10^5 bacteria/ml or 10^8 bacteria/L in a mid-stream sample of urine indicates urinary tract infection. However, contamination can also lead to high bacterial counts which should, therefore, be interpreted with caution in the absence of pyuria. Sometimes, lower counts may be encountered in urinary tract infection in patients passing large amount of urine. Lower bacterial counts may also be encountered in the patients with urinary tract infection receiving antibiotic therapy.

Bacterial count of 10^2 - 10^4 /ml in urine is of no clinical significance in asymptomatic women

Usually, the urine becomes infected with only one species or serotype of bacteria, hence, detection of more than one kind of bacteria or serotypes indicate contamination, but this is not a rule. In doubtful cases, a suprapubic aspirate may be cultured.

Blood biochemistry

- A. **Urea:** The concentration of urea in the blood depends on a balance between its production in the liver from ammonia, and its excretion by the kidneys. Its level varies with the protein intake, may be raised in catabolic state such as fever and GI haemorrhage. In spite of so many factors that influence urea level, still it is used as an indicator of renal function and high levels correlate fairly well with the clinical syndrome of uraemia. Normal blood urea is 15-40 mg/dl (2.5-6.6 mmol/L).
- B. **Creatinine.** It is derived mainly from the endogenous sources. Its blood concentration correlates well with the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) because it is neither secreted nor reabsorbed in the tubules. Therefore, creatinine clearance rate is actually the GFR. The normal serum creatinine level is 0.7-1.4 mg/dl (62-124 mmol/L). However, in patients with severe renal failure, a small change in GFR causes a large rise in blood urea and creatinine levels (Fig. 14.14).

Renal clearance or glomerular filtration: GFR is calculated by creatinine clearance by collecting 24 hours urine sample and a blood sample at the end of collection. Reduction in GFR parallels reduction in renal functions.

$$\text{GFR in ml/minute} = \frac{\text{Urinary creatinine (U)} \times \text{Volume of urine (V)} \div 1440}{\text{plasma creatinine (P)}}$$

Radiology and Renal imaging

Plain radiograph of abdomen is done to detect radiopaque stones (Fig. 14.15) or areas of calcification within the

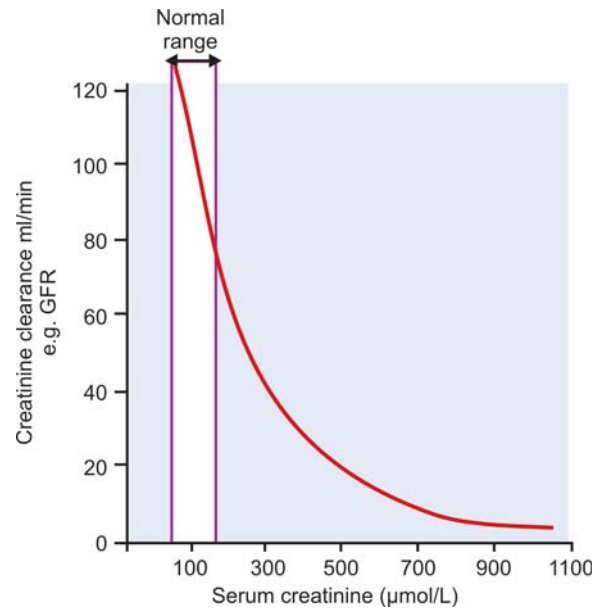


Fig. 14.14: Creatinine clearance curve. Note that serum creatinine does not rise above the normal range until the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) falls below 50-60%

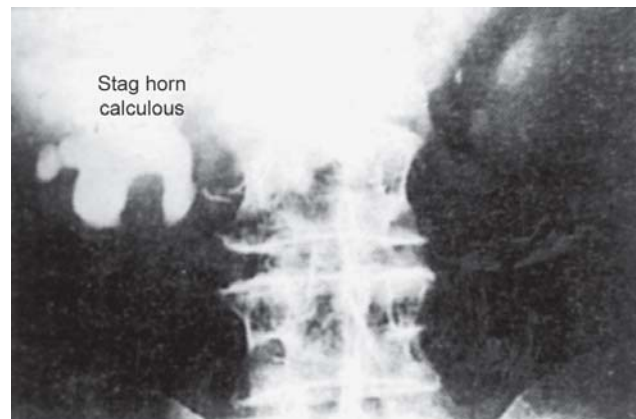


Fig. 14.15: Plain X-ray abdomen showing a stag-horn calculus

urinary tract. A radiograph from a well prepared patient gives enough idea of shape, size and position of the kidneys. This information now-a-days is best obtained by ultrasound and intravenous pyelography.

Ultrasonography: Ultrasound is a quick, non-invasive, inexpensive and harmless method employed;

1. To assess renal size, shape, position and thickness of renal cortex;
2. To detect solid tumours and their extension, cysts and polycystic disease (Fig. 14.16), stones and calculi, dilatation of pelvicalyceal system and haematoma;
3. To evaluate residual urine volume to detect bladder neck obstruction or enlargement of prostate. Prostate size, volume, mass can also be calculated.

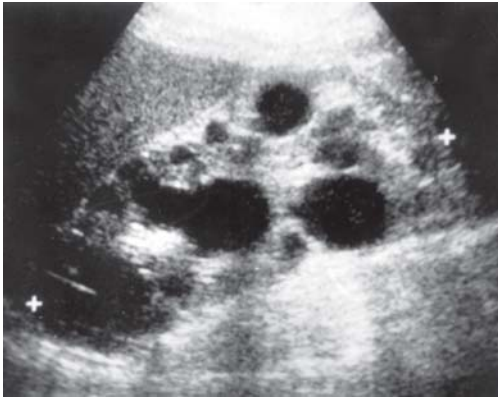


Fig. 14.16: Ultrasound of kidney showing polycystic kidney disease (multiple cysts in the kidney are seen)

4. To carry out certain procedures as cyst puncture and renal biopsy
5. To detect metastasis from renal carcinoma into the lymph nodes and liver

Intravenous pyelography: It is done by injecting a radiopaque material and following its concentration and excretion through the kidneys. Following the injection, films are taken at timed intervals. First of all, the dye is concentrated in the renal tubules increasing the radiographic density of renal parenchyma (nephrogram) by which shape and size of the kidneys can be studied. Within minutes, contrast is excreted into pelvicalyceal system and making their outlines clear to study them for any abnormality (Fig.14.17).

In adults, kidneys differ from each other by less than 1.5-2.0 cm. They have smooth texture and outline. Usually each kidney is seen to possess 2-3 major calyces, each has further 3-4 minor calyces and they give concave or cup-like opacification on intravenous pyelography.



Fig. 14.17: Normal intravenous pyelogram

Abnormalities on intravenous pyelography and their interpretations are given below:

1. Nephrogram may reveal irregular cortical scars of pyelonephritis, irregular small contracted kidneys, tumours or localised masses.
2. In diffuse renal parenchymal disease, the nephrogram will be faint and its appearance will be delayed.
3. An increased opacification of the kidney on the affected side occurs in renal artery stenosis. The affected kidney is smaller by more than 1.5 cm from the opposite kidney.
4. Clubbed or dilated calyces with slow excretion of the dye indicates urinary tract obstruction and hydronephrosis (Fig.14.18).
5. Bilateral kidneys enlargement with stretched and spidery calyces indicate polycystic disease of kidneys.
6. Non-opacification of one kidney by the contrast medium indicates non-functioning kidney.

Micturating cystogram: It is done in children to reveal abnormalities of bladder outflow tract and to find out vesico-ureteric reflux (Fig. 14.19).

Renal angiogram: It is used to demonstrate the anatomy of the renal arterial tree. It is useful to find out renal artery stenosis, arteriovenous malformations and persistent bleeding after trauma. Nowadays it has been superseded by ultrasound and computed tomography.

Computed tomography (CT scan): It is done to detect masses (Fig. 14.20) and cysts (Fig. 14.21) in and around the kidneys. This information obtained can be enhanced by contrast CT. Extension of renal tumours and extent of renal trauma are better assessed by it.



Fig. 14.18: Hydronephrosis of right kidney. Note the dilated renal pelvis with clubbed calyces



Fig. 14.19: Micturating cystogram showing vesicoureteric reflux. Note the distended bladder with free reflux into both the ureters

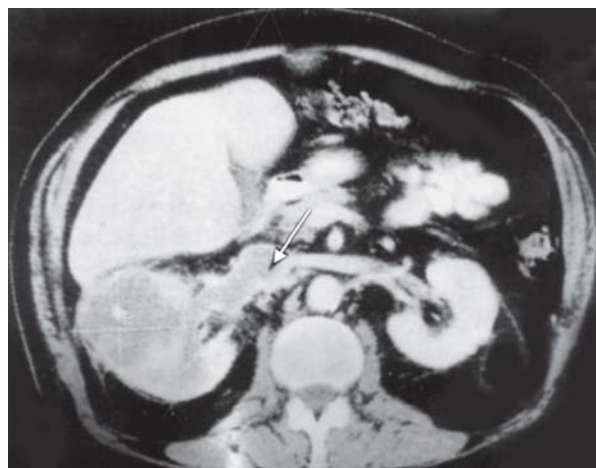


Fig. 14.20: CT scan showing renal cell carcinoma (←)

Radionuclide studies: These are carried out by injecting radio-active compounds which are concentrated and excreted by the kidneys. Radioactivity in the kidneys is recorded by gamma camera. This is also useful to define size, shape, position and function of the kidneys and to detect tumours and abscesses in the kidneys and their effect on renal functions.

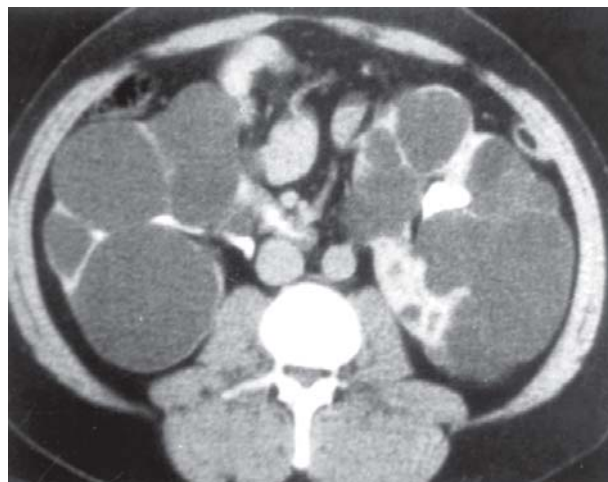


Fig. 14.21: CT scan kidney's showing bilateral multiple cysts indicating polycystic kidney disease

Renal biopsy: It is performed percutaneously by a needle (Vim Silverman's needle or trucut needle). This is useful in diagnosis of patients with proteinuria of unknown origin, an unexplained renal failure with normal sized kidneys and in systemic diseases associated with abnormal urinary constituents. The biopsy specimen is subjected to light, electron and immunofluorescence microscopic studies. This technique has increased our knowledge and better understanding of glomerular diseases (Figs 14.22 and 14.23).

Examination of genitalia

The patient is examined in a well-lit room after proper exposure. The examination includes inspection and palpation. Gloves should be worn before examination.

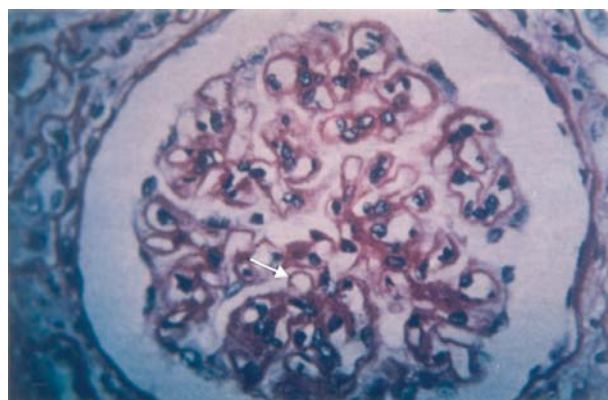


Fig. 14.22: Membranous glomerulonephritis. There is thickening of basement membrane

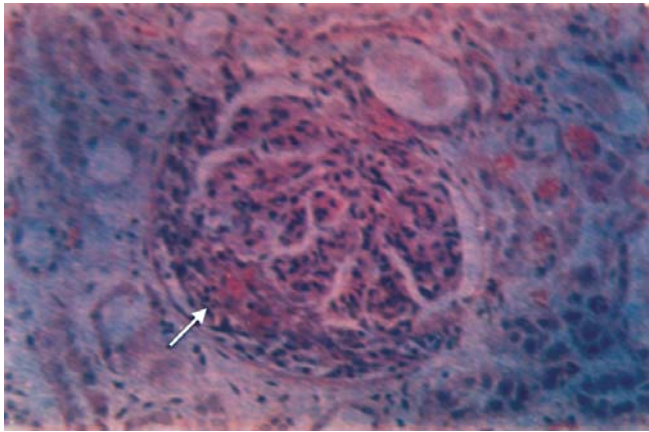


Fig. 14.23: Glomerulonephritis with crescents formation. There is an epithelial crescent at the periphery of the glomerulus

The male genitalia

The Penis

A. Inspection

Note the size of the penis, the presence or absence of the prepuce and the position of the external urethral meatus. Examine the penile shaft for warts, ulcers, burrows and excoriated papules of scabies and rashes. The abnormalities of penis are given in the Table 14.2.

Table 14.2: Abnormalities of the penis

Venereal warts (Condyloma acuminata-Fig. 14.24) Venereal warts are rapidly growing excrescences that are moist and often malodorous. They result from infection by papilloma virus

Genital herpes A cluster of small vesicles followed by painful non-indurated ulcers on red bases, suggests a herpes simplex infection. The lesion may occur anywhere on the penis.

Syphilitic chancre A syphilitic chancre (Fig. 14.25) usually appears as an oval or round, dark red painless erosion or ulcer with an indurated base. Nontender enlarged inguinal lymph nodes are typically associated. Chancres may be multiple and may become painful due to secondary infection. Chancres are infectious.

Chancroid (Fig. 14.26): It is sexually transmitted disease caused by *H. Ducreyi*, produces multiple tender ragged ulcers which bleed on manipulation.

Donovanosis (Fig. 14.27) It is called granuloma venereum inguinale a sexually transmitted disease produces a singular or multiple ulcers with granulation tissue. There is associated lymphadenopathy.

Hypospadias It is a congenital displacement of the urethral meatus to the inferior surface of the penis. A groove extends from the actual urethral meatus to its normal location on the tip of the glans.

Peyronie's disease In this disease, there are palpable non tender hard plaques just beneath the skin, usually along the dorsum of the penis. The patient complains of crooked, painful erections

Carcinoma of the penis Carcinoma may appear as an indurated nodule or ulcer that is usually nontender, common to men who are not circumcised in childhood and it may be masked by the prepuce. Any persistent penile ulcer must be suspected as malignant



Fig. 14.24: Venereal wart (condyloma acuminata)

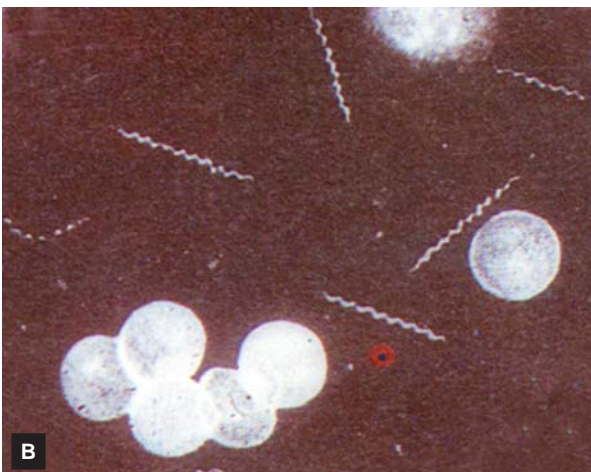


Fig. 14.25: Primary syphilis. A. Chancre on glans penis. B. Direct field microscopy of urethral discharge demonstrates the thread like *treponema pallidum*—spirochaetes. There are large number of pus cells also seen



Fig. 14.26: Chancroid. Note multiple, tender, dirty looking (ragged) ulcers which bleed on manipulation



Fig. 14.27: *Donovanosis*. Note the red ulcer with lot of granulation tissue at the base

- The prepuce (foreskin), if present, retract it or ask the patient to retract it. This step is essential for detection of many chancres and carcinoma. Smegma, a cheesy whitish material may accumulate normally under the prepuce.

Phimosis (Fig. 14.28). It refers to tight prepuce that can not be retracted over the glans.

Paraphimosis (Fig. 14.29). It refers to tight prepuce that, once retracted, can not be returned. Painful oedema of glans ensues.

- Look at the glans for any ulcer, scar, nodule or signs of inflammation.



Fig. 14.28: Balanoposthitis, phimosis. Note the Significant erythema and swelling; Foley's catheter was placed to relieve the obstruction

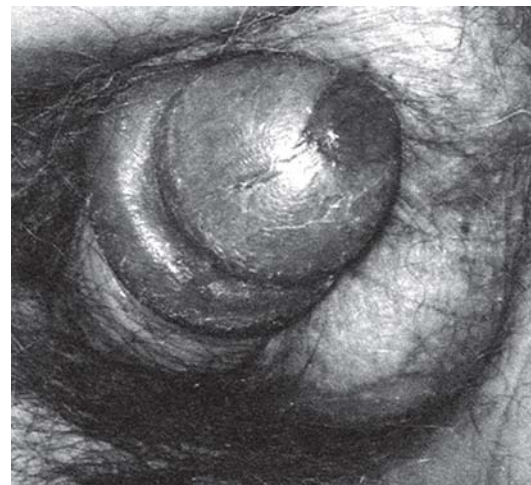


Fig. 14.29: Paraphimosis. Severe oedema of the glans as the result of retraction of a phimotic foreskin so that the glans is ischaemic

Balanitis is inflammation of the glans leading to pain and redness.

Balanoposthitis (Fig. 14.28) means inflammation of both the glans and prepuce.

- Check the skin around the base of the penis for excoriation or inflammation. Look for nits or lice at the base of the pubic hair.

Pubic or genital excoriations suggest the possibility of lice or scabies.

- Note the site of urethral meatus- normal or displaced.

Hypospadias is a congenital, ventral displacement of the meatus on the penis.

- Compress the glans gently between your index finger and the thumb. This manoeuvre will open the urethral meatus. Look at the meatus for inflammation, urethral discharge, narrowing (stricture) and warts. Normally there is no discharge per urethra.

Profuse yellow discharge occurs in gonococcal urethritis (Fig. 14.30); white or clear discharge occurs in nongonococcal urethritis. Definite diagnosis requires Gram's stain (Fig. 14.31) and culture.

- If the patient reports a discharge but you do not see any, in such a situation, ask him to strip and milch the shaft of the penis from its base to the glans. Alternatively, you can do it yourself. This manoeuvre may bring the discharge out of the meatus for examination. Have this discharge on glass slide for examination as well as for culture.



Fig. 14.30: Gonococcal urethritis. Note the thick white or creamy discharge coming out of the urethral meatus

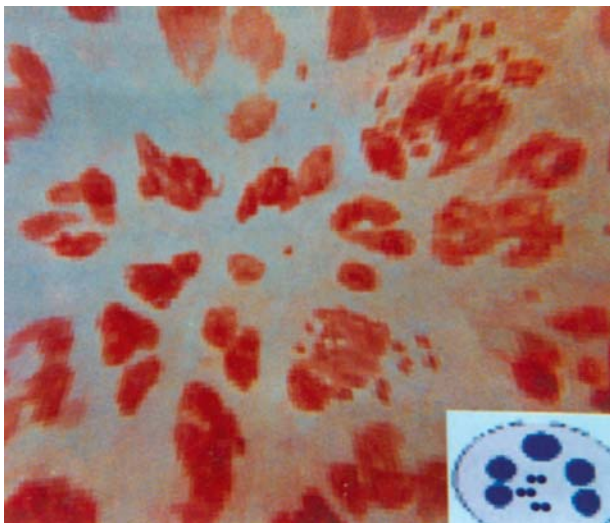


Fig. 14.31: Gram's stain of the urethral discharge showing gram-negative intracellular and extracellular diplococci (gonococci)

B. Palpation

Now palpate the penis between your thumb and first two fingers for any tenderness or induration. Palpation of the shaft may be omitted in a young asymptomatic male patient.

Induration along the ventral surface of the penis suggests a urethral stricture or possibly a carcinoma. Tenderness of penis suggests periurethral inflammation secondary to urethral stricture.

If you retract the foreskin, replace it before proceeding on to the examination of scrotum.

The scrotum and its contents

A. Inspection

Look at the scrotal skin for any redness, swelling or ulcer. Lift up the scrotum so that you can see its posterior surface.

Tiny dark red papules of angiokeratoma may be seen
Round, firm whitish nodules suggest sebaceous cysts
Scabies causes erythematous nodular lesions on the scrotum and glans penis
Ulceration can result from a gumma or from fungation of an underlying tumour of the testes.
Thickening and white scaly lesion over scrotum indicates seborrhoeic dermatitis (Fig. 14.32).

B. Palpation

The testes

Method

- Place the right hand below the scrotum and palpate both the testes separately.



Fig. 14.32: Seborrhoeic dermatitis of the scrotum



Fig. 14.33: Palpation of testis

- Now fix each testis between the hands and the fingers (Fig. 14.33); support the posterior aspect of the testis with middle, ring and index fingers of both the hands, the right hand being inferior. Palpate the anterior surface of the testis with the index finger and thumb of each hand, lateral border with index finger and medial border with the thumb.

Note the *size, shape, consistency, tenderness*. Feel for any nodules or irregularities. Pressure on the testis normally produces a deep visceral pain.

- Now gently palpate the upper pole of the testis by approximating the index finger and the thumb of the left hand, pushing the testis inferiorly.
- Next move the testis upwards by reversing the movements of the hands and gently approximating the index finger and the thumb of the right hand. This will allow you to palpate the lower pole of testis.

Normal testes are equal in size, varying between 3.5 to 4 cm in length, soft in consistency.

The epididymis and spermatic cord

- Palpate the epididymis at the upper pole of the testis posteriorly. The head is felt between the left thumb anteriorly and the index and middle fingers posteriorly. It is soft and nodular structure of about 1 cm in length.
- Palpate the tail of epididymis at the inferior pole of the testis. It is felt between the thumb and fingers of the right hand. The tail is also soft, coiled tubular structure.

Note: Occasionally epididymis may be situated anteriorly.

- Finally palpate the spermatic cord with the left hand. Then exert gentle downward traction on the testis by placing the fingers of right hand behind the scrotum and the thumb placed anteriorly. Palpate the spermatic



Fig. 14.34: Palpation of spermatic cord

cord including the vas deferens inside it between your thumb and fingers of the left hand from the epididymis to the superficial inguinal ring (Fig. 14.34). Note any nodules or swelling.

The vas deferens feels like a thick piece of string inside the spermatic cord

- Repeat the process on the other side to palpate epididymus and spermatic cord of other side.

Transillumination test (Fig. 14.35). Any swelling in the scrotum other than the testicles can be evaluated by transillumination. After darkening the room, shine the beam of a strong flashlight from behind the scrotum through the mass. Look for transillumination of light across the mass as a red glow.

In cystic swellings or swellings containing fluid as in hydrocoele, the transillumination test is positive; while in swellings containing blood or tissue, such as normal testis, a tumour or most hernias, the test is negative



Fig. 14.35: Transillumination test in a patient with hydrocoele. The test is positive

Abnormalities of scrotum and its contents (Table 14.3)

Table 14.3: Abnormalities of the scrotum and its contents

Hydrocoele (Fig. 14.36B)

A hydrocoele is a nontender, fluid filled mass within tunica vaginalis. It transilluminates and the examining fingers can get above the mass within the scrotum. Hydrocoele may be unilateral or bilateral

Spermatocele or cyst of epididymus (Fig. 14.36C)

A painless moveable cystic swelling in the epididymus above the testis may be spermatocele or other cyst. Both transilluminate; are prone to infection often in association with urinary tract infection. Spermatocele contains sperms. Both are indistinguishable

Scrotal hernia

A hernia within the scrotum is an indirect inguinal hernia. It comes through the external inguinal ring, so, the examining fingers can not get above the mass

Orchitis or epididymo-orchitis (Fig. 14.36D)

In orchitis, the testis is acutely inflamed, painful, tender and swollen. It may be difficult to distinguish it from epididymitis. In epididymitis, the epididymus is inflamed, tender and painful. The scrotum may be reddened. It may be unilateral or bilateral, commonly seen in mumps and tuberculosis

Tumour of the testis (Fig. 14.36F)

Usually appears as a painless, firm to hard nodule within the testis, which grows and spreads to replace the entire organ. The testis characteristically feel heavier than normal

Varicocele (Fig. 14.36E)

Varicocele refers to varicose veins of the spermatic cord, usually found on the left. It feels like a soft "bag of worms" separate from the testis, and slowly collapses when the scrotum is elevated in the supine position. Infertility may be associated

Small testis (Fig. 14.37)

In adults, the length of testis is usually 3.5-4 cm. In *Klinefelter's syndrome*, the testes are small (<2 cm) and firm. Small soft testes suggesting atrophy are seen in cirrhosis, dystrophic myotonia, use of oestrogens, hypogonadism and hypopituitarism

Cryptorchidism (Fig. 14.38)

In cryptorchidism, the testis is atrophied and may lie in the inguinal canal or the abdomen, resulting in an undeveloped scrotum. There is no palpable testis and epididymus in scrotum. Cryptorchidism markedly raises the risk of testicular cancer

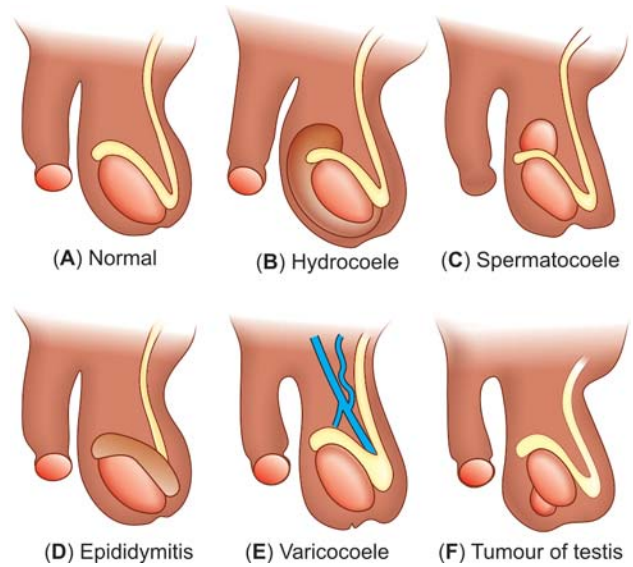


Fig. 14.36: Differential diagnosis of scrotal swelling
(Read the Table 14.3)



Fig. 14.37: Small testes in a patient with Klinefelter's syndrome.
Note the gynaecomastia and scanty pubic hair



Fig. 14.38: Cryptorchidism. Note the empty scrotum on the right side

Female genitalia

Vaginal examination is not a routine. An informed consent and presence of a female attendant is mandatory during the examination. The vaginal examination should be avoided if the hymen is intact (unmarried girls) particularly as the information required can be gathered by digital examination of the rectum. Vaginal examination of a minor requires a written consent of a parent or guardian.



Figs 14.39A and B: Examination of female **A External examination** **B. Internal (vaginal examination).** External genitalia. A. Labia majora. B. Labia minora. C. Clitoris. D. Urethra. E. Fourchette. F. Vagina. G. Skene's adenitis. H. Bartholin's glands. I. Anus, **Bimanual examination** : The lubricant is applied to fingers which are inserted to palpate the cervix/proximal vagina, other hand used to palpate using a "hooking" manoeuvre to feel the uterus, then left and right lower quadrant to feel the adnexa

Indications for vaginal examination

- (i) For cervical carcinoma surveillance
- (ii) Vaginal discharge

- (iii) A pelvic mass
- (iv) Symptoms of uterine prolapse
- (v) Unexplained urinary tract obstruction
- (vi) Suspected tubal pregnancy
- (vii) Postmenopausal bleeding
- (viii) Evaluation of rape victim irrespective of age.

Method

The important areas of examination are given in the Box 14.8. The tools for the examination are given in the Fig. 14.40.

Box 14.8: AREAS OF EXAMINATION	
<i>External examination (Fig. 14.39A)</i>	<i>Internal examination (Fig. 14.39B)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mons pubis • Labia majora and minora • Urethral meatus, clitoris • Vaginal introitus • Perineum 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vagina and its wall • Cervix (cervical os) • Uterus and ovaries • Pelvic muscles • Rectovaginal wall

Steps

1. Ask the patient to empty the bladder
2. Position the patient comfortably on her back, with head and shoulders slightly elevated, arms at the sides or folded across the chest to reduce tightening of the abdominal muscles, hips and knees flexed and thighs abducted.
3. Use a good source of light for illumination of the genitalia

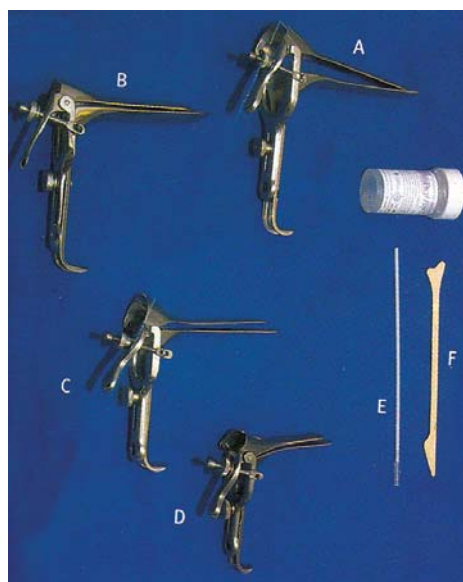


Fig. 14.40: Various tools for pelvic examination. A. Pederson's speculum (narrow bill), B. Grave's speculum (wider bill), C and D, Paediatric and adolescent specula, E. Cytobrush, F. Cervical spatula

4. Use suitable gloves and lubricate the examining fingers
5. Examine the perineum, vulva, labia majora and minora for *discharge, redness, swelling, excoriation, ulcers, (syphilitic chancre), warts (venereal warts) and other lesions (genital herpes-Fig. 14.41)*. In rape and sexual abuse cases, look for signs of trauma.



Fig. 14.41: Primary herpes genitalis. It is a sexually transmitted disease caused by herpes simplex type 2 virus (less commonly by type 1). Multiple painful small grouped vesicles are present in the labia majora in females giving appearance of a white plaque

Excoriation or itchy, small red maculopapules suggest pediculosis pubis.

- Look for nits or lice at the bases of pubic hair.

Redness and swelling of the vulva with excoriation is seen in vaginal thrush and trichomoniasis

Condyloma lata e.g. papular lesions in intertriginous areas may erode to form lesions (Fig. 14.42) in secondary syphilis.

Pearly white umbilicated papules around the anogenital region are seen in molluscum contagiosum (Fig. 14.43).

- Separate the labia minora with the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, bringing into view the clitoris anteriorly, then the urethra, the vagina and the anus posteriorly.

Clitormegaly occurs in masculinizing conditions

- Inspect for any evidence of *discharge, ulceration, tumour or abnormalities of Bartholin's glands* (normally they are not felt).



Fig. 14.42: Secondary syphilis. Note the condyloma lata in the intertriginous areas as papules eroding the skin. Mucocutaneous lesions are characteristic of secondary syphilis



Fig. 14.43: Molluscum contagiosum is caused by molluscum contagiosum virus may spread by endogenously from the GI tract in immunocompromised patients or sexually transmitted from one partner to other. It produces pearly white umbilicated papules

Urethral caruncle is a small, red benign tumour visible at the urethral meatus

Prolapsed urethral mucosa forms a red swollen ring around the urethral meatus

Bartholin's gland abscess (Fig. 14.44) is acutely formed hot, tender swelling caused by its infection with gonococci, chlamydia trachomatis etc. Look for the evidence of pus coming out of the duct or erythema around the duct opening



Fig. 14.44: Bartholine's gland abscess

- Inspect the vaginal walls for any *bulge* or *swelling* or *prolapse* by asking the patient to strain down and then to cough.
- Note the position and degree of any vaginal prolapse and the occurrence of any involuntary urinary incontinence on coughing.

A cystocele is a bulge of the anterior vaginal wall together with bladder above it and results from weakened supporting tissues. The upper two thirds of the vaginal wall is involved.

A cystourethrocele is a bulge that involves the entire anterior vaginal wall together with the bladder and the urethra. A groove sometimes defines the border between urethrocele and cystocele, but not always present.

A rectocele is a herniation of the rectum into the posterior wall of the vagina resulting from a weakness or defect in the endopelvic fascia

- Insert the index and middle finger of the right hand into the vagina and rotate the palm-upwards. Use only one finger if vaginismus (spasm of the vaginal muscles) or atrophic vaginitis makes the examination painful.
- Palpate the cervix and note any *tenderness* on movements of the cervix.

Normal cervix points downwards and slightly backwards and feels like the tip of the nose

- Now perform bimanual palpation (Fig. 14.39B) to identify the uterus between the hands and note its characteristics (*size, position, surface*). For this put two

fingers in the anterior fornix, place the left hand flat on the abdomen above the pubis.

Abnormalities of the uterus

Uterine fibroids

Myomas of the uterus (fibroids) are benign tumours, may be single or multiple, project from the surface as a swelling or swellings (nodules) which are firm and irregular in outline. Occasionally, a myoma projecting laterally may be confused with an ovarian tumour, a nodule projecting posteriorly can be mistaken for a retroflexed uterus. Submucous myoma project towards the endometrial cavity.

Uterine prolapse

Prolapse of the uterus occurs due to weakness of pelvic floor muscles, and is often associated with a cystocele and rectocele. In progressive stages, uterus becomes retroverted and descends down into the vaginal canal to the outside.

In first degree prolapse, the cervix is still well within vagina.

In second degree, cervix is at the introitus

In third degree prolapse (14.45), the cervix and vagina are outside the introitus.

Retroversion of the uterus

It refers to falling (tilting) backwards of the entire uterus, occurs normally in 1 out of 5 women. In mild cases, pelvic examination shows a cervix that faces forwards and uterus can not be felt by bimanual examination. In marked retroversion, the body can be felt posteriorly either through



Fig. 14.45: Uterine prolapse

the posterior fornix or through the rectum. A retroverted uterus is mobile and asymptomatic.

- If the uterus is not palpable; palpate with the fingers in the posterior fornix as uterus may be retroverted (read retroversion of the uterus).
- Palpate each lateral fornix in turn bimanually. Note any *tenderness* or *swelling* of the fallopian tubes or ovaries (Adnexal masses-Table 14.4), the bladder anteriorly and the pouch of Douglas posteriorly.

Table 14.4: Adnexal masses

1. Ovarian cysts and tumours

Ovarian cyst or a tumour presents as an adnexal mass arising from one side or both sides of pelvis, may extend out of pelvis. Cysts are smooth and compressible; while tumours are more solid and often nodular. Uncomplicated cysts and tumours are nontender. Polycystic ovarian disease (Box 14.9) is characterised by irregular menses, obesity, excessive hair growth and insulin resistance (Fig. 14.46).

2. Ruptured tubal pregnancy

A ruptured tubal pregnancy spills blood into the peritoneal cavity, causing severe abdominal pain and tenderness. Guarding and rebound tenderness are sometimes associated. A unilateral adnexal mass may be palpable and tender. Fainting, syncope, nausea, vomiting, tachycardia and shock may be associated reflecting the haemorrhage. There will be prior history of amenorrhoea or other symptoms of pregnancy.

3. Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)

PID is most often a result of sexually transmitted infection of fallopian tubes (salpingitis) or of tubes and ovaries (salpingo-oophritis). It is caused by *N. gonorrhoeae*, *chlamydia trachomatis* and other organisms. Acute disease is often associated with painful, tender adnexal masses with protective muscles spasm which usually make it impossible to demarcate them. Movement of cervix produces pain. If not treated, a tubo-ovarian abscess may ensue.

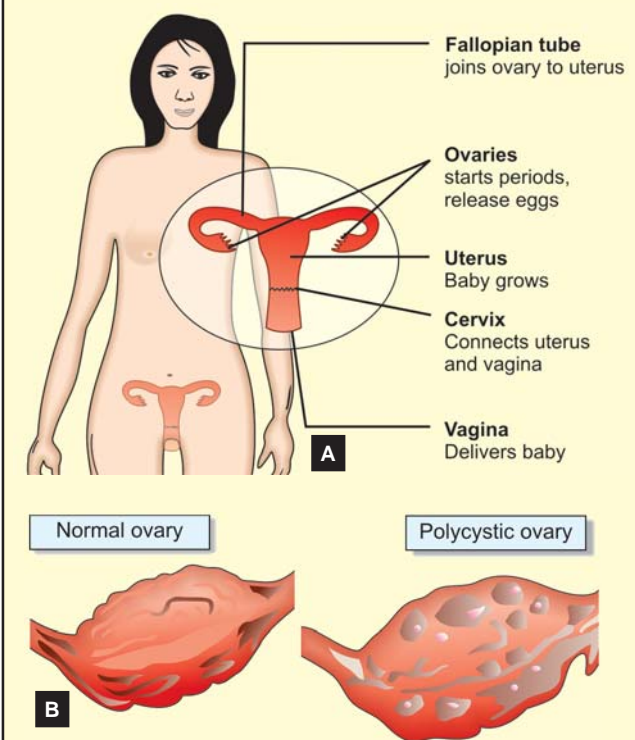
Infection of fallopian tubes and ovaries may follow delivery of a baby or gynaecological surgery

- Supplement digital examination by inspection of the vagina and cervix by a vaginal speculum.

Internal examination by a vaginal speculum and taking a cervical smear (Figs 14.47 and 14.48)

1. Gently insert a lubricated and warmed speculum into the vagina. Do not use a lubricant other than water if a cervical smear is to be taken.
2. Rotate the blades through 90° pointing the handle anteriorly if the patient is supine and posteriorly if in left lateral position.

Box 14.9: POLYCYSTIC OVARIAN SYNDROME (FIG. 14.46)



Figs 14.46A and B: Polycystic ovarian disease (diag)

Polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) is a condition most often characterised by irregular menstrual periods, excess hair growth and obesity, but it can affect women in a variety of ways. Irregular or heavy periods may signal the condition in adolescence, or PCOS may become apparent later when a woman has difficulty in becoming pregnant.

The signs and symptoms

Disruption in the reproductive cycle, which normally culminates each month with the release of an egg from an ovary (ovulation). The name polycystic ovary syndrome comes from the appearance of the ovaries in some women with the disorder — large ovaries studded with numerous cysts (polycystic). These cysts are follicles, fluid-filled sacs that contain immature eggs

Why obese women suffer from PCOS?

Many women with polycystic ovary syndrome are obese. The distribution of fat seems to affect the severity of symptoms. One study found that women who have central obesity—fat in the midsection or trunk of the body—have higher androgen, sugar and lipid levels than women who have accumulated fat in their limbs

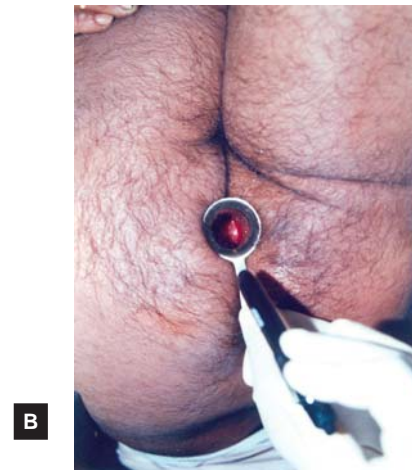
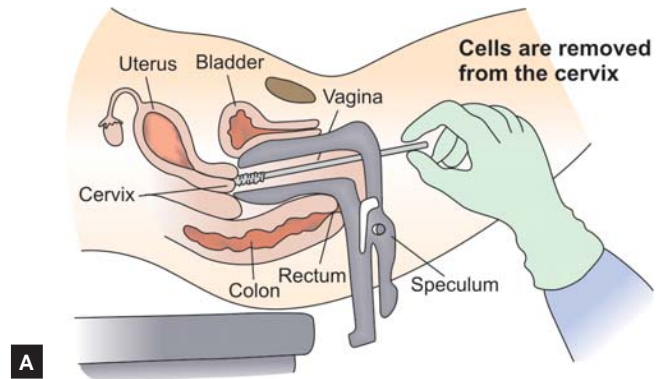
1. Women with body mass index higher than 28 kg/m² are at increased risks of PCOS and it is fast becoming the most common cause of female infertility in India.
2. Most women with PCOS have ovulatory dysfunction or absent ovulation. Weight loss through exercise is single most important counter measure against PCOS.



Fig. 14.47: Cusco's speculum used to have internal view of vagina. Rotate it to 90° to have internal view of cervix

3. Open the blades of speculum and identify the cervix (Fig. 14.47).
4. Use the notched end of the spatula and rotate through 360° to scrape off a cytological sample from the cervical os (Figs 14.48A and B).
5. Spread the smear on the glass slide and fix it immediately with 50/50 mixture of alcohol and ether.
6. Swab any discharge from the urethra, vagina and cervix. Wipe the cervix and examine it for discharge, erosion, cervicitis, warts and ulcers.
7. Send one specimen for culture. Take another smear for direct microscopy; unstained smears are helpful to confirm trichomonal infection and stained smears to confirm gonorrhoea or thrust.

Warts on the cervix appear either as flat or papilliferous lesions. Take the smear for cervical cytology to detect dysplasia



Figs 14.48A and B: A. Method of taking the papanicolaou (pap) smears, B. Cusco's speculum used to display the cervix for Pap smear as well as for examination

and cancer of the cervix. This is because there is strong association of cervical cancer with genital warts

8. Remove the speculum after completion of the examination

15

The Nervous System

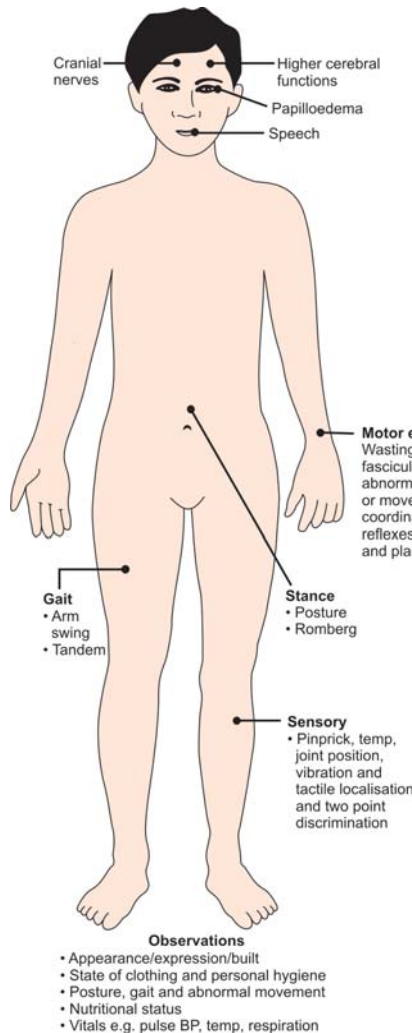
HISTORY

Symptoms (read chap. 2)

- *Symptoms of higher function* e.g. change in mood, memory, orientation, consciousness, insight etc.
- Headache-vertigo, syncope
- Stroke, epilepsy, cranial nerve palsy
- *Motor* e.g. paralysis, weakness, atrophy, involuntary movements
- *Sensory symptoms* e.g. abnormal or loss of sensations.

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- *Head and scalp* e.g. size, shape and neck stiffness.
- *The skin* e.g. naevus, haemangioma, sebaceous adenoma, bleeding spots, infection (herpes, HIV).
- *The eyes* including fundus
- *Mouth and oral cavity*
- *Ear, nose and paranasal sinus*
- *Neck* for lymph nodes, thyroid disease and carotid bruit.
- *Axillae* for lymph nodes
- *Extremities* e.g. posture, spasm, cramps, deformities, wrist and foot drop, wasting, abnormal movements, oedema.
- *Fingers and nails*
- *Back*-scoliosis, winging of scapula, tuft of hair, gibbus or spinal deformity.



FORMAT FOR THE NERVOUS SYSTEM EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Higher cerebral functions

- Appearance, mood and behaviour
- Emotional status
- Memory, intelligence
- Orientation, delusions and hallucinations
- Consciousness
- Released reflexes

Speech and language Cranial nerves (I to XII).

Motor function

- Wasting, fasciculations
- Abnormal movements
- Tone, strength (power)
- Coordination
- Reflexes (superficial, deep and plantar)

Sensory system (Sensations)

- Pinprick, light touch, temperature
- Deep touch, position, vibration, stereognosis
- Tactile localization, two-point discrimination.

Autonomic functions

- Standing test for postural hypotension
- Handgrip and Valsalva test
- Other tests

Gait and posture

- Arm swing
- Tandem (heel-toe)
- Romberg's test

Diagnostics

- Site of lesion (anatomical)
- Neurological deficit i.e. tracts involved (physiological lesion)
- Cause of the disease (Pathological lesion)

Differential diagnosis

Investigations

e.g. CSF, EEG, EMG nerve conduction, VEP and radiological (X-ray, CT scan and MRI)

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

Applied anatomy and physiology

The nervous system consists of (i) *central nervous system* (brain and the spinal cord) and (ii) *peripheral nervous system* (12 pairs of cranial nerves, spinal and peripheral nerves). Most of the peripheral nerves contain both the motor and sensory fibres.

The central nervous system

The Brain: The brain has four regions (i) the cerebrum consisting of two *cerebral hemispheres*, (ii) the *diencephalon* (thalamus and hypothalamus), (iii) the *brainstem* (midbrain, pons and medulla) and (iv) the *cerebellum* consisting of two cerebellar hemispheres connected by an isthmus. The cerebral hemispheres constitute the major bulk of the brain. Each hemisphere is subdivided into *frontal, parietal, temporal* and *occipital lobes* (Fig. 15.1).

The brain has a network of interconnecting nerve cells called *neurons*. These consists of cell bodies (*cytomes*) and their *axons*- single long fibres that conduct impulses to other parts of the nervous system.

The brain tissue consists of *gray and white matter*. The *gray matter* containing the neuronal cell bodies, constitutes a rim that runs over the surface of the cerebral hemispheres forming the cerebral cortex. *White matter* consists of neuronal axons that are coated with myelin which imparts it white colour. The myelin sheaths conduct the impulses more rapidly. Deep in the brain lie additional clusters of gray matter, the *basal ganglia* (globus pallidus, caudate nucleus, putamen, substantia nigra and subthalamic nuclei) which is concerned with movements, tone and posture, and the *thalamus* and the *hypothalamus* constituting the *diencephalon*. The thalamus receives the sensory impulses and relays them to the cerebral cortex. The hypothalamus regulates the heart rate, blood pressure, thirst, and temperature. The hypothalamus affects the

endocrine system (produces trophic hormones which stimulate the pituitary) and governs emotional behaviour such as anger and sexual drive.

Deep inside the cerebral cortex lies the *internal capsule*- a white matter structure where white myelinated fibres from all parts of cortex converge, condense and then descend into the brainstem. The brainstem connects the upper part of the brain with the spinal cord, has three structures, the midbrain, pons and the medulla. Consciousness depends on a system called *reticular activating (arousal) system* which interacts between the cerebral hemisphere and projects from the diencephalon and upper brainstem.

The *cerebellum* lies at the base of the brain, is concerned with tone, coordination of all movements and helps maintain the body upright in space.

The spinal cord: The spinal cord is a cylindrical mass of nerve tissue that runs within the bony vertebral column, extending from the medulla to the L₁ or L₂ vertebra, is surrounded or ensheathed by three meninges e.g. dura mater, arachnoid mater and pia mater from outside to inside. There is a *subarachnoid space* between the arachnoid and pia mater that contains cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

The spinal cord contains important motor and sensory nerve pathways that enter and exit the cord via posterior (sensory) and anterior (motor) nerve roots and spinal and peripheral nerves. The spinal cord also mediates reflex activity of deep tendon reflexes (spinal reflex arc). Motor and sensory systems are further discussed separately.

The five spinal cord regions (Fig. 15.2) and the nerve roots contained are:

1. Cervical (C₁-C₈)
2. Thoracic (T₁-T₁₂)
3. Lumbar (L₁-L₅)
4. Sacral (S₁-S₅)
5. Coccygeal

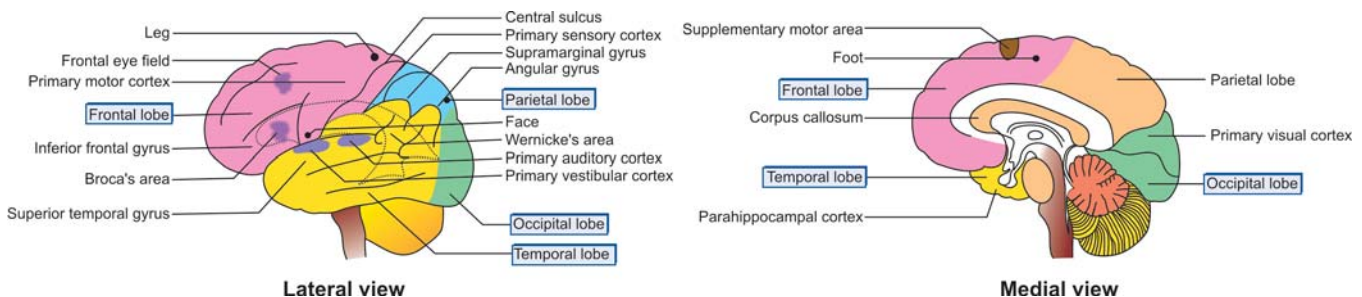


Fig. 15.1: Major areas and divisions of the brain (lateral and medial view)

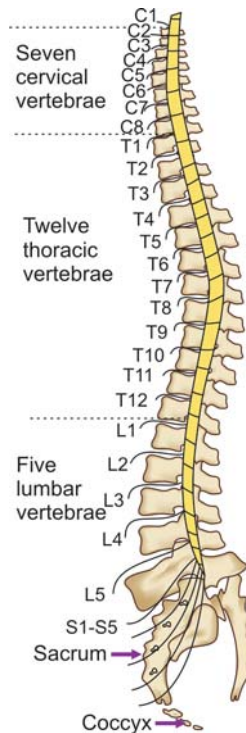


Fig. 15.2: The spinal cord, and its segments (lateral view)

Remember that the spinal cord is not as long as the vertebral column. The levels of nerve roots exiting the cord do not correspond with their vertebral levels. The lumbar and sacral roots travel the longest intraspinal distance. These roots fan out like a tail of the horse at L₁-L₂ giving rise to the term *cauda equina*.

Peripheral nervous system

The cranial nerves

Twelve pairs of cranial nerves emerge from within the skull, cranial nerves III through XII arise from the brain stem as follows.

- III and IV from midbrain
- V through VIII from pons
- IX through XII from medulla

Cranial nerves I and II are actually fibre tracts emerging from the brain. Some cranial nerves are motor, some are sensory and rest are mixed as follows;

Sensory cranial nerves- I, II and VIII

Motor cranial nerves- III, IV, VI, XI, XII

Mixed e.g. V, VII, IX, X.

The functions of the cranial nerves most relevant to physical examination are summarised in the Box 15.1.

Box 15.1:

CRANIAL NERVES AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

No.	Name	Function
I	Olfactory	Sense of smell
II	Optic	Vision
III	Oculomotor	Pupillary constriction, opening the eye, and most extraocular movements
IV	Trochlear	Downward and inward movement of the eye
V	Trigeminal	1. Motor- temporal and masseter muscles (jaw clenching), also lateral movement of the jaw 2. Sensory- the face through three divisions; <i>ophthalmic</i> , <i>maxillary</i> and <i>mandibular</i>
VI	Abducens	Lateral deviation of the eye
VII	Facial	Motor- facial movements including those of facial expression, closing the eye, and closing the mouth Sensory- taste on the anterior two-thirds of the tongue
VIII	Vestibulocochlear	Hearing (cochlear division) and balance (vestibular division)
IX	Glossopharyngeal	Motor- pharynx Sensory- posterior portion of ear canal, the pharynx and the posterior third of the tongue including taste
X	Vagus	Motor- palate, pharynx and larynx Sensory- pharynx and larynx
XI	Spinal accessory	Motor- the sternomastoid and upper part of trapezius
XII	Hypoglossal	Motor- tongue

The peripheral nerves

In addition to cranial nerves, the peripheral nervous system also includes spinal and peripheral nerves that carry impulses to and from the cord. Thirty-one pairs of nerves attach to the spinal cord; 8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral and 1 coccygeal. Each nerve has an anterior motor root and posterior sensory root containing sensory fibres. The posterior root has a dorsal ganglion. The anterior and posterior roots unite to form a spinal nerve. Spinal nerve fibres comingle with similar fibres from other levels to form peripheral nerves. Most peripheral nerves contain both sensory (afferent) and motor (efferent) fibres.

Like the brain, the spinal cord has an inner H-shaped core of gray matter and outer white matter (Fig. 15.3). Nuclei of gray matter containing the nerve cells bodies are surrounded by white tracts of nerve fibres connecting the brain to the peripheral nervous system.

The motor system

The motor system consists of (i) *pyramidal system* (upper motor neurons), (ii) the *basal ganglia* (extrapyramidal system), (iii) the *cerebellum* and (iv) *neuromuscular system* (lower motor neurons).

The normal motor pathways contain upper motor *neurons* that synapse in the brainstem and spinal cord with lower motor neurons. The nerve cell bodies of upper motor neurons (UMNs) lie in the precentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex and in several brainstem nuclei, their axons synapse with motor nuclei in the brainstem (cranial nerves nuclei) and in the spinal cord (peripheral nerves). Lower motor neurons (LMNs) have their cell bodies in the anterior horn cells (AHC); their axons transmit impulses through the anterior roots into peripheral nerves terminating at the neuromuscular junction.

Three kinds of motor pathways imprint on the anterior horn cells; the corticospinal tract, the basal ganglia system, and the cerebellar system. There are additional pathways originating in the brainstem that mediate flexor and extensor tone in limb movement and posture, most notable in coma. All these higher motor pathways affect movement through the LMNs- so called the “final common pathway”.

The movement whether initiated voluntarily in the cortex, “automatically” in the basal ganglia or reflexly in the sensory receptors, must ultimately be translated into action via anterior horn cells. A lesion in any of the above mentioned area will affect movement or reflex activity

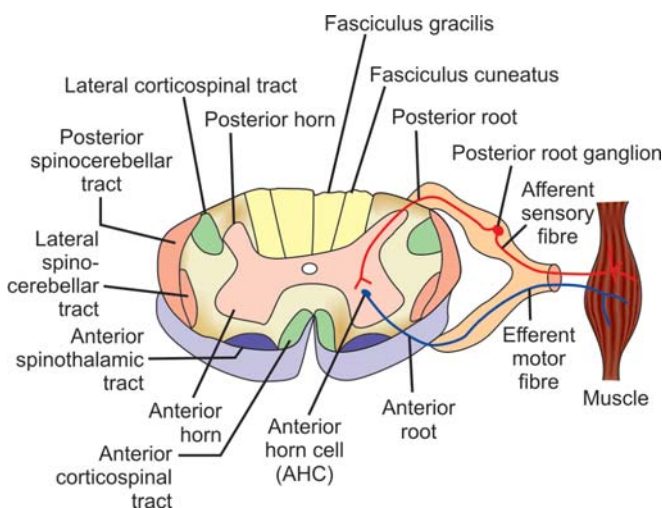


Fig. 15.3: Cross section of spinal cord

Three principal motor pathways are:

1. **The corticospinal (pyramidal) tract.** The corticospinal (pyramidal) tracts mediate voluntary movement and integrate skilled, complicated, or delicate movements of selected muscular actions and inhibit others. They also carry impulses that inhibit tone, hence, their lesion results in hypertonia. The corticospinal fibres originate in the cerebral cortex (precentral motor cortex- Fig. 15.4) pass through the corona radiata and condense in the internal capsule, pass through its posterior limb and travel down through midbrain, pons and come down into the lower medulla, where they form an anatomical structure resembling a pyramid. There most of the fibres cross to the opposite or contralateral side of the medulla, pass downwards and synapse with the anterior horn cells or with internuncial neurons. Tracts synapsing in the brainstem with motor nuclei of the cranial nerves are termed *corticobulbar fibres (tract)*.
2. **The basal ganglia system.** It includes motor pathways between the cerebral cortex, basal ganglia, brain stem and spinal cord. It controls tone, posture and body movements especially gross “automatic” movements such as walking.
3. **The cerebellum.** It receives both sensory and motor inputs and controls and co-ordinates the motor activity, maintains equilibrium and controls posture.

Body parts representation in motor cortex (Fig. 15.4) and internal capsule

The body parts are represented in contralateral hemisphere in a characteristic fashion i.e. lower limb occupies upper position, face occupies lower most, arm and trunk occupy middle position. The smaller parts of the body occupy a larger area. Similarly, the parts of the body capable of performing delicate movements have largest cortical representation.

In internal capsule, the representation of the parts is reversed. The upper limbs, trunk and lower limbs occupy upper, middle and lower parts of the posterior limb of the internal capsule.

Hierarchy of the motor control (Fig. 15.5)

Movement of a body part requires changes in the posture and alteration in the tone of many muscles, some quite distant from the part being moved. The motor system consists of hierarchy of control mechanisms that maintain body posture, baseline muscle tone upon which a specific movement is superimposed. The lowest order of the hierarchy lies in the gray matter of spinal

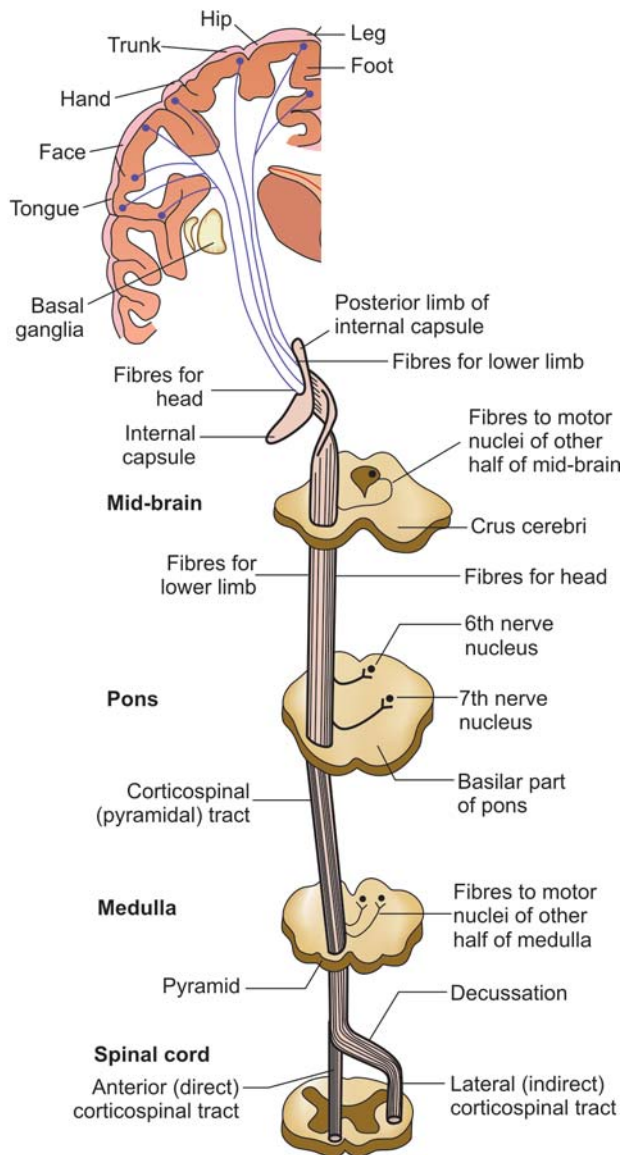


Fig. 15.4: Body parts representation of motor cortex and internal capsule. The principal motor pathway (pyramidal tract) is depicted

cord which controls the muscle tone in response to stretch and the reflex withdrawal response to noxious stimuli.

Above the spinal cord, circuits between basal ganglia and the motor cortex constitute the extrapyramidal system which controls background muscle tone and body posture, and gates the initiation of movement (Fig. 15.5).

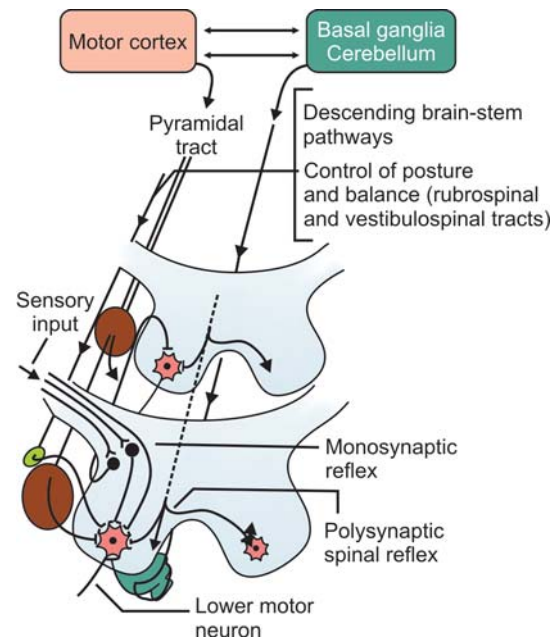


Fig. 15.5: Hierarchies of control of motor system. In addition to direct descending pathways from the cerebral motor cortex, motor neurons in the anterior horn are influenced by descending pathways controlling balance and posture as well as monosynaptic and polysynaptic spinal reflex pathways

The cerebellum coordinates the targeted movements accurately and acts as an on-line guidance computer to fine-tune goal directed movements initiated by the motor cortex. In addition, cerebellum through its reciprocal connections with the thalamus and cortex, participates in the planning and learning of skilled movements. (Fig. 15.5)

Symptomatology of motor system

1. Negative symptoms include weakness, lack of coordination, lack of stability and stiffness.
2. Positive symptoms include involuntary movements such as tremors, chorea, athetosis, hemiballismus, tics, dystonia and myoclonus. When the lower limbs are affected, characteristic pattern of gait disorder may result.

Motor system lesion (motor deficit)

- I. **Upper motor neuron (UMN) lesions.** The corticospinal tract (UMN) as the name suggests, extends from the cortex to the spinal cord, when damaged or destroyed, its functions are reduced or lost below the level of the lesion.

- When UMNs are damaged above the crossover of its tracts in the medulla, motor impairment develops on the opposite or contralateral side (contralateral hemiplegia).
- In damage below the crossover, motor impairment occurs on the same or ipsilateral side of the body (ipsilateral hemiplegia)

In upper motor neuron lesions, the spinal cord is disconnected from the modulating influence of the higher motor hierarchies, comes under the uninhibited direct influence of the spinal reflex mechanisms. The affected limbs become weak or paralysed, and show reflex patterns of movement like flexion withdrawal to noxious stimuli and spasms of extension, the skilled, complicated or delicate movements are performed especially poorly when compared to gross movements. A UMN lesion, therefore, manifests clinically:

1. Weakness of a limb or limbs (monoplegia, hemiplegia, quadriplegia or paraplegia).
2. Brisk tendon stretch reflexes and loss of superficial reflexes.
3. *Hypertonia* i.e. spastic increase in tone greater in the extensors of the lower limbs and the flexors of the upper limbs- a characteristic pattern of hemiplegia. Spasticity is 'clasp-knife' type, takes some time to develop and may not be present for weeks after the onset of an upper motor lesion (a state of spinal shock in acute UMN lesion). Spasticity will be exacerbated by increased sensory input to reflex arc, as may be caused by a bed sore or urinary tract infection in a patient with spinal cord lesion.
4. Extensor plantar responses (positive Babinski's sign).
5. The weakness is more pronounced in the extensors of the upper limbs and flexors of the lower limbs – opposite to spasticity.
6. Little or no wasting of muscles.

II. Lower motor neuron (LMN) lesions. Lower motor neuron consists of anterior horn cells, nerve roots, peripheral nerves and myoneural junctions. Groups of muscle fibres innervated by a single anterior horn cell (lower motor neuron) form a *motor unit*, hence, LMN lesions will cause loss of function of these *motor units* and muscle fibres innervated by them resulting in weakness, flaccid paralysis, atrophy and wasting the muscles, and these muscle fibres depolarise spontaneously producing fibrillations, which except in the tongue are only perceptible on EMG. Reinnervation from neighbouring intact motor

neurons may occur but the neuromuscular junctions of these so formed enlarged motor units are unstable and depolarise spontaneously causing *fasciculations* (twitches of muscles due to contraction of a muscle bundle) which are visible. *Fasciculations*, therefore, imply chronic partial denervation.

Signs of lower motor neuron lesion

- Weakness or loss of movements.
- Wasting of muscles leading to atrophy.
- Decreased tone (hypotonia-flaccid paralysis).
- Loss of tendon and superficial reflexes.
- Fasciculations.
- Contractures of muscles.
- Trophic changes in skin and nails in neuropathies.

III. Extrapyrmidal lesions. Disease of the basal ganglia or extrapyramidal system does not cause paralysis but produces an increase in tone (*rigidity* – continuous increase in tone throughout the range of movement), disturbances in posture and gait, a slowness or lack of spontaneous and automatic movements termed *bradykinesia*, and a variety of involuntary movements.

IV. Cerebellar lesions. A lesion in the cerebellar hemisphere leads to;

- (i) *Lack of co-ordination on the same side of the body.* The initial part of movement is normal but as the target is approached the accuracy of movement deteriorates resulting in "*intention tremor*". The distances of the targets, are misjudged (*dysmetria*), resulting in '*past-pointing*'. The ability to produce accurate, regularly alternating movements is impaired – called "*dysdiadochokinesis*". The jerks tends to diminish due to rigidity.
- (ii) *Impairment of gait, equilibrium and postures.* Lesions involving the cerebellar hemisphere lead to ataxic gait (patient tends to fall towards the side involved); while involvement of central vermis leads to *truncal ataxia* (patient has difficulty in sitting up, or standing).
- (iii) *Decrease in muscle tone (hypotonia)* due to involvement of red nucleus. The hypotonia combined with incoordination lead to "*pendular jerks*" in cerebellar lesions.
- (iv) *Paralysis is not a feature of cerebellar disease.*

The clinical signs of different motor system disorders are summarised in Table 15.1 and pattern of motor loss according to site of lesion is depicted in Box 15.2.

Table 15.1: Clinical signs in different motor system disorders

Sign	UMN lesion	LMN lesion	Extrapyramidal lesion	Cerebeller lesion
Power	Weak <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extensors weak in upper limbs • Flexors weak in lower limbs 	Weak	No weakness	No weakness
Wasting and atrophy	Absent	Present, after an interval	None	None
Fasciculations	None	Yes, after interval	None	None
Tone	Spasticity, clonus may be present	Flaccidity	Rigidity (Cog-wheel)	Normal/ reduced
Deep tendon reflexes	Exaggerated	Reduced/absent	Normal	Normal/pendular
Superficial reflexes	Lost	Lost	Normal	Normal
Plantar response	Extensor	Flexor	Flexor	Flexor
Coordination	Reduced due to weakness	Reduced due to weakness	Normal but slow	Impaired

Box 15.2: PATTERN OF MOTOR LOSS ACCORDING TO SITE OF THE LESION**Upper Motor Neuron Lesion**

Clinical presentation	Site
Contralateral monoplegia	• Cerebral cortex
Contralateral hemiplegia	• Corona radiata
	• Internal capsule
	• Mid brain
	• Pons
	• Upper medulla above decussation of pyramidal tracts
Ipsilateral hemiplegia	• Lower medulla below decussation
	• Unilateral spinal cord lesion above C ₅
Quadriplegia paraplegia	• Lower cervical cord below C ₅
	• Thoracic cord
	• Lumbar cord above L ₁ -L ₂
Lower motor neuron lesion	
Sites are:	
• Anterior horn cells	
• Anterior (motor) root	
• Peripheral nerves	
• Myoneural junction	
• Muscles	

Lower motor neuron lesion

- Anterior horn cells
- Anterior (motor) root
- Peripheral nerves
- Myoneural junction
- Muscles

Spinal reflex arc (Fig. 15.6)

The deep tendon or muscle stretch reflexes are relayed over structures of both the central and peripheral system. A reflex is a stereotype involuntary response that may involve as few as two neurons, one afferent (sensory) and other efferent (motor), across a single synapse. The deep tendon jerks in the arms and legs, thus, are monosynaptic reflexes. They illustrate the simplest unit of sensory and motor function.

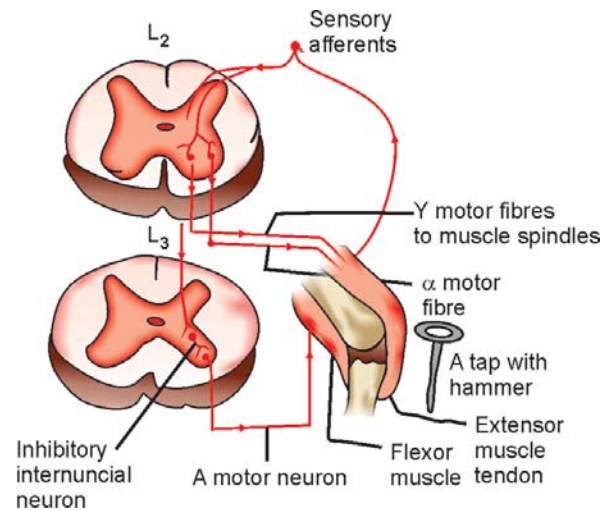


Fig. 15.6: Spinal reflex arc of knee jerk

To elicit a deep tendon reflex, briskly tap the tendon of a partially stretched muscle. For the reflex to fire, all the components of the reflex arc i.e. sensory nerve fibres, spinal cord synapse, motor nerve fibres, neuromuscular junction and muscle fibres, must be intact. Tapping the tendon activates special sensory fibres in the partially stretched muscle, triggering a sensory impulse that travels to the spinal cord via peripheral nerve. The stimulated sensory fibres synapse directly with anterior horn cells innervating the same muscle. When the impulse crosses the neuromuscular junction, the muscle suddenly contracts, completing the reflex arc.

The sensory system (Fig. 15.7)

It consists of:

1. *Sensory receptors* giving rise to sensory impulses.
2. *Sensory pathways* through which cutaneous and proprioceptive sensations are carried to sensory cortex or thalamus.

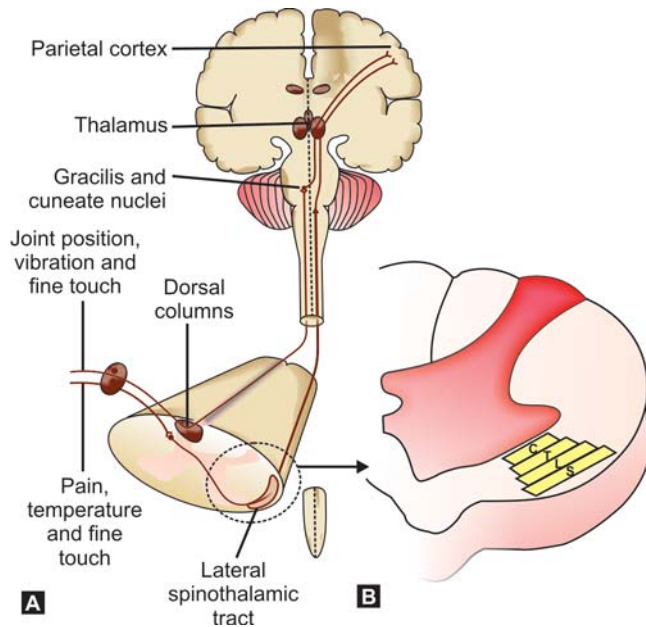


Fig. 15.7: The sensory pathways-spinothalamic tract and posterior column A. The main sensory pathways, B. Spinothalamic tract to show its layering in the cervical region. C represents fibres from cervical region, T from thoracic, L from lumbar and S from sacral region

3. *Cortical (postcentral gyrus) and subcortical (thalami) sensory centres* where they reach to conscious level, are integrated and interpreted.

Sensory impulses not only participate in reflex activity but also give rise to conscious sensation, calibrate body position in space and help regulate internal autonomic functions like blood pressure, heart rate and respiration.

A complex system of sensory receptors relays impulses from the skin, subcutaneous tissue, mucous membranes, deeper structures (muscles, tendons, joints) and viscera. Sensory fibres carrying the sensation of touch, pain, temperature, position, joint and vibration pass through the peripheral nerves and posterior (dorsal) roots and enter the spinal cord.

Diseases of the first order neuron i.e. peripheral nerves, posterior roots involve all modalities of sensation.

After they have entered the spinal cord, sensory impulses reach the sensory cortex via one of the two pathways; the *spinothalamic tracts* or *posterior columns*.

1. **The spinothalamic tracts (lateral and anterior),** Within one or two spinal segments from their entry into the spinal cord, the group of smaller, slower-conducting fibres carrying the sensation of pain, light touch and temperature pass into the posterior horn

of the spinal cord and synapse with secondary neurons. The secondary (second-order neurons) then cross to the opposite side either immediately or within a few segments up and continue into the lateral and anterior columns of the cord and ascend to the brainstem as the *lateral* and *anterior spinothalamic tracts* to reach the thalamus where they relay. The fibres from the lower parts are arranged laterally while those from the upper part move medially in these tracts.

2. **Posterior columns.** It is other group of different large-fast conducting fibres subserving the sensations of touch, position, pressure, joint and vibration that do not relay in spinal cord but pass directly into the posterior columns (tract of gracilis or cuneate) of the cord and travel upwards to the medulla together with the fibres of *fine touch* (touch concerned with localisation and discrimination). The fibres synapse in the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the caudal medulla. Fibres arising from the nuclei (secondary neuron or second order neuron) cross to the opposite side at the medullary level and continue on to the thalamus as *medial lemniscus*. Higher in the brainstem, the spinothalamic tracts and medial lemnisci are joined by second neuron fibres from cranial nerve nuclei on each side.

Remember that at any level of spinal cord, there are two groups of fibres carrying the sensations i.e. spinothalamic tract carrying sensation of pain, crude touch and temperature from the opposite side, and posterior column carrying sensation of position, fine touch, vibration, and other discriminatory sensation from the same side, therefore, a unilateral lesion of the spinal cord (Brown-Sequard syndrome) will therefore cause loss of pain and thermal sensibility below the level of the lesion on the opposite side of the body; while on the side of the lesion (ipsilateral), there is, disturbance of sense of position, movement, vibration, stereognosis and tactile localisation and discrimination.

Cortical and subcortical centres (higher centres) for sensation

At also the thalamic level (subcortical level), the general quality of sensation is perceived (e.g. pain, cold, pleasant, unpleasant) but fine distinctions are not made. It also receives sensations, from the lateral and medial geniculate bodies that are concerned with vision and hearing respectively. It also receives visceral sensations via autonomic fibres that pass along the posterior columns. For full perception, a third group of sensory

neurons (third order neuron) sends impulses from the thalamus to the sensory cortex as thalamocortical fibres.

The somatosensory centre that lies in the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex is concerned with not only perception of sensation but is able to localise, recognise the nature of stimuli applied and can discriminate between two simultaneously applied stimuli. Representation of the body parts in the sensory cortex corresponds topographically to that in the motor cortex.

- A lesion involving the sensory pathway below thalamus or in the thalamus will impair all the sensory modalities with hyperpathia (*thalamic syndromes*).
- A cortical lesion will cause loss of those sensations which reach consciousness in the cortex such as sense of position, vibration, tactile localisation and discrimination and stereognosis.

Symptomatology of sensory system

1. **Hypoaesthesia** (decreased sensation). The sensations of pain, touch and temperature are diminished when compared with normal limbs. A patient may inadvertently burn the fingers or toes if pain and temperature sensations are disturbed (for example in syringomyelia and peripheral neuropathies).
2. **Paraesthesias and dysaesthesias**. These are positive symptoms where paraesthesia denotes altered sensation perceived spontaneously (without an apparent object) and dysaesthesia refers to altered sensation elicited by touch or other stimuli. These may be in the form of pins and needles, tightness or constriction, feeling of tingling or crawling of ants, and feeling of warmth or coldness.
3. **Pain**. Pain can result from inflammation or compression of any pain sensitive structures i.e. skin, nerve root, muscle or an organ. In some diseases, such as trigeminal neuralgia (V nerve distribution), glossopharyngeal neuralgia (IX nerve distribution, post-herpetic neuralgia) and discogenic radiculopathies (compression of nerve root by disc prolapse), the description of pain and its distribution is diagnostic. In most cases, however, symptoms of pain do not conform to standard dermatomal or peripheral nerve distribution, while in some cases, pain is referred to other sites (referred pain). In thalamic infarct (a thalamic syndrome), the pain often is perceived inappropriately (e.g. touch felt as pain); this phenomenon is called *hyperpathia*. In discogenic radiculopathy the nerve root pain corresponds to the dermatome involved, increases with manoeuvres that increase intraabdominal or

intraspinous pressure such as coughing, sneezing, straining at stool, etc.

4. **Numbness**. The word '*numbness*' can have many meanings; when a patient says that a limb is *numb*, he or she may mean that the sensation in that part is abnormal but sometimes, this means weakness or heaviness to some people rather than loss of feeling.

Clinical signs/terms

- **Anaesthesia** means loss of sensation.
- **Analgesia** refers to loss of pain sensation.
- **Thermoanaesthesia** means loss of thermal sensation.
- **Hyperaesthesia** means exaggerated perception of sensation in response to mild stimuli (touch or pinprick).
- **Hyperalgesia** denotes an exaggerated response to a noxious stimulus.
- **Hyperpathia** is an inappropriate perception of sensation, encompasses all the phenomenon described such as hyperaesthesia, allodynia and hyperalgesia.
- **Allodynia** describes a phenomenon in which an ordinary nonpainful stimulus once perceived, is experienced as painful stimulus. An example is painful sensation felt during an application of vibrating tuning fork.
- **Romberg's sign**. It is an important sign of impaired sensation of position and joint sensation in the lower limbs (sensory ataxia). Normally the person does not sway on standing either with eyes closed or open, hence, Romberg's sign is negative. Positive Romberg's sign means swaying on standing with eyes closed (posterior column involvement) not on eyes open (cerebellar and labyrinthine diseases), hence, can differentiate sensory ataxia (posterior column involvement) from cerebellar ataxia.
- **Lhermitte's sign**: In a lesion of posterior column in the cervical cord, sudden flexion or extension of the neck sends an 'electric-shock' like sensation down the trunk to lower limbs. This is seen in multiple sclerosis, cervical spondylosis (spondylitic myelopathy), syringomyelia and cervical cord tumour.

Patterns of sensory disturbance

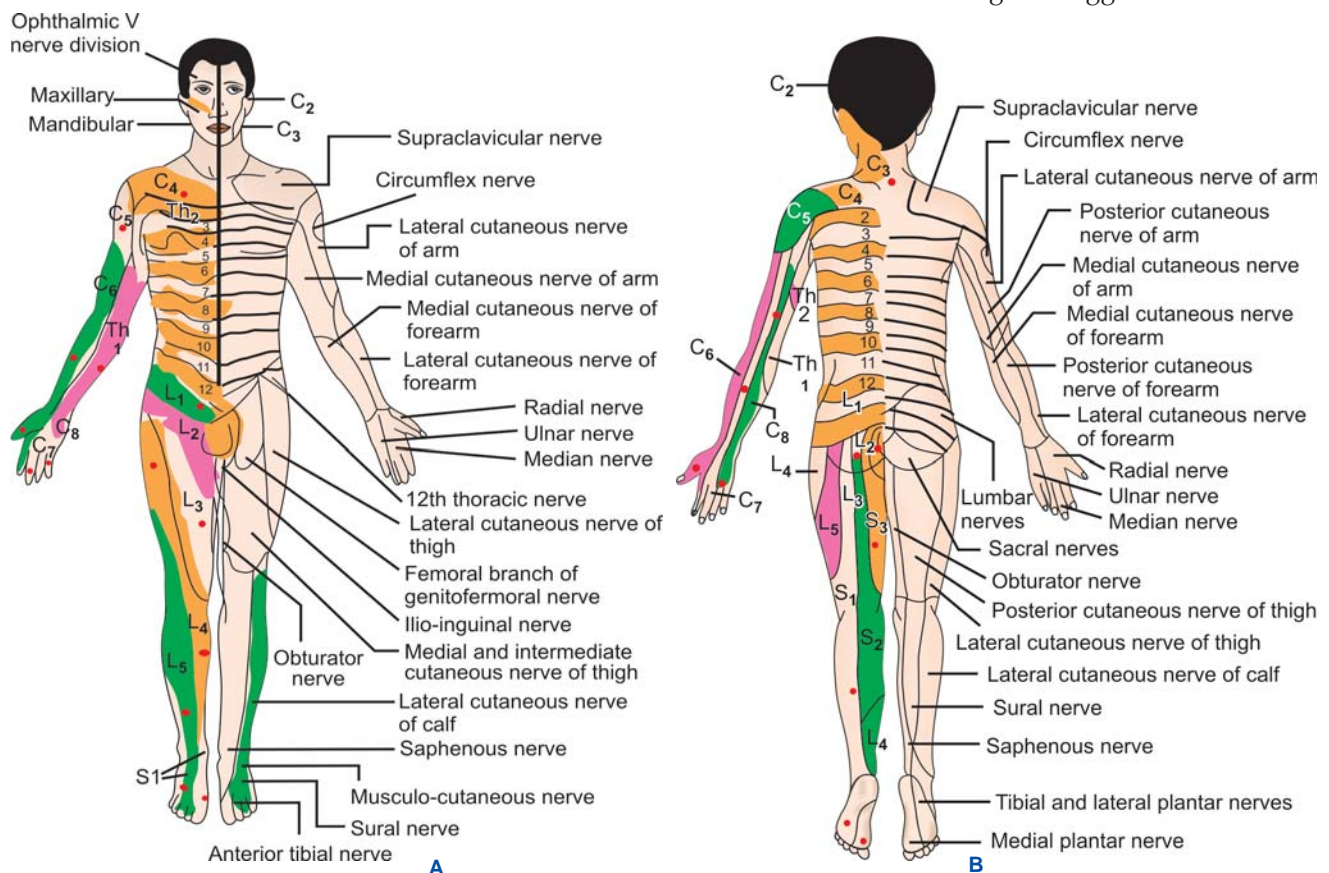
In the history, the most useful features are the anatomical distribution and mode of numbness, paraesthesia or pain. Certain patterns at the onset of sensory symptoms can be recognised, for example, during a migrainous attack, the *aura* may consist of

tingling sensation followed by numbness which takes 20-30 minutes to spread over one half of the body, splitting the tongue. Sensory loss due to a vascular lesion, on the other hand, will occur over the whole territory of the lesion more or less instantaneously. The rare, unpleasant paraesthesia of sensory epilepsy 'shoots' down one side of the body within seconds. The numbness and paraesthesia of spinal cord lesions often ascend one or both lower limbs to a level on the trunk over hours or days. Sensory symptoms of tingling and numbness can be of 'functional' or 'nonorganic' origin as a manifestation of anxiety or as a part of a conversion disorder. In these circumstances, the pattern of sensory symptoms do not conform to any known anatomical distribution or known pattern of sensory involvement in organic disease. Therefore, caution must be exercised to avoid misdiagnosing an unusual organic sensory impairment as a functional disorder.

Examination of the sensory system needs to be approached with caution since confusing false positive results may occur because of inescapably subjective nature of the sensory testing. Lesions of different sites in the sensory pathways produce different kind of sensory loss. Pattern of sensory loss combined with

associated motor findings help to identify the site of lesion, for example, a lesion in the sensory cortex may not impair the perception of pain, touch and position but does impair tactile localisation and discrimination. A person so affected can not appreciate the size, shape or texture of an object by feeling it (astereognosis) and therefore can not identify it. Loss of sensation of position, vibration and movement (joint) with preservation of other sensations points to disease of posterior columns. The loss of all sensations from the waist down, together with spastic paraplegia and exaggerated tendon jerks in the legs, indicates spinal cord transection or compression. Crude or light touch are often preserved despite partial damage to the cord because impulses originating on one side of the body travel up both sides of the cord.

A knowledge of *dermatomes* also helps in localising the lesion. A *dermatome* is defined as a band or an area of the skin innervated by the sensory root of a single spinal segment. The spinal cord is organised in segments from each of which a pair of anterior (motor) and posterior (sensory) nerve roots arise. Dermatomes are mapped out in Fig. 15.8. Their levels are considerably more variable than the diagram suggests because there



Figs 15.8A and B: Dermatomal mapping and peripheral nerve innervation of the body. The points for testing the sensations are indicated by red dots (•). By testing the sensations at these marked points you can calculate the dermatomal and peripheral nerve involvement

is overlapping among dermatomes. The sensory nerves from each side of the body also overlap slightly across the midline. The distribution of a few main peripheral nerves is also depicted in the same figure on the left.

Spinal dermatomes

The spinal cord extends from the foramen magnum to interspace between T₁₂ and L₁; the meninges continue down as far as the body of S₂ vertebra creating a space called *cul-de-sac*. This is the space containing CSF where lumbar puncture is usually done. There is also a cervical enlargement extending from C₅-C₇. The lumbar segments lie opposite to the T₁₀ and T₁₁ spine and the next interspace.

The spinal segments do not correspond exactly with the vertebral bodies overlying them. This is clinically important while assessing the level of compression in a patient suffering from spinal cord disease. To determine which spinal segment is related to which vertebral body, the given formula is detailed in the Box 15.3.

Box 15.3: CALCULATION OF SPINAL SEGMENT IN RELATION TO VERTEBRAE	
Vertebrae	Spinal segment
For cervical vertebrae	Add 1 (1+)
For T ₁ to T ₆	Add 2 (2+)
For T ₇ -T ₉	Add 3 (3+)
T ₁₀ vertebra	Overlies L ₁ and L ₂
T ₁₁ vertebra	Overlies L ₃ and L ₄
T ₁₂ vertebra	Overlies L ₅
L ₁ vertebra	Overlies sacral and coccygeal segments

N.B. If vertebral level is known, then addition is done for calculation of spinal segment level. If spinal segment has been calculated from the sensory loss or loss of jerk, then number given within the bracket is subtracted to calculate the vertebra.

How to count the vertebra?

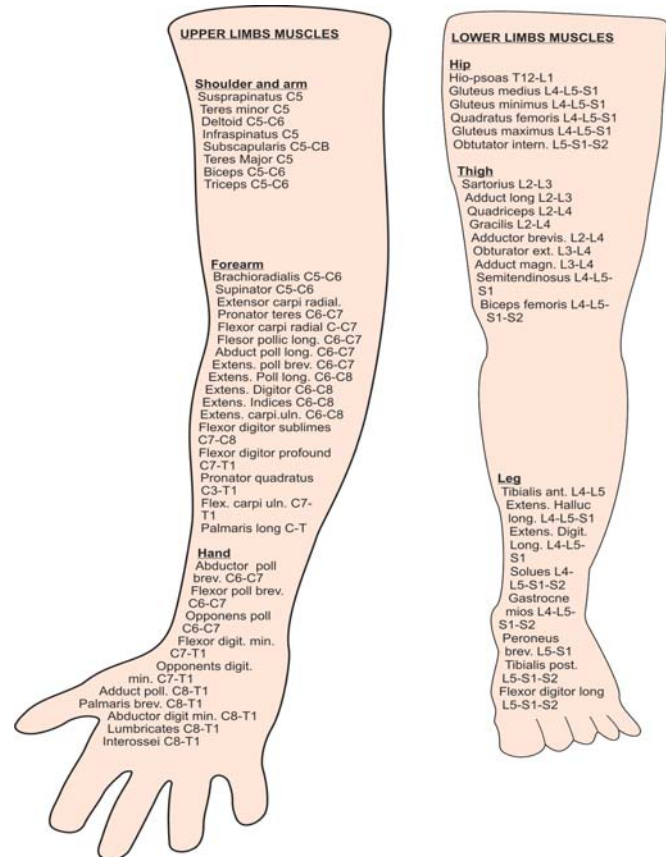
The spine of C₇ vertebra is prominent at the level of shoulder from which you can palpate the upper dorsal vertebrae down. On the front of the body, there is a line of demarcation between the T₂ and C₄ at the level of clavicle. The nipple lies at the level of T₆; the xiphisternum at T₈, the umbilicus at T₁₀ and inguinal ligament at T₁₂. However in the lower dorsal region on the back the tip of a spinous process marks the level of the body of the vertebra below. Similarly the line between anterior iliac spines passes in the interspace between L₁ and L₂. The spinous process above this line is L₁ vertebra and below it is L₂ vertebra. This also constitute a land mark to count the diseased vertebra.

The vertebra involved or diseased is decided clinically by deformity/gibbus/tenderness and radiologically by destruction and/or reduction of interspace, then correlation is made.

In the spinal cord compression/disease, after determining the segments involved, the radiology/imaging of the vertebrae is ordered keeping the approximately calculated vertebral level in the centre and including one or two vertebrae above and one to two vertebrae below. For example if segments involved are T₁-T₆ (loss of upper abdominal reflexes), then vertebral body will be T₆ minus 2 = T₄ level, which means upper thoracic vertebrae are to be X-rayed or scanned. Similarly you can calculate other vertebral level.

Spinal myotomes

The myotomes are motor spinal segments similar to dermatomes which are sensory spinal segments. The myotomes supply the muscles of the upper limbs (Fig. 15.9A) and lower limbs (Fig. 15.9B). The significance of the myotome lies in calculation of motor



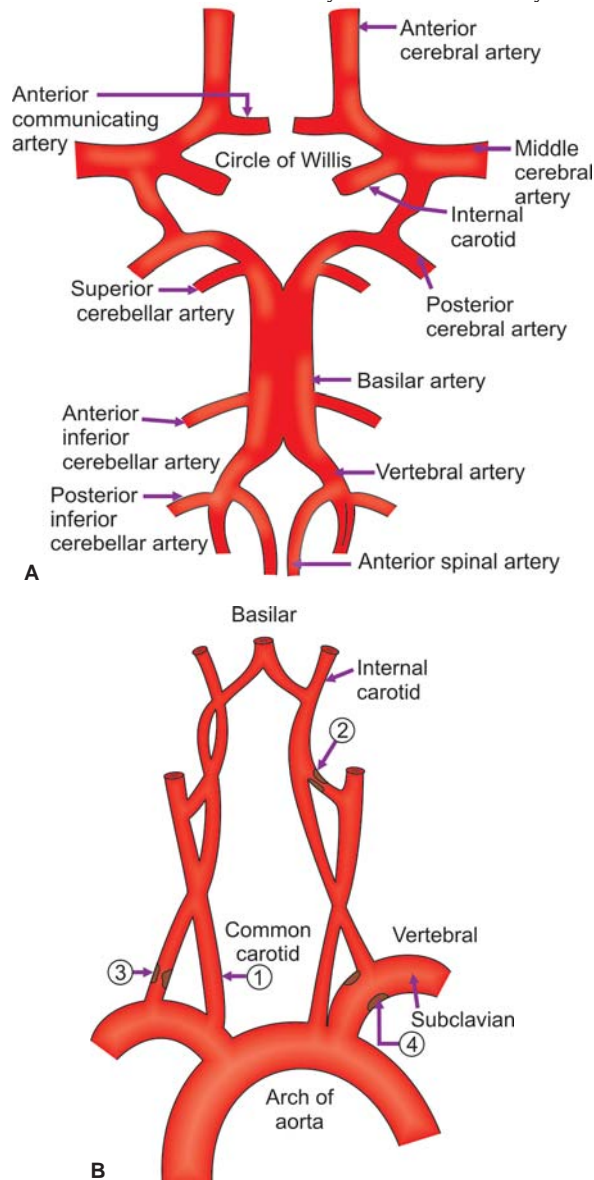
Figs 15.9A and B: Segmental innervation of the muscles (myotomes) of (A) upper limbs (B) lower extremities

level in case of compression and to determine the group of muscles involved in myopathies. For example, loss of biceps tendon reflex indicates compression of C₅-C₆ segments.

Blood supply of the brain and spinal cord

An understanding of normal arterial anatomy and the likely sites of the atheromatous plaques and stenotic lesions is important. Embolic lesions are more frequent in the left than in the right cerebral hemisphere.

The *circle of Willis* (Fig. 15.10) is supplied by the two internal carotid arteries and by the basilar artery which



Figs 15.10A and B: Arterial supply of the brain through circle of Willis and spinal cord (B) The principal sites of atheroma

is formed by the union of two vertebral arteries. Proximal to the circle, the following sites are common for atheromatous plaques and stenoses (Fig. 15.11B).

1. The origins of common carotid artery.
2. The origins of internal carotid artery.
3. Vertebral artery.
4. Subclavian vessels.

Anatomy of cerebral circulation

Anterior cerebral artery: It is a branch of internal carotid artery and gives off the following branches:

- Basal branches, one of which is important recurrent branch (*Heubner's artery*) that supply internal capsule, a part of caudate nucleus and putamen.
- Anterior communicating artery which unites the two anterior cerebral arteries.
- Cortical branches to frontal and parietal lobes – supply 2-2.5 cm strip of cortex on lateral surface extending from frontal to parietal lobe.
- A paracentral cortical branch that supplies paracentral lobule containing leg area of motor cortex.

The middle cerebral artery: It is main branch of internal carotid artery, is commonly involved in embolism from the heart. It gives off:

- *Cortical branches* i.e. *orbital, frontal* (supply inferior and middle frontal gyri and precentral gyrus), *parietal* which supply postcentral gyrus and superior parietal lobule, inferior parietal lobule, and temporal branches to supply superior and middle temporal gyri.
- *Central branches-striate arteries* (*lenticulostriate, lenticulo-optic*) supply the white matter of the brain and the basal ganglia. These are particularly involved with hypertensive cerebral haemorrhage.

Posterior cerebral arteries: These are terminal branches of basilar artery and gives off branches to supply the visual cortex (occipital lobe), lower part of the temporal lobe, the uncus, two third of crux cereberi, red nucleus, third and fourth ventricles, posterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, occlusion of this artery at its origin will therefore involve the visual cortex and the sensory fibres but sometimes the calcarine branch supplying the visual area may be involved in isolation.

Clinical significance of cerebral circulation

- The partial occlusion of carotid arterial system leads to transient ischaemic attacks (TIAs).
- The circle of Willis is the site of congenital aneurysm at the bifurcation of its major arteries due to congenital deficiency of intima and media at these

points. The rupture of an aneurysm may lead to haemorrhage.

- The thrombosis of anterior cerebral artery, if it is single (unpaired) leads to paraplegia of cortical origin – a rare phenomenon.
- The middle cerebral artery is the main culprit vessel in a patient of hemiplegia in majority of patients.
- The occlusion of small branch due to lipohyalinosis or proliferation of internal elastic lamina leads to a small area of an infarction which may not be picked up on CT scan-called *lacunar* infarct. For example, a lacunar infarct of a branch of middle cerebral artery may lead to pure motor or pure sensory hemiplegia.
- A branch of middle cerebral artery supplying the internal capsule is the common site of haemorrhage leading to hemiplegia.

Specific vascular syndromes of brain (stroke)

Cerebrovascular disease is the third commonest cause of death after heart disease and cancer in the developed countries. The incidence of stroke is 1-2 per 1000 population per annum in Europe and USA. It is uncommon below the age of 40 years and more common among the males.

For stroke—Read “case discussion on hemiplegia in Bed side medicine without tears” by Prof. SN Chugh

Classification and causes of stroke (Table 15.2)

1. *An ischaemic stroke.* It results from acute occlusion of an intracranial cerebral vessel either due to thrombosis or embolism. An infarction will occur if blood supply is critically reduced (< 16 ml/100 g of brain tissue/min.) while in ischaemia without infarction only transient symptoms will occur. Tissue surrounding the core region of infarction/ ischaemia- called ischaemic penumbra can be imaged by perfusion – diffusion imaging with MRI. The saving of this ischaemic penumbra is the goal of thrombolytic therapy now-a-days otherwise ischaemic penumbra will eventually lead to infarction/brain death.
2. *A haemorrhagic stroke.* It is caused by intracerebral bleed/haemorrhage. It produces neurological symptoms by mass effect and the toxic effects of blood itself. Ruptured aneurysm is the cause of stroke in young while hypertension in the elderly.
3. *A small vessel stroke (lacunar infarct).* The term lacunar infarction refers to lipohyalinotic occlusion of a small perforating artery in the brain. Now-a-day, the small vessel stroke is the preferred term.

Table 15.2: Causes of stroke (cerebrovascular accidents)

I. Ischaemic stroke	
A. <i>With cerebral infarction</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cerebral thrombosis • Cerebral embolism • Small vessel infarct (lacunar infarct). • Cerebral arteritis e.g. tuberculosis, collagen vascular diseases, Takayasu's syndrome etc. • Dissecting aneurysm of branchiocephalic vessels. • Prolonged hypotension or shock.
B. <i>With cerebral ischaemia</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transient ischaemic attacks (TIAs). • Hypotension due to bleed. • Cardiac arrhythmias e.g. atrial fibrillation, complete heart block. • Migraine
C. <i>Miscellaneous</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drugs and oral contraceptives. • DIC. • Cerebral malaria. • Hyperviscosity syndromes, paraproteinaemia. • Hypercoagulable states e.g. pregnancy, puerperium.
II. Haemorrhagic stroke	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypertension. • Ruptured aneurysm (saccular, mycotic). • Trauma • Blood dyscrasias such as purpura, leukaemia and bleeding diathesis. • Anticoagulants.
III. Strokes of undermined origin	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moyamoya disease. • Fibromuscular dysplasia. • Aortic arch syndrome.

Syndrome of transient ischaemic attacks (TIAs)

They are defined as episodes of focal neurological deficit lasting for < 24 hours, hence, are reversible by definition. The episodes may be isolated and infrequent or may occur many times a day and tend to be consistent in their symptomatology in affected individuals suggesting the recurrent ischaemia consistently involves the same side of the brain.

The clinical features of TIA involving anterior and posterior circulation are given in the Table 15.3. Hemiparesis, vertigo or aphasia are the commonest complaints.

The embolisation of platelet – fibrin clot formed over the atheromatous plaques within a great vessel is the most common cause (90%) of TIA.

Table 15.3: Features of TIA

Anterior circulation (carotid system)	Posterior circulation (vertebrobasilar system)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amaurosis fugax • Aphasia • Hemiparesis • Hemisensory loss • Hemianopic visual loss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diplopia; vertigo, vomiting, choking and dysarthria • Ataxia • Hemisensory loss • Hemianopic visual loss • Transient global amnesia • Quadriparesis • Loss of consciousness (rare)

Syndrome of internal carotid artery occlusion

The clinical picture of internal carotid occlusion varies depending on the cause of ischaemia i.e. thrombus, embolism or low flow. The cortex supplied by the middle cerebral artery (MCA) territory suffer the most, hence, symptoms are identical to syndrome of MCA territory (Read below) but feeble internal carotid, poor pulsation of retinal vessels with or without optic atrophy, dilated pupil on the side of the lesion and presence of bruit in cervical region over carotid vessels may help in the diagnosis of internal carotid occlusion.

Bilateral carotid occlusion, (an old lesion on one side with fresh lesion on the other side may) lead to *double hemiplegia* with coma.

Syndrome of middle cerebral artery (MCA)

The areas supplied by it include sensory-motor cortex, speech centre (motor, sensory), auditory area and optic radiation. The penetrating branch supply the posterior limb of internal capsule, genu, globus pallidus and putamen.

The clinical picture is variable and depends on the area involved. (Box 15.4)

Box 15.4: SYNDROME OF MIDDLE CEREBRAL ARTERY	
Symptoms and signs	Area involved
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contralateral hemiplegia or hemiparesis with UMN signs • Contralateral hemianesthesia and analgesia (loss of pain, touch, temperature, position, vibration, tactile localisation, stereognosis, two point discrimination) • Motor aphasia • Paralysis of conjugate gaze to opposite side • Homonymous hemianopia • Central aphasia, word deafness, alexia, acalculia, finger agnosia, etc. • Anosognosia, apraxia, visual agnosia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor area • Sensory area • Motor speech area of dominant hemisphere • Frontal contraversive field • Optic radiation • Parieto-occipital cortex of dominant hemisphere • Non-dominant parietal lobe lesion (areas correspond to area 6 of dominant hemisphere).
<p>Note: In middle cerebral artery lesion, there will be contralateral hemiplegia, hemianesthesia, motor aphasia, paralysis of conjugate gaze, visual field defect, alexia, acalculia, finger agnosia if dominant hemisphere is involved. Apraxia and visual agnosia, anosognosia will replace motor and central aphasia if non-dominant hemisphere is involved.</p>	

Syndrome of anterior cerebral artery

The cortical branches mainly supply the medial and superior surface of frontal lobe, the parietal lobe including paracentral lobule, anterior limb of internal capsule and part of caudate nucleus.

The clinical picture depends on the areas involved (Box 15.5).

Box 15.5: SYNDROME OF ANTERIOR CEREBRAL ARTERY	
Symptoms and signs	Area/structure involved
Paralysis of opposite lower limb	Motor lower limb area
A lesser degree of paresis of opposite arm	Involvement of corticospinal fibres descending in corona radiata
Cortical type of sensory loss (e.g. position, two point discrimination and tactile localisation)	Sensory area for lower limb
Urinary incontinence	Paracentral lobule
Grasp reflex, sucking reflex, paratonic rigidity	Supplementary motor area
Akinetic mutism (abulia)	Cingulate gyrus, medial portion of frontal, parietal and temporal lobes
Gait apraxia	Frontal cortex near motor leg area

Syndrome of posterior cerebral artery

Thrombotic occlusion of this artery results in:

- I. *P1 syndrome* (e.g. infarction of ipsilateral subthalamic nucleus, medial thalamus, ipsilateral cerebral peduncle and midbrain). This is due to occlusion of the proximal PCA. The clinical picture is summarised in the Box 15.6.

Box 15.6: CLINICAL PICTURE OF P1 SYNDROME	
Signs	Structure involved
Claude's syndrome (a 3rd nerve palsy with contralateral ataxia).	Red nucleus, midbrain.
Weber's syndrome (a 3rd nerve palsy with contralateral hemiplegia).	Cerebral peduncle, midbrain.
Contralateral hemiballismus	Subthalamic nucleus
Thalamic syndrome (contralateral hemisensory loss followed later by an agonising or burning pain in the affected areas).	Thalamus

Bilateral proximal PCA occlusion produces coma, unreactive pupils, bilateral pyramidal signs and decerebrate rigidity.

- II. *P2 syndrome*. Occlusion of distal PCA leads to infarction of medial temporal and occipital lobes. (Box 15.7).

Box 15.7: CLINICAL PICTURE OF P2 SYNDROME	
Signs	Structure involved
Contralateral homonymous hemianopsia with macula sparing. Patient may be aware of visual field defect.	Calcarine cortex (occipital lobe)
Acute memory loss (amnesia) which may clear as memory is bilaterally represented. Visual agnosia for faces, objects, mathematical symbols and colours may develop if dominant hemisphere is involved. There may be alexia without agraphia.	Medial temporal and hippocampal involvement

Bilateral infarction of distal PCA produces cortical blindness (blindness with preserved pupillary reflexes). The patient is often unaware of the blindness and may even deny it (*Anton's syndrome*).

Brainstem infarction (vertebrobasilar artery syndrome)

Infarction in the brainstem causes complex pattern of dysfunction depending on the site of the lesion and its relationship to the cranial nerve nuclei, long tracts and brainstem connections (Table 15.4).

Table 15.4: Syndromes of brainstem infarction	
1. Weber's syndrome (already described)	
2. Claude syndrome (already described)	
3. Parinaud syndrome (dorsal midbrain infarction)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vertical gaze palsy Convergence disorder Convergence refraction Nystagmus Pupillary and lid disorders
4. Millard-Gubler syndrome (Ponto-medullary junction involved)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ipsilateral 6th nerve palsy Ipsilateral 7th nerve palsy Contralateral hemiplegia
5. Lateral medullary (Wallenberg) syndrome (lower lateral medulla involved)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ipsilateral 5th, 9th, 10th and 11th nerve palsy Ipsilateral Horner's syndrome Ipsilateral cerebellar signs Contralateral spinothalamic sensory loss (pain, touch, temperature) Vestibular disturbance (nystagmus, vertigo)
6. Locked-in syndrome (upper brain-stem infarction)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Patient is conscious but can not speak, swallow or move the limbs.
7. Bulbar and pseudobulbar palsy (read lower cranial nerve lesions)	

Lacunar syndromes (small vessel stroke)

The most common lacunar syndrome occurs due to single lacunar infarct (<300 µm) in the brain at different sites. (Table 15.5)

Table 15.5: Common lacunar syndromes	
Sign	Site of infarction
1. Pure motor hemiparesis	Posterior limb of the internal capsule or basis pontis.
2. Pure sensory stroke	Ventrolateral thalamus
3. Ataxic hemiparesis	Base of pons
4. Dysarthria and a clumsy hand or arm	Base of pons or in the genu of internal capsule
5. Pure motor hemiparesis with motor (Broca's) aphasia	Genu and anterior limb of internal capsule and white matter of corona radiata.
6. Pseudobulbar	Corticobulbar tract.

Blood supply of spinal cord and spinal artery syndromes

The anterior and posterior spinal arteries arise from the vertebral artery and travel downwards in the anteromedian fissure and two latter pass along side the posterior nerve roots. These spinal arteries receive radicular tributaries at each spinal level. The anterior spinal artery supplies anterior two-thirds of the spinal cord; while posterior spinal artery supplies the posterior one-third of the cord containing posterior horns and posterior columns. Both these arteries function as anastomotic vessels linking the radicular feeding vessels.

Infarction of the cord may occur due to occlusion of anterior or posterior spinal artery resulting in respective anterior and posterior spinal artery syndrome (see the Box 15.8). The primary cause of infarction may be atherosclerosis, dissecting aneurysm, thromboembolism, meningovascular syphilis, polyarteritis nodosa or AV malformations. The onset of symptom is sudden acute back pain. The intermittent claudication may occur due to foramina stenosis. The vascular malformations may produce spinal bleed.

Box 15.8: FEATURES OF SPINAL ARTERY SYNDROMES	
Anterior spinal syndrome	Posterior spinal syndrome
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anterior two-thirds of the cord involved Spinothalamic and corticospinal tracts involved Paraplegia/quadriplegia with loss of pain, touch, temperature. Vibration and position sense preserved 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Posterior one-third of cord involved Posterior column and corticospinal tract involved Paraplegia/quadriplegia with loss of posterior column sensation (loss of position and vibration sense)

Venous drainage of brain and dural sinus thrombosis

The cerebral veins and venous sinuses have no valves, therefore, blood flows in them in either direction. The superior sagittal sinus is the largest of venous sinuses (Fig. 15.11), receives blood from the frontal, parietal and occipital superior cerebral veins and the diploic veins, which communicate with the meningeal veins. Bacterial meningitis is a common cause for septic thrombosis of superior sagittal sinus. Infection can spread to superior sagittal sinus from nearby subdural empyema or epidural abscess. The predisposing conditions for venous sinus thrombosis including the superior sagittal (common) are given in the Box 15.9.

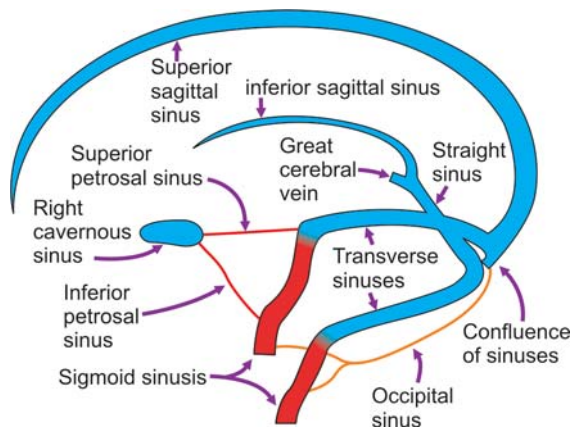


Fig. 15.11: Dural venous sinuses

Box 15.9: CAUSES OF CEREBRAL VENOUS THROMBOSIS	
General	Local
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pregnancy and postpartum state • Sepsis • Dehydration or hypotension • Oral contraceptive use • Polycythaemia, sickle cell anaemia, leukaemia • Hyperviscosity syndrome • Antiphospholipid syndrome, deficiency of protein C and S • Debilitating states or malignancy • Postoperative • Cyanotic heart disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sinusitis, mastoiditis • Otitis • Pyogenic meningitis • Subdural empyema • Facial infection • Trauma or head injury • Jugular venous catheterisation

The superior sagittal sinus drains into the transverse sinuses (paired sinus). The transverse sinuses also receive venous drainage from small veins from both

middle ears and mastoid cells. The transverse sinus becomes sigmoid sinus before draining into internal jugular vein. Septic transverse/sigmoid sinus thrombosis can be a complication of acute or chronic otitis media or mastoiditis. Infection spreads from the mastoid air cells to the transverse sinus via the emissary veins or by direct invasion.

The cavernous sinuses (a pair) are inferior to superior sagittal sinus at the base of the skull. The cavernous sinuses receive blood from the facial veins via superior or inferior ophthalmic veins, hence are likely to be involved in orbital cellulitis or orbital infection or facial infection. Bacteria in ethmoid sinuses or sphenoidal sinuses can spread to the cavernous sinuses via the small emissary veins. The sphenoid and ethmoid sinuses are the most common sites of primary infection in septic cavernous sinus thrombosis.

The clinical manifestations of common venous sinus thrombosis are given in the Table 15.6.

Table 15.6: Clinical manifestations of cerebral venous sinus thrombosis

Sinus involved	Features
1. Cavernous sinus thrombosis – (3rd, 4th, 6th and first division of V cranial nerve involved) (Fig. 15.12)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chemosis, proptosis, ptosis, ophthalmoplegia (internal and external), papilloedema, retinal haemorrhage, reduced sensation in ophthalmic division of V cranial nerve • Involvement may be unilateral or bilateral. Patient is ill with fever, headache, frontal and retro-orbital pain and diplopia.
2. Superior sagittal sinus thrombosis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fever, headache, nausea, vomiting, confusion, focal or generalised seizures, stupor, coma, papilloedema • Weakness of lower extremities (paraplegia) with bilateral plantar extensors or quadriparesis with predominant lower limbs involvement. • Sensory focal deficits may be present • Neck rigidity and signs of meningitis present if it occurs as a complication of meningitis.
3. Transverse sinus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Otitis media, 6th nerve palsy, retroorbital or facial pain (Gradingo's Syndrome). • Headache, hemiparesis, convulsions and papilloedema.
4. Jugular foramen or jugular vein	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Since transverse sinus thrombosis extends to jugular vein, hence, its features may be present in addition to 9th, 10th and 11th cranial nerve palsies



Figs 15.12A and B: Right cavernous sinus thrombosis in a postpartal female (A) There is chemosis, lid oedema, conjunctival congestion and external ophthalmoplegia (immobile right eye) due to 3rd, 4th and 6th nerve palsy, (B) The same female patient after recovery

Presenting complaints and symptoms (Read front page of this Chapter and Chapter 2 also)

History

The symptoms of neurological disorders are so vague that detailed history and execution of clinical signs will enable the physician to come to some definite conclusion because established principles of anatomy and physiology help to localise the site of the neurological lesion and to narrow down the differential diagnosis. In structural disease of the nervous system (e.g. vascular, tumours, multiple sclerosis), significant changes are often found as localising signs which are taken as clues to the diagnosis. On the other hand, disorders of neuronal function (e.g. epilepsy, migraine) may produce no abnormal signs on examination, hence, the history taking is of paramount importance.

The presenting symptoms of patients with neurological disorders are variable and depend on the site of involvement. In most instances, the diagnosis can be based on detailed analysis of the symptoms, hence, elaborate history as detailed below is important. The general principles of history-taking apply as outlined in Chapter 1.

In the history, emphasis should be laid on:

- (i) *Time relationship of symptoms* i.e. onset, progression or regression, frequency, duration, etc.
- (ii) *Localisation* – e.g. which part of the body is affected the most. Is involvement symmetrical or asymmetrical?

- (iii) *Precipitating factors* e.g. are the symptoms increase by any specific activity e.g. exercise, sleep, posture, reading, eating, coughing, micturition, sexual activity or by external stimuli e.g. sound, smell, heat or cold?
- (iv) *Associated symptoms*: Are there other associated or accompanying symptoms in addition to presenting symptoms? i.e.
 - Numbness, tingling, paraesthesias, cold, or warmth (sensory disturbance)
 - Weakness, clumsiness, stiffness, unsteady gait (motor system disturbance)
 - Headache, nausea, vomiting, seizures (symptoms of raised intracranial pressure)
 - Visual disturbances e.g. diminution of vision, diplopia, scintillating spots
 - Disturbance in consciousness e.g. confusion, delirium, stupor
 - Psychological disturbance e.g. depression, euphoria, agitation, somnolence, appetite disturbance, change in libido.

Past history

- Past history of diabetes, hypertension, renal disease or dialytic therapy, alcoholism, smoking, tuberculosis must be asked
- Any past history of diarrhoea or malabsorption or acute respiratory infection
- Some neurological disorders (e.g. epilepsy, hydrocephalus) may present many years after the causative event. It is therefore important to ask about:

- Pregnancies (length of term, intrauterine problems)
- Delivery (normal, assisted or operative)
- Neonatal health (severe jaundice, respiratory difficulty, infections and convulsions)
- Problems during infancy (e.g. convulsions, trauma, infection).
- *Childhood and adulthood* (e.g. trauma to head or spine, infections such as meningitis, encephalitis, surgical operation).

Drug history

- Ask about the drug being taken or has been taken in the past such as antitubercular, antiepileptics, anticoagulants, antipsychotics, oral contraceptives, nitrofurantoin, vincristine.
- History of intake of poison e.g. organophosphorous compounds.
- History of vaccination e.g. predisposition to AIDS, hepatitis and demyelinating disorders, etc.

Family history

1. Many neurological disorders have a genetic component, some may be strictly genetic disorders (e.g. hereditary ataxias, muscular dystrophies, myotonias, Huntington's chorea and hereditary neuropathies).
2. In some neurological disorders, genetic factors appear to influence the development of the disease (e.g. epilepsy, multiple sclerosis, migraine, stroke, dementia).

Social and personal history

1. **Occupation:** Patient's occupation may be relevant in the causation or triggering of neurological disorders.
 - Exposure to toxic chemicals (toxic neuropathies or encephalopathies) such as lead, mercury, industrial solvents, OP compounds, etc.
 - Recurrent overuse of certain joints predisposing to entrapment neuropathy (e.g. carpal tunnel syndrome).
 - Prolonged visual work (tension headache, migraine).
 - History of recent travel.
 - Occupation requiring prolonged stay outside home e.g., *Sadhu* or *saint*, *sailors*, *truck driver* are predisposed to sexually transmitted disorders.
2. **Diet** e.g. vegetarian or non-vegetarian (neuro-cysticercosis), alcohol intake, quality of diet.
3. **Marital status:** Marriage, divorce, bereavement and change in occupation are important precipitating factors for tension headache, migraine and

depression, may also trigger attacks of multiple sclerosis and epilepsy.

4. **Sexual contact:** History of contact with unknown partner must be asked to explore any possibility of sexually transmitted disease.

Examination

A neurological examination requires to be systematic. It includes;

1. General physical examination
2. Proper neurological examination
 - Higher mental functions
 - Speech and language
 - Gait and cerebellar functions
 - Cranial nerves
 - Motor system
 - Sensory system
 - Other associated/involved system.

General physical examination

- (i) **Head (cranium):** Look for any abnormality of the skull:
 - Large skull with protruding jaw (Gigantism)
 - Hyperostosis (Paget's disease)
 - Microcephaly
 - Irregularity of the surface e.g. localised bony swelling or erosion, fractures
 - Tenderness of skull
 - Intracranial bruits to be heard with bell of stethoscope on frontal region, lateral occipital region and on each closed eyeball for angiomas, carotid cavernous fistula, tumours of Glomus Juglare (best heard over mastoid or jugular vein).
- (ii) **Skin:** Following points are to be noted;
 - *Café-au lait* spots, subcutaneous and plexiform neurofibromas.
 - *Cutaneous angiomas (Port-wine stain)*. Facial naevi may occur in Sturge- Weber syndrome, telangiectasia of skin may be associated with intracranial telangiectasia.
 - *Adenoma sebaceum* may be present with tuberous sclerosis.
 - *Herpes zoster infection* (papulovesicular eruption) may be associated with neuralgias.
 - *Any rash* e.g. exanthematous rash or butterfly rash over face in SLE.
 - *Thick tight skin* occurs in systemic sclerosis.

- *Signs of nutritional deficiencies* e.g. angular stomatitis, cheilosis, pellagerous skin, anaemia.
 - *Scar marks, injection marks*, may be present in drug addicts. Burn marks are seen in neuropathies. Gangrene of the phalanges or painful finger tips may be seen in embolic phenomenon. *Bed sores* indicate prolonged illness or unconsciousness or paraplegia.
 - *Tuft of hair* over the spine may be seen in spina bifida.
 - *Skin tumours* e.g. melanoma.
3. **Eyes:** Detailed examination of the eyes is discussed under cranial nerve examination. However, *look for the following on general physical examination*;
- Unilateral proptosis, conjunctivitis, chemosis, keratitis or corneal ulceration.
4. **Ear, nose and throat**
Look at the ear for;
- Otitis externa.
 - Chronic suppurative otitis media for 7th cranial nerve palsy and meningitis.
 - Mastoid tenderness for mastoiditis associated with jugular foramen syndrome.
- Look at the nose for;*
- Depressed bridge of the nose may occur in tertiary syphilis, relapsing polychondritis, leprosy and Wegener's granulomatosis. Gummatous lesion may be present on nasal septum.
- Look at nasopharynx* for evidence of any malignancy (nasopharyngioma).
Look at the oral cavity for dental abscess, tonsillar abscess, gum hypertrophy, etc.
5. **Neck**
- Look for cervical lymphadenopathy which may occur as a part of generalised lymphadenopathy. Therefore, examine the lymph nodes at other sites also e.g. axillary and inguinal.
 - Palpation or auscultation of cervical carotid bruit.
 - Thyroid for enlargement. Look for the signs of thyrotoxicosis or hypothyroidism if present (these signs are discussed in case discussion in bedside medicine without tears by Prof. SN Chugh).
 - Neck stiffness and signs of meningitis.
6. **Breast.** Examine the breast for any lump. Carcinoma of the breast is a common source of distant metastasis including brain.

7. Look for vitals:

- **Pulse:** Bradycardia may occur in raised intracranial tumour, Stokes-Adam attacks and hypothyroidism. Tachycardia may indicate an infection, arrhythmias (atrial fibrillation) or thyrotoxicosis. Arrhythmias in valvular heart disease is a common cause of cerebral embolisation.
- **Blood pressure:** Hypertension may predispose to encephalopathy, lacunar infarct and atherothrombogenesis.
- **Temperature:** Fever indicates infective or inflammatory brain disorders. Both hyperthermia and hypothermia are associated with neurological symptoms.
- **Respiration:** Respiratory irregularities (e.g. Cheyne-Stokes respiration, irregular slow respiration) may occur in raised intracranial pressure.

Systemic neurological examination

Three important questions govern the neurological examination.

1. *Mental status.* Is it intact?
2. *Symmetry or asymmetry of findings.* Are the right-sided or left sided findings symmetric?
3. *If the findings are asymmetric or otherwise abnormal;* does the lesion lie in the central nervous system or peripheral nervous system?

In this section, you will learn the techniques for a practical and comprehensive examination of the nervous system. One should master these techniques. At first, these techniques may appear difficult but with time and experience, one feels comfortable evaluating the neurological symptoms and signs. You should be dedicated and active in learning.

The details of an appropriate neurologic examination varies widely. With experience, one can go through the neurological examination quickly in patients not suspected of neurological disease. When you detect abnormal findings, your examination will become more comprehensive. Be aware that neurologists may use many other techniques in specific situations. Nonetheless the neurologist approach to the mental state examination is similar to that taken by the psychiatrist, although with a difference in emphasis that reflects the different symptom complexes of organic and functional brain syndromes.

For efficiency; you should integrate certain portions of neurological examination with other parts of

examination. Observe the mental status and speech during the process of *history taking*. Similarly you can assess some of the cranial nerves during examination of head and neck, and inspect the arms and legs for neurologic abnormalities while you observe the peripheral vascular and musculoskeletal systems.

As always in neurology, the history-taking is of utmost importance and influence the subsequent investigation of symptoms. For example, if the patient memory is impaired, the patient's description of illness will be limited. If the patient is comatosed, confused, or unable to understand speech or language, any attempt to examine the sensory system is likely to be frustrated. If for any reason, the patient is not able to give the history himself/herself, it is essential to obtain history from relatives or friends.

Rapid bedside protocol for mental state testing can be used to quantify roughly the deficit. Detailed neurological examination can follow later on.

Mental status/functions

The essential elements of mental status examination are:

- Appearance, behaviour and communication.
 - Speech and language.
 - Mood/emotional status.
 - Thoughts and perceptions (delusions and hallucinations).
 - Cognitive functions e.g. memory, intelligence, attention, information, vocabulary, calculations, and abstract thinking and constructional ability.
1. **Appearance and behaviour:** First of all note whether there is any disturbance in consciousness such as confusion, stupor or coma. Level of consciousness primarily reflects the patient's capacity for arousal or wakefulness. It is determined by the level of activity that the patient can be aroused to perform in response to escalating stimuli from the examiner (Table 15.7).

Table 15.7: Assessment of level of consciousness

Level	Technique	Abnormal response
Alertness	Speak to the patient in normal tone of voice. An alert patient responds i.e. opens the eyes, looks at you and answers the questions appropriately (arousal intact).	Inattentive patient or patient with disturbed consciousness may not respond to command or questions.
Lethargy	Speak to the patient in a loud voice. Ask "How are you?" "What is your name?"	A lethargic patient appears drowsy but opens the eyes and looks at you, responds to the questions and then falls asleep.

Contd....

Contd....

Obundation	Shake the patient gently as if awakening a sleeper	An obtunded patient opens the eyes and looks at you, but responds slowly and is somewhat confused. Alertness and interest in the surroundings is less.
Stupor	Apply a painful stimuli: For example pinch a tendon, rub the sternum or roll a pencil across a nail bed. No stronger stimuli needed.	A stuporous patient arouses from sleep only after painful stimuli. Verbal responses are slow or even absent. The patient lapses into an unresponsive state when the stimulus ceases. There is minimal awareness of self or environment.
Coma	Apply repeated painful stimuli	A comatosed patient remains unarousable with eyes closed. There is no evident response to inner need or external stimuli.

- **Facial expression.** Observe the patient at rest and while interacting with others. Is patient anxious, depressed or apathetic?

Facial immobility or expressionless face is seen in parkinsonism.

- **Posture and motor behaviour:** Look for any unusual features in the behaviour e.g. facial tics, fidgetiness of anxiety, crying, handwinging of agitated depression, slowed movements of depression, singing, dancing movements of a manic episode. There may be abnormal posture in schizophrenia, encephalitis and cerebral palsy (Figs 15.13A and B).
- **Dress, grooming, personal cleanliness:** How is the patient dressed? Is clothing clean, pressed and properly fastened? Note the patient's hair, nails, teeth, skin and beard if present. How are they groomed? Compare the dress, grooming and personal hygiene with other people of comparable age, lifestyle and socioeconomic status.

Grooming and personal hygiene may deteriorate in depression, schizophrenia and dementia. One sided neglect may result from a lesion in the opposite parietal cortex, usually the non-dominant side.

2. **Mood or emotional state:** It is important to evaluate the patient mood during the interview exploring the patient's own perceptions of it. Note:
 - (i) Is the patient appear happier than normal (elated or euphoric) or filled with despair or dismay (depression) or angry?



Figs 15.13A and B: A. Catatonic posture following encephalitis (postencephalitic), B. Dystonic posture in a patient with cerebral palsy

- (ii) Is there any flattening or blunting of emotion during conversation e.g. family or financial success is described without pleasure or patient laughs after relating a misfortune or breaks into tears after narrating a pleasant news?
- (iii) Does the patient enjoys life or fed up with life?
- (iv) Is there any suicidal intent or tendency?
- (v) Is there any sense of depressionalisation or derealisation by asking whether things seem as real as they should be or whether they seem changed in some mysterious way.

Feelings of depressionalisation- derealisation occurs in psychotic disorders.

Mood disorders may be either depressive or bipolar. A bipolar disorder includes manic or hypomanic features as well as depressive features.

3. **Thought and perceptions:** Are there any flight of ideas, loosening of associations (person shifts from one subject to other), neologisms (use of invented or distorted words), incoherence, confabulations (fabrication of facts or events to fill in the gap in an impaired memory), preservation (persistent repetition of words) echolalia (repetition of the words and phrases of others) are common in psychiatric disorders, hence, discussed in examination of psychiatric patient Chap. 19.

- (i) Delusions are false beliefs which continue to be held despite evidence to contrary. Examples include; delusions of persecution, grandiose delusions, delusional jealousy and delusions of reference.

Delusions are most often associated with psychotic disorders, may occur in delirium, severe mood disorders and dementia.

- (ii) **Illusions:** Illusions are misinterpretations of real external stimuli, may occur in grief disorders, delirium, acute or posttraumatic stress disorders and schizophrenia.

- (iii) **Hallucinations** are false subjective sensory perceptions in the absence of relevant external stimuli. Hallucinations may be *auditory, visual, olfactory, gustatory, tactile* or *somatic*.

Note: Does the patient perceives hallucinations of any type?

Hallucinations of taste and smell are characteristic of temporal lobe epilepsy (partial seizures).

Hallucinations of small animals or insects crawling through the room, or on the walls, or bed are particularly associated with delirium tremens (alcohol withdrawal syndrome).

In occipital lobe lesions, visual hallucinations may occur.

Hallucinations may occur in post-traumatic stress disorders and schizophrenia.

4. **Insight and judgement:** One should assess whether the insight into the illness is intact or not. This can be assessed by asking "What brings you to the hospital?" "What seems to be the trouble?" "What do you think is wrong?" Note whether the patient is aware of himself/herself and the surroundings.

Patients with psychotic disorders often lack insight into their illness. Denial of impairment may accompany some neurological disorder.

Judgement can be assessed by noting the patient's response to family situations, jobs, use of money or interpersonal conflicts. Who will look after your financial affair while you are in the hospital? "If your husband starts abusing you again, what will you do"?

Poor judgement is seen in dementia, delirium, mental retardation and psychotic states. Judgement is affected by anxiety, mood, intelligence, education, socio-economic status.

5. Cognitive functions

- (i) *Orientation to time, place, person.* In order to assess patient's ability to recognise place, time or person, the following questions can be asked;
 - **Time** (you can ask about the time of day, day of the week, month, season, date and year, duration of hospital stay).
 - **Place** (Ask about patient's residence, names of the hospital, city and state).
 - **Person.** (You can ask the patient's own name, and the names of the relatives and friends).

Disorientation occurs especially when the memory or attention is impaired as in delirium.

- (ii) *Memory:* Memory consists of the ability to grasp and retain the new information, requires adequate processing of input, followed by registration and then appropriate recall. To test the recent memory, inquire about the events of the day including the day's weather, today's appointments and medications or diet taken today. Ask the patient to recall informations such as what has been taken in the breakfast or dinner? what have you read in the paper or seen on the television? In framing questions, one should keep in mind the patient's educational qualification, background and their likely personal interests. Those questions should be asked whose answers can be checked from other sources for confirmation so that, you can know whether or not the patient is confabulating (cooking up facts to compensate for a defective memory).

Recent memory is impaired both in delirium and dementia. Amnesic disorders also impair memory but they do not have other features of dementia or delirium.

Anxiety, depression, and mental retardation may also impair recent memory.

To test remote memory (short-term or long-term memory), inquire about birth days, anniversaries, numbers, name of the schools attended, jobs held, or past historical events such as wars.

For short-term memory, you can ask for the events happened a few seconds or minutes past.

Loss of memory is called amnesia. Short-term memory loss is characteristically impaired in Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome and in many patients with Alzheimer-type dementia. The degree to which the recent memory is lost is an index of severity of organic brain disorder.

- (iii) *Intelligence:* It is a higher cognitive function. Information and vocabulary, when observed clinically, provide a rough estimate of a person's intelligence. Assess them during the history-taking. The educational level reached before leaving school, inquiries about person's work or hobbies, reading, favourite television programmes or current events, give a rough and ready estimate of intelligence.

Frequent change of mind or jobs may indicate mental defect or personality disorder.

Frequent changes of work or employment after an accident or a serious illness in patients with a previously good work record suggests brain damage.

- (iv) **Calculating ability** is another cognitive function and tests the memory and reasoning, indicates more serious and specific defect. Ask the patients simple, arithmetic questions i.e. ("what is $4 + 3$? - - -), "what is 5×6 ? - - . The task can be made more difficult by asking to subtract 7 from 100 (i.e. 93, 86, 79 - - -). You can ask to spell a five-letter word "W-O-R-L-D" backwards.

Poor performance may be a sign of dementia or may accompany aphasia, but it must be tested in terms of patient's intelligence and education.

- (v) **Constructional ability.** The task here is to copy figures of increasing complexity onto a piece of blank unlined paper. Show each figure one at a time and ask the patient to copy it (Fig. 15.14).

If vision and motor ability are intact, poor constructional ability suggests dementia or parietal lobe damage (hepatic encephalopathy).

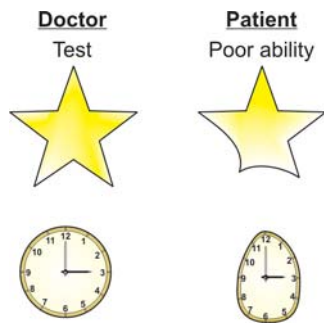


Fig. 15.14: Constructional apraxia

Released reflexes/return of primitive reflexes

In organic brain disorders (diffuse degenerative disorders) certain reflexes released from the control of higher centre may be elicited. Some may be elicited even in focal lesions such as grasp reflex in frontal lobe disease. All these are primitive reflexes and their presence or absence in infancy is used as a part of developmental assessment, hence, they appear during infancy, disappear during childhood and adulthood, reappear or released during damage to higher centres by diffuse organic disease. The important higher level reflexes are;

- Grasp and avoiding reflexes
 - Palmomental reflexes
 - Snout and sucking reflexes
 - Glabellar tap reflexes
- All these reflexes are under higher control, get released when the higher control centres e.g. frontal lobe(s) is diseased or damaged.

1. Grasping and avoiding reflexes:

Grasp reflex is elicited by stroking the palmar surface of the patient's hand on its lateral aspect by firmly moving a stimulus (pencil or examiner's finger) distally between the patient's thumb and forefinger (Fig. 15.15). The



Fig. 15.15: Grasp reflex. The patient tries to grasp the finger of examiner hand

patient's hand grasps the object or move towards examiner's hand to grasp it. This grasp reflex is not inhibited even if the patient's attention is diverted, for example, by asking his/her address. If observer tries to pull the object or his/her finger (used as a stimulus) against the patient's flexed fingers, the patient tries to oppose with an equivalent force.

The avoiding response (reflex) is a tendency on the part of the patient to move away his/her hand from palmar or dorsal contact. It is usually elicited by applying the stimulus on the ulnar side of the hand.

Both grasping and avoiding reflexes or responses are elicited in patients with contralateral frontal lobe disease e.g. Alzheimer's disease.

2. The palmomental reflex. Stroke the skin of the palm near the thenar eminence, there is contraction of ipsilateral mentalis (a subcutaneous muscle) causing puckering of the chin.

3. Snout and sucking reflexes: Apply gentle pressure by your knuckles against the patient's lips, there is puckering of the orbicularis oris (forming a snout). Similarly, the reflex can be elicited by tapping the finger placed on the lips with a tendon hammer or with finger of other hand, there is contraction of facial musculature.

Sucking reflex is an anticipatory opening of the mouth in response to visual stimuli e.g. shining the mental end of a tuning fork or just touching cheeks near the corner of the mouth.

3. Glabellar tap (Fig. 15.16): A series of finger tap at the glabella normally produces two or three blinks and then response is inhibited, but in *Parkinsonism* or *diffuse degenerative disorders*, the response is not inhibited i.e. each glabellar tap is followed by a blink.



Fig. 15.16: Elicitation of glabellar sign

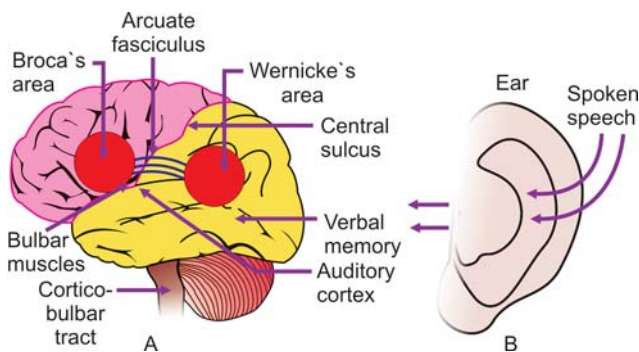
Speech and language

Much can be learnt about the patient's speech during history-taking. Speech disorders are mainly of two types:

1. Disorders of articulation (*dysarthria*) and phonation (*dysphonia*).
2. Disorders of the structure and organisation of language (*dysphasia*).

If a deficit in speech is noticed, then a through careful examination of speech and language should be undertaken so as to explore and localise the causative lesion.

Applied anatomy: The language areas are situated in the dominant hemisphere. The dominance of hemisphere is decided by handedness of a person. In the vast majority of right-handed persons the left hemisphere is dominant. About a third of left-handers have a dominant right hemisphere; the others have either left-sided or bilateral language representation. The main language areas and their association fibres are shown in Fig. 15.17.



Figs 15.17A and B: The diagrammatic representation of main language areas and their associations and the mechanism of speech. The spoken words pass from the ear of the listener's (B) to auditory cortex (A) and then to Wernicke's area (arrows).

1. **Broca's area:** It lies in the posterior region of the inferior frontal gyrus of the dominant hemisphere. It is concerned with generation of motor programmes for production of words or parts of words (phonemes). The motor commands generated in the Broca's area pass to the cranial nerve nuclei in the pons and medulla, as well as the anterior horns of the spinal cords, thus nerve impulses reach the lips, tongue, palate, pharynx, larynx and respiratory muscles via the facial nerve and cranial nerves 9th, 10th and 12th.
2. **Wernicke's area:** It lies in the posterior temporal lobe and the adjoining parietal region and is concerned

with the comprehension of language and the selection of words to convey meaning.

The decoding of speech sounds (phonemes) is a function of posterior temporal lobe. The perception of these sounds as meaningful language, as well as the formulation of the language required for the expression of ideas and concepts (speech comprehension) is the function of Wernicke's area.

The Broca's and Wernicke's areas are connected by an arcuate fasciculus (Fig. 15.17). The language information generated in the Wernicke's area to the spoken speech is passed anteriorly via the arcuate fasciculus to Broca's area for motor commands.

Mechanism of speech production (Fig. 15.17B)

The spoken words (language) are detected by a listener in whom the nerve impulses are passed from the ears to the auditory cortex in the temporal lobe to the Wernicke's area where the speech is comprehended. In dominant hemisphere the language information so generated is passed to Broca's motor area of speech via arcuate fasciculus. From the Broca's area, the motor commands pass to parts concerned with articulation and phonation (e.g. lips, tongue, pharynx, palate, larynx and respiratory muscles) via the cranial nerves 7th, 9th, 10th and 12th for production of ordered sounds known as speech. In this way, the speech and language are controlled by the cerebral cortex.

Examination sequence

Spontaneous speech is assessed by *fluency* (rate, flow and melody of speech and the content and use of words) during conversations. The area of fluency of speech lies around central fissure (Box 15.10). *Paraphasias* means the words are either malformed ("I write with a den"), wrong or inappropriate ("I write with a bar"), or invented ("I write with a dar"). If the patient speech lacks fluency, proceed with further testing as outlined in the Table 15.8

Box 15.10: SITE OF LESION OF SPOKEN SPEECH

Speech output	Site of lesion
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fluent i.e. normal to increased number of words are produced. • Nonfluent aphasia i.e. It indicates lesion anterior to verbal output is reduced. 	<p>Fluent aphasia indicates lesion posterior to central fissure</p> <p>central fissure.</p>

Table 15.8: Testing for aphasia

• Word comprehension	Ask the patient to follow a one-stage command, such as "point to your nose". Try a two-stage command "Point to your mouth, then your knee".
• Repetition	Ask the patient to repeat a phrase of one syllable words "Today is Tuesday". Repetition failure occurs in conduction aphasia.
• Naming	Ask the patient to name a shown object (e.g. a comb or pen). The test can be made difficult by asking the patient to name the components of a watch.
• Reading comprehension	Ask the patient to read a paragraph loudly. This may reveal an associated dyslexia.
• Writing	Ask the patient to write a sentence. This can not be assessed if the patient has a motor deficit of writing hand. Errors of form, grammar and sentence indicate dysphasia. A person who can write a correct sentence does not have aphasia.

If *dysarthria* is suspected ask the patient to repeat a phrase which requires precise articulation e.g. British Constitution. The causes of dysarthria and their characteristics are given in the Table 15.9

Dysarthria may be caused by mechanical factors such as ill-fitted dentures, but invariably occurs due to weakness or impaired co-ordination of the muscles of speech (orolingual muscles). Dysarthric speech is

indistinct and difficult for listener to discern. However, in dysarthria, the grammatical construction of speech is normal and the patient's comprehension of spoken speech and written language is preserved. Elevation of soft palate is used to close off the nasopharynx for production of explosive consonants (b and g). Weakness of palate (bulbar palsy) or anatomical defects in palate cause 'nasal' speech with failure to produce these sounds correctly. For example such a patient will pronounce 'egg' as 'eng'.

Dysphonia: It is defined as disturbed phonation. The production tones in speech is achieved by movements of expired air through the larynx. Vibrations of the vocal cords generate frequency changes used in speech and singing. Poor vocal cords movements and poor respiratory function may cause dysphonia, but characteristically it is caused by laryngeal involvement such as recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy or laryngitis.

Dysphasia or aphasia: Dysphasia or aphasia is a disorder of language content of speech. It can occur with lesions over a wide area of the dominant hemisphere. The term, *aphasia*, rather than *dysphasia* is preferred term to be used to designate any degree of spoken language deficit. Aphasia is detected by the patient inability to produce the correct word (*anomia*). When patients are asked to name objects or parts of objects, if *anomia* is present either no word will be produced or the wrong word or a nonsense word will be produced (paraphasia).

Table 15.9: Causes of dysarthria

Type	Mechanism	Characteristic	Associated features
Myopathic	Weakness of muscles of face and tongue	Poor articulation, indistinct speech	Weakness of muscles of neck
Myasthenic	Motor end plate	Indistinct, with fatigue and dysphonia, fluctuating severity. This can be tested by asking the patient to count upto 50; speech become indistinct due to fatigue after sometime.	Ptosis, diplopia, facial and neck muscles
Bulbar	Lower motor neuron lesion of brainstem	Indistinct, slurred often nasal. Ask the patient to speak "egg", he/she will pronounce it as "eng"	Dysphagia, diplopia, ataxia
Scanning	Cerebellum	Slurring, impaired timing and cadence, sing-song quality. This can be tested by asking the patient to say "artillery"; it will be pronounced as "ar-til-ler-y" meaning thereby each word is scanned.	Ataxia of the limb and gait, tremors of head/limbs
Spastic	Bilateral pyramidal tracts above the pons (pseudobulbar palsy)	Indistinct, slurred, imprecise pronunciation, breathy, mumbling. This can be tested by asking the patient to pronounce "British Constitution; it will be pronounced as "Brizf Conshishushon".	Increased/exaggerated reflexes, bilateral plantar extensor response and jaw jerk is present
Parkinsonism	Basal ganglia	Indistinct, rapid, stammering, quiet	Tremors, rigidity, slow shuffling gait

Table 15.10: Differentiation between two common types of aphasia

Feature	Wernicke's aphasia (posterior)	Broca's aphasia (anterior)
Qualities of spontaneous speech	<i>Fluent</i> , often rapid and effortless. Articulation is good. Sentences lack meaning and words are malformed (paraphasias) or invented (neologisms). Speech may be totally incomprehensible.	Nonfluent, slow with few words, laborious effort. Articulation is impaired but words are meaningful with nouns, transitive verbs and important adjectives. Small grammatical words are often dropped
Word comprehension	Impaired	Fair to good
Reading comprehension	Impaired	Good
Repetition	Impaired	Impaired
Naming	Impaired	Impaired, though patient recognises objects
Writing	Impaired	Impaired
Gesture language	Impaired	May be impaired
Associated lesion	No associated hemiparesis as pyramidal tracts are spared	Often associated hemiparesis due to pyramidal tract involvement
Site of lesion	Posterior in temporal lobe	Anterior in frontal lobe

Two common types of aphasia (Broca's and Wernicke's) are compared in the Table 15.10.

Conduction dysphasia is produced by lesions involving the association fibres (arcuate fasciculus) between Broca's and Wernicke's areas. In this disorder, the patient is unable to repeat phrases or chords spoken by the examiner.

Global aphasia: Patients with large lesions in middle cerebral artery territory over which speech areas are not testable or there are elements of both anterior (Broca) and posterior (Wernicke) dysphasias are said to have "global aphasia". Such patients have no language production.

Apraxia

The term '*apraxia*' means inability to perform certain acts or movements when asked to do so. Before testing apraxia, make sure that there is no sensory or motor deficit or ataxia. This can be tested by asking the patient to use objects to make or initiate certain movements. For instance, when given a pen and asked to write with it, the apraxic patient may fail to open the pen or to write with it or may show an inability to recognise the end to be used for writing. It is important to be sure that patient understands the command.

Apraxia results from damage to either the dominant hemisphere (left parietal cortex) or to parietal white matter of left or of both hemispheres, or from the disease of association fibres through the corpus callosum. When corpus callosum is involved, apraxia is limited to left side since the dominant left hemisphere has been disconnected from right side, but usually it is more commonly a bilateral disorder.

Examination of neck and cervical spine movements

The examination of neck has been dealt at different places i.e. general physical examination (Chapter 8), cardiovascular system (Chapter 11) and locomotor system examination (Chapter 17).

In neurology, the neck is tested for active and passive movements especially flexion and side rotation. The cervical movements are restricted in degenerative arthrosis of cervical spine (cervical spondylosis), a common disorder in the middle-aged and elderly. In addition to neck pain, stiffness and restricted movements are also present. These patients may develop radicular symptoms and long tract signs due to compression (spondylotic myelopathy). The neck movements have been discussed under testing of neck muscles.

Signs of meningeal irritation: In patients suspected of meningitis (e.g. fever, disturbed consciousness, neck stiffness), the following signs may be elicited.

- Neck stiffness (rigidity)
- Kernig's sign
- Brudzinski's sign

Neck stiffness is not specific to meningitis, indicates spasm of the paravertebral muscles, may be seen in cervical spine disease or meningeal irritation (e.g. inflammation of the meninges in meningitis or irritation of the meninges by blood in subarachnoid haemorrhage). Neck stiffness is a protective mechanism, occurs to reduce the pain during neck flexion in conscious patients, therefore, is lost in patients with deep coma. The neck stiffness occurs both in meningitis and meningism (Table 15.11).

Table 15.11: Difference between meningism and meningitis

Meningitis	Meningism
• Neck pain and rigidity both present	Only neck rigidity
• Kernig's sign more pronounced	Less pronounced
• Convulsions and coma common	Rare
• Cranial nerve palsies common	Rare
• Turbid CSF with cellular changes	Clear CSF with no cellular change

Neck stiffness, Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs occur due to protective muscular spasms, are lost in patients who lapse into deep coma or may not present in the early evolution of meningitis or subarachnoid haemorrhage.

Method

1. **Neck stiffness:** Ask the patient to lie supine and to relax the head onto a single pillow.
 - Support the occiput with both hands and gently flex the neck until chin touches the chest (Fig. 15.18)



Fig. 15.18: Method to test the neck stiffness

Neck rigidity or stiffness is said to be present if bending of neck produces pain and spasm of the neck muscles or it may be difficult to bend the neck or bending of neck produces lifting of the whole body like a log of wood.

2. **Brudzinski's sign:** As you flex the neck to test neck stiffness, watch the hips and knees in reaction to this manoeuvre. Normally they remain relaxed and motionless. In meningitis, there will be reflex flexion of hip or knee on one side or both sides. Similarly while flexing the thigh of one limb (leg sign) there is reflex flexion of other thigh to overcome pain in meningitis.

3. **Kernig's sign** (Fig. 15.19)

- Ask the patient to lie supine with both legs exposed and fully extended.
- Passively flex one leg at the hip and the knee.
- Now passively extend the knee while keeping the hip in flexion (Fig. 15.19A). Observe the other limb for reflex flexion - the Kernig's sign (positive sign means reflex flexion of opposite limb).
- Pain and increased resistance to extending the knee or flexion of the opposite limb indicate meningeal irritation.
- If conventional Kernig's sign is negative, you can further augment it by dorsiflexing the foot (Fig. 15.19B) and observing for the similar response. In some cases this manoeuvre may cause positive Kernig's sign.



Figs 15.19A and B: Testing for Kernig's sign

Examination of gait and balance

Before starting the formal neurological examination it is often possible to obtain a useful information by observing the patient's gait and balance. Additional information can be obtained from general physical examination.

Observe the patient's gait, posture, balance as soon as he/she walks across the room to come for examination. Analysis of patient's gait is an important element of disability. Patterns of weakness, lack of co-ordination and loss of proprioceptive sensations produce a range of abnormal gaits. Neurogenic gait disorders need to distinguished from skeletal disorder, the latter are usually characterised by pain producing an antalgic gait or limb.

As the gait depends on the muscle tone and co-ordination, hence, its examination is discussed under motor system examination.

Examination of cranial nerves

The olfactory (first) cranial nerve

It is concerned with sense of *smell* which is carried through sensory fibres from the nose (olfactory epithelium) to the olfactory bulb through the cribriform

plate and subsequently relayed in the olfactory area of the cerebral cortex, the uncus and parahippocampal gyrus. Thus, in temporal lobe epilepsy (uncinate fits), hallucinations of smell constitute an *aura*.

Testing the sense of smell (Fig. 15.20)

- First of all, check that nasal passages are clear.
- Each nostril is to be tested separately.
- Occlude each nostril by gentle pressure.
- Ask the patient with eyes closed to sniff and identify in turn the test substances.
- Use familiar and nonirritating odours. Commonly used test substances include vials of peppermint, vanilla, coffee, almond oil. Common bedside substances such as *soap, fruit or scent* can be used.

A normal person perceives odour on each side, and can identify it.



Fig. 15.20: Testing for the sense of smell

Abnormalities

Anosmia means loss of sense of smell, can occur normally due to obstruction of nasal passage (e.g. catarrh), hence, must be excluded before labelling it to be due to neurologic cause. The causes of anosmia are;

- Smoking, ageing and use of cocaine.
- Trauma or head injury causing damage to cribriform plate and subsequently the olfactory tract.
- Nasopharyngeal tumour (meningioma of olfactory groove).
- Carcinoma of paranasal air sinus.
- Kallmann's syndrome (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism).

Parosmia refers to perversion/alteration of smell i.e. pleasant odours seem offensive. It is sometimes of psychological origin but may occur following partial recovery of olfactory nerve from trauma. Certain drugs and sinus infection can cause it.

N.B. Olfactory hallucinations are characteristic of temporal lobe epilepsy, are often associated with involuntary smacking movements of lips and unusual feelings in the epigastrium.

The optic (second) cranial nerve

Anatomy of visual pathways

The optic nerves consist of axons of retinal ganglion cells, begins at the back of eye globe and each passes through the optic canal of the sphenoid bone to meet the opposite optic nerve to form optic chiasma. In the optic chiasma, the fibres from the medial half (nasal half) of each retina representing the temporal field cross; while those from the lateral (outer) half representing the nasal field remain on the same side. In this way, an optic tract consisting of fibres from outer half of the retina on the same side and inner half of the retina of opposite side is formed. Each optic tract then passes posteriorly to the lateral geniculate bodies of the same side. The optic radiation starts from the lateral geniculate bodies to the thalamus on each side, passes through the posterior limb of the internal capsule and project to primary visual cortex (calcarine cortex) in the occipital lobe. The fibres representing the upper visual fields pass through the white matter of the temporal lobe; whilst those representing the lower field pass through the parietal lobe. In this way, the left half of the field of vision is represented in the cortex of right hemisphere and vice versa (Fig. 15.21).

The impulses from the two homologous fields of the two eyes are represented in adjacent columns of neurons. The most peripheral part of the visual fields is represented anteriorly and macular field in the occipital pole.

Visual field defects are called *homonymous* if the same part of the visual field is affected in both the eyes. The lesions distal to optic chiasma produce *homonymous field defects*. The field defect may be *hemianopic* (i.e. one half of the visual field is lost) or *quadrantanopic* (one quadrant of the visual field is lost). Such field defects may be upper or lower depending on the fibres affected. If the visual field loss is not identical in both eyes, it is termed *incongruous*, this type of defect is seen in lesions of the optic tract. Homonymous hemianopia due to occipital lobe lesion tends to spare the central part of vision

(*macular sparing*). When sensory inattention is present, the patient will be able to detect single targets on both sides but will ignore objects on one side when two fields are stimulated simultaneously.

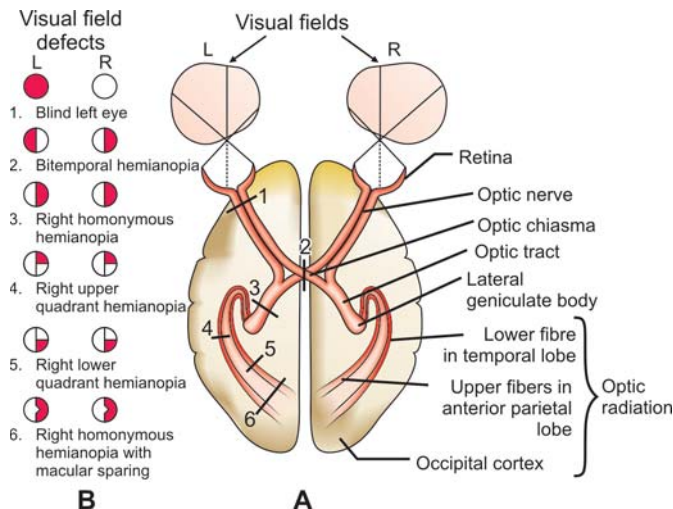


Fig. 15.21: Visual pathways (A) and visual field defects (B) Read the description from Table 15.12

Testing of second nerve

The visual acuity and visual fields must always be tested. Other aspects of visual perception including colour vision, visual localisation and visual recognition

may also be tested if appropriate. It is hereby stressed that while testing the second nerve for vision, any refractory error if present must be corrected and there should not be any evidence of other ocular disease that might impair vision. Each eye must be tested separately.

1. Visual acuity
 2. Colour vision
 3. Pupillary reflexes (read examination of eye)
- Read Chapter 3

Testing for the field of vision

The visual field means the extent of the vision when we look at an object. This field is limited both by area of retina and by the margins of the orbit, nose and the cheek. Therefore, to test the field of vision, the position of the eye carry utmost significance. The extent of field of vision varies as follow;

1. Larger the stimulus used the larger is the field of vision and vice versa.
2. Bright illuminated objects have larger field than dim object.
3. Moving objects used for field of vision are better perceived than stationary objects.

The visual field can be assessed by many methods but the simplest and the best though gives a rough estimate is *confirmation method* (Fig. 15.22). This method tests the field of vision of the patient with that of

Table 15.12: Clinical manifestations of visual field loss

Site	Causes	Symptoms	Visual field loss	Associated physical signs
Optic disc	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vascular disease (vasculitis) Glaucoma Inflammation 	Partial or complete loss of vision depending on site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Altitudinal field defect Arcuate scotoma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced acuity Visual distortion Abnormal retinal appearance
Optic nerve (1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Optic neuritis Sarcoidosis Tumour Leber's optic atrophy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Partial or complete visual loss in one eye Often painful eye Central vision particularly affected 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Central scotoma Paracentral scotoma Unilateral blindness 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced acuity Reduced colour vision Loss of direct light reflex Optic atrophy may be seen
Optic chiasma (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pituitary tumours Craniopharyngioma Sarcoidosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be none Rarely diplopia 	Bitemporal hemianopia	Pituitary function abnormalities
Optic tract (3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tumour Inflammatory disease 	Disturbed vision to one side of midline	Incongruous contralateral homonymous hemianopia	
Temporal lobe (4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stroke Tumour Inflammatory disease 	Disturbed vision to one side of midline	Contralateral homonymous upper quadrantanopia	Memory/language defect
Parietal lobe (5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stroke Tumour Inflammatory disease 	Disturbed vision to one side of midline. Bumping into things.	Contralateral homonymous lower quadrantanopia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contralateral sensory disturbance Optokinetic nystagmus
Occipital lobe (6)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stroke Tumour Inflammatory disease 	Disturbed vision to one side of midline. Bumping into things. Reading difficulty	Homonymous hemianopia with macular sparing	Damage to other structures supplied by posterior cerebral circulation



Fig. 15.22: Testing of visual field (confrontation methods)

examiner, hence the field of vision of the examiner should be normal. Both eyes are tested together for binocular vision and test each eye separately for monocular vision so as to exclude a field defect involving a part of the visual field of one eye only.

Method (Fig. 15.22)

- Sit in front of the patient at one meter distance
- To test the right eye of the patient, ask him/her to close his/her left eye with the left hand, and look steadily at your left eye.
- Cover your right eye with your right hand and look steadily at patient's right eye.
- Hold your left hand to the side at an arm's length in a plane midway between patient and yourself.
- Keep moving the index finger of left hand and bring it nearer until you yourself can see its movements. Now ask the patient whether he/she also sees the movements, making sure at the same time that patient is steadily fixing the gaze on your eye.
- If the patient is unable to see the finger, keep bringing it nearer until he/she does see it.
- Test the field in this way in every direction i.e upwards, downwards and sideways (right and left) using the extent of your own field for comparison.
- Map out peripheral fields by moving the finger across the visual field.
- *Red pin test:* This outlines the central field. This test can be performed by using a red pinhead held up in the field of vision of the patient in the same manner as described above. A central scotoma (central area of impaired vision) can be recognised by this method because the red or white pinhead cannot be perceived in the area of impaired vision (scotoma).

This method allows the patient's field as well as the size of the physiological blind spot to be compared precisely with the examiner field. A good rough method used in preliminary assessment is to ask the patient to compare the contour and colour of the palm of the examiner's hand held up in the right, left and central fields of each eye separately.

The normal binocular visual field extends 160° horizontally and 130° vertically with a blind spot 15° from fixation in the temporal field.

The physiological blind spot is situated on the temporal side of the central point of the visual field. It corresponds to the point of entry of optic nerve into the retina (optic disc) found slightly to nasal side of the macula when seen with ophthalmoscope. The blind spot sometimes appears to be absent in an uncooperative patient or if the patient is attempting to mislead the examiner.

Defects in the visual field are described as central or peripheral. A scotoma is a field defect surrounded by a seeing area.

The causes of visual field defects include; glaucoma, retinitis pigmentosa, the age related macular disease, cerebrovascular disease, carotid vascular disease, brain tumours and trauma.

Central scotomas involve fixation, occurs due to involvement of macula.

Ring scotomas are characteristics of retinitis pigmentosa (Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome)

Arcuate scotomas are diagnostic of glaucoma.

Altitudinal hemianopia is loss of upper or lower field in one eye, common in vascular disease of the optic nerve.

Perimetry

It means mapping out of field of vision by perimeter as a permanent record. Several types of perimeters are available which utilise the same principle. The patient is seated comfortably with chin placed on a chin rest adjusted so that the eye under test is oriented at the centre of hemispherical, lighted field upon which spots of lights of varying intensities, colours or sizes are projected or moved so as to detect the limits of the field and its intensity in various parts. In sophisticated modern perimeter, the examiner can see the patient's eye in order to detect any movement of the patient's eye away from fixation on the central point of hemispheric field. Simple perimeter consists only of a hemisphere arm along which stimulus is moved by a

mechanical method. Stationary, rather than moving, targets can be used for perimetry in the control field, using special perimeters with targets of variable luminence.

Perimetry charts out the limits of perception, hence, surveys the monocular field of vision. The central point on the chart corresponds to the point of fixation (Fig. 15.23). Around this point are arranged a series of more or less concentric lines each of which denotes equal visual acuity- an isopter.

Since the fixation point is not exactly central, hence the outer and inner fields are unequal. With an object of 5 mm diameter, the extent of average field of vision is 100° laterally, 60° superiorly and medially and 75° inferiorly. The field chart is depicted in the Figure 15.23.

The area within 30° from fixation is tested either with a sophisticated perimeter having first corrected any refractory error with lenses or by presenting objects against a 2 m² well-mounted black screen (Bjerrum's screen) at a distance from the patient of 1 or 2 meters. In the latter method the patient is seated comfortably with head and chin on the head rest while object of 1 cm in diameter is fixed to the screen on a level with the patient's eye. The blind spot is mapped out first using a white object of 10 mm; at a distance of 2 m the field should be round or circular and extend to about 25° to the edge of 2 m² screen. With a smaller or red object areas of blindness or defective perception should be sought around the blind spot especially between this area and the macula (the centrocaecal area), and in horizontal meridian which subsequently is transformed to a chart for recording in the patient's history sheet.

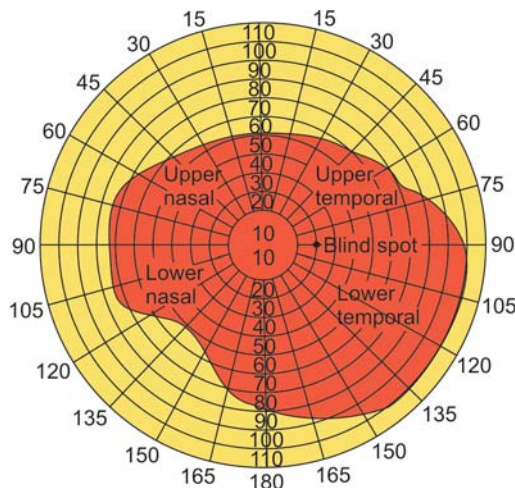


Fig. 15.23: The normal right field of vision using a white object of 5 mm diameter. The field is mapped out on a perimeter at a distance of 330 mm. Note the restriction of lower nasal field by the bridge of nose

The visual pathways and their field defects have already been depicted in Fig. 15.21.

The Oculomotor (III), the Trochlear (IV) and the Abducens (VI) cranial nerves

The 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves are called motor nerves for eye movements and also control the size of the pupils.

The third nerve

The oculomotor (III) nerve nucleus lies in the midbrain anterior to the preaqueductal gray matter. The nerve passes between the cerebral peduncles, then come in close contact with posterior communicating artery and enters the lateral wall of cavernous sinus. It then enters the orbital fossa through the *superior oblique fissure* where it subdivides into its terminal branches. The nerve innervates the *superior rectus* (SR), *medial rectus* (MR), *inferior rectus* (IR), *the inferior oblique* (IO) and *levator palpebral superioris muscles* (LPS). These muscles open the upper lid (LPS), move the eyeball upwards (SR, IO), downwards (IR) and medially (MR).

The parasympathetic fibres of the 3rd nerve arise from the *Edinger-Westpal nucleus* (rostral part of main 3rd nerve nucleus) and supply the sphincter muscles of the iris which cause constriction of pupil, and the ciliary muscle, which is responsible for focussing the lens for near vision.

The fourth nerve

The trochlear (4th) nerve arises from the nucleus in the caudal midbrain. The fibres decussate before leaving the midbrain just below the inferior colliculus. The nerve passes forward and laterally in relation to the rostral pons. It comes out of the free edge of tentorium and enters the cavernous sinus and then pass forwards to superior oblique fissure to enter the eye where it innervates the superior oblique (SO) muscle, contraction of which causes downward movement of the eyeball when the eye is adducted.

The sixth nerve

The abducens (6th) nerve originates from the nucleus situated in the midline in the caudal part of the pons. It hooks around the facial nerve nucleus and comes out between medulla and pons. It has a long intracranial course, hence, is liable to get compressed under the effect of raised intracranial pressure producing diplopia on lateral gaze. After exit from the pons, it enters the cavernous sinus and lies in direct relation to the internal

carotid artery before it enters the eye through superior oblique fissure to supply the lateral rectus (LR) muscle, the contraction of which causes abduction of the eye.

The ocular motility is dependent on;

1. *Integrity of 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves.*
2. *Medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF)* which interconnects the nuclei, also receives impulses from the vestibular nuclei, cerebellum and para-abducens nucleus- also called *the nucleus of the paramedian pontine reticular formation (PPRF)*. The MLF lies in the brainstem, provides a mechanism by which the optical axes remain parallel or conjugate when the eyes are turned to one side or when there is movement of the head.
3. *Supranuclear connections (Fig. 15.24):* These connections control the upward, downward and lateral gaze. The gaze means movement of both the eyes in one direction (conjugate gaze). The involvement of these connections leads to paralysis of conjugate gaze.

Sympathetic fibres which dilate the pupils and innervate the LPS also, arise as preganglionic fibres from the hypothalamus. They pass through the brainstem to emerge through the ventral roots of the first 2 or 3 segments of thoracic spinal cord and ascend through the sympathetic chain to the superior cervical ganglion.

Post-ganglionic fibres ascend in carotid neural plexus and pass through the cavernous sinus into the orbit with the ophthalmic artery to terminate in the dilator muscle of the pupil. In the area 8 of the frontal lobe, there is frontal eye field (FEF). When this area is stimulated, the eyes turn conjugately away from the side of stimulation.

Testing of ocular movements

The six external ocular muscles move the eyeball in different directions (Fig. 15.25).

Method

- Inspect the eye for any abnormality.
- Hold the head of the patient in neutral position and test for ocular movements with both the eyes open.
- Look for squint and nystagmus.
- Test the movement by asking the patient to look up and down and to the right and left from the mid-position of gaze. Test the up and down movements in full adduction and in full abduction also.

The eyes normally move 50° medially, 30° upwards and 50° downwards.

- Now ask the patient to fix gaze on the examiner's finger and to report if double vision occurs while

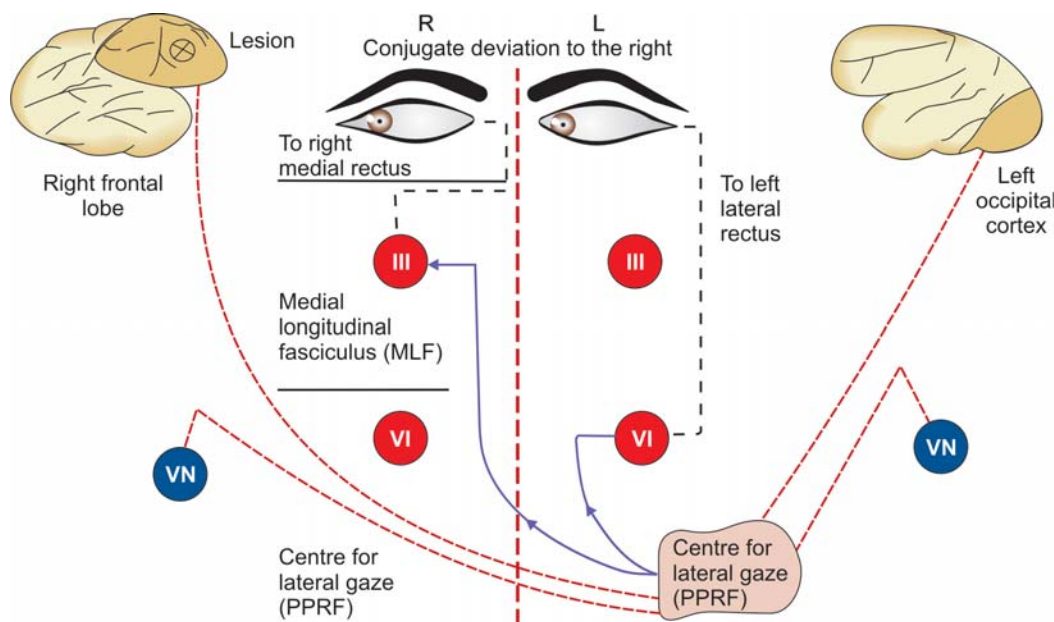
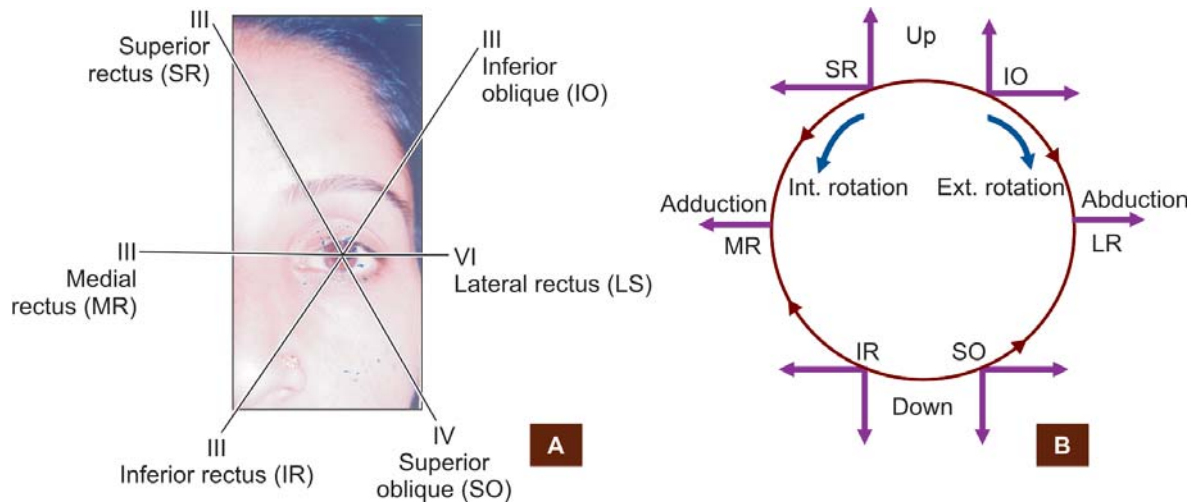


Fig. 15.24: Conjugate lateral gaze (A) Central pathway (diagram). Impulses from right frontal cortex drive the left centre for lateral gaze situated in paramedian pontine reticular nuclei (PPRN) and also from the occipital cortex and vestibular nuclei. Destructive frontal lobe lesion produces conjugate deviation of eyes to the side of lesion, because impulses thus generated from one side of cortex for lateral gaze pass to both ipsilateral VI nerve nucleus and contralateral 3rd nerve nucleus. Through medial longitudinal fasciculus



Figs 15.25A and B: Functions of external ocular muscles (left eye). The superior rectus and inferior rectus act as elevator and depressor alone when eye is in abduction and inferior oblique and superior oblique act in similar way when the eye is in adduction

following the movement of the finger held at 60 cm away.

- Move the finger up and down, then to the right and up and down, and then to the left and up and down. If necessary, repeat the examination, one eye at a time, to distinguish muscle paralysis and gaze paralysis.
- Record the direction of diplopia if present and where maximal separation of the images occurs.
- If diplopia is present, ask the patient to close one eye at a time to identify which eye is producing the false image.
- To test convergence, bring the finger from a distance towards the tip of the nose and ask the patient to focus on it.
- Look for nystagmus while testing the ocular movements.
- Record the direction of nystagmus (vertical, horizontal, rotatory) and the direction of gaze in which it is most marked.
- Note the direction of fast component of nystagmus, whether it changes direction with direction of gaze and whether the degree of nystagmus is different in each eye.

Common abnormalities

Abnormalities of palpebral fissures

Normally the palpebral fissures are symmetrical.

Narrowing of the palpebral fissure occurs due to ptosis (3rd nerve palsy or Horner's syndrome) or due to local lid disorders.

Widening of fissures occur in Grave's disease or exophthalmos due to any cause.

Inequality of size of pupils (anisocoria)—Read examination of the eyes (Chapter 5).

Disorders of ocular movements. There are many neurological causes of disordered eye movements such as ocular myopathies and diseases of myoneural junction (myasthenia gravis), metabolic encephalopathies (toxicity of phenytoin and carbamazepine). The classification of disorders of ocular movements based on the type of neurological involvement is given in the Table 15.13 and causes of 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerve involvement are depicted in Table 15.14.

Third nerve palsy (Fig. 15.26) It produces:

- *Unilateral ptosis:* It means drooping of the upper eye lid on the side involved due to paralysis of levator palpebral superioris leading to narrowing of palpebral fissure.
- *Dilated and fixed pupil* on the side involved due to involvement of parasympathetic fibres.
- *External strabismus:* The eye is displaced downward and laterally due to paralysis of superior, medial and inferior recti and inferior oblique. Only movements possible are lateral (due to intact lateral rectus) and downward (due to intact superior oblique).

The common causes of an isolated 3rd nerve palsy include; diabetes, posterior communicating artery

aneurysm, pituitary or other tumours, trauma and vascular disease. The third nerve lesion may be incomplete depending on the location and type of lesion. Lesions due to diabetes or vascular disease tend not to involve the pupil, in contrast to compressive lesions (e.g. aneurysm).

Fourth (trochlear) nerve palsy: It produces:

- *Impaired downwards movement.* On attempting to look downwards in mid-position of gaze the eyeball is

Table 15.13: Classification of disorders of eye movements based on the site of neurological involvement

1. Nuclear and infranuclear lesions (individual nerve paralysis)
• 3rd nerve palsy
• 4th nerve palsy
• 6th nerve palsy
2. Supranuclear lesions (above the brainstem or cerebellar or basal ganglia lesion)
A. Conjugate gaze palsy
• Lateral gaze palsy
• Upward gaze palsy
• Downward gaze palsy
• Internuclear gaze palsy
B. Complex supranuclear gaze palsies
• Convergence nystagmus
C. Cerebellar diseases
• Nystagmus
D. Basal ganglia lesions
• Slowed and interrupted smooth pursuit movements



Figs 15.26A to C: Left third cranial nerve palsy (A) **Complete:** note the marked ptosis producing closure of the eye (B) **Partial:** There is drooping of upper eyelid covering a part of cornea (C) The ptosis is true (eyelid can not be lifted completely due to right 3rd nerve palsy)



Fig. 15.27: Abducens nerve (VI CN) palsy on left side. Note that left eye cannot be abducted beyond midline

rotated outwards by the unopposed action of inferior rectus.

- *Diplopia* is the main complaint particularly on looking down and during reading. There is rarely a visible squint. The patient will often adopt a compensatory head tilt away from the side of the lesion.

Isolated lesions of 4th nerve palsy are uncommon and include diabetes, hypertension, and head trauma. Damage to the nerve may occur in superior oblique tendon through which it passes following head injury, ENT surgery and in patients with rheumatoid arthritis.

Sixth (abducens) nerve (Fig. 15.27) palsy. It produces;

- *Inability to move the eye outwards* (laterally) and diplopia (double vision) occurs on looking laterally.
- *Convergent squint* visible because of unopposed action of the medial rectus innervated by 3rd nerve.

Isolated 6th nerve palsy is common due to its long intracranial course (a false localising sign i.e. the nerve is displaced or compressed without actual involvement). The paralysis may be complete or partial. The common causes include, head injury, diabetes, chronic SOM (Gradenigo's syndrome).

The 6th nerve palsy may be a false localising sign in raised intracranial pressure due to any cause.

As already discussed, in addition to isolated lesions, the 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerve may be involved in combinations (Table 15.14) and are usually associated with other features.

Supranuclear 3rd, 4th and 6th nerve lesions

- A. **Conjugate gaze paralysis.** Normally the movements of the two eyes are symmetrical, so that the visual

Table 15.14: The site, pathology and associated features of 3rd, 4th and 6th nerve palsies

Site	Common pathology	Nerve(s) involved	Associated features
Brain stem	Infarction Haemorrhage Demyelination Intrinsic tumour	3rd (mid-brain)-Weber's syndrome 6th (ponto-medullary junction) Millard-Gubler-Fovoulli syndrome	Contralateral pyramidal signs Ipsilateral lower motor neuron 7th palsy (ponto-medullary junction) Other brain-stem/cerebellar signs
Intracranial course	Meningitis (infective/malignant) Raised intracranial pressure Aneurysms Cerebello-pontine angle tumour Trauma	3rd, 4th and/or 6th 3rd (uncal herniation) 3rd (posterior communicating artery) 6th (basilar artery) 6th	Signs of meningitis Signs of raised ICT Pain Features of subarachnoid haemorrhage 8th, 7th, 5th nerves involvement Ipsilateral cerebellar signs Other features of trauma
Cavernous sinus	Infection/thrombosis Carotid artery aneurysm Corticocavernous fistula	3rd, 4th and/or 6th (See the Fig. 15.16)	May be 5th cranial nerve involvement also Pupil may be fixed, mid-position (sympathetic plexus on carotid may also be affected)
Superior orbital fissure	Tumour (e.g. sphenoid wing meningioma), Granuloma	3rd, 4th and/or 6th	May be proptosis, chemosis
Orbit	Vascular (e.g. diabetes, vasculitis) Infections Tumour Granuloma Trauma	3rd, 4th and/or 6th	Pain Pupil often spared in vascular 3rd nerve palsy

axes meet at a point of fixation of the eyes. This is called *conjugate ocular movements*. Supranuclear (upper motor neuron) lesions lead to paralysis of conjugate movement of the eyes. The causes of gaze palsy are given in the Box 15.11.

Box 15.11: COMMON CAUSES OF GAZE PALSY	
Gaze palsy	Causes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upwards and downwards gaze Upwards and downwards gaze with Parkinsonism or dystonia Failure of upward gaze with loss of light reflex but preservation of accommodation reflex Lateral gaze 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Space occupying lesions around the pineal gland and tectal region. Aqueductal stenosis Hydrocephalus Steele-Richardson-Olzewski syndrome Parinaud's syndrome (e.g. lesion of pineal gland or ventral midbrain) Lesions of frontal eye field (FEF) in pons. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Destructive lesions (haemorrhage, cause conjugate eye deviation towards the side of lesion (patient

Contd....

	looks towards his lesion).
	- Irritative lesions (e.g. epileptic fit) cause deviation of eyes and head opposite to the side involved (healthy side)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internuclear ophthalmoplegia (Fig. 15.28) 	Lesion of the <i>medial longitudinal fasciculus</i> (MLF) in the midbrain or upper pons. On attempting lateral gaze, there is weakness of adducting eye and nystagmus of abducting eye. Causes include multiple sclerosis, vascular disorders and tumours of the brainstem.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One-and-a-half syndrome 	A lesion involving the PPRF (parapontine reticular formation) and the MLF on the same side. There is failure of lateral conjugate deviation in one eye and adduction of the same eye on the side of the lesion. There is nystagmus on abduction (lateral movement) of the opposite eye. Thus as the name indicates one eye will not move at all horizontally and the other eye only in abduction i.e. one-and-a-half movements are paralysed.

Contd....

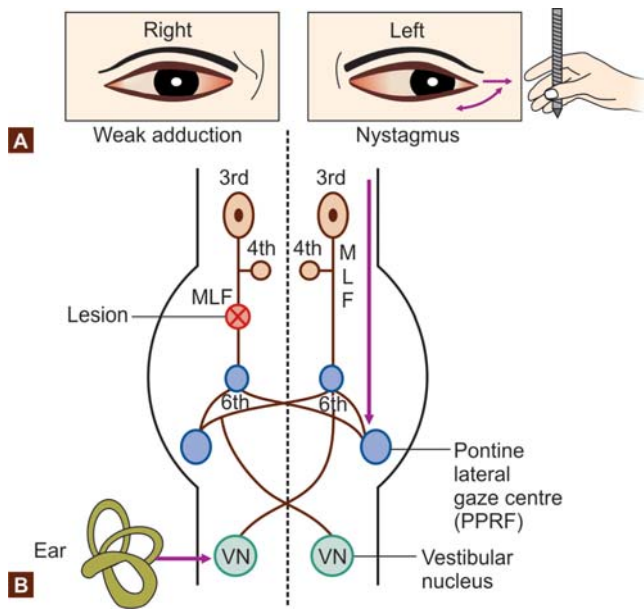


Fig. 15.28: Right internuclear ophthalmoplegia; (Diagrammatic illustration). (A). On attempted lateral gaze to the left produces weak adduction of right eye and left abducting eye shows nystagmus. The lesion \otimes lies in right medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF). A lesion in or ear to the PPRF causes impaired conjugate lateral gaze to the same side. B. Inter-connection of 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves with the PPRF via MLF

B. Other saccadic and pursuit gaze movements. The *saccadic* (rapid, programmed conjugate fixation movements) and *pursuit* (following) gaze movements can be tested separately by asking the patient to move his/her eyes rapidly from fixation on one finger to another held about 30° away in horizontal plane and by asking him/her to follow a slowly moving finger across visual space in the same or in the vertical plane. In *Huntington's Chorea* and *Parkinsonism*, pursuit movements are slowed or interrupted by slowed saccades.

C. Nystagmus - Read examination of eye (Chapter 5).

D. Squint (Strabismus) - Read Chapter 5

The fifth (trigeminal) cranial nerve

The trigeminal nerve is mainly sensory but contains motor fibres for muscles of mastication, hence, is a mixed nerve.

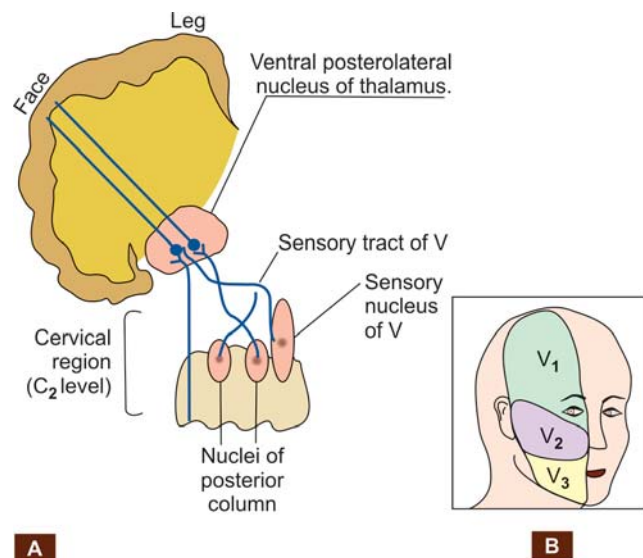
The *sensory root* takes origin from the nerve cells in the *trigeminal (Gasserian) ganglion* and enters the lateral surface of the pons at its middle. The principal sensory nucleus and the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve lie in the pons near the floor of the 4th ventricle; the sensory nucleus is lateral to motor and receives fibres for the

sensations of touch, joint position sense and two point discrimination sense. Another sensory nucleus (bulbospinal nucleus or tract) extends from the pons through the medulla to second cervical segment (C2) of the spinal cord before ascending in the medial lemniscus. This nucleus receives fibres for the sensation of pain and thermal sensation. Owing to inversion of the fibres going through this nucleus, the upper part of face is represented in the caudal part of nucleus (upside-down representation).

The motor fibres arise from the motor nucleus in the upper pons and join the mandibular branch to supply the muscles of mastication (masseter and pterygoid muscles).

Immediately distal to trigeminal ganglion, the nerve divides into three separate divisions (Fig. 15.29) through which sensations are transmitted from the face, mouth, lips, eyes, forehead and anterior part of the scalp as well as dura of the anterior and middle cranial fossae.

The first (ophthalmic) division after arising from *Gasserian ganglion* passes through the cavernous sinus and superior orbital fissure, supplies sensations to the skin of upper nose and eyelid, forehead and scalp (Fig 15.30B) as well as the cornea, conjunctiva, lacrimal gland, parts of mucosa of the frontal, sphenoidal and ethmoidal sinuses and upper part of nasal cavity. The lesion of the ophthalmic branch results in loss of sensations from the areas described above. There is loss of corneal sensation and corneal reflex. Trophic changes in the cornea may develop in the lesion called *neuropathic keratitis*.



Figs 15.29A and B: Fifth cranial nerve. A. Sensory nucleus of Vth nerve extending upto C2 (cervical cord) B. Peripheral distribution of Vth nerve to the face

The second (maxillary) division (V2) arising from the *Gasserian ganglion* comes out of the base of skull through foramen rotundum to supply the cheek, skin of temple, the side of nose, upper lip, mucous membrane of mouth, roof of pharynx, gums, teeth and palate of the upper jaw on same side. The lesion of this division leads to loss of sensations from the areas described above as well as loss of palatal reflex.

The third (mandibular) division (V3) after arising from the *Gasserian ganglion* comes out of the skull through foramen ovale and supplies sensations to teeth and gums of the lower jaw, mucosa of cheek, floor of the mouth, anterior two-thirds of the tongue, temporo-mandibular joint, external and internal ear, and the skin of lower lip and jaw on the same side. It supplies the parasympathetic fibres to the salivary glands through its lingual branch to chorda tympani of VII nerve.

The motor branch of the 5th nerve passes through the mandibular division (V₃) and innervates muscles of mastication (the masseters, temporalis, medial and lateral pterygoids, the anterior belly of digastric) on same side. It also supplies the mylohyoid, tensor palatini and tensor tympani muscles.

Testing of the 5th nerve

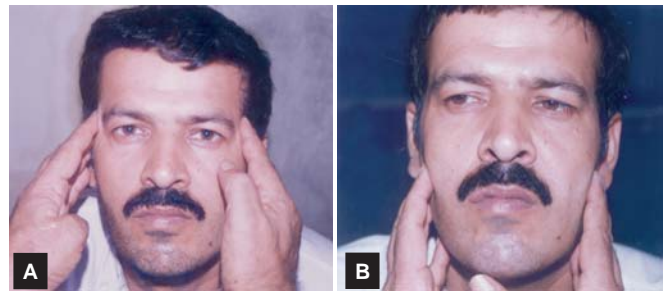
The sensations

The sensations from the peripheral parts supplied by the 5th nerve are tested in the usual way;

- Test light touch and pain sensation by using wisp of cotton wool and pin-prick respectively. The temperature sensation can be tested by using test tube containing warm and cold water.
- Two point discrimination on the upper and lower lips is tested by using calipers. Normally a separation of 3-4 mm can be detected.
- Check sensations in each divisions of the nerve separately comparing both the sides i.e. the right with the left.

The motor function

- Inspect the muscles of mastication for wasting above zygomatic arch for temporalis and below for masseters.
- Palpate the masseters (Fig. 15.30A) and temporalis (Fig. 15.30B) for tone, bulk and symmetry as the patient clenches the teeth.
- Ask the patient to open the jaw against resistance (hand is placed below the jaw to resist opening). Difficulty in opening the jaw indicates weakness of pterygoids, mylohyoid and anterior belly of digastric.



Figs 15.30A and B: Testing the motor part of Vth cranial nerve. (A) Palpation of both temporalis muscles for tone, B. Palpation of both masseters for tone. Tone is tested during contraction of these muscles during clenching of teeth

The reflexes

1. Corneal reflex (Fig. 15.31)

- Make the patient to sit comfortably. Ask him to look at the ceiling or into the distance or to the opposite side.
- Twist a light wisp of cotton into a fine hair and lightly touch the lateral margin of the cornea.
- Observe the presence of direct and consensual corneal reflex. If the reflex is present, the patient blinks.

Touching of the cornea in a normal person produces brisk contraction of the orbicularis oculi (e.g. blinking). A unilateral stimulus produces bilateral reflex blinking i.e. the direct and consensual responses due to bilateral innervation of the reflex through Vth nerve.

2. The jaw jerk

The jaw jerk similar to deep tendon jerk, is elicited by tapping with percussion hammer.

- Ask the patient to half-open the mouth.



Fig 15.31: A unilateral stimulus to cornea produces bilateral blinking

- Put your left index finger over the lower jaw.
- Tap the finger with percussion hammer and observe for the closure of the jaw. This is often not elicitable in young persons.

The positive response normally is brisk contraction of the jaw muscles producing closure of the jaw. Both afferent and efferent pathways are subserved by the Vth nerve. A brisk jaw jerk indicates bilateral UMN lesion above the level of pons (e.g. multiple sclerosis, motor neuron disease).

Common abnormalities

1. The signs of trigeminal nerve lesion

- (i) Diminution of the corneal reflex may often be the first sign of a fifth nerve lesion.
- (ii) A complete fifth nerve lesion produces;
 - Unilateral sensory loss on the face, tongue and buccal mucosa.
 - The jaw deviates to the side of the lesion when the mouth is opened due to unilateral pterygoid weakness. When patient tries to move the jaw from side to side there is difficulty in moving it to contralateral side.

Note: Facial asymmetry resulting from VII nerve palsy may give rise to apparent deviation of jaw which is differentiated from 7th nerve lesion by preservation of side to side movement of the jaw.

- (iii) Central (brain stem) lesion of the lower trigeminal nerve nuclei produces a characteristic circumoral sensory loss with other signs of brainstem involvement.
- (iv) When spinal nucleus of the Vth nerve alone is involved, the sensory loss is limited to pain and temperature on the side of the face involved but touch is preserved (dissociated sensory loss).

Causes of trigeminal nerve lesions (Table 15.15)

Table 15.15: Trigeminal nerve disorders

1. Brainstem (nuclear or infranuclear)	
• Multiple sclerosis	• Glioma
• Stroke	• Syringobulbia
2. Cerebellopontine angle (VII and VIII nerve functions also involved)	
• Acoustic neuroma	• Secondaries
• Meningioma	
3. Apex of the petrous temporal bone (Gasserian ganglion lesions)	
• Trigeminal neuroma	• Herpes zoster
• Chronic SOM (the combination of Vth and VIth with mastoiditis is called <i>Gradenigo's syndrome</i>)	

Contd....

Contd....

- 4. Cavernous sinus** (3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves are also involved)
 - Aneurysm of internal carotid artery
 - Extension of a pituitary neoplasm
 - Cavernous sinus thrombosis
 - Secondary neoplasm
- 5. Peripheral nerve lesions** (patchy sensory loss or loss of sensations over a branch of a division or a division of 5th may be involved)
 - Nasopharyngeal carcinoma
 - Trauma
 - Leprosy
 - Sarcoidosis
 - Guillain-Barre syndrome
 - Collagen vascular diseases
 - Idiopathic trigeminal neuropathy

Facial pain

Trigeminal nerve is a sensory nerve for face, therefore, irritative lesions of 5th cranial nerve or its branches may lead to facial pain (trigeminal neuralgia). Sometimes, pain may be referred from other sites such as from teeth, temporomandibular joint (rheumatoid arthritis), ears (otitis externa) etc. Atypical facial pain can occur without any reason. The causes of facial pains are given in the Box 15.12.

Box 15.12: DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF FACIAL PAIN

- Trigeminal neuralgia
- Migrainous neuralgia
- Post-zoster neuralgia
- Psychogenic (atypical facial pain)
- Temporomandibular arthritis (rheumatoid arthritis)
- Otitis externa
- Malocclusion of teeth

Trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux)

It is characterised by facial pain of idiopathic origin. In some cases, an aberrant loop or artery may press the rootlets of trigeminal nerve as they emerge from the pons. It is common in middle aged and elderly.

Facial pain is the *hallmark* of the disease which occurs in bouts or paroxysms, is sharp or lancinating in character and radiates to territory of one or more sensory divisions of a trigeminal nerve or may be limited to a branch of a division such as infra-orbital branch etc. (branch trigeminal neuralgia). The pain disturbs routine activity, is triggered by touching, washing of face, brushing of teeth, shaving, cold breeze, eating, talking and application of lotions and cosmetics. Paroxysms of the pain are transitory and last for few seconds. The

course of the diseases is marred by relapses and remissions which become less frequent as the disease advances.

The second and third divisions are affected most followed by first: There is no sensory loss.

If there is sensory loss or motor symptoms or signs accompanying trigeminal neuralgia, then it is secondary to certain neurological diseases such as multiple sclerosis or meningoma of trigeminal nerve. The characteristics of other causes of facial pain are summarised in the Table 15.16.

The seventh (facial) cranial nerve

Anatomy and physiology

The facial nerve is a *mixed nerve*.

- It innervates the muscles of face concerned with expression.
- It forms an efferent limb of corneal reflex (afferent being the Vth nerve) and also the palmomental reflex, the pout or snouth reflex, the nasopalpebral reflex (glabellar tap) and the efferent limb of stapedius reflex. These reflexes have also been discussed under primitive reflexes.
- It supplies secretory motor fibres (parasympathetic

fibres) to the lacrimal glands (producing tears) and submandibular glands (producing saliva)

- It carries taste sensation from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue through the chorda tympani branch.

The motor nucleus of the 7th nerve lies in the pons, its fibres hook around the 6th nerve nucleus in the pons, and then comes out of lateral pontomedullary junction.

The *nervus intermedius* contains parasympathetic fibres (secretomotor) from the superior salivary nucleus and taste fibres which have their cell bodies in geniculate ganglion and synapse centrally with nucleus solitarius (gustatory nucleus). It comes out of pons along with 7th nerve, travels in between 7th and 8th nerve to internal auditory meatus. The facial nerve along with *nervus intermedius* pass through the facial canal of the temporal bone in the middle ear, emerges from the skull at stylomastoid foramen. In the middle ear, it gives off a branch to the stapedius muscle (which dampens all tympanic vibrations, hence its involvement produces hyperacusis). After leaving the skull, the 7th nerve supplies fibres for the corneal reflex and the other reflexes. The secretomotor branch passes to the pterygopalatine ganglion and supplies the lacrimal gland through the greater petrosal nerve and tongue through the chorda tympani.

Table 15.16: Differential diagnosis of trigeminal neuralgia

Cause of facial pain	Characteristics
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trigeminal neuralgia • <i>Migrainous neuralgia</i> (cluster headache) 	<p>Already discussed</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unilateral bouts of pain around one eye, cheek or forehead. The pain is throbbing, severe, and disturbing and may show nocturnal frequency. It is common in males of middle age. • Lacrimation and nasal congestion, conjunctiva is injected on the affected side. • The neuralgia occurs in clusters (repeated for a number of weeks, followed by a respite for a number of months before another cluster occurs).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Atypical facial pain 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dull, boring ache or pain over the face which is ill-defined and non-localised • May be unilateral or bilateral • Occurs either in too anxious or too depressed patients
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temporomandibular arthritis (Costen's syndrome) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Common in elderly females • Pain is severe, aching, gets intensified by chewing or movements of the jaw • Mostly unilateral and limited to temporomandibular joint. It is due to rheumatoid arthritis.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Malocclusion of teeth 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pain over the face and jaw, may be referred to other areas • Intensified by chewing or movements of the jaw • Dental examination will reveal malocclusion
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Post-zoster neuralgia (Fig. 15.32). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • History of severe facial pain or burning of the face. The pain is increased by contact or movement. • History of herpes zoster infection over the face with typical vesiculopapular eruptions • Dermal scars of herpetic lesions may be present • It is unilateral, may involve any division of the Vth nerve • Sensory disturbances such as paraesthesias or slight sensory loss may be present

Table 15.17: Causes of facial weakness depending of the site involved

Site	Causes	Features
Pons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tumours • Vascular lesion • Demyelination 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 6th, 7th cranial nerve with contralateral hemiplegia (Millard-Gubler syndrome) • Pin-point pupil on the side involved • Ataxic nystagmus • Internuclear ophthalmoplegia
Cerebello-pontine angle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Acoustic neuroma • Meningioma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 7th and 8th nerve palsy on the side involved • Loss of sensation over anterior 2/3rd of tongue due to involvement of nervus intermedius
Internal acoustic meatus (petrous temporal bone)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bell's palsy • Trauma • Otitis media • Ramsay Hunt syndrome • Tumour 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 7th nerve palsy • 8th nerve palsy • Hyperacusis (e.g. sound appear louder than normal) due to involvement of stapedius muscle. • Loss of taste from anterior 2/3rd of tongue
Stylomastoid foramen or within the face	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parotid gland tumour • Mumps • Sarcoidosis • Trauma • Guillain-Barre syndrome • Bell's palsy • Trauma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paralysis of all the muscles of the face • Taste and lacrimation is preserved



Fig. 15.32: Post-zoster neuralgia. Note the typical lesion (arrow) that was associated with severe pain

Sites of involvement of VIIth nerve

The sites of involvement and their features are summarised in Table 15.17.

Symptoms and signs of facial nerve palsy

These are summarised in Table 15.18.

Examination of VIIth nerve

The VIIth nerve can only be tested at the face (testing of




Table 15.18: Symptoms and signs of facial nerve paralysis

Symptoms	Signs
Dribbling or drooling of saliva from the angle of the mouth on the affected side	Angle of the mouth droops on the affected side on clenching the teeth. Facial asymmetry present due to paresis of facial muscles
Creases of face or skin folds are effaced or blunted on affected side	Nasolabial fold is effaced on the affected side when patient is asked to show his/her teeth
Forehead is unfurrowed (expressionless)	Patient is unable to make furrows on the affected side on looking upwards.
Difficulty in closing the affected eye. There may spasms of facial muscles	Cornea is visible on affected side as patient is asked to close the eyes, hence, is liable to exposure keratitis
Food collects between teeth and cheeks on the side involved	Patient has difficulty to blow out the cheeks

facial muscles only Table 15.19, Fig. 15.33). The taste sensation is tested from anterior two-thirds of the tongue.

Secretomotor function of the lacrimal gland is only tested by ophthalmologists doing a *Schirmer test*. Testing of decreased saliva production owing to the denervation of submandibular gland is not performed clinically.

Table 15.19: Testing of the facial nerve (Fig. 15.33A to E)

Figure	Method
 <p>Fig. 15.33A: Normal person can clench the teeth without any abnormality of angles</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ask the patient to clench the teeth <p>In facial nerve palsy, the angle of the mouth droops on the affected side.</p>
 <p>Fig. 15.33B: A normal person can make furrows</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hold the head of the patient. Ask the patient to look upwards (e.g. make furrows over the forehead.) <p>A patient with facial paralysis can not make furrows over the forehead on the affected side.</p>
 <p>Fig. 15.33C: Normal closure of the eyes against resistance. Eyes can not be opened normally</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ask the patient to close both the eyes as tightly as possible. <p>The eyelids on the affected side do not cover the eye ball properly and firmly.</p> <p>Now try to open the eyes with the fingers (Fig. 15.33C)</p> <p>In facial nerve palsy, eye on the affected side can be opened without any resistance as compared to healthy side</p>
 <p>Fig. 15.33D: Normal person can blow out the cheeks. Air does not leak on pressure applied with fingers on both the sides</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ask the patient to blow out his/her cheeks. <p>In facial palsy, the affected side will not blow out due to leakage of air through the angle of the mouth on the involved side or he/she incompletely blows out the affected cheek as compared to healthy side.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Now ask the patient to hold the cheeks in fully blown out position. Press both the cheeks between index finger and thumb of your both hands (Fig. 15.33D). <p>In facial palsy, the muscle of the cheek on the involved side is weak and flabby, air leaks out on pressure applied on the involved side.</p>
 <p>Fig. 15.33E: A normal person can whistle</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ask the patient to whistle. (Fig. 15.33E) <p>In facial palsy, patient is not able to whistle.</p>

Testing of taste sensation

- Instruct the patient not to speak or retract the tongue during examination as this will dissipate the liquid substance onto the opposite side of the tongue as well as to its posterior one-third.
- Now gently hold the protuded tongue with a swab.
- Put a drop of testing substance (e.g. sweet, salt, bitter or sour) on the anterior two thirds of each side of the tongue in turn.
- Ask the patient to identify the substance by pointing

to the appropriate word written on a piece of paper / or card.

Testing for lacrimation (Schirmer's test)

Put a piece of special blotting paper under the lower eyelid and remove it after 5 minutes. Normally at least 10 mm of blotting paper will be dampened (wet) by evoked tear secretion. In facial nerve palsy, there is diminished or absence of tear secretion.

Common abnormalities

Upper motor neuron vs lower motor neuron lesion of 7th nerve (are discussed in the Table 15.20 and Fig. 15.34).

Facial weakness: It could be due to 7th nerve paralysis or diseases of myoneural junction or muscle (myopathy). It may be unilateral or bilateral. The causes of facial weakness are given in the Table 15.21.

Table 15.20: Facial nerve paralysis/palsy Upper motor neuron (Fig. 15.34A) Lower motor neuron (Fig. 15.34B)

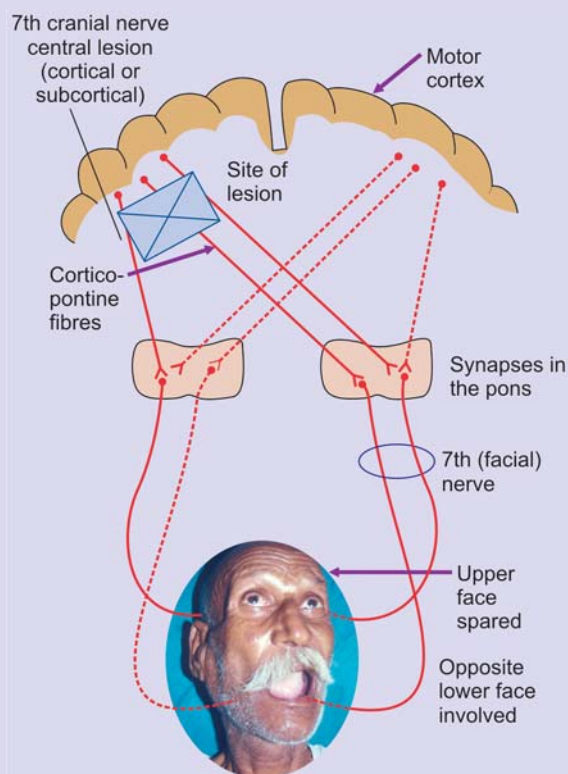


Fig. 15.34A: UMN paralysis of VII cranial nerve. A-Pathways of innervation and site of lesion (rectangle with crossed bars). Upper face uninvolved due to bilateral representation, opposite lower face involved

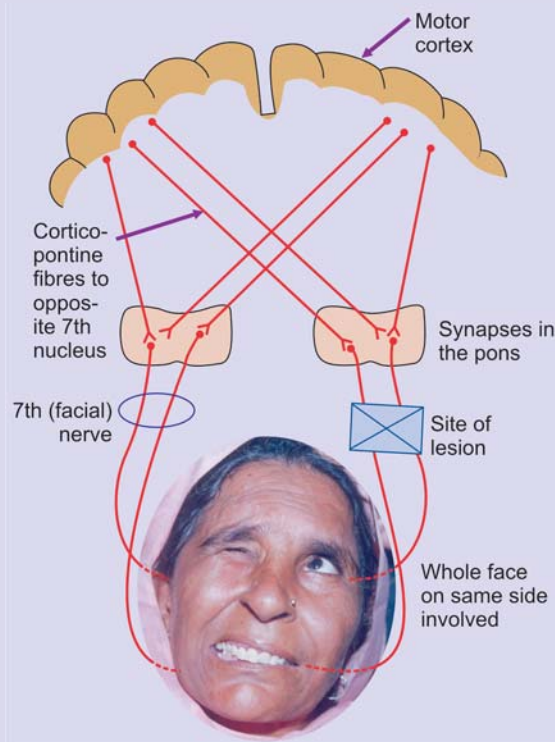


Fig. 15.34B: LMN paralysis of VII cranial nerve. A. Pathway of innervation of face and site of lesion (square with crossed bar)

Upper motor neuron

- Lesion is above the pons
- Corticonuclear fibres are involved
- Facial palsy/paralysis is limited to lower part of the face, the upper part is spared due to its bilateral representation
- Patient can make furrows on forehead on looking upwards
- The eye closure though paretic is well preserved while corner of the mouth will droop, saliva may dribble and the nasolabial fold is flattened on the affected side of the face
- Smiling is preserved
- Taste is normal

Lower motor neuron

- Lesion is in the pons or below the pons
- 7th nerve itself or its nucleus is involved
- Facial paralysis involves all the muscles of the face
- Furrows are lost on forehead on the affected side
- The patient is unable to close the eye; and impaired blinking, loss of nasolabial folds and drooling of saliva from the mouth is present
- Smiling is involved because of paresis of emotional facial movements
- Taste to anterior two-thirds of tongue is impaired if the chorda tympani branch is damaged

Contd....

Contd....

- It is invariably associated with uncrossed hemiplegia (supranuclear 7th palsy and hemiplegia are on the same side) due to involvement of contralateral cortical or subcortical pathways
- Usually secondary to some cause e.g. vascular, multiple sclerosis, tumour, etc.
- Associated with crossed hemiplegia (Millard-Gubler's syndrome) in which 7th nerve palsy is opposite to the side of hemiplegia
- Usually idiopathic (cause unknown)

Table 15.21: Common causes of 7th nerve palsy

I. Upper motor neuron lesion	
Unilateral	Bilateral
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usually vascular • Cerebral tumour • Multiple sclerosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Often vascular • Motor neuron disease
II. Lower motor neuron lesion	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bell's palsy • Parotid tumour • Head injury • Tumour at the base of skull 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sarcoidosis • Myasthenia gravis • Guillain-Barre syndrome or polyneuropathies • Myopathies (e.g. myotonic dystrophy)

Idiopathic (Bell's) Palsy (Fig 15.35)

It is the most commonly seen palsy of 7th nerve affecting the patients of all age groups and both the sexes. It is mostly unilateral, can be bilateral. The cause is unknown. The site of the lesion is compression of facial nerve within facial canal or at stylomastoid foramen due to oedema or swelling of the nerve or nerve sheath at these sites. The precipitating factors include vascular damage, viral infections, trauma or cold exposure.

It is characterised by acute or subacute onset of pain behind a ear or on one side of the face followed by LMN paralysis of all the muscles of face leading to asymmetry of the face. Patient may complain of paraesthesias over

the face but there is no objective sensory loss. Occasionally, taste sensation may be involved. Hyperacusis occurs if nerve to stapedius is involved. Severe lesion may cause loss of salivation and tears formation.

Taste and lacrimation will be preserved if the lesion is distal to or at the stylomastoid foramen.

Hemifacial spasms

Hemifacial spasms occur commonly in middle aged women, are characterised by narrowing of the palpebral fissure on the affected side, and the facial muscles contract to pull the angle of the mouth upwards. The cause is unknown but compression of 7th nerve by loops of cerebellar arteries or by AVM (AV malformation) or cerebellopontine tumour is implicated.

The vestibulocochlear (viii) nerve

The vestibulocochlear nerve, as its name suggests has two components;

- Vestibular
- Cochlear

Applied anatomy and physiology

The *cochlear* branch is concerned with hearing. The *vestibular* branch is concerned with maintenance of correct posture, eye coordination and movement.

The *vestibular* apparatus consists of three *semicircular canals*, the *utricle* which senses the tilting of the head and the *sacculle* which senses the angular acceleration of the head. The fibres carrying impulses from this apparatus form the *vestibular nerve*. It enters the cranium through the internal auditory meatus, traverses the cerebellopontine angle and enters the brainstem at pontomedullary junction. In the brainstem, the vestibular fibres terminate in the four vestibular nuclei (superior, inferior, lateral and medial). Through fibres in the medial *longitudinal fasciculus (MLF)* it is interconnected and with the III, IV and VI cranial nerves. Other fibres project to the cerebellum, while others



Fig. 15.35 Bell's palsy (right side): (A) A full blown LMN paralysis of 7th nerve, (B) Recovery of the same patient

descending to the spinal cord form vestibulospinal tracts. Ascending fibres from the brainstem relay through the medial geniculate body to the posterior temporal lobe.

The vestibular part of VIII nerve forms the afferent limb of both the oculocephalic (doll's eye reflex) and oculovestibular (caloric) reflexes.

The *oculocephalic reflex* involves conjugated movements of the eyes in response to changes in head position.

The *oculovestibular reflex (caloric test)* involves elicitation of eye movements following irrigation of external ear canal by either cold or warm water

The cochlear nerve originates from the *organ of corti* which is a spiral tube containing receptor hair cells and a cavity filled with fluid. Sound waves are transmitted through the fluid to the hair cells which are further transmitted through the fibres of cochlear nerve which accompanies the vestibular nerve in the internal auditory meatus to enter the brainstem at pontomedullary junction. The fibres then synapse in the cochlear nuclei (dorsal, ventral). From the cochlear nuclei, second order fibres ascend to the superior olivary and trapezoid nuclei. Central fibres then ascend up the lateral lemniscus, and synapse in the inferior colliculus and medial geniculate body before entering the auditory cortex in the superior temporal gyrus (area 41 and 42). The ascending auditory pathways decussate at several places so that each cortical region receives impulses from both the ears.

Testing of VIII nerve

Hearing (cochlear functions)

Whispering numbers or words tests hearing for higher frequencies in particular. Rinne's test (Fig. 15.36) determines whether air conduction is better than bone conduction or vice versa. Normally and in sensorineural deafness; air conduction (AC) is better than bone conduction (BC). In middle ear deafness or conductive deafness $BC > AC$ (bone conduction better than air conduction).

The Weber's test (Fig. 15.37) – a lateralising hearing test provides additional information about the nature of any hearing impairment. Normally, sound arises in the midline and heard equally in both the ears when a vibrating tuning fork (256 or 512 Hz) is placed over the vertex or forehead. In *sensorineural deafness*, fork is heard better on healthy side and in *conductive deafness* on the diseased side.

In clinical practice, deafness or impaired hearing is best studied using audiometry and brain-stem evoked potentials to determine the precise aetiology.



Figs 15.36A and B: Rinne's test: (A) Bring the vibrating tuning fork in front of ear (say left). Ask the patient to report as soon as vibrations stop. When patient notices that the vibrations have stopped, put the tuning fork on the mastoid process. (B) Ask whether now vibrations are audible or not, to decide whether air conduction is better than bone conduction or vice versa



Fig. 15.37: Weber's test. Put the vibrating tuning fork over the middle of forehead. Ask the patient on which side the vibrations are best audible to decide on which side bone conduction is better

Equilibrium (vestibular functions)

- *Gait and Stance.* The patient may get imbalance of gait. Patients tend to fall to the side of the lesion.
- *Caloric test (oculovestibular reflex)* has already been described in examination of ear (ENT examination Chapter 7).
- Movements of eyeballs in relation to head rotation (oculocephalic reflex) can be tested. It has also been described in ENT examination.
- Testing for positional nystagmus (Read Chapter 7).

Common abnormalities of VIII nerve (Read Chapter 7)

The glossopharyngeal (ix), vagus (x) and accessory (xi) nerves

These nerves are considered together, being related anatomically, functionally and in terms of clinical examination.

Applied anatomy and physiology

The *glossopharyngeal*, *vagus* and *accessory nerves* arise as a series of rootlets in an order from above downwards

from the posterolateral sulcus of medulla in the floor of the 4th ventricle.

The spinal part of the XI (*accessory nerve*) emerges from the lateral column of the cord, perhaps beginning as low as the sixth cervical root. It ascends up through the foramen magnum to meet its second medullary part to form the accessory nerve. All the three nerves (IX, X, XI) pass through the jugular foramen. The medullary part of the XI nerve separate and join the *vagus* (X) nerve to supply motor fibres to the larynx and pharynx. The spinal portion of XIth nerve supplies *sternomastoid* and upper portion of the *trapezius* muscles.

The parasympathetic fibres of IX nerve arise from the inferior salivary nucleus and relay in the otic ganglion. They supply parotid gland. The parasympathetic fibres of X nerve supply all the viscera.

The sensory, motor and parasympathetic innervations of *glossopharyngeal* and *vagus* are given in the Table 15.22.

Symptoms of IX and X nerve palsy

- **Nasal regurgitation of fluids.** The patients may complain of regurgitation of fluids through the nose during swallowing. This is common symptom in total paralysis of soft palate due to defective elevation of the palate during swallowing.
- The voice may have nasal quality due to inability to pronounce certain words which require complete closure of nasopharynx. Thus egg is pronounced as 'eng', "rub" becomes "rum" and so on.
- Lesions of IX and X nerves cause dysphagia, dysphonia and loss of gag reflex.

IX nerve palsy

Isolated involvement is rare, hence, other signs of brainstem dysfunctions are present. The unilateral paralysis is suggested by;

- Unilateral loss of palatal, tonsillar or pharyngeal sensation.
- Absent or depressed gag reflex (afferent limb of the reflex is involved).

Glossopharyngeal neuralgia is idiopathic like trigeminal neuralgia where brief attacks of lancinating pain occur over the side of throat radiating down to the neck and back of jaw. These attacks are precipitated by swallowing or protruding the tongue. There is no paralysis of the nerve.

X nerve palsy

- The voice may sound hoarse or may have nasal quality. The patient can not cough clearly (*bovine cough*) due to recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis.
- Bilateral paralysis may produce stridor or even respiratory obstruction because the paralysed cords lie in partial adduction, thus, partially blocking the airway.

Testing of IX and X nerves

- Observe the movements of the palate by asking the patient to open the mouth as wide as he/she can. Depress the tongue with a tongue depressor while patient facing the light (natural or torch). Note the position of uvula at rest. Now ask the patient to say 'aah' and note whether both sides of the palate arch upwards (Fig. 15.38).

In unilateral paralysis, the involved side remain flat and immobile and the median raphe will be pulled to the healthy side (Fig. 15.38).

In bilateral paralysis the whole palate is immobile.

- Remember that minor degree of asymmetry of palate and of tongue can occur in hemiplegia with UMN VII nerve palsy. It differs from palatal palsy which is LMN type of paralysis.

Table 15.22: Sensory and motor innervation of IX, X and XI cranial nerves

Nerve	Motor innervation	Sensory innervation	Parasympathetic innervation	Reflex
IX (glossopharyngeal)	Stylopharyngeus muscle	Mucosa of pharynx, tonsils, soft palate, conveys taste fibres to posterior third of the tongue, lining of tympanic cavity and Eustachian tube	Parotid gland	It constitutes an afferent limb of the <i>gag reflex</i>
X (vagus)	Muscles of upper pharynx, soft palate, all the intrinsic muscles of larynx and cricothyroid muscle	Dura mater of posterior cranial fossa, some part of skin of external auditory meatus	All the abdominal and thoracic viscera	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It constitutes an efferent limb of gag reflex • It is involved in oculocardiac and carotid sinus reflexes
XI (accessory)	Sternomastoid and trapezius muscles	Nil	Nil	Nil

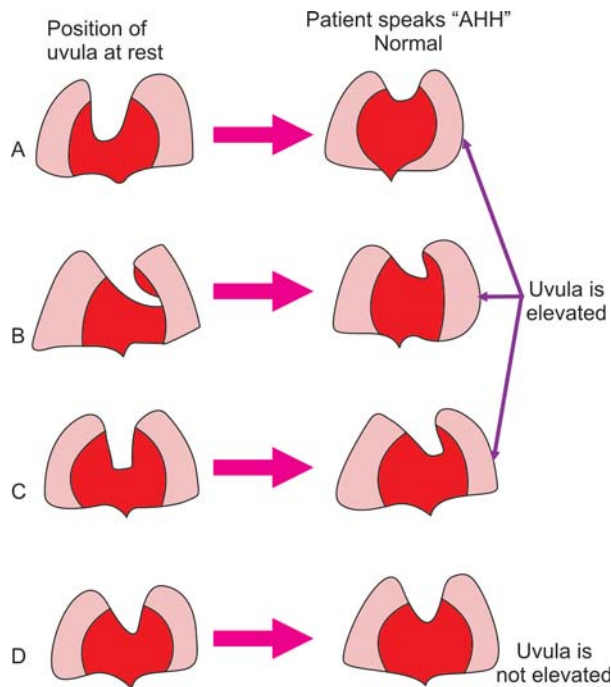


Fig. 15.38: Testing of cranial nerves IX and X (A) *Normal uvula*—is in the midline at rest, and elevated in the midline with “AHH...” (B) *Right CN IX and X paralysis*—Uvula is deviated to nondiseased (left) side at rest and elevated and deviated to the left with “AHH...” (C) *Right CN IX and X paralysis*—Uvula is in the midline at rest, get elevated and deviated to the nondiseased (left) side with “AHH...” (D) *Bilateral CN IX and X paralysis*—Uvula is in the midline at rest and there is no movement with “AHH...”

- Assess the tonsillar, palatal and pharyngeal tactile sensation using a dampened swab stick and tongue depressor. Test the taste sensation over posterior third of the tongue as described under 7th nerve.

Sensations are lost over these regions in IX nerve palsy.

- The gag reflex may be elicited by touching either the tonsil or pharynx which is followed by contraction of pharyngeal muscles. Test each side separately. It is unpleasant and difficult to test the gag reflex, hence, to be performed only when there is other evidence of IX or X nerve palsy.

Gag reflex is absent or diminished in IX (afferent limb) and X (efferent limb) or both nerve palsy.

- Assess the volume and quality of the patient's speech, noting if the voice is hoarse or has a bleating or nasal character.

In unilateral X nerve palsy, the speech is blurred and ineffectual. Bilateral palsy produce stridor or respiratory obstruction.

- Ask the patient to cough to determine whether this is more nasal or bovine than normal.

Bovine cough is a characteristic feature of recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy.

- To test the palatal closure of nasopharynx ask the patient to puff out the cheeks

Normally, both sides of palate elevate in a symmetric fashion and the uvula remains in the midline. In order to puff out the cheeks, the palate must elevate and occlude nasopharynx. If palatal movement is weak, air will escape audibly through the nose.

Causes of IX and X nerves palsy (see the Box 15.13)

Box 15.13: COMMON CAUSES OF IX AND X CRANIAL NERVE Palsy

Unilateral IX and X

- Fracture of base of skull
- Neoplasm of base of skull (meningioma)
- Recurrent laryngeal nerve (branch of X nerve) palsy is due to;
 - Bronchial carcinoma
 - Mediastinal tumour (lymphoma)
 - Aortic arch aneurysm
 - Dilated left atrium in mitral stenosis

Bilateral X

- Progressive bulbar palsy (motor neuron disease)
- Pseudobulbar palsy (bilateral UMN lesion in CVA or multiple sclerosis).

Testing of accessory (XI) nerve

It is a pure motor nerve.

- Inspect the trapezius muscle from behind and sternomastoid from the front for any wasting or atrophy. Palpate these muscles to assess tone and bulk. In XI nerve palsy, the shoulder will appear dropped and the arm will appear lower than the healthy side.
- To test the trapezius, ask the patient to shrug his/her shoulder while the examiner presses downward on them (Fig. 15.39A) or ask the patient to shrug the shoulder and maintain them elevated, then apply pressure downward on the shoulder.

Normally, a person can shrug the shoulder against resistance, but can not do so if XI nerve is paralysed.

- To test the right sternomastoid ask the patient to rotate the head to the right side while a hand is placed against the left side of the chin to stop rotation of the chin (Fig. 15.39B). Normally, the muscle stands out prominently during the manoeuvre.



Figs 15.39A to C: Testing for the accessory (XIth cranial) nerve. (A) Testing of both the trapezius muscles, B. Testing of right sternomastoid, C. Testing of bilateral sternomastoids. Note the prominence of the muscles on both sides. Compare one side with the other for any weakness

Paralysis of sternomastoid (XI nerve palsy), causes weakness of rotation of the chin to the opposite side.

- You can examine the left sternomastoid by placing left hand on right side of chin of the patient.
- You can test both sternomastoids simultaneously by asking the patient to depress the examiner's hand placed below the chin while examiner try to resist it.

Common abnormalities

- In the cervical region, the spinal component of XI nerve may be involved in syringomyelia, poliomyelitis, motor neuron disease and spinal cord tumours.
- In the intracranial course, it may be a part of jugular foramen syndrome (glomus jugulare tumour producing IX, X and XI nerve palsy).

The hypoglossal (xii) nerve

It is a pure motor nerve.

Applied anatomy and physiology

The fibres of XII nerve originate from the hypoglossal nucleus in the medulla in the lower part of the 4th ventricle close to midline. The nerve travels the medulla

between the pyramid and the olive. It runs a short course in posterior cranial fossa. It leaves the skull through hypoglossal canal or foramen. It courses downwards and forwards to reach the root of the tongue where it divides into branches which innervate the muscles of the tongue (e.g. genioglossus, styloglossus and the hypoglossus).

Testing of XII nerve

- Ask the patient to protrude the tongue; observe the symmetry of movements and the bulk; and look for wasting and fasciculations in the resting position of the tongue (tongue lying inside the mouth).

In XII nerve palsy, the tongue is pushed to the paralysed side instead of being protruding straight. The median raphe is convex towards healthy side (Fig. 15.40). Apparent deviation of the tongue occurs in facial palsy and loss of teeth on one side (Fig. 15.41) which is distinguished from true deviation (XII nerve palsy) by twisting of the tongue as well as angle of the mouth to the paralysed side while the median raphe is normal.



Fig. 15.40: Right hypoglossal (XII cranial nerve) palsy. Tongue deviates to right on protrusion indicating an ipsilateral LMN lesion



Fig. 15.41: Facial palsy showing false deviation of tongue i.e. median raphe due to loss of teeth on left lower jaw. This is called *pseudo deviation* of the tongue

- Assess the movements from side to side; observe whether this can be done freely.
- Ask the patient to lick each cheek with the tongue; feel the strength by pressing the cheek against the tongue with a finger as the patient protrudes it into each cheek in turn. Also palpate the muscle bulk of tongue between thumb and fingers.
- Assess the hypokinesia of tongue movements by asking the patient to say “ah, ah, ah” as quickly as possible, and to make rapid in-and-rapid out and side to side movements of the tongue.

I. Signs of unilateral XII nerve palsy

A. Lower motor neuron type (nuclear or infranuclear)

- There is atrophy or wasting of the tongue on the side involved. Fasciculations may be present which are best seen when the tongue lies in the mouth in resting position.
- The tongue tends to deviate on the side of the lesion.
- The tongue can not be moved freely from side to side.
- The bulk of the muscle mass is reduced on palpation of the protruded tongue on the side involved.

B. Upper motor neuron (supranuclear) paralysis

Unilateral UMN lesion of XII nerve produces deviation of the protruded tongue to paralysed side without atrophy or fasciculations.

II. Bilateral XII nerve palsy

In LMN paralysis, the tongue is flat, atrophic lying listless in the mouth with loss of movements. In UMN lesion, the tongue is spastic and shrivelled up.

Common abnormalities

- Tremors of the tongue are seen in Parkinson's disease, either when the tongue is at rest or protruded.
- The lower cranial nerves, IX, X, XI and XII are frequently affected bilaterally producing dysphagia, dysarthria and nasal regurgitation (a characteristic triad). The lower cranial nerves may be affected in the jugular foramen (IX, X and XI) or at the base of skull along with XII nerve and sympathetic innervation to the eye (Horner's syndrome). The syndromes of lower cranial nerves palsy are depicted in the Table 15.23. The causes may be neoplastic (skull base tumour), vascular (medullary infarct, vertebral artery aneurysm) or traumatic.

- Bilateral lower motor neuron lesions of lower cranial nerves are often components of bulbar palsy, result either at nuclear or fascicular level in the medulla or from bilateral lesions of the lower cranial nerves outside the brainstem. The causes of bulbar palsy include genetic i.e. Kennedy's disease (X-linked bulbospinal neuronopathy), vascular (infarction of medulla), degenerative (motor neuron disease, syringobulbia), inflammatory infective (myasthenia, Guillain-Barre, poliomyelitis, lyme disease, vasculitis) and neoplastic (brainstem glioma and neoplastic meningitis). The differences between bulbar and pseudobulbar palsy are summarised in the Box 15.14.
- A 'pseudobulbar palsy' arises from an upper motor neuron lesion of the bulbar muscles due to lesions of the corticobulbar tracts. The causes include bilateral cerebral lacunar infarcts, motor neuron disease, multiple sclerosis and brainstem tumour. The features are summarised in the Box 15.14.

Box 15.14: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN BULBAR AND PSEUDOBULBAR PALSY	
Bulbar	Pseudobulbar
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LMN lesion (cranial nerve nuclei in medulla involved) • Tongue is wasted, flabby (due to decreased muscle mass) and immobile. Fasciculations are present • Tone of tongue decreased • Pharyngeal, palatal reflexes absent • Jaw jerk absent 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • UMN lesion (corticobulbar tract involved) • Tongue is small, conical in shape, spastic and moves slowly • Tone is increased (spastic, shrivelled tongue) • Preserved • Jaw jerk brisk

The motor system

The examination of the motor system includes;

1. Inspection and palpation of muscle groups (atrophy / wasting; hypertrophy or bulk of the muscles or contractures).
2. Assessment of tone.
3. Testing of muscle strength or power.
4. Elicitation of reflexes (e.g. deep tendon, superficial and visceral)
5. Testing of co-ordination and gait.
6. Involuntary movements (spontaneous or induced).

Table 15.23: Common syndromes involving the lower cranial nerves outside the medulla

Syndrome	Cranial nerves affected	Site of involvement	Causes
Vernet	IX, X and XI	Jugular foramen inside the skull	Metastases, meningioma, epidermoid, carotid body tumour (Glomus jugulare tumour)
Collet-Sicard	IX, X, XI and XII	Jugular foramen just outside skull	Metastases, meningioma, epidermoid, carotid body tumour
Villaret	IX, X, XI, XII and sympathetic (Horner's syndrome)	Posterior retropharyngeal space near carotid artery	Carotid dissection, meningioma, metastases, epidermoid, carotid body tumour
Isolated XII	XII	Hypoglossal canal (skull base)	Metastases, meningioma, epidermoid

The motor system pathways (corticospinal tracts) have already been outlined in Fig. 15.5. The symptoms of motor system involvement are varied and include;

- Paralysis or weakness (UMN or LMN).
- Impairment of co-ordination (ataxia).
- Changes in tone and posture (dystonia).
- Involuntary movements (dyskinesia or hyperkinesia)
- Slowness of movements and activity (hypokinesia and bradykinesia).
- Loss of learned movement patterns (dyspraxia).

Inspection and palpation

The patient should be examined in underwear only so as to observe the limbs and muscles clearly in a good light. The muscle bulk and power varies considerably between normal subjects depending on the age and occupation. In health, normally the lower limb muscles

are symmetrical and well developed. In the upper limbs, the musculature on the dominant side (the limb used more) is often well developed, as in the racquet arm of tennis player.

The causes of muscle weakness according to site of lesion are described in Table 15.24.

The change in bulk of muscles may be either atrophy/weakness or hypertrophy (e.g. occupational, muscular dystrophy-Duchenne type) (Box 15.15). In order to determine the anatomical cause of atrophy, it is necessary to know the distribution of weakness, whether focal or diffuse, primarily proximal or distal and whether it involves a peripheral nerve or a spinal segment. Assessment of weakness is given in the Box 15.16. When muscle wasting is accompanied by fibrosis, the muscles become hard, inelastic and shortened due to contractures. Contractures may develop due to prolonged hypertonia.

Box 15.15: HYPERTROPHY OF MUSCLES-TYPES AND CAUSES

Pseudohypertrophy	True hypertrophy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Muscles are bulkier than normal. They are weak • The calf, glutei infra-spinatus, quadriceps, deltoid are commonly affected. <p><i>causes are:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • - Duchenne muscular dystrophy (DMD), hypothyroidism, glycogen storage disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Muscles are large, elastic to feel, hard and globular. They are stronger than normal • Facial and muscles of the hand are affected <p><i>causes are:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual labourers, myotonia cysticercosis in the muscles (sometimes)

Box 15.16: ASSESSMENT OF MUSCLE WEAKNESS

1. *Distribution*
 - A few muscles
 - A limb (monoplegia)
 - Both lower limbs (paraplegia)
 - Both limbs on one side (hemiplegia/hemiparesis)
2. *Type of weakness*
 - UMN
 - LMN
3. *Onset and evolution of weakness*
 - Sudden and improving (acute)
 - Gradually worsening over days or weeks (subacute)
 - Evolving over months or years (chronic)

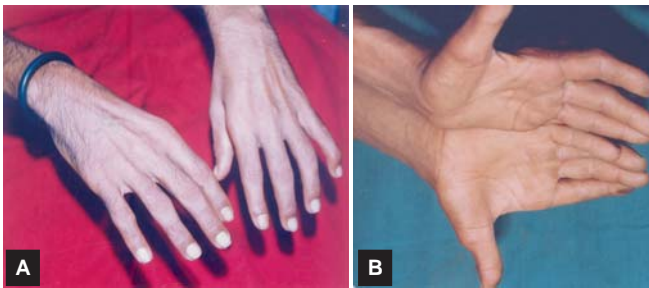
Table 15.24: Causes of muscle weakness

Anatomical site and type	Accompanying features	Common aetiologies
Upper motor neuron	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No muscle wasting • Weakness of a group of muscle or a limb or limbs or one side of the body 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVA (e.g. hemiplegia), Spinal cord disease or injury (paraplegia or quadriplegia) • Multiple sclerosis

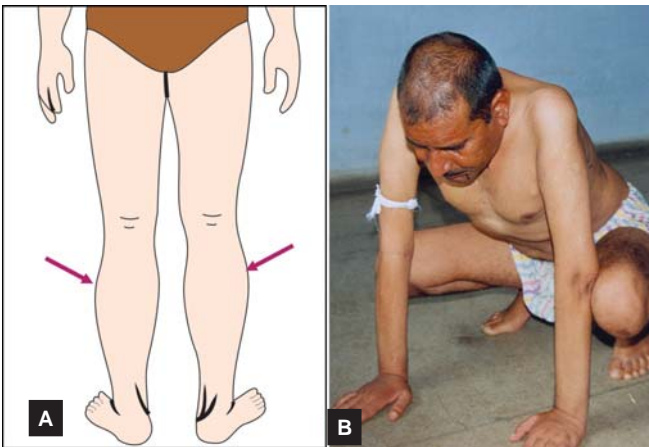
Contd....

Contd....

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypertonia (spastic paralysis) • Hyperreflexia (exaggerated deep tendon jerks) and loss of superficial reflexes • Hypokinesia of movements 	
Lower motor neuron	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Muscle atrophy • Loss of movements or muscle weakness • Hypotonia (flaccid paralysis) • Fasciculations • Absent reflexes (deep tendons as well as superficial) • Contractures of muscles • Trophic changes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Peripheral neuropathies • Radiculopathies • Anterior horn cell damage (e.g. poliomyelitis) • Motor neuron disease
Peripheral neuropathy (Fig. 15.42)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symmetrical distal weakness and wasting • Symmetrical distal sensory loss disturbance • Loss of tendon reflexes • Trophic changes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Genetic (hereditary, motor, sensory) • Metabolic (diabetes, renal failure) • Toxic (alcohol, drugs) • Inflammatory (G.B. syndrome, leprosy) • Deficiency e.g. B₁, B₁₂ • Other e.g. paramalignant
Myopathies (Fig. 15.43)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Muscle wasting usually proximal • Hypotonia with diminished/absent reflexes • Tenderness (polymyositis) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hereditary (e.g. various muscular dystrophies) • Alcohol and other toxins • Collagen vascular disorder (polymyositis)
Myasthenic (Fig. 15.44)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Abnormal fatigability of muscles • The extraocular muscles, proximal muscles, muscles of mastication, speech and facial expression are commonly affected • Movements initially are strong but weakens with exercise or continued action • Worsening of symptoms towards the end of the day • The reflexes are preserved initially, may be lost later on • No sensory loss 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thymic dysplasia (70%) or thymic tumour (10%) • Associated with other autoimmune disorders • Drug-induced e.g. D-penicillamine, lithium, propranolol • Paraneoplastic-myasthenic myopathic syndrome (Eaton-Lambert syndrome) due to oat cell carcinoma • Snake-bite
Psychogenic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inconsistent weakness • No associated feature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stress or anxiety • Compensation claims
Myotonic (inherited or acquired)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continued muscle contraction after cessation of voluntary effort e.g. relaxation is impaired after muscular contraction (persistent hand grip after relaxation (see Fig. 15.50)) • Myotonia is accentuated by rest and cold, is best demonstrated in hands, tongue and other muscles • The patient has well-developed muscles in spite of weakness • The jerks are preserved 	



Figs 15.42A and B: Wasting of small muscles of hands (A) In peripheral neuropathy. Note the bilateral wrist drop (B) Motor neuron disease. Note wasting of the thenar and hypothenar muscles



Figs 15.43A and B: Muscular dystrophy. (A) Duchenne's muscular dystrophy with pseudo-hypertrophy of calf muscles, (B) Becker's muscular dystrophy showing difficulty in rising from sitting position



Fig. 15.44: Myasthenic weakness of extraocular muscles leading to bilateral ptosis

Proximal vs distal type of weakness. The causes are given in the Table 15.25.

Table 15.25: Causes of proximal and distal weakness

Proximal weakness (difficulty in climbing upstairs, standing from sitting position, Gower's sign positive Fig. 15.45)	Distal muscle weakness
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Muscular dystrophy (Fig. 15.46) • Polymyositis • G.B. syndrome • Porphyria • Thyrotoxic or other endocrinal (Cushing) myopathies • Metabolic myopathies e.g. diabetic amyotrophy • Periodic paralysis (e.g. hypokalaemia) • Steroid-induced • Malignancy-paraneoplastic. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polyneuropathy • Distal myopathy • Myotonic dystrophy • Charcot-Marie-tooth disease

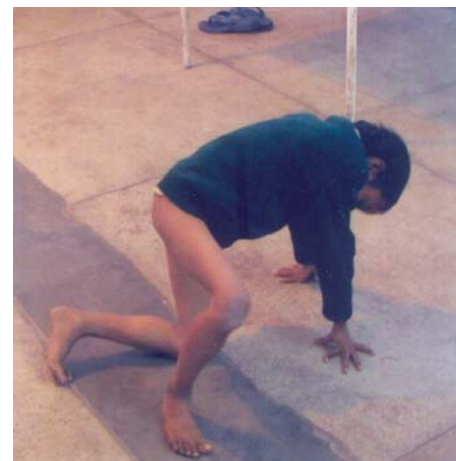


Fig. 15.45: Positive Gower's sign in Duchenne's muscular dystrophy



Fig. 15.46: Fascioscapulohumeral (limb girdle) myopathy. Note the weakness/wasting of the shoulder girdle muscles and winging of the scapulae. Winging is more pronounced when patient attempts to push against a resistance e.g. a wall or otherwise

Assessment of tone of muscles

Muscular tone is a state of contraction or tension found in healthy muscles, is gauged by the resistance felt when a joint is moved passively through its range of movement. In normal person, there is slight 'elastic' type of resistance from the adjacent muscles.

Testing of the tone

- Ask the patient to relax.
- Passively flex and extend each joint in turn; do this slowly at first, then more rapidly to get a feel of muscle resistance.
- In the upper limbs, tone is tested at bigger joints i.e. shoulder, elbow and wrist.
- In the lower limbs, test the tone at the hip by internally and externally rotating the resting leg and by briskly raising the patient's knee off the bed and observing whether the ankle is also raised off the bed. Test the tone in knee muscles by flexing and extending the knee (Fig. 15.47). Similarly test the tone at ankle by dorsiflexion and plantarflexion of foot against resistance.

Clonus (rhythmic series of muscle contractions in response to sudden stretch).

- If there is hypertonia, elicit the clonus at knee (patellar clonus) and ankle (ankle clonus). It is discussed along with deep tendon jerks.



Fig. 15.47: Testing the tone of muscles at knee

Common abnormalities (Fig. 15.48)

Tone may be increased (hypertonia) or decreased (hypotonia). Tone is maintained by the spinal reflex arc modulated by cerebellum and basal ganglia.

Hypotonia refers to decreased tone, is demonstrated by loss of resistance when a limb is moved passively or when a upper limb is released from a distance falls on the bed without any resistance or when a leg is shaken, the foot moves without resistance. It occurs due to involvement of afferent or efferent limb of internuncial neuron. The causes are listed in the Fig. 15.48. Hypotonic muscles are soft on palpation. Due to hypotonia, the

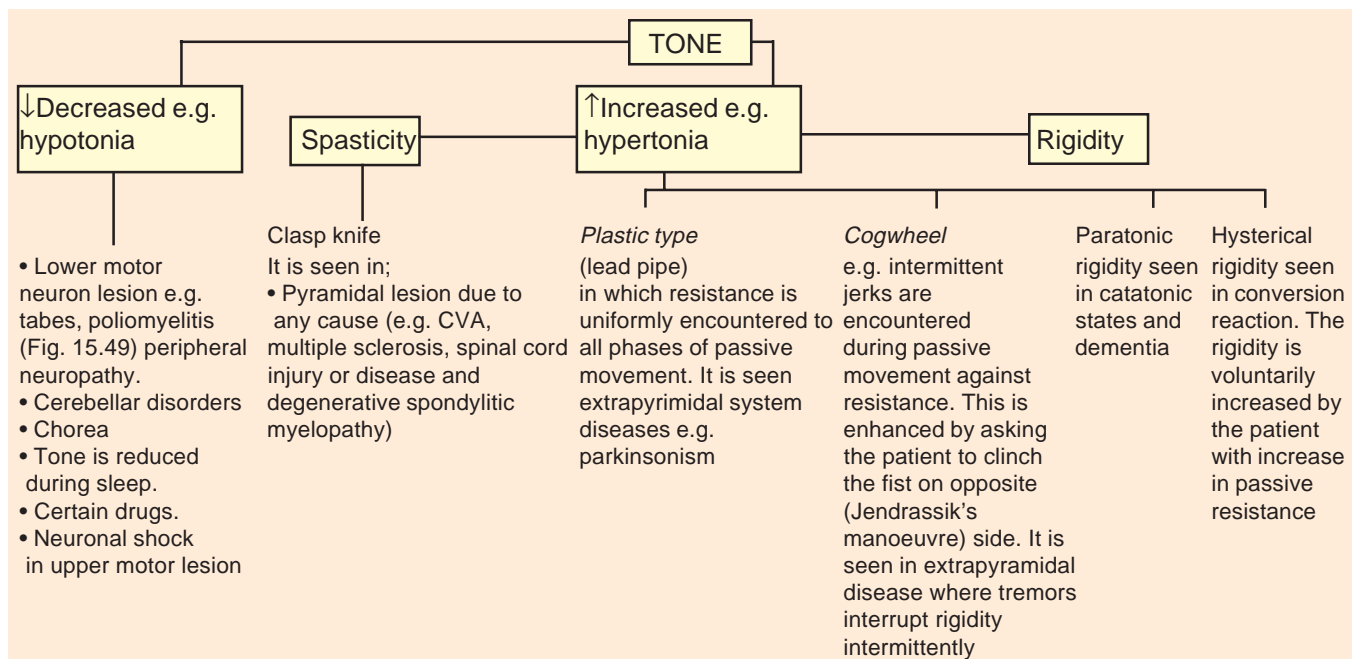


Fig. 15.48: Alterations in the tone of muscles and their causes



Figs 15.49: Postpolio paralysis of right lower limb with contracture at the ankle. Patient walks on the toes due to contracture of Achilles

upper limb may assume a characteristic posture on outstretching i.e. hyperextension at elbow with over-pronation of forearm, wrist flexed and fingers hyperextended at metacarpophalangeal joints.

Hypertonia manifests either as spasticity or rigidity. The *spasticity* is characterised by building-up of resistance during the early part of the passive movement, then there is sudden lessening of the resistance. It may be *clasp-knife* type where the resistance is encountered either in the beginning or at the end of a passive movement. It is seen in pyramidal lesions e.g. hemiplegia, paraplegia, quadriplegia. Spasticity in the upper limb is infrequently more obvious on attempting extension ; whereas in the lower limb it is more obvious with attempted flexion. It is associated with other signs suggestive of pyramidal lesion (*UMN signs*).

Rigidity means sustained resistance encountered throughout the range of passive movement. It may be *lead-pipe type* in which resistance is uniform throughout the passive movement or *cog-wheel type* in which continuous resistance is broken by rhythmic jerks (jerky feel), hence, denotes rigidity with interspersed tremors. It can be enhanced by asking the patient to clench the fist on the opposite side (*Jendrassik's manoeuvre*). *Decerebrate rigidity* (cerebral or brain-stem lesions) is characterised by typical posture in which the limbs are stiff, extended, head is erect and jaw is closed. The righting reflexes are abolished but tonic neck and labyrinthine reflexes remain intact and the deep tendon jerks are exaggerated. It is due to release of vestibular nuclei from the higher pyramidal control. *Hysterical*

rigidity is ill-defined and ill-sustained where the resistance increases proportionately with increasing force or passive movement of the limb. It is usually of long duration, precipitated by alarm, excitement or fatigue.

Reflex rigidity refers to muscle spasm in response to pain e.g. board-like rigidity of abdomen in peritonitis, neck rigidity in meningitis.

Paratonic rigidity (*Gegenhalten phenomenon*) refers to stiffening of a limb in response to contact and a resistance to passive changes in posture or position. The strength of antagonists increases as one increases the force to change the position of the limb. It is seen in catatonic states and in patients with clouded or confused consciousness due to any cause especially dementia.

Differences between spasticity and rigidity are enumerated in the Box 15.17.

Box 15.17: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN SPASTICITY AND RIGIDITY

<i>Spasticity</i>	<i>Rigidity</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seen in pyramidal lesions • Resistance is encountered either in the beginning or at the end of passive movement • It is stretch sensitive phenomenon. It is proportional to the speed of the applied stretch • Involves only anti-gravity muscles e.g. extensors of the upper limbs and flexors of the lower limbs • Deep tendon jerks are exaggerated 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seen in extrapyramidal lesions • Resistance is continuous throughout passive movement either uniform or intermittent • It is stretch-uniform, remains constant with application of varying stretch • Involves all groups of muscles (agonists and antagonists) to equal extent • Deep tendon jerks are either normal or diminished

Myotonia (Fig. 15.50). Refers to increased tone where tonic muscular contraction is followed by slow relaxation. Sudden movement may be followed by marked spasm and inability to relax. Repetition of movement brings about ease of relaxation and gradual decrease in hypertonicity. Percussion myotonia can be elicited by sudden tapping the thenar eminence with a percussion hammer which is followed by apposition of the thumb that stays for several seconds before relaxation begins. It can be elicited by tapping on the extended tongue, deltoid or other muscles where a 'dimple' is produced that relaxes slowly. Shake the hand with the patient and then let it go-produces persistence of the grip that relaxes slowly (Fig. 15.50). Similarly forcible closure of the eyes followed by sudden opening results in graded opening of the eyes.



Fig. 15.50: Myotonia

Testing of muscle strength and power

Strength and muscle power can be judged quickly by watching the patient walking, standing from lying down or sitting position, during dressing and undressing and while jumping or hopping. These movements require proximal and distal strength and co-ordination of various movements and much can be learnt by observing them carefully.

There are two methods by which muscle power can be determined, isometric and isotonic. Isometric testing is more sensitive in detecting subtle degree of weakness. The muscle power grading by Medical Research Council (UK) is given in the Box 15.18. Using this system which is clinically based, paresis/paralysis occurs within the grade 5 range; this can be subdivided into 4⁺ (movement against moderate resistance) and 4⁻ (movement against slightest resistance) to give greater precision of muscle strength.

Box 15.18: MEDICAL RESEARCH COUNCIL (UK) GRADING OF POWER

Grade 0	: No muscle contraction visible (no power)
Grade 1	: Flicker of muscle contraction but no movement of joint
Grade 2	: Movement with gravity eliminated
Grade 3	: Movement against gravity
Grade 4	: Movement against gravity and some resistance
Grade 5	: Normal power (movement against full resistance)

The muscle power is tested in a group of muscles acting on a joint (see the Box 15.19) in case of paralysis and in individual muscle in case of myopathy, mononeuritis or compression of motor root (s). The testing of individual muscle is described separately.

Box. 15.19: TESTING OF MUSCLE POWER IN A GROUP OF MUSCLE ACTING ON A JOINT

Test muscle power in proximo-distal direction

- A. Upper limb muscles. Test power in;
 - Abductors and adductors of shoulder
 - Flexors and extensors of shoulder
 - Flexors and extensors of elbow
 - Flexors and extensors of wrist
 - Spinators and pronators of forearm
 - Extensors of fingers at both the metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints
 - Finger and thumb flexors, extensors, adductors and abductors
- B. Test the strength of the abdominal muscles as a whole by asking the supine patient to raise the head against resistance.
- C. Lower limb muscles. Test power in;
 - Hip flexors and extensors, adductors and abductors
 - Knee flexors and extensors
 - Foot dorsiflexors, plantarflexors, inverters and everters.

Method of testing

- Examine individual muscle groups in both limbs alternatively, or in some instances simultaneously, so that the strength of right and left can be compared directly.
 - Either ask the patient to contract a group of muscles as possible and then to maintain the contracted position while the examiner tries to overpower the muscle group being tested. This is called *isometric testing*.
- Or
- Ask the patient to move the joint while examiner attempting to halt the movement. This is called *isotonic testing* of strength.

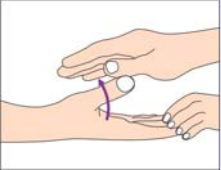

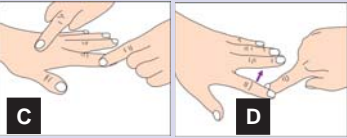



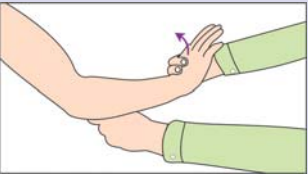
Common abnormalities

- By testing a group of muscle, one can identify the type of weakness in a group of muscle or muscles, or a limb or one half side of the body. The causes of such weakness have already been discussed in Table 15.24. If such a weakness is found, a more detailed examination of muscles peripheral nerve or spinal segment should be undertaken as detailed below.

Testing of the muscles of upper and lower limb (Table 15.26 and Fig. 15.51)

It is useful to test the individual muscle(s) in myopathy and radiculopathy.

Table 15.26: Testing of the muscles (Figs 15.51A to CC)

Figure	Root value	Muscle testing
	C ₆ ,C ₇	<i>Abductor pollicis brevis.</i> The patient is asked to abduct the thumb at right angle to the palmar surface of the index finger (Fig. 15.51A) against resistance of the examiner's thumb. The muscle normally is seen and felt to contract during this manoeuvre but fails to do so if median nerve is involved (e.g. carpal tunnel syndrome) or there is atrophy of the small muscles of the hand.
	C ₆ ,C ₇	<i>Opponens pollicis:</i> Instruct the patient to touch the top of the little finger with the top of the thumb. Oppose this movement with your thumb or index finger (Fig. 15.51B). Feel for the resistance; failure to do so indicates paralysis.
		<i>Testing the interossei muscles (First dorsal interosseous Fig. 15.51C).</i> Instruct the patient to separate the thumb from the fingers. Now ask him/her to abduct the index finger against your resistance. Failure to do so indicates paralysis of ulnar nerve or atrophy of small muscles of hand. <i>First palmar interosseous (Fig. 15.51D).</i> Ask the patient to adduct the index finger of pronated hand against resistance.
		<i>Testing of other interossei and lumbricals</i> Test the ability of the patient to flex their <i>metacarpophalangeal</i> joint and extend the distal interphalangeal joints. The interossei are adductors (palmar interossei) and abductors (dorsal interossei) of fingers. A claw-hand deformity is produced if they are paralysed such as ulnar nerve palsy. This is due to retention of power in the long flexors and extensors of the two fingers (Fig. 15.51E). The first phalanges are overextended and the distal two are flexed. There is separation of the fingers.
		<i>Testing of long flexors of fingers</i> (e.g. flexor digitorum profundus I, II and III and flexor digitorum sublimis). The long flexors are individually tested by flexion at the inter phalangeal joints as demonstrated in the Fig. 15.51F. The long flexors are simultaneously tested by asking the patient to squeeze your fingers. Allow the patient to squeeze only your index and middle fingers; this is sufficient to assess strength of hand grip (Fig. 15.51G).
		<i>Flexors and extensors of the wrist</i> Ask the patient to make the fist. This results in forcible contraction of both the flexors and extensors of the wrist. To test the extensors of the wrist (Fig. 15.51H), ask the patient to extend the wrist against resistance. If the extensors are weak, then he/she can not do so. If extensors are weak, the wrist becomes flexed leading to wrist drop as occurs in radial nerve paralysis.
		

Contd....

Contd....



Fig. 15.51I: Testing the flexor carpi radialis

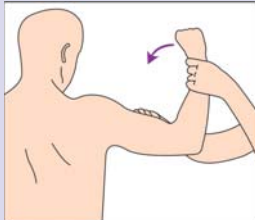


Fig. 15.51J: Testing the biceps

C₅C₆*Flexors of the elbow*

Biceps. It is tested by asking the patient to bend the supine forearm against resistance. The muscle contracts and stands out prominently (Fig. 15.51J).

Brachioradialis: Place the forearm midway between prone and supine positions. Now direct the patient to flex the forearm against resistance. The muscle is seen to contract and stands out prominently at the upper part of forearm.

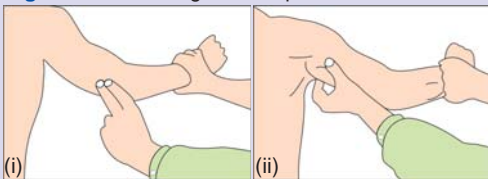
C₅C₆

Fig. 15.51K: Testing the triceps (i) Long head (ii) The whole muscle

C₇C₈*Extensor of the elbow.*

Triceps: It is tested by asking the patient to extend the forearm against resistance (Fig. 15.51K (i) and (ii)). The muscle is seen to contract and stands out prominently at the back of arm.



Fig. 15.51L: Testing the supraspinatus (e.g. abduction between 0-30°)

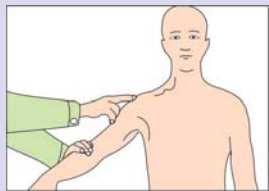


Fig. 15.51M: Testing the deltoid (e.g. abduction between 30° to 90°)

Abductors of the shoulder.

Supraspinatus and deltoid These are abductors of shoulder. The first 30° movement (0-30°) is carried out by the supraspinatus and rest 60° (30° to 90°) is carried out by deltoid.

Method. Ask the patient to abduct the forearm against resistance. The first 30° is tested for supraspinatus (Fig. 15.51L). Now ask the patient to abduct the arm to 30° and now further abduct the arm against resistance. The deltoid contracts and is seen and felt (Fig. 15.51M)

Abduction becomes weak if these muscles are paralysed.

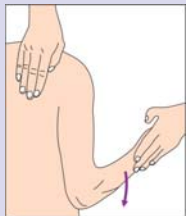


Fig. 15.51N: Testing the infraspinatus

Infraspinatus is an external rotator at shoulder. It is tested by asking the patient to keep the arm along the side of the chest and flex the forearm at right angle (Fig.15.51N). Now ask the patient to rotate the limb externally against your resistance, the elbow being kept along the side throughout the manoeuvre. The muscle belly can be seen and felt by keeping your hand below the spine of scapula.

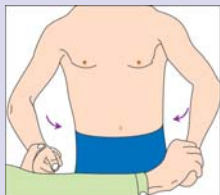


Fig. 15.51O: Testing the pectoralis major

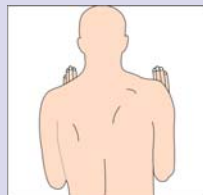


Fig. 15.51P: Testing the serratus anterior

Pectorals: Pectoralis major is flexor of the shoulder. It can be tested by asking the patient to outstretch the arms in front and then to clap the hands together while you resist the movement and try to hold them apart. (Fig. 15.51O). The muscle is seen and felt to contract and stands out prominently in front of chest.

Serratus anterior: This is the scapular muscle which keeps the scapula tight to the chest, hence, its paralysis produces separation of the scapula from the vertebral column called "winging of the scapula". and patient is unable to lift the arm above a right angle.

The muscle is tested by asking the patient to push against a wall, the muscle contracts and keeps the scapula bound to chest (Fig.15.51P), paralysis produces winging of scapula.

Contd....

Contd....



Fig. 15.51Q: Testing the latissimus dorsi

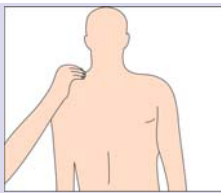


Fig. 15.51R: Testing the trapezius



Fig. 15.51S: Testing of rectus abdominis

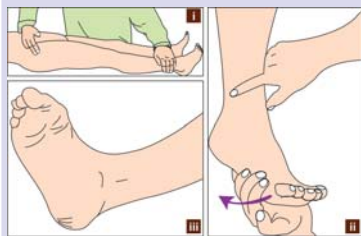


Fig. 15.51T: Testing the muscles of foot
(i) Tibialis posterior (e.g. invertor of foot)
(ii) Peroneus longus and peroneus brevis
(main evertors of the foot) (iii) Small muscles of the sole



Fig. 15.51U: Testing the quadriceps femoris



Fig. 15.51V: Testing the hamstring muscles



Fig. 15.51W: Testing the extensors of hip



Fig. 15.51X: Testing the flexors of hip

Latissimus dorsi: Stand behind the patient. Ask the patient to clasp the hands behind their back. Offer resistance to the backward and outward movement. The muscle bellies stand out prominently as the posterior axillary folds which can be seen and felt (Fig. 15.51Q). Alternately the muscles can be tested by asking the patient to cough forcibly. The muscles contract and make the posterior axillary fold prominent.

Trapezius. Ask the patient to shrug his or her shoulder while the examiner opposes this movement. (Fig. 15.51R).

Muscles of the trunk.

Abdominal muscles: Rectus abdominis is the muscle supplied by ventral rami of T₇-T₁₂. The upper portion (above the umbilicus) is supplied from T₇ to T₉ and lower portion from T₁₀-T₁₂. The main action of the muscle is flexion of the spine. **Testing.** Ask the patient to lie supine and elevate his/her body from the pillow without support or against resistance. You can see and feel the contractions of rectus abdominis on both the sides (Fig 15.51S) and umbilicus is central. In case of paralysis on one side, the umbilicus will be pulled to the other side by the unopposed action of nonparalysed muscle.

Paralysis of a portion of anterior abdominal muscle will displace the umbilicus either upwards (lower abdominal muscles paralysis) or downwards (upper abdominal muscle—paralysis). This is called *Bevor's sign*, helps to localise the lesion in spinal cord disease.

Muscles of the lower limbs

1. **Testing the small muscles of the foot.** The small muscles of the foot are tested for adduction, abduction of toes and great toe similar to the small muscles of the hand. Interossei are again adductors and abductors in the foot.

Paralysis of the interossei produces foot deformity. Similarly foot deformity occurs in a patient with hemiplegia. 'Pes cavus' is hollowing of the sole, occurs in familial peripheral neuropathy.

2. **Dorsiflexion and plantarflexion of toes and the feet** are tested by asking the patient to elevate or depress the part against resistance. The invertors and evertors are tested as given in the Fig. 15.51T).

3. **Extensors and flexors of knee:** The extensor (quadriceps) of the knee is tested by bending the knee of the patient with your hand and then asking the patient to extend it against your resistance. Contraction of this muscle can be seen and felt in the thigh (Fig. 15.51U).

Flexors of the knee (*biceps femoris*, *semitendinosus*, *semi membranosus*) are tested by asking the patient to lie prone. Now flex the knee against resistance. The muscles can be seen and felt on lateral side (biceps) and medial side (semi-membranosus) respectively (Fig. 15.51V).

4. **Extensors of the hip:** (e.g. gluteus maximus and hamstrings). Ask the patient to lie supine with knees extended. Lift the foot off the bed and keep the palm of your hand below the foot. Ask him/her to push it down against your resistance (Fig. 15.52W). Judge the power in the extensors of the hip by estimating the resistance.

5. **Flexors of the hip** (e.g. Iliacus, psoas major and psoas minor). Ask the patient to lie supine with legs extended. Ask the patient to raise the leg (flex the leg) off the bed against resistance (Fig 15.51X). Assess the resistance to decide power in the muscles.

"Babinski's rising up sign". In the abdominal muscles weakness, patient is not able to rise from the bed without support. *Babinski's rising up sign* is elicited by asking the patient to lie supine with legs extended and rise up without support. Normally the legs do not rise. In spastic paralysis (UMN paralysis) of a leg such as in hemiplegia, the affected limb will rise first, but in hysterical paralysis or malingering, this does not occur, hence, this sign differentiates hysterical weakness from spastic weakness.

Erector spinae: The erector spinae and back extensors are tested by asking the patient to lie prone and lift the head from the bed by extending the neck and back. Normally, they can be seen standing out and prominently during manoeuvre.

Contd....

Contd....



Fig. 15.51Y: Testing the neck extensors



Fig. 15.51Z: Testing the lateral bending

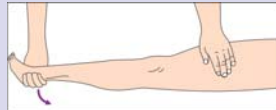


Fig. 15.51AA: Testing the adductors of hip



Fig. 15.51BB: Testing the abductors of the thigh (hip)



Fig. 15.51CC: Testing the medial (internal) rotation of hip

Neck muscles

Neck flexors (e.g. longus colli C_2 - C_6 , longus capitis— C_1 to C_3 ; rectus capitis anterior C_1 to C_2 , sternomastoid— C_2 - C_3 , and XI cranial nerve, scalenus anterior; C_4 - C_6) are tested by asking the patient to flex the neck while you resist this movement by placing your hand at the forehead. Note the amount of resistance which you have to apply for this.

– **Neck extensors** (e.g. semispinalis capitis, longissimus capitis, rectus capitis posterior major and minor) are tested similarly as flexors. Ask the patient to extend neck against your resistance (Fig. 15.51Y). Assess the amount of resistance used. **Neck rotator** (e.g. sternomastoid) testing has been discussed in examination of XI cranial nerve.

Lateral bending of the neck (e.g. sternomastoid, scalenus anterior, splenius cervical is, rectus capitis lateralis) is tested by asking the patient to bend the neck laterally against resistance (Fig. 15.51Z) or first bend the neck laterally and then try to counteract this bending to assess the power to be used.

Adductors of hip: (e.g. adductor longus, adductor brevis, adductor magnus, gracilis and pectineus). Adductors are flexor of thigh also. Ask the patient to lie supine with legs separated but straight. Now ask the patient to move the limb towards midline against resistance (Fig. 15.51AA). Assess the power in the muscles from the resistance offered.

Abductors of the hip: (e.g. gluteus medius and gluteus minimus). Place the patient's legs together while the patient is supine. Ask him/her to separate them against resistance (Fig. 15.51BB). Assess the power in the muscles.

Rotators of the hip

Lateral or external rotators (e.g. obturator internus, quadriceps femoris) **Medial rotators** (e.g. obturator externus): To test the rotators, ask the patient to lie supine with limbs extended. Now ask him/her to roll the limb outwards (lateral rotation) or inwards (medial rotation) against resistance (Fig. 15.51CC).

The reflexes

1. Tendon reflexes (jerks)

These are phasic, monosynaptic stretch reflexes involving only two neurons and a particular spinal segment. They are based on the principle that a sudden stretch of a tendon excites a volley of afferent impulses that travel along the afferent side of spinal reflex arc and reach the muscle via the efferent side of the arc and causes it to contract briefly which can be seen and felt. Thus, it tests the integrity of afferent, efferent pathways and their interconnections in the anterior horn cells in the spinal segment supply of that muscle (see Fig. 15.6). The examination of deep tendon reflexes provides a reliable information about the central and peripheral nervous system. It is, therefore, important to become trained in the technique of eliciting these reflexes.

Precautions

- Always use same type of hammer.
- Always examine these reflexes in the same manner.
- Always stand on the side of the bed.
- Always make sure that patient is warm and comfortable.

- Reassure the patient that hammer is soft, will not cause any harm. Let the patient should feel it or examine it.
- The patient should be asked to be relaxed i.e. “let the muscles go to sleep”.
- Expose the part to be examined properly by putting off the clothes. In the lower limb examination, the genitalia to be properly covered and protected.
- The reflexes can easily be tested with the patient supine on a couch/bed, but some neurologists prefer to elicit the jerks with the patient sitting on the edge of the couch facing the examiner.
- Strike the tendon only since mechanical stimulation of a muscle belly may produce contraction of that muscle which is not dependant on that reflex arc.

A. Upper limb reflexes

1. Biceps (C_5 - C_6)

Flex the elbow to right angle and place the forearm in mid-prone position. Place your thumb or index finger on the biceps tendon in anti-cubital fossa and tap the tendon with the hammer. The biceps contracts and flexes the elbow (Fig. 15.52).

2. *Supinator* (C_5 - C_6)

Place the forearm in mid-prone position. Tap the styloid process of the radius. The supinator contracts followed by flexion and supination of forearm (Fig. 15.53).



Fig. 15.52: Biceps jerk



Fig. 15.53: Supinator jerk

- *Inversion of biceps and triceps.* This means brisk finger flexion following elicitation of biceps or supinator jerks. It indicates C_5 - C_6 lesion with loss of biceps and supinator reflexes. This is due to hypertonicity of finger flexors muscles.
3. *Triceps* (C_6 - C_7)
- Flex the elbow and allow the forearm and the hand to rest over the patient's chest. Support the forearm with your hand and tap the triceps tendon just below olecranon. The triceps contracts which can be seen or felt (Fig. 15.54).

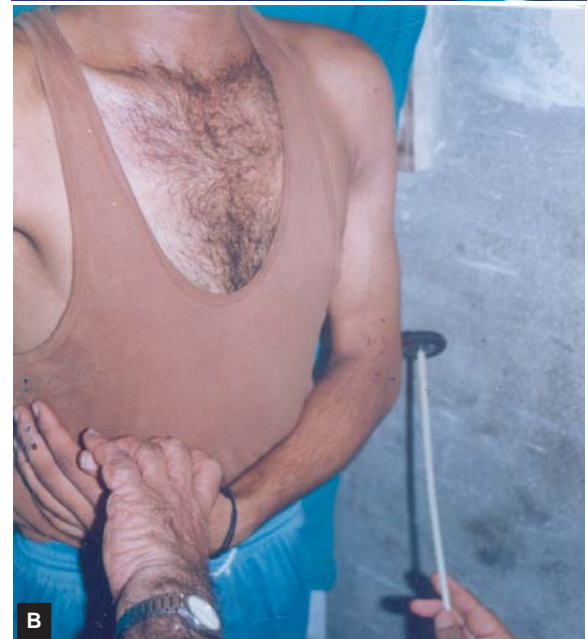


Fig. 15.54: Elicitation of triceps jerk.
A. During lying down, B. During sitting

4. *Finger flexion* (C_7 - C_8)

Ask the patient to semiflex the fingers. Place your middle and index fingers on the palmar surface of the hand. Sudden tap over the fingers will cause flexion of the fingers and the thumb (Fig. 15.55).

5. *Hoffman's sign* (Fig. 15.56)

The patient's hand is pronated and observer holds the index or middle finger of the patient between his/her thumb and index finger of left hand. Briskly flick down the patient's finger tip with the right thumb and release it suddenly. Observe the movement of the thumb.



Fig. 15.55: Finger flexion jerk



Fig. 15.57: Wartenberg's sign



Fig. 15.56: Hoffman's sign

A positive response results in adduction and flexion of the thumb and flexion of fingers

6. *Wartenberg's sign* (Fig. 15.57)
Hold the patient's fingers except the thumb with your right hand. Try to pull the fingers with your hand. Observe the movement of the thumb. Normally, the thumb adducts with this manoeuvre, but flexion of the thumb indicates positive response. It carries same significance as the Hoffman's sign.
7. *Jaw jerk* (*Vth cranial nerve*). It has been discussed under examination of Vth cranial nerve.
8. *Pectoral reflex* (C_7)
This reflex may sometime be useful in localisation of the lesion. It is not elicited but can be employed if needed. Place the extended index and middle fingers on the lateral border of the pectoralis muscle and tap them with percussion hammer. The muscle contracts.
9. *Deltoid reflex* (C_5)
The upper fibres of deltoid are supplied by XI cranial nerve and lower fibres by C_5 . Place the finger across the tip of shoulder and tap it. The deltoid contracts.

B. Lower limb reflexes

1. Knee jerk (L_3-L_4)

It is tested with patient supine. Place your hand under the knee (Fig. 15.58) to be tested and may be placed on the opposite knee so that legs do not come in contact with each other and knee rests on the observer's hand. Strike the tendon just below the patella and observe for the contraction of quadriceps muscle in the thigh as well as extension of the knee. *Alternatively*, the reflex can sometimes be tested easily with the patient sitting up, the legs hanging freely over the edge of the bed.



Fig. 15.58: Knee jerk

2. Ankle jerk (S_1-S_2)

Place the lower limb on the bed so that it lies everted and slightly flexed. Stretch the Achilles tendon slightly by dorsiflexing the foot (Fig. 15.59) with the other hand. Now, tap the tendon on its posterior surface of the ankle. Observe the contraction of the calf muscles as well as plantarflexion of ankle. *Alternatively*, the reflex can be elicited when the patient is kneeling on a chair.

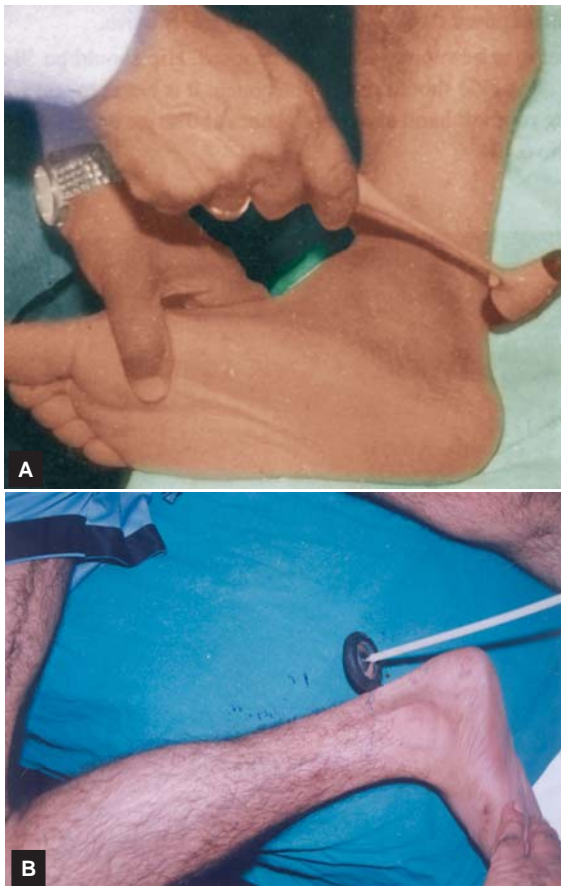


Fig. 15.59: Elicitation of the ankle jerk (A) Conventional method (B) Alternative method

Reinforcement (Fig. 15.60) It is a manoeuvre used to elicit the tendon reflexes when either they are not elicitable or barely elicitable. It is based on the principle that motor activity can be enhanced by contracting another muscle thereby increasing the activity of gamma efferent system. In this manoeuvre, patient is asked to clench the teeth or clench the fist of ipsilateral hand or pull the flexed fingers of two hands against each other (*Jendrassik's manoeuvre*).



Fig. 15.60: Reinforcement phenomenon (Jendrassik's manoeuvre)

Remember: Once the deep tendon reflexes are found to be exaggerated, then proceed to elicit the clonus.

For *knee clonus*, sharply push the patella towards the foot while patient lies supine with knees extended. Give sudden jerk to the patella initially, followed by sustained pressure with the thumb and index finger in a downward direction on the patella (Fig. 15.61). Feel for the intermittent jerky movements due to muscle contractions.



Fig. 15.61: Patellar clonus

For *ankle clonus* (Fig. 15.62), support the flexed knee with one hand in the popliteal fossa so that ankle rests gently on the bed. Dorsiflex the foot briskly with the other hand and sustain the pressure. Inspect and feel for sustained movements of foot due to involuntary muscle contractions of hypertonic muscles.

For *wrist clonus*, have patient lie supine and rest. Grasp the hand and passively flex/extend at the wrist joint 3 times, the last time in full extension for several seconds. Feel for any involuntary movements of hand.

Movements of hands >2 times in the extended posture indicates clonus.



Fig. 15.62: Ankle clonus

N.B.: A few beats of clonus are present in a normal person particularly tense or anxious persons having normal plantar response - hence called ill-sustained clonus or unsustained clonus.

Grading of reflexes

The tendon reflexes are graded as below;

- Grade 0 : Absent
- Grade I : Present (a normal jerk)
- Grade II : Brisker than normal.
- Grade III : Very brisk (exaggerated).
- Grade IV : Associated with clonus in case of knee or ankle jerk.

Abnormalities of tendon jerks

The tendon reflexes may be increased, decreased or absent, and sometimes may have pendular quality. Normal jerk is initiated by sudden contraction followed by sudden relaxation. The causes of abnormal jerks are given in the Table 15.27.

Table 15.27: Abnormalities of jerks

Increased (hyper-reflexia)

It means the jerks are brisk or exaggerated as compared to normal or if one side is involved, then brisker than the other side. The causes are;

- Upper motor neuron lesion due to any cause at all levels. In spinal cord compression, the jerks are increased below the level of compression due to loss of UMN control over LMN.
- Anxiety or nervousness.
- Thyrotoxicosis.
- Tetanus.
- Hysteria.
- Strychnine poisoning.
- Fright.
- Tetany.

Decreased (hyporeflexia) or absent (areflexia)

- Lower motor neuron lesion involving the local reflex arc.
- Neuronal/spinal shock in UMN lesion.
- Muscle contractures due to marked spasticity/rigidity.
- Normal individual who are unable to relax.

Pendular jerks

- Cerebellar disease. This is due to combination of ataxia and hypotonia in cerebellar disease.
- Chorea.

Myotonic jerks (hung-up reflex)

In this type of jerks, contraction and the relaxation phase of the jerks is prolonged i.e. the jerks are slower than normal with prolonged relaxation.

These are seen in;

- Myxoedema (delayed relaxation is typical)
- Hypothermia

The superficial reflexes

The superficial reflexes have, in addition to a local spinal reflex arc, a superimposed cortical pathway – a cerebral arc. Impulses ascend through the spinal cord and brain-stem to the sensory parietal cortex, jump to the motor cortex through cerebral connections. The efferent impulses from the motor cortex pass down the pyramidal tracts to the anterior horn cells of the brain-stem and spinal cord at each level. Hence, a lesion of the reflex arc or a upper motor neuron lesion involving pyramidal tract will abolish these superficial reflexes. This is a paradox in the UMN lesion where the deep tendon jerks are exaggerated but the superficial reflexes are absent.

1. *The superficial abdominal reflex (T₆-T₁₂: upper T₆-T₉ and lower T₁₀-T₁₂)*

- Position the patient supine with relaxed upper limbs by the side of the body.
- Stroke the upper and lower quadrants of the abdominal wall on each side lightly with a key or a wooden stick as indicated by arrows in Figure 15.63. It does not matter much whether you stroke from outside inwards or inwards to outwards.
- Observe any muscle contraction.

Normally, following a stimulus there is reflex homolateral contraction of the anterior abdominal muscles, retraction of linea alba and the umbilicus towards the quadrant stimulated.

Significance: In disease of the thoracic spine, the loss of these reflexes indicate segmental localisation of the lesion. The causes of absent abnormal reflexes are;

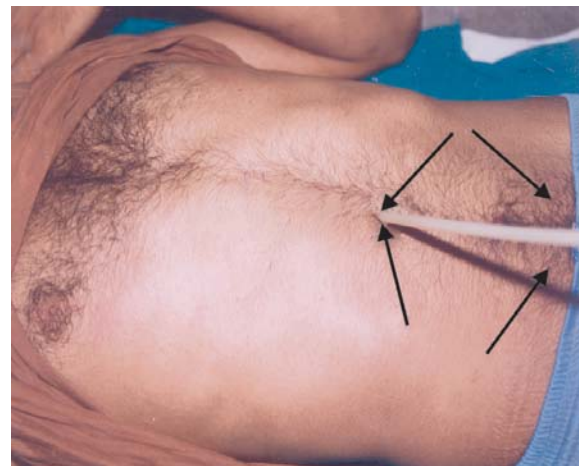


Fig. 15.63: Abdominal reflexes

- Lesions of the reflex spinal arc involving segmental innervation of these reflexes.
 - UMN lesion above their spinal level (T_6 - T_{12}).
 - Marked obesity or overdistended abdomen such as ascites.
 - Multiparous women with lax abdomen.
 - In anxious and elderly patients.
2. *Cremasteric reflex* (L_1 - L_2)
- Position the patient with thigh externally rotated and legs separated (abducted)
 - Scratch the skin of the upper thigh with a stick (Fig.15.64) from below upwards.
 - Observe the movement of the ipsilateral testicle.

Normal response is the contraction of the cremasteric muscle with elevation of ipsilateral testicle.



Fig. 15.64: Cremasteric reflex

The causes of absent cremasteric reflex are:

- Lesions involving the spinal dermatome L_1 - L_2 .
- Pyramidal lesion.
- Hydrocoele.
- Hernia.

The absent reflex has a localising value. Its absence indicates either the lower motor neuron lesion involving L_1 - L_2 segments or UMN lesion of the cord above this level.

The superficial reflexes are *exaggerated* in chorea, parkinsonism and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, anxiety or hysteria (as a part of general hyperreflexia). It has been believed that lesion involving the red nucleus is associated with increased superficial reflex.

3. The Plantar reflex

It is also a superficial reflex. The method of elicitation is described in the Box 15.20 with illustration (Fig. 15.65).

Normally, there is flexion of all the toes including great toe with plantarflexion of foot.

Box 15.20:

THE PLANTAR REFLEX (L_5 - S_1)

- Place the patient supine in relaxed position with knees extended.
- Just hold the ankle with left hand above the foot or over the knee so as to prevent withdrawal of the foot.
- Gently scratch the outer edge of the sole of the foot by a key or a stick from the heel towards little toe and then medially across the metatarsus.



Fig. 15.65: Methods of eliciting plantar response

Normal vs abnormal response

The plantar reflex is never completely absent in the healthy subjects. However a stronger stimulus or an irritating stimulus in an hypersensitive patient may evoke withdrawal of the limb (e.g. initial flexor response is quickly followed by extension of toes and withdrawal of leg).

Babinski's response (an abnormal extensor plantar response). Positive Babinski's sign indicates always an upper motor neuron lesion and is considered pathognomonic of it when present.

A positive Babinski's sign means dorsiflexion (extension) of the big toe and fanning of the other toes with slight dorsiflexion of the ankle and flexion of knee and hip. It is actually considered as generalised flexor response of the lower limb.

If plantar reflex is not elicited by any method, the reinforcement (*Jendrassik's manoeuvre*) method (clinch the fists) may be employed to evoke a response. Other means employed to evoke a response in such a case are:

- Application of warmth to the cold skin or rubbing the sole of the foot to make the skin sensitive.
- Turn the patient's head to opposite side to divert the attention of the patient.
- A different stimulus may be used.

In case of *amputated* great toe, the fanning of lateral four toes, dorsiflexion (extension of the ankle) and eversion of the foot is taken as a positive response, while if the foot is amputated, then strong contraction of fascia lata and flexion of knee and hip is taken as positive response on scratching the stump with a key or a stick (*Brissaud's reflex*).

The causes of plantar extensor response (Babinski's positive) are;

1. Physiological

- In infants below 1 year of age.
- Deep sleep.

2. Pathological

- Pyramidal (corticospinal tract) lesions.
- Deep coma or following anaesthesia.
- Hypoglycaemia.
- Following an epileptic fit (post-seizures)
- Metabolic encephalopathy.
- Neuroleptics.

The causes of absent plantar response are;

- Loss of sensation over the foot (L_5-S_1) e.g. prolapsed disc or peripheral neuropathy.
- Paralysis of extensor hallucis.
- Thickened (hyperkeratotic) skin.
- Cauda equina lesions.

Flexor and extensor spasms

Extensor spasms refer to extension of the whole limb during plantar extensor response indicate severe corticospinal tract lesion without posterior column involvement.

Flexor spasms refer to sudden flexion of the whole lower limb (withdrawl response) during plantar extensor response.

The causes of these spasms include;

- Spinal cord disease /compression.
- Bilateral UMN lesions at higher level.
- More common in combined involvement of corticospinal tracts and posterior column (e.g. multiple sclerosis, subacute combined degeneration)
- Presence of bed sore or UTI in patients with cord lesion.

Both flexor and extensor spasms are abnormal and indicate nothing but an exaggerated plantar extensor response (Read paraplegia — a case discussion in bedside medicine without tears by Prof. SN Chugh).

Other methods to elicit plantar reflex

In extensive corticospinal tract damage, the area from which the extensor plantar reflex can be elicited (receptive field) enlarges, spreading first inwards and over the whole sole and then upwards along the leg to the knee and even higher, therefore, other tests are based on this enlargement of receptive area, also called *plantar equivalence* (Box 15.21).

Box 15.21:

PLANTAR EQUIVALENCE

- *Oppenheim sign*. Stroking with heavy pressure by the thumb and index finger from above downwards along the shin (anterior surface of tibia) evokes an extensor response.
- *Gordon's reflex* (Schaefer's sign). Pinching the achilles tendon evokes plantar extensor response.
- *Chaddock's sign*. Scratching the skin around the lateral malleolus in a circular fashion evokes plantar extensor response.
- *Stransky's sign*. Passive abduction of the 5th digit evokes a response.
- Other signs such as *Bing sign*, *Gonde sign*, *Moniz sign* are just similar to the above 4 signs, are not practised usually.
- *Rossolimo's sign*. It is similar to Hoffmann's sign in UMN lesion where there is flexion of all the five toes (the greater toe is plantarflexed rather than dorsiflexed).

4. *Corneal reflex*. Read examination of eye Chapter 5.
5. *Palatal reflex*. Read examination of cranial nerves IX and X.
6. *Anal reflex* (S_3-S_4). Stroking or scratching the skin near anus in a circular manner produces contraction of anal sphincter.
7. *Bulbocavernous reflex* (S_3-S_4). Pinching dorsum of the glans penis produces contraction of bulbocavernous muscle.
8. *Scapular reflex* (C_5-T_1). Stroking the skin in interscapular region produces contraction of scapular muscles. This becomes absent in high cervical UMN lesion or LMN lesion involving lower cervical segments.

Anal and bulbocavernous reflexes become absent involving S_3-S_4 spinal segments (cauda equina lesion) or UMN lesions of the cord.

Visceral reflexes

These reflexes pertain to visceral functions such as swallowing, defecation, micturition and sexual activity. *Swallowing (deglutition)*. Ask the patient about any nasal regurgitation of food through the nose. Also ascertain

whether there is any difficulty in swallowing (dysphagia).

Dysphagia in neurological disorders (motor dysphagia) pertains to liquids more than solids, whereas mechanical dysphagia (obstruction in the oesophagus or pharynx) is limited to solids only.

Defecation. Ask the patient about any difficulty with defecation or continence. Ask also about any abnormal anorectal sensations.

Tone of the voluntary anal sphincter can be tested by introducing the lubricated gloved finger into the anus and noting any laxity or paralysis (toneless) or spasm of the sphincter. The degree of tension of anal sphincter during a voluntary squeeze by asking – “tighten on my finger” – should be noted. It can be further tested by *anal reflex* and *cough reflex* (anal sphincter contracts briskly in response to sudden cough).

Damage to innervation of pelvic floor musculature produces relaxation of anal sphincter leading to incontinence of urine and faeces during stress (stress incontinence).

Micturition. Ask about any difficulty in controlling or initiating micturition and whether bladder and urethral sensations are normal. Retention, incontinence or urgency of micturition should be noted.

Neurological disorders with atonic distended urinary bladder produce overflow incontinence due to loss of bladder sensation. This is associated with distended bladder in the suprapubic region. Urge incontinence (incontinence occurs at regular intervals reflexly as it fills, in response to sudden noise, to movement or to exposure to cold), is an early feature of intrinsic spinal cord lesions.

Sexual activity. When incontinence is associated with neurological disease, sexual functions (e.g. penile erection, ejaculation in male) or orgasm in both sexes may be affected, hence, may be asked.

Co-ordination and gait

Co-ordination means smooth recruitment, interaction and co-operation of separate muscles or a group of muscles during a movement (motor act). The co-ordination depends on:

- Afferent impulses from the muscles and joints.
- Cerebellar functions.
- Tone of the muscles.

Testing of co-ordination indirectly refers to testing of the cerebellar function provided tone of the muscles is normal. The cerebellum plays an important role in the

co-ordination of voluntary, automatic, and reflex movements. The cerebellum has a central vermis which is concerned with maintenance of the body posture, and two lateral cerebellar hemispheres which control the limb movement on its own side. *Ataxia* means instability due to incoordination of the muscles, may be due to cerebellar disease (cerebellar ataxia) or due to disordered sense of position or joint sense (sensory ataxia) as a result of posterior column involvement such as *tabes dorsalis*. When, however, there is loss of sense of position of a limb or joint (sensory ataxia), the sensory defect can be compensated by vision, hence, ataxia becomes apparent only when the eyes are closed or when the patient is in the dark. In cerebellar disease, the ataxia occurs even when the eyes are open.

Tests of co-ordination

A. Upper limbs and trunk

A useful method is to watch the patient dressing or undressing, handling a book or picking of pins or a glass of water, since these movements are more complex and practised daily, the disturbance of these movements indicates disturbed co-ordination.

- (i) **Finger-nose test.** Ask the patient to hold one arm outstretched, and then with the tip of the index finger, alternately touch the tip of the nose and the examiner's finger tip held in space as accurately as possible (Fig. 15.66).
- Perform the test with patient's eyes open and test each arm in turn.

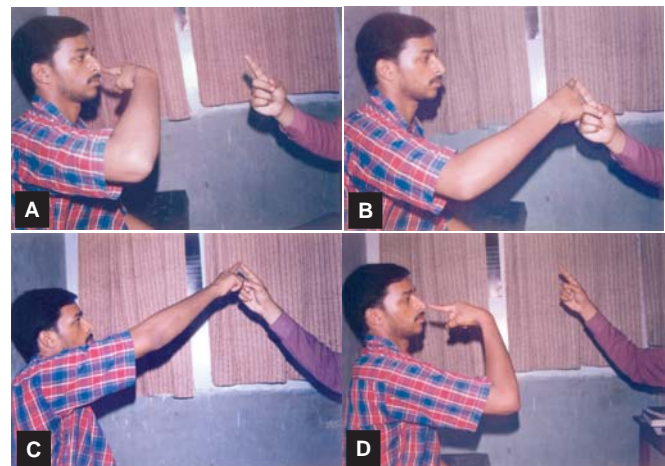


Fig. 15.66: Finger nose test for coordination. (A) Ask the patient to touch the tip of nose while you hold your finger in front of him/her. (B) Ask the patient to touch your finger (e.g. the examiner), (C) Move the finger from one position to another and ask the patient to touch it every time, (D) The patient touches the finger alternately while the examiner, moves the finger backwards and side to side. The patient touches the examiner's finger first and his/her tip of the nose later alternately

- Make the test more discernible by moving the examiner's finger tip in space so that the patient has to adjust 'aim'.
- To test sensory ataxia, repeat the procedure with the eyes closed.

In *sensory ataxia*, the patient may carry out the act without much difficulty with eyes open, but becomes unstable (ataxic) when the eyes are closed. In *cerebellar ataxia*, the patient is unable to perform the act with the eyes open. In addition, there may be intention tremors, dysmetria and dyssnergia. In *dysmetria* the patient may stop before he reaches the nose.

In *dyssnergia*, the act or movement is not carried out smoothly but is broken into its constituent parts. *Intention tremors* mean tremors appear, become more marked and coarse as the finger approaches the nose.

Finger to finger test (Fig 15.67). The patient is asked to outstretch both the arms to a horizontal level and then bring in the tips of index fingers in a wide circle to approximate them exactly in the midline.

In the unilateral cerebellar lesion, the finger on the side involved is ataxic, will either undershoot or overshoot the finger on the normal side. There may be past pointing of the fingers.



Fig. 15.67: Finger to finger test in cerebellar ataxia, Note the past-pointing with eyes closed

Rapid alternating movement (diadochokinesis): The patient is asked to perform alternately pronation and supination (Fig. 15.68).

In cerebellar lesion, there is slowness and irregularity in performing the movement on the side involved due to loss of rhythm of movement as a result of incoordination called *diadochokinesis*.

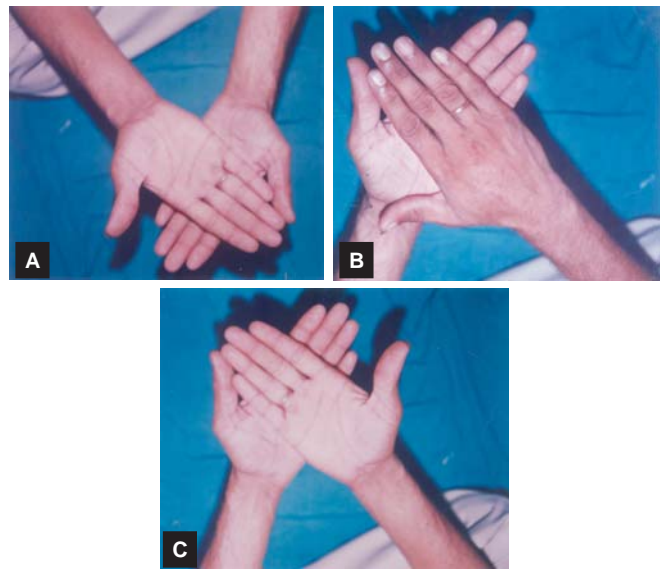


Fig. 15.68: Testing the rapid alternating movement (diadochokinesis). Patient is explained the test by the examiner performing the movement himself/herself. Now patient is asked to perform supination (A) and pronation (B) and again supination (C) quickly as far as possible. Note any slowness of movement or its irregularity

Similarly you can ask the patient to close and open the fist on both sides as rapidly as patient can or pat his knees with palms and dorsa of the hands. The slowness of movements indicate cerebellar disease.

Postural instability. The patient is asked to hold the outstretched arms in horizontal position in front of him. Observe for any deviation.

In unilateral cerebellar lesion, the arm falls slowly and deviates laterally on the side involved.

Rebound phenomenon/test: Normally, contraction of antagonistic muscles occurs immediately after the relaxation of the agonists due to co-ordination between antagonist and agonists; the loss of co-ordination leads to rebound test/phenomenon as discussed below.

"The patient is asked to flex the upper limb at shoulder and elbow with clenched fist. The examiner pulls the wrist against resistance and then suddenly releases it. Normally, the contraction of triceps against resistance will stop the tendency towards flexion, but in cerebellar disease, this tendency is lost leading to exaggeration of flexion and overshooting of the forearm due to unopposed flexion.

Truncal ataxia. Normally the vermis of cerebellum controls the balance and checks the shift of the body from midline. In cerebellar disease, the patient is unable to maintain balance when sitting. The patient sways to

one side or the other or may fall forwards or backwards when made to sit on the bed/chair.

B. Lower limbs

Knee-heel test (the heel-shin test Fig. 15.69)

- Ask the patient to raise one leg at the hip and place the heel of the flexed leg on the opposite knee and run the heel down along the shin (anterior surface of the tibia) towards the ankle and then lift it again and repeat the process again.
- To render the test more complex, ask the patient first to raise the leg and touch the examiner's finger held in a suitable position in space with the great toe before placing the heel on the knee. Still to make it more complex, the finger can be moved from one place to another.
- Observe for any irregularity in the speed and direction of movement, for intention tremors or dysmetria and dyssnergia as observed in the finger-nose test.
- The test is repeated with eyes open and closed.



Fig. 15.69: Knee-heel test (the heel-shin test)

In cerebellar lesion, characteristic irregular side-to-side series of error occur both in speed and direction of movement with eyes open. In addition, there may be intention tremors, dysmetria and dyssnergia.

Alternate test is to ask the patient to draw a large circle in the air with toes or forefinger. Normally, the circle will be drawn smoothly and accurately but irregularity will be noted in the cerebellar disease due to ataxia.

Tandem walking (the heel-toe test of gait Fig. 15.70)

The patient is asked to walk in a straight line on the floor either bare-footed or wearing fleet-shoes, placing one heel directly in front and above the opposite toes. Observe the gait in general, and in particular note any tendency to stagger and the side to which the patient preferentially falls.



Fig. 15.70: Tandem walking

Repeat the process with eyes open and with eyes closed.

- In unilateral cerebellar lesion, patient tries to deviate towards the side of lesion.
- In *sensory ataxia*, patient may walk fairly well with eyes open, but on closing his eyes he sways and staggers.

Romberg's test (Fig. 15.71)

It is a test for loss of position sense (*sensory ataxia*) in the legs. It is not a test of cerebellar function.

The patient is asked to stand with feet close together, and, if this can be done then to stand in this posture with the eyes closed. Observe for any swaying or tendency to fall.

In *sensory ataxia*, the Romberg's sign is positive (i.e. the patient is able to maintain the upright position when the eyes are open, but tends to sway or fall when the eyes are closed). It patient who is ataxic with eyes open but becomes more ataxic with eye closed is also positive for Romberg's sign.

Patients with cerebellar or labrinthine lesions tend to sway or fall towards the side of lesion with the eyes open which does not increase or increases a little when the eyes are closed (Romberg's sign is negative)



Fig. 15.71: Romberg's sign for sensory ataxia. A. Patient does not deviate during standing with feet close together and the eyes open, B. Tends to fall (becomes ataxic) when asked to close the eyes

In hysteria, there may be a false positive Romberg's sign. There is marked unsteadiness both with eyes open and closed with swaying at the hip not at the ankle, first on one side, then on the other.

Causes of ataxia are given in the Box 15.22 and signs of cerebellar disease are tabulated (Table 15.28)

Box 15.22: CAUSES OF ATAXIA	
1. Cerebellar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cerebellovascular disease (infarction, haemorrhage) Multiple sclerosis Cerebellar tumour or abscess Cerebellar degeneration (alcoholic, idiopathic) Hereditary ataxias (spinocerebellar degenerations) Drugs e.g. alcohol, phenytoin, carbamazepine Paraneoplastic syndrome (nonmetastatic manifestation of malignancy)
2. Sensory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tabes dorsalis Subacute combined degeneration of cord Peripheral neuropathy Parietal lobe disease
3. Functional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hysterical
4. Vestibular	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute labyrinthitis Meniere's disease Drugs e.g. streptomycin Vascular lesion in medulla

Table 15.28: Signs of cerebellar involvement

Cerebellar vermis	Cerebellar hemisphere (ipsilateral signs)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Truncal ataxia (patient has difficulty in maintaining balance while sitting and unassisted walking) Gait ataxia (<i>wide-based unsteady gait</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal finger-nose, adiadochokinesis, and abnormal heel-shin test on the side of lesion Horizontal phasic nystagmus towards the side of lesion. Intention tremors with pastpointing, dysmetria and dysnergia.

Examination of gait

Gait being an important element of assessing the disability, seeing a patient walking can be rewarding for neurological diagnosis. Patterns of weakness, loss of co-ordination, and proprioceptive (posterior column) sensory loss produce a range of abnormal neurological gaits. Neurogenic gait disorders need to be distinguished from those due to skeletal abnormalities, which are characterised by pain producing an analgic gait, or limb. Gaits that do not fit either pattern may be due to "functional" or nonorganic disorders and are usually incompatible with any anatomical and physiological deficit.

Procedure/sequence of examination

The patient is asked to walk away from the observer, to turn round at a given point and then to come back. Note the following points:

- Is the patient able to walk or not?
- If unable, how much help does he/she need?

If the patient is able to walk without help, then ask him to walk along a straight line (*tandem walking*), and note whether he/she sways or tends to fall on any side.

To decide whether the gait conforms to any of the well – recognised gait disorder, note the posture, tone and arms swinging during walking (for parkinsonism), the base on which patient walks (narrow, or broad), movements of the foot (high-steps or circumduction) etc. The various gaits are briefly discussed in the Table 15.29. Before labelling the gait disorder, exclude the musculoskeletal disorders.

Table 15.29: Various types of gaits

- Spastic gait** (hemiplegic gait). It is seen in patients with stroke (e.g. hemiplegia)
 - In this type, one arm is held immobile and close to the side with elbow, wrist and phalangeal joints flexed. The leg is extended with plantarflexion of the foot. During walking, patient either drags the foot, often scraping the toe or move

Contd....

Contd....

the leg outward and forward in a circle (circumducting gait Fig. 15.72(A)).

2. *Scissors gait*: (Fig. 15.72B)

It is seen in paraplegia/quadruplegia with bilateral spastic lower limbs.

- The limbs are stiff. Each leg is advanced slowly and the legs (thighs) tend to cross forward on each other at each step like a scissor. This is due to spasticity of adductors of hips. The steps are short.

3. *High-Steppage or slapping gait* (Fig. 15.72C): It is seen in sensory neuropathy or foot drop (LMN lesion) or dorsal column lesion.

- These patients either drag their feet along the ground or lift them too high to clear the ground and then bring them down with a slap on the floor. They are unable to walk on their heels. The high-steppage gait may be unilateral or bilateral.

4. *Fascinate or short shuffling gait*

- It is seen in Parkinsonism (Fig. 15.72D)

In this gait, patient adopts a stooped posture, with head and neck forward and hips and knees flexed. The patient walks with short, rapid steps in shuffling manner so as to appear as if the patient is trying to catch the centre of gravity. Arms swings are decreased. Axial tone is increased and patient turns around stiffly "all in one piece". Postural instability is evident on anteropulsion/retropulsion. In some cases, if the patient is suddenly pulled backwards or pushed forwards, he walks in that direction and is unable to stop.

5. *Cerebellar gait (drunken or reeling gait)*

Contd....

It is seen in patients with a cerebellar or associated tracts involvement.

The gait is ataxic (staggering), unsteady, and wide-based with exaggerated difficulty on the turns. These patients can not stand steadily with feet together, whether their eyes are open or closed.

6. *Rapid tapping gait (magnetic gait)*

It is seen in bilateral corticospinal lesions deep in the cerebral hemisphere (frontal lobe lesion) due to cerebrovascular disease. The gait is wide-based, short-stepped but rapid tapping called *marche a petits pas* resembling the rapid steps of a ballet dancer on her points. There are usually bilateral UMN signs i.e. bilateral plantar extensor response and exaggerated jaw jerk.

7. *The waddling gait*

It is seen in proximal myopathy, muscular dystrophy and osteomalacia.

The gait is like the gait of a duck. The body is tilted backwards with an increase in lumbar lordosis; the base is wide and the body sways from side to side with each step.

Note: Bilateral hip disease produces a similar gait (*Trendelenberg's sign*)

8. *Hysterical gait*

- Bizarre or irregular gait which does not fit into any of the above described patterns. It is seen in hysteria. Miraculously, the patient does not fall.

Astasia-Abasia is a typical hysterical gait disorder in which patient has normal co-ordination of leg movements in bed while sitting, but is unable to stand or walk without assistance. If attention is diverted, stationary balance is sometimes maintained and several steps are taken normally followed by a dramatic demonstration of imbalance, and tendency to fall towards examiner's arm or a nearby bed.

Contd....



Figs 15.72A to D: Abnormal gaits. (A) Hemiplegic (arc-shaped or circumducting). The patient makes an arc while putting the hemiplegic lower limb forward. (B) Paraplegic gait (scissoring gait). The lower limbs cross when patient walks. This is due to adductor spasm of lower limbs, indicates *paraplegia-in-flexion*. (C) High-steppage gait. A patient with peripheral neuropathy demonstrating the high steppage gait. Note the foot drop while the patient is lifting the foot-off the ground. (D) Parkinsonism. Note the characteristic gait (e.g. short-shuffling or fascinating) and stooped posture

Gait apraxia

In an apraxic gait, there is normal power in legs with no abnormal cerebellar signs or proprioception loss, yet the patient can not formulate the motor act of walking. This is a higher cerebral dysfunction in which feet appear to be glued (stuck) to the ground and patient can not walk inspite of normal movements in bed.

Involuntary movements

These are unintended extra-movements that occur either at rest or during voluntary act or movement, mostly are due to diseases of the basal ganglia and extrapyramidal system.

Involuntary movements may be rhythmical (tremors) and irregular (chorea, athetosis, dystonia, hemibillismus, tics and myoclonus).

Tremors. These are regular, rhythmical, repetitive oscillatory movements of a part of body around a fixed point resulting from alternate contractions and relaxation of groups of muscles along with their antagonists.

They are classified in two ways i.e. depending on the position or posture of a limb and according to amplitude (Box 15.23).

Box 15.23: CLASSIFICATION OF TREMORS**I. According to posture**

- Static tremors
- Action tremors
- Intention tremors
- Flapping tremors

II. According to amplitude

- *Fine* i.e. more frequency (7-10/sec) less amplitude.
- *Coarse* i.e. less frequency (4-5/sec) more amplitude.

Static tremors are present at rest, intention, flapping and action tremors are absent at rest, present on actively maintaining a position and exaggerated by movement or action. The characteristics of various types of tremors, associated features and their causes are tabulated (Table 15.30).

Chorea. These are brief, rapid, jerky, irregular, non-repetitive, quasipurposive movement involving the face, head, and limbs. They occur at rest, often appear less obvious during voluntary movement and are increased by nervousness or anxiety.

Chorea literally means '*a dance*', hence, choreiform movements are dancing movements occurring at various joints.

The causes of chorea are given in Box 15.24

Box 15.24: CAUSES OF CHOREA

1. **Hereditary**
 - Huntington's chorea
 - Wilson's disease
2. **Birth injury** (e.g. Kernicterus)
3. **Cerebral trauma**
4. **Infective/inflammatory**
 - Rheumatic fever (Sydenham's chorea)
 - Post-encephalitic
 - Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease
5. **Endocrinal/metabolic**
 - Pregnancy (chorea gravidarum)
 - Hypoglycaemia
 - Hypoparathyroidism
 - Chronic liver disease (Wilson's disease)
6. **Drug-induced**
 - Levodopa
 - Dopamine agonists
 - Oral contraceptives
 - Tricyclics
 - Phenothiazines
7. **Vascular**
 - Lacunar (small vessel) infarct
 - Hemiplegia with chorea (chorea mollis)
 - Atherosclerotic
8. **Degenerative**
 - Senile (old age)

Method of demonstration

Ask the patient to outstretch the upper limbs in front of him/her and maintain this posture. If chorea is present, the patient will start to have rapid jerkings of the upper limbs and can no longer hold the limbs for sometime i.e. there is instability to maintain a posture (Fig. 15.73A).

The other characteristics of chorea are:

- **Hypotonia**
- **Pendular jerks** (hung-up reflex). It is due to hypotonia and choreiform movement superimposition.
- **Pronator sign** (Fig. 15.73A). There is tendency towards pronation of the forearms when the upper limbs are raised above the head with hands opposing each other.
- **Milking sign** (waxing and waning of the grip). Ask the patient to grasp or squeeze the examiner's finger or hand, there is waxing and waning of the grip.
- **Reptile tongue**. Ask the patient to protude the tongue and keep it in that position. The patient protudes it momentarily and takes it back into the oral cavity with a reptile speed.
- **Dinner-fork deformity**. The patient is asked to outstretch the hands and spread the fingers. He/she adopts a characteristic posture i.e. hyperextended

Table 15.30: Characteristics and causes of common tremors

Type	Characteristics	Causes	Associated features
Action or postural (commonest type)	Fine (8-10/sec) Absent at rest Present during posture and movement	Physiological Familial (essential) Anxiety Hyperthyroidism Post-alcoholic Drug induced	Fatigue and stressed persons Present in other members of the family Anxious looking patients with tachycardia, Signs of thyrotoxicosis may be present History of alcoholism and its abstinence Drugs (salbutamol, terbutaline), history of asthma with intake of beta-agonists
Intention	Coarse (4-5/sec) Absent at rest Present during posture Increased by movement	Cerebellar Multiple sclerosis	Other signs of cerebellar disease Paralysis, diplopia, nystagmus, slurred speech, internuclear ophthalmoplegia
Resting	Coarse (<5/sec) Present at rest Reduced by posture or voluntary movement. Sometimes, a pin-rolling character may be noticed in which thumb moves across the tips of all fingers	Parkinsonism Senile Wilson's disease	Other features of parkinsonism Old age Keyser-Fleischer's ring, cirrhosis of liver
Flapping (asterixis)	Fine (7-10/sec) Present in outstretched hands or during action in unconscious patient. In unconscious patient, it is demonstrated by passively dorsiflexing the hand of the patient. Hold the one hand of the patient with your left hand above the wrist, dorsiflex it with your right hand and maintain the same posture for seconds. Movements of the hand of patient indicate asterixis	Hepatic encephalopathy Uraemia Respiratory failure Raised intracranial pressure Poisoning with hypnotics	Other signs of hepatic encephalopathy Other features of chronic renal or respiratory failure Presence of features of CNS disease History of intake and features of poisoning

limb with hyperpronation of forearm, flexion of wrist, extension of metacarpophalangeal joints with separation of fingers i.e. dinner-fork deformity.



Figs 15.73A and B: Chorea gravidarum. The patient developed chorea following delivery. Note the following characteristics; A. Inability to maintain posture of upper limbs, B. Pronator sign is positive

The differences between two types of chorea are tabulated (Table 15.31)

Table 15.31: Differentiation between two common types of chorea

Huntington's chorea	Sydenham's chorea
1. Occurs in middle age (4th or 5th decade)	Occurs in early age (5-15 years)
2. Hereditary (inherited as autosomal dominant) or familial	It is infective (rheumatic) in origin
3. Mental features (e.g. mental retardation present)	No mental features
4. Other associated features e.g. ocular movements	Other components of John's criteria may or may not be present
5. Progressive disorder	Non-progressive, gradually resolves spontaneously
6. Non-recurrent	Recurrences are common. Chorea gravidarum is an example
7. Generalised chorea	Usually generalised, but hemichorea may occur
8. Positive family history	Family history negative

Athetosis: Athetoid movements are slow, rhythmic, twisting and writhing movements having a large

amplitude and involve face and distal extremities. Athetosis is usually associated with hypertonia. The differences between chorea and athetosis are tabulated (Table 15.32).

Causes

- Congenital
- Birth injuries
- Toxic e.g. phenothiazines, manganese, carbon monoxide poisoning, Wilson's disease
- Metabolic e.g. phenylketonuria
- Cerebral palsy
- Drugs e.g. L-dopa
- Encephalitis
- Atherosclerosis
- Cerebral anoxia.

Table 15.32: Differentiation between chorea and athetosis

Chorea	Athetosis
Caudate nucleus is involved	Putamen is involved
Tone is decreased (hypotonia)	Tone is increased (hypertonia)
Rapid, jerky, quasipurposeful movements of limbs with abnormal respiratory movements	Slow movements, extension and pronation plus flexion and supination of the arm (twisting, writhing movements) with alternating flexion and extension of the fingers
Often increased with excitement	No effect of excitement
Proximal parts involved	Usually distal parts involved
Pendular jerks or hung-up reflex	Normal jerks

Hemiballismus 'Ballism' is derived from the Greek word meaning "to throw". These movements have wide excursions, are flinging in character and affect the proximal parts of the body. When confined to one side of the body, they are referred to as *hemiballism*. These movements are absent during sleep. They occur due to involvement of subthalamic nucleus of Luys. Causes include; birth injury, tumour and vascular lesion of basal ganglia. They can be congenital.

Myoclonus. It is a brief, shock-like muscular contractions that may involve the whole muscle or a small number of muscle fibres. Soft palate may be involved (palatal myoclonus). The contractions may be too weak to cause any movement or may be too strong to cause violent movements. It usually disappears during sleep but often occurs in response to extraneous stimuli such as loud noise, light, pinprick or touch. It can occur spontaneously. The site of the lesion is either olivodentate system or cerebral cortex.

The classification based on aetiology is given in Table 15.33.

Table 15.33: Aetiological classification of myoclonus

- I. Physiological**
 - Sleep jerks, hiccup
 - Benign infantile myoclonus
- II. Essential myoclonus**
 - Hereditary
 - Sporadic
- III. Epileptic myoclonus**
 - Epilepsia partialis continua
 - Photosensitive myoclonus
 - Infantile spasms
 - Juvenile myoclonic epilepsy
 - Galic myoclonus
- IV. Symptomatic myoclonus**
 1. Storage disease e.g. Lafora body disease
 2. Basal ganglia disease e.g. Wilson's disease
 3. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
 4. Mitochondrial disease
 5. Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease
 6. Metabolic encephalopathy
 7. Toxic e.g. bismuth, heavy metals
 8. Drugs e.g. L-dopa, tricyclics
 9. Post-hypoxic myoclonus (Lance-Adams syndrome)
 10. Focal CNS damage e.g. tumour, trauma, stroke

Dystonia. It is an abnormally increased tone in the axial muscles (trunk and limbs), the contraction of which results in fixed abnormal posturing or shifting postures. The dystonias are closely related to choreoathetosis. The term *dystonia* is used to include all involuntary movements accompanied by increased tone and abnormal postures. Dystonia is due to extrapyramidal dysfunction usually involving the basal ganglia. It may be focal, segmental, generalised or hemidystonia. The causes are:

1. *Primary torsion dystonia* (Fig. 15.74).
2. *Secondary generalised dystonia*
 - Cerebral anoxia, kernicterus
 - Trauma, tumour, vascular lesions
 - Encephalitis
 - Drugs (phenothiazines), toxic (copper)
3. *Secondary focal dystonia*
 - Spasmodic torticollis (wry neck) i.e. turning of neck to one side.
 - Writer's cramp/vilionist cramp/barbar cramps etc.
 - Spastic dystonia
 - Blepharospasm (frequent opening and closing of eyes)
 - Metabolic disorders e.g. homocystinuria.
 - Oromandibular dystonia (involuntary opening and closing of mouth, pouting, snouting, frequent licking of lips, etc.)



Fig. 15.74: Torsion dystonia. Note the increased tone and fixed posture of right upper and lower limb. There is inversion and plantar flexion of right foot. Patient walks on toes on right side

Fasciculations and fibrillations. *Fibrillations* are contractions of a single muscle fibre or a group of muscle fibres, hence, are not seen usually except in the tongue. They are recorded on the EMG.

Fasciculations are subcutaneous twitches overlying the muscle bellies when the muscles are at rest, result from contractions of a group of muscle fibres or a fascicle (muscle bundle) i.e. the whole motor unit. They may be absent at rest, but can be induced by mechanical stimulation, fatigue and cold. Fasciculations are seen in actively degenerating muscles but not in degenerated muscles, hence, disappears when the muscles are totally degenerated.

Method of examination/elicitation. They may be visible spontaneously over the muscle underneath the skin as ripples. They can be induced by tapping the muscle belly with tips of the fingers such as thigh and calf muscles.

They signify the involvement of anterior horn cells. The *causes* are:

- Motor neuron disease
- Spinomuscular dystrophy (peroneal muscular atrophy)
- Syringomyelia/syringobulbia
- Poliomyelitis (recovery phase)
- Intramedullary tumours.
- Peripheral neuropathy (early or recovery phase).

- Hypoxia, hypoglycaemia.
- Poisoning-organophosphorous
- Cervical spondylosis (limited to upper limbs).
- Diabetic amyotrophy (limited to lower limbs).
- *Benign* e.g. fasciculations are present without muscle wasting, seen in anxiety and fatigue states. They are common among students.

Myokymia. They are transient or persistent quivering or flickering movements which affect a few muscle bundles within a single muscle but are not sufficient to cause a movement of a joint. Thus, they are larger and widespread than fasciculations. They are not associated with weakness and wasting. Myokymia commonly involves orbicularis oculi.

The *causes* are:

- It may occur as a benign phenomenon in fatigued or stressed muscles in anxious patients.
- It may be due to lesion of the facial nerve or its nucleus.
- It may occurs as a generalised myokymia (*Isaac's syndrome*).

Tics and habit spasms. They are brief, repetitive, stereotyped, co-ordinated movements occurring at irregular intervals. Example includes motor tics i.e. repetitive winking, grimacing and shoulder shrugging. Tics may be vocal (simple or complex).

The *causes* are:

- *Gille de la Tourette's* syndrome.
- Drugs e.g. phenothiazines and amphetamines.

Ora-facial dyskinesias. They are rhythmic, repetitive, bizzare movements that involve the face, mouth, jaw and tongue producing grimacing, pursing of the lips, protrusions of the tongue, opening and closing of the mouth and deviations of the jaw.

The *causes* are:

- Psychotropic drugs such as phenothiazines produce tardive (late) dyskinesias.
- May occur in long standing psychosis.
- Occasionally in elderly and edentulous persons.

Muscle spasm and muscle cramps

Tetanic spasms are characterised by sudden intermittent forceful involuntary contractions of small muscles of hands and feet (*carpopedal spasm*). The hands in carpopedal spasm adopt a peculiar posture in which the fingers and thumbs are adducted and there is flexion at metacarpophalangeal joints and extension at interphalangeal joints and there is apposition of thumb (*main d'accoucheur hand*—see the Fig. 10.2). Pedal spasms are less frequent. Tetany is due to neuromuscular

excitability resulting from hypocalcaemia or alkalosis or both. Tetany can be latent or manifest. In latent tetany, these spasms can be provoked by certain manoeuvres;

1. *Trousseau's sign*. Raising the blood pressure above systemic level by inflation of sphygmomanometer cuff produces characteristic carpal spasm within 3-5 minutes (Fig. 15.75).
2. *Chvostek's sign*. A tap at facial nerve at angle of jaw produces twitchings of facial muscles.



Fig. 15.75: Trousseau's sign

The *tetanus spasm* is sudden violent sustained contraction of agonists and antagonists muscles due to loss of central inhibition. In tetanus, there are generalised spasms of skeletal and smooth muscles involving the jaw (*lock jaw* or *trismus*), neck and shoulder muscles producing pain and stiffness, face (*risus sardonicus* Fig. 15.76A), back muscles (*opisthotonus* Fig. 15.76B), laryngeal, oesophageal and respiratory muscles. The muscles of hands and feet are spared. Rigidity is associated with spasms. Autonomic dysfunction may also occur in tetanus. In tetanus, spasms may occur spontaneously or provoked by noise, light and handling of the patient i.e. just putting the hand over the abdomen may induce abdominal spasm.

Flexor and extensor spasms (They have already been discussed)

Muscle cramp (Fig. 15.77) is painful spasm of a part or whole of the muscle, especially of the calf muscles, is common in normal people. It is common in electrolyte disturbance i.e. hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia. It is due to hypercontraction of

muscle fibres and is relieved by passive stretch of the affected muscle.



Figs 15.76A and B: Tetanus (A) Risus sardonicus (B) Opisthotonus (arching of back and legs)

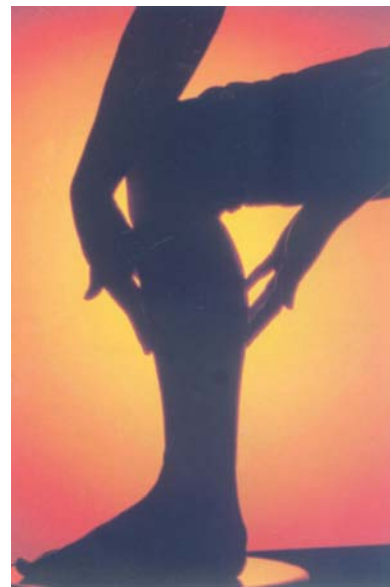


Fig. 15.77: Muscle cramp. Person is trying to relieve it

Sensations

General principles

1. Sensory examination depends on the subjective patient's response, therefore, patient must be alert, motivated and intelligent enough to respond promptly to the stimulus. The procedure of testing must be explained to the patient. In an unconscious patient, it is not possible to test the sensations. In obtunded patients, sensory examination is reduced to observing the briskness of withdrawal and the complexity of defensive movements of the patients in response to a pinch or other noxious stimulus. In the alert but uncooperative patient, it is often possible to have some idea of proprioceptive function by noting the patient's best performance of movements requiring balance and precision.
2. Sensory examination should not be imposed if the patient is fatigued. A limited survey or examination will suffice until a detailed examination is carried out when the patient has taken rest.
3. Sensory examination such as pain, touch and vibration testing in the hands and the feet *plus* examination of stance and gait including the Romberg's sign will suffice in a patient who has no neurological deficit.
4. Patient's eyes must be closed or covered during

examination of sensations because the results of sensory testing will be affected if the patient is actually watching the procedure. Explain the process of testing the sensation with the eyes open remembering that a sudden pin-prick may evoke a frightening response and may damage the patient's confidence in the examiner. Once patient has observed the procedure of testing the sensation and has accustomed to pin-prick and other modes of testing, then the sensations may be tested with eyes closed.

5. Compare the findings with the abnormalities, if any, described by the patient as part of neurological history. Most persons are usually aware of sensory abnormality and may even complain except perhaps in the case of temperature sense which may be lost without patient being aware of it especially if area affected is around the shoulders (as in syringomyelia) rather than hands and feet.

Testing of the primary sensations and their pathways are given in the Table 15.34.

Testing sequence

Touch (Fig. 15.78A)

- Ask the patient to close the eyes and to respond verbally as "yes" to each touch.

Table 15.34: Testing of primary sensations

Sensation	Test device	Nerve endings	Pathways
Pain	Pin-prick (Fig. 15.78B)	Cutaneous naked nerve endings (nociceptors)	Smaller, slower conducting axons and spinothalamic tracts
Temperature (heat)	Test tube filled with warm water (Fig. 15.78D)	Cutaneous thermoreceptors for heat	— do —
Temperature (cold)	Test tube filled with cold water (Fig. 15.78D)	Cutaneous thermoreceptors for cold	— do —
Fine touch	Cotton wisp, fine brush (Fig. 15.78A)	Cutaneous mechanoreceptors with naked nerve endings	— do —
Crude touch	Pulp of finger	Cutaneous mechanoreceptors	Large fast-conducting axons, dorsal (posterior) column, medial lemniscus
Joint position sense (JPS)	Passive movements of joints (Fig. 15.79A)	Joint capsule, muscle spindles, and tendons	— do —
Vibration	Tuning fork 128 Hz (Fig. 15.79B)	Mechanoreceptor (Pacinian corpuscles)	— do —
Stereognosis	Palpation of objects with hand (Fig. 15.79E)	Mechanoreceptors	Large fast conducting axons, posterior columns, medial lemniscus and thalamocortical projections to the parietal lobe.
Tactile localisation and two point discrimination	Two point discriminator (clipper) or an opened up clip (Fig. 15.79D)	Mechanoreceptors	— do —
Graphaesthesia (letter or number identification)	To draw letters or numbers on various parts of the body with a blunt object or finger tip. (Fig. 15.79E)	Mechanoreceptors	— do —

- Touch the skin with a small piece of cotton wool. The tissue paper and fine hair brush are alternative stimuli used.
- Avoid regularly timed stimuli so that patient does not anticipate the stimulus.
- The stimulus for touch should be applied on non-hairy part of skin.
- Examine the spinal segments sequentially (e.g. in the upper limb start on the outer border of the arm (C_5), then proceed downwards to lateral border of forearm and thumb (C_6) and then fingers (C_7) etc.
- Compare the sensation on each limb for symmetry. Touch the part on each limb exactly similarly.
- Map out the abnormal area of sensation by testing from the hypoaesthetic area towards normal.
- If the patient complains of dysaesthesia (an abnormal feeling) map from the normal to the abnormal area.

Pain (Fig. 15.78B)

- The point of a pin should be used as the stimulus.
- Use a new dress making or sterilised ordinary domestic pin or a disposable pin to avoid the risk of transmission of hepatitis and HIV. Avoid the use of a hypodermic needle which is too sharp.
- Establish the baseline for sharpness (e.g. sternal area) before examining the limb.
- Test pin-prick sensation down each limb and over the trunk.
- Ask the patient to report if there is change in the quality of sensation from normal to blunt (hypoaesthesia) or feeling sharper or more painful (hyperaesthesia).
- Touch each dermatome in turn.
- If any area of abnormal sensation found, map out its outlines.

Deep (pressure) pain

- Squeeze the muscle bellies i.e. calf (Fig. 15.78C), biceps or triceps or apply firm pressure over the patient's finger nail and toe-nail beds.
- Ask the patient to report as soon as the sensation becomes painful.

Temperature warm and cold (Fig. 15.78C)

- Ask the patient to close the eyes.
- Touch the patient's skin with a test tube filled with water of desired temperature (i.e. at 35 or 36° for warm sensation; and 28° to 32° for cold sensation).
- Both cold and warm sensations should be tested separately as each stimulates different receptors in the skin.
- Sensation can be tested in each dermatome in turn similar to pain.
- For improved discrimination, fill the two test tubes (or serum bottles or vials) one with warm and the other with cold water. Ask the patient to close the



Figs 15.78A to D: Testing for the superficial sensations; A. Touch, B. Pain (pinprick), C. Calf tenderness (deep or pressure pain), D. Temperature

eyes and to distinguish between warm and cold while applying the container to the skin in a random sequence.

Most of normal persons can distinguish temperature difference by 1°C.

Joint position sense (JPS)

- Start testing sensation from the distal parts to the proximal part of the limb. In the upper limb, first test at the distal interphalangeal joint of the index finger. In the lower limb, test the joint sensation in the great toe.
- Explain the patient the intended movements of the joint and name them (e.g. “that is up” and “that is down”).
- Ask the patient to shut the eyes so as to avoid guessing.

A. Testing of JPS in upper limb

- Hold the middle phalanx of a finger (e.g. index finger) with one hand (left hand) while holding the distal phalanx of the same finger between your thumb and index finger of other hand (right hand).
- Move the distal phalanx up and down, down and up in a random sequence and ask the patient to identify the direction of movement (Fig. 15.79A).
- Then test the other upper limb in similar fashion.
- If there is any abnormality of joint position sense (JPS) at the distal small joints, move to the proximal joints and progressing to wrist and elbow if joint position remained impaired.

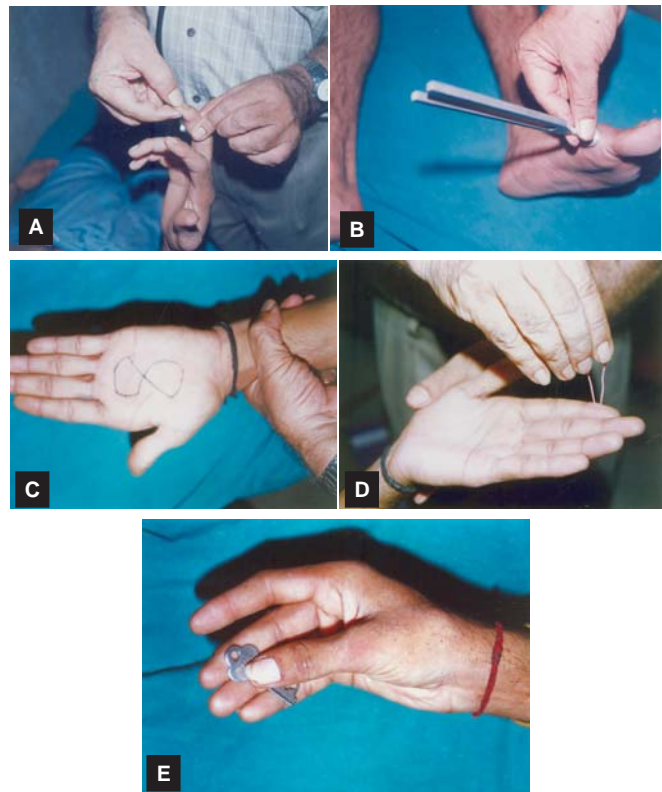
B. Testing of JPS in lower limbs

- In the lower limb, start testing at the interphalangeal joint of the big toe.
- Hold the big toe with left hand between the thumb and index finger; and grasp the proximal phalanx in the other hand (right hand). Move the distal phalanx up and down as described above.
- Ensure that the examiner's fingers do not rub against the patient's other toes.
- If there is impaired sensation, proceed to examine the metatarsophalangeal joint and, if necessary, the ankle and knee.

Most normal persons can identify the slightest movement at the joint. **Remember** a patient with loss of position sense in the part being tested will have a 50% error rate because only two choices (yes or no) are available. Answers greater than 50% errors should be taken indicative of the absence of position sense.

Vibration sense

- Show the patient the tuning fork and make him/her



Figs 15.79A to E: Testing the sensations carried by posterior column. A. Testing for position sense in middle finger, B. Testing the sensation of vibration by tuning fork 128 Hz in the lower limb, C. Testing of graphaesthesia (figure or number identification) in the upper limb, D. Testing the sensation of two point discrimination in the upper limb by a discriminator/divider, E. Testing for stereognosis (e.g. object identification)

acquainted with vibrations. Explain the whole procedure to the patient with the eyes open.

- Now ask the patient to close the eyes.
- To set the tuning fork into vibrations, strike it against the palm or any other soft object.
- First hold the vibrating tuning fork (128 Hz) over the sternum so that the patient identifies the sensation.
- Start testing over the base of thumb, then proceed over the bony prominences at wrist, elbow and shoulder.

In the lower limbs

- Start testing from the big toe (Fig. 15.79B). If necessary, next move proximally in turn to the medial or lateral malleolus (ankle joint), tibial shaft and ischial tuberosity and the anterior iliac crest (i.e. put the tuning fork at bony prominences from below upwards).

Abnormalities of sensation. (Read Table 15.35 and see Fig. 15.80)

Table 15.35: Sensory abnormalities at various level (Figs 15.80A to H)









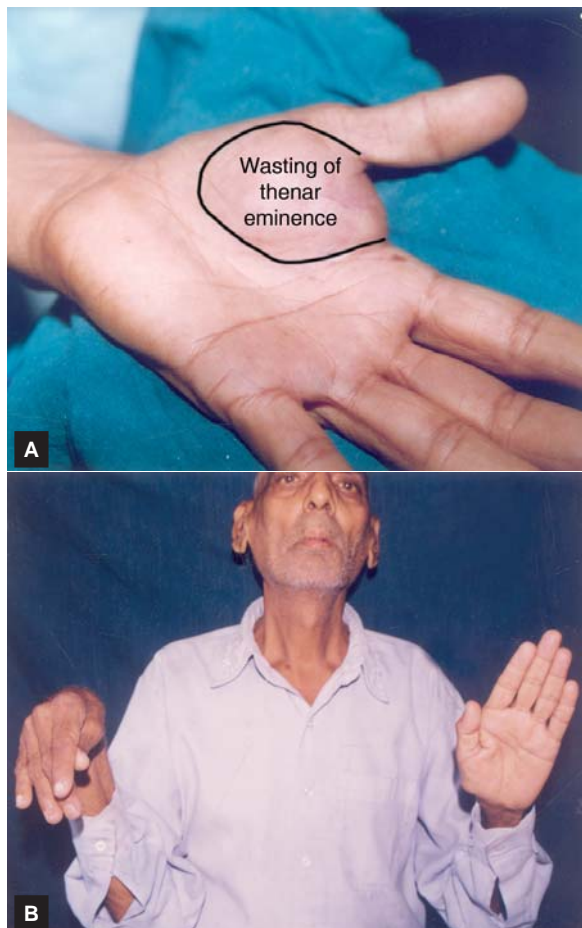
			
A Generalised peripheral neuropathy	B Sensory roots	C Single dorsal column lesion	D Transverse thoracic spinal cord lesion
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Longest fibres being affected first, the sensory loss occurs in "glove and stocking" pattern (Fig. 15.80A). If the smaller nerve fibres are preferentially affected (e.g. in alcoholic polyneuropathy), pain, temperature sensations are lost whilst modalities served by large-fibres (joint position, vibration) may be spared. On the other hand, the latter are particularly affected in demyelinating (e.g. G.B. syndrome) neuropathy. Calf tenderness may be present 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Root pain in the distribution of a nerve root is a characteristic feature. Dermatomal pattern of sensory loss occurs (Fig. 15.80B) although this is often smaller than expected because of the overlap of sensory territories. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loss of proprioceptive sensations (joint position sense, vibration, two-point discrimination, stereognosis etc.) while pin-prick pain and temperature sensations are preserved (Fig. 15.80C). Dorsal (posterior) columns alone are affected in multiple sclerosis. Unpleasant tight feeling over the limb involved. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loss of all sensory modalities below that level of segmental compression on the trunk (Fig. 15.80D) although the level obtained clinically will vary by two or three segments because spinothalamic fibres do not cross at the same level but cross 2-3 segments below or above the level. Very often at the top of the area of sensory loss, there is a band of paraesthesia or hypoesthesia.
			
E Unilateral cord lesion (Brown-Sequard)	F Central cord lesion	G Mid-brain stem lesion	H Hemisphere (thalamic) lesion
<p>Lesion damaging one side of the cord (hemisection-Brown-Sequard syndrome Fig. 15.80E) produces.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contralateral loss of pain and temperature sensation (spinothalamic tract involvement). Ipsilateral (same side) loss of joint position and vibration sense due to posterior columns involvement 	<p>Lesion in the centre of the cord (syringomyelia) produces cape distribution of the spinothalamic sensory loss (loss of pain and temperature) by involving the spinothalamic fibres crossing the cord from both sides over the length of the lesion (Fig. 15.80F).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Posterior column sensations are spared, hence, the sensory loss is dissociated in terms of modalities affected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sensory loss affecting all the modalities occur on the contralateral (opposite) side of the body due to involvement of crossed spinothalamic tract. Ipsilateral sensory loss on the face due to involvement of spinal nucleus of the Vth cranial nerve. 	<p>Lesions in the cerebral hemisphere or thalamus produce loss of all forms of sensations on opposite side of the body (hemisensory loss) due to involvement of both spinothalamic and posterior columns involvement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lesions of the sensory parietal cortex produce contralateral loss of cortical sensations (joint position, vibration, two-point discrimination and stereognosis) while pain and temperature may or may not be involved.

Table 15.36: Symptoms and signs of single nerve lesion (entrapment neuropathy)

Nerve involved	Symptoms	Signs	
Median at wrist (carpal tunnel syndrome)	Distressing pain and paraesthesia on the palmar aspect of the palm, waking the patient at night.	<i>Motor</i> (muscle weakness, wasting) of adductor pollicis brevis (Fig 15.81A)	<i>Sensory</i> loss over palmar aspects of three and half fingers i.e. thumb, index middle and half ring fingers
Ulnar at elbow	Paraesthesia on medial border of hand. Weakness of hand muscles	Wasting and weakness of all hand muscles except abductor pollicis brevis	Palmar aspect of one and half fingers i.e. little finger and half ring finger
Radial	Weakness of extension of wrist (wrist drop Fig. 15.81) and fingers. Often precipitated by sleeping in chair with arms above the back of chair	Wrist and finger extensors, (Fig 15.81B), supinator are affected	Base of the dorsum of thumb shows sensory loss.
Peroneal	Foot drop, trauma to head of fibula	Dorsiflexion and evtor of foot are weak	Nil or dorsum of foot may show sensory loss
Meralgia prosthethica	Tingling and paraesthesia on the lateral border of thigh	Nil	Lateral border of thigh shows sensory loss



Figs 15.81A and B: Single nerve lesions A. Carpal tunnel syndrome, B. Wrist drop due to radial nerve palsy

Common abnormalities of a single nerve lesion (mononeuritis)

The identification of the sensory abnormalities resulting from peripheral nerve lesions or from the lesions of the brachial and lumbosacral plexuses can easily be done from a knowledge of cutaneous distribution of various peripheral nerves and components of the plexuses.

Common entrapment neuropathy i.e. single nerve lesion and their features are given in the Table 15.36.

Sensory vs cerebellar ataxia (It has already been discussed)

Autonomic nervous system (ANS)

Applied anatomy and physiology

The autonomic nervous system consists of afferent and efferent postganglionic sympathetic and parasympathetic neurons in the periphery and preganglionic components of these systems lie in the spinal cord, brainstem and cerebral hemispheres. This neuronal system is autonomous.

The ANS is concerned with;

- Modulation of CVS and GI tract system.
- Temperature regulation.
- Sexual reflexes.
- Bladder and bowel reflexes
- Pupillary and respiratory reflex control

Causes the disorders of ANS are given in Table 15.37.

Table 15.37: Aetiology of ANS disorders

I. Central ANS disorders	
<i>With CNS signs</i>	<i>Without CNS signs</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shy-Drager syndrome Olivopontocerebellar degeneration Parkinsonism Huntington's chorea 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Guillain-Barre syndrome Chronic idiopathic anhydrosis
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hypothalamic disorders 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raynaud's syndrome Familial dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome) Tetanus (occasional)
II. Peripheral ANS disorders	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diabetes mellitus. Spinal cord disorders Peripheral neuropathies (amyloid, porphyria, alcoholism) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Guillain-Barre syndrome Tables dorsalis Lambert-Eaton syndrome
III. Focal ANS disorders	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shoulder-Hand syndrome Horner's syndrome 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Innervation anomalies (e.g. crocodile tears)

Symptomatology of ANS disorders. The clinical manifestations of autonomic dysfunction depend on the organs involved and the normal balance between sympathetic-parasympathetic innervation, the nature of the underlying disease and the stage of progression. The common symptoms are given in the Box 15.25. Postural hypotension, sexual impotence, nocturnal diarrhoea, constipation, urinary incontinence, impaired sweating are some of the common presenting symptoms.

Box 15.25: SYMPTOMS OF AUTONOMIC DYSFUNCTIONS

Cardiovascular e.g. postural hypotension, resting tachycardia, supine hypertension, fixed heart rate, arrhythmias and cardiac arrest.

Gastrointestinal e.g. dysphagia, abdominal distension, nocturnal diarrhoea, constipation.

Genitourinary e.g. hesitancy, retention and incontinence of urine and sexual impotence.

Sudomotor e.g. Gustatory sweating, anhydrosis.

Vasomotor e.g. cold extremities, dependent oedema.

CNS e.g. syncope, light headedness, diminished vision, diaphoresis, pallor.

Pupillary e.g. miosis (constricted pupil), resistance to mediatics.

Diagnosis of autonomic dysfunction depends on the clinical history, examination and tests of autonomic functions.

The history should include an adequate drug review. (e.g. diuretics, antihypertensives, phenothiazines, alcohol, narcotics, insulin, barbiturates, beta-blockers and calcium channel blockers) and diseases which produce autonomic dysfunction e.g. diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, Parkinsonism etc. The relationship of

symptoms to meals and awakening in the morning must be sought.

1. Tests for cardiovascular functions**A. Parasympathetic**

- Beat to beat variation (R-R intervals on ECG).** Subject takes deep breaths 6 per minute. The difference between mean of the shortest and longest R-R intervals on ECG is calculated for heart rate variations.

Normal differences – 15 bpm
Abnormal – 10 or less bpm.

- Valsalva manoeuvre (heart rate response).** Subject blows into an anaeroid BP instrument to maintain uniform BP of 40 mm for 15 secs. The ECG is recorded and measured for R-R interval immediately during manoeuvre and 15 seconds after release. The ratio of longest R-R interval (following release) and shortest (during manoeuvre) is calculated.

Normal = 1.21
Abnormal = ≤ 1.00

- Immediate heart rate response to standing.** Subject lies supine. The ECG leads are placed and machine is kept on running. The subject gets up quickly unaided to standing position. The R-R interval at 15 and 30 seconds is measured and heart rate calculated as ratio of 30:15.

Normal = 1.4
Abnormal = ≤ 1.0

B. Sympathetic

- BP response to standing.** Blood pressure (BP) is recorded while supine and then on standing for at least 1 minute. Fall in systolic BP is noted.

Normal = Upto 10 mmHg
Abnormal = > 30 mmHg

- BP response to sustained hand grip.** Hand grip maintained at 30% of maximal capacity upto 5 min. BP measured once every minute. Increase in diastolic BP is noted.

Normal = 16 mmHg
Abnormal = < 10 mmHg

- BP response to cold pressure test.** One hand of the subject immersed in ice water (1-4°C) and BP measured at 30 second and 1 minute. The rise in BP is noted.

Normal= 10-20 mmHg
Abnormal= < 10 mmHg

Sudomotor function

- *The quantitative sudomotor axon reflex test for acetylcholine-induced sweating:* A reduced or absent response indicates a lesion of the post-ganglionic sudomotor axon.
- *Thermoregulatory sweat test (regional sweat response to elevation of temperature):* An indicator powder placed on the anterior chest on both sides changes its colour with sweat production during temperature elevation. The pattern of colour changes is a measure of regional sweat abnormality, may suggest a peripheral or central lesion.

A unilateral decrease over half of the body suggests a central lesion.

Nervous system at a glance

The signs of lesion in different parts of the brain and the paths involved are summarised in the Table 15.38.

Table 15.38: Signs of lesions in different parts and the paths involved

I. Upper motor neuron lesion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weakness or paralysis of movement • No wasting or atrophy • Hypertonia- clasp-knife spasticity • Exaggerated tendon jerks • A plantar extensor response (Babinski's sign positive) • Loss of superficial reflexes
II. Lower motor neuron lesion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weakness and paralysis of muscles • Wasting and atrophy of muscles • Fasciculations may be present • Hypotonia • Diminution or loss of tendon and superficial reflexes
III. Basal ganglia (extrapyramidal lesion)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Resting tremors of hands, especially pin-rolling movements. • Rigidity-cogwheel or lead pipe. • Bradykinesia or akinesia (slowness of movements) • Expressionless (mask-like) face • Festinant gait.
IV. Cerebellar lesions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ataxia (truncal and limb) • Intention tremors of hands (limbs) • Jerky nystagmus • Staccato or scanning speech • Dysmetria – past-pointing, dyssnergia, adiodochokinesis • Hypotonia and pendular jerks • Smooth movements are replaced by jerky movements

Contd....

V. Peripheral neuropathies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of all sensory modalities affecting the distal parts of the limbs in "glove-stocking fashion" • Loss of tendon jerks ·Hypotonia of distal muscles
VI. Lesion of later spinothalamic tract	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Impaired or loss of pain and temperature sensation
VII. Posterior column involvement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensory ataxia (Romberg's sign positive) • Impaired joint sense position • Diminished or loss of vibration sensation
VIII. Muscle disorders (myopathy)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wasting and weakness of muscles (may be proximal or distal) • Hypotonia and loss of tendon jerks • Pseudohypertrophy (Duchenne's type of myopathy) • Gower's sign positive (difficulty in rising from sitting position)
IX. Parietal lobe dysfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dysphasia and dyscalculia • Right and left orientation • Astereognosis, sensory inattention (extinction) • Apraxia • Amnesia and cognitive disorders • Homonymous visual field defect • Hemiparesis, monoparesis
X. Frontal lobe lesion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Personality change • Emotional change • Antisocial behaviour • Impaired memory • Expressive dysphasia • Incontinence • Impaired smell • Centralateral hemiparesis • Primitive release reflexes • Seizures

Quick neurological examination

A detailed neurological examination may not be necessary in each and every case. The symptoms in neurology may pertain to specific area of involvement. Detailed examination in a patient who is not suffering from a neurological disease is time-consuming, boring and unwanted. Otherwise also, a short-cut neurological examination is performed by the physician in patients not suspected of neurological disease in order to exclude major neurological disability.

General physical examination

- Examine the skull, posture and spinal movements.
- Look for cutaneous naevi or burn mark, pigmentation or depigmentation.
- Listen for bruits in the neck and palpate the carotids.

Contd....

1. **Mini-mental state examination.** Screening for the cognitive functions or dementia can be done during history taking and physical examination. No specific questions need usually be asked. Observe the patient while patient is giving the history or talking to the examiner. Assess mental function quickly as follows:
 - Is the history given by the patient accurate, concise and with insight? *Or* is the patient vague or concrete?
 - Is patient's behavior and memory normal?
 - Is the patient well-dressed or cared for? Note the dress, hair-style, shoes, etc.
 - Is the patient aphasic or dysarthric?
 - Is the patient fully conscious or confused?

Gait

Observe the patient while walking towards examiner and note:

- Is there any abnormality of gait? If yes, is it spastic, hemiparetic, ataxic or parkinsonian or hysterical?
- Is there any neurological deficit? Weakness of a part of the body or half side of the body should be looked for. Is there any foot drop?

Cranial nerves

- Test the ocular movements and look for squint or nystagmus.
- Test for facial movements.
- Test movements of tongue and soft palate.
- Test for visual fields. Is there a hemianopia? If yes, is it homonymous, bitemporal or unilateral? Is *central vision normal*? Can patient read news paper or small prints with or without glasses?
- Look at the optic fundi for *papilloedema* or optic atrophy. Are there any changes in the fundus such as hypertensive, uraemic, diabetic or bleeding disorder?

Motor function

- Have a hurried look for the tone of the muscle (normal, spastic or rigid or flaccid).
- Look for any weakness, wasting of the distal or proximal muscles.
- Look for ataxia in the limbs. If present, decide whether Romberg's sign is positive or negative. Then proceed further for detailed cerebellar or sensory functions.
- Elicit one or two tendon reflexes such as biceps in the upper limb and knee jerk in the lower limb. Note whether present or absent, normal or exaggerated. Elicit the plantar response.

- Can the patient get up from the floor normally? Is there any difficulty in getting up from the low chair and climbing the stairs?

Sensory

- Test the pin-prick and light touch in all the four limbs from the periphery to the centre. Test sensations over the face also.
- Test one or two posterior column sensations especially the joint position sense in the upper and lower limbs. If necessary vibration sense may also be tested.

Note: After having the quick assessment of nervous system, one can proceed further for detailed neurological examination depending on the neurological complaints/ deficit.

Investigations

Biochemical

The routine biochemical test performed and their diagnostic significance is summarised in the Table 15.39.

Radiological

- Skull X-rays:** Plain X-ray should not be done routinely. Diagnostic important changes seen are:
 - (i) Fractures and lesions of the vault or base of skull (e.g. metastasis).
 - (ii) Enlargement or destruction of the pituitary fossa called *sella turcica* (e.g. pituitary tumours, raised intracranial pressure)
 - (iii) Intracranial calcification (e.g. tuberculoma, cysticercosis, oligodendroglioma, wall of an aneurysm)
 - (iv) Pineal calcification (to show midline shift)
- (a) Spinal X-rays:** These show fractures and degenerative, destructive and congenital bone lesions.
- (b) Chest X-rays:** These may show bronchial carcinoma, spinal or rib lesions, thymoma.

Table 15.39: The value of some biochemical tests in neurological disorder

Test	Significance
Urinalysis	Glycosuria (polyneuropathy), ketones (coma), Bence-Jones proteins (cord compression due to myeloma)
Blood	Raised MCV (B_{12} deficiency), high ESR (giant cell arteritis)
Serum electrolytes	Hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia (periodic paralysis)
Blood glucose	Hypoglycaemia (coma), diabetes mellitus related neurological disorders
Serum calcium	Hypocalcaemia (tetany)

B. Imaging

- (a) **Computed tomography (CT scan):** The difference in CT attenuation between bone, brain and CSF makes it possible to distinguish normal and infarcted tissue (hypodense), tumour, extravasated blood (hyperdense) and oedema.

The image can be enhanced with I.V. contrast media to show areas of increased blood supply and oedema more clearly. Additional information about the subarachnoid space and the cerebral ventricles is obtained by scanning after the intrathecal injection of water-soluble contrast media (e.g. metrizamide) or air. The method is safe (apart from occasional systemic reaction to contrast); the irradiation involved is small.

Indications: In general, lesions greater than 1 cm in diameter can be visualised on CT scans. CT scan is useful for the diagnosis of the conditions given in the Box 15.26.

Limitations:

1. Lesions under 1 cm in diameter may be missed. That is why, some lacunar infarcts are usually not picked up on CT scan.
2. Lesions with attenuation close to that of bone may be missed if they are near the skull.
3. Lesions with attenuation similar to that of brain may be difficult to diagnose (e.g. 'isodense' subdural haematoma).
4. The results are poor when the patient does not cooperate – a general anaesthesia may occasionally be necessary.

Box 15.26: DIAGNOSTIC VALUE OF CT SCAN

- Cerebral tumour
- Subdural and extradural haematoma (Fig. 15.82)
- Lateral shift of mid-line structures and displacement of ventricular system
- Cerebral atrophy
- Pituitary lesions
- Intracerebral bleed or infarction (Fig. 15.82)
- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Raised intracranial pressure or hydrocephalus (Fig. 15.82)
- Space-occupying lesions e.g. tuberculoma, cysticercosis (Fig. 15.82)
- Spinal lesions (with CT myelography)

A normal CT scan pictures are depicted against abnormal CT scan in (Fig. 15.82).

- (b) **Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI):** This technique uses properties of protons aligned in a strong magnetic field. The protons are bombarded with radiofrequency waves at right angles to generate images. The equipment is expensive and still restricted to specialised centres.

MRI scan can distinguish between white matter and grey matter in the brain. Brain tumours or space occupying lesion (Fig. 15.83), syringomyelia, demyelinating plaques of multiple sclerosis and lesions in the posterior fossa and at the foramen magnum are demonstrated well. It has replaced myelography in spinal cord lesions such as spinal tumours, cord compression and vascular malformations.

- (c) **Cerebral angiography or MR angiography digital imaging:** This demonstrates the cerebral arterial and venous systems. Contrast is injected intra-arterially or intravenously (Fig. 15.84).

Carotid and vertebral angiography is used for demonstrations of aneurysms, AV malformation and venous occlusions. Films of aortic arch and the carotid and vertebral arteries demonstrate, stenosis, occlusion and atheromatous plaques. For AV malformations of spinal cord, spinal angiography is done.

Conventional angiography is invasive and requires general anaesthesia. It carries a mortality of about 1% and a 1% risk of stroke.

Digital subtraction angiography (DSA) using a computerised subtraction technique is superseding traditional angiography. Contrast is injected intravenously or intra-arterially. No anaesthesia is required.

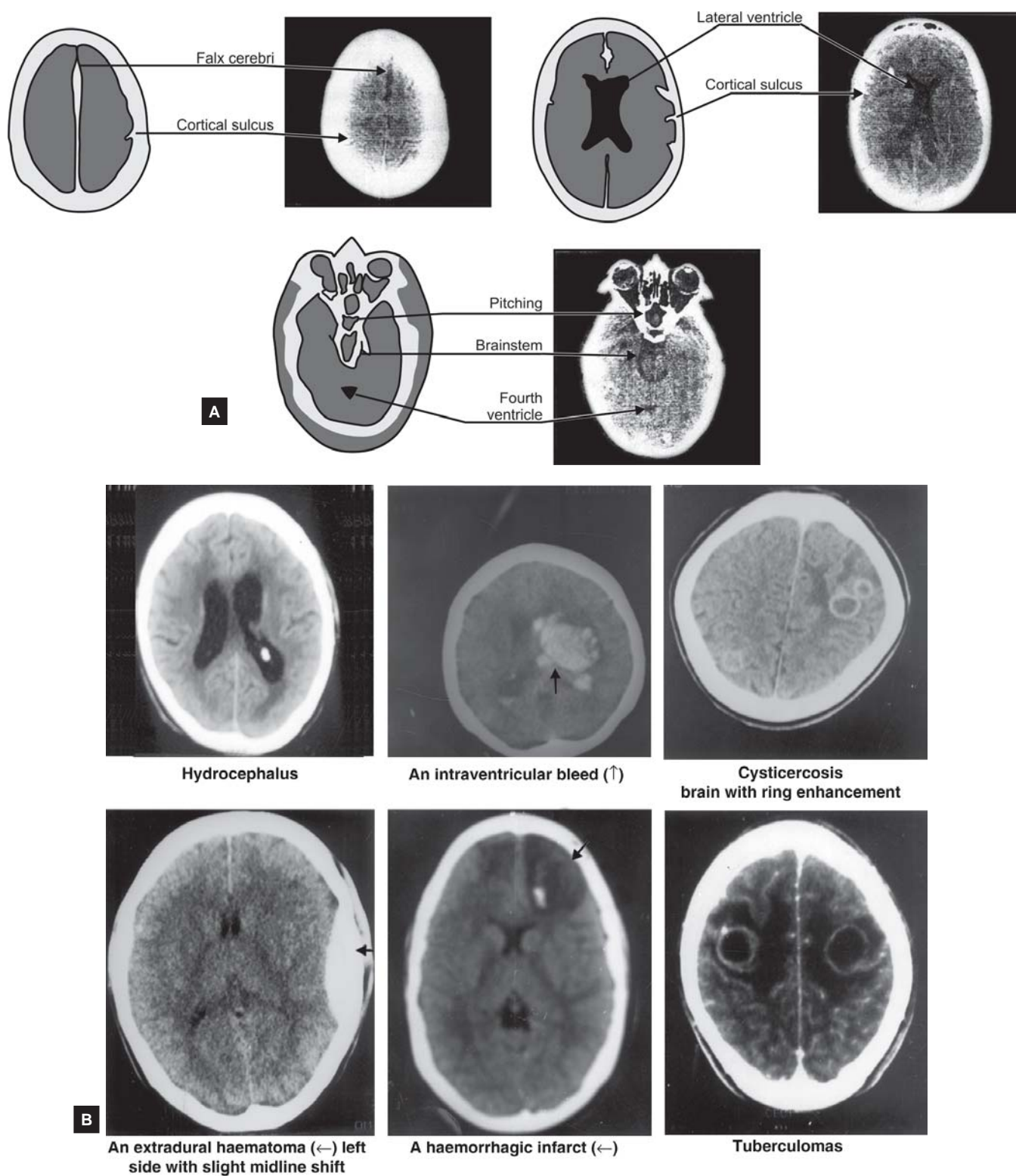
- (d) **Myelography:** A water-soluble contrast media is injected intrathecally into subarachnoid space and viewed by conventional X-rays or CT. This is used in patients with spinal cord compression (Fig. 15.85) and spinal tumours.

- (e) **Isotope brain and bone scanning:** A radioisotope (^{99m}Tc) pertechnetate is injected intravenously to detect.

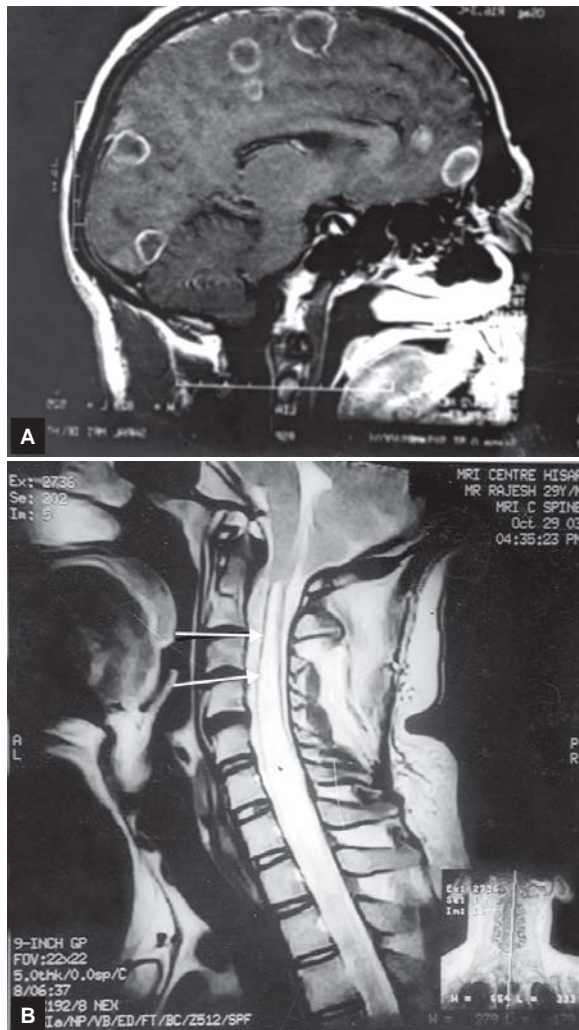
- Vascular tumours
- AV malformations
- Cerebral infarcts
- Subdural haematoma

Electrophysiological tests

- (a) **Electroencephalography (EEG):** It is recording of electrical discharges or signals across the skull arising from the cerebral cortex with the help of scalp electrodes on 16 channels for 10-30 minutes. Rhythmical waveforms can be detected depending on their frequency. Slow frequencies tend to predominate in the very young, during sleep and in diseased states. The frequency discharge of various waveforms are given in the Box 15.27.



Figs 15.82A and B: CT scan brain. A. Normal CT scan (transverse section at three different levels), B. CT scan in different CNS disorders



Figs 15.83A and B: Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) (A) Cerebral space occupying lesion. An enhanced MRI shows multiple tuberculomas in the brain (B) In spinal cord lesion, MRI (T_2 image) shows a syrinx extending over few segments indicated by arrows

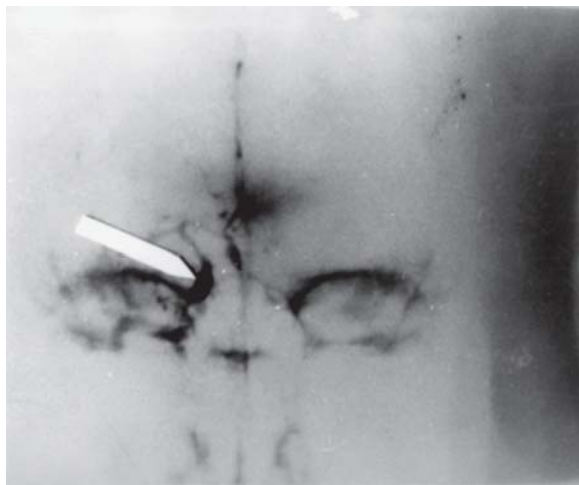


Fig. 15.84: Cerebral angiography. There is an aneurysm of anterior communicating artery (↑)

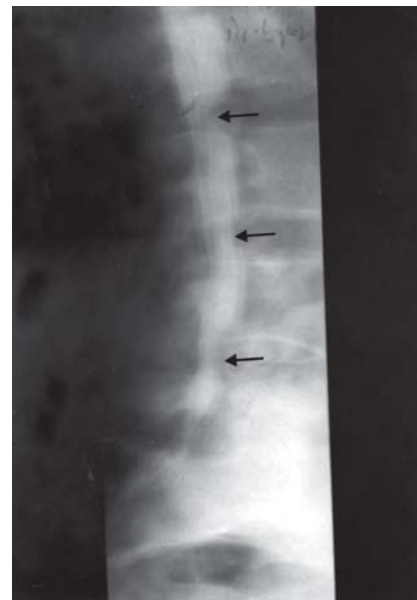


Fig. 15.85: CT myelography. It shows multiple levels of indentations (↑) due to multiple disc prolapse

Box 15.27:

**WAVEFORMS AND THEIR
FREQUENCY DISCHARGE**

Alpha	7-13 H/sec	Theta	4-6 H/sec
Beta	>13 H/sec	Delta	<4 H/sec.

In alert adults alpha activity dominates especially when eyes are shut, and is found best over posterior quadrants. In disease states, slow activity (theta and delta) may be seen either as focal (Fig. 15.86) or generalised.

Indications:

1. Detection and characterisation of epileptic disturbances
2. Diffuse brain lesion
3. Brain death. The isoelectric EEG record indicates brain death.

The EEG changes in disease states are summarised in the Box 15.28.

Box 15.28:

THE EEG CHANGES IN DISEASE STATES

Disease	EEG pattern
Cerebral tumour	Focal theta/delta
Cerebral abscess	Focal delta
Cerebral infarct	Focal theta/delta
Encephalitis	Theta/delta sharp waves, generalised
Hypoglycaemia	Diffuse theta/delta
Hepatic coma	Theta/delta sharp waves, generalised
Subdural haematoma	Reduced amplitude of waves on the side of lesion
Epilepsy (Fig. 15.86)	Focal or generalised spikes, sharp waves, sharp-wave complexes

(b) Electromyography (EMG) studies: Electromyography means recording of muscle potentials through a concentric recording, can be seen on an oscilloscope and heard through a speaker. The following EMG pattern can be demonstrated:

- (i) *Normal interference*
- (ii) *Denervation and Reinnervation:* Spontaneous fibrillation potentials of about 1 ms in duration and 50-200 MV in amplitude are seen, and are evidence of reinnervation.
- (iii) *Myopathic:* When the muscle is weak, the normal interference pattern is reduced. Short duration 'spiky' fibrillation is occasionally recorded.

In myotonia, there is high frequency activity that varies repeatedly to cause a characteristics sound on the loudspeaker (dive – bomber sound).

In myasthenia gravis, a characteristic decrement in the evoked muscle action potential follows stimulation of motor nerve. The reverse is seen (an increment in repetitive response) in myasthenic-myopathic syndrome (Eaton-Lambert syndrome) which may accompany bronchial carcinoma.

(c) Nerve conduction means recording of action potentials by needle electrodes (Fig. 15.87). After electrical stimulation of a peripheral nerve trunk, compound action potentials varying from 5-30 MV can be recorded over the nerve's course. These potentials elicited by motor nerve stimulation are much larger (1-20 MV) and more readily recorded because the muscle amplifies the response. Many peripheral nerves can be stimulated and conduction velocities of motor and sensory fibres can be calculated separately. Velocity and amplitude help to determine the type and severity of polyneuropathies and may define the site of nerve compression as in the carpal tunnel syndrome.

Four measurements are principal value in the diagnosis of neuropathies and nerve impairment:

1. *Mean conduction velocity* e.g. motor and sensory (see Fig. 15.87)
2. Distal motor latency
3. Sensory action potentials
4. Muscle action potentials

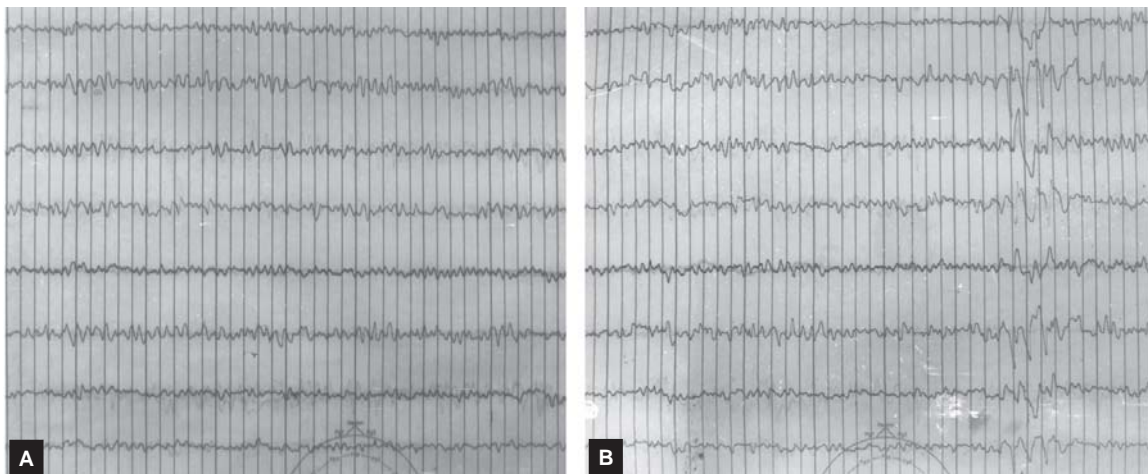
Comments:

1. Demyelination of peripheral nerve causes reduction in conduction velocity.
2. Primary axonal degeneration is associated with reduction of motor and sensory action potential amplitude with little or no reduction in velocity.

(d) Evoked potential recording: Visual evoked potential (VEP) records the time taken for the response to a retinal stimulus to travel to the visual occipital cortex. The dominant response wave from a normal eye is a positive wave peaking at about 100 ms. Lesions of retina, optic nerve, chiasma, optic tract and visual occipital cortex may all disrupt or delay the response, but demyelination of optic nerve causes marked delay with relatively good preservation of the waveform.

A delayed VEP in a patient with multiple sclerosis is diagnostic even in the presence of normal vision.

Sensory motor evoked potential (SSEP) recorded from the brachial plexus, cervical spine and contralateral parietal region when median or ulnar nerve is electrically stimulated help to detect lesion in sensory pathway. Similar responses may be produced over the lumbar and a dorsal spine and vertex by stimulation of posterior tibial nerve in the leg. SSEP is less useful than VEP for detecting subclinical demyelination. They may be helpful in localising the lesions of brachial plexus, spinal root and cord.



Figs 15.86A and B: Electroencephalography (EEG) in epilepsy showing focal discharge (lateralisation of electrical potential)

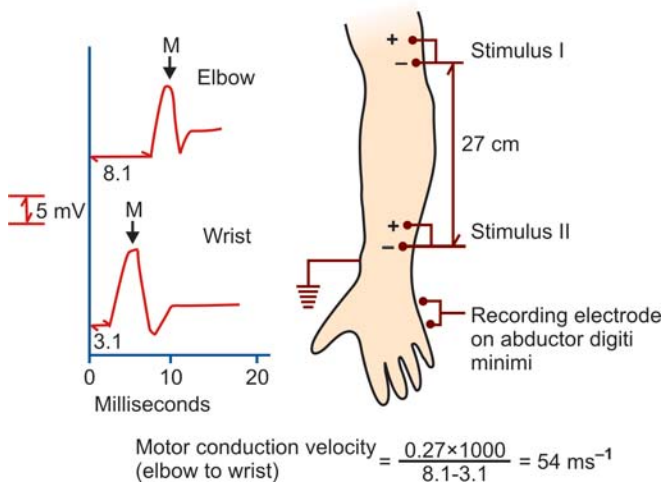


Fig. 15.87: Measurement of motor conduction velocity of the ulnar nerve

(e) Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) examination: A lumbar puncture is done to draw the CSF for examination. The indications and contraindications of lumbar puncture are given in the Box 15.29.

The diagnostic significance of CSF due to its alteration in composition are given in the Table 15.40.

(f) Miscellaneous test

- Estimation of serum enzymes released from the muscles (CPK, aldolase, transaminases). The elevated levels of these enzymes are seen in acute polymyositis and muscular dystrophies.
- Estimation of serum copper and ceruloplasmin in Wilson's disease.
- Estimation of antibodies to acetylcholine receptors protein in myasthenia gravis.

IV. Biopsy

- Muscle biopsy is useful in diagnosis of inflammatory muscle disorders and muscular dystrophies.

- Sural nerve biopsy is done in certain polyneuropathies.
- Brain biopsy, a invasive procedure, is rarely employed.

Box 15.29:

LUMBAR PUNCTURE

Indications

- *Infections* e.g. meningitis, encephalitis.
- *Subarachnoid haemorrhage* if CT scan is negative or not available.
- *Inflammatory conditions* e.g. multiple sclerosis, sarcoidosis, acute polyneuritis, neurosyphilis
- *Infiltrative disorders* e.g. carcinomatous meningitis, lymphoma, leukaemia
- *To confirm raised intracranial pressure* when CT scan excludes the danger of brain-stem herniation e.g. benign raised intracranial pressure, and cerebral venous sinus thrombosis
- *Intrathecal administration* of drugs e.g. antimitotic, antibiotics, or spinal anaesthesia
- *Instillation* of contrast media or isotopes for myelography and cisternography
- *Removal of CSF* therapeutically in benign intracranial hypertension

Contraindications

- *Suspicion of a mass lesion in the brain or spinal cord:* Caudal herniation of cerebellar tonsils ("coning") may occur if an intracranial mass is present
- *Papilloedema* due to raised intracranial pressure from any cause
- *Local infection* at the site of lumbar puncture
- *Congenital lesion* in the lumbosacral region (e.g. meningomyelocoele)
- *Thrombocytopenia or abnormal haemostasis:* Dry tap (No CSF comes out). It may be due to (i) faulty technique and (ii) due to obliteration of subarachnoid space by mass lesion of cord or chronic adhesive arachnoiditis.

Table 15.40: The CSF changes in various neurological conditions

Condition	Colour	Pressure (mmHg)	Cells (mm ³)	Protein (mg/dl)	Glucose (mg/dl)	Culture
Normal	Clear	50-180	<5 (all mononuclear)	20-50	40-70	Sterile
Tubercular meningitis	Clear or straw coloured (cob-web may occur on standing)	Elevated	>400 mostly mononuclear	Elevated	Moderately reduced (<40 mg/dl or ½ of blood sugar)	Difficult to isolate the organism on Zn stain or culture
Pyogenic meningitis	Turbid	Elevated	>1000 mostly polymorphs	Elevated	Markedly reduced e.g. <30 mg/dl (1/3 of blood sugar)	Organisms may be isolated on Gram's stain or culture
Aseptic meningitis	Clear	Elevated	Marked lymphocytosis	Normal	Normal	Sterile
Subarachnoid haemorrhage	Haemorrhagic or xanthochromic	Elevated	Markedly increased all types of cells including RBCs seen	Elevated	Reduced or normal	Sterile
Multiple sclerosis	Clear	Normal	Increased (mononuclear cells)	Elevated proteins and IgG levels. Oligo-mono-clonal band may be seen	Normal	Not indicated
Encephalitis	Clear	Normal	Normal or slightly increased	Elevated mildly	Normal	Sterile

16

The Examination of Unconscious Patient

HISTORY

Symptoms

Patient is brought in unconscious state

Present history

- Ask for (Figures)
- Mode of onset of coma
- Details of neurological symptoms before falling unconscious
- History of trauma, detail of illicit drug/poison or alcohol

Past history

- Ask for liver and kidney disease, HT, diabetes, endocrinal disease, cardiovascular disease or arrhythmias or epilepsy etc.

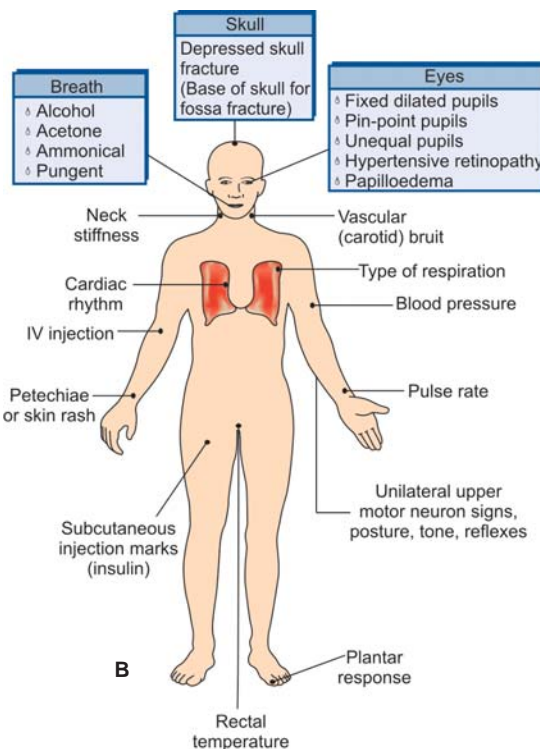
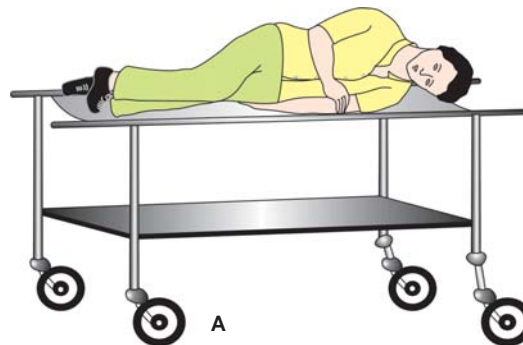
Family history

Personal history

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

First of all assess for vital signs e.g. patent airway, injury to cervical spine, pulse, BP, respiration, convulsions.

- Start the management if vital parameters are disturbed and perform examination later on
- **Examination of the skull** e.g. for trauma
- **Eyes** for haemorrhage, ptosis, pupils for size and reaction
- **Face** for pallor, asymmetry, injury
- **Mouth** e.g. bleeding, tongue bite, smell
- **Ear, nose** for bleeding.
- **Skin** for bleeding
- **Neck** for neck rigidity, lymph nodes.



FORMAT FOR EXAMINATION OF COMATOSED PATIENT A. AN UNCONSCIOUS PATIENT ON TROLLEY IN ACCIDENT AND EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT, B. EXAMINATION OF UNCONSCIOUS PATIENT INCLUDING BASIC NEUROLOGICAL EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Nervous system

- Level of consciousness, posturing
- Neck stiffness, cranial nerves
- Check the size, shape and reaction of pupils to light. Note any conjugate deviation.
- Look for brain-stem reflexes
- Doll's eye movements, oculovestibular reflex, corneal reflex
- Look for presence of focal neurological signs or motor paralysis. Elicit the deep tendon jerks for asymmetry.

Cardiovascular system

- Look for cardiomegaly
- Auscultate for carotid bruit
- Auscultate the heart for cardiovascular disease or arrhythmia.

Respiratory system

- Note the rate, type and pattern of breathing. Look for chest injury.
- Auscultate for crackles, rales and wheezes or any respiratory problem or aspiration.

Abdominal examination

Look for the abdominal distension, rigidity, ascites, hear the intestinal sounds, look for signs of hepatic, renal insufficiency.

Endocrinal system

Assess for any endocrinal disturbance especially thyroid.

Diagnosis

Coma, Cause?

Investigations

UNCONSCIOUSNESS OR COMA

Definition

Coma or unconsciousness is defined as persistent loss of consciousness in which the subject lies with eyes closed and shows no understandable response to external stimulus or inner need. The coma may vary in degree; and in its deepest stage no reaction of any kind i.e. corneal, pupillary, pharyngeal is obtainable. The tendon and plantar reflexes are absent. With lesser degree of coma, pupillary reflexes, reflex ocular movements and other brain-stem reflexes are preserved and there may or may not be rigidity of the limbs and extensor plantar response.

The term 'stupor' refers to that state when an individual responds to only the vigorous painful stimuli by groaning, opening the eyes or with irregular respiration.

Coma like syndromes

Coma is characterized by complete unarousability. Several other syndromes render the patients apparently unresponsive or insensate, are considered separately because of their special significance.

1. **Vegetative state:** This is state of coma in which the eyelids have, after a time, opened giving the appearance of wakefulness. There is an absolute absence of response to commands and an inability to communicate. This is also called '*awake coma*'. There may be yawning, grunting and random movements of limbs and head. There are accompanying signs of extensive bilateral cortical damage i.e. Babinski signs, decerebrate or decorticate limb posturing and absent response to visual stimuli. Autonomic nervous system functions are preserved. The vegetative state results from global damage to the cerebral cortex most often following cardiac arrest or head injury.
2. **Akinetic mutism:** It refers to the state of partial or full wakefulness in which patient lies immobile with eyes open and is unable to talk. It results from hydrocephalus, mass in the region of third ventricle, bilateral frontal lobe lesions.
3. **Locked-in-state:** It is a state of pseudocoma in which patient appears to be unconscious, immobile and unresponsive but can open and move the eyes on command. Often these patients communicate with movements of eyes, a form of '*sign language*'. These individuals are thus "*locked in, or imprisoned within their own bodies.*" It results from infarction or haemorrhage of ventral pons due to basilar artery occlusion.
4. **Coma vigil:** It indicates a state of impaired consciousness with muttering. The unconsciousness is not such as to amount coma. It is observed in infectious fevers such as typhoid, dengue or pneumonia.
5. **Catatonia (Fig. 16.1):** It is hypomobile syndrome associated with major psychosis. In its typical form, the patients appear awake with eyes open but make no voluntary or responsive movements, although they blink spontaneously and may not appear distressed. The characteristic feature is that the limbs maintain their posture when lifted or moved by the examiner.
6. **Hysterical pseudocoma:** It indicates voluntary attempt to appear comatosed. Patients resist to examination. Eyelid elevation is actively resisted. Blinking occurs to visual threat when the lids are held open. The eyes moves concomitantly with head rotation. All these signs belie brain damage.



Fig. 16.1: Catatonia. A patient with hypomobile face and vacant look. He appears to be distressed and makes no responsive movements

Pathophysiology and causes of coma

A normal level of consciousness depends on the activation of the cerebral hemispheres by neurons located in brain-stem reticular activating system (RAS). Both these components and the connections between them must be preserved for maintenance of normal consciousness. The principal mechanisms of coma therefore are:

- i. Widespread damage to both hemispheres (i.e. disease, ischaemia, trauma)
- ii. Depression of cerebral functions by drugs (hypnotics), toxins (poisons), hypoxia or metabolic derangements (diabetes, hypoglycaemia, liver cell or renal failure)
- iii. Brain-stem lesions (subtentorial neoplasms) involving RAS.

The causes of coma are depicted in the Box 16.1.

Box 16.1: COMMON CAUSES OF COMA	
A. Brainstem lesions	
• Infarction	• Tumour
• Haemorrhage	• Trauma
• Infections e.g. encephalitis, brain abscess, meningitis	
• Cerebellar infarction or haemorrhage	
B. Lesions of cerebral hemisphere with oedema and brainstem compression	
• Infarction	• Haemorrhage
• Encephalitis, meningitis	• Tumour
• Status epilepticus	• Cerebral malaria
• Trauma (subdural, extradural)	
• Hydrocephalus, hypertensive encephalopathy	
C. Metabolic abnormalities	
• Diabetes mellitus	• Respiratory failure
• Hepatic failure	• Adrenal crisis
• Renal failure	• Hypopituitarism
• Cardiac failure	• Hypothyroidism
• Hyponatraemia (severe)	• Hypoxia
• Hypokalaemia	
• Hyper and hypocalcaemia	
• Vitamin deficiencies (e.g. B ₁ , nicotinic acid, B ₁₂)	
D. Drugs and physical agents	
• Anaesthetic agents	
• Drug overdose and alcohol ingestion. Hyper and hypothermia	
E. Psychogenic e.g. hysteria	

Clinical evaluation of a patient with coma

Whenever possible an account of events preceding coma must be obtained directly from the friends or relatives and supplemented by any other information from the third personnel/ambulance personnel/eye witness etc. It is imperative to establish when the patient was last seen alert and conscious because the possible diagnosis is influenced by the rate of onset of coma.

The clinical evaluation consists of:

History

In many cases, the cause of coma is immediately evident (e.g. trauma, cardiac arrest or known drug ingestion);

while in others information have to be gathered from third party regarding the:

- (i) **Mode of onset of coma:** The cerebrovascular episodes, drug abuse or intoxication, hypoglycaemia, a life-threatening infection (septicaemia) or post-ictal condition may develop suddenly; whereas coma associated with diabetic ketoacidosis, chronic renal failure (uraemia) or hepatic encephalopathy develops insidiously.
- (ii) **Details of preceding neurological symptoms:**
 - A history of headache before coma indicates intracranial space occupying lesion of any cause.
 - Seizures of recent onset whether focal or generalised indicate intracranial tumour, brain abscess, encephalitis or brain haemorrhage.
 - Dizziness, diplopia before coma indicate transient vascular episodes which may occur due to cerebral vasospasm.
 - A history of trauma with concussion followed a few days later by fluctuating consciousness, confusion, stupor and coma indicate subdural haematoma.
 - A history of trauma followed by a brief lucid interval before lapsing into coma suggests extradural haemorrhage.
- (iii) **Use of medications, illicit drugs or alcohol.** Patients with drug-induced coma may be known or identified by neighbours, family, medical attendants or the ambulance driver or recovery of drug containers or alcohol from their homes by the attendant.
- (iv) **A history of depression or suicidal tendencies** must be taken into account in unexplained coma.
- (v) **A thorough search of the patient** may reveal hospital outpatient attendance card, unfilled prescriptions, drugs or even syringes. *Diabetics or hypertensives or epileptics* often carry some form of identification either in their clothing (pocket) or as a wrist band or necklace.
- (vi) **History of liver, kidney, lung, heart disease or other medical illness** such as *diabetes, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease* must be sought. *Hypoglycaemia* is characterised by stupor or coma with signs of sympathetic overactivity (pallor, sweating, tachycardia, seizures) can be aroused easily by I.V. 25% glucose in case of doubt of diabetic vs hypoglycaemia coma before blood or urine sample is taken for examination.

General physical examination

Proper management of a case of coma depends on the recognition of the cause of coma, an interpretation of



Fig. 16.2: Maintenance of patent airway is mandatory in coma assessment and management. To maintain patent airway, tracheostomy has been done. The suction is being done by a resident doctor. Arterial blood gas sample has been sent

certain clinical signs such as brainstem reflexes, proper use of diagnostic tests. It is a common practice that acute respiratory and cardiovascular problems should be attended to on priority basis than neurological examination. Therefore, vital signs must be maintained such as clear airway (Fig. 16.2), pulse, BP before subjecting the patient to further evaluation; otherwise appropriate resuscitative measures should be adopted immediately. The immediate basic assessment will guide series of investigations and immediate remedial measures (Table 16.1).

Note the general features of the patient with coma as they may constitute important clues to the diagnosis.

- (i) Note the general appearance, nourishment, dress and cleanliness.
- (ii) Note for any evidence of trauma or exposure. Note any marks of injection or superficial thrombophlebitis.

Signs of external trauma may be associated with fractures and intracranial bleeding. Marks of injections or thrombophlebitis indicate drug abuse/overdose.

- (iii) Look for pallor or signs of shock

Pallor and shock indicate blood loss (internal or external) if trauma is suspected. It may indicate fluid loss in a patient with diarrhoea and vomiting

- (iv) Always look for the important clues (Table 16.2) so as to reach the aetiological diagnosis.

Table 16.1: Immediate assessment of coma and remedial measures

Assess	Check	Remedy
1. Is the airway patent?	Blood gases	Intubate and give O ₂
2. Is the patient convulsive?	EEG/blood glucose	I.V. glucose, O ₂ and diazepam
3. Are there signs of head or face injury?	CT scan	Neurological examination
4. Is the neck fractured?	X-ray	Splint neck
5. Is there major haemorrhage?	–	Maintain BP and circulation
6. Is there an evidence of diabetes mellitus?	Blood/urine sugar	Give glucose if hypoglycaemia, otherwise treat appropriately
7. Is there an evidence of drug overdose or misuse such as needle pricks?	Pupils and respiration	Naloxone or other appropriate antidote

The clinical signs of two important comas e.g. neurological vs metabolic are given in the Box 16.2.

Table 16.2: Clinical clues to the cause of coma

Finding	Diagnostic clues to
Smell of breath	Diabetic ketoacidosis, uraemia, alcohol, hepatic encephalopathy, aluminium phosphide poisoning
Seizure	Meningitis, encephalitis, cerebral malaria, brain haemorrhage, status epilepticus.
Pyrexia	Septicaemia, meningitis, encephalitis, thyroid crisis, vasculitis
Jaundice	Hepatic coma (Fig. 16.3)
Sympathetic overactivity	Anxiety, phaeochromocytoma, thyrotoxic crisis
Bradycardia	Stokes-Adams, myxoedema coma, OP poisoning, raised ICP
Tachycardia	Hyperthyroidism, shock, CHF, infections
Hypotension	Shock, Addisonian crisis, AMI, drug intoxication, internal haemorrhage
Hypertension	Hypertensive encephalopathy, raised ICP (intracranial pressure)
Tachypnoea	Diabetic coma, metabolic acidosis, infection (pneumonia), respiratory failure (see the Fig. 16.7)
Rapid, shallow breathing	Alcohol intoxication, acidosis, diabetes
Dilated pupils	Autonomic hyperactivity
Papilloedema	Hypertensive encephalopathy, brain tumour, subarachnoid haemorrhage
Neck rigidity	Meningitis, subarachnoid or intracerebral haemorrhage, meningoencephalitis, meningism (typhoid, malaria)
Tongue/cheek bite	Status epilepticus
Cardiomegaly	CHF, hypertensive heart disease
Arrhythmias	AMI, CHF
Pulmonary rales/crackles	Pulmonary oedema, CHF, pneumonia
Hepatomegaly	CHF, hepatic failure
Asymmetric deep tendon reflexes	CVA, subdural haematoma, mass lesion
Plantar extensor	Raised intracranial pressure, hypoglycaemia
Primitive reflexes present	Dementia, frontal lobe lesions



Fig. 16.3: Hepatic coma. Presence of jaundice, dark coloured urine in presence of unconsciousness indicate hepatic coma

High body temperature 42°C or above associated with dry skin indicate heat stroke or anticholinergic drug intoxication. Hypothermia is observed in alcoholics, barbiturate, sedative or phenothiazine intoxication; causes coma if temperature falls below 31°C .

In patients with severe raised intracranial pressure and signs of cerebral herniation, there will be bradycar-

dia as well as hypertension (Cushing response). Petechiae suggest thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, meningococemia, bleeding diathesis.

Systemic examination

Neurological examination

Systemic assessment of the unconsciousness patient is an important part of neurological examination. An application of Glasgow coma scale not only provides a grading of coma by numerical scale but allows serial comparisons to be made for prognostic information particularly in traumatic coma (see the Box 16.3). This scale should be applied in each and every patient under observation and should be charted out from time to time for comparison.

This can be charted by nursing or medical staff. It is important to note the degree of unconscious to external stimuli. If the patient is not arousable by conversation, calling the patient's first name, a sudden loud noise, then increasingly intense stimuli are used to determine the threshold for arousal and the optimal motor response of each side of the body. Tickling the nostrils with a cotton wisp is a modest stimulus to arousal—all but deeply stuporous or comatose patients will move the head away and rouse to some degree and may use the

Box 16.2: CLINICAL FEATURES OF TWO IMPORTANT COMAS		
Feature	Neurological coma	Metabolic coma
1. State of consciousness	Coma usually with agitation	Silent coma (no agitation or resistance)
2. History of trauma	May be present. There may be signs of injury e.g. bruising, bleeding	No history or evidence of trauma
3. Focal neurological deficit/neck stiffness	Present	Absent
4. Brain-stem reflexes	Doll's head ocular movements are lost on one side or both sides	Doll's head eye movements are preserved usually except in deep metabolic coma. They are always preserved in drug-induced coma
5. Physical signs	Neck stiffness, plegia/paresis of limb(s), seizures, abnormal posture and reflexes, and signs of raised intracranial pressure (headache vomiting, papilloedema) indicate neurological disorders as the cause	Hyperpyrexia, abnormal smell, air hunger flapping tremors indicate metabolic disorder as the cause
6. Breathing	Deep, sturtorous	Slow and shallow
7. Pupils	Unequal pupils or unilateral pupillary involvement indicates neurological disorder	Bilateral small pupils occur in drug induced (opiate, barbiturates and other drugs) coma
8. Ocular fundi	Abnormal	Normal
9. Common cause	Meningitis, encephalitis, subarachnoid or intracerebral haemorrhage, status epilepticus, brain tumour and infarction	Hypo or hyperglycaemia, uraemia, liver cell failure, hypothermia, respiratory failure, drug overdosage, endocrinal and electrolyte imbalance

Box 16.3: GLASGOW COMA SCALE	
Scale	Score
Eye opening (E)	
• Spontaneous	4
• To loud voice	3
• To pain	2
• Nil	1
Best motor response (M)	
• Obeys	6
• Localises	5
• Withdraws (flexion)	4
• Abnormal flexion	3
• Extensor response	2
• Nil	1
Verbal response (V)	
• Oriented	5
• Confused, disoriented	4
• Inappropriate words	3
• Incomprehensible sounds	2
• Nil	1
Coma score (E + M + V)	
• Minimum	3
• Maximum	15
<p><i>Note:</i> Patients with head trauma scoring 3 or 4 have an 85% chance of death or vegetative state; while scores above 11 indicate only 5-10% chance of death or vegetative state and 85% chance of moderate disability or good recovery. Intermediate scores have intermediate prognosis.</p>	

hand to remove the offending stimulus. Responses to noxious stimuli (squeezing the achilles tendon, sternal pressures, supraorbital pressure with thumb) should be appraised critically. Stereotyped posturing indicates severe dysfunction of corticospinal system. Abrupt withdrawal movement elicited by the abovementioned stimuli denotes an intact corticospinal system.

The fundamentals of neurological examination are summarised in the Box 16.4 and discussed in the text.

Abnormal posturing: The patient posture should be observed first without intervention.

- Decorticate rigidity or posturing describes stereotyped arm and leg movements either occurring spontaneously or induced by sensory stimulation. It is characterised by flexion of elbows and wrists and arm supination against the rigid body; suggests bilateral cerebral damage above the midbrain.
- Decerebrate rigidity (Fig. 16.4) or posturing describes extension and adduction of elbows and wrists with pronation; suggest corticospinal damage in the midbrain or caudal to diencephalon.

Box 16.4: FUNDAMENTALS OF NEUROLOGICAL EXAMINATION IN COMA	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Assess the level of consciousness according to glasgow scale. 2. Look for the signs of head injury e.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Local bruising • Penetrating wounds and fracture • Bleeding from nose, ear or other site • Neck stiffness. The causes are given in the Table 16.2 3. Check the size, shape and reaction of the pupils to light 4. Look for ocular movements (spontaneous, following and to doll's head if no voluntary response) 5. See the limbs for posture, tone and movement 6. Elicit reflexes (tendon, primitive, plantar response) 7. Pattern of respiration 8. Examine ocular fundus. 	
<p>Scalp oedema and haematoma (local swelling) can easily be palpated while "<i>battle sign</i>" (bleeding/bruising of skin behind pinna "suggest basal skull fracture." Similarly bleeding from the ear is a sign of trauma and fracture. Purpura and neck stiffness indicate meningococcal septicaemia and meningitis.</p>	

- Arms extension with flaccid legs or leg flexion have been associated with low pontine lesions.
- Total flaccidity of all the four limbs and hypotonia indicate the involvement of pontomedullary junction.
- Multifocal myoclonus is almost always an indication of a metabolic disorder (e.g. uraemia, anoxic encephalopathy, drug intoxication).



Fig. 16.4: Decerebrate rigidity in a patient with coma due to encephalitis



Fig. 16.5: Unconscious patient presenting with abdominal rigidity, trismus and provoked muscle spasms. He appears to be a case of tetanus. The arching of the back is demonstrated by putting the hand behind the back

- In a drowsy and confused patient bilateral asterixis (flapping tremors) is a certain sign of metabolic encephalopathy or drug intoxication.
- An unconscious patient with rigidity and opisthotonus position indicates either strychnine poisoning or tetanus (Fig. 16.5).

Note: Acute lesions of any type frequently cause limb extension regardless of location, and almost all extensor posturing become flexion as the time passes, so posturing alone cannot be utilised to pinpoint the anatomical site of the lesion.

Neck stiffness: Neck stiffness due to spasm of nuchal muscles is protective mechanism, indicates meningeal irritation either due to blood in CSF or infection. It may disappear in deep coma.

Causes of coma with neck rigidity

- Subarachnoid haemorrhage
- Meningitis e.g. bacterial (Fig. 16.6), viral, fungal etc.
- Encephalitis
- Intracranial bleed
- Posterior cranial fossa lesion (e.g. tumour, haemorrhage)
- Cerebral malaria

Pattern of respiration: Respiration patterns though received much attention in the coma diagnosis, but are of little help in localisation of the lesion.

Hyperventilation (rapid breathing) indicates hypoxia, acidosis, poisoning, infection and psychogenic.

Slow, shallow, regular breathing suggest metabolic or drug effect. The presence of cyanosis, activation of



Fig. 16.6: Meningococcal meningitis. The patient had meningococcal rash over the trunk and extremities with neck rigidity



Fig. 16.7: Respiratory failure (type 2) with CO₂ narcosis. The patient had cyanosis, tachypnoea, tachycardia, flapping tremors. He is being shifted to respiratory intensive care unit (RICU)

extrarespiratory muscles, flapping tremors, intercostal recession indicate type 2 respiratory failure (Fig. 16.7). Rapid, deep (Kussmaul) breathing suggests metabolic acidosis, but can occur in pontomesencephalic lesions. Cheyne-Stokes breathing in classic cyclic form ending with a brief apnoea (hyperpnoea alternates apnoea) suggests bihemispherical damage or metabolic coma. Agonal gasps (gasping respiration) is a terminal respiratory pattern, suggests bilateral lower brainstem damage.

Pupillary size and reaction: The size, equality and inequality of pupils and their reaction to light provide valuable information regarding the site of lesion in an unconscious patient (Fig. 16.8).

The small pupils (1 to 2.5 mm) that react to light indicate metabolic encephalopathy or bilateral cortical lesions (hydrocephalus or thalamic haemorrhage).

With early midbrain lesion, the pupils become mid-dilated and non-reactive to light. As the damage to the midbrain increases, the pupils become dilated and fixed. The ciliospinal reflex is also lost at this stage. The use of mydriatic eye drops by a previous examiner, self administration by a patient or direct ocular trauma may cause misleading pupillary enlargement.

Very small pin point (<1 mm) pupils with reaction to light characterize narcotic or barbiturate poisoning. In bilateral pontine lesions (haemorrhage) pupils are small pin-point but unreactive to light (Fig. 16.8A). The response to naloxone and the presence of reflex eye movements distinguishes the two.

Unilateral 3rd nerve palsy (Fig. 16.8B) causes unilateral pupillary enlargement (< 6 mm) which could be due to ipsilateral lesion (mass lesion of midbrain) or due to contralateral compression of 3rd nerve in midbrain against the opposite tentorial margin (contracoup effect).

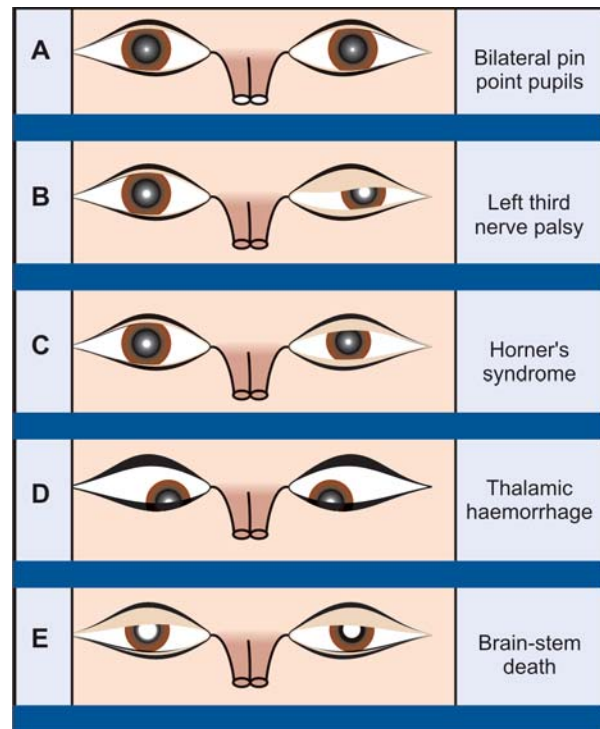
Unilateral small pupil of a Horner's syndrome (16.8C) is detected by failure of the pupil to enlarge in the dark, is seen in cerebral haemorrhage that affects the thalamus (sympathetic system).

Ocular fundus examination (Read chapter 5, Examination of eyes). The fundoscopic examination can detect subarachnoid haemorrhage (subhyaloid haemorrhages), hypertensive encephalopathy (exudates, haemorrhage, vessel crossing changes, papilloedema) and increased intracranial pressure (papilloedema).

Eye movements: These are cornerstones of physical diagnosis in coma because they allow a large portion of the brainstem to be analysed (Fig. 16.9).

The eyes are first observed by elevating the lids and noting the resting position and spontaneous movements of the globes. Horizontal divergence of the eyes at rest is normally observed in coma. An adducted eye at rest indicates lateral rectus palsy due to 6th nerve in the pons; and when bilateral, it is often a sign of raised intracranial tension. An abducted eye with pupillary dilatation indicates 3rd nerve palsy in the midbrain.

Skew deviation, i.e. vertical separation of the eyes (ocular axes), sometimes with elevation of one eye and depression of the other results from pontine or cerebellar lesions. Spontaneous ocular movements may be observed in structural lesions in the posterior fossa. Conjugate horizontal ocular deviation at rest indicate damage to the pons on the side of paralysis of gaze or frontal lobe lesion on the opposite side (Fig. 16.10).



Figs 16.8A to E: Various pupillary abnormalities A. Bilateral pinpoint pupils occur in opiate and hypnotic poisoning, pontine haemorrhage and brainstem lesions. B. Left third nerve palsy (ptosis, mydriasis, absent light reflex) occurs in midbrain lesion, cavernous sinus thrombosis. C. Horner's syndrome (ptosis, miosis, anhidrosis, enophthalmos, loss of ciliospinal reflex) occurs due to cervical or brainstem sympathetic involvement. D. Thalamic haemorrhage produces deviation of eyes towards the nose and pupils are small, later become large and unreactive. E. Brain death with fixed, dilated, unreactive pupils with eyes closure

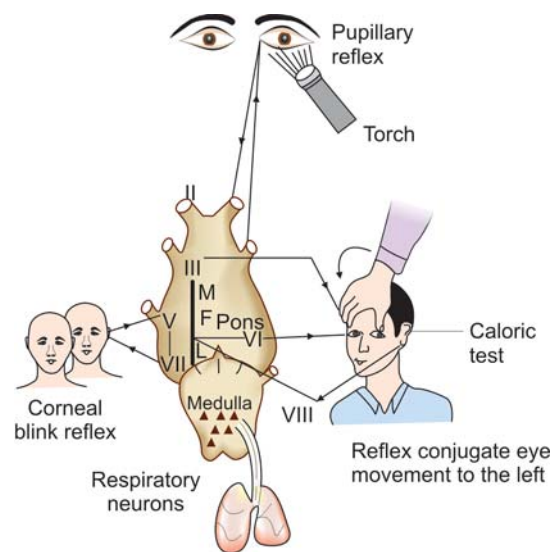


Fig. 16.9: Brain-stem reflexes in coma examination (read the text)



Fig. 16.10: Conjugate horizontal ocular deviation in an unconscious patient at rest indicates either pontine or frontal lobe lesion

Oculocephalic reflex (Doll's eye movements): The oculocephalic reflexes depend on the integrity of the ocular motor nuclei and their interconnecting tracts that extend from the midbrain to the pons and medulla. On vertical or horizontal rotation of the head, the conjugate deviation of the eyes (evoked doll's eye movements) to the opposite side, signifies the intact brainstem and implies that the coma originates from damage to cerebral hemisphere. The opposite—absence of doll's eye movements signifies damage within the brainstem but can be produced infrequently by profound overdoses of certain drugs. Spontaneous conjugate horizontal deviation in a comatose patient indicates pontine damage on the same side or frontal lobe damage on opposite side. Oculocephalic reflex test must not be attempted if there is little doubt about trauma to the cervical spine.

Oculovestibular reflex (caloric test): It tests the integrity of pathway from labyrinth in the ear to the midbrain via medial longitudinal fasciculus (Fig. 16.9) which connects the 6th and 8th cranial nerves to contralateral 3rd nerve. The test is performed by irrigating the external auditory canal with cold water in order to produce convection currents in the labyrinth. After a brief period, there is deviation of both eyes to the irrigated side and nystagmus occurs to the opposite side. *Nystagmus* is the response to be seen in this test, therefore, medical students can remember the *acronym* (COWS- cold water opposite, warm water same) which will remind them the direction of nystagmus to cold and warm water. The absence of nystagmus despite conjugate deviation of the eyes indicate hemispherical lesions. The loss of conjugate deviation indicates brainstem damage.

Corneal blink reflex (corneal reflex): The corneal reflex tests the integrity of pontine pathways between 5th and 7th cranial nerves which form the afferent and efferent pathway of this reflex respectively. The loss of corneal reflex indicate brainstem damage. CNS depressants diminish or eliminate the corneal responses soon after reflex eye movements are paralysed but before the pupils become unreactive to light. The corneal and pharyngeal response may be lost for sometime on the side of an acute hemiplegia.

Ocular bobbing describes a brisk downward and slow upwards movements of the eyes, indicates cerebellar tumour or haemorrhage.

Ocular dipping describes a slower downward and faster upward movements of the eyes, denotes anoxic damage to the cerebral cortex.

Rapid ocular *oscillations* may occur especially after poisoning with tricyclic antidepressants.

Rapid conjugate lateral movements should suggest focal motor seizure originating in contralateral frontal lobe.

In thalamic infarct, the eyes are pushed downwards and medially as if patient is looking at his/her own nose (Fig. 16.8D)

Oculogyric crisis (tonic deviation of eye balls upwards or to one side for minutes to hours) is seen in encephalitis lethargica or Japanese B. encephalitis (it is a rare phenomenon now (Fig. 16.11).

Motor responses: Presence of focal signs or unilateral paralysis indicates focal structural damage to the brain.



Fig. 16.11: Oculogyric crisis. Note the tonic deviation of eyeballs upwards, occurs intermittently in a patient with encephalitis (idiopathic encephalitis) is rarely seen now-a-days

While its absence indicate metabolic or drug—induced coma (Box 16.5).

The only evidence of paralysis may be abnormal flaccidity on the affected side. In case of hemiplegia in unconscious patient, the paralysed limb falls suddenly with a thud when both upper limbs are raised and then released suddenly. Facial asymmetry indicates 7th nerve palsy. Alteration of deep tendon jerks and plantar extensor response on the paralysed side indicate contralateral corticospinal involvement; but in deep coma, plantar reflexes lose their significance because they may become extensor on both the sides.

Other systems examination

- **Cardiovascular system (CVS) examination** for cardiomegaly, murmurs and carotid artery bruit.
- **Respiratory system examination** e.g. crackles/rales or abnormal breath sounds for any underlying respiratory disorder.
- **Abdominal examination** for any mass, signs of hepatic or renal insufficiency, ascites, rigidity etc.

Box 16.5:

CAUSES OF COMA WITHOUT NEUROLOGICAL SIGNS OR NECK RIGIDITY

- Hyper or hypoglycaemia
- Hypothermia
- Renal failure
- Hepatic failure
- Respiratory failure (type II with CO₂ narcosis)
- Endocrinal cause e.g. myxoedema coma, pituitary apoplexy
- Electrolyte imbalance
- Drug poisoning producing respiratory depression.

Brain death testing

The widespread utility of mechanical ventilation has improved survival of patients with severe brain damage but functioning cardiovascular system. The clinical diagnosis of brain death is now an inevitable aspect of practice in intensive care units on patients receiving ventilatory support. Prior to testing for brain death, it is necessary to confirm that the cause of the irreversible brain damage has been established (e.g. intracranial bleed, encephalitis) and reversible causes (hypothermia, drug intoxication and metabolic defects) have been excluded. The diagnosis of brain death depends on meeting a set of preconditions, all of which must be present, and then apply a series of clinical tests (Table 16.3). The brain death tests should be performed by two experienced physicians either together or separately. The tests are then repeated after an interval of 6-24 hrs before labelling "brain death".

Table 16.3: Diagnosis of brain death and its testing

Preconditions for brain death	Brain death tests (all brain-stem reflexes are absent)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Deeply comatose patient 2. Exclusion of reversible causes of coma; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There must be no suspicion that coma is due to depressant drugs e.g. narcotics, hypnotics, tranquillisers. • No evidence of hypothermia (rectal temp. >35°C) • No profound abnormality of electrolytes and acid-base disturbance • No metabolic or endocrinal cause of coma 3. Establish the cause for severe irreversible brain damage. There should be no doubt that patient is suffering from irreversible brain damage (intracranial haemorrhage, encephalitis and others causes) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The pupils are fixed, dilated, and unresponsive to light • The corneal reflexes are absent • The vestibulo-ocular reflexes are absent i.e. there is no eye movement following an injection of 20 ml of ice-cold water into ear in turn. • There is no motor response to adequate stimulation within cranial nerve distribution • No gag reflex and no response to suction • No spontaneous respiratory movement when the patient is disconnected from the ventilator

Investigations

1. **Laboratory investigations** e.g. blood sugar, urea, creatinine, electrolytes and acid base.
2. **Specialised investigations**
 - (i) **CT scan and MRI:** The CT scan and MRI give valuable information regarding radiologically detectable lesions e.g. haemorrhage, tumours, hydrocephalus etc. These investigations are not useful in toxic or metabolic causes of coma, but are done to exclude the radiological evident lesion. The CT scan and MRI are also useful to detect mass effect of the lesion by midline shift of the pineal body (a calcified lesion).
 - (ii) **The ECG:** It gives valuable information;
 - Diffuse slowing of EEG indicates encephalopathy
 - Predominant high-voltage slowing (delta waves) in the frontal regions is typical of metabolic coma (hepatic coma).
 - Alpha-coma (8 to 12 Hz activity) indicates high pontine or diffuse cortical damage.
 - (iii) **CSF examination** is done in those cases where CT scan has ruled out mass lesion(s) or raised intracranial tension. It is valuable in the diagnosis of meningitis, encephalitis, subarachnoid haemorrhage (xanthochromic CSF) etc. It has already been discussed in nervous system examination.

17

The Locomotor System

HISTORY

Important musculoskeletal symptoms

- Pain
- Stiffness
- Weakness
- Swelling
- Deformity
- Non-specific symptoms of systemic illness

Present history

Ask about;

- Mode of onset
- Pattern of joint involvement
- Number of joints involved
- Morning stiffness
- Time relationship e.g. duration, frequency of attacks
- Ask about non-articular manifestations
- Aggravating and relieving factors
- Drugs being taken or have been taken

Past history

e.g. enteritis, sore throat, psoriasis, sexual contact with a woman other than wife, intercurrent illness, tuberculosis, gout, surgery.

Family history

Social and occupational history

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION (GPE)

- **Appearance** e.g. depressed/in agony
- **Face** e.g. heliotropic rash, puffiness, pallor etc
- **Eyes** e.g. redness, dryness
- **Mouth and buccal mucosa** e.g. buccal ulcers, pallor, bleeding
- **Neck** e.g. lymphadenopathy, thyroid enlargement, erythema nodosum, haemorrhage
- **Skin** e.g. nodules, purpura, petechiae, rash, photosensitivity, Raynaud's phenomenon, livedo reticularis
- **Hair** e.g. Alopecia, lupus hair
- **Finger and nails** e.g. clubbing, nail pitting, splinter haemorrhage, vasculitis, dactylitis, infarct, gangrene
- **Legs and feet** e.g. oedema



General observations

- General appearance
- Posture and gait
- Deformity / deformities
- Pulse, BP, temperature and respiration

FORMAT FOR LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM EXAMINATION

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

The gals screening for the locomotor system

Examination of the joint(s)

Inspection

- Position or posture of limb
- Note the type of involvement e.g. symmetric or asymmetric
- Note any swelling, deformity, redness or erythema of overlying skin, muscle wasting, range of active movements of joints.

Palpation

- Palpate for signs of inflammation (active disease) e.g. tenderness, warmth
- Palpate the swelling if present.
- Feel for joint crepitus, nodules on the bony prominences.
- Measurement of passive movement of the joints.

Examination of the spine

Inspection

- Look for cervical, thoracic, lumbar curves
- Look for alignment of shoulders, iliac crests and the skin creases below the buttocks.
- Look for skin masses, tuft of hair, tag of skin
- Look for active movement at cervical and dorsolumbar spine
- Inspection of gait and stance

Palpation

- Perform passive movement and note its range.
- Perform special tests e.g. straight leg raising, sciatic nerve root stretch tests, femoral nerve stretch tests.
- Tests for structures around the joint e.g. tendons, carpal tunnel syndrome

Examination of the other systems

CVS. Examine for murmurs, sounds and pericardial rub

Nervous system

Alimentary system for enteritis

Genitourinary system for sexually transmitted disease and urethritis

Diagnosis and Differential diagnosis

Investigations

THE LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM

Rheumatology is a branch of science that deals with medical disorders of the locomotor system which can be divided into three categories; *arthritis*, *back pain* and *soft tissue rheumatism*.

Applied anatomy and physiology

There are three primary types of joint articulation—*synovial*, *cartilaginous* and *fibrous* – allowing various degrees of joint movement (Box 17.1)

Box 17.1: TYPES OF JOINTS AND EXTENT OF MOVEMENTS		
Type	Extent of movement	Example
Synovial	Freely movable	Shoulder, knee
Cartilaginous	Slightly movable	Joints between vertebral bodies of spine, symphysis pubis
Fibrous	Immovable	Skull sutures

The normal synovial joint

The structure of typical synovial joint is shown in Fig. 17.1. The joint consists of two articulating bones, each covered with articular cartilage, and a fibrous capsule lined by synovium. The space within the joint is filled with synovial fluid which acts as a lubricant. Inflammation of above structures is called *arthritis* while *arthropathy* is sometimes used to describe joint disease of any type. The joint is surrounded by “soft-tissues” including tendons, ligaments and bursae. The specialised junction of tendon and bone is called “*enthesis*”; which can also become inflamed. The types of synovial joints are given in the Table 17.1.

In cartilaginous joints, fibrocartilaginous discs separate the bony surfaces. At the centre of each disc is the *nucleus pulposus* (Fig. 17.2) - fibrocartilaginous material

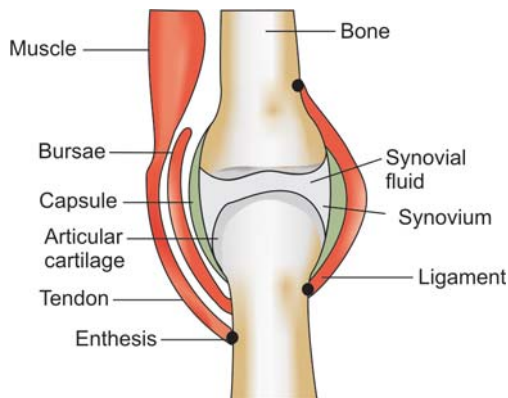


Fig. 17.1: Structure of a synovial joint

Table 17.1: Types of synovial joints			
Type	Articular shape	Movement	Example
Ball and socket	Convex surface in a concave cavity	Flexion, extension, abduction, rotation and circumduction	Hip and shoulder
Hinge	Flat, planar	Motion in one plane i.e. flexion, extension	Inter-phalangeal joints of hands and feet, elbow
Condylar	Convex or concave	Movement of two articulating surfaces not dissociable	Knee, temporo-mandibular joint

that serves as a cushion or shock absorber between bony surfaces.

Non-articular structures. They include ligaments, tendons, bursae, muscles, fascia and bone. *Ligaments* are rope-like bundles of collagen that connect bone to bone.

Tendons. They are collagen fibres connecting muscle to bone. Another type of collagen matrix forms the *cartilage* that overlies bony surfaces.

Bursae. The bursae ease joint action, are disc-shaped synovial sacs filled with fluid that allow adjacent muscles or muscle and tendons to glide over each other during movement. They lie between the skin and the convex surface of a bone or joint (i.e. prepatellar bursa of knee) or in areas where tendons or muscles rub against bone, ligaments or other tendons or muscles (as in subacromian bursa of the shoulder).

Major symptoms of rheumatic disorders

Rheumatic symptoms are common, may reflect primary rheumatological disorders or an underlying systemic disorder; for example, bleeding into a large joint

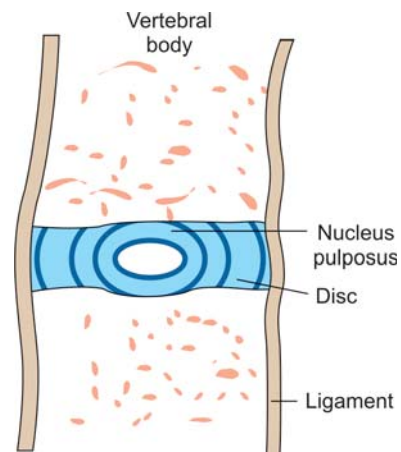


Fig. 17.2: Structure of a cartilaginous joint

(haemarthrosis) may be the presenting symptom of a coagulation disorder – haemophilia. The various symptoms of joint disease are given in the Box 17.2. The first aim of clinical assessment of the locomotor system is to determine whether symptoms are derived from bone, joint, muscle or other soft tissue structures.

Box 17.2: MAJOR SYMPTOMS OF RHEUMATIC DISORDERS

- 1. Pain**
 - *Usage pain* – worst on use, relieved by rest (mechanical strain, damage).
 - *Rest pain* – worst after rest, improved by movement (inflammation).
 - *Night or 'bone' pain* – mostly at night, poorly related to movement
- 2. Stiffness** (subjective feeling or inability to move freely).
 - Stiffness that can be “*worn off*” suggest inflammation
- 3. Swelling**
 - Fluid, soft tissue, bone
- 4. Weakness/wasting**
 - Primary-myopathy
 - Secondary to joint disease e.g. overuse, disuse.
- 5. Deformity**
 - Joint, bone
- 6. Nonspecific symptoms reflecting acute phase response**
 - Reduced appetite, weight loss
 - Fatigue, mood disturbance
 - Night sweats, chills
 - Feeling ill, low, irritable

Terminology used. The main terms used in rheumatology are listed in the Box 17.3.

Box 17.3: RHEUMATOLOGICAL TERMS

Term	Description
<i>Monoarticular</i>	Single joint affected
<i>Polyarticular</i>	Many joints affected
<i>Oligoarticular or pauciarticular</i>	Two, three, or four joints affected
<i>Migratory</i>	Fleeting e.g. arthritis moving from one joint to another
<i>Arthralgia</i>	Joint pain without swelling
<i>Arthritis</i>	Inflammation of the joint (e.g. pain, swelling)
<i>Small joints</i>	Joints of hands and feet
<i>Large joints</i>	Any other joint except hands and feet
<i>Seropositive</i>	Rheumatoid factor positive
<i>Seronegative</i>	Rheumatoid factor negative

History

Main features in the history of a patient with rheumatological problem to be recorded are;

- Background information e.g. age, sex
- Major complaints in chronological order
- Pain e.g. onset, site, duration, severity, radiation, character, diurnal variation, aggravating or relieving factors
- Other associated symptoms such as swelling, stiffness (early morning), tenderness
- Resultant problems e.g. deformity
- Pattern of joint involvement e.g. single or multiple joints, symmetric or asymmetric involvement, small joints or large joints or both. Some common anatomical patterns of rheumatic diseases are summarised in the Box 17.4.

Box 17.4: SOME COMMON ANATOMICAL PATTERNS OF RHEUMATIC DISEASES

I. Inflammatory disorders (synovitis)

Patterns of joints involved (Fig. 17.3)

- (i) *Polyarticular*
 - MCP, PIP, and MTP joints
 - DIP joints
- (ii) *Girdle joints*
- (iii) *Oligoarticular*
 - Asymmetrical large joints or dactylitis (sausage digit)
- (iv) *Monoarticular*
 - Acute
 - Chronic
- (v) Axial, sacroiliac, girdle joints

II. Degenerative disorders (bony swelling ± synovitis)

- (i) *Polyarticular*
 - DIP, or PIP joints and/or first -CMC joint
- (ii) *Monoarticular*
 - Chronic
- (iii) *Axial joints*

Abbreviations

MCP = Metacarpophalangeal joint
 DIP = Distal interphalangeal joint
 CMC = Carpometacarpal joint
 RA = Rheumatoid arthritis
 OA = Osteoarthritis

Diseases

RA, SLE, psoriasis
 Psoriasis
 Polymyalgia rheumatica, RA

Reactive arthritis, Reiter's syndrome, psoriasis or AS

Gout, pseudogout, infection, psoriasis
 Psoriasis, RA, AS, chronic infection (tuberculosis)
 AS

Nodal OA

OA
 Spondylosis (cervical or lumbar)

PIP = Proximal interphalangeal joint
 MTP = Metatarsophalangeal joint

SLE = Systemic lupus erythematosus
 AS = Ankylosing spondylitis

- Time relationships e.g. duration, frequency of attacks
- Past history
- Family history
- Social history
- Drug history

Background information. This may be helpful in assessing the type of arthritis.

1. *Age and gender of the patient.* Juvenile idiopathic arthritis is restricted to children, haemophilia to boys; reactive arthritis most common in young men, gout in middle aged men while pseudogout in older women and osteoarthritis occurs in old age.
2. *Race:* Some arthropathies (e.g. sickle cell disease) occur in particular races.
3. *Occupation.* It is important in soft – tissue rheumatism or osteoarthritis.
4. *Joint pain.* A combination of *pain*, *swelling* and *stiffness* causing loss of function is a frequent presenting symptom of joint disease, however, pain and swelling can also result from the overuse of normal joint. Usually one component predominates i.e. swelling in inflammation and pain in mechanical joint problems, hence, ask specific questions to establish whether symptoms are mechanical (e.g. degenerative joint disease) or inflammatory (rheumatoid arthritis or gout).
 - Ask whether joint pain is recurrent, (involves the same joint every time)
 - Is joint pain episodic?
 - Is joint pain fleeting (moves from one joint to other)?

The features of mechanical (degenerative or meniscal tear) and inflammatory joint disease are given in the Box 17.5. The other features in the history have been brought out under the differential diagnosis of anatomical patterns of rheumatic diseases. The musculoskeletal pain is often referred to other sites (somatic referral) as depicted in the Table 17.2. The severity of pain is judged by the presence of night pain and sleep disturbance. Persistent pain is also frequently associated with anxiety, depression, hence, one should be careful while interpreting the joint pain.

Table 17.2: Sites of radiation of joint pain

Site of origin	Referred site
<i>Cervical pain</i>	Head and/or shoulder
<i>Lumbar pain</i>	Buttocks/posterior thigh
<i>Shoulder</i>	Lateral aspect of upper arm
<i>Elbow</i>	Forearm
<i>Hip</i>	Anterior thigh or knee or both

Soft tissue rheumatism: Symptoms of soft tissue rheumatism include pain, dull ache, tenderness or

Box 17.5: FEATURES OF TWO COMMON TYPES OF JOINT DISEASE

<i>Mechanical</i>	<i>Inflammatory</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Pain on activity</i> that improves on rest • <i>Inactivity stiffness</i> of joint disappears on activity • No signs of inflammation • <i>Joints involved</i> include large joints of hip, knee ankle, shoulder and spines • Loose bodies in the joint may be present • No periarticular involvement • No triggering factor except old age 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Rest pain</i> that improves on activity • <i>Early morning stiffness</i> persists for more than 30 minutes • Signs of inflammation i.e. pain redness, warmth swelling and tenderness present • Any joint may be involved but commonly the smaller joints of big toe (gout), small joints of hand and feet (RA), interphalangeal joint in reactive or psoriatic arthritis • No loose body • Periarticular inflammation e.g. erythema, soft tissue swelling and dactylitis present • Triggering factors include dysentery or new sexual contact, intercurrent illness, sore throat and surgery

swelling. In elderly, these symptoms often appear spontaneously, but, in younger persons, there is history of trauma or overuse especially as a result of occupation, for example, tenosynovitis of long flexor tendons of hand in labourers, or achilles tendinitis in athletes. Therefore, define;

- Exact site of symptoms e.g. joint, tendon, ligament, bursa, muscle (Table 17.3). Soft tissue rheumatic disorders are diagrammatically represented in Fig. 17.5.
- Aggravating and relieving factors.

The bones: The bone pain is deep-seated and localised. The spontaneous bone pain may suggest Paget's disease of the bone (with bony enlargement e.g. skull or tibia), or metastatic deposits, infection must be considered in younger patients or immunocompromised hosts. In case of pain due to fracture, there is always a history of trauma/injury. In athletes, fracture may be due to overuse (stress fracture of tibia in runners). Certain congenital and familial disorders act as predisposing factors e.g. multiple osteochondromata, osteogenesis imperfecta.

Table 17.3: Symptoms and signs of rheumatism depending on the structures involved

1. **Tendon** (e.g. tenosynovitis, tendinitis, tendon rupture etc).
 - Localised pain/tenderness at attachment (enthesitis) or in tendon substance
 - Swelling, pain and crepitus along the line of sheath in tendosynovitis.
 - Pain on resisted action
 - Complete loss of active movements with preservation of passive movements in tendon rupture.
 - Sometimes pain on stretching (e.g. Achilles)
 - Formation of contracture
2. **Ligament and joint capsule**
 - Localised pain/tenderness at attachment or in ligament substance or joint capsule in incomplete tear of joint capsule or ligament (sprain)
 - Pain on stretch and movements is limited by muscle spasm.
 - Instability and swelling, if major tear or ruptured ligament. Passive movements are painful.
3. **Bursa**
 - Localised tenderness
 - Swelling
 - Pain on stretching the adjacent structures
4. **Muscle**
 - Localised or diffuse pain and tenderness
 - Pain on resisted action
 - Pain on stretching (e.g. hamstring)

Assessment of joint pain: The severity, type of onset (acute or insidious), diurnal variation and relation to physical activity should be assessed as follows;

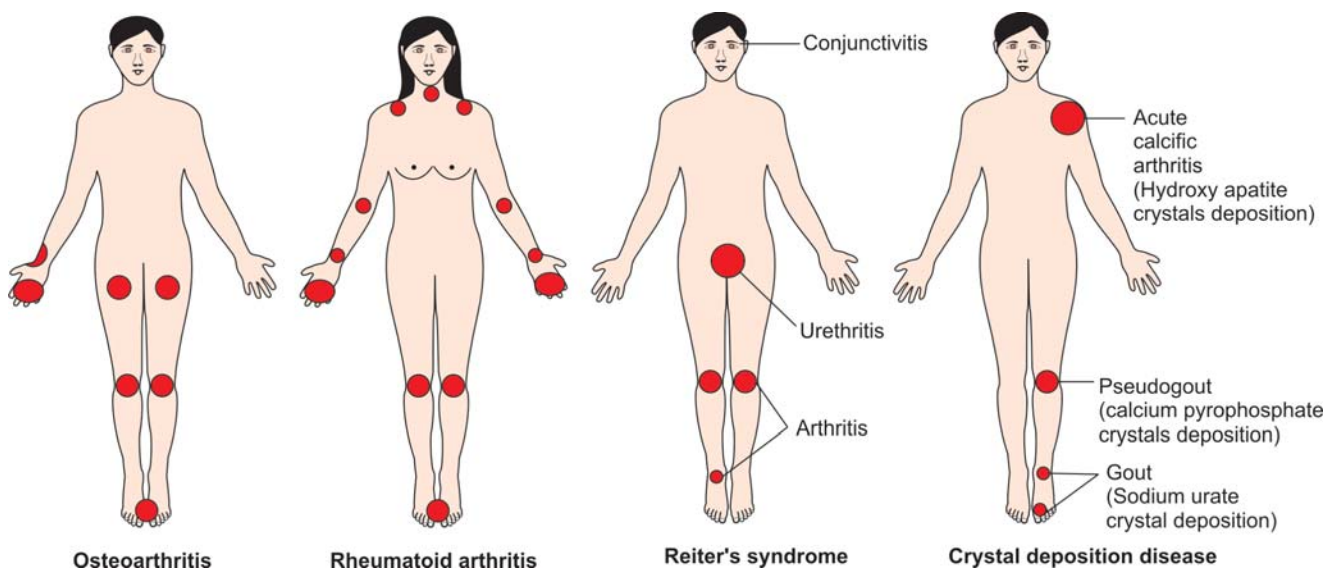
- Pattern of joint involvement (see the Box 17.4)
- Variation with time
- Effect of activity

- Site and distribution
- Night pain/sleep disturbance
- Mood disturbance
- Extra-articular manifestations. These are often crucial in making a correct diagnosis of inflammatory joint disease, hence, should be sought in the history as well as on the examination. Depending on the pattern of joint involvement, certain extra-articular or systemic manifestations to be sought are given in the Table 17.4 and diagrammatically represented in Figure 17.4.

Table 17.4: Extra-articular manifestations associated with rheumatic disease (Fig. 17.4)

Disease	Extra-articular or systemic features
1. Symmetric polyarthritis	
• Rheumatoid arthritis	Subcutaneous nodules, Raynaud's phenomenon, sicca syndrome, pleurisy, episcleritis, fever, hepatosplenomegaly, pleuropericarditis, fibrosing alveolitis.
• Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	Raynaud's phenomenon, serositis, alopecia, photosensitivity, rash, fever, episcleritis, hepatosplenomegaly, haematuria, proteinuria, pleuropericarditis fibrosing alveolitis
2. Asymmetrical oligoarthritis	
• Psoriatic arthritis	Psoriatic nail dystrophy
• Reactive arthritis including Reiter's	Urethritis, conjunctivitis, fever, ulcer penis, rash, iritis, mouth

Contd...

**Fig. 17.3:** Patterns of joints involvement in various types of arthritis

Contd...

syndrome	ulcers, diarrhoea, enthesitis (e.g. Achilles tendonitis, plantar fascitis)
• Ankylosing spondylitis	Iritis, enthesitis, cardiac valvular lesions
3. Monoarthritis	
• Gout	Tophi, obesity, renal impairment
• Septic arthritis	Fever, malaise, source of infection (e.g. skin, throat etc.)

Past medical history

A history of trauma or of some other disease like psoriasis, sore throat and enteritis may be sought. History of new sexual contact (for reactive arthritis), intercurrent illness or surgery (for crystal synovitis) must be asked in the past history.

Family history

Some conditions run in families e.g. osteoarthritis, ankylosing spondylitis and gout. Patients with psoriatic arthritis do not necessarily have psoriatic skin lesions but may give a family history of psoriasis. Psoriatic genes may be expressed in either skin, joints or both in any order and at any time.

There is a common genetic basis to some common arthritis. HLA-B₂₇ is found frequently in ankylosing spondylitis and reactive arthritis (Fig. 17.6) than other

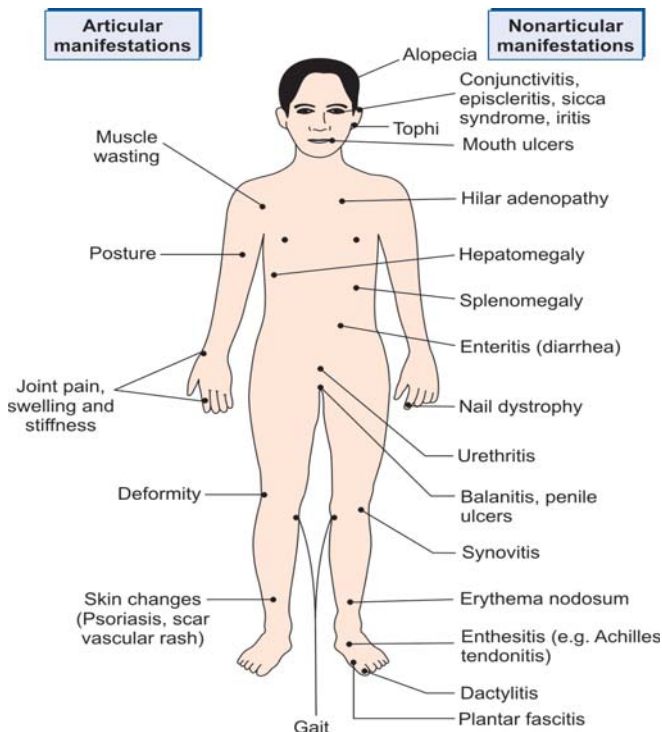


Fig. 17.4: (1) Articular and nonarticular manifestations of musculoskeletal disorders

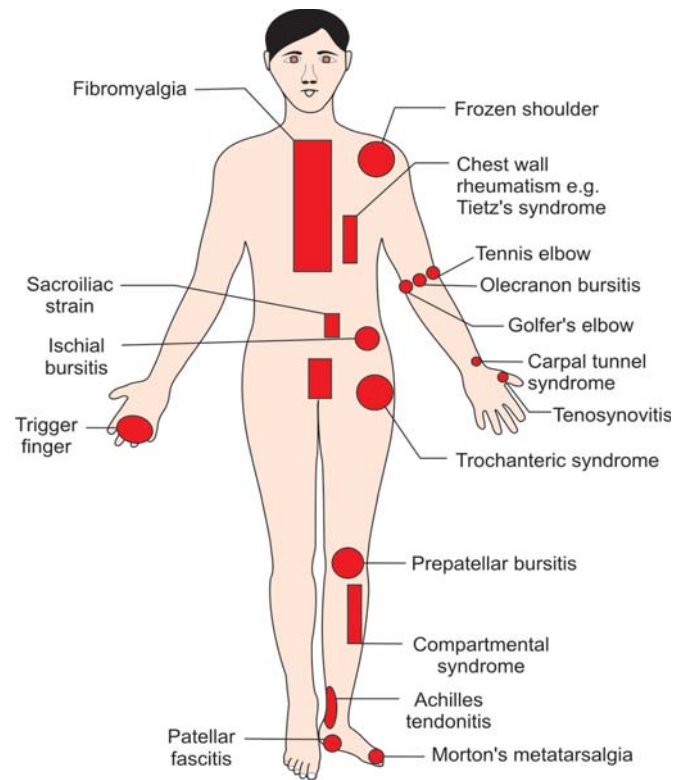


Fig. 17.5: Soft-tissue rheumatism

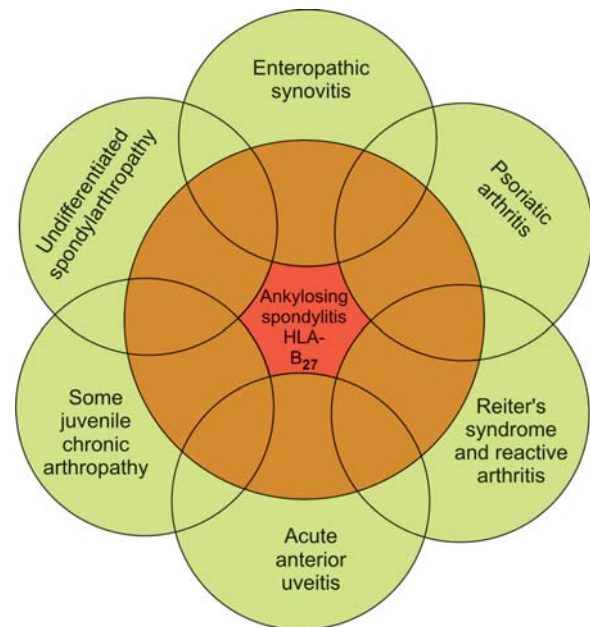


Fig. 17.6: HLA-B 27 linked spondyloarthropathy family. Ankylosing spondylitis has strong association than other arthropathies

spondyloarthropathies (psoriatic arthropathy, enteropathic arthritis due to inflammatory bowel disease).

Family history may be positive in patients with hypermobile joints (e.g. Marfan's syndrome, Ehler-Danlos syndrome, benign familial hypermobility).

Social or occupational history

The occupation of the patient may have a bearing on the arthritis. Soft tissue rheumatism may be related to physical stress and such forms are known as “*overuse syndrome*” or “*repetitive, stress syndrome*”. The booming computer industry requiring prolonged sitting and bad human postures have unleashed a variety of stress related neck-shoulder- limb and spine disorders. In addition, the development of a chronic arthritis may lead to mood and sleep disturbance. Inability to hold a pen or tools, to kneel, stand for long periods or to use ladders may have profound social and economic consequences.

Drug history

A record of the previous treatment tried must be sought because their success or failure is important for future management. Diuretics may precipitate gout. NSAIDs are commonly prescribed drugs.

Assessment of rheumatological disorders

The symptoms of musculoskeletal disorders are so vague that first aim of clinical assessment of the locomotor system is to determine whether symptoms relate to a rheumatological disease or symptoms related to joint are a part and parcel of systemic disorder, hence, a full clinical assessment be made rather than examination limited to the apparent site of symptoms. Even in the absence of major musculoskeletal symptoms, basic examination of joints, muscles and tendons should be done as a routine general examination. The clinical assessment include;

1. Screening for locomotor abnormality and disability
2. General physical examination
3. Examination of joints including individual joint.

Screening system for locomotor abnormality and disability (Fig. 17.7). Ask the following three screening questions;

The three screening questions

- Do you have any pain or stiffness in your muscles, joints or back?
- Can you dress yourself completely without any difficulty?
- Can you walk up and down stairs without any difficulty?

Normal joints should be asymptomatic, look normal, assume a normal resting position and move smooth through their range of movement.

The GALS (gait, arms, legs, spine) screen is a validated screening system for locomotor abnormality and disability with respect to activities of daily living (Fig. 17.7) Doherty M, Dacre J, Dieppe P, Snaith M. The ‘GALS’ locomotor screen. Ann Rheum Dis. 1992; 51: 1165-1169; Plan MJ, Linton S, Dodd E, et al. The GALS locomotor screen and disability. Ann Rheum Dis. 1993; 52: 886-890).

General physical examination

Aims of the examination

- To identify the site and type of pathology i.e. articular or nonarticular, inflammatory or degenerative (non-inflammatory).
- To assess the loss of function by examining range of movements and specific functions (e.g. walking, rising, power grip).
- To identify associated complications e.g. deformity, instability, muscle wasting, calluses, extra-articular features.

The examination begins with the observation of the patient entering the room (see the Box 17.6). Abnormalities of gait and posture may provide clues that can be pursued in history-taking. The patient may be asked to stand and walk, even when it is obvious that this may not be possible. This will give an idea about the help the patient requires from others or from sticks, crutches etc. Observation of any difficulty in undressing, getting out of the chair and getting on to the examination couch will further help in assessing the patient. The locomotor system examination includes not only of the joints but also of the soft-tissue structures (muscles, tendons, ligaments, bursae etc). A look for any muscle wasting which could either be due to a primary muscle disease e.g. polymyositis, myopathy or secondary to a painful joint (disuse- *Suddack's atrophy*). Examination of muscles have already been discussed in nervous system examination (Chapter 16).

Box 17.6: GENERAL OBSERVATIONS OF LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM

- | | |
|------------------|--------------|
| • Gait | • Long bones |
| • Posture | • Fractures |
| • Mobility | • Joints |
| • Deformity | • Tendons |
| • Muscle wasting | • Skin |

Gait. Abnormal gaits due to musculoskeletal disorders may be divided into two types- painful (antalgic) or painless.

Painful gait (antalgic gait Fig. 17.8). It is jerky asymmetric gait with less time spent on weight bearing on painful leg or foot on the ground; with more severe pain the whole limb is held flexed and the foot is placed delicately on the ground for very short periods. The patient requires support to walk.

Painless gait. In a painless gait, the normal smooth rhythm is disturbed either because of a short limb, a deformed or stiff joint or weak muscles. The effect of muscle weakness will depend on the site and degree of muscle pathology.

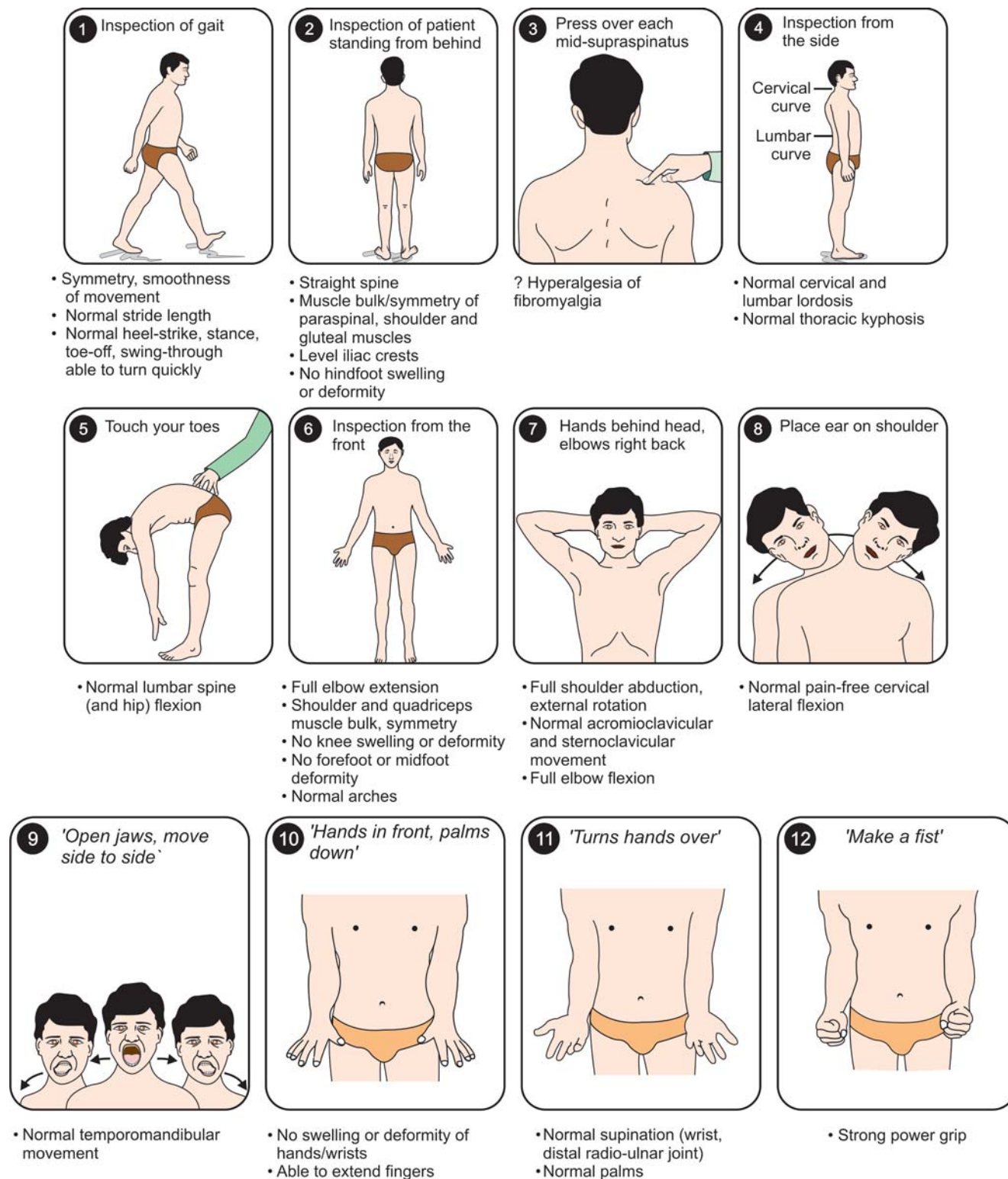


Fig. 17.7: GALS screening tests (Contd....)

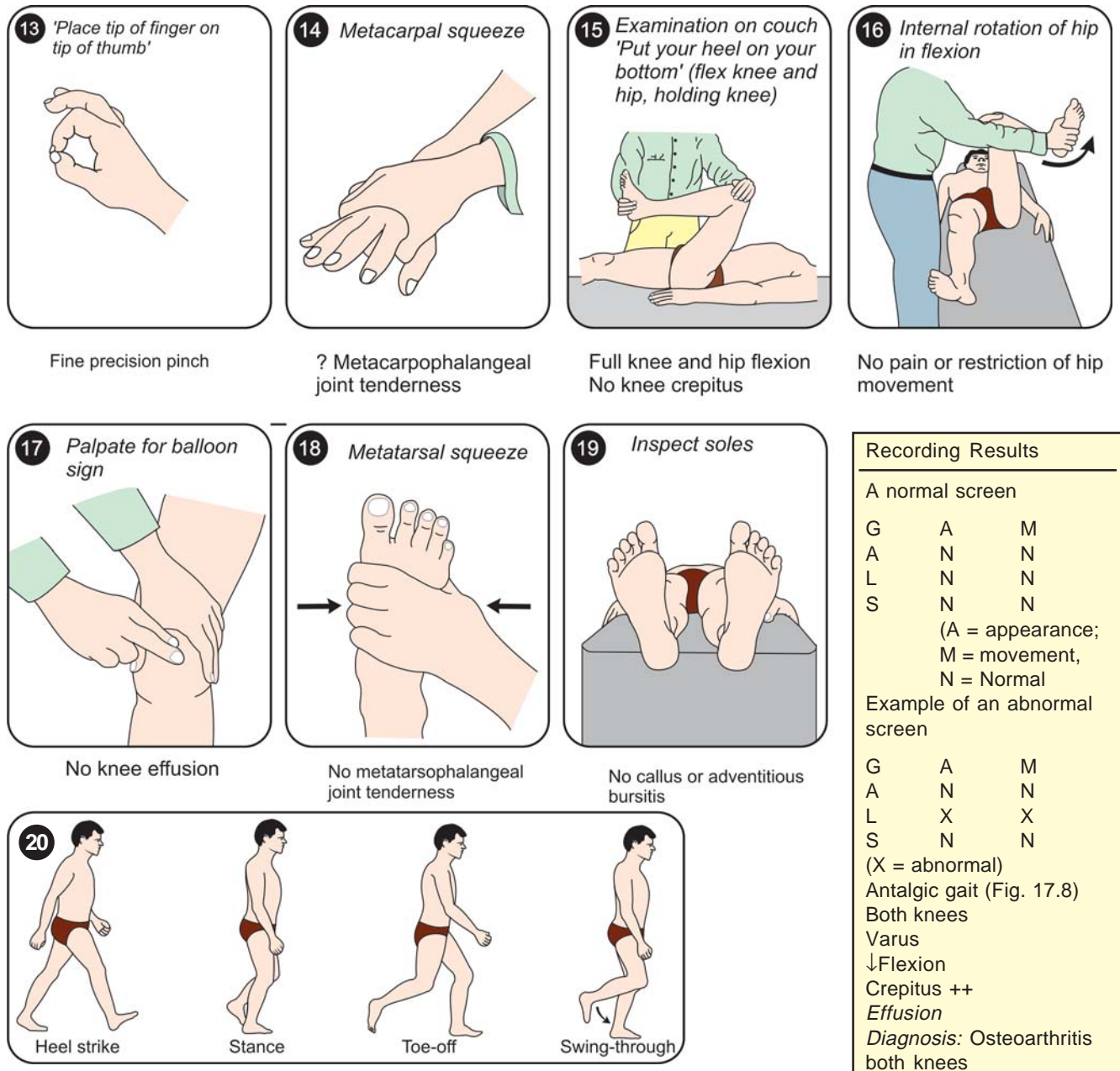


Fig. 17.7: (.....Contd) GALS screening tests

Trendelenberg gait. Unilateral weakness of hip abductors produces pelvis drop on the opposite side during stance phase on affected side.

Waddling gait. Bilateral Trendelenberg gait (paralysis of glutei muscles) is waddling gait.

Examination of eyes, skin, mucous membrane, hair, nails, fingers is an important integral part of physical examination in a rheumatological case for extra-articular or systemic manifestations (Table 17.5).

Examination of the joints and bones

The fundamental principal for examining the joints is to proceed in "head to toe" manner (e.g. the temporomandibular joint, cervical spine, shoulder girdle, upper limb, thoracic and lumbar spine and then the joints of pelvis and lower limbs) so that inconspicuous but important joints such as sternoclavicular, sacroiliac, symphysis pubis may not be missed. Compare the corresponding joints on the two sides of the body. Always



Fig. 17.8: Painful (antalgic) gait. Note that patient adopts a flexed positive, places both hands on the legs which are placed delicately on the ground due to pain

be careful not to cause any discomfort to the patient during examinations. The steps of examination include;

1. Inspection of the joint (*look at the joint*)
2. Palpation of bony landmarks and soft tissue structures (*feel and palpate the joint*).
3. Assessment of range of motion or the direction of joint movement (*move the joint*)
4. Special manoeuvres to test joint function

Table 17.5: Important physical signs and their related rheumatological disorders

Look at	Disease associated
1. <i>Eyes for;</i>	
• Redness (conjunctivitis, iritis, episcleritis)	• Rheumatoid arthritis, reactive arthritis, spondylarthritis, Sjögren's syndrome
• Dryness of eyes (sicca syndrome)	
2. <i>Mucous membrane for</i>	
• Buccal ulcers	SLE, Reiter's syndrome, Behcet's syndrome
• Anaemia, pancytopenia	Still's disease, Rheumatoid arthritis, SLE
3. <i>Skin for</i>	
Nodules	RA (Fig. 17.9), gout, amyloidosis, sarcoidosis, rheumatic arthritis
Nodes on bony prominence	Osteoarthritis (Fig. 17.10)
Petechiae	SLE, ITP
Palpable purpura	Vasculitis (Fig. 17.11)

Contd...

Contd...

Erythema nodosum	Sarcoidosis, reactive arthritis
Haemorrhagic pustules	Gonococcal arthritis
Rash (butterfly on face)	SLE, dermatomyositis
Photosensitivity (sun-sensitivity rash)	SLE
Raynaud's phenomenon	SLE, systemic sclerosis
Livedo reticularis	Antiphospholipid syndrome
4. <i>Hair</i>	
Alopecia	SLE
5. <i>Nails</i>	
Clubbing of finger nails	Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy
Nails pitting	Psoriatic arthritis (Fig. 17.12)
Splinter haemorrhages, nail fold vasculitis	Vasculitis, SLE, and polyarteritis nodosa
6. <i>Fingers</i>	
• Dactylitis, cutaneous infarct, gangrene	Vasculitis (Fig. 17.13), rheumatoid arthritis, SLE
7. <i>Neck</i>	
Lymphadenopathy	RA, Felty's syndrome, sarcoidosis, tuberculosis
8. <i>Extremities</i>	
Leg ulcers	Rheumatoid arthritis, vasculitis, Felty's syndrome

Inspection

You should look at the joint at rest as well as during movement.

Inspection at rest

- Note *symmetry* of involvement (see Fig. 17.4). Is there a symmetric change in joints on both sides of the body or is the change only in one or two joints?
 - Monoarthritis (involvement of one joint) indicates trauma, sepsis (Fig. 17.14), tuberculosis or gout as the cause.
 - Symmetric involvement of many joints especially of the extremities indicate rheumatoid arthritis (Fig. 17.15)
 - Asymmetric involvement of joints (pauciartthritis) is seen in reactive arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, Reiter's syndrome, ankylosing spondylitis.
- *Swelling*. Note any swelling of the joint or periarticular tissue. Local oedema is sometimes seen over the inflamed joint.
 - Joint swelling indicates synovitis (Fig. 17.16).
 - Periarticular swelling may be due to tendonitis, bursitis, muscle tear
- Note any *joint deformity* or malalignment of bones. Look for any alterations in shape or outline or shortening of bone.

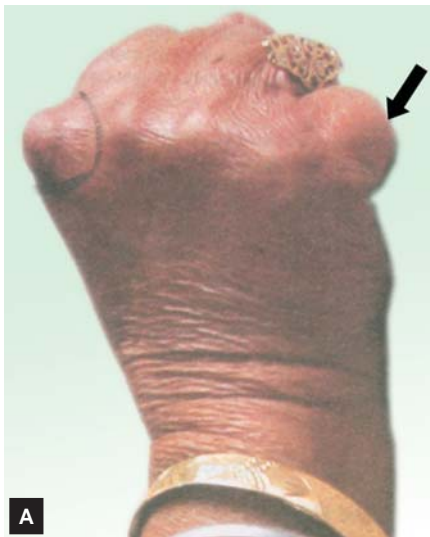


Fig. 17.9: Rheumatoid nodules. Note the cystic swellings over the bony prominences (knuckles) of hand (A) and great toe (B)



Fig. 17.10: Heberden's nodes and Bouchard's nodes in osteoarthritis



Fig. 17.12: Psoriatic arthritis involving PID and DIP joints with nail changes (pitting of the nails)



Fig. 17.11: Henoch-Schönlein purpura. Note the palpable purpura over both the legs. Patient also had arthritis



Fig. 17.13: Changes in the skin and nails in a patient with vasculitic arthritis



Fig. 17.14: Acute infective monoarthritis of left knee. Note the soft tissue swelling



Fig. 17.15: Rheumatoid arthritis. Note bilateral symmetrical involvement of small joints of both hands, wrists, elbows and shoulders. There is associated deformities of the joints (deforming arthritis)



Fig. 17.16: Synovitis due to rheumatoid arthritis. Note the boggy swellings (joint effusion) of both knees (A) left ankle (B) There is a rheumatoid nodule over the bony prominence of metatarsophalangeal joint of great toe (↓)



Fig. 17.17: Dupuytren's contracture of right hand

- Dupuytren's contracture (Fig. 17.17) is flexion contracture of the ring and little fingers.
- The term *valgus* is used to describe deviation of a limb distal to the joint away from midline (knock knee) and *varus* to describe deviation towards the midline (e.g. bow-leg)
- Bowing of femur and tibia is seen in Paget's disease of the bone. (see Fig. 10.21 in Chapter 10)
- Alteration in the shape of bones (bowing of legs) occurs in rickets. Deformity of the chest in rickets (*rickety rosary*) is due to osteochondral enlargement
- Swan-neck, ulnar deviation of hand, Boutonniere and Z-shape deformities are seen in rheumatoid arthritis (Fig. 17.18)
- Note any muscle wasting.
 - Global wasting of the shoulder muscles may occur in glenohumeral arthritis- called disuse atrophy.

- Arthritis or a splinted joint may cause disuse atrophy.
- Wasting of the small muscles of the hand may occur in rheumatoid arthritis.
- Wasting of thenar muscle may be due to carpal tunnel syndrome

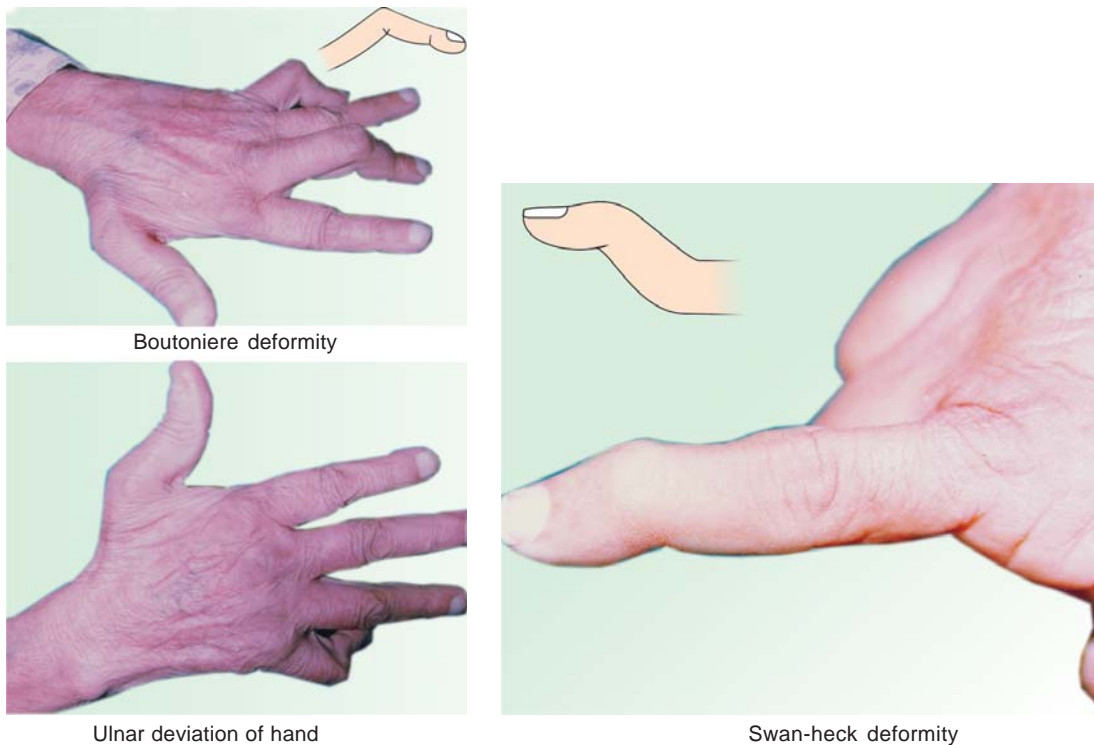


Fig. 17.18: Deformities of hand in deforming rheumatoid arthritis

- Note the position or posture of the limb.
 - Guarded posture- held in loose- pack position for capsule (adduction, internal rotation for shoulder) is characteristic of joint problem.
- Note any redness or erythema of the overlying skin
 - Redness over a joint suggests septic or gouty arthritis or possibly rheumatoid arthritis

Inspection of joint for range of motion. Ask the patient to perform movements. Note any *limitations in range of motion* or *increased mobility* (hypermobility) or joint instability from excessive mobility of the joint ligaments (ligamentous laxity).

Decreased range of movements (restricted movements) occur in arthritis, inflammation of periarticular tissue, fibrosis in or around a joint, or bony ankylosis (fixation).

Hypermobility of the joint is seen in Marfan's syndrome and Ehler-Danlos syndrome, neuropathic joint (Charcot's joint). Pain on usage (stress pain) if occurs in all directions (universal) indicates synovitis while selective stress pain (one plane only) indicates periarticular lesion.

Note: restriction of movements in one plane or direction indicates periarticular lesion; while restriction of all movements indicate joint problem.



Fig. 17.19: Method of elicitation of joint crepitus

Palpation (feel and move the joint)

Palpate for the signs of inflammation of the joint.

1. **Swelling.** Palpable swelling may involve;

- (i) Synovial membrane which can feel boggy or doughy.

Palpable bogginess or doughiness of the synovial membrane indicates synovitis, which is often accompanied by effusion. (Fig. 17.16A)

- (ii) Joint effusion from excess synovial fluid within joint space (fluctuation test is positive) soft tissue structures such as bursae, tendons and tendon sheaths. Tendon sheath effusions are distinguished from joint swelling by their location in association with tendons.

Swelling and tenderness over the tendon sheath or bursa indicate tendonitis or bursitis.

- (iii) Enlarged subcutaneous bursae may be found over pressure areas (olecranon bursa at elbow). Deep bursitis may only produce tenderness.
- (iv) Localised swellings of long bones may be caused by infection (osteomyelitis), cysts or tumours or fracture. Spontaneous fractures of bones may occur in carcinoma, multiple myeloma, hyperparathyroidism, osteogenesis imperfecta.
2. **Warmth.** Use the backs of your fingers to compare the warmth of the involved joint with its unaffected contralateral joint, or with nearby tissues if both joints are involved.

Warmth indicates arthritis, tendinitis, bursitis, osteomyelitis

3. **Tenderness.** Joint tenderness may be graded (see the Box 17.7) on the patient's response to firm pressure on the joint by holding it between finger and thumb.

Box 17.7:	ASSESSMENT OF JOINT TENDERNESS
Grade 1. The patient says the joint is tender	
2. The patient winces due to pain	
3. The patient winces and withdraws the affected part.	
4. The patient does not allow the joint to be touched.	
NB. Grade 4 tenderness occurs only in septic arthritis, crystal arthritis and rheumatic arthritis.	

If tenderness is present, localise it as accurately as possible and determine whether it arises in the joint or in the neighbouring structures e.g. in the supraspinatus or bicipital tendon rather than the shoulder joint.

Feel for the tendon sheath crepitus or joint crepitus.
Palpate for subcutaneous nodules

Tendon sheath crepitus is felt as a grating or creaking sensation when patient is asked to contract the muscle

tendon involved. It is particularly common in tenosynovitis in the hand.

Joint crepitus is palpable crunching detected by feeling the joint with palm of one hand while it is moved passively with the other hand (Fig. 17.19). This may indicate osteoarthritis or loose bodies (cartilaginous fragments) in the joint space, but should be differentiated from nonspecific clicking of joints.

Palpate for subcutaneous nodules by running the finger/thumb over the bony prominences or between thumb and finger if present in soft tissue. The various subcutaneous nodules and their site for palpation are given in the Box 17.8.

Box 17.8:	SUBCUTANEOUS NODULES
Type	Site
<i>Gouty tophi</i> (Fig. 17.20) seen in gout	Helix of the ear, overlying the joint or in finger pulps.
Rheumatoid nodules in rheumatoid arthritis (Fig. 17.9)	Firm, nontender nodules present at pressure points or frictional sites such as bony prominences
Nodules in SLE	Tendons of the hand
Rheumatic nodules in rheumatic fever	Present over the tendons on extensor surfaces of forearm, legs
Xanthomatous deposits in hypercholesterolaemia	Xanthomas may be present over joints, tendons etc.

4. **Measurement of range of movements.** Note the movements and their range of motion.

Some joints such as the subtalar joint of foot which have limited movement can be tested passively. Relatively



Fig. 17.20: Chronic tophaceous gouty arthritis. Note the presence of tophi over the joints of big toes

immobile joints (sternoclavicular, acromioclavicular, manubriosternal, costochondral and sacroiliac) have to be examined by palpation or stressing manoeuvres to evoke pain.

The neutral zero method of recording movement is recommended. All joints are considered to be in the neutral position when the body assume classical anatomical position except joints of hands and feet.

In examining joints for range of movement, estimate the degree of limitation by comparing with the normal side. For accurate measurement, a *goniometer* (protractor) is used. Both active and passive movements should be assessed.

Limitation of movements in a joint may be due to pain, muscle spasm, inflammation, increased thickness of the capsule; fibrous ankylosis, contractures, effusion into the joint, bony overgrowth, bony ankylosis, mechanical factors (meniscal tear)

Remember painful active movements will give a poor estimate of true range of movement because of muscle spasm, hence, other findings should be corroborated for diagnosis. Be gentle and careful during examination of painful joints.

Examination of individual joints

1. Temporomandibular joint

Inspection and palpation. Inspect the joint for *swelling* or *redness*. Swelling may appear as a rounded bulge anterior to external auditory meatus

Swelling, tenderness and restriction of movement indicate an inflamed joint.

Swelling may also occur in subluxation or dislocation of the joint due to trauma

For location and palpation of the joint, place the tips of your index fingers just in front of the tragus of each ear (Fig. 17.21) and ask the patient to open his or her mouth. The finger tips should drop into the joint space as the mouth opens. Check for the smooth range of movements. Note any swelling or tenderness. Snapping or clicking may be felt or heard in normal people.

Palpable crepitus or clicking may occur in poor occlusion, meniscal injury or synovial swelling due to trauma

- *Range of movements.* There are three types of movements at this joint;
 - (i) *Opening and closing of the jaw.* Ask the patient to demonstrate this movement.



Fig. 17.21: Location and palpation of temporomandibular joint

- (ii) *Protusion and retraction of jaw.* This can be demonstrated by jutting the jaw forward and backwards. Ask the patient to follow you as you demonstrate the protusion and retraction of the jaw.
- (iii) *Side to side or lateral movements.* Ask the patient to move the jaw from side to side.

- Normally as mouth is opened wide, three fingers, can be inserted between incisors.
- During normal protusion of the jaw, the bottom teeth can be placed in front of the upper teeth.

NB: Any deviation from the normal indicate joint involvement

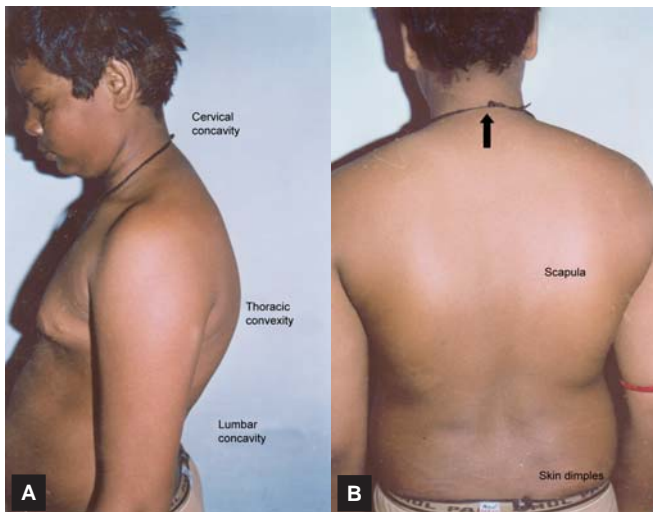
The spine

Applied anatomy and physiology

The vertebral column or spine is a central supporting structure of the body. It has two concavities; one of the cervical and other of lumbar spines, and two convexities i.e. of thoracic and sacrococcygeal spines (Fig. 17.22A). These curves help to distribute upper body weight to the pelvis and lower limbs and also cushion the concussive effect of walking or running.

The vertebral column consists of vertebrae, intervertebral discs, an interconnecting system of ligaments, large superficial and deeper intrinsic muscles and muscles of abdominal wall.

Important landmarks. Viewing from the behind, the important landmarks visible are depicted in Fig. 17.22B.



Figs 17.22A and B: Important anatomical landmarks and curves

- A. Patient's lateral view for various curves
 B. Patient's back for important landmarks
- spinous process of C₈-T₁ (↑) is prominent during forward bending
 - Scapulae stand out prominently
 - Both shoulders are at same level.
 - Skin dimples above the belt indicates posterior superior iliac spine. A line drawn above the posterior superior iliac spine crosses the spine of L₄. A lumbar puncture is done just above this line

Bony structures. The vertebral column has 24 vertebrae stacked on the sacrum and coccyx. The typical structure of cervical and thoracic vertebrae is depicted in the Figure 17.23. A typical vertebra consists of;

1. *The spinous process projecting* in the midline posteriorly and transverse processes standing out at the junction of the pedicle and the lamina. Muscles attach at these processes.
2. *Two articular processes* on each side of the vertebra, one facing up and another facing down at the junction of the pedicles and lamina. These are articular facets for joint articulations.
3. The vertebral foramen is a large central space through which spinal cord passes. The smaller foramina – called *intervertebral foramina* formed by the inferior and superior articular processes of adjacent vertebrae, create a space for exit of the spinal nerve roots; and in the cervical vertebrae, the transverse foramen is for the vertebral artery.

The proximity of the spinal cord and spinal nerve roots to the vertebral bodies and to the intervertebral discs makes them vulnerable to compression by disc herniation, trauma and impingement from degenerative changes in the vertebrae.

Joints. The spinal column has slightly movable cartilaginous joints between the vertebral bodies as already described in the beginning.

The movements and muscle groups

A. Cervical spine

- (i) Nodding of the head occurs at atlanto-occipital joint (C₁)
- (ii) Rotational neck movements occur mainly at atlantoaxial joint (C₁-C₂)
- (iii) The flexion (sternomastoid, scalene, paravertebral muscles), the extension (splenius capitis, trapezius, small neck muscles) and lateral bending (scalene and small intrinsic neck muscles) occur at the mid-cervical (C₃-C₅) level.

Symptoms

- (i) Neck pain and difficulty in turning the head. Pain may be referred to the arm. The causes of referred pain are given in Box 17.9.
- (ii) Neck stiffness

Compression of nerve roots (radiculopathy) and cord (myelopathy) may lead to quadriparesis, difficulty in walking, loss of sensation and sphincter control.

Box 17.9: CAUSES OF REFERRED PAIN TO THE ARM

- Cervical spondylosis
- Cervical rib
- Apical lung neoplasm (Pancoast's tumour)
- Hiatus hernia
- Cardiac ischaemia
- Diffuse oesophageal spasms

- (iii) The patient may also report paraesthesias or pain due to nerve root irritation at different sites at different level of involvement (Table 17.6). Thus, any patient with neck pain should be subjected to detailed history; neurological examination and investigations.

Table 17.6: Radiation of pain in cervical spine involvement

Site of involvement	Radiation of pain
1. Upper cervical spine affecting atlantoaxial joint	Pain radiating to occiput in distribution of the C ₂ nerve root
2. Mid-cervical spine	Pain radiating into the upper border of trapezius, interscapular region or into arms, often associated with local tenderness
3. Lower cervical spine (C ₆ -C ₇)	Widely referred pain into the interscapular region or into radial fingers and thumb
4. C ₈ involvement	Pain on the ulnar side of forearm and into ring and little fingers

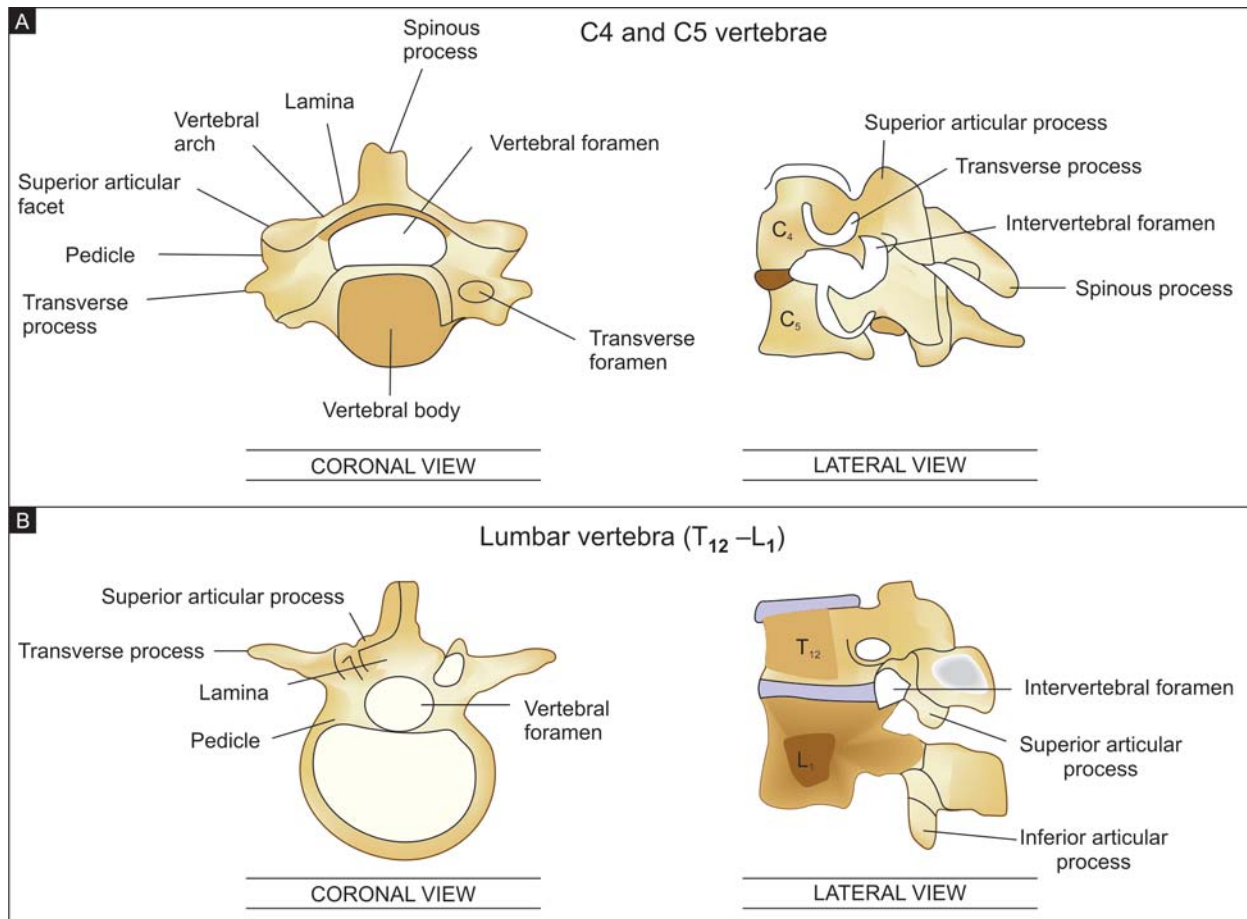


Fig. 17.23: Bony structure of; (A) Cervical vertebrae (C₄ and C₅), (B) Lumbar vertebrae (T₁₂–L₁)

Thoracic spine

This segment of the spinal cord is least mobile and maintains a kyphosis throughout life. Movements in the thoracic spine are mainly rotational with little flexion, extension and lateral bending.

Symptoms

The presenting symptoms of thoracic spine disease are;

- Localised spinal pain or pain radiating round the chest wall, mimicking cardiac or pleural disease.
- Progressive stooping and loss of height.* The patient with osteoporosis may complain of becoming progressively stooped (*Dowager hump*) with loss of height but without neurological features.
- Symptoms and signs of spinal cord compression* e.g. paraplegia, sensory loss and loss of bowel and bladder control.

The causes of pain due to involvement of the thoracic spine are given in the Box 17.10.

Lumbar spine

The lumbar spine has a smooth lordosis which may be lost in certain disorders i.e. ankylosing spondylitis and disc protusion. The main landmarks in lumbar region of vertebral column are the spinous process of L₄/L₅, which are level with the pelvic brim and the “*dimple of Venus*” which lie over the sacroiliac joint.

Box 17.10: CAUSES OF PAIN IN THORACIC SPINE INVOLVEMENT

- Adolescents/ adults**
 - Scheuermann's disease.
 - Ankylosing spondylitis.
 - Disc protusion
- Middle age and elderly**
 - Degenerative change.
 - Osteoporosis.
 - Aortic aneurysm
- Any age**
 - Tumour
 - Trauma
 - Infection

Symptoms

Low backache or low back pain is the presenting symptom. Most adults will have experienced it by the time they are middle-aged. An important objective of the history is to distinguish low back pain due to mechanical cause (disc protusion, spinal canal stenosis, osteoporotic fractures) from pain due to irritation of nerve root (root pain) and inflammatory pain (ankylosing spondylitis, infection). The characteristics of various types of back pain are discussed below.

Acute low back pain in young associated with bending or lifting weight is characteristic of acute lumbar disc protusion. Sudden movement and coughing will increase it. In addition, there may be compression of nerve roots (*cauda equina syndrome*). If sacral nerve roots are involved, there may be loss of sphincter control and perianal sensations. These acute episodes may be superimposed on previous disc degeneration. Acute back pain in middle and old age may be due to osteoporotic fracture and is not associated with neurological symptoms. This type of pain is increased by spinal flexion but is relieved on lying down.

Inflammatory or infective pain is associated with systemic features e.g. malaise, weight loss, night sweats, usually indicates tuberculous or pyogenic infection of the spine. The patient feels difficulty in moving the spine. The infection may involve intervertebral disc (caries), adjacent vertebrae, and at times it may tract into psoas muscle (*psoas cold abscess*) presenting as a swelling in the groin or may lead to painful flexed hip. Malignant disease involving the vertebral bodies produce continuous, unremitting spinal pain of acute onset, which disturbs the patient's sleep as well as the mood. There may be associated symptoms of malignancy such as anorexia, weight loss, night sweats.

Intermittent pain or discomfort in the lumbar region occurring over a long period of time in an old person is typical of wear and tear of the spine as a result of degenerative disc disease. The characteristic pain and stiffness occur in the morning or after immobility, relieved by gentle activity but recur with or after excessive activity.

Diffuse pain in the buttocks/ thighs brought on by prolonged standing or walking is indicative of lumbar canal stenosis. The pain may be associated with paraesthesias. Typically, the pain is relieved by rest and flexion of the spine. Narrowing of the lumbar spinal canal or exit foramina is caused by degenerative pathology in the discs and facet joints.

The common causes of low back pain/ lumbar pain and referred back pain are illustrated in Box. 17.11.

Range of movements

The principal movements are flexion, extension, lateral flexion and rotation. Most patients will be able to bring

Box 17.11: COMMON CAUSES OF LOW BACK PAIN

- Vertebral compression fracture
- Infection of the intervertebral disc space
- Tumour of the vertebral body
- Spondylolisthesis of vertebral body
- Spondylosis of posterior intervertebral joints
- Prolapsed intervertebral disc

CAUSES OF REFERRED BACK PAIN

Genitourinary and aorta

Kidney

- Stone
- Tumour
- Infection
- Hydronephrosis

Uterus and ovaries

- Dysmenorrhoea
- Pelvic inflammation
- Tumours of uterus and ovaries
- Ovarian cyst

Aorta

- Aortitis
- Aortic aneurysm

Gastrointestinal

Oesophagus

- Oesophagitis
- Hiatus hernia
- Carcinoma

Stomach and duodenum

- Peptic ulcer
- Carcinoma

Pancreas and gallbladder

- Pancreatitis
- Carcinoma
- Cholecystitis

Gut

- Diverticulosis
- Abscess

the tips of the fingers at least to the level of the knee in forward flexion and lateral bending.

Extension is variable from 10-20°. In flexion, the upper segments moves first, followed by lower segments to produce a smooth lumbar curve. Even with a rigid lumbar spine, if hips are mobile, the patient may be still able to touch his/her toes.

Spinal cord ends at the level of L₁, therefore injury above this level may damage the cord while below this will damage the nerve roots only (*cauda equina*)

Protusion of disc occurs mostly at the level of L₄/L₅ and L₅/S₁. (Fig. 17.24)

Examination of the spine

In clinical practice, the spine is examined in its entirety not in isolation.

Inspection

- Begin by observing the posture including the position of both neck and trunk when patient is entering the room.
- Assess the patient for erect position of the head, smooth, coordinated neck movements. Note the posture of the neck.
- Expose the patient's back for complete inspection. Patient should stand in erect posture in natural

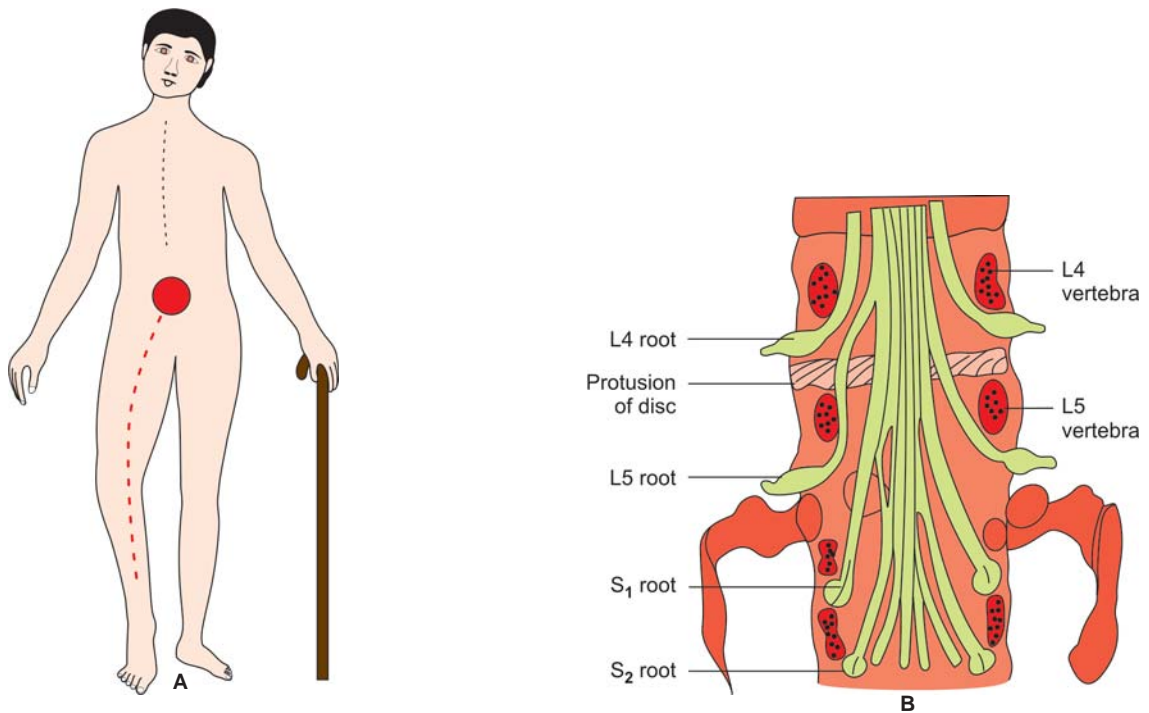


Fig. 17.24: Compression of lumbosacral nerve roots by herniation of disc

- A. Clinical presentation with site and radiation of pain to the leg (diagram). There is compensatory scoliosis
 B. Common site of prolapse of the disc (diagram)

standing position – with feet together and arms hanging at the sides. The head should be in midline in the same plane as sacrum, and the shoulders and pelvis should be in the same plane.

- Inspect the patient from the side for spinal curvatures. Note any curvature of the spinal column whether as a whole or of part of it. The curvature may be in an anterior, posterior or lateral direction. Common abnormalities are given in the Box 17.12.

Box 17.12: COMMON ABNORMALITIES RELATED TO SPINE

- Neck stiffness indicates arthritis, muscle strain
- Torticollis (wry neck) indicates sternomastoid spasm or contracture
- Cock-Robin position indicates lateral flexion of neck due to erosion of atlas in rheumatoid arthritis.

Anterior curvature is termed *lordosis*. There are natural lordotic curves in cervical and lumbar regions. Loss of lordosis occurs in acute disc prolapse.

General posterior curvature is termed *kyphosis* (Fig. 17.25). The thoracic spine exhibits a slight kyphosis normally, which increases with age. *Gibbus* is a localised angular deformity caused by fracture, pott's disease (spinal tuberculosis) or by secondaries in the spines. The

abnormalities of spines and their causes are tabulated (Table 17.7).

Scoliosis means lateral curvature of the spine and may be towards either side. It is associated with rotation of the bodies of the vertebrae.

In scoliosis due to acute disc protusion;

- If lateral to nerve root – patient bends away from lesion
- If medial to nerve root – patient bends towards lesion



Fig. 17.25: Kyphosis

Table 17.7: Inspection of other spine for deformity and their causes

View of Patient Inspection	Focus	Causes of abnormal spinal curvature	Comment
From the side	Cervical, thoracic, and lumbar curves	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Osteoporosis • Infection • Tumour • Prolapsed intervertebral disc (Fig. 17.24) • Inflammatory disorders 	Kyphosis (increased AP diameter) occurs with ageing. In children a correctable structure deformity should be pursued
	Alignment of the shoulders, the iliac crests, and the skin creases below the buttocks (gluteal folds).		Unequal shoulder heights seen in Sprengel's deformity of the scapula in "winging" of the scapula (from loss of innervation of the serratus anterior muscle by the long thoracic nerve) and in contralateral weakness of the trapezius. Unequal heights of the iliac crests, or tilt, suggest unequal lengths of the knee and disappear when a block is placed under the short leg and foot. Scoliosis and hip abduction or adduction may also cause a pelvic tilt. "Lifting" of the trunk to one side is seen with a herniated lumbar disc.
	Skin markings, tags and masses		Birthmarks, port-wine stains, hairy patches, and lipomas often overlie bony defects such as spinal bifida. Café-au-lait spots (discoloured patches of skin), skin tags and fibrous tumour occur in neurofibromatosis.



Fig. 17.26: Kyphoscoliosis

When scoliosis is due to unequal leg lengths, it disappears on sitting because the buttocks then come at same level. Scoliosis secondary to skeletal anomalies shows in spinal flexion a 'rib-hump' due to rotation. Kyphosis and scoliosis are often combined and called *kyphoscoliosis* (Fig. 17.26) which is an idiopathic spinal deformity beginning in adolescence.

Palpation

- In sitting or standing position, palpate the spinal processes of each vertebra by rolling the thumb over them and to note any tenderness.

Tenderness suggests fracture or disc prolapse, infection or arthritis

- In the neck, also try to palpate the facet joints which lie deep to trapezius muscle, hence, may not be palpable, but tenderness over the joints occurs in arthritis.
- In the lumbar region, check for any vertebral "step-off" to determine if one spinous process seems either unusually prominent or recessed in relation to one above it. Identify any tenderness.

Step-off occurs in spondylolisthesis, in which forward slippage of one vertebra may compress the spinal cord. Vertebral tenderness is suspicious for fracture or infection

- Palpate over the sacroiliac joint, often identified by the dimple overlying the posterior superior iliac spine.

Tenderness over sacroiliac joint occurs commonly in ankylosing spondylitis

- If needed, use light percussion with the fist or tendon hammer to elicit spinal tenderness.

Pain on percussion may arise from osteoporosis, infection or malignancy

- Palpate the paravertebral muscles for tenderness and spasm. Muscles in spasm feel firm and knotted.

Spasms occur in disc protusion, myositis, prolonged abnormal posture and anxiety.

- Elicit sciatic tenderness in sciatic notch. With the hip flexed and patient lying on the opposite side, palpate the sciatic nerve between greater trochanter and the ischial tuberosity as it leaves the pelvis i.e. in sciatic notch.

Sciatic nerve roots compression (L_4 , L_5 , S_1 , S_2 and S_3) suggests a herniated disc or mass lesion irritating the nerve roots

- Palpate for tenderness in any other area that is suggested by the patient's symptoms.
- Perform a detailed neurological check up noting any sensory or motor deficit in the limbs.
- Test the active and passive movements at various joints and note their range to identify any limitation or hypermobility.

Testing of cervical movements

Flexion- Ask the patient to touch chin to chest

Extension- Ask the patient to look up at the ceiling

Rotation- Ask the patient to turn the head to each side, looking directly over the shoulder

Lateral bending- Ask the patient to tilt the head sideways and try to touch the shoulder with the ear without raising the shoulder.

Note any pain or paraesthesias in the arm reproduced by neck movement, suggesting nerve root involvement. If indicated, perform neurological examination of neck and upper extremities for radicular or spinal cord involvement

In patients with rheumatoid arthritis involving atlantoaxial joint or in patients with cervical injury, never try to elicit range of motion of the neck. Take the help of investigations such as X-rays for diagnosis.

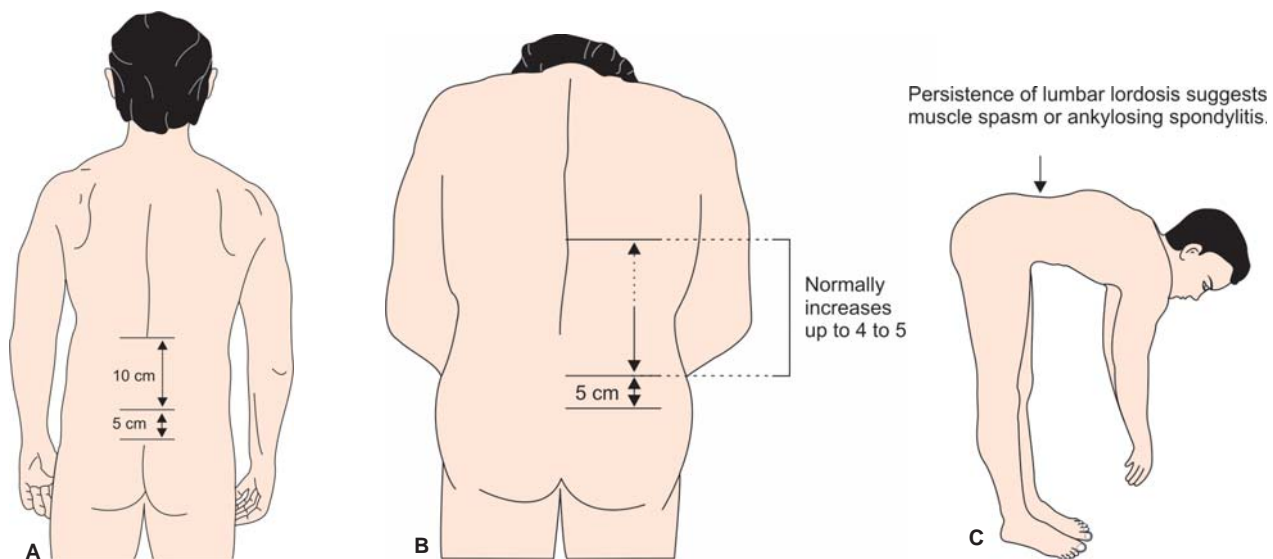
Testing of thoracic and lumbar spine

The thoracic spine permits mainly rotation whilst the lumbar spine can flex, extend and bend laterally. The movements are tested as follows;

Flexion. Ask the patient to touch the toes without bending at the knees. Note the smoothness, symmetry and range of movement and the lumbar curve. As flexion proceeds, the lumbar concavity should flatten out.

Persistence of lumbar lordosis suggests muscle spasm or ankylosing spondylitis (Fig. 17.27C).

To measure the degree of flexion, first mark the spine at lumbosacral junction, then mark 10 cm above and 5 cm below this point (Fig. 17.27A) in standing position. Ask the patient to bend forwards. A 4 cm increase between the two upper marks (10 cm mark + 4 cm) is normally seen (Fig. 17.27B). The distance between two lower marks remain same (5 cm).



Figs 17.27A to C: Schober's test, measuring forward bending (flexion) of spine



A. Extension



B. Rotation



C. Lateral bending

Figs 17.28A to C: Testing for the thoracic and lumbar spine

Extension: Place your hand on posterior superior iliac spine (Fig. 17.28A). Ask the patient to bend backwards as far as possible.

Rotation: Stabilize the pelvis by placing one hand on the patient's hip and the other on the opposite shoulder. Now rotate the trunk by pulling the shoulder and then the hip posteriorly (Fig 17.28B). Repeat the manoeuvre on the opposite side.

Lateral bending: Support the patient at the pelvis and at the shoulder, ask the patient to bend sideways as far as possible (Fig. 17.28C).

Decreased spinal movements occur in osteoarthritis, ankylosing spondylitis and other painful musculoskeletal conditions

Testing of costovertebral joints

Chest expansion: It is a measure of costovertebral movement and should be recorded using a tape measure with patient's hands behind their head.

Reduced chest expansion occurs in pulmonary disease (emphysema) and ankylosing spondylitis

Tests for nerve root compression

Prolapse of intervertebral disc is common at L₄/L₅ or L₅/S₁ level producing compression of the L₅ and S₁ nerve roots respectively (Fig. 17.24). *Straight – leg raising test* is used to stretch these roots. Normally about 90° of flexion at the hip is possible (varies from 70-120°) without

producing pain. When the root is stretched over a prolapsed disc, the straight leg raising will be restricted due to pain which will be felt in the lumbar region, not just in the leg.

Straight leg raising test (Fig. 17.29A)

- Make the patient lying supine and both legs extended.
- With knee extended, raise the leg on unaffected side by lifting the heel with one hand while preventing knee flexion with the other. Note the range of movement.
- Now repeat this manoeuvre on the affected side directing the patient to report as soon as pain is felt. Ask the patient to localise the pain or paraesthesia felt (Fig 17.29A).
- When this limit is reached, augment the stretching of nerve roots by dorsiflexing the ankle (Bragaard test—Fig. 17.29B).

Straight leg raising is limited by stretching of the sciatic nerve roots in sciatica pain due to any cause

Bowstring sign (Fig. 17.30)

- Perform the straight leg raising test as described above in Figure 17.29A. When limit is reached, flex the knee to reduce the tension on sciatic nerve roots (Fig. 17.31A).
- Now further flex the hip.
- Now gently extend the knee until pain is reproduced once again (Lassegue's sign (Fig. 17.31B).
- The posterior tibial nerve is now stretched like a bowstring across the popliteal fossa. Firm pressure is



Figs 17.29A and B: Stretch tests for sciatic roots

A. Straight leg raising test

B. Bragard test-tension increased by dorsiflexion of foot

then applied with the thumb, first over the hamstring nearest the examiner, then over the nerve in the middle of popliteal fossa and finally over the other hamstring tendon. Ask the patient which manoeuvre exacerbated pain (Fig. 17.31C).

The test (sign) is positive if the second manoeuvre is painful and if the resultant pain radiates from the knee to the back

III. Flip test (Fig. 17. 31). It is used (to distinguish between sciatic nerve root irritation from malingering)

- The patient is made to sit on the edge of couch with the hips and knees flexed to 90°. Test the knee reflexes (Fig. 17.31A)
- Now extend the knee to an extent to elicit the ankle jerk (Fig. 17.31B)
- If there is no irritation, then patient will flip backwards to relieve tension on the nerve roots (Fig. 17.31B).

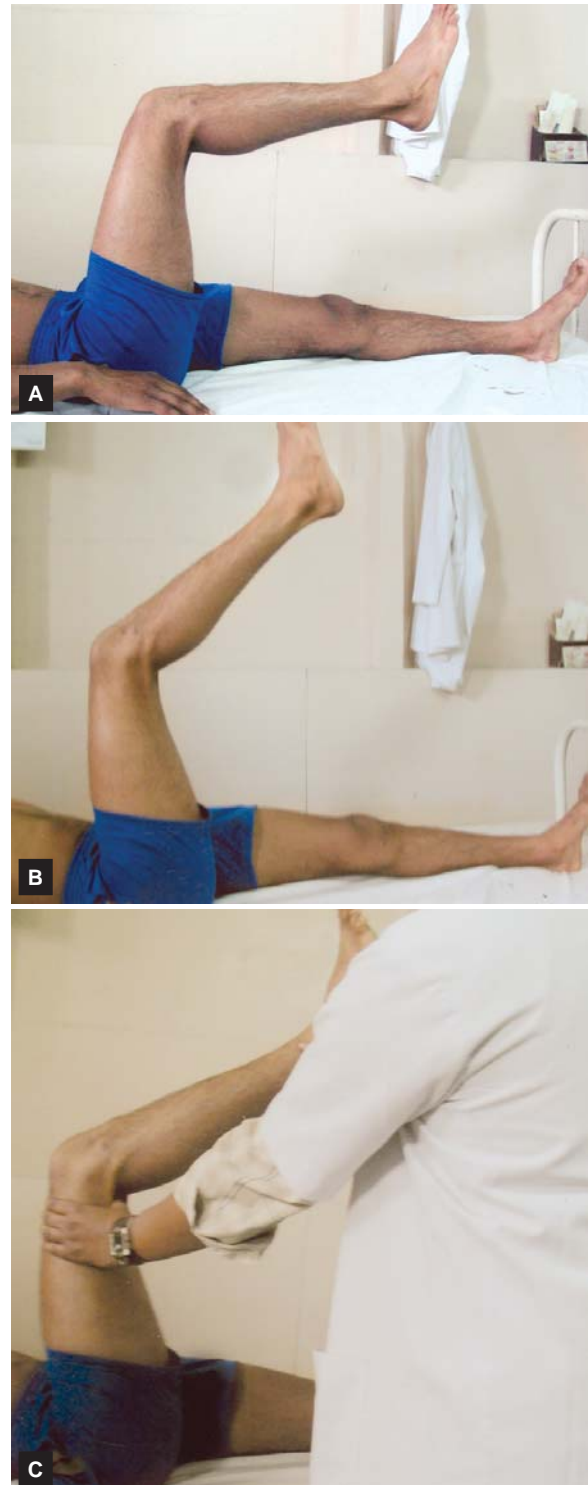
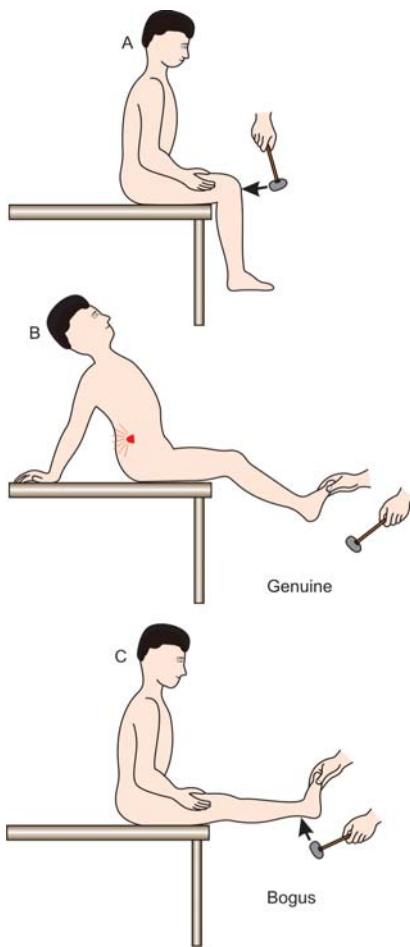


Fig. 17.30: Bowstring sign

A. Root tension relieved by flexion at the knee

B. With knee extension over prolapsed disc causing pain radiating to the back (*Lassegue's sign positively*)

C. Pressure over centre of popliteal fossa bears on posterior tibial nerve which is "bowstringing" across the fossa causing pain locally and radiation into back



Figs 17.31A to C: Flip test. In the “flip” test, when attention is diverted to the tendon reflexes, the genuine patient will not permit full extension of the leg

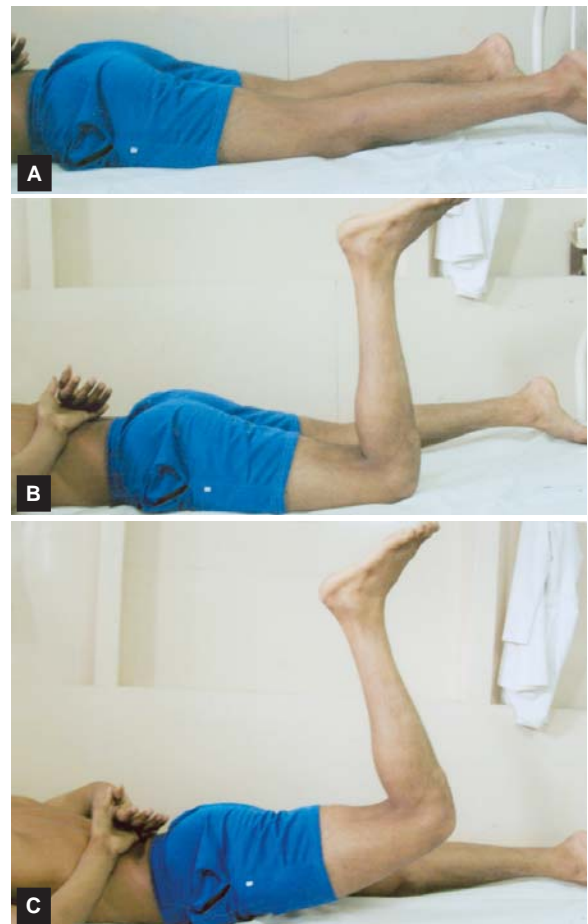
- In the absence of nerve root irritation, the patient’s attention distracted to the ankle jerk, may allow full extension of the knee i.e. to 90° (Fig. 17.31C).

Femoral nerve stretch test (Fig. 17.32)

- Make the patient to lie prone, in case of flexion deformity of the hip to lie on the unaffected side.
- Flex the knee slowly, asking the patient to report the onset of pain. If pain does not occur in the thigh or back, gently extend the hip with the knees remaining flexed (Fig. 17.32C).

Testing the sacroiliac joints

Pain arising from the sacroiliac joints may radiate into buttocks and posterior aspect of the thighs, but, unlike sciatica, does not go beyond knee. There is no reliable test to elicit tenderness of sacroiliac joint because both false positive and false negative results are common. In case of



Figs 17.32A to C: Femoral nerve stretch test. (A) patient lies prone and is free from pain because femoral roots are slack. (B) When femoral roots are tightened by flexion of the knee, pain may be felt in the back. (C) If still no pain, femoral roots are further stretched by extension of the hip

inflammation of sacroiliac joint, stressing of the buttocks to reproduce pain may be useful. To test the sacroiliac joints;

- Ask the patient to lie prone on a firm surface and apply firm pressure with palm of the hand over the sacrum.
Or
- With the patient supine, fully flex the hip and knee and with firm pressure, adduct the thigh to stress the ipsilateral sacroiliac joint

Painful joint on stress manoeuvre indicates sacroilitis

Upper limb joints

The shoulder

The lateral end of the clavicle and the acromion can easily be identified. With your fingers, trace the clavicle laterally.

Now from behind, follow the bony spine of the scapula laterally and upwards until it becomes the *acromian*, the summit of the shoulder. Identify the manubrium and sternoclavicular joint. The tip of the coracoid process of scapula can be palpated 1 inch below the clavicle under the anterior edge of the delotid. The three bony points – acromian, the greater tubercle of humerus and coracoid process are important anatomical landmarks in structure of the shoulder. Three different joints articulate at the shoulder.

1. *Glenohumeral joint*- a ball and socket joint allowing the arm its wide arc of movements e.g. flexion, extension, abduction, adduction, rotation and circumduction.
2. *Sternoclavicular joint* between medial end of clavicle and upper sternum.
3. *Acromioclavicular joint* between lateral end of the clavicle with acromian process of scapula.

The shoulder derives its mobility from a complex structure of these joints supported by strong muscle groups, ligaments and bursae, often referred to as *shoulder girdle*. The important group of muscles – scapulohumeral group extends from the scapula to the humerus and includes the muscles inserting directly on the humerus known as *SITS muscles* – *supraspinatus* (S), *infraspinatus* (I), *teres minor* (T) and *subscapsularis* (S) of the rotator cuff. This group rotates the shoulder laterally (infraspinatus and teres minor are external rotator) and supraspinatus stabilises the shoulder and allows the deltoid muscle to abduct the arm and is main component of rotator cuff. The rotator cuff muscles surround the glenohumeral joint and are inserted into a fibrous capsule lining the joint. The capsule is lined by synovial membrane with two outpouchings i.e. subscapsular bursa and the synovial sheath of the tendon of the long head of the biceps. Therefore, the rotator cuff, the related subacromial bursa and the tendon of the long head of the biceps are important sites of pathology in the shoulder.

Examination of the shoulder

Inspection

Inspect and compare the shoulder girdle from the front, scapulae and related muscles from behind. Note any *muscle wasting*, *soft tissue swelling* or *difference in bony contour* on the two sides.

Muscle atrophy points to a lesion in cervical nerves. In scoliosis, there is elevation of one shoulder facing towards convexity.

The shoulder contour gets flattened in its dislocation; in anterior dislocation, lateral aspect is flattened while in posterior dislocation, anterior aspect is flattened

Look for swelling of the joint capsule anteriorly or a bulge in the acromial bursa under deltoid muscle.

A significant amount of fluid may collect in the synovial cavity producing outpouching of bursa

Survey the entire upper extremity for colour change, skin alteration or abnormal positioning.

Stand behind the patient and observe the overall range of movements by asking the patient to place the hands at the base of the neck with elbow pointing sideways.

Next ask the patient to put the arms down and to reach behind the back in-between the shoulder blades.

Proceed further only if pain, swelling or limitation of movements is present.

Palpation

If there is history of shoulder pain (see the Box 17.13), ask the patient to point to the painful area.

Box 17.13: CAUSES OF PAINFUL SHOULDERS

- Rotator cuff – tendinitis, tears, degeneration, tendon rupture
- Subacromial bursa – calcific bursitis, arthritis
- Capsule – Adhesive capsulitis (frozen shoulder)
- Head of humerus- tumour deposit, osteonecrosis, fracture/dislocation
- Joints – synovitis, osteoarthritis, dislocation

The location of pain is important for the diagnosis such as;

- Top of the shoulder, radiating towards neck–acromioclavicular joint
- Lateral aspect of shoulder radiating towards deltoid insertion – rotator cuff
- Anterior shoulder – bicipital tendon

Testing for range of movements at shoulder

The neutral position is with the arm to the side, elbow flexed to 90° with forearm pointing forwards. Because the scapula is mobile, true shoulder (glenohumeral) movement can be assessed only when the examiner immobilises the scapula between the thumb and the finger on the posterior chest wall. The movements to be tested are;

- Flexion and extension (Fig. 17.33)
- Abduction (Fig. 17.33)
- Rotation in abduction (Fig. 17.33)
- Rotation in neutral position (Fig. 17.33)
- Rotation in neutral adduction
- Elevation

In clinical practice, internal rotation can best be compared by recording the height reached by each thumb up the

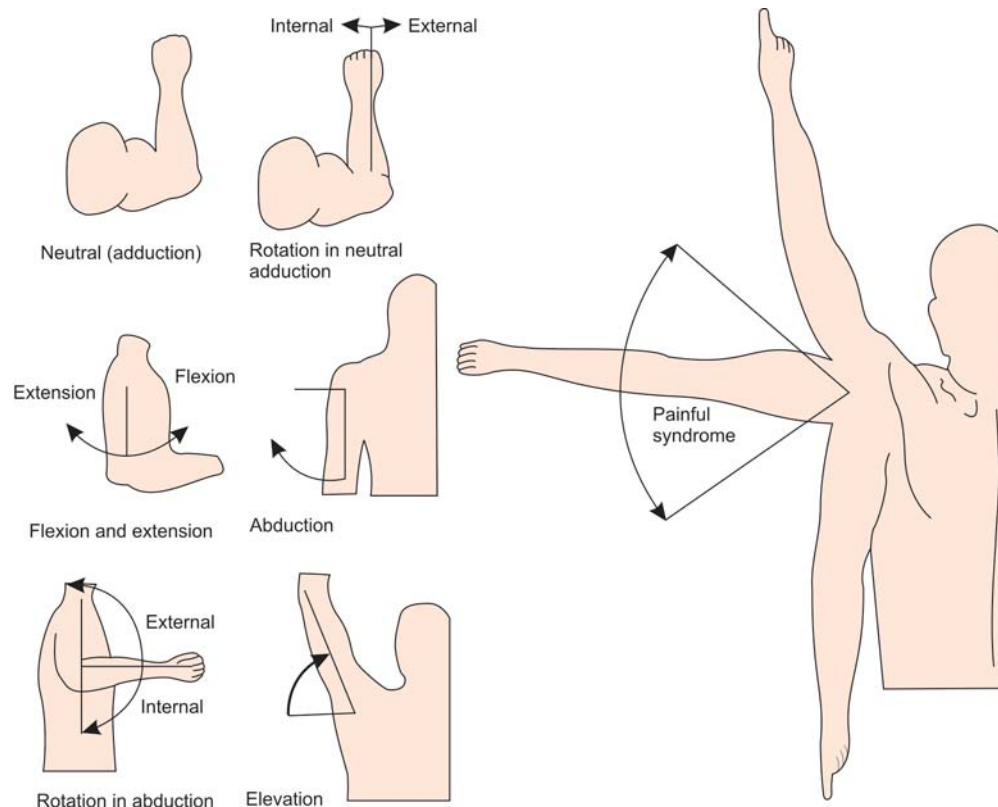


Fig. 17.33: Movements at the shoulder. The movements are tested against resistance. Stand in front of the patient and test the range of following movements at shoulder by asking the patient to;

- (i) Abduction. Raise the arm to shoulder level 90° with palms facing down. This tests glenohumeral movement only.
- (ii) Elevation. Raise the arms to 0° vertical position above the head with palms facing each other. This tests initial 60° scapulothoracic movement
- (iii) Place both hands behind the neck with elbows stretched out to the side. This tests external rotation and abduction
- (iv) Place both hands behind the small of the back. It tests internal rotation and adduction
- (v) Move the forearm forwards (flexion) and backwards (extension)

Painful arc syndrome

Inability to perform these movements results in painful arc syndrome which is due to involvement of soft tissue around shoulder such as bursitis, capsulitis, rotator cuff tears or sprains or tendinitis

back (*internal rotation and adduction*). This is tested by “asking the patient to scratch the back” or undo the bra strap (Fig. 17.34 Apley test). Similarly external rotation can be tested by asking the patient to place both hands behind the neck with elbows out to the side (tests external rotation and adduction Fig. 17.35 Apley test).

- *Note any pain during the range of movement.* In supraspinatus tendinitis (rotator cuff), a full passive range of movement is found, but there is a painful arc on abduction, with pain exacerbated on resisted abduction (Fig. 17.36 in Table 17.8).

Subacromial. (Fig. 17.36) painful arc syndrome impingement due to bursitis or rotator cuff abnormality may produce severe pain at the end of abduction blocking the full elevation.

Acromioclavicular joint pain is always localised and is typically felt in last 10° of elevation ($170\text{--}180^\circ$ arc).

Testing for bicipital tendinitis: Ask the patient to flex the elbow against resistance or ask the patient to supinate the forearm against resistance (Fig. 17.36D). Pain during these manoeuvres indicates bicipital tendinitis.

The elbow

The elbow helps to position the hand in space and stabilises the lever action of the forearm. The joint is formed by the humerus and two bones of the forearm, the radius and the ulna. The three bony prominences, at the elbow are; two epicondyles (medial and lateral) of the humerus and tip of the olecranon which forms an equilateral triangle. The subcutaneous bursa overlying the olecranon is visible and palpable only when inflamed. The movements and the muscles involved are given in the Box 17.14.



Fig. 17.34: Apley from below. Functional test of the subscapularis, that is, internal rotation. Here examination findings are normal



Fig. 17.35: Apley from above. Functional test of the infraspinatus and teres minor, that is, external rotation. Here the findings are quite normal

Box 17.14: MOVEMENTS AT THE ELBOW	
Movement	Muscle group (s)
Flexion	Biceps and brachioradialis
Extension	Triceps
Pronation	Pronator teres
Supination	Supinator

Examination of elbow

Inspection and palpation

- Support the patient's forearm with your opposite hand and flex the elbow to about 70°. Identify the medial and lateral epicondyles and the olecranon process of

the ulna. Inspect the contours of the elbow including the extensor surface of the ulna and the olecranon process. *Note any nodule or swelling.* The causes of swollen elbow are given in the Box 17.15.

Box 17.15: SWOLLEN TENDER ELBOWS	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Olecranon bursitis Arthritis Epicondylitis Rheumatoid nodules 	

- Palpate the olecranon process and press on the epicondyles for *tenderness*. Note any displacement of olecranon.

Medial (*golfer's elbow*) and lateral (tennis-elbow) epicondylitis are the common causes of pain and tenderness of elbow.

- Palpate the *groove* between epicondyles and the olecranon, noting any *swelling* or *tenderness*. The synovium is most commonly accessible in this region if there is synovitis (normally neither synovium nor bursa is palpable). The sensitive ulnar nerve can also be palpated posteriorly between the olecranon process and the medial epicondyle.

Testing for movements at elbow joint: The neutral position is with the forearm in extension. The following movements are tested;

Flexion and extension (Fig. 17.37): To test these movements ask the patient to bend (flex) and straighten (extend) elbow.

Supination and pronation (Fig. 17.38). With the patient sitting with arms at the sides and elbows flexed to minimize shoulder movement, ask the patient to supinate (turn up the palms) and pronate (turn down the palms).

The wrist and hands

The wrist includes the distal radius and ulna and 8 small carpal bones. At wrist, the bony tips of the radius and the ulna can be identified.

The numerous joints of the wrist and hand lend unusual dexterity to the hands. The wrist joints include the *radiocarpal* or wrist joint, the distal *radioulnar joint* and *intercarpal joints*. On the dorsum of the wrist, there is groove of the radiocarpal joint.

The joints of the hands include *metacarpophalangeal* joints (MCPs), the proximal interphalangeal joints (PIPs) and the distal interphalangeal joints (DIPs). Flex the hand and you will find the groove marking the MCP joint of each finger. It is distal to the knuckles and is best felt on either side of the extensor tendon on dorsal aspect of hand.

Table 17.8: Testing of the acromioclavicular joint and structures in and around shoulder joint


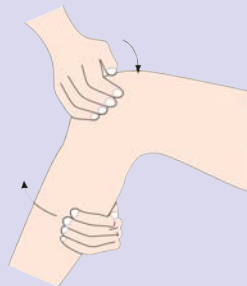
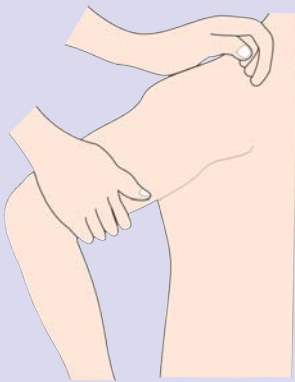

Structure	Test
<p>A Acromioclavicular joint</p> 	<p><i>Cross over test:</i> Ask the patient to adduct the arms across the chest</p> <p>Localised tenderness during the manoeuvre suggests arthritis of acromioclavicular joint</p>
<p>B Subacromial and subdeltoid bursitis</p> 	<p>Passively extend the shoulder by lifting the elbow posteriorly. Palpate over the subacromial and subdeltoid bursae.</p> <p>Tenderness over the area of subacromial or subdeltoid bursae indicates bursitis or calcific deposits in the rotator cuff; while swelling suggests bursal tear.</p>
<p>C Rotator cuff</p> 	<p>SITS (Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus, Teres minor and subscapularis) muscle insert anteriorly at the shoulder, hence palpate them on the greater tuberosity of the humerus with the patient's arm hanging at the side.</p> <p>These muscles can also be tested (Fig. 17.36) by passively extending the shoulder by lifting the elbow posteriorly. This manoeuvre brings the rotator cuff on to the acromion. Palpate these muscles at the greater tuberosity of the humerus</p> <p>Tenderness over SITS muscles indicate sprains, tears or tendon rupture of the rotator cuff.</p> <p><i>Drop-arm sign</i> (ask the patient to abduct the arm fully upto 90° and then lower it slowly) if positive (inability to hold the arm abducted at shoulder lines) indicates "rotator cuff tear"</p>
<p>D Bicipital groove and tendon</p> 	<p>Rotate the arm and forearm externally to localise the biceps muscle distally near the elbow. Along the anterior aspect of the humerus lies the bicipital groove. Palpate the biceps tendon in the groove. Note any tenderness on valving the tendon in the groove. Finally, hold the patient's elbow against the body with forearm flexed to 90°. Ask the patient to supinate the forearm against resistance.</p> <p>Pain or tenderness during flexing of lessow against resistance occurs with bicipital tendinitis or tendon rupture.</p>

Fig. 17.36

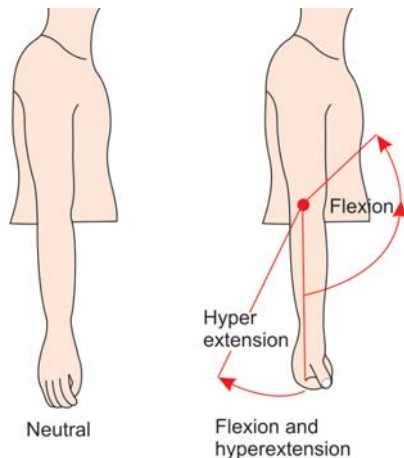


Fig. 17.37: Movements at elbow (e.g. flexion, hyperextension)

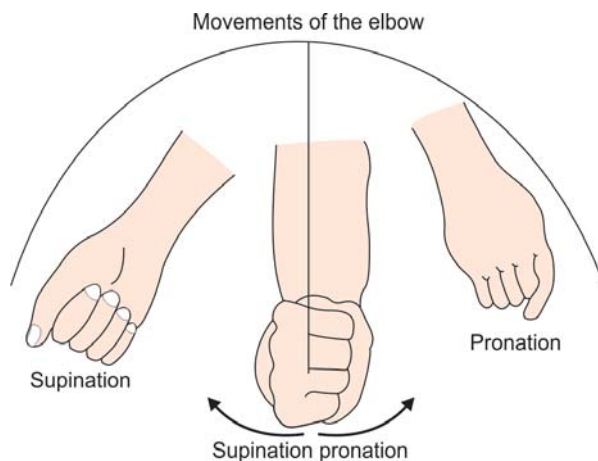


Fig. 17.38: Movements of the forearm/elbow (supination and pronation)

The movements at the wrist are described in Figure 17.39.

The pronation and supination of the wrist result from respective muscle contraction in the forearm (already discussed).

Soft tissue structures especially the tendons and tendon sheaths are extremely important in the wrist and the hand.

1. **Flexor retinaculum.** It is a transverse ligament that holds the tendons and tendon sheath in place. The median nerve lies between the flexor retinaculum and tendon sheaths, provides sensation to the palm and the palmar surface of most of the thumb, the index, middle and inner half of ring fingers. It also supplies thumb muscles of flexion, abduction and apposition.
2. **Carpal tunnel** (see Fig. 17.44) It is a canal or tunnel beneath the flexor retinaculum. The canal contains the sheath and flexor tendons of the forearm muscles and the median nerve.

Examination

Inspection

The neutral position of wrist joint (at rest) is with the hand in line with the forearm, and palm down.

- Observe the position of the hands in motion to see if the movements are smooth and natural.

The movements are tested in neutral position, i.e. hand in line with the forearm (Fig. 17.39A).

Flexion. Ask the patient to flex the wrist against gravity, then again resistance (Fig. 17.39B).

Extension. Ask the patient to extend the wrist against gravity, then again graded resistance.

Ulnar and radial deviation. With palms down, ask the patient to move wrist laterally and medially (Fig. 17.39C).

- Inspect the hands and wrists (palm and dorsum) carefully for *swelling* over the joints,

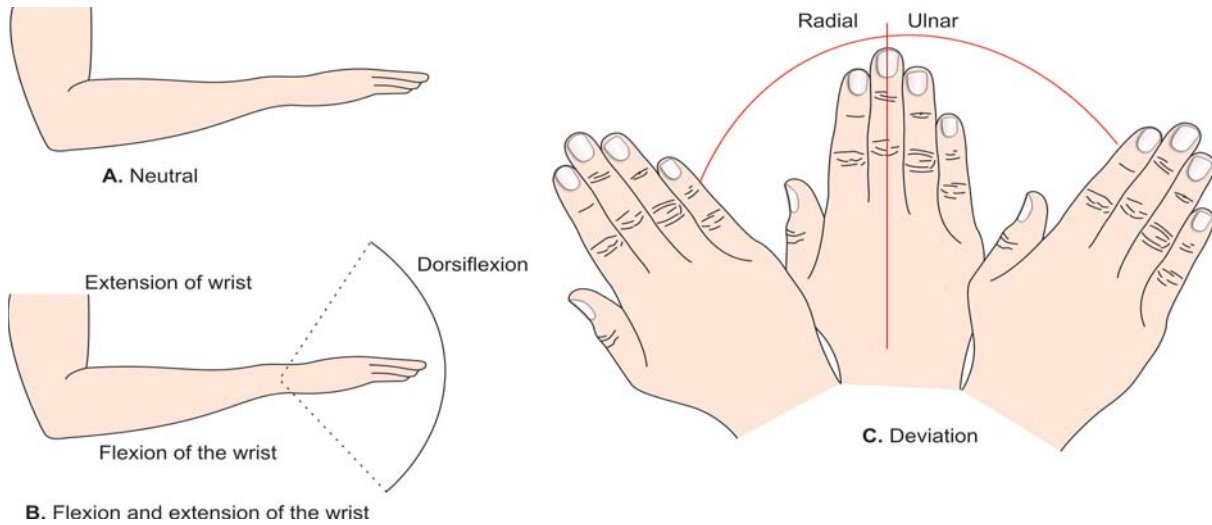
Diffuse swelling of hand (s) and wrist (s) is seen in arthritis and acute infection.

Localised swelling or ganglia arise from cystic enlargement.

- Look specifically for *skin* and *nail* changes, *muscle wasting*, *joint deformity* (ulnar or radial deviation). The abnormalities of the hand associated with rheumatic diseases are depicted in the Table 17.9.

Table 17.9: Visible abnormalities of the hands in rheumatic disease

Abnormality	Physical appearance	Site	Disease (s)
Heberden's nodes (Fig. 17.10)	Small bony nodules	DIP joints	OA
Bouchard nodules (Fig. 17.10)	Small bony nodules	PIP joints	OA
Rheumatoid nodules (Fig. 17.9)	Fleshy and firm	Extensor surface of knuckles	RA
Tophi (Fig. 17.20)	White subcutaneous swellings	Juxta-articular	Gout
Calcific deposits	White subcutaneous deposits	Finger pulp	Scleroderma, dermatomyositis
Dilated capillaries	Redness	Nail folds	Scleroderma, dermatomyositis, SLE
OA = Osteoarthritis, RA = Rheumatoid arthritis, SLE = Systemic lupus erythematosus			



Figs 17.39A to C: Movements of the wrist

- Observe *contours* of the palm, namely the thenar and hypothenar eminences.

Thenar atrophy indicates median nerve compression
Hypothenar atrophy indicates ulnar nerve compression

- Note any thickening of the flexor tendons or flexion *contractures* in the finger.

Flexion contractures of 3rd, 4th and 5th fingers or Dupuytren's contractures arise from thickening of the palmar fascia

Palpation

- Palpate the wrist joint with your thumbs on the dorsum of the wrist and fingers beneath it (Fig. 17.40). *Note any swelling or tenderness.*

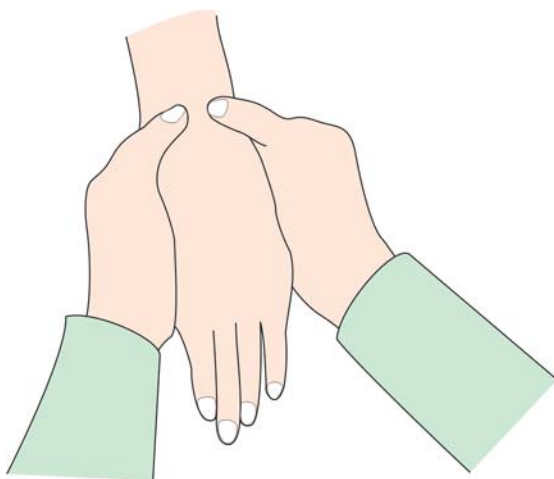


Fig. 17.40: Palpation of wrist joint

Tenderness over distal radius occurs in Colles' fracture. Any tenderness or bony step-off indicates fracture

Swelling and tenderness of joints indicate rheumatoid arthritis if bilateral or gonococcal infection if unilateral arthritis

- Palpate the anatomical *snuff box* (a hollowed depression just distal to radial styloid process)

Tenderness over snuff box suggests a scaphoid fracture

- Compress the MCP joints by squeezing the hand from each side between the thumb and fingers (is equivalent to shaking hands). Alternatively use your thumb to palpate each MCP on each side of knuckles as your index finger feels the head of the metacarpal in the palm (Fig. 17.41). Note any swelling or bogginess or tenderness.

Shaking hands is painful in synovitis of MCP

- Palpate the PIP joints between your thumb and index finger. *Note for swelling or enlargement or tenderness* (see the Table 17.7). Using the same technique, examine DIP joints.
- Palpate the flexor tendons and tendon sheaths inserted on the thumb and fingers with your index finger for any *swelling or tenderness*.

Swelling and tenderness along the tendons indicate tenosynovitis

Testing of the movements

1. *At wrist joint.* They have already been described (Fig. 17.39).



Fig. 17.41: To palpate and elicit tenderness at each metacarpophalangeal joint

2. At the finger joints

The movements are tested in relation to neutral position. The neutral position is with the fingers in extension.

Flexion and extension can be tested by asking the patients to make a tight fist with each hand, thumb across the knuckles, and then extend and spread the fingers. The fingers should open and close smoothly and easily. Test flexion and extension of MCP, PIP and DIP joints against gravity and against resistance (Fig. 17.42).

Abduction and adduction. Ask the patient to spread the fingers apart (abduction) and back together (adduction). Check for smooth coordinated movements.

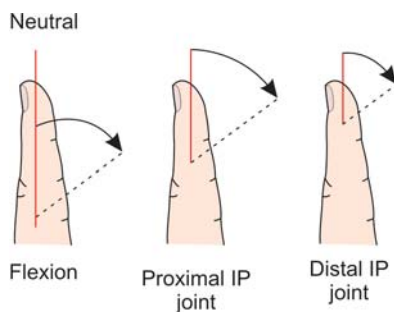


Fig. 17.42: Movement of the fingers. The movements are tested against gravity and against resistance

3. At the thumb (Fig. 17.43)

Movements are tested in relation to neutral position (thumb along side the index fingers and extended). The movements tested are:

Flexion and extension. Ask the patient to touch the base of little finger with the thumb (flexion) and then to move the thumb back across the palm and away from the fingers to test extension (Fig. 17.43).

Abduction and adduction. Ask the patient to place the fingers and thumb in neutral position with the palm up, now ask the patient to move the thumb anteriorly away from the palm (abduction) and then back to same position (adduction).

Opposition. Ask the patient to touch the thumb to each of the other finger tips (Fig. 17.43).

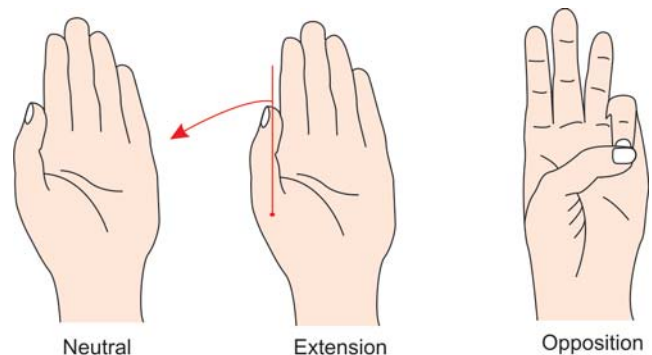


Fig. 17.43: Movements of the thumbs

Assessment of hand function

Fine pinch. Ask the patient to perform the pinch grip (between the thumb and index finger).

It may be decreased in the line of action of thumb metacarpal particularly in scaphoid fracture

Hand grip. Note the grip strength by asking the patient to grip two or three fingers of the examiner's hands. If the range of movements of the joints is not full, then patient will not be able to grip the fingers tightly.

Test for sensations

At the end, test the sensation in the fingers. Test median, ulnar and radial nerve sensation in the hand as discussed in nervous system examination.

Pain and numbness and objective loss of sensations on the ventral surface of first three and half fingers but not the palm along with weakness of abduction of the thumb indicates carpal tunnel syndrome which is confirmed by the following tests.

Tests for carpal tunnel syndrome

Thumb abduction test. To test the abductor pollicis, ask the patient to raise the thumb perpendicular to the palm against resistance applied on the distal phalanx.

Inability to do so, indicates weakness of adductor pollicis.

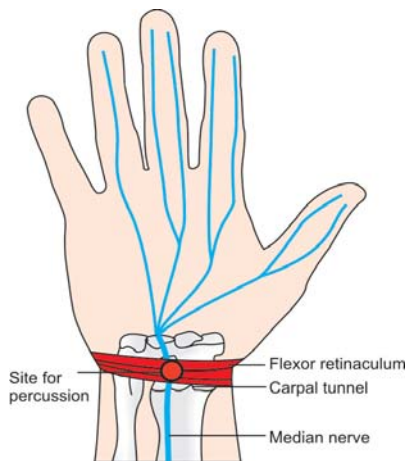
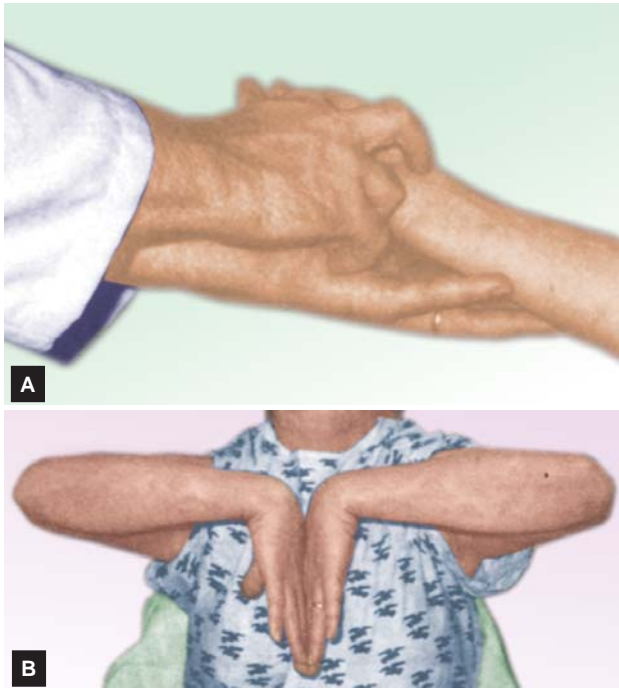


Fig. 17.44: Carpal tunnel lying behind the flexor retinaculum contains median nerve. The tests for carpal tunnel syndrome (median nerve compression are discussed)



Figs 17.45A and B: Tests for carpal tunnel syndrome
A. Tinel's sign B. Phalen's manoeuvre

Tinel's sign (Fig. 17.45A). Percuss lightly with your finger at the spot on the carpal tunnel (encircled Fig. 17.44). Tingling or electric sensations in the distribution of the median nerve constitute positive test and confirms the diagnosis of carpal tunnel syndrome.

Phalen's manoeuvre. The manoeuvre is performed to compress the median nerve tunnel. The test is performed

either by holding the wrists of the patient in acute flexion for one minute or ask the patient to press the back of the both hands (see the Fig. 17.45B) together at right angle. The appearance of numbness or tingling within a minute over the distribution of median nerve (palmar surface of lateral three and half fingers) indicates that the sign is positive, suggesting carpal tunnel syndrome.

LOWER LIMB JOINTS

The hip

The hip joint – a synovial joint is deeply embedded in the pelvis, and is notable for its length, stability and wide range of motion. The stability of joint is due to fitting of the head of the femur into the *acetabulum*, its strong fibrous capsule and powerful muscles crossing the joint and inserting below the head.

Four powerful groups of muscles move the hip, i.e. flexors (e.g. mainly iliopsoas), extensors (mainly gluteus maximus), adductor and abductor (gluteus medius and minimus). These muscles help to stabilize the pelvis during the stance phase of gait.

A strong dense capsule extending from the acetabulum to the femoral neck, encases and strengthens the hip joint, reinforced by three overlying ligaments and is lined with synovial membrane. There are three principal bursae at the hip, i.e. *iliopsoas*, *trochanteric* and *ischiofemoral*.

Important landmarks

On the anterior aspect of the hip, identify the iliac crest as the rim of pelvis at the level of L4. Follow the downward curve to locate iliac tubercle (widest point of crest) and then anterior superior iliac spine.

On the posterior aspect, the posterior superior iliac supine lies directly under the dimple just above the buttocks. Next locate the greater trochanter laterally with your fingers at the level of gluteal fold.

Symptoms of hip disease

1. **Hip pain:** It may be reported in the groin, anterior thigh or knee. The pain is worst during activity and limits walking. There is often troublesome pain at night which disturbs the sleep and awakens the patient while turning over during sleep.
2. **Stiffness:** Pain is associated with stiffness to some extent which results in limitation of movements especially flexion and causing difficulty in putting on socks or shoes or cutting the toe nails. There may be difficulty getting in and out of the bath or sitting on a low chair.

Examination of hip joint

Inspection- standing

- Inspect the hip when standing and walking. Observe the gait while patient entering the room. *Note any abnormality of gait.*
- Observe the patient from behind for *scoliosis* and *pelvic tilt* which may conceal a hip deformity or true shortening of one leg (Fig. 17.46). If *pelvic tilt* occurs, measure the leg lengths.
- Inspect the anterior and posterior surface of the hip for any *muscle wasting* or *bruising*.

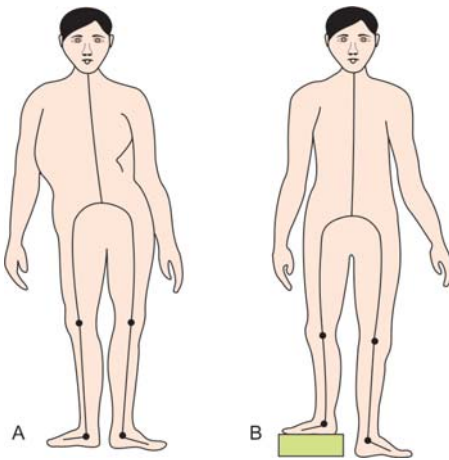


Fig. 17.46: Effect of true shortening right leg on posture A. causes pelvic tilt and scoliosis, B. Pelvic tilt and scoliosis are fully corrected by providing a shoe base

Testing for stability of the hip (Trendelenburg's test)

Ask the patient to stand first on one leg and then on the other, and observe any *change in pelvic tilt* on the non-weight bearing side (Fig. 17.47).

Inspection in supine position

- Make the patient to lie supine with pelvic brim at right angle to the spine.
- Note the posture of each leg and look for any *deformity*, *swelling* or other signs of *inflammation*, *muscle wasting* or *asymmetry*.

Palpation

- Palpate for local *tenderness* over the front of the hip and over the greater trochanter.
- Measurement of 'true' and 'apparent' shortening.
 - For measurement of apparent shortening place the legs parallel with the patient lying supine. The length of the leg is measured from a fixed point, i.e.

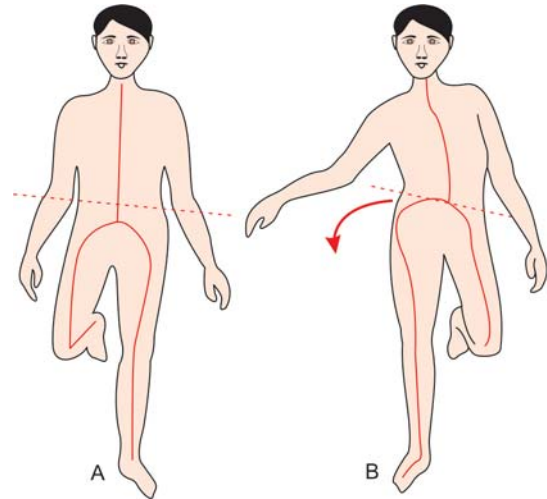


Fig. 17.47: Trendelenburg's test for testing the gluteal muscles
A. Powerful gluteal muscles maintain the position normally on standing on the left leg
B. Weakness of gluteal muscles on right side causes pelvic tilt on standing on the right leg

xiphisternum or umbilicus to the tip of medial malleolus on each side, provided there is no true shortening of one leg.

Apparent shortening is due to tilting of the pelvis, indicates adduction deformity of hip (Fig. 17.48A).

- For true shortening, measure the distance from anterior superior iliac supine to medial malleolus and compare it with the other side. Any difference is termed 'true' shortening.

True shortening results either from the disease of hip joint (Fig. 17.48) i.e. dislocation or neck of the femur or fracture (Fig. 17.48C). Fracture of the neck is common after fall but may occur with trivial injury in a patient with osteoporosis or tumour infiltration. Posterior dislocation of hip is common in dash-board knee injury in patients sitting in the front seat in a car. The limb will be shortened and internally rotated.

Testing of movements

The movements are measured in neutral position (i.e. hip in extension, and patella pointing forwards). Ensure that the pelvis does not tilt by placing one hand over the pelvis, while examining the hip with the other. The following movements are tested;

Flexion. With one hand stabilising the iliac crest in a patient lying supine, use the other hand to flex each hip and note the range of flexion (0-120°).

Thoma's test for flexion deformity of hip. Flexion deformity of the hip may be concealed or masked by the

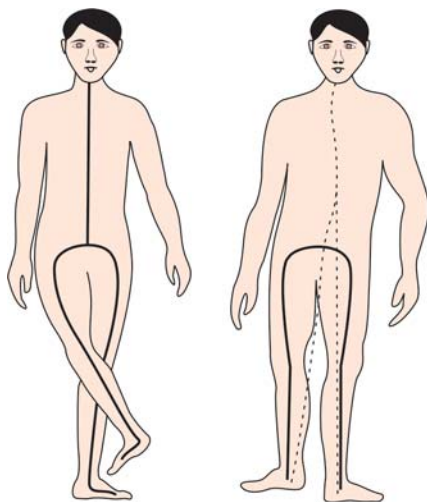


Fig. 17.48A: Measurement for apparent shortening of the leg caused by adduction deformity of the right hip

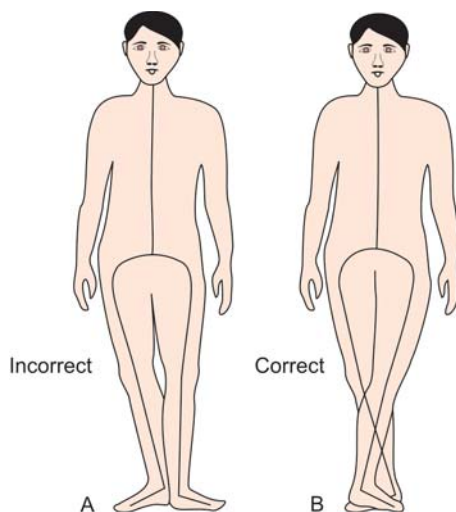


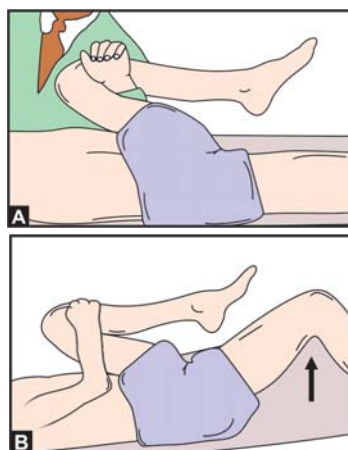
Fig. 17.48B: Measurement for true shortening of the leg. The patient has an adduction deformity of the right limb. On placing the normal limb in the same position of adduction, the leg lengths are the same, excluding true shortening. A. Incorrect because legs are not in a comparable position. B. Correct because the legs are in comparable position of adduction



Fig. 17.48C: True shortening of left leg due to fracture neck of femur in a patient with diabetes (left big toe is amputated)

presence of compensatory lordosis, therefore, Thoma's test is performed first on one side and then on the other in, order to unmask it.

- Place one hand between the patient's lumbar spine and the examination couch with the patient lying supine.
- Ask the patient to bend each knee in turn upto the chest and pull it firmly against the abdomen. Normally, as the lumbar lordosis is obliterated, the examining hand is quashed between the patient's spine and the examination couch. Further flexion involves the hip joint itself, therefore, if flexion deformity is present, then as the unaffected hip is flexed with the thigh against the chest, the affected hip does not allow full leg extension, hence, the leg on that side gets flexed (Fig. 17.49A and B).



Figs 17.49A and B: Thoma's test for flexion deformity
A. Hip flexion and flattening of lumbar lordosis.
B. In flexion deformity of the hip, the affected leg gets flexed(↑)

Extension. Try to stabilise the pelvis with one hand while the patient is lying in a lateral position. Attempt to extend the hip backwards by the other hand.

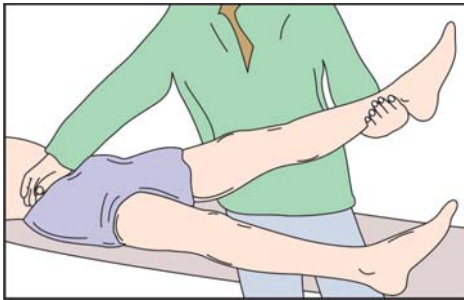
Abduction (Fig. 17.50A). Stabilise the pelvis by grasping the opposite iliac crest with one hand. With the other hand grasp the ankle and abduct the extended leg (variable minimum 45°) until you feel the iliac spine move. This movement marks the limit of hip abduction.

Restricted hip abduction is common in osteoarthritis.

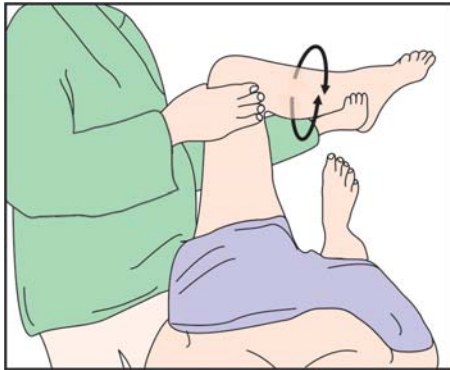
Adduction (Fig. 17.50A). With the patient supine, stabilise the pelvis, hold one ankle and move the leg medially across the body and over the opposite extremity.

Rotation (Fig. 17.50B). Flex the leg to 90° at hip and knee, stabilise the thigh with one hand, hold the ankle with the other, and swing the lower leg-medially for external rotation at the hip and laterally for internal rotation.

Rotation movements are restricted in hip arthritis.



A: Testing the abduction and adduction of hip



B: External (medial) and internal (lateral) rotation of the hip

Figs 17.50A and B: Movements of the hip joint

Analysis of lower back pain by fabere (Patrick's test) (Fig. 17.51)

Method

For the FABERE (flexion, abduction, external rotation) test, have the patient lie supine. Passively flex, abduct, and externally rotate the lower extremity at the hip so



Fig. 17.51: FABERE test. Patient lies supine with passive flexion, abduction, external rotation of the lower extremity. Here the left leg is being assessed. Excellent test to assess the function of the hip thus, helps to confirm and exclude the disease of the hip

that the lateral malleolus touches the contralateral patella. Then apply downward force on the ipsilateral knee (Fig. 17.51). Repeat on the contralateral side for control.

If there is pain in the lateral lumbar area with radiation into the leg: *radicular low back pain*

If pain in the midline back over a specific site:

- *Compression fracture*

If pain in the SI joint: *ankylosing spondylitis, ipsilateral*

If pain in the affected hip: *hip degenerative joint disease*

If no exacerbation of pain: *normal or another aetiology.*

The knee

The knee joint is the largest joint in the body. It is formed between three bones; the *femur*, the *tibia* and the *patella* (knee cap) with three articular surfaces. The joint is most vulnerable to injury because of no inherent stability of the joint combined with lever action of the femur on tibia and lack of protection from fat or muscle.

Important landmarks of knee

- Medial and lateral epicondyles are bony prominences on the medial and lateral aspects of the joint situated on the top of medial and lateral border of the tibia.
- A third bony-prominence is tibial tuberosity situated at the anterior border of the tibia just below the joint line. The two condyles and tibial tuberosity are equidistant from each other and form two arms of an isosceles triangle.
- The patella rests on the anterior articulating surface of the femur midway between two epicondyles. It is covered by the tendon of quadriceps muscle which is inserted on tibial tuberosity.



Fig. 17.52: Genu valgus or valgum. Patient standing, tibial axis pointing lateral relative to the femoral axis. This is particularly evident in patient's left leg

Muscles. Two powerful muscle groups move and support the knee. The quadriceps covers the anterior, medial and lateral aspects of the thigh and extends the knee; while the hamstrings situated on the posterior aspect of thigh flex it.

The joint is supported by a network of ligaments; a pair of *collateral ligaments* (medial and lateral), a pair of *cruciate ligaments* (anterior and posterior) and a pair of *menisci* (medial and lateral). The menisci are crescent-shaped fibrocartilaginous discs which provides a cup—like surface, thus, cushion the action of femur on the tibia.

The two important bursae are; *prepatellar bursa* lying between the patella and the skin and *semimembranosus bursa* that communicates with the joint cavity, lies on the posterior and medial surfaces of the knee.

Examination of the knee and lower leg

Inspection

- Observe the gait for a smooth, rhythmic movements as the patient enters the room. The knee should be extended at heel strike and flexed at all other stages of swing and stance.

Stumbling or pushing the knee into extension with the hand during heel strike suggests quadriceps weakness.

- With the patient standing, note the presence of *bow legs* (*genu varum*) and *knock-knees* (*genu valgum* Fig. 17.52).
- With the patient supine, inspect the limb alignment and note any *deformity*, *bony contour*, *loss of muscle bulk*, *erythema* or *swelling*.

A large effusion is seen as 'horse-shoe' swelling just above the patella.

A synovial swelling in popliteal fossa indicates Baker's cyst.

- Look for *muscle wasting*.

The quadriceps especially its medial part near the knee, rapidly wastes in disease of the knee joint.

- Check the apparent height of the patella and watch if it deviates to one side in flexion or extension of knee.

Palpation

- With the knee flexed, palpate the joint line to elicit *tenderness*.
- Palpate the *ligaments*, *tendons* and *borders of menisci* for any *tenderness*.

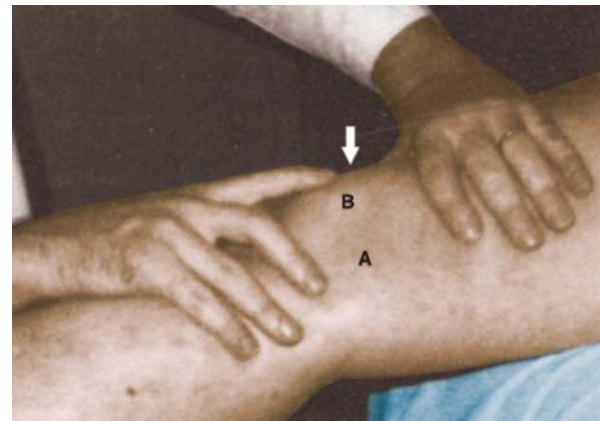


Fig. 17.53: Examination for knee effusion. Leg at knee in extension and parallel to floor. A. Site of potential bulge of an effusion — posterior to patella, over joint line, B. Application of pressure on patella to attempt ballotement

Tenderness over the tendon or inability to extend the leg suggest quadriceps (patellar) tendon tear.

- If quadriceps wasting is suspected, record and compare the muscle girth at a selected level above the patella (say 10 cm) in both thighs.

The patellar tap test for a large effusion (Fig. 17.53)

- With knee extended, apply pressure with the hand to empty any fluid within suprapatellar pouch into the retropatellar space. If there is large amount of fluid, this will distend the joint and will lift the patella off the underlying femoral condyle.
- With the finger of the opposite hand, press down on the patella and fluctuation may be noticed. If this is performed with more brisk downward pressure on the patella, a tapping sensation may be felt as the patella hits the femur. In tense effusion, the patellar tap will be absent.

Bulge sign (the massage test Fig. 17.54) for a small effusion

- With the knee extended, place the left hand above the knee and apply pressure on the suprapatellar pouch displacing or "milking" fluid downward. Stroke downward on the medial aspect of the knee and apply pressure to force fluid into the lateral area. Tap the knee on the lateral margin of the patella with right hand for any *fluid wave* or *bulge*.

A fluid wave or bulge on the medial side between the patella and the femur is considered as positive sign and indicates a small effusion.

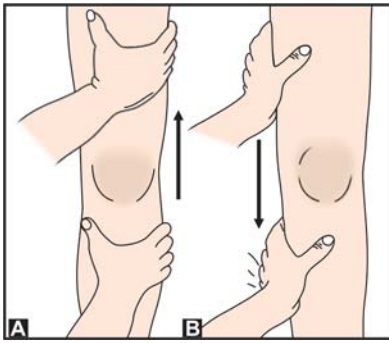


Fig. 17.54: Massage test (bulge sign) for a small effusion

- A. Massage (milk) any fluid away from the medial side of the knee
- B. Apply firm downward pressure on the lateral side of the knee and observe for the bulge or fluid displacement

Movements of the knee joint

The principal movements of the knee are;

1. *Flexion and Extension* (Fig. 17.55)

Ask the patient to flex and extend the knee while sitting.

Or

Knee flexion and extension can also be assessed by asking the patient to squat and stand up-to provide support if needed to maintain balance.

2. *Rotation*. To check internal and external rotation, ask the patient to rotate the foot medially and laterally.

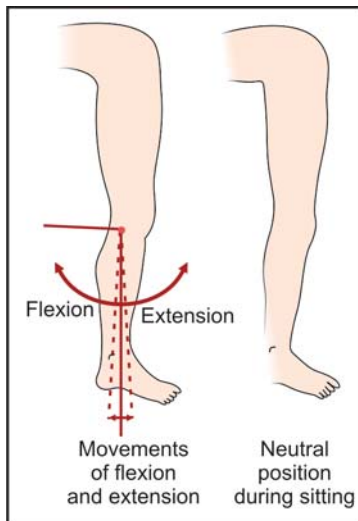


Fig. 17.55: Movements of the knee joint. The movements are tested against gravity and against resistance

Testing for joint stability (see the Table 17.10)

The ligaments stabilise and the menisci maintain the stability of the knee joint hence, any injury to these

structure destabilise the joint. The tests and their method of elicitation are given in the Table 17.10 along with Fig. 17.56.

- Palpate the *gastrocnemius* and *soleus* muscles on the posterior surface of the lower leg. Their common tendon, the achilles, is palpable from about the lower third of the calf to its insertion on the calcaneus.

Tenderness and swelling occurs in ruptured Achilles tendon.

Tenderness, thickening of the tendon above the calcaneus with protuberant posterolateral bony process of calcaneus occurs in achilles tendinitis.

Tenderness of achilles tendon at its insertion on calcaneus (enthesopathy) is common in ankylosing spondylitis and Reiter's syndrome.

- To test the integrity of the *achilles tendon*, ask the patient to kneel on a chair. Squeeze the calf and watch for plantar flexion at the ankle (Fig. 17.57).

Absence of plantar-flexion is a positive test, indicates rupture of Achilles tendon. Patients on steroid therapy are prone to this rupture.

The ankle and the foot

The total weight of the body is transmitted through the ankle to the foot. Despite thick padding along the toes, sole, and heel and stabilising ligaments at the ankles, the ankle and the foot are frequent sites of sprain and bony injury.

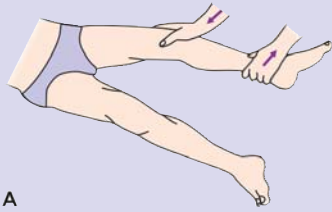
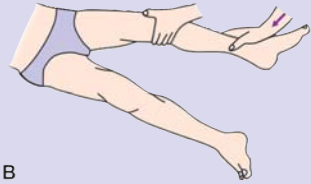

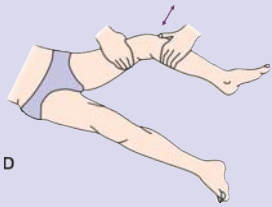
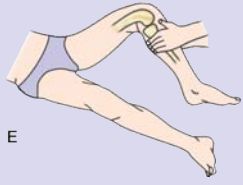
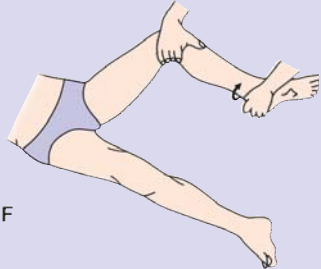
The ankle is a hinge joint formed by the *tibia*, the *fibula* and the *talus*. The three bony landmarks at the ankle are; the medial malleolus at the distal end of the tibia, the *lateral malleolus* at the distal end of the fibula and *calcaneus* – the heel is lodged under the talus. An imaginary line, the longitudinal arch spans the foot, extending from the calcaneus along the tarsal bones of the midfoot. The heads of the metatarsals are palpable in the ball of the foot.

Muscles and additional structures

Movements at the ankle joint are; *dorsiflexion* being carried out by anterior tibialis muscle and toe extensors situated anteriorly and the *plantar flexion* being carried out by the *gastrocnemius*, the posterior tibial muscle and the toe-flexors situated posteriorly. The strong Achilles tendon inserts on the heel posteriorly.

The *deltoid ligament* fans out from the inferior surface of the medial malleolus to the talus and proximal tarsal bones, protects against stress from eversion (ankle bows inward).

Table 17.10: Knee joint stability test

Structure	Figure 17.56	Method	Comment
Medial collateral ligament (MCL)	 A	<i>Abduction stress test.</i> With the patient lying supine and the knee slightly flexed, move the thigh about 30° laterally to one side of the table. Place one hand against the lateral knee to stabilize the femur and the other hand around the medial malleolus. Push medially the knee and pull laterally at the ankle to open the knee joint on the medial side (<i>valgus stress</i>).	Pain or a gap in the medial joint line suggests ligamentous laxity and a partial tear of the <i>medial collateral ligament</i> . Most injuries occur on the medial side.
Lateral collateral ligament (LCL)	 B	<i>Adduction stress test.</i> Now, with the thigh and knee in the same position, change the position of your hands; place one hand against the medial surface of the knee and the other around the lateral ankle. Push medially at the knee and pull laterally at the ankle to open the knee joint on the lateral side (<i>varus stress</i>).	Pain or a gap in the lateral joint line points to the ligaments laxity and partial tear of the <i>lateral collateral ligament</i> .
Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL)	 C	<i>Anterior drawer sign.</i> With the patient supine, both hips and knees flexed to 90° and feet flat on the table, cup your hands around the knee with the thumbs on the medial and lateral joint line and the fingers on the medial and lateral insertions of the hamstrings. Draw the tibia forward and observe if it slides forward (like a drawer) from under the femur. Compare the degree of forward movement with that of the opposite knee.	A few degrees of forward movement are normal if equally present on both the sides. A forward jerk showing the contours of the upper tibia is a <i>positive anterior drawer sign</i> and suggests a tear of the ACL.
	 D	<i>Lachman test.</i> Place the knee in 15° of flexion and external rotation. Grasp the distal femur with one hand and the upper tibia with the other. With the thumb of the tibial hand on the joint line, simultaneously move the tibia forward and the femur backward. Estimate the degree of forward excursion.	Significant forward excursion points to an ACL tear.
Posterior cruciate ligament (PCL)	 E	<i>Posterior drawer sign.</i> Position the patient and place your hands in the positions described for the anterior drawer test. Push the tibia posteriorly and observe the degree of backward movement in the femur.	A backward jerk with positive contour of upper tibia is a positive sign of PCL tear which is rare.
Medial meniscus and lateral meniscus	 F	<i>Mc Murray test.</i> If a click is felt or heard at the joint line during flexion and extension of the knee, or if tenderness is noted along the joint line, further assess the meniscus for a posterior tear. With the patient supine, grasp the heel and flex the knee. Cup your other hand over the knee joint with fingers and thumb along the medial and lateral joint line. From the heel, rotate the lower leg internally and externally. Now push on the lateral side to apply a valgus stress on the medial side of the joint. At the same time, rotate the leg externally and slowly extend it.	A click along the medial joint with valgus stress, external rotation, and leg extension suggests a probable tear of the posterior portion of the medial meniscus.

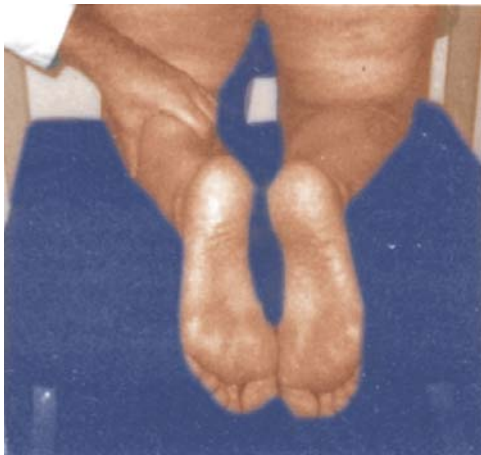


Fig. 17.57: Thompson's test. Squeeze the gastrocnemius muscle to assess the integrity of the Achilles tendon. Here foot is plantarflexed with the test and thus is normal



Fig. 17.58: To elicit tenderness at ankle joint in arthritis

Examination of the ankle and foot

Inspection

Inspect all surfaces of the ankles and feet, noting any *deformities*, *nodules* or *swellings* and any *calluses* or *corns*. Note the conditions of the nails and skin, and the presence of *callosities* or *swelling*.

Palpation

- With your thumbs, palpate the anterior aspect of each ankle joint, noting any *swelling* or *tenderness* (Fig. 17.58).
- Feel the Achilles tendon for *nodules* and *tenderness*.
- Palpate the heel especially the posterior and inferior calcaneus, and the plantar fascia for *tenderness*.
- Palpate the metatarsophalangeal joints for tenderness. Compress the forefoot between the thumb and fingers

(Fig. 17.59). Exert pressure just proximal to the heads of the 1st and 5th metatarsals. Tenderness on metatarsals is an early sign of rheumatoid arthritis. Pain and tenderness of first metatarsophalangeal joint is seen in acute gouty arthritis:

- Palpate the heads of 5 metatarsals and the grooves between them with your thumb and index finger for tenderness (Fig. 17.60). Place your thumb on dorsum of the foot and your index finger on the plantar surface. The cause of pain and tenderness in the heel and foot are given in the Box 17.16. The abnormalities of heel and toe are given in the Table 17.11 and Figure 17.61.



Fig. 17.59: Transverse arch squeeze test. to elicit the tenderness on metatarsophalangeal joint. Examiner squeezes the forefoot to accentuate the transverse arch. Pain from metatarsalgia or Morton's neuroma will increase on the plantar and dorsal aspects, respectively

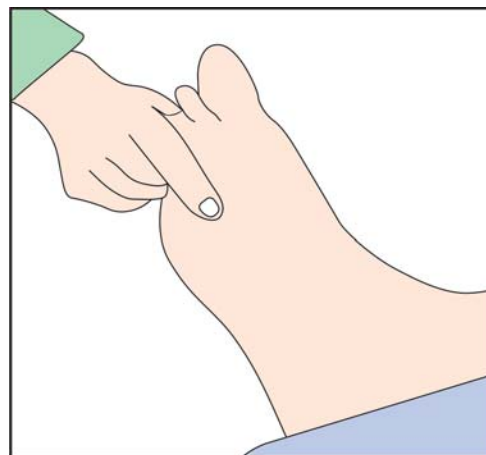





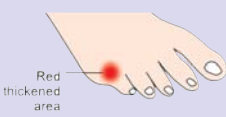




Fig. 17.60: To elicit tenderness on metatarsals. Metatarsalgia occurs in trauma, arthritis and vascular insufficiency

Table 17.11: Abnormalities of feet and toes

Deformity	Figure 17.61
Acute gouty arthritis It is characterised by a very painful, tender, hot dusky swelling involving metatarsophalangeal joint especially of the big toe (see Fig. 17.20).	
Hallux valgus The great toe is abnormally abducted.	
Flat foot When the patient stands, the longitudinal arch flattens so that the sole touches the floor.	
Hammer toe It is characterised by hyperextension at metatarsophalangeal joint with flexion at the proximal interphalangeal joint	
Mallet toe Flexion at the terminal interphalangeal joint	
Claw toe An abnormal curvature due to fixed flexion of all toes at interphalangeal joint	
Corn A painful conical swelling due to thickening of the skin occurring over bony prominences resulting from recurrent pressure on normally thin skin. It occurs in a region where the skin is normally thick such as sole. It is painless.	
Plantar wart A swelling due to thickened skin of the sole with characteristic small dark spots that give a stippled appearance to a wart	
Neuropathic ulcer In neuropathy (especially diabetic), the loss of sensation results in formation of an ulcer at pressure points called <i>neuropathic ulcer</i> . They are deep, infected, indolent and painless. Callus formation about the ulcer is diagnostically helpful.	

Box 17.16: CAUSES OF PAIN / TENDERNESS IN THE HEEL AND FOOT

The heel and hind foot	The forefoot
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plantar fasciitis Calcaneus fracture, posterior bony prominence (pump heel) Degenerative arthritis or gouty arthritis Tenosynovitis – Achilles tendonitis or partial tear from trauma Retrocalcaneal bursitis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stress fracture of neck of second metatarsal Synovitis involving MTP joints Plantar nerve – Morton's neuroma Clawing or hammer toe deformity due to soft tissue contractures

Testing of movements of ankle

The movements that occur at the ankle include flexion and extension at the ankle joint and inversion and eversion of the foot at subtalar and transverse talar joints.

Dorsiflexion and plantar flexion (Fig. 17.62). Ask the patient to move the foot upwards (dorsiflexion) and downwards (plantar flexion) against gravity and resistance.

Inversion and eversion. Stabilise the ankle with one hand, grasp the heel with the other, and invert and evert the foot (Fig. 17.63). These movements occur at tibiotarsal joints.

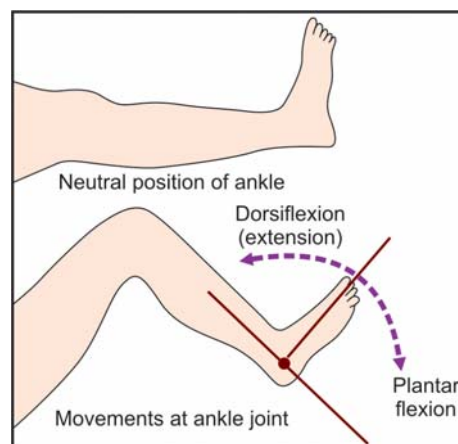


Fig. 17.62: Movements at the ankle joint. These movements are tested against gravity and against resistance

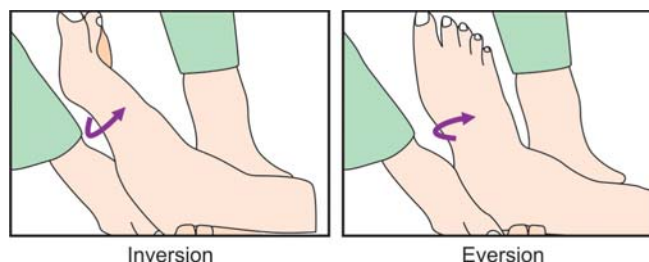


Fig. 17.63: Movements at tibiotarsal joint

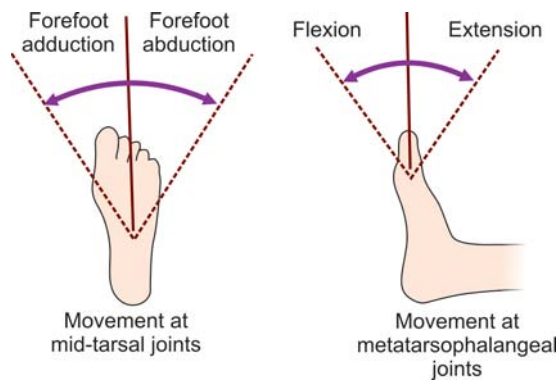


Fig. 17.64: Movements at metatarsal and metatarsophalangeal joints

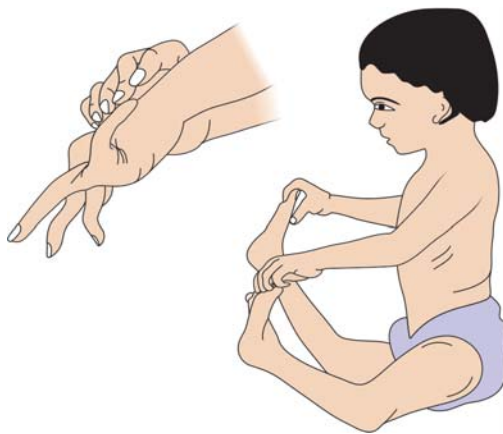


Fig. 17.65: Test for hyperextensibility of the digits and joints in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome

Metatarsophalangeal and interphalangeal flexion and extension (see the illustration Fig. 17.64).

Hyperextensibility of joints (Fig. 17.65)

It occurs in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. The method of hyperextensibility is demonstrated in Fig. 17.65.

Investigations

Investigations are often unnecessary in many patients with rheumatic conditions as diagnosis is easily made on the basis of history and clinical examination, for example tennis elbow. There are no diagnostic tests in osteoarthritis and tests are usually and only required either to know the extent or severity of the disease or to exclude some other conditions when there is lack of response to therapeutic agents. Blood batteries of diagnostic tests and radiological procedures that can be done are given in the Box 17.17.

Box 17.17: DIAGNOSTIC TESTS IN SKELETOMUSCULAR DISORDERS

Useful tests

- ESR/CRP. Rheumatoid factor (RF)
- Antinuclear antibodies (ANA)
- Serum uric acid
- Synovial fluid examination
- X-rays

Occasionally useful tests

- WBC count
- HLA-B₂₇
- Serum alkaline phosphatase
- ASO titre – in rheumatic fever
- Protein electrophoresis, immunoglobulins, urinalysis for Bence-Jones protein, bone marrow for multiple myeloma
- Serum complement
- ANCA
- Anticardiolipin antibodies
- Arthroscopy and if necessary synovial biopsy
- Arthrogram
- Bone scan/MRI scan

Abbrev ANCA = Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies

ESR = Erythrocyte sedimentation rate

CRP = C-reactive protein

ASO = Antistreptolysin

MRI = Magnetic resonance imaging

Tests for rheumatoid factor

Rheumatoid factors are IgM class autoantibodies directed against Fc portion of IgG. They are detected in serum in dilution of 1:20 or 1:40, more than this titre is considered as abnormal. They are detected by agglutination of either large particles (the *latex test*) or sheep red cells (the *Rose-Waaler*) test. The latex test is quicker and easier to perform; it is more sensitive, and therefore more often positive, but is less specific than sheep red cells test. The rheumatoid factor is positive in 70-75% cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

Antinuclear antibodies (ANA)

Antinuclear antibodies (ANA) in the serum are detected using immunofluorescent staining of the nuclei of a tissue such as rat liver or human cells in tissue culture. A low titre of less than 1:40 is weakly positive and is of little significance. Conditions in which antinuclear antibodies are found in higher titres are given in the Box 17.18.

Box 17.18: CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ANA	
Common	Uncommon
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE 95%) Systemic sclerosis (80%) Sjogren's syndrome (60%) Polymyositis/dermatomyositis (30%) Still's disease (30%) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Autoimmune chronic active hepatitis Primary biliary cirrhosis Infective endocarditis Normal elderly people

Antibodies to other nuclear antigens

A variety of antinuclear antibodies have been described with particular disease associations that are depicted in Table 17.12. It seems likely that pattern of the disease is determined by the nature of autoantibodies produced.

Table 17.12: Antinuclear antibodies and associated conditions

Antibody	Clinical association
1. Double stranded DNA (dsDNA)	SLE
2. Extractable nuclear antigen (ENA); ribonucleoprotein	Mixed connective tissue disease and SLE
3. Ro (SSA)*	SLE and Primary Sjögren's syndrome
4. La*	Primary Sjögren's syndrome
5. S _m *	SLE
6. Nucleolus	Systemic sclerosis
7. Sci-70*	Systemic sclerosis
8. Centromere	CREST syndrome
9. Jo-I*	Polymyositis
10. Anticardiolipin	SLE and antiphospholipid syndrome

* Fractions of nuclear material

1. **Antibodies against double stranded DNA (dsDNA).** These antibodies can be detected using a radioimmunoassay measuring percentage antibody binding of added labelled dsDNA (*Farr test*). Antibodies are found in about 50% cases of SLE but seldom in any other conditions. They are, therefore, much more specific test than antinuclear antibody. They are also associated with more severe disease and renal involvement.
2. **Antibodies against extractable nuclear antigen (ENA).** These are IgG class antibodies against soluble nuclear antigen, characteristically seen in mixed connective tissue disease, but are also found in patients with SLE.

3. **Anticardiolipin antibodies.** They are found in antiphospholipid syndrome, characterised by arterial and venous thrombosis, recurrent abortions, CNS manifestations (chorea, migraine and epilepsy), accelerated atherosclerosis and cutaneous manifestations.

4. **Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA).** These are detected by immunofluorescence and by enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) in the serum and are of two types.

(a) **cANCA (cytoplasmic staining)** is directed against serine proteinase C.

(b) **pANCA (perinuclear staining)** is mainly directed against myeloperoxidase.

The cANCA is seen in Wegener's granulomatosis with specificity of about 90%. It is found in 50% of early cases and about 100% of cases with full blown systemic disease. It disappears with treatment and rising titres may predict relapse, hence, a good marker to determine the progress of the disease. It is occasionally seen in other types of vasculitis.

The pANCA antibodies is much less specific and is found in;

- Vasculitis
- Glomerulonephritis
- Rheumatoid arthritis

Serum Uric Acid

Raised serum uric acid indicates gout but is not diagnostic of it. A low level of uric acid excludes gout. In known cases of gout, monitoring of uric acid is helpful in deciding the treatment.

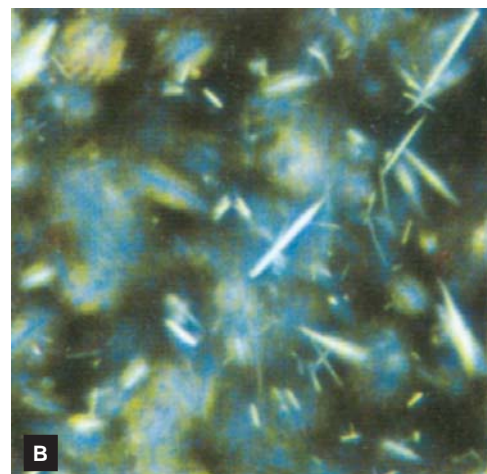
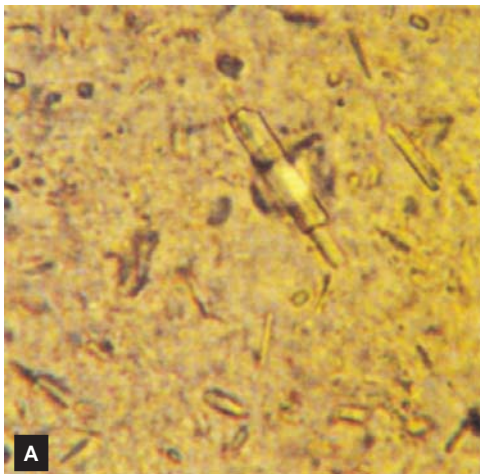
Synovial fluid examination

The synovial fluid removed by joint puncture is subjected to biochemical, microbiological and cytological examination. The characteristics of synovial fluid in normal and diseased joints are summarised in the Table 17.13.

Polarized light microscopy reveals the presence of negatively birefringent crystals in gout (Fig. 17.66A). In pyrophosphate arthropathy, crystals of calcium pyrophosphate which are weakly positive birefringent are seen (Fig. 17.66B). The electron microscopy is used to detect crystals of hydroxyapatite, because the crystals being too small are not seen in polarised light microscopy. Gram stain is used to identify the organism in septic arthritis, but fluid should be sent for culture.

Table 17.13: Synovial fluid changes in common joint disorders

Condition	Gross appearance	WBCs ($\times 10^5$ /litre)	Crystals	Culture
Normal	Clear viscous fluid	<200 mononuclear	None	Sterile
Osteoarthritis	Increased volume, viscosity retained	3000 mononuclear	5% have pyrophosphate	Sterile
Rheumatoid arthritis	Sometimes turbid, yellow or green in colour, viscosity lost	30,000 neutrophils	None	Sterile
Gout	Clear, low viscosity	10,000 neutrophils	Needle shaped negatively birefringent	Sterile
Septic arthritis	Turbid, low viscosity	50,000-100,000 neutrophils	None	Positive
Pyrophosphate arthropathy	Clear, low viscosity	10,000 neutrophils	Brick-shaped positively birefringent	Sterile



Figs 17.66A and B: Synovial fluid examination by polarised light microscopy.
 A. Crystals of calcium pyrophosphate, which tend to be rather brick-shaped.
 B. Needle-shaped crystals of uric acid

Radiology and imaging techniques

X-rays of joints has been a valuable tool in diagnosis and staging of articular disorders. However, in most inflammatory disorders, early radiography (X-rays) is rarely helpful in establishing the diagnosis and may only reveal soft tissue swelling or juxta-articular demineralisation. As the disease progresses, calcification (of soft tissue, cartilage, or bone), joint space narrowing, erosion, bony ankylosis, new bone formation (sclerosis, osteophytes formation or periostitis) or subchondral cysts may develop and suggest specific clinical entities.

Ultrasonography. It is inexpensive, noninvasive, easily performed technique used in the detection of soft tissue abnormalities, synovial (Baker's) cysts, rotator cuff tears and various tendon injuries.

Radioisotope bone scan. It is useful in demonstrating malignant deposits and evaluation of Paget's disease. Increased uptake also occurs in osteoarthritic joints and also in inflammatory arthropathies, but these abnormalities can easily be distinguished from malignant disease.

CT Scan. It is useful to detect herniated intervertebral disc, spinal stenosis, spinal trauma and sacroilitis.

MRI Scan. MRI scanning is useful for the detection of mechanical problems in joints, for example, a torn meniscus or ruptured cruciate ligament in the knee or rotator cuff tear in the shoulder. It is useful to detect avascular necrosis for example in the hip joint and is replacing myelography for detection of spinal diseases.

Arthrogram. It can also be used to visualise the meniscus or to determine knee-joint structure.

Bone density. Bone density i.e. thickness of cortex can be measured by densimeter in diseases associated with osteoporosis.

Other ancillary investigations

WBC count. It is useful in infections and leukaemia presenting with arthritis.

Histocompatibility Antigen HLA-B₂₇ is found in 96% cases with ankylosing spondylitis and 5% of normal people. In addition, about 60% of patients with Reiter's disease are B₂₇ positive.

18

The Blood

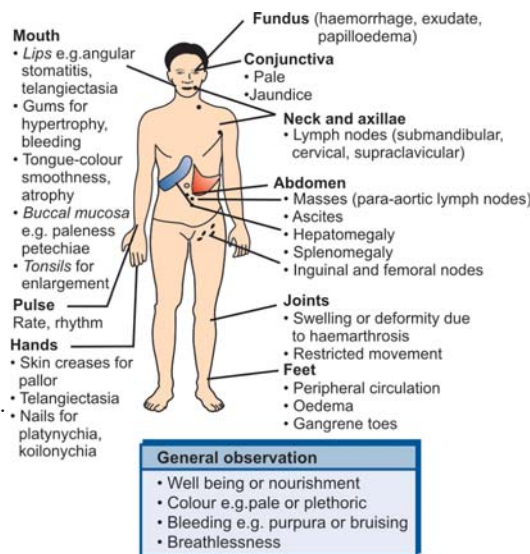
HISTORY

Symptoms and signs

- Anaemia
- Polycythaemia
- Bleeding
- Thrombosis

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- *General observation*
- *The face, hair, skin*
- *The eyes including ocular fundi*
- *The mouth, tongue, the buccal mucosa*
- *The neck i.e. thyroid, JVP*
- *lymph nodes*
- *The axillae for lymph nodes*
- *Hands and feet*
- *Vital e.g. pulse, temperature, B.P. and respiration*



FORMAT FOR CLINICAL EXAMINATION IN BLOOD DISORDERS

SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

Abdomen (Read Chapter 13)

Inspection

Palpation for liver and spleen or abdominal lymph nodes or any other mass or ascites

Percussion

Auscultation for bruits, hum or rub

CVS

Inspection

Palpation

Percussion

Auscultation for abnormal sound and murmurs

Respiratory system

Auscultation for crackles or wheezes or any other abnormality

CNS

- Higher mental functions
- Cranial nerves
- Motor and sensory system

Joints (for evidence of bleeding)

Diagnosis

Differential diagnosis

Laboratory investigations

- Peripheral blood examination
- Bone marrow
- Coagulation profile
- Other specific tests

THE BLOOD

Blood diseases cover a wide spectrum of illnesses ranging from anaemias, the most common disorders affecting mankind to other relatively uncommon disorders encountered in clinical practice i.e. leukaemias and coagulation defect. Haematological change may occur as a consequence of disease affecting any system and measurement of haematological parameters is an important part of routine clinical assessment.

Clinical manifestations

- Anaemia
- Polycythaemia
- Leucopenia, leucocytosis, leukaemia
- Myelomatosis
- Bleeding
- Thrombosis

Clinical examination

It includes

- History

- General physical examination
- Systemic examination

Anaemia

It is a laboratory diagnosis and is said to be present if haemoglobin level is below the normal range of age and sex of the individual. A haemoglobin level of 12 g/dl is taken as anaemia in males and less than 11 g/dl in females. Normally adult males have higher haemoglobin level (about 2 g/dl) than the females. The symptoms and signs depend on the speed of onset, severity of anaemia and age of the patient. Rapid onset of anaemia will give rise to severe symptoms than slow onset. The younger patients tolerate anaemia better than old (Fig. 18.1A). The patients with cardiovascular disease will have symptoms of anaemia at higher haemoglobin levels than those with normal cardiorespiratory function. Patient with severe anaemia (Hb < 4 g%) may pose an emergency requiring blood transfusion (Fig. 18.1B). The symptoms and signs of chronic severe anaemia are given in the Box 18.1.

Box 18.1: SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS OF ANAEMIA	
Symptoms	Signs
1. General <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lassitude, fatigue 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pallor of skin, mucous membrane, conjunctivae and creases of the palm • Tachycardia and collapsing pulse • Raised JVP • Flow/haemic murmurs e.g. midsystolic across the aortic and pulmonary valves • Cardiomegaly and congestive heart failure in chronic severe anaemia • Ankle oedema
2. CVS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exertional dyspnoea or dyspnoea at rest • Palpitation • Throbbing in head and ears • Precipitation of angina, intermittent claudication and vascular insufficiency 	
3. CNS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Headache, dizziness, vertigo • Insomnia • Numbness and tingling of hands and feet 	
4. Genitourinary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amenorrhoea/menorrhagia, loss of libido 	
5. GI tract <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anorexia, nausea, flatulence • Weight loss 	



Figs 18.1A and B: A: Severe anaemia in postpartum female. B: A patient of severe anaemia (Hb < 4.0 g) receiving emergency blood transfusion

History

- Iron deficiency anaemia is the most common type of anaemia worldwide. A thorough gastrointestinal history (anorexia, diarrhoea, worm infestation, haematemesis, melena, piles) must be recorded. Menorrhagia is a common cause of anaemia in females still menstruating, hence, a woman must be asked about her periods.
- **Dietary history.** A dietary history must assess the intake of iron and folate which may become deficient in comparison to needs (e.g. in pregnancy, lactation, during periods of growth). Malnutrition due to diarrhoea and malabsorption may result in anaemia.
- **Past medical history.** Ask about;
 - Previous surgery (resection of the stomach or small bowel).
 - Past history any blood loss e.g. pills, haematemesis, menorrhagia, epistaxis, PPH etc.

- Any history of chronic infection (e.g. tuberculosis) or acute infection (malaria).
- Past history of chronic illness e.g. liver or kidney disease or rheumatoid arthritis, endocrinal problem.

Family history. Haemolytic anaemias such as the haemoglobinopathies and hereditary spherocytosis may be suspected from the family history. Pernicious anaemia may also be familial.

Drug history. Drugs are known cause blood loss (aspirin, NSAIDs), haemolysis (antimalarial in G6PD deficiency) or hypoplasia or aplasia of the bone marrow, hence, drug already taken or are being taken should be recorded.

Causes of anaemia (Table 18.1)

In a case of anaemia; one has to find out its cause. No symptom and sign is diagnostic of a specific type of anaemia, but there may be specific findings related to the cause of anaemia, for example, a mass in the abdomen such as in right iliac fossa may suggest caecal carcinoma. A patient having jaundice as well as anaemia is either due to cirrhotic portal hypertension with haematemesis or haemolytic anaemia. Anaemia with neurological signs such as peripheral neuropathy, dementia or subacute combined degeneration indicate vitamin B₁₂ deficiency as its cause. Sick cell anaemia may result in pain crises and leg or digital ulceration.

Table 18.1: Aetiological classification of anaemia

1. Blood loss
• Post-haemorrhagic
• Chronic blood loss e.g. piles, haematemesis, menorrhagia
• Worm infestation e.g. hookworm
2. Deficiency of haemopoietic factors
• Iron deficiency
• Folate and Vit. B ₁₂ deficiency
• Protein deficiency e.g. diarrhoea, malabsorption
3. Hypoplasia or aplasia of marrow
• Pure red cell aplasia
• Aplastic or hypoplastic anaemia
4. Anaemia due to systemic disorders or chronic infections
• Anaemia of chronic infection e.g. tuberculosis
• Anaemia of chronic renal disease e.g. CRF
• Anaemia of chronic hepatic disease e.g. cirrhosis
• Anaemia of disseminated malignancy
• Anaemia of endocrinal disease e.g. hypothyroidism
5. Anaemia of bone marrow infiltration (dyshaematopoietic anaemia)
• Leukaemias, lymphomas, myelofibrosis or myelosclerosis
• Multiple myeloma
• Congenital sideroblastic anaemia
6. Anaemia due to haemolysis
• Intracorpuscular defect (hereditary or acquired)
• Extracorpuscular defect (acquired)

Morphological classification of anaemia. Based on the red cell size, haemoglobin content and red cell indices, anaemias are classified into:

1. **Microcytic hypochromic anaemia** (e.g. MCV, MCH, MCHC all are reduced). Examples include iron deficiency anaemia (Fig. 18.2A), sideroblastic anaemia, thalassemia (Fig. 18.3B).
2. **Macrocytic** (MCV is raised, MCH and MCHC are reduced relative to size of RBC). Examples include megaloblastic anaemia (folic acid and Vit. B₁₂ deficiency (Fig. 18.2B).
3. **Normocytic normochromic** (e.g. MCV, MCH, MCHC are normal). Examples include anaemia of blood loss, haemolytic anaemia (Fig. 18.2C), aplastic anaemia (Fig. 18.2D) etc.
4. **Dimorphic.** When two populations of red cells (microcytes as well as macrocytes) are seen on peripheral blood examination, anaemia is said to be dimorphic due to combined deficiency of iron as well as folic acid/ Vit. B₁₂.

Symptoms and signs specific to certain anaemia (see the Table 18.2)

Leucopenia and neutropenia

The leucocytes especially the neutrophils are phagocytic cells, provide strong defence against micro-organisms. The leucopenia refers to low leucocyte count. Neutropenia means neutrophils count $<1.5 \times 10^9/L$. Virtual absence of granulocytes in peripheral blood is called *agranulocytosis*. The major consequence of neutropenia is infection, which in patients with blood disorders may be severe and lead to fatal septicaemia. Fever and pneumonia are common presentations.

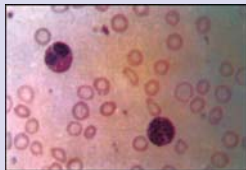
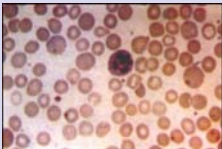
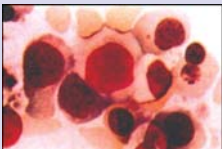
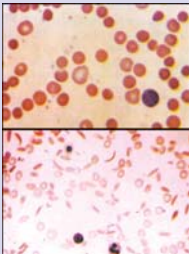
Patients with neutropenia may develop opportunistic infections with unusual organisms such as fungi and viruses, i.e. herpes zoster and herpes simplex infections.

As a general rule; neutropenia is associated with bacterial infection while *lymphopenia* is associated with virus and other exotic infections e.g. *pneumocystitis carinii* and toxoplasma.

Presenting symptoms

- Clinical manifestations may vary from asymptomatic to overwhelming infection. The risk of bacterial infection is related to degree of neutropenia, with counts $<0.5 \times 10^9/L$ conferring the highest risk.
- Fever, sore throat, mouth ulceration (Fig. 18.4), anal ulceration and skin infection are common presentation.
- If untreated, patients may become septicaemic and shocked within few hours if immediate antibiotic therapy is not given.

Table 18.2: Specific symptoms and signs of some important anaemias

Anaemia (Figs 18.2A to D)	Specific symptoms and signs	Cause (s)
Iron deficiency  <p>Fig. 18.2A: Peripheral blood film showing iron deficiency anaemia. The red blood cells are smaller than normal (microcytosis), and their central area of pallor is expanded (hypochromia) so that the cells appear to have thin rim of haemoglobin</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Glossitis with papillary atrophy (bald tongue) Angular stomatitis (cheilosis)- fissuring at the angles with sore tongue Dysphagia (Peterson-Kelly or Plummer- Vinson's syndrome) Koilonychia or platynychia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strict vegetarian diet Diarrhoea or malabsorption, gastrectomy Chronic blood loss from uterus (menorrhagia, dysfunctional uterine bleeding), GI tract (e.g. NSAIDs, bleeding peptic ulcer, piles, varices, gastritis, colitis and hookworm disease), renal (e.g. haematuria), nose (epistaxis), lungs (haemoptysis) Increased demands e.g. growing children, pregnancy, lactation
Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency   <p>Fig. 18.2B: Macrocytic anaemia with megaloblastic bone marrow. Upper peripheral blood film shows larger RBCs with poor haemoglobinisation. Lower bone marrow examination shows megaloblasts</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mild jaundice A lemon yellow tinge to skin, grey hair Red-smooth (magenta coloured) sore tongue Tinglings and paraesthesias Weight loss An abnormal gait Skin pigmentation Mental features e.g. poor memory, lack of concentration, depression, personality change and hallucinations Optic atrophy and subacute combined degeneration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inadequate dietary intake (vegetarian diet) Malabsorption (diarrhoea) Autoimmune gastritis resulting in loss of intrinsic factor Previous surgery (gastrectomy)
Folic acid Deficiency—same as above	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Same as above except neurological features 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased demand (pregnancy) Poor intake (diet lacking in green vegetables) Infection Haemolytic anaemia due to any cause Malabsorption Congenital or hereditary defect (spherocytosis, thalassemia (Fig. 18.3), G6PD deficiency) Drug induced (e.g. analgesics, antimalarial, antibiotics) Autoimmune Infections (malaria)
Haemolytic anaemia  <p>Fig. 18.2C: Haemolytic anaemia. Upper: abnormal shape of the cells (hereditary spherocytosis) and lower abnormal haemoglobin (sickle-cell-Hbs)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Symptoms and signs of anaemia Mild jaundice Dark coloured urine and stool e.g. smoky urine due to haemoglobinuria, or frank bloody or even black (black—water fever) Abnormal facies with frontal bossing (Fig. 18.3A) Skin ulceration of legs or gangrenous toes or dactylitis (sickle cell anaemia) Hepatosplenomegaly Pigmented gallstones (biliary colics) 	

Contd...

Contd...

Hypoplastic or aplastic

Fig. 18.2D: Hypoplastic anaemia. Bone marrow examination reveals just fat and fibrosis with no cellular element

- Neutropenia results in infections, necrotic mouth ulcerations, throat ulcers
- Thrombocytopenia results in bleeding in skin, mucous membrane, epistaxis, haematuria or intracranial bleed
- Symptoms and signs of anaemia
- Irradiation
- Drugs
- Chemicals
- Infection
- Autoimmune disease

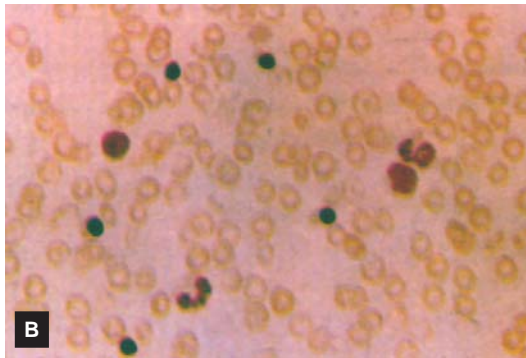


Fig. 18.3A and B: Thalassemia. A patient with abnormal face and frontal bossing B. Peripheral blood film showing microcytic hypochromic picture

Causes of neutropenia.

They have already been described in Chapter 2.

Leucocytosis and leukaemoid reaction

An increase in total leucocyte count more than 11,000/dl is called *leucocytosis*. This is usually due to an increase in a specific type of WBC i.e. neutrophils, basophils, eosinophils, monocytes or lymphocytes. Sometime an



Fig. 18.4: Neutropenia. Note the mouth ulceration in a patient with neutropenia

increase in one type of leucocyte may not cause rise in total leucocyte count.

Neutrophilia or neutrophilic leucocytosis is a normal response to infection or injury and is often associated with symptoms of the disorder which have led to it. The causes of neutrophilic leucocytosis have already been described in Chapter 2.

Symptoms and signs: The symptoms and signs depend on the cause, for example, a patient with neutrophilic leucocytosis with pneumonia will have fever, shaking chills, cough, sputum, haemoptysis etc.; while a patient with infectious mononucleosis will have fever, malaise, sore throat, lymphadenopathy and lymphocytosis.

Leukaemoid reaction: Leucocytosis with cell count of 10,000 to 25,000/ml occurs in response to infection and acute inflammation and results from release of mature WBCs. Persistent neutrophilia or leucocytosis with cell count of " 30,000 to 50,000/ μ l is called *leukaemoid reaction*. This term is used to distinguish this degree of

Table 18.3: Differentiation between acute and chronic leukaemias

Feature	Acute leukaemia	Chronic leukaemia
Onset	Acute	Subacute or chronic
Age	Involves young age	Middle or old age
Blood count	Varies in thousands from 50,000 onwards	Varies in lacs from one lac onwards
Immature cells	Mostly blast cells (>25%), involves pleuropotential stem cells (Fig. 18.5)	Mostly mature differentiated cells (myelocytic, metamyelocytic promyelocytic) are involved (Fig. 18.6)
Course	Rapid growth rate	Low growth rate
Clinical presentation	Fever, bleeding, lymphadenopathy or splenomegaly and acute infections. Bone pain and tenderness, gum hypertrophy and DIC also occur.	Massive splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, tissue infiltration, symptoms and signs of anaemia are its presentation. Bone tenderness may or may not be present
Treatment and prognosis	Poor response to treatment, hence, prognosis is few months to 2 years	Response to treatment is good, prognosis is better than acute; varies from few years to many years

leucocytosis from leukaemia. The differentiation between the two is given in the Box 18.2.

Box 18.2: DIFFERENTIATION BETWEEN LEUKAEMOID REACTION AND LEUKAEMIA	
Leukaemoid reaction	Leukaemia
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Count is between 30,000 to 50,000 cells/μl Mostly mature cells. Immature cell may be present but are less than 25% Leucocyte alkaline phosphatase content is normal or increased 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Count is >50,000 cells/μl Immature cells are present in all forms and account >30% of all cells It is low

The causes of leukaemoid reaction are:

- Severe infection
- Tuberculosis
- Malignant infiltration of the bone marrow
- Occasionally, following a severe haemorrhage or haemolysis.

Leucoerythroblastic anaemia

Results in appearance of nucleated red cells and WBC precursors in peripheral blood. Causes include, marrow infiltration with metastatic carcinoma, myelofibrosis, osteopetrosis, myeloma, lymphoma and occasionally severe haemolytic or megaloblastic anaemia.

Leukaemias

(Read bed side medicine by Prof SN Chugh)

Leukaemias, lymphoma and myeloma are malignant disorders of myeloproliferative and lymphoproliferative system. Leukaemias are a heterogenous group of diseases characterised by malignant proliferation or

apoptosis of the blood cells resulting in infiltration of the blood, bone marrow and other tissues. If mature differentiated cells are involved, the cells will have a low growth rate and produce indolent neoplasms such as low grade lymphoma or chronic leukaemia. The differentiation between acute and chronic leukaemia are summarised in the Table 18.3.

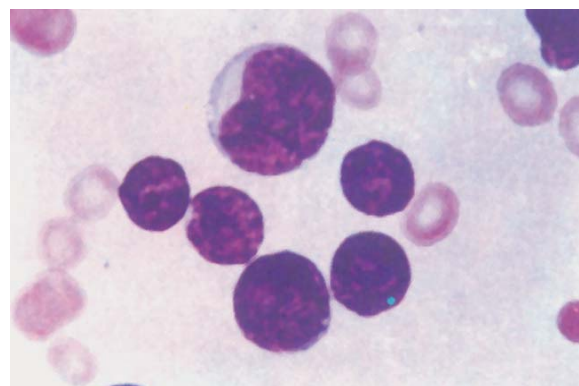


Fig. 18.5: Acute lymphocytic leukaemia

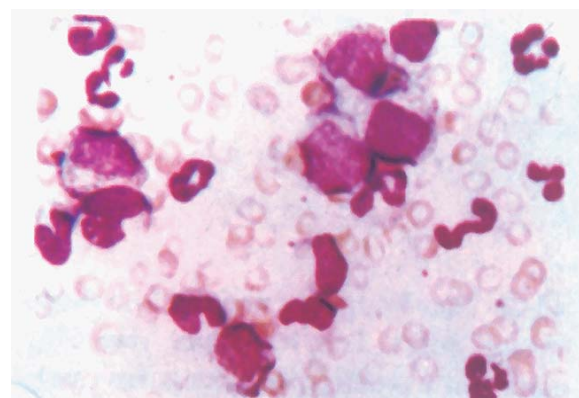


Fig. 18.6: Chronic myeloid (granulocytic) leukaemia

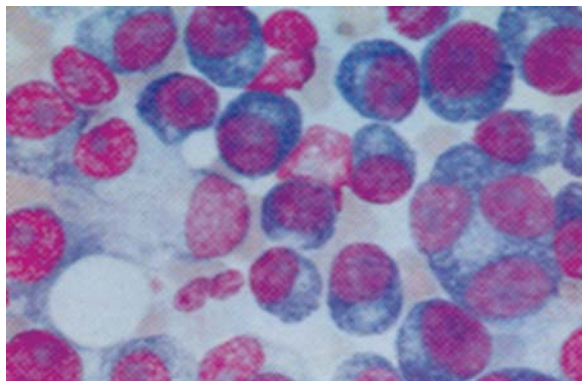


Fig. 18.7: Multiple myeloma. Bone marrow examination shows cells with characteristic morphologic features of plasma cells (round or oval cells with an eccentric nucleus composed of coarsely clumped chromatin, a dense basophilic cytoplasm and a perinuclear clear zone). Binucleate and multinucleate malignant plasma cells are also seen

Myelomatosis

Multiple myeloma represents a malignant proliferation of plasma cells derived from a single clone, is characterised by the presence of a paraprotein (an immunoglobulin) in the serum which can be demonstrated by monoclonal dark-staining band on protein electrophoresis.

In multiple myeloma, the malignant plasma cells appear in the peripheral blood in a small numbers but majority of them remain in the bone marrow (Fig.18.7). These cells elaborate cytokines which stimulate osteoclasts and result in lytic lesions due to bone resorption. The resulting lytic lesions produce bone pain, fractures and hypercalcaemia. Anaemia and pancytopenia result due to bone marrow involvement. Renal failure is common. Soft tissue infiltration is uncommon (Table 18.4).

It is a disorder of old age, may present with solitary plasmacytoma of bone or extramedullary plasmacytoma.

Polycythaemia (high haemoglobin and PCV)

A haemoglobin level greater than upper limit of the normal (adult females 16.5 g/dl, adult males 18 g/dl) may be due to an increase in the number of red blood cells (true polycythaemia) or a reduction in the plasma volume (relative or apparent polycythaemia) due to dehydration, diuretic use or alcohol consumption. True polycythaemia (*polycythaemia rubra vera*) is a myeloproliferative disorder involving the RBCs in the bone marrow. Polycythaemia may also occur secondary to increased erythropoietin production either as a consequence of chronic hypoxaemia (COPD, congenital heart disease) or because of inappropriate erythropoietin secretion e.g. lung and renal tumours etc.

A clinical history and examination will provide clues to the underlying cause. Polycythaemia in the early stages may go unnoticed due to no symptoms. Relatives and friends may be the first to notice the red complexion or plethora of polycythaemia. The patient may complain of headache, tinnitus, a feeling of fullness in the head. As the PCV is very high in polycythaemia, hence, the patients are more at risk of developing heart attack, stroke and peripheral vascular disease. In true polycythaemia, the patient, in addition to above features, have pruritus (itching) especially while taking a hot bath, gout due to high red cell turnover and hepatosplenomegaly. Due to high thrombocyte count in true polycythaemia, the patients are at an increased risk of developing thrombotic episodes or paradoxically, a bleeding tendency.

Lymphadenopathy (Read examination of neck Chapter 8)

Examination of lymph nodes at different sites and the causes of enlargement of lymph nodes have already been discussed under examination of neck. Here lymph nodes enlargement secondary to haematological disorders will be discussed. Lymphadenopathy in haematological malignancy is more often painless,

Table 18.4: Symptoms and signs of myelomatosis

Pathogenic mechanism	Effect	Symptoms and signs
1. Malignant plasma cell proliferation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bone erosion Pathological fractures Hypercalcaemia Bone marrow failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bone pain Severe local pain Thirst, lethargy, polyuria, weakness, depression, confusion Tiredness, weakness
2. Excessive production of paraprotein	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Renal damage Hyperviscosity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asymptomatic until uraemia When severe, produces blurred vision, headache, vertigo, stupor and coma
3. Reduction in number of normal immunocompetent plasma cells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immunodeficiency 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Susceptibility to infection especially respiratory and urinary

generalised, and associated with hepatosplenomegaly and other manifestations of the underlying cause. Weight loss and drenching sweats which may require a change of night clothes are associated with haematological malignancies, particularly lymphoma.

The lymph nodes in lymphatic leukaemia are diffusely enlarged, firm, discrete and painless, involves the cervical, axillary and inguinal regions.

The lymph nodes in Hodgkin's disease are painless, discrete and rubbery in consistency while they are firm in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. Systemic symptoms, extranodal involvement (bone, brain or skin), compression symptoms e.g. gut obstruction, ascites, superior vena cava obstruction and spinal cord compression are common in non-Hodgkin's lymphoma.

Splenomegaly or hepatosplenomegaly (Read abdominal examination Chapter 13)

The spleen is a lymphoreticular organ, is capable of assisting the host in adapting to its hostile environment. It discharges following functions;

- Clearance of bacteria and particulates from the blood.
- The generation of immune response to certain invading pathogens.
- Reticuloendothelial activity (destruction of RBCs and other formed elements).
- Extramedullary erythropoiesis when the marrow is unable to meet the needs (e.g. myeloproliferative disorders). This is a recapitulation of the blood forming function the spleen plays during gestation. The spleen gets enlarged when its normal functions are exaggerated. The causes of enlargement of spleen have been discussed in case discussion of splenomegaly in bed side medicine by Prof. SN Chugh.

Clinical assessment

1. Symptoms pertaining to splenomegaly

- Abdominal discomfort and dragging sensation due to a mass itself.

Acute enlargement of spleen may produce pain due to stretching of its capsule.

- Back pain and abdominal bloating due to stomach compression.
- Severe abdominal colicky pain radiating to the left shoulder tip, associated with splenic rub due to splenic infarct (perisplenitis), commonly seen in myeloproliferative disorders and sickle cell anaemia.

- Rupture of the spleen, either from trauma or infiltrative disease that breaks the capsule, may result in intraperitoneal bleeding, shock and death. The rupture itself may be painless.

Examination

Normally, the spleen is not palpable. A palpable spleen is the major physical sign that warrants investigations because spleen becomes palpable when it has already enlarged two to three times than normal. It is stressed here that enlarged palpable spleen does not mean a disease because in certain tropical countries like New Guinea, the incidence of asymptomatic splenomegaly in normal population is very high.

The spleen is examined under four heads'

1. *Inspection.* Inspection may reveal a fullness in the left hypochondrium that descends on inspiration, a finding associated with massive splenomegaly (Fig. 18.8).
2. *Palpation.* The spleen can be palpated by bimanual, ballotment method and palpation from above (Middleton manoeuvre). Splenomegaly is just palpable as its tip descends during deep inspiration in right lateral position.
 - Bimanual methods of palpation is as good as other methods. This method has already been described in examination of the abdomen.
3. *Percussion* for splenic dullness (read examination of abdomen).
4. *Auscultation.* A splenic rub may be heard in the splenic area in splenic infarct leading to perisplenitis.

Other methods of splenic detection

On ultrasonography, radionuclide scan, the spleen has a maximum cephalocaudal diameter of 13 cm, the increased diameter indicates splenomegaly.



Fig. 18.8: A visible lump in left hypochondrium in a patient with chronic myeloid leukaemia

Bleeding

Bleeding usually results from a breach of the vessel wall due to specific insult (e.g. trauma, peptic ulcer) or from haemostatic failure. The haemostasis is a complex process, involves interactions between vessel wall, platelets and coagulation factors. Haemostatic failure may be *primary* (e.g. due to vessel wall abnormalities, qualitative or quantitative disorders of platelets) or *secondary* (a coagulation defect). Thus, bleeding may result from deficiency of one or more of the coagulation factors, thromboasthenia, thrombocytopenia or occasionally from excessive fibrinolysis which most often arises following therapeutic fibrinolytic therapy with streptokinase or with tissue plasminogen activator (tPA).

Certain elements of the history are particularly useful in determining whether bleeding is caused by an underlying haemostatic disorder or by a local anatomical defect. One clue is a history of bleeding following common haemostatic stresses such as dental extraction, childbirth or minor surgery. A history of recurrent bleeding following each stress suggests a haemostatic defect. It is important to consider the following points on the history:

1. Site of bleed

- Muscle or joint bleeds (haemarthrosis) indicates a coagulation defect.
- Purpura, epistaxis, prolonged bleeding from superficial cuts, GI bleed, menorrhagia suggest primary haemostatic failure due to a platelet defect, thrombocytopenia, *von Willebrand's disease*.
- Recurrent bleeding at a single site suggest a local structural abnormality (hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia i.e. Osler-Weber-Rendu disease; Fig. 18.9).
- Spontaneous bruising or following minor trauma resembling devil's pinches in an old person with normal BT, CT indicate senile purpura (Fig. 18.10).

2. **Duration of history:** It may be possible to assess whether the patient has a congenital or acquired disorder. A long history of bleeding episodes indicate a congenital disorder. Certain congenital conditions, such as haemophilia usually become obvious in early childhood but may be misdiagnosed as non-accidental injury. Milder bleeding disorders may go undetected for long time even up to old age.

3. **Precipitating factors:** Bleeding occurring spontaneously indicate a severe haemostatic defect than bleeding arising only after trauma.



Fig. 18.9: Osler-Weber-Rendu disease. Note the multiple telangiectasia as red spots due to capillary dilatation. This is also called hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia



Fig. 18.10: Senile purpura
(Note the bruising resembling devil's pinches)

4. **Surgery:** Enquiries should be made about all the operations specifically dental extraction, tonsillectomy and circumcision as these are all stressful tests of haemostatic system. Bleeding that starts immediately after surgery indicates defective platelet plug formation; whereas that comes on after several hours indicates failure of platelet plug stabilisation by fibrin due to a coagulation defect.
5. **Family history:** It is important to question the patient about previous incidents involving excessive

Table 18.5: Differentiating features between primary and secondary haemostatic defects

Feature	Defects of primary haemostasis (platelet defect Fig. 18.11)	Defects of secondary haemostasis (secondary haemostatic defect Fig. 18.13)
1. Onset of bleeding following trauma	Immediate	Delayed for hours or days
2. Site of bleeding	Superficial e.g. skin, mucous membrane, nose, GI tract and genitourinary tract	Deep e.g. joints, muscles, retroperitoneal etc.
3. Sex of the patient	More common in females	80-90% are males
4. Physical signs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Purpura- collection of blood in the skin • Patechiae- pinpoint haemorrhages into dermis (Fig. 18.12) • Ecchymosis- large subcutaneous collection of blood (Fig. 18.11) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Haematomas into muscles • Haemarthrosis (joint swollen, tender due to bleed)
5. Family history	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Autosomal dominant 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Autosomal or X-linked recessive
6. Response to treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immediate, local measures effective 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Requires sustained systemic therapy



Fig. 18.11: Thrombocytopenic purpura. Epistaxis is present. Nasal packing is visible. There is an ecchymotic patch over the left forearm (↑) and another on right upper chest (↓)



Fig. 18.12: Petechiae. Skin of the left ankle shows multiple non-palpable, nonblanching purple lesions, all < 1 cm

bleeding in childhood so as to establish pattern of inheritance. A family history of bleeding indicate both bleeding or coagulation disorder, hence, interview the relatives, if necessary. Since bleeding sometimes can be mild, lack of family history of bleeding does not exclude an inherited haemostatic disorder.



Fig. 18.13: Joint swelling (right knee) due haemarthrosis following trivial trauma in young haemophilic

- Systemic illness:** Bleeding from multiple sites that cannot be linked to trauma or surgery suggest a systemic disorder. It is particularly important to consider the possibility of hepatic, or renal failure, paraproteinaemia or a connective tissue disorder.
- Drugs:** Drugs can produce bleeding either by depressing bone marrow function with consequent thrombocytopenia or by interacting with coagulation factors (warfarin. NSAIDs inhibit platelet function).
- Occupation:** Contact with dangerous chemicals may produce thrombocytopenia.

Examination of bleeding site can differentiate platelet defect (primary haemostatic defect) from haemostatic defect (secondary haemostatic failure) as shown in the Table 18.5.

Thrombosis

Arterial and venous thrombosis may be presenting features of hypercoagulable or prethrombotic state. Swelling of one leg or both legs is common due to deep vein thrombosis (DVT). The DVT causes pain, swelling, an increase in temperature and dilatation of superficial veins. The thrombotic disorders are given in the Box 18.3.

Box 18.3: THROMBOTIC DISORDERS	
Inherited	Acquired
A. Defective inhibitors of coagulation factors Antithrombin III deficiency, Protein S and C deficiency, factor V Leiden deficiency	Diseases • SLE (lupus anticoagulant) • Malignancy • Myeloproliferative disorders • Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic purpura
B. Impaired clot lysis Dysfibrinogenaemia, plasminogen deficiency and/or tPA deficiency	• Oestrogen treatment • Hyperlipidaemia • Diabetes • Hyperviscosity • Nephrotic syndrome • CHF
C. Uncertain Homocystinuria	• Paroxysmal nocturnal haemoglobinuria • Physiologic states • Pregnancy, postpartum • Obesity, old age • Postoperative • Immobilisation

Pancytopenia

Pancytopenia refers to the combination of anaemia, leucopenia and thrombocytopenia.

Pancytopenia with hypocellular or acellular marrow:

It is due to reduced production of blood cells as a consequence of bone marrow suppression or infiltration.

Pancytopenia with hypercellular marrow: It is due to peripheral destruction or splenic sequestration of mature cells, seen in hypersplenism.

The patients with pancytopenia present with acute infections, bleeding and signs and symptoms of anaemia.

Examination of a patient with haematological disorder

The points to be examined in a patient with haematological disorder are depicted in Figure (page 456) on front page of the chapter.

1. General appearance

- *Pale looking* - anaemia
- *Plethoric facies* - polycythaemia
- *Mongoloid facies* (thalassaemia), frontal bossing, 'Hair on end' appearance
- *Emaciation* - anaemia, malnutrition, malignancy
- *Puffy face* - hypoproteinaemia

2. Conjunctivae

- *Look for pallor and jaundice.* Suffused conjunctivae are seen in polycythaemia or mediastinal compression

3. The mouth.

- (i) *Look for glossitis and angular stomatitis.*

Cracking of the skin at the corner of the mouth (angular cheilosis) is due to iron deficiency anaemia.

- (ii) *Look at the tongue and oral mucosa for any abnormality* (see the Box 18.4).

Box 18.4: ORAL MANIFESTATIONS OF HAEMATOLOGICAL DISORDERS	
Oral lesion	Disease
• <i>Gingival hypertrophy, gum bleeding, necrosis, petechiae and ulceration of oral mucosa</i>	• All types of leukaemias especially acute monocytic type (Fig. 18.14)
• <i>Multiple petechiae and ecchymosis</i>	• Thrombocytopenias due to any cause
• <i>Wide spread ulceration involving gums, buccal mucosa, tongue, pharynx, larynx, palate</i>	• Agranulocytosis, leucopenia (neutropenia Fig. 18.4)
• <i>Atrophic papillae with red smooth sore tongue</i>	• Iron deficiency combined with vit. B complex deficiency
• <i>Reddening of oral mucosa and tongue (magenta – coloured) with or without ulceration, swelling</i>	• Vitamin B complex deficiency (see Fig. 6.10)
• <i>Petechiae in oral mucosa and swollen bleeding gums</i>	• Scurvy
• <i>Bald tongue (atrophy or loss of papillae)</i>	• Pernicious anaemia, iron deficiency (see Fig. 6.9) and pellagra
• <i>Cyanosis of lips and tongue</i>	• Methaemoglobinaemia
• <i>White patches (mouth thrush)</i>	• Oral candidiasis (see Fig. 6.6). It is seen in blood disorders

- *Inspect the lips for vesicles, ulceration, cyanosis etc.*

Cold sores (vesiculation of the lips) is seen in herpes simplex infection which is associated with certain blood disorders.



Fig. 18.14: Bleeding gums in a patient with acute leukaemia

4. The skin

The skin surface may be infected, ulcerated or infiltrated by tumour (leukaemia, lymphoma) but the effect of haemorrhage is important.

- *Look at the skin and subcutaneous tissue for bleeding.*
The bleeding points are classified as follows;
 - (i) *Purpura* (Fig. 18.15A) and *petechial haemorrhages*—tiny pinpoint haemorrhages into the skin which do not blanch on compression with a glass slide.
 - (ii) *Ecchymotic patches* are larger haemorrhages than petechiae (Fig. 18.15B).
 - (iii) *Bruises* are larger areas of haemorrhages resulting as a result of confluent deposition of blood, often multicoloured in appearance as the bruise resolves.

Purpuric spots, petechial haemorrhages, ecchymotic patches and bruises indicate a bleeding disorder due to platelet dysfunction.

Thrombocytopenic purpura is prominent in dependent areas most commonly on the front of lower legs but may be seen any where on the skin and in ocular fundi. Henoch-Schonlein purpura (anaphylactoid purpura) on the other hand is distributed over the backs of the legs and the buttocks. It is due to circulating immune complexes.

Bruises often have no haematological significance but if they are large, extensive with an obvious firm haematoma beneath them, then they *may indicate a coagulation defect*.

- (iv) **Telangiectasias** (Fig. 18.16) are small dilated blood vessels which may be visible on the skin surface particularly the lips. They blanch on pressure.



Figs 18.15A to C: Idiopathic thrombocytopenia A. Visible purpura due to thrombocytopenia. Note the pin head size spots on the back of upper limbs and trunk, B. Larger purpuric spot or ecchymotic patch. There is a large nonpalpable nonblanching purple patch of haemorrhage on the skin of right shoulder, C. Palpable purpura. Skin of the lower extremities, reveals quite advanced and confluent purpuric spots in a patient with vasculitis

- (v) **Vasculitis:** It is a clinicopathological entity characterised by inflammation and damage to blood vessels of various organs including skin. Skin lesions in vasculitis may be in the form of a



Fig. 18.16: Telangiectasia A. Macules—freckles and B. Papules—telangiectasia on the skin of the right upper chest

rash (papulovesicular) or palpable purpura (Fig. 18.15C), ulcers or subcutaneous nodules.

Telangiectasia and vasculitis are not blood disorders, indicate vessel wall abnormalities but are important because sometimes they may be a source of severe haemorrhage.

- Note the colour of the skin, pigmentation and depigmentation.

- Bright red skin (*Phomme rouge*) may be seen in dermatitis, sometimes associated with lymphoma.
- Dusky pigmentation (deposition of iron and melanin) is seen in haemochromatosis and haemosiderosis.
- Dark pigmentation of the skin of the legs is seen in varicosity of veins with eczema.
- Patchy depigmentation (vitiligo) is a feature of pernicious anaemia but often has no clinical significance.

5. Ocular fundi

Fundal haemorrhages are often visible in:

- Thrombocytopenia
- Hyperviscosity syndrome due to macroglobulinaemia and promyelocytic leukaemia. Papilloedema may also be present.

6. The muscle and joints

Examine the muscles and joints for swelling and tenderness.

Bleeding into the muscles (intramuscular haematoma) or in between muscles and into the joints (haemarthrosis) indicate a coagulation disorder. The muscles and joints involved are swollen, hot and tender.

7. The lymph nodes (Read chapter 8)

The lymph nodes in a patient suspected of a lymphoreticular disorder must be examined as a whole not in isolation. Note the following points on the lymph node examination.

- Size and the group involved (location).
- Consistency (soft, firm, hard, rubbery)
- Are they discrete or matted or confluent?
- Are they mobile or fixed to the underlying or overlying structure.
- Are they tender or non-tender?

Under normal conditions in adults, the inguinal lymph nodes may be palpable, 0.5 to 2.0 cm in size, hence, large lymph nodes >2 cm in diameter are considered as abnormal. Smaller lymph nodes elsewhere may be palpable due to past infection. Therefore, new lymph nodes enlargement more than 1 cm in size anywhere except in inguinal region is considered as abnormal and needs further evaluation.

Causes, differential diagnosis and associated features in lymphadenopathy have been discussed in case discussion of lymphadenopathy in Bed-side Medicine by Prof. SN Chugh.

The method of palpation of various groups of lymph nodes has been described in examination of neck Chapter 8.

Abdominal examination

Abdomen should be examined for:

- Liver enlargement (read palpation of liver in Chapter 13).
- Spleen enlargement (Read Chapter 13).
- Para-aortic lymph node. They are difficult to palpate unless patient has thin abdomen or lymph nodes are sufficiently large.

NB: The thoracic lymph node cannot be palpated at all. Their enlargement is suspected when there are symptoms and signs of mediastinal compression. They are detected on X-ray or CT scan of chest.

The anus

The anus should be examined because it is lined by mucosa which is vulnerable to infection, ulceration and bleeding similar to oral mucosa in patients with leucopenia, pancytopenia or agranulocytosis.

Investigations for a haematological case

1. Blood count

This test is very popular and most frequently used by the physicians and is done in their side laboratory by automatic analyser. Anticoagulated blood is processed for this purpose. A variety of techniques are used to measure haemoglobin, red cells count, to estimate haematocrit and to measure red cell indices. Total and differential white cells count is also performed. An automatic analyser has the ability to provide full differential count. A platelet count is also done. It is simple but rich in providing information. The reference values for common haematological parameters in adults are given in Table 18.6.

Table 18.6: Reference range of haematological parameters

Hb g/dl	11.5-16.5 (Female)	13.0-18.0 (Male)
RBC $\times 10^9/l$	3.8-5.8 (Female)	4.5-6.5 (Male)
ESR in mm 1st hour	0.7 (Female)	0-5 (Male)
MCV (fl)	78-98	
MCH (pg)	27-32	
MCHC (g/dl)	30-36	
Platelets $\times 10^9/l$	150-400	
WBC $\times 10^9/l$	4.0-11.0	
PCV	0.37-0.47 (female)	0.40-0.54 (male)
Differential leucocyte count (DLC)		
Neutrophils	$2000-7500 \times 10^6/l$	(40-75%)
Lymphocytes	$1500-4000 \times 10^6/l$	(20-50%)
Monocytes	$200-800 \times 10^6/l$	(2-10%)
Eosinophils	$40-400 \times 10^6/l$	(1-6%)
Basophils	$10-100 \times 10^6/l$	(<1.0%)
Reticulocyte count	$10-100 \times 10^9/l$	(0.5-2.5%) of red cells
Serum ferritin	14-150 $\mu g/l$ (in females)	17-300 $\mu g/l$ (in males)
Red cell mass	20-30 ml/kg (females)	23-35 ml/kg (males)
Blood volume	65 ml/kg (female)	70 ml/kg (male)
Serum folate	1.5-20.6 $\mu g/l$	
RBC folate	95-570 $\mu g/l$	
Serum Vit. B ₁₂	130-770 pg/ml	

2. Peripheral blood film (PBF) examination

Most of the information provided by the peripheral blood examination can be obtained from modern full blood count (Table 18.6). The PBF examination (Fig. 18.17) renders useful information regarding the type of anaemia, bone marrow response (reticulocytosis) and

abnormal WBCs such as premature cells (blast cells or others) or abnormality of RBCs shape (spherocytes, elliptocytes, sickle cells) and contents (Howell-Jolly bodies, basophil stippling, malarial parasite (Fig. 18.18) and autoagglutination of RBCs (Fig. 18.19). The terms used for peripheral blood film examination are given in Table 18.7.

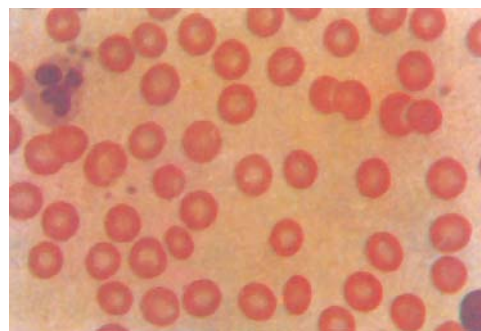
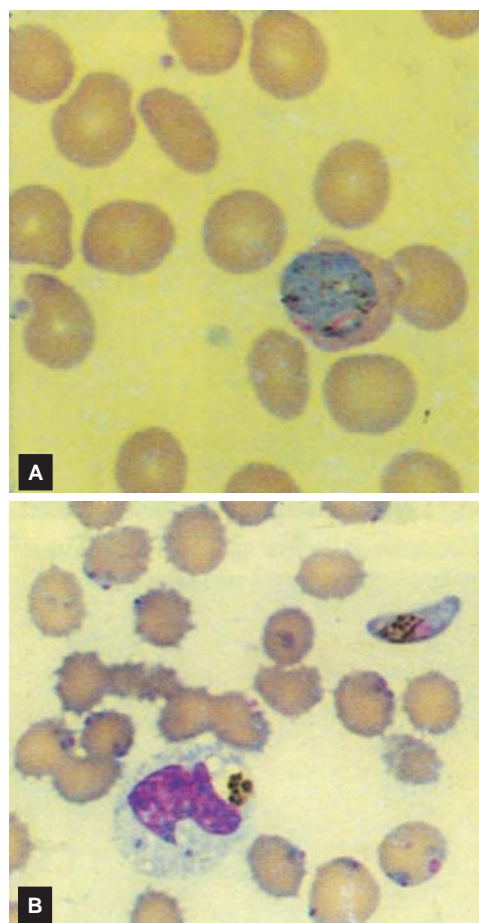


Fig. 18.17: Normal peripheral blood film



Figs 18.18A and B: Peripheral blood smear showing malarial parasite in different stages

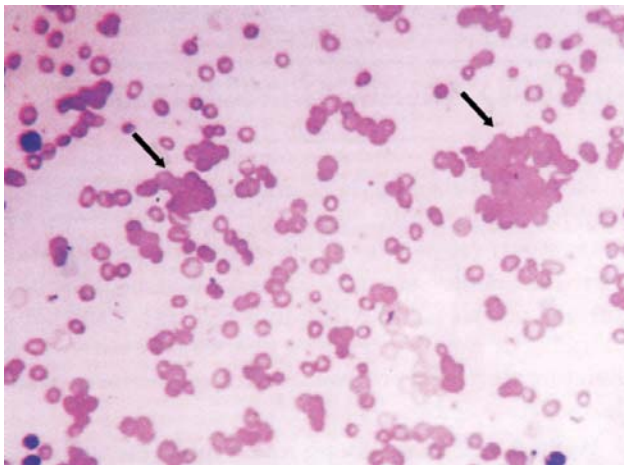


Fig. 18.19: Peripheral blood smear showing autoagglutination of red blood cells (arrows) in autoimmune haemolytic anaemia

3. Bone marrow examination

The bone marrow is obtained either by aspiration of marrow or by trephine biopsy from sternum or posterior iliac crest. Marrow is examined not only for its morphological appearances but for cell marker studies, karyotyping and molecular biological studies are performed for accurate diagnosis and assessment of malignant diseases.

The marrow film provides assessment of cellularity, details of developing blood cells. The indication of bone marrow are given in the Box 18.5. The bone marrow gives information regarding cells (i.e. normoblasts or megaloblasts, myeloid, lymphoid, macrophages and megakaryocytes), ratio between erythroid and myeloid cells, assessment of iron stores and ring sideroblasts (Fig. 18.22), storage diseases and for the presence of marrow infiltration by secondary carcinoma, granulomatous conditions, fungi (e.g. histoplasmosis) and parasites (e.g. malaria, leishmania, trypanosomiasis). Marrow can also be sent for culture in cases of suspected tuberculosis or typhoid fever.

Box: 18.5: CHIEF INDICATIONS FOR BONE MARROW EXAMINATION

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infiltrative disorders <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Leukaemias - Lymphomas - Myelofibrosis (Fig. 18.20) • Parasitic diseases <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Leishmania (Fig. 18.21) - Malaria - Trypanosomiasis | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cytopenic disorders <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Neutropenia - Thrombocytopenia - Anaemias - Pancytopenia • Infection disorder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Suspected tuberculosis - Suspected typhoid |
|--|---|

4. Coagulation profile

A. Coagulation pathways

The coagulation cascade (mechanism) is activated in two ways and there is also a common pathway of activation (Fig. 18.23).

- I. *Intrinsic (blood) pathway:* This is activated by contact with collagen of exposed endothelial surface, that leads to activation of factor XII and the sequential activation of factors XI, IX, VIII and finally activate the factors in the common pathway.
- II. *Extrinsic (tissue) pathway:* Tissue damage results in the release of a tissue factor or thromboplastin. Tissue factor on interaction with factor VII activates factor X of common pathway.
- III. *Common pathway:* It begins when both intrinsic and extrinsic pathways converge to activate the factor X which forms a complex with factor Va and platelet factor 3 in the presence of calcium. This complex activates prothrombin (factor II) to thrombin (IIa) which, in turn, converts fibrinogen into fibrin (monomer). The monomer fibrin polymerises to form insoluble fibrin under the activation of factor XIII.

Deficiency of one or more coagulation factors result in bleeding diathesis. The deficiency may be congenital or acquired. Haemophilia is an example of coagulation disorders. The test to be done in a case with bleeding are given in the Table 18.8.

5. Laboratory diagnosis of bleeding disorder:

Presumptive diagnosis based on the laboratory tests is depicted in the Table 18.9.

B. Fibrinolytic system

Fibrinolysis is a process of dissolution of fibrin clot (haemostatic plug) and thrombus by activating tissue thromboplasminogen activator released from the endothelial cells. This converts fibrin bound plasminogen into plasmin which hydrolyses the fibrin into fibrin degradation products (FDP). The FDP themselves are weak anticoagulants and their detection in high concentration forms a diagnostic test for abnormal fibrinolysis.

6. Specific tests for a patient with acute leukaemia

The laboratory findings of acute leukaemia are given in the Box 18.6.

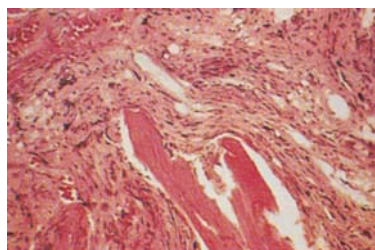


Fig. 18.20: Myelofibrosis. Bone marrow section shows the replacement of marrow cavity with fibrosis in a patient with myelofibrosis. When this fibrosis is due to primary haematological process, it is termed as *myelofibrosis*; while fibrosis secondary to a tumour or a granulomatous process, it is termed as *myelophthisis*

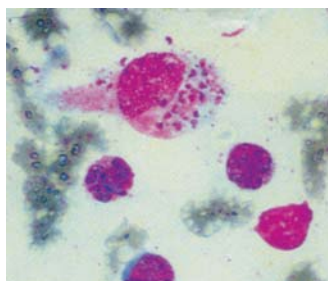


Fig. 18.21: Bone marrow examination shows a histiocyte loaded with *Leishmania donovani* bodies in the cytoplasm

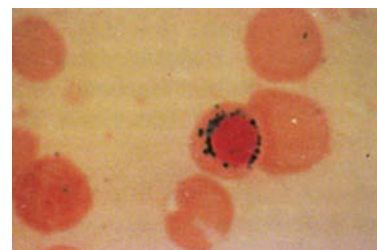


Fig. 18.22: Ringed sideroblast. The bone marrow (Prussian blue stain) shows an orthochromatic normoblast with a collar of blue granules surrounding the nucleus. The blue granules represent iron-laden mitochondria. The presence of ring sideroblast indicates sideroblastic anaemia or myelodysplastic syndrome (refractory anaemia with ring sideroblasts)

Table 18.7: Meaning of the terms used to describe abnormal peripheral blood film examination and their significance

Term	Description	Significance
1. Microcytosis	The average size and mean cell volume (MCV) of red cells is reduced	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Found in iron deficiency anaemia Sideroblastic anaemia Thalassaemia
2. Macrocytosis	The average size of red cells is greater than normal. MCV will be increased	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Macrocytic anaemias Megaloblastic anaemias
3. Hypochromia	Red cells have less than normal amount of haemoglobin and show central pallor. Mean corpuscular haemoglobin concentration (MCHC) is below normal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Microcytosis and hypochromia are commonly associated, hence causes are same as for microcytosis
4. Anisocytosis	Variation in size of red cells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Found in many forms of anaemia Prominent in megaloblastic anaemia
5. Poikilocytosis	Variation in the shape of red cells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is always present with anisocytosis, reflects dyserythropoiesis
6. Elliptocytosis or Ovalocytosis	Elliptical red cells or oval red cells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Megaloblastic anaemias Iron deficiency anaemia As a hereditary disorder (dominant type), does not have significance
7. Target cells	These are red cells which are flat, have a central mass of haemoglobin surrounded by an inner ring of pallor and outer ring of again haemoglobin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Liver disease After splenectomy Haemoglobinopathies
8. Polychromasia and reticulocytosis	Young red cells with basophilic cytoplasm; are seen in large number with normal pink coloured red cells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accelerated erythropoiesis
9. Howell-Jolly bodies	Nuclear remnants left in red cells after nucleus is extruded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absent spleen Megaloblastic anaemias
10. Punctate basophilia (basophilic stippling)	Damaged young red cells with scattered blue dots in cytoplasm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Severe anaemia Chronic lead poisoning Betathalassaemia
11. Nucleated red cells (normoblastosis)	Large number of normoblasts (early, intermediate, late) found in blood	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accelerated erythropoiesis Leukaemias Infiltration by a secondary tumor
12. Leucoerythroblastosis	Primitive erythroblasts and granulocytes present in blood film	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Malignant infiltration of marrow Myelofibrosis Reactionary-secondary to excessive blood loss or haemolysis

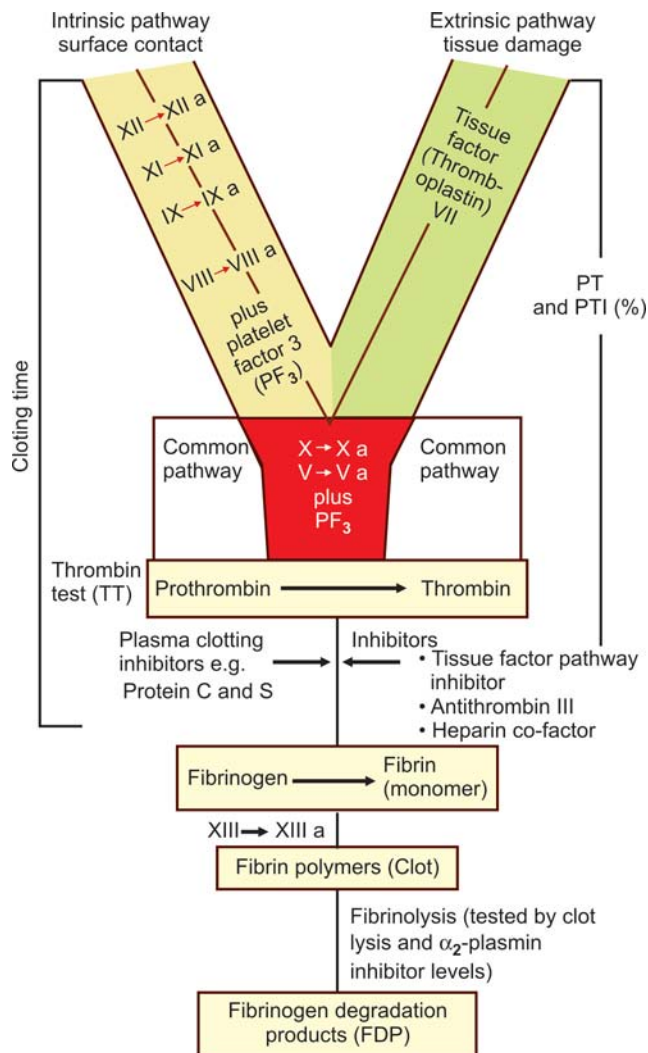


Fig. 18.23: A schematic representation of coagulation cascade

Box 18.6: LABORATORY FINDINGS IN ACUTE LEUKAEMIAS

- Haemoglobin - Low.
- Platelet count - Low.
- WBC count - Markedly high (50,000-1,00,000 etc.)
- Reticulocyte count - High
- Blood film shows large number of blast cells.
- Bone marrow examination shows hypercellularity with leukaemic blast cells (>30% of cells). The presence of Auer rods in the cytoplasm of blast cells indicate myeloblastic leukaemia. Erythropoietic and megakaryotic cells are reduced.
- Cytochemical stains differentiate different types of cells i.e. myeloperoxidase and sudan black stains give positive reaction with myeloid series of cells.
- Immunophenotyping: The recent development of

Contd...

Contd...

monoclonal antibodies as well as advances in flow cytometry have made immunophenotyping easy. It is useful to define definite lineage (B cell vs T cells), helps to differentiate acute leukaemia from other non-haematological disorders.

- Chromosomal abnormalities: Three major techniques of molecular analysis such as Southern blot analysis (commonly used), the PCR and fluorescent in situ hybridisation demonstrate chromosomal abnormalities in acute leukaemia.
- LDH, uric acid and alkaline phosphatase levels are elevated in acute leukaemia indicating rapid turn over of the cells.
- Coagulation profile: DIC may be seen in acute promyelocytic leukaemia (M_3)
- CSF examination is mandatory in all patients of ALL to evaluate CNS involvement at presentation and during follow up
- X-Ray chest for any mediastinal mass which may be seen in T-Cell ALL.
- Renal functions e.g. urea and creatinine.

N.B.: Some patients present with pancytopenia and have a few blast cells in peripheral blood (subleukaemic leukaemia) or no blast cell (aleukaemic leukaemia). Both these conditions now-a-days are included under myelodysplastic syndromes.

Investigations for a patient with chronic leukaemia (Box 18.7)

Box 18.7: LABORATORY FINDINGS IN CHRONIC LEUKAEMIAS

1. Haemoglobin is low. There is normocytic normochromic anaemia.
2. WBC count is high usually more than a lac, but varies greatly from 50,000/ μ L to many lacs.
3. Platelet count is high initially but becomes low later on. It is low during acute blastic crisis in chronic leukaemia.
4. Peripheral blood film examination. In CML there is full range of granulocyte precursors (promyelocytes, myelocytes and metamyelocytes >30% and myeloblasts < 10% indicate CML). There is increase in eosinophil and basophil counts. Blast cells >30% indicate blastic crisis. In CLL, there is lymphocytosis with atypical lymphocytes.
5. **Bone marrow:** It is done for cytogenetic studies (Philadelphia (Ph') chromosome). The Ph' chromosome is present in 90% cases of CML. DNA analysis is done to demonstrate the presence of *Chimeric Abelson—BCR* gene in CML.
6. **Other investigations**
 - Neutrophil alkaline phosphatase - Low in CML
 - Plasma Vitamin B_{12} levels - High in CML
 - LDH levels - Elevated in CML

Table 18.8: Tests for assessment of a case with bleeding

Investigation	Result	Normal range	Bleeding disorder
Platelet count	↓	1,50,000-400,000 per cubic millimeter	• Thrombocytopenia (congenital or acquired)
Bleeding time (BT)	↑	2-7 min (dry method)	• Thrombocytopenia • Thrombopathy (aspirin, von Willebrand's disease)
Prothrombin time (PT) It screens the extrinsic (tissue) pathway of coagulation	↑	12-14 seconds	• Deficiency of factors II,V,VII,X • Liver disease • Anticoagulant therapy • Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
Activated partial thromboplastin time (PTTK). It screens the intrinsic pathway	↑	30-40 seconds	• Deficiency of factors II,V,VIII, IX, X, XI, XII • Haemophilia A and B • von-Willebrand's disease • DIC
Thrombin time (TT)	↑	About 12 seconds	• Hypofibrinogenaemia, afibrinogenaemia
Fibrinogen	↓	1.5-4.0 g/l	• Dysfibrinogenaemia
FDP	↑	< 2.5 mg/l	• Hypofibrinogenaemia • DIC

Note: Correction tests are used to differentiate prolonged times in PT, PTTK and TT due to coagulation factor deficiencies and inhibitors of coagulation. Prolonged PT, PTTK or TT due to coagulation factor deficiencies are corrected by addition of normal plasma to the patient's plasma, while no correction occurs in case of an inhibitor(s) of coagulation being present

↑ means increased; ↓ means decreased

Table 18.9: Differential diagnosis of bleeding disorders

Platelets	Bleeding Time	Clotting Time	PT	aPTT	TT	Presumptive diagnosis
N	N	↑	N	↑	N	Factor VIII, IX or rarely factor XI, XII deficiency, lupus anticoagulants, acquired factor inhibitors
N	↑	Variable↑	N	↑	N	Von Willebrand's factor inhibitors
N	N	Variable↑	↑	↑	N	Deficiency of factor II, V, X, Vitamin K deficiency, liver disease, warfarin therapy.
N	N	N	↑	N	N	Deficiency of factor VII
N	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	Fibrinogen disorder (e.g. afibrinogenaemia/hypofibrinogenaemia)
N	N	N	N	N	N	With clinical evidence of bleeding; factor XIII deficiency or mild coagulation defect
N	↑	N	N	N	N	Platelet function (adhesion or aggregation) defect, Glanzemann's thromboasthenia
↓	↑	N	N	N	N	Thrombocytopenia, platelet factor defect, Bernard-soulier syndrome, Wiscott-Aldrich syndrome
↓	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	Liver disease, DIC

N—Normal, ↑—increased, ↓—decreased

Inhibitor syndromes or circulating anticoagulants

These are antibodies that impair coagulation activity and may infrequently cause bleeding. Inhibitors are likely when screening test abnormalities (prolonged PT and PTT) cannot be reversed by adding normal plasma to the patient plasma. Antibodies to specific coagulation factor may develop in postpartum women, patients with

autoimmune diseases (SLE), patients taking drugs e.g. penicillin, streptomycin and healthy old persons. Haemophilics who have received multiple blood transfusions may also develop them. Patients with such anticoagulants as lupus-like anticoagulant manifest as anticardiolipin antibody syndrome characterised by increased risk of thromboembolism rather than bleeding.

19

The Psychiatric Assessment

HISTORY

Symptoms and signs

- Headache, dizziness
- Vomiting, functional dyspepsia (nonulcer dyspepsia), irritable bowel syndrome
- Dyspnoea, hyperventilation
- Atypical chest pain, palpitations
- Tinnitus, vertigo
- Low back pain, myalgia,
- Chronic fatigue
- Fibromyalgia
- Associated with psychiatric symptoms e.g. anxiety, depression, irritability, abnormal behaviour, sleep disturbance etc.

History of present illness

Past medical history and psychiatric history

Family history

For example plotting of family tree, socioeconomic status, and history of any psychiatric illness in the family.

Personal history



General observations

- Appearance, behaviour, dress and clothes, facial expression, grooming, personal hygiene.
- Drug/substance abuse

PHYSICAL AND PSYCHOLOGICAL EXAMINATION

I. Mental status examination

- General appearance and behaviour
- Speech
- Mood and affect
- Thought
- Perception and abnormal beliefs
- Cognition
- Insight
- Judgement

II. Cognition (neuropsychiatry) assessment

- Consciousness
- Orientation
- Attention and calculation
- Registration and recall
- Language
- Memory

III. Psychological tests

- Objective tests, e.g. personality and intelligence tests
- Projective tests
- Neuropsychological tests
- Diagnostic psychological tests
- Rating scales

Investigations

- Medical screen
- Toxological screen/levels
- Electrophysiological tests
- Imaging studies
- Neuroendocrine studies

FORMAT FOR PSYCHIATRIC ASSESSMENT

THE PSYCHIATRIC ASSESSMENT

The prevalence of psychiatric illness in our society is so high that every doctor must be able to carry out a psychiatric assessment. Familiarity with the technique of psychiatric assessment is important not only for the psychiatrist but also for a medical specialist or practitioner, since a large percentage (more than one-third) of medical patients have psychiatric disorders.

Medically unexplained symptoms and their clinical presentations

Some physical symptoms cannot be explained when one does not find a definite physical disease as a cause, one labels them as medically unexplained symptoms. These are commonest and often most frustrating to the primary care physicians. Typically, these symptoms are chronic in duration and many of them may pertain to different

organ systems. The patients with common medically unexplained symptoms without physical signs presenting to different specialities are given in the Box 19.1. Patients with these symptoms must be subjected to various investigations before labelling them as psychiatric symptoms.

Box 19.1: COMMON UNEXPLAINED SYMPTOMS WITHOUT UNDERLYING ORGANIC CAUSE	
Symptom	Speciality
• Headache, dizziness	Neurology
• Vomiting, irritable bowel functional dyspepsia	Gastroenterology
• Dyspnoea, hyperventilation	Pulmonology
• Atypical chest pain, palpitations	Cardiology
• Tinnitus	Otorhinolaryngology
• Low backache	Orthopedic
• Pelvic pain, premenstrual tension, vaginal discharge	Obstetric and gynaecology
• Chronic fatigue	Internal medicine
• Fibromyalgia	Rheumatology

In some patients, the physical or psychiatry illness may coexist or there may be a direct casual relationship between the two (Table 19.1), for example, a depressed patient may take overdose of a drug or the elderly man develop confusional state in postoperative period. Sometimes, the physical and psychiatric illness are unrelated, i.e. a schizophrenic patient with a brain tumour. Lastly, each patient's reaction to illness will be influenced by their emotional state and it will affect the course of the disease. As the diagnosis and treatment of psychiatric disorder is mainly based on psychiatric assessment only, hence, detailed history and psychiatric examination are essential.

- (i) A consistent scheme should be used each time for recording the interview, although the interview need not follow fixed and rigid method.
- (ii) Whenever possible, the patient should be seen first. When the account of present (or past) history given by the patient and the attendants is different, record both of them.
- (iii) During the interview, the patient should be put at ease and in a warm environment.
- (iv) In psychiatric assessment, history taking and mental status examination should not be always conducted separately (although, they may be recorded separately). During the history taking session, the interviewer must observe the abnormalities in verbal and non-verbal communication and make a note of them.

Table 19.1: Psychiatric symptoms commonly associated with physical illness

Symptom	Physical illness
Anxiety	Hyperthyroidism, phaeochromocytoma, hypoglycaemia, seizures, alcohol abuse and withdrawal
Depression	Diabetes, infections, cancer, thyroid disorders, adrenal disorders, neurological disorder (Fig.19.1)
Irritability	Head injury, premenstrual tension, hypoglycaemia
Fatigue	Anaemia, sleep disorders, cancer, infections
Behaviour disturbance	Epilepsy, toxic states, dementia
Sleep disturbance	porphyria CNS disorders (e.g. degenerative disorder), COPD, sleep apnoea syndrome, left-heart failure, gastroesophageal reflux disease etc.



Fig. 19.1: Depression due to physical illness. Note the depressed mood and facial expression

- (v) It is helpful to record the patient's responses *verbatim* rather than naming them (e.g. rather than writing delusion of persecution, it is better to write verbatim, "my brother and my nephew are trying to poison me with arsenic"). It is best done in the patient's own spoken language, wherever possible.
- (vi) It is useful to ask open-ended and non-directive questions (e.g. how are you feeling today?) rather than asking direct leading questions (e.g. are you feeling sad at present?).

(vii) The most important interview skill is listening and showing that you are interested in listening. Remember, listening is an active, and not a passive, process.

(viii) Confidentiality must always be maintained. However, in cases of suicidal/ homicidal risk and child abuse, an exception may follow.

A complete psychiatric interview may often require more than one session.

The psychiatric assessment can be discussed under the following headings.

Psychiatric history

It consists of:

- Reason for referral
- Presenting/chief complaints
- History of present illness
- Past medical history and psychiatric history
- Family history
- Personal history
 - Childhood
 - Schooling
 - Occupation
 - Psychosexual and marital experience
 - Drugs and substance abuse
 - Premorbid personality
 - Social circumstances

General informations

It is best to start the interview by obtaining general information, i.e. name (including aliases and pet name), age, sex, marital status, education, occupation, income, residential and office address (es), religions and socio-economic background. It is useful also to record the source of referral of the patient. In medicolegal cases, in addition, two identification marks should also be recorded.

Second hand informations

Since sometimes the history, provided by a psychiatric patient may be incomplete, due to factors like confusion, absent insight or uncooperativeness, it is important to take the history from the patient's relatives or friends who are acting as informers.

Their identification data should be recorded along with their relationship to the patient, whether they stay with the patient or not, and the duration of stay together.

Finally, a comment should be made regarding the reliability of the information provided. The parameters of reliability are:

- Relationship with patient,
- Intellectual and observational ability,
- Familiarity with the patient and length of stay with the patient,
- Degree of concern regarding the patient.

The source of referral may also provide valuable information regarding the patient's condition.

Presenting/chief complaints

Presenting complaints and/ or reasons for consultation should be recorded. Both the patient's and the informant's or attendant's version should be recorded separately. If the patient says that he has no complaints, this should also be recorded.

Use the patient's own words and note the duration of each presenting complaint in chronological order.

History of present illness

Ask the followings:

- When the patient was last well should be noted.
- The time of onset of illness/symptoms.
- The symptoms of the illness from the earliest time at which a change was noticed until the present time should be recorded in a chronological order.
- The presenting chief complaints should be detailed.
- Any disturbances in the sleep, appetite, and sexual functioning should be inquired. Always inquire about the presence of suicidal intent.
- Important negative points on history should be recorded (e.g. no history of head injury before the onset of illness).
- A life chart provides a valuable display of the course of illness and episodic sequence, polarity (if any), severity, frequency, and relationship (if any) to stressors and response to treatment.

The points to be noted in present history are given in the Box 19.2.

Box 19.2: HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS

- The complaint itself
- Date and time of onset of illness
- Aggravating and relieving factors
- Duration and course of illness
- Precipitating factors including life stressors
- Consistency of the symptoms
- Associated symptoms
- Site and radiation of physical symptoms

The chief symptoms of anxiety and depression with clues to the diagnosis are given in the Box 19.3.

Box 19.3: SYMPTOMS OF TWO COMMON PSYCHIATRIC	
<i>Symptoms of anxiety (Fig. 19.2)</i>	<i>Symptoms of depression (Fig. 19.3)</i>
A. Mental symptoms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worry Feeling nervous Lack of concentration Sleep disturbance 	
B. Physical symptoms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Restlessness Headaches Tremors Inability to relax 	
C. Autonomic symptoms <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dizziness Perspirations Palpitations Dry mouth Pain abdomen 	
Clues to the diagnosis of anxiety or depression <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The physical complaint has been present for > 3 months Three or more symptoms pertaining to different organ systems (described above) are present for at least 2 weeks. History of multiple consultations or advice or investigations. Physical examination and routine investigations are normal. History of stressful life event(s). 	

Past medical and psychiatric history

History of similar or any other psychiatric illness in the past, if present, should be obtained. Past history of psychotropic medication, alcohol and drug abuse or dependence and psychiatric hospitalisation should be asked for.

Past history of any serious medical, neurological or surgical illness, surgical procedure, accident and hospitalisation should be obtained. The nature of treatment received, if any, should be ascertained. Past history of head injury, convulsions, unconsciousness, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, coronary artery disease, acute intermittent porphyria, syphilis and HIV positivity (or AIDS) should be particularly looked for.

Treatment history

The treatment given in the present episode and the previous episodes should be asked in details along with the response to treatment.

Family history

Family history usually includes the 'family of origin' (i.e. the patient's parents, siblings, grandparents, uncles, etc). However, the 'family of procreation' (i.e. the patient's spouse, children and grandchildren) can also be recorded here instead of under personal history. Family history includes:

Family structure: Plotting of a 'family tree' (pedigree chart) helps in recording all the relevant informations in a concise manner and is easily readable. A typical pedigree chart is plotted in Fig. 19.4. It should be noted whether the family is nuclear or joint family. If consanguinous relationship is present, it should be recorded. Age and cause of death (if any) of the family members should be asked.

Family history of similar or other psychiatric illnesses, major medical illnesses, alcohol or drug dependence and suicide should be recorded.

Family socioeconomic status: Home circumstances, per-capita income, socio-economic status, leader of the family (normal as well as functional) and current attitude of the family members towards the patient's illness should be noted.

The communication patterns in the family, range of affectivity, cultural and religious values and social support system should be inquired about, when relevant.

Personal history

The younger the patient, it is possible to give more attention to details. In older patients, there may be considerable retrospective falsification. Parents, if alive, can often provide much additional information regarding the past personal history.

Personal history can be recorded in the following headings:

- (i) **Perinatal history:** Any febrile illness; medications, drugs and/ or alcohol use; trauma to abdomen and any physical or psychiatric illness during pregnancy (particularly in the first three months of gestation) should be asked. Other relevant questions are: whether the patient was a wanted or unwanted child; date of birth; whether normal or abnormal delivery; any instrumentation; where

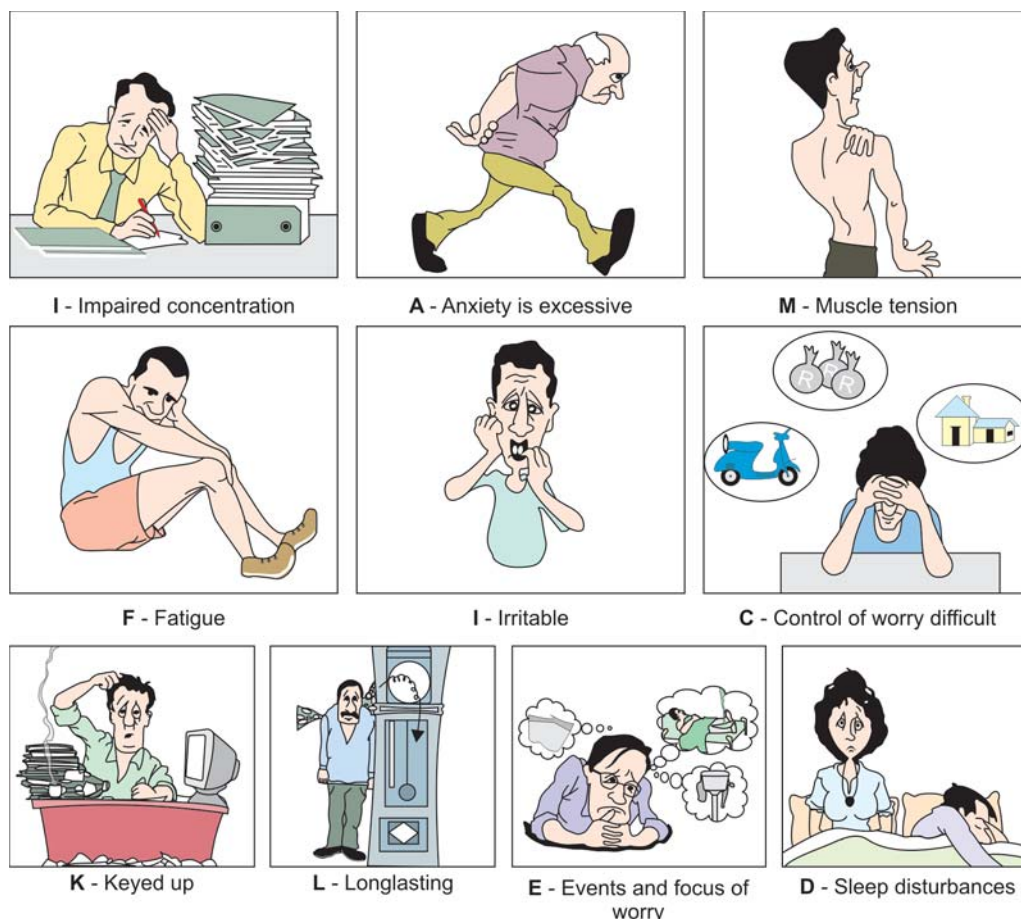


Fig. 19.2: Some common clinical features of anxiety disorder. The word "I AM FICKLED" explains these unexplained symptoms

born (hospital or home); any perinatal complications (cyanosis, convulsions, jaundice); APGAR score (if available); birth cry (immediate or delayed); any birth defects; any prematurity.

- (ii) **Childhood history:** Whether the patient was brought up by mother or someone else; breastfeeding; weaning; any history suggestive of maternal deprivation, should be asked.

The age of passing each important developmental milestone should be noted. The age and ease of toilet training should be asked.

The occurrence of neurotic traits should be noted. These include stuttering, stammering, tics, enuresis, encopresis, night terrors, thumb sucking, nail biting, head banging, body rocking, morbid fears or phobias, somnambulism, temper tantrums, and food fads.

- (iii) **Schooling:** The age of beginning and finishing formal education, academic achievements and relationships with classmates and teachers, should be asked.

Any school phobia, non-attendance, truancy, any learning difficulties and reasons for termination of studies (if occurred prematurely) should be noted.

Further questions to be asked are, what games were played at what stage, with whom and where? Relationships with peers, particularly the opposite sex, should be recorded.

- (iv) **Puberty:** The age at menarche, and reaction to menarche (in females), the age at appearance of secondary sexual characteristics, nocturnal emissions (in males), masturbation and any anxiety related to puberty changes should be noted.
- (v) **Menstrual and obstetric history:** The regularity and duration of menses, the length of each cycle, any abnormality, the last menstrual period, the number of children born, termination of pregnancy if any, should be asked for.
- (vi) **Occupational history:** The age at starting work; jobs held in chronological order; reasons for



Fig. 19.3: Some common clinical features of depression. The word "SAD WALD FACES" explains the symptoms

changes; job satisfactions; ambitions; relationships with authorities, and subordinates; present income; and whether the job is appropriate to the educational and family background, should be asked.

(vii) Psychosexual history: Sexual information, how acquired and of what kind; masturbation (fantasy and activity); sex play, if any; adolescent sexual activity; premarital and extramarital sexual relationships, if any; sexual practices (normal and

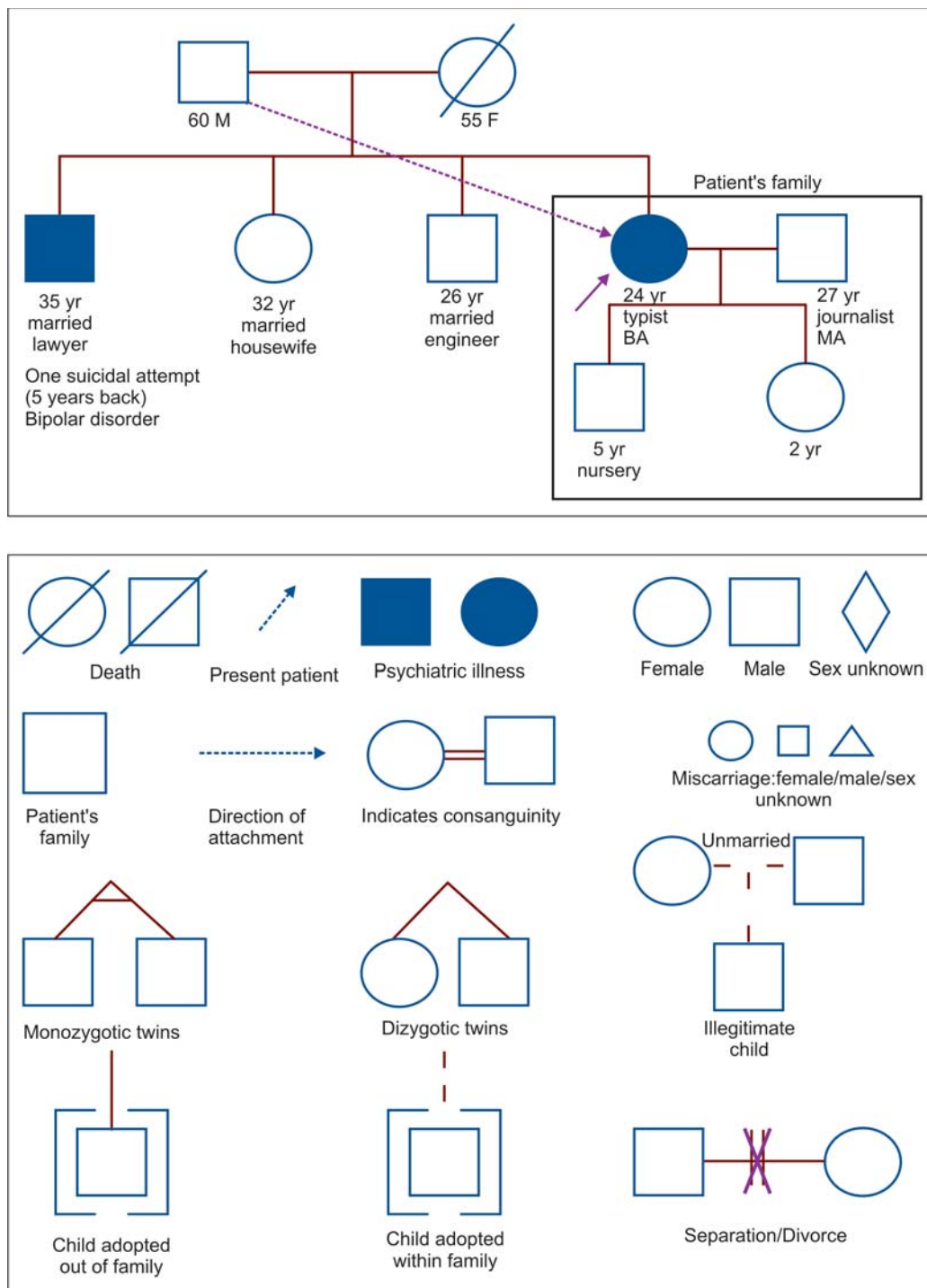


Fig. 19.4: A typical pedigree chart and symbols used

abnormal); and any gender identity disorder, are the areas to be inquired about.

The duration of marriage; whether known or unknown partner before marriage; marriage

arranged by parents with or without consent or love marriage number of marriages, divorces or separation; interpersonal and sexual satisfaction; mode and frequency of sexual activity.

Predisposing and precipitating factors

Predisposing factors often operate from early life, determine the vulnerability of the patient to psychological disease. These include;

- Genetic predisposition—strong genetic association is seen in psychoses
- Environment in utero
- Personality. Certain personalities are believed to be particularly prone to develop certain disorders.
- Childhood trauma.

Precipitating factors occur shortly before the onset of a disorder and appear to be the cause of disorder. They may be physical, psychological or social (Table 19.2).

Table 19.2: Precipitating factors for a psychiatric illness

Physiological factors

- Hypothyroidism
- Tumours
- Metabolic disorder
- Drugs (steroids, alcohol, antihypertensives)

Psychological factors

- Loss of self-esteem due to misfortune or financial loss

Social factors

- Moving job
- Job difficulties
- Family disturbance

Forensic history

Any and all confrontations with law as a result of juvenile delinquency and antisocial behaviour should be recorded. Details of offences committed and punishment received should be noted.

Premorbid personality (PMP)

It is important to elicit details regarding the personality of the individual (temperament, if the age is less than 16 years). Rather than giving labels like schizoid or histrionic, it is more useful to describe the personality in some detail as follows:

- **Interpersonal relationship:** Interpersonal relationship with family members, friends, workmates and superiors; introverted/ extraverted; ease of making and keeping social relations.
- **Extracurricular activities.** Hobbies; interests; intellectual activities; critical faculty; energetic/sedentary.
- **Mood:** Optimistic/pessimistic; stable/prone to anxiety; cheerful/despondent; reaction to stressful life events.
- **Attitude to self and others:** Self confidence level; self-criticism; self-consciousness; selfish/thoughtful

of others; self-appraisal of abilities, achievements and failure.

- **Attitude to work and responsibility:** Decision making; acceptance of responsibility; flexibility; perseverance; foresight.
- **Religious beliefs and moral attitudes:** Religious beliefs; toleration of others' standards and beliefs; conscience; altruism.
- **Fantasy of life:** Sexual and nonsexual fantasies day-dreaming—frequency and content, recurrent or favourite day-dreams, dreams.
- **Habits:** Food fads, alcohol, tobacco, drugs, sleep.

The most reliable method of premorbid personality assessment is, interviewing an informer/ friend/relative familiar with the patient prior to the onset of illness.

Case histories of some medically unexplained symptoms with their analysis and differential diagnosis are discussed as Case No. 1 to 7.

Case No. 1: Chest pain

Clinical presentations

- Intermittent, sharp knife like cutting pain of long duration or precordial aching or tightness or heaviness or discomfort
- Preoccupation with pain and sighing respiration
- Increased by psychological distress (stress precipitant)
- No relation to exertion/activity
- Complains that pain is "coming from heart" i.e. it is heart pain
- Associated complaints of palpitations, dizziness, shortness of breath are present
- Associated fear of having a heart attack
- Family history of similar pain. One of my relative had such pain died due to heart attack is a common complaint.



Case History: A 45-year-old male patient complained of persistent chest pain and tightness around the chest. He felt very anxious and reported that "pain was coming from his heart".

On inquiry he reported that he was worried about his daughter's marriage which was due after a month and he had borrowed money for that event. About a month back he was operated for strangulated hernia which had resulted in unexpected expenses. He also reported that he was not sleeping well, had lost interest in activities which he enjoyed previously. He had also

lost his appetite and lost 3 kgs of weight. Physical examination and investigation including ECG and stress test were normal.

Provisional diagnosis: Cardiac neurosis

Differential diagnosis

- Angina pectoris or MI
- Esophageal motility disorder or reflux oesophagitis
- Musculoskeletal pain
- Pneumonitis
- Pleuritis
- Mitral valve prolapse

Investigations

Routine

- Physical examination
- ECG
- X-ray chest

Special (if cardiac aetiology is suspected)

- Stress test
- 2D ECHO
- Angiography—to be done in patients above 40 years.

Case No. 2: Chronic fatigue

Clinical presentations

- Feeling weak and tired “all the time”
- Lack of energy to do daily activities
- Loss of enthusiasm in work and social engagements
- Feeling lethargic
- Wanting to lie down the whole day
- Difficulty in concentration
- Complaints of aches and pains
- Sleep problems

Case history: A 58-year-old lady complained of feeling extremely tired and fatigued all the time. Her symptoms began more than a year ago. Nothing seemed to make her feel better. On inquiry, it was found out that her husband had suddenly died the previous year. Her children have all grown up and left home for better employment opportunities. She had started experiencing poor sleep and loss of appetite soon after her husband died. Later, she began to get headaches, tiredness and other physical discomforts which led her to consult the local hospital. There she was told she was alright but was prescribed tonics and vitamins. She felt better immediately, particularly because her sleep



improved. However, within two weeks, her sleep got worse and she felt tired all the time. She was given sleeping pills and vitamin injections. This went on for months, until she decided to see another doctor.

Provisional diagnosis: Chronic fatigue syndrome

Differential diagnosis

- Anaemia
- Ischaemic heart disease
- Chronic infections or inflammatory diseases
- Neoplastic disorder
- Hypothyroidism

Investigations

Routine

- Haemoglobin
- Full blood count
- Blood chemistry for liver and renal disease
- Chest X-ray
- Urinalysis

Special

- Thyroid function test
- ECG

All these investigations were normal.

Case No. 3: Chronic headache

Headache characteristics

- Intensity: mild to severe
- Duration: months to years
- Episode: lasts for an hour or continuous
- Increased tightness and tenderness of neck and jaw muscles
- Generalised or bi-occipital distribution
- No nausea, no vomiting, no photophobia.



Case History: A 35-year-old housewife came to the doctor with complaints of persistent headache. The headaches were present since her marriage, about 12 years back. She would daily take 1 to 2 tablets of paracetamol. Frequently the headaches were so severe that they incapacitated her. She had consulted neurologists and had gone through CT scans and MRI of the brain. A physical examination and all her investigations including blood biochemistry were normal.

On inquiry she mentioned that there were frequent alterations with her mother-in-law. The headaches were bilateral and the pain was throbbing. She also felt a

tightening band around her temporal regions. She felt a little better when somebody massaged the back of her neck or when she took analgesics. She was known to be tense and anxious. Recently she had become depressed and lost interest in her household activities.

Provisional diagnosis: Chronic headache (psychogenic)

Differential diagnosis

- Migraine
- Cluster headaches
- Cranial arteritis

Investigations usually prescribed /done

Special (if intracranial lesion is suspected)

- CT scan
- MRI scan

Case No. 4: Chronic backache

Clinical presentations

- Persistent backache of long duration
- Preoccupation with pain and discomfort
- Restriction of social activities
- No localization
- No tenderness
- Straight leg raising test—normal
- No motor weakness or sensory loss
- Knee and ankle jerks normal

Case History: A 45-year-old male patient complained of persistent backache for 10 years. He attended his work with great difficulty and had given up practically all social activities. He mentioned that he had also lost interest in sex and felt very fatigued and tired. He had visited several specialists. He had several X-rays and scans of the spine, all of which were normal. He was advised analgesics and physiotherapy. He generally took more analgesics than what was prescribed and gave up physiotherapy as he felt fatigued and unmotivated. He said that the backache had started when he was moving furniture in his new house about 10 years ago. He had to move into his own house following a quarrel with his elder brother. He was very close to his mother and he wanted his parents to stay with him. They opted to stay with his brother and he had felt very hurt. His mother had suffered from depression and also complained of backache. His maternal uncle had committed suicide.



Provisional diagnosis: Chronic low back pain.

Differential diagnosis

- Osteoporosis of spine
- Spondylosis/herniated intervertebral disc
- Infections of spine
- Carcinoma

Investigations done

Routine

- X-ray spine

Special (if cardiac aetiology is suspected)

- MRI spine
- CT scan spine

Case No. 5: Sleep disturbances

Clinical presentations

- Difficulty in falling asleep
- Early morning awakening
- Daytime drowsiness
- Feeling tired
- Difficulty in concentration
- Forgetfulness
- Diminished performance at work
- Irritability
- Preoccupation with sleep



Case History: A 30-year-old female patient working as a clerk complained of difficulty in falling asleep. In addition, she frequently woke up at 3.00-4.00 AM and could not get back to sleep. She started having sleep problems after the delivery of her second child.

On inquiry she revealed that she had a very difficult pregnancy and was very tense during the last month. She could not concentrate on her work, and was worried that she may lose her job. She had consulted the company doctor—who had prescribed her sleeping pills. These had helped her for a week but the sleep problem returned and her tension worsened.

Provisional diagnosis: Insomnia

Differential diagnosis

- Medical conditions causing pain or discomfort
- Drug and alcohol abuse
- Obstructive sleep apnoea syndrome

Investigations done/required

- Routine blood tests

Case No. 6: Abdominal pain**Clinical presentations**

- Long duration of symptom
- Irregular bowel movements associated with flatulence and bloating sensation often diffuse or localised to lower abdomen
- Pain may be relieved by passage of flatus or defaecation
- No weight loss or weight gain
- No disturbance of appetite
- Abdominal examination normal.

Case Summary: A 35-year-old male patient came with complaints of persistent pain in abdomen for several years. The pain was dull aching. He complained of “a lot of gas and irregular bowel habits. The pain had started following some financial stress and illness of his wife. The pain persisted in spite of detailed investigations and treatment.

He had not lost any weight. He had no disturbance of appetite. He complained that he had difficulty in falling asleep and sometimes woke-up early in the morning.

He had lost interest in social activities and avoided religious functions in the family.

**Provisional diagnosis: Abdominal neurosis****Differential diagnosis**

- Peptic disease
- Reflux oesophagitis (GERD)
- Amoebic colitis
- Irritable bowel syndrome

Investigations done/required**Routine**

- Blood examination
- Stool examination

Special (if organic cause is suspected)

- Ultrasound abdomen
- Endoscopic examination

Case No. 7: Panic attacks

Panic attacks are attacks of extreme anxiety and fear. The following is the description of a typical panic attack:

- It comes out suddenly without any warning.

- If extreme with some severe physical symptoms such as palpitations or difficulty breathing, the person is terrified that he may die or collapse or go mad.
- The attack lasts for a few minutes to half an hour
- It disappears spontaneously as it started.

Panic attacks are quite common. Many persons will have one or two panic attacks sometime during their lives. However,

sometimes, panic attacks become more frequent. When they occur regularly, for example, once or twice a week, then this is called as *Panic disorder*. It is most often misdiagnosed as an acute myocardial episode.

**Examination**

1. Physical
2. Psychological examination

Physical examination

A detailed general physical examination (GPE) and systemic examination is must in each patient. Physical disease which is etiologically important (for causing the psychiatric symptoms) accidentally may be coexistent or signs caused by the condition are often present and can be detected by a good physical examination. Anxious patients may have signs of thyrotoxicosis. Liver disease must be suspected in alcoholism. Needle marks on the body indicate drug abuse and predispose to HIV infection.

Although conventionally the details of the ‘family of procreation’ are recorded here, they can also be recorded in the family tree.

Psychiatric or mental state examination (MSE)

Mental status examination is a standardised format (Table 19.3) in which the clinician records the psychiatric signs and symptoms present at the time of the interview.

MSE should describe all areas of mental functioning that may arise from the history, e.g. mood and affect in depression, cognitive functions in delirium and dementia.

Table 19.3: Mental status examination format

1. General appearance and behavior	
• General appearance	• Motor activity
• Attitude towards examiner	• Social manner
• Comprehension	• Rapport
• Gait and posture	
2. Speech	
• Rate and quality	• Flow and rhythm
• Volume and tone	
3. Mood and affect	
4. Thought	
• Stream and form	
• Content	
5. Perception and abnormal beliefs	
6. Cognition (higher mental functions)	
• Consciousness	
• Orientation	
• Attention	
• Concentration	
• Memory	
• Intelligence	
• Abstract thinking	
7. Insight	
8. Judgement	

General appearance and behaviour

A good deal of information can be elicited from general appearance and behavior. While examining, it is important to remember the socio-cultural background and personality of the patient.

Understandably, general appearance and behavior needs to be given more emphasis in the examination of an uncooperative patient.

1. General appearance

Note the followings:

- Physique and body habitus (built)
- Physical appearance (approximate height, weight, and appearance),
- Looks; anxious, depressed,
- Physical health,
- Grooming, hygiene, self care,
- Dressing (adequate, appropriate, any abnormalities),
- Facies (non-verbal expression of mood),
- Effeminate/ masculine.

2. Attitude towards the examiner

- Cooperation/guardedness/ evasiveness/ hostility/ combativeness/ naughtiness,
- Attentiveness,
- Appears interested/disinterested/apathetic,
- Any ingratiating behaviour,
- Perplexity.

3. Comprehension

- Intact/impaired (partially/fully)

4. Gait and posture

Normal or abnormal (way of sitting, standing, walking, lying).

5. Motor activity

- Increased/decreased,
- Excitement/stupor,
- Abnormal involuntary movements like tics, tremors, akathisia,
- Restlessness/ ill at ease,
- Catatonic signs (mannerisms, stereotyped posturing, waxy flexibility, negativism, ambtendency, automatic obedience, stupor, echopraxia, forced grasping).
- Conversion and dissociative signs (pseudoseizures, possession states).
- Social withdrawal, autism,
- Compulsive acts, rituals or habits (e.g. nail-biting),
- Reaction time.

6. Social manner and non-verbal behavior

- Increased, decreased, or inappropriate,
- Eye contact (gaze aversion, staring vacantly, staring at the examiner, hesitant eye contact, or normal eye contact).

7. Rapport

Whether a working and empathic relationship can be established with the patient, should be mentioned.

8. Hallucinatory behavior

Smiling or crying without reason, muttering or talking to self (non-social speech) and odd gesturing in response to auditory or visual hallucination.

Speech

Speech can be examined under the following headings:

Rate and quantity of speech

Whether speech is present or absent (mutism),
If present, whether it is spontaneous,
Productivity is increased or decreased,
Rate is rapid or slow (its appropriateness),
Flow of speech or poverty of speech.

Volume and tone of speech

- Increased/decreased (its appropriateness),
- Low/high/normal pitch.

Flow and rhythm of speech

- Smooth/hesitant, blocking (sudden),
- Dysprosody, stuttering/stammering/ cluttering, any accent,
- Circumstantiality, tangentiality,
- Verbigeration, stereotypes (verbal),
- Flight of ideas, loose associations.

Mood and affect

Mood is the pervasive feeling which is sustained (lasts for some time) and colors the total experience of a person. Affect, on the other hand, is the outward expression (objective) of the immediate (cross-sectional) experience of emotion at a given time.

The assessment of mood includes testing the quality of mood, which is assessed subjectively ('how do you feel') and objectively (by examination). The other components are stability of mood (over a period of time), reactivity of mood (variation in mood with stimuli), and persistence of mood (length of time the mood lasts).

The affect is similarly described under quality of affect, range of affect or emotional changes displayed over time, depth or intensity of affect (normal, increased or blunted) and appropriateness of affect (in relation to thought and surrounding environment).

Mood is described as general warmth, euphoria (mild happiness), elation, exaltation and/ or ecstasy in mania; anxious and restless in anxiety and depression; sad, irritable, angry and/ or despaired in depression; shallow, blunted, indifferent, restricted, inappropriate and/ or labile in schizophrenia.

Anhedonia may occur in both schizophrenia and depression.

Thought

Normal thinking is a goal directed flow of ideas, symbols and associations initiated by a problem or a task, characterized by rational connections between successive ideas or thoughts, lead towards a reality oriented conclusion. Therefore, thought process that is not goal-directed, or not logical, or does not lead to a realistic solution to the problem at hand, is not normal.

Traditionally, in the clinical examination, thought is assessed (by the content of speech) under the four headings of *stream, form, content* and *possession* of thought. However, since there is widespread disagreement regarding this subdivision, 'thought' is discussed here under the following two headings.

(i) Stream and form of thought

'Stream of thought' overlaps with examination of 'speech'. Spontaneity, productivity, flight of ideas,

prolixity, poverty of content of speech, and thought block should be mentioned here.

Continuity of thought is assessed whether the thought processes are relevant to the questions asked. Any loosening of associations, tangentiality, circumstantiality, illogical thinking, perseveration, or verbigeration is noted.

(ii) Content of thought

- Any preoccupations;
- Obsessions (recurrent, irrational, intrusive, ego-dystonic, ego-alien ideas);
- Contents of phobias (irrational fears);
- Delusions (false, unshakeable beliefs) or over-valued ideas;
- Explore for delusions/ ideas of persecution, reference, grandeur, love, jealousy (infidelity), guilt, nihilism, poverty, somatic (hypochondriacal) symptoms, hopelessness, helplessness, worthlessness, and suicidal ideation.

Delusions of control, thought insertion, thought withdrawal, thought broadcasting are *Schneiderian first rank symptoms* (SFRS of Schizophrenia). The presence of neologisms should be recorded here.

Perception

Perception is the process of being aware of a sensory experience and being able to recognise it by comparing it with previous experiences.

Perception is assessed under the following headings:

- (i) **Hallucinations:** The presence of hallucinations should be noted. Whether hallucinations are auditory, visual, olfactory, gustatory or tactile should be asked.

Auditory hallucinations are commonest type of hallucinations in non-organic psychiatric disorders. Clarify whether they are elementary (only sounds are heard) or complex (voices heard). It should be further inquired what was heard, how many voices were heard, in which part of the day, male or female voices, how interpreted and whether second person or third person hallucinations (i.e., whether the voices were addressing the patient or were discussing him with third person); enquire about command (imperative) hallucinations.

Enquire whether the hallucinations occurred during wakefulness, or were they hypnagogic (occurring while going to sleep) and/or

hypnopompic (occurring while getting up from sleep) hallucinations.

- (ii) **Illusions and misinterpretations:** Whether visual, auditory, or in other sensory fields; whether occur in clear consciousness or not; whether any steps taken to check the reality of distorted perceptions.
- (iii) **Depersonalisation/derealisation:** Depersonalisation and derealization are abnormalities in the perception of a person's reality.
- (iv) **Somatic passivity phenomenon:** Somatic passivity is the presence of strange sensations described by the patient as being imposed on the body by 'some external agency', with the patient being a passive recipient. It is one of the Schneider's first rank symptoms.
- (v) **Others:** Autoscopy, abnormal vestibular sensations, sense of presence should be noted here.

Cognition (neuropsychiatric) assessment

Cognitive or higher mental functions are an important part of the MMSE (Table 19.4). Their significant disturbance commonly points to the presence of an organic psychiatric disorder.

- (i) **Consciousness:** The intensity of stimulation needed to arouse the patient should be indicated to demonstrate the level of alertness, e.g. by calling patient's name in a normal voice, calling in a loud voice, light touch on the arm, vigorous shaking of the arm, or painful stimulus.
Grade the level of consciousness; whether conscious/ confused/ somnolence/ clouding/ delirium/stupor/coma. Any disturbance in the level of consciousness should ideally be rated on Glasgow Coma Scale, where a numeric value is given to the best response in each of the three categories (eye opening, verbal, motor).
- (ii) **Orientation:** Whether the patient is well oriented to time (test by asking the time, date, day, month, year, season, and the time spent in hospital), place (test by asking the present location, building, and city) and person (test by asking his own name and can he identify people around him and their role in the setting). Disorientation in time usually precedes disorientation in place and person.
- (iii) **Attention:** Is the attention easily aroused and sustained? Ask the patient to repeat digits forwards and backwards (digit span test; digit forward and backward test), one at a time (e.g. patient may be able to repeat 5 digits forward and 3 digits backwards). Start with two digit numbers, increasing gradually up to eight digit numbers or till failure occurs on three consecutive occasions.

- (iv) **Concentration:** Can the patient concentrate? Is he easily distractible? Ask to subtract serial sevens from hundred (100-7 test), or serial three from forty (40-3 test), or to count backwards from 20, or enumerate the names of the months (or days of the week) in the reverse order.

(v) Memory:

- (a) *Immediate retention and recall (IR and R):* Use the digit span test to assess the immediate memory; Digit forwards and digit backwards subtests (also used for testing attention; are described under attention).
- (b) *Recent memory:* Ask how did the patient come to the room/ hospital; What he ate for dinner the day before or for breakfast the same morning? Give him/her an address to be memorised and ask him/her to recall 15 minutes later or at the end of the interview.
- (c) *Remote memory:* Ask the date and place of a marriage, name and birthdays of children, any other relevant questions from the person's past.

Table 19.4: Higher mental function in mini-mental state-examination

Orientation – 1 point for each correct answer	
What is the:	
time	
date	
day	
month	
year	5 points
What is the name of this:	
ward	
hospital	
district	
town	
country	5 points
Registration	
Name three objects	
Score 1, 2, 3 points according to how many are repeated	
Re-submit list until patient word perfect in order to use this for a later test of recall	
Score only first attempt	3 points
Attention and calculation	
Ask the patient to subtract 7 from 100 and then from the result a total of five times. Score 1 point for each correct subtraction	5 points
Recall	
Ask for three objects used in the registration test, one point being awarded for each correct answer	3 points
Language	
1 point each for two objects correctly named (pencil and watch)	2 points
1 point for correct repetition of 'No ifs, and buts'	1 point
3 points if three-stage commands correctly	

Contd....

Contd....

obeyed 'Take this piece of paper in your right hand, fold it in half, and place it on the floor'	3 points
1 point for correct response to a written command such as 'close your eyes'	1 point
Can the patient write a sentence. Award 1 point if the sentence is meaningful, has a verb and a subject	1 point
Test the patient's ability to copy a complex diagram of two intersected pentagons	1 point
Total score 30	

Note any amnesia (anterograde/retrograde), or confabulation, if present.

(vi) **Intelligence:** Intelligence is the ability to think logically, act rationally, and deal effectively with the environment.

Ask questions about general information, keeping in mind the patient's educational and social background, his experiences and interests, e.g. ask about the current and the past Prime Ministers and Presidents of India, the capital of India, and the name of the various states.

Test for reading and writing. Give simple tests of calculations.

(vii) **Abstract thinking:** Abstract thinking is characterized by the ability to;

- assume a mental set voluntarily,
- shift voluntarily from one aspect of a situation to another,
- keep in mind simultaneously the various aspects of a situation,
- grasp the essentials of a 'whole' (e.g. situation or concept), and
- to break a 'whole' into its parts.

Abstract thinking testing assesses patient's concept formation. The methods used are:

- Proverb testing: The meaning of simple proverbs (at least 3) should be asked.
- Similarities (and also the differences) between familiar objects should be asked, like: table/chair; banana/orange; dog/lion; eye/ear.

The answers may be concrete or abstract. Appropriateness of answers is judged. Concretisation of responses or inappropriate answers may occur in schizophrenia.

Insight

Insight is the degree of awareness and understanding that the patient has regarding his illness.

Ask the patient's attitude towards him, present state; whether there is an illness or not; if yes, which kind of

illness (physical, psychiatric or both); is any treatment needed, is there hope for recovery; what is the cause of illness? Depending on the patient's responses, grade the insight (Table 19.5).

Table 19.5: Clinical rating of insight

Insight is rated on a 6-point scale from one to six.

- Complete denial of illness.
- Slight awareness of being sick and needing help, but denying it at the same time.
- Awareness of being sick, but it is attributed to external or physical factors.
- Awareness of being sick, due to something unknown in self.
- Intellectual insight.* Awareness of being ill and that the symptoms/failures in social adjustment are due to own particular irrational feelings/ thoughts; yet does not apply this knowledge to the current/ future experiences.
- True emotional insight.* It is different from intellectual insight in that the awareness leads to significant basic changes in the future behavior and personality.

Judgement

Judgement is the ability to assess a situation correctly and act appropriately within that situation. Both social and test judgement are assessed.

- Social judgement is observed during the hospital stay and during the interview session. It includes evaluation of personal judgement.
- Test judgement is assessed by asking the patient what he would do in certain test situations, like 'a house on fire' or 'a man lying on the road', or a sealed, stamped addressed envelope lying in a street'. Judgement is rated as Good/Intact/Normal or Poor/impaired/abnormal.

Investigations

After a detailed history and examination, investigations (laboratory tests, diagnostic standardised interviews, family interviews and/or psychological tests) are carried out based on the diagnostic and etiological possibilities. Some of these investigations are discussed below.

- Medical screen:** The following tests may be useful in screening for the medical disorders causing psychiatric symptoms.
 - Haemoglobin:* It is done as a routine.
 - Total and differential leucocyte counts (TLC, DLC):* It is done for follow up. Treatment with antipsychotics (e.g. clozapine), lithium, carbamazepine.
 - Peripheral smear* for mean corpuscular volume (MCV): It is: Increased in alcohol dependence.
 - Urinalysis* done to monitor the treatment with lithium.

- (v) *Liver function tests* done to monitor treatment with carbamazepine, valproate, benzodiazepines, alcohol dependence.
- (vi) *Serum sodium and potassium* for SIADH, due to antipsychotic, drugs.
- (vii) *Blood glucose* for diabetes
- (viii) *Thyroid function test* for refractory depression, rapid cycling mood disorder, treatment with lithium, carbamazepine.
- (ix) *Electrocardiogram (EKG)* taken during treatment with lithium, antidepressants, and before ECT.
- (xii) *HIV testing* done in intravenous drug users, suggestive sexual history, AIDS dementia.
- (xiii) *VDRL* for suggestive sexual history.
- (xiv) *X-ray chest and skull*: Age >35 years, treatment with ECT.
- (xv) *CPK*: It is increased in neuroleptic malignant syndrome.

B. Toxicology screen: Useful when substance use is suspected, e.g. alcohol, cocaine, opiates, Cannabis, phencyclidine, benzodiazepines, barbiturates.

C. Drugs levels: Drug levels are indicated for therapeutic and toxic blood levels, and for testing drug compliance. The common drug levels monitored include lithium (0.6-1.6 meq/L), carbamazepine (6-12 mg/ml), valproate (50-100 mg/ml), haloperidol (8-18 ng/ml), tricyclic antidepressants (nortriptyline 50-150 ng/ml; imipramine 200-250 ng/ml), benzodiazepines, barbiturates.

D. Electrophysiological tests. EEG (Electroencephalogram) for seizures, dementia, pseudoseizures vs. seizures, episodic abnormal behavior. **BEAM** (Brain electrical activity mapping) provides topographic imaging of EEG data. **Video-telemetry EEG.** *Evoked potential:* Research tool. *Polysomnography/sleep studies:* Sleep disorders, seizures (occurring in sleep). The various components in sleep studies include EEG, EKG, EOG, EMG, airflow measurement, penile tumescence, oxygen saturation, body temperature, GSR (Galvanic skin response), and body movement. **Holter EKG** for panic disorder.

E. Imaging studies *Computed tomography (CT) scans:* To differentiate between organic and functional disorder, e.g. dementia, delirium, seizures, first episode psychosis. *Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) or higher resolution CT Scan:* Dementia *Single Photon Emission Computed Tomography (SPECT) Scan:* Research tool. *Magnetic Resonance (MR) angiography* for cerebral disease, if indicated.

F. Neuro-endocrine Studies: Dexamethasone Suppression Test (DST): Research tool in depression

(response to antidepressants or ECT). If plasma cortisol is more than 5 mg/100 ml following administration of dexamethasone (1 mg, given at 11 PM the night before and plasma cortisol taken at 4 PM and 11 PM the next day).

TRH stimulation Test: Lithium-induced hypothyroidism, refractory depression. If the serum TSH is more than 35 mU/ml (following 500 mg of TRH given IV), the test is positive.

Serum Prolactin Levels: Seizures vs pseudo-seizures, galactorrhea with antipsychotics.

Serum 17-hydroxycorticosteroid: Organic mood (depression) disorders.

G. Biochemical tests: (5-HIAA and catecholamine levels). They are done in organic anxiety disorder (e.g. pheochromocytoma).

H. Genetic studies: Cytogenetic work-up is useful in some cases of mental retardation.

I. Tests for sexual disorders

Papaverine test. Male erectile function disorder (intracavernosal injection of papaverine is sometimes used to differentiate organic from non-organic male erectile disorder).

Nocturnal penile tumescence and Doppler. Male erectile disorder.

Serum testosterone: Sexual desire disorders (loss of libido), male erectile disorder.

J. Miscellaneous tests

Lactate provocation test: Panic disorders (in about 70% of patients with panic disorders, sodium lactate infusion can provoke a panic attack).

Drug assisted interview (Amytal interview): Useful in catatonia, unexplained mutism, and dissociative stupor.

K. CSF examination for meningitis.

Psychological tests

A. Objective tests. These are pen- and paper, objective tests for personality and intelligence in a person.

Objective personality tests: Some examples of objective personality tests are MMPI (Minnesota multiple personality inventory) and 16-PF (16-personality factors).

Intelligence tests: Some commonly used tests of intelligence are WAIS (Wechsler adult intelligence scale), Standard-Binet test and Bhatia's battery of intelligence.

B. Projective tests: In projective tests, ambiguous stimuli are used which are not clear to the person immediately. Some commonly used projective tests of personality are Rorschach inkblot test, TAT

(Thematic appreciation test), DAPT (Drawaperson test), sentence completion test and face and hand test (see the Box 19.4).

C. Neuropsychological tests: Some of the commonly used neuropsychological tests are Wisconsin card sorting test, Wechsler memory scale, GI memory scale, BG test (Bender Gestalt test), BVRT (Benton visual retention test), Luria-Nabraska neuropsychological test battery, Halstead-Reitan neuropsychological test battery, and PGI battery of brain dysfunction.

D. Rating scales: Several rating scales are used in psychiatry to quantify the psychopathology observed. Some of the commonly used scales are *BPRS* (Brief psychiatric rating scale), *SANS* (Scale for assessment of negative symptoms), *SAPS* (Scale for assessment of positive symptoms), *HARS* (Hamilton's anxiety rating scale), *HDRS* (Hamilton's depression rating scale), and *YBOCS* (Yale Brown obsessive-compulsive scale).

E. Diagnostic standardised interviews: These instruments make the diagnostic assessment more standardised. These include *PSE* (Present state examination), *SCAN* (Schedules for Clinical Assessment in Neuropsychiatry), *SCID* (Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV), and *IPDE* (International Personality Disorder Examination), among many others.

Box 19.4:**FACE / HAND TEST**

The face/hand test is also useful in differentiating organic brain disorders from functional brain disease, e.g. psychoses. The patient sits with their eyes closed and their hands on their knees. The examiner strokes the patient's cheek and, at the same time, one hand. Alternate combinations of face and hand may be touched in random sequence and, each time, the patient is asked to report the contacts. Incorrect answers are associated with organic brain disease.

HISTORY**Symptoms**

- Alteration in height e.g. increase or decrease
- Weight gain or loss
- Polyuria and polydipsia
- Menstrual irregularity
- Thyroid swelling with or without signs of thyrotoxicosis
- Hypothyroidism or its features
- Gynaecomastia
- Hirsutism
- Myopathy or muscle weakness

Present history

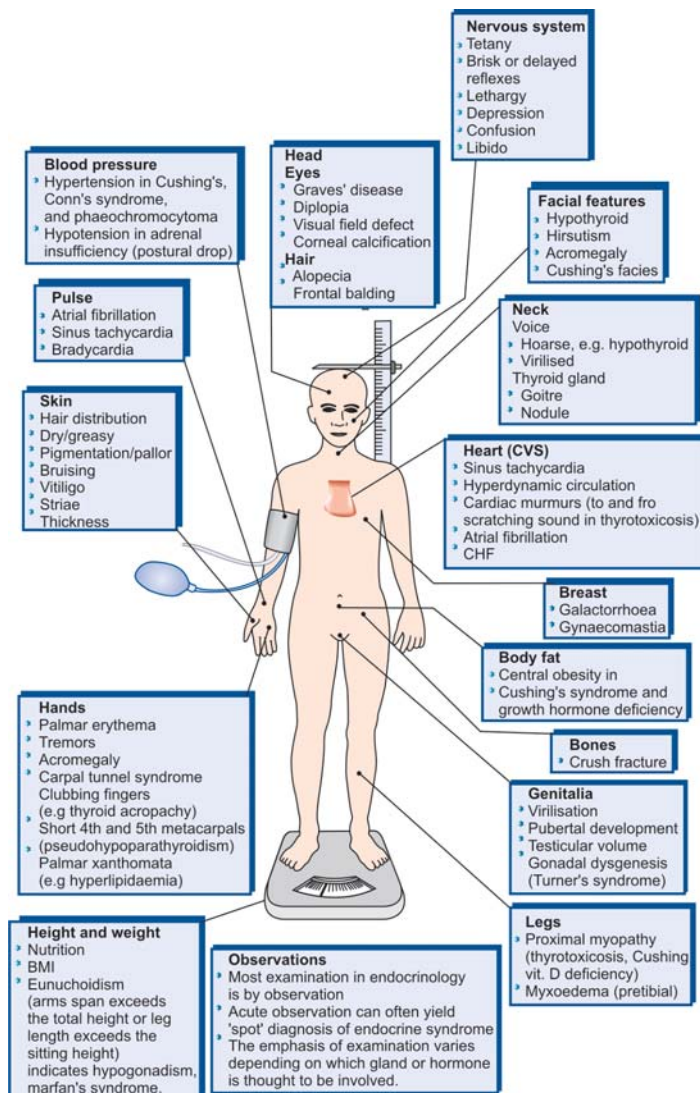
- Chronological order of symptoms
- Mode of onset, their progression and course
- Drugs treatment being taken e.g. replacement therapy or oral contraceptives

Past history e.g. details of pregnancies or PPH in females, previous surgery, radiation to neck or gonads and developmental milestones in children

Family history e.g. DM or any other endocrinal or autoimmune disease.

GENERAL PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

- **Appearance, built, height, weight BMI and body proportions**
- **Face** e.g. periorbital oedema, moon-facies, prognathism etc.
- **Eyes** e.g. exophthalmos, proptosis, signs of Grave's ophthalmopathy, visual acuity
- **Ear** e.g. deafness
- **Mouth** e.g. large protruding tongue, thick lips etc.
- **Neck** e.g. goitre, carotid pulsations/bruit, JVP.
- **Breast** e.g. Atrophy in female, gynaecomastia and galactorrhoea
- **Skin and hair** e.g. dry, wet, hair loss, hirsutism, striae, pigmentation, thin or thick skin, necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum
- **Extremities** e.g. Long/short, hands (longs/short/extra finger), ulceration, oedema feet, pressure sores or loss of fingers etc.



FORMAT FOR THE EXAMINATION OF ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

SYSTEMIC**EXAMINATION****1. Cardiovascular**

- Look for cardiomegaly
- Auscultate for change in heart rate, rhythm, murmur or any other abnormal sound

2. Nervous system

- Look for higher function, cranial nerve, speech
- Look for abnormal movements
- Motor system examination for brisk or delayed jerks or myopathy
- Sensory system examination for neuropathy including carpal tunnel syndrome

• Sensory system examination for neuropathy including carpal tunnel syndrome

3. Genitalia and breast

- Look genitalia for hyper or hypogonadism
- Virilisation
- Breast development, atrophy and galactorrhoea

4. Bone and joints

- Look for osteoporosis, crush fractures or arthropathy

5. Psychiatric assessment for depression or anxiety or abnormal behaviour.

Diagnosis and differential diagnosis Investigations

THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM AND METABOLISM

The endocrine system comprises of following glands.

1. Pituitary - a master endocrine gland.
2. Thyroid
3. Parathyroid
4. Adrenals
5. Gonads
6. Pancreatic islet cells

Metabolic disorders result due to;

- Biochemical abnormality
- Enzymatic defect
- Abnormal receptor mechanism

Diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidaemia, hyper and hypocalcaemia are some examples of disorder carbohydrate, fat and calcium metabolism.

Applied anatomy and physiology

Endocrinology is a branch of science that deals with the control and coordination of various endocrine glands within the human body so as to maintain healthy milieu interior.

The term '*hormone*' derived from Greek word means to 'excite' or 'to arouse', but today the fact is that all hormones are not excitatory, a few are inhibitory as well.

The '*endocrine effect*' means the hormone is released from the site of origin, enters the circulation and reaches the target site to exert its effect.

Hormone receptors: These are the specific receptor sites on the cell membranes called *hormone receptors* which recognise the hormones and translate them into biochemical effect.

Nature of the hormones: The hormones are either (i) *polypeptide* and *glycoproteins* or (ii) *aminoacid analogues* and their derivatives and (iii) *steroids* in nature.

Functions of hormones

1. Growth, development and cell differentiation.
2. Development and differentiation of sex organs.
3. Control of reproductive function.
4. Metabolic functions such as control of carbohydrates, proteins and fat metabolism.
5. Regulation of water, electrolyte and mineral metabolism.
6. Adaptation to stress.

Level of hormonal production and their sites of actions (Fig. 20.1)

The hormones are produced at three levels i.e. hypothalamus (releasing hormones), pituitary (trophic or

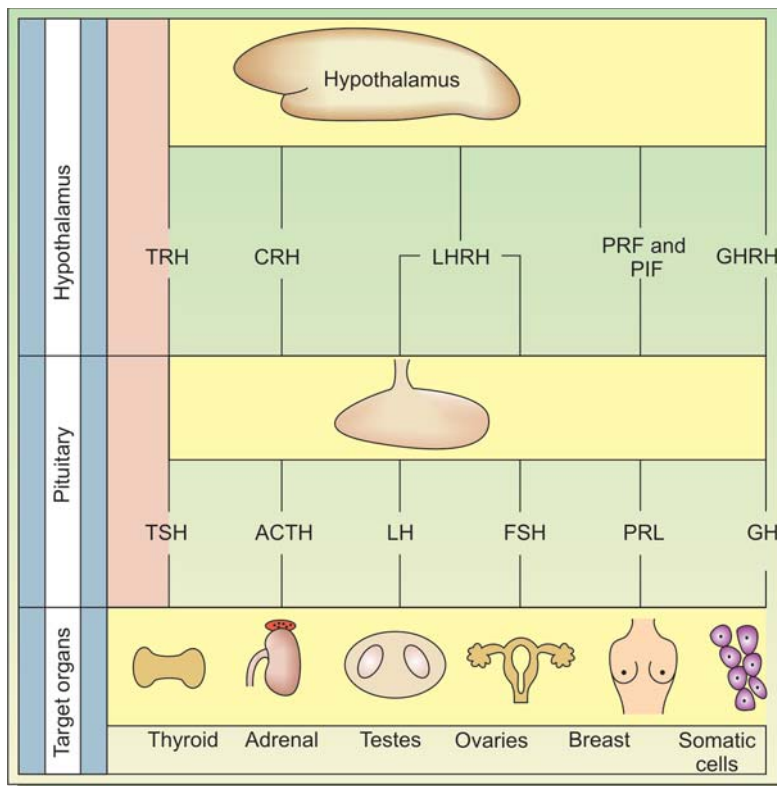


Fig. 20.1: Hierarchy of endocrine system

stimulating hormones) and target organ such as thyroid, parathyroid, adrenals, gonads etc. (active hormones or prohormones).

Feedback system (Fig. 20.2): In endocrinology, there is a feedback system of regulation of secretion of various hormones. Each hormone feed back on the cell producing or releasing a stimulatory hormone which either enhance or suppress its own secretion and secretion of other glands (negative feedback).

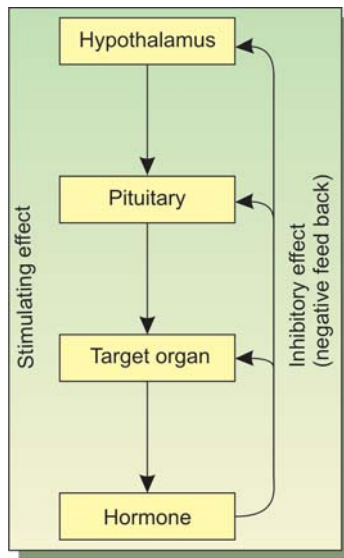


Fig. 20.2: Feedback system of hormone regulation

The inter-relationship between target hormones and trophic hormones

For diagnostic work-up of a case with endocrine disease, it is necessary to understand the relationship of target hormones and trophic hormones. The various hormones operate through hypothalamus-pituitary-target organ axis in which there are possibilities on hormone measurement (Fig. 20.3).

Clinical presentation

- The manner in which patients with endocrine disease present is extremely varied, reflecting the protein effects of hormone excess or deficiency.
- Most patients with endocrine disease present with non-specific symptoms. Often patients are first referred to other specialist clinics—for example, dermatology (pruritus of hyperthyroidism), cardiology (dysrhythmia of hyperthyroidism or phaeochromocytoma), diabetes (glycosuria of Cushing's syndrome).
- Duration of symptoms before diagnosis is also variable. The average duration of symptoms before consultation in Graves' thyrotoxicosis is 6 months;

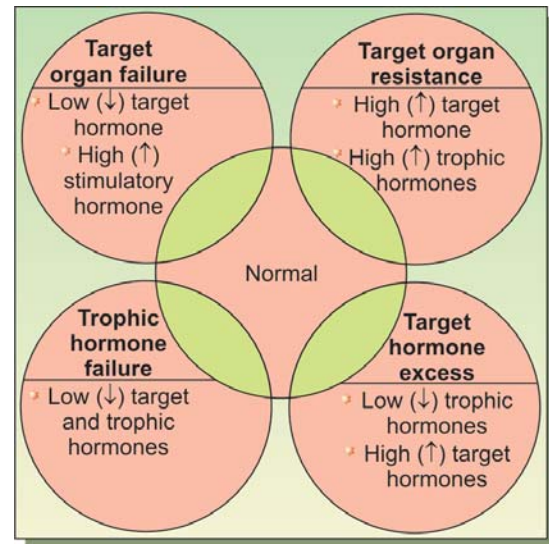


Fig. 20.3: The relationship between target hormones and their trophic (stimulatory) hormones. The unshaded lined areas show borderline or subclinical states

young patients often present more acutely. Most endocrine syndromes are insidious in onset, and are often diagnosed by chance (e.g. routine blood tests may detect hypercalcaemia or hypothyroidism), or when a change in appearance is noted by a friend or relative who has not seen the patient for some time (e.g. acromegaly or Cushing's syndrome), or when an acute complication arises (e.g. a hypoadrenal 'crisis' in Addison's disease or hypopituitarism, or pain following bleeding into a nodule in multinodular goitre).

- Apart from thyroid disease and diabetes mellitus, endocrine disease is relatively rare. So, although headache may be presenting complaint in patients with pituitary tumours, not every patient with headache is harbouring a macroadenoma stretching the diaphragma sellae. Similarly, obesity is much more likely to be idiopathic than to be caused by hypothyroidism or Cushing's syndrome.

Asymptomatic endocrine disease

This may be detected as a result of screening or indiscriminate biochemical testing; the most common being.

- subclinical hypothyroidism (raised serum TSH, normal T_4)
- hyperglycaemia (e.g. impaired glucose tolerance)
- mild primary hyperparathyroidism with serum calcium concentrations between 2.70 and 2.90 mmol/l.

Table 20.1: Common presenting symptoms of endocrinal disorders

Symptom	Most likely endocrine disorder (s)
<i>Lethargy and depression</i>	Hypothyroidism, diabetes mellitus, hyperparathyroidism, hypogonadism, adrenal insufficiency, Cushing's syndrome
<i>Weight gain</i>	Hypothyroidism, Cushing's syndrome, adiposogenital syndrome, obesity
<i>Weight loss</i>	Hyperthyroidism, adrenal insufficiency, diabetes mellitus (type 1), hypopituitarism, anorexia nervosa.
<i>Amenorrhoea/oligomenorrhoea</i>	Menopause, polycystic ovarian syndrome, hyperprolactinaemia, hyperthyroidism, premature ovarian failure, Cushing's syndrome
<i>Polyuria and polydipsia</i>	Diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus, hyperparathyroidism, Conn's syndrome
<i>Heat intolerance</i>	Hyperthyroidism, menopause
<i>Palpitations</i>	Hyperthyroidism, pheochromocytoma, Conn's syndrome
<i>Thyroid nodule</i>	Solitary thyroid nodule, dominant nodule in multinodular goitre
<i>Generalised thyroid enlargement</i>	Simple goitre (nodular or diffuse), Graves' disease, Hashimoto's thyroiditis
<i>Pain over thyroid</i>	Haemorrhage into nodule, de Quervain's thyroiditis, rarely Hashimoto's thyroiditis
<i>Prominence of eyes</i>	Graves' disease
<i>Hirsutism</i>	Idiopathic, polycystic ovarian syndrome, congenital adrenal hyperplasia, Cushing's syndrome, androgen secreting ovarian and adrenal tumours
<i>Galactorrhoea</i>	Hyperprolactinaemia (due to tumour, hypothyroidism, drug-induced, idiopathic)
<i>Impotence</i>	Hyperprolactinaemia, hypogonadism, diabetes mellitus
<i>Visual dysfunction</i>	Pituitary tumour, Grave's disease (e.g. <i>exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia</i>).
<i>Headache</i>	Acromegaly, pituitary tumour, pheochromocytoma
<i>Muscle weakness (usually proximal)</i>	Hyperthyroidism, Cushing's syndrome, hypokalaemia (e.g. Conn's and iatrogenic steroid therapy syndrome), hyperparathyroidism, hypogonadism, acromegaly, Vit. D deficiency and osteomalacia
<i>Paraesthesiae and tetany</i>	Hypoparathyroidism
<i>Recurrent ureteric colic</i>	Hyperparathyroidism
<i>Coarsening of features</i>	Acromegaly, hypothyroidism

Influence of gender

- Endocrine disease is more common, and often more obvious, in women. Hyperprolactinaemia causes galactorrhoea, amenorrhoea/oligomenorrhoea and infertility in the female and, as these symptoms usually prompt an early visit to the general practitioner, any underlying pituitary tumour (prolactinoma) is likely to be small.

- In the male the only symptom of hyperprolactinaemia may be impotence and, because of embarrassment or an acceptance that the problem may be age-related, any pituitary tumour is usually large at the time of presentation with headache, features of hypopituitarism or compression of surrounding structures, such as the optic chiasma.

The history

Maximum information can be gathered on the history in a patient with endocrinal disease. The patients of endocrinal disorders present with multiplicity of symptoms pertaining to various systems, hence, symptomatic enquires are essential for differential diagnosis of the symptoms. Similarly endocrinopathy may involve one gland or multiple glands simultaneously, subsequently needs a high degree of suspicion on the history. This is because treatment of one condition may cause worsening of other and because familial endocrinal syndromes do occur, hence, it is mandatory to take detailed history for systemic effects of the disease. In the present history, ask for;

- Chronological order of the symptoms and do their analysis (Table 20.1)
- Onset of symptoms, their progression and course
- Full drug history including oral contraceptive pills and replacement hormonal therapy

Past history

- Details of previous pregnancies (case of conception, postpartum haemorrhage – PPH)
- Previous surgery (e.g. thyroidectomy or orchidopexy)
- Radiation to neck, gonads, thyroid
- Drug treatment e.g. chemotherapy, oral contraceptives
- In children—ask for developmental milestones and growth.

Family history

Ask about family history of;

- Autoimmune disease
- Endocrine disease
- Essential hypertension
- Diabetes mellitus

Take family details of;

- Height and weight
- Body habitus
- Hair growth
- Age of sexual development

Social history

- Details of alcohol intake
- Details of occupation e.g. access to drugs, chemicals
- Diet e.g. salt, iodine, liquorice
- Menstrual history particularly in young women.

General physical examination (GPE)

The physical signs in endocrinal diseases arise either locally such as thyroid enlargement and its local effects, or due to systemic effects of the hormones (Table 20.2).

Table 20.2: Physical signs of endocrinal diseases

I. General

- Appearance/look / external features.
- Stature (short or tall)
- Enuchoidism (Measure upper and lower body segment and calculate their ratio)
- Weight (increased or reduced)
- Temperature (high or low)
- Pulse rate (high/low)
- Respiration (rate/rhythm)
- Blood pressure (lying down and standing)

II. Local signs

- Neck swelling
- Thyroid enlargement e.g note size, shape temperature, nodularity, tenderness and bruit

III. Signs due to systemic effects

(i) Cardiovascular

- Look for postural drop of BP
- Signs of autonomic dysfunction
- Arrhythmias (irregularly irregular pulse due to atrial fibrillation or VPCs).
- Signs of congestive heart failure

(ii) Eyes

Look for:

- Xanthelasma
- Corneal calcification-band keratopathy
- Proptosis/exophthalmos (unilateral/bilateral)
- Ophthalmoplegia (external/internal/complete)
- Lid retraction
- Lid lag sign
- Failure of furrows on looking up
- Visual acuity/field defect
- Fundus examination for retinopathy or optic atrophy

(iii) Neurological

- Generalised muscle wasting
- Proximal myopathy
- Peripheral neuropathy
- Carpal tunnel syndrome
- Gait abnormalities/ataxia
- Tendon reflexes (exaggerated/delayed/absent)
- Induction of tetany in a patient with hypocalcaemia

(iv) Reproduction and sex

- Failure of appearance of secondary sexual characters
- Gynaecomastia
- Delayed puberty
- Galactorrhoea

Contd...

- Precocious puberty
- Enlargement of clitoris

(v) Skin

Look for the followings:

- Hirsutism
- Thin and sparse hair
- Skin thickening/thinning (localised, generalised)
- Dry/wet skin
- Pigmentation (localised, generalised, mucous membrane)
- Striae (pink/white)
- Palmar erythema
- Necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum

(vi) Extremities

- Long or short
- Long/short hands and longer fingers
- Spade like hands
- Finger clubbing
- Short 4th and 5th metacarpals
- Subcutaneous nodules (xanthomatosis), gangrene of fingers or toe(s)
- Ulceration or pressure sores
- Loss of finger(s) or toes
- Oedema of feet (pitting or nonpitting)

- *Observe the general appearance. Assess the state of hydration. Measure the height, weight and calculate the BMI (kg/m^2).*

The various external appearance in various disorders have already been described in Chapter 3.

Normal BMI in men is 20-25 and in women is 18-24. The BMI $> 30 \text{ kg/m}^2$ is labelled as *obesity*. Obesity in endocrinal disorder is associated with Cushing's syndrome, hypothyroidism, Adiposo-genital syndrome etc.

The causes of weight loss have been described in Table 20.1

Tall stature is seen in endocrinal diseases e.g Gigantism, Kallmann's syndrome (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism), Laurence- Moon-Biedl syndrome, Klinefelter's syndrome, and connective tissue diseases (e.g. Marfan's syndrome)

Short stature (dwarfism) may be seen in hereditary disorders (Down's syndrome, Turner's syndrome), metabolic disorders (Rickets, osteomalacia, PEM, chronic renal failure), endocrinal disorders (hypothyroidism, hypopituitarism) and GI disorders (e.g. coeliac disease, Crohn's disease, steatorrhoea, cystic fibrosis).

- *If person is tall, measure body proportions. In case of obesity, note the redistribution of fat.*

Contd...

Enuchoidism is confirmed by measurement of body proportions (e.g. lower body proportion or leg length measured from the ground to symphysis pubis) exceeds the upper body proportion or sitting height (symphysis pubis to top of head). It can also be confirmed by measuring the arm span (distance between middle fingers of extended arms of both upper limbs) that exceeds total height (ground to top of the head). Enuchoidism is a feature of hypogonadism and Marfan's syndrome (see Fig. 3.4.).

Truncal obesity is seen in patients with Cushing's syndrome, adiposogenital syndrome and obese type 2 diabetes mellitus.

- Look for the vital signs e.g. pulse, BP, temperature and respiration.

Tachycardia is seen in hyperthyroidism, phaeochromocytoma and Conn's syndrome

Bradycardia is seen in hypothyroidism

Hypertension is seen in hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, phaeochromocytoma, Conn's syndrome

Hypotension is seen in Addison's disease

Rise in temperature is seen in hyperthyroidism while low body temperature occurs in hypothyroidism

Respiration may be increased in thyrotoxicosis, slow in hypothyroidism.

Examination of the skin

- Examine the skin for *hair* (thin, sparse, hirsutism or loss) *moistness* (dry or wet), *thickness* (rough and thick or fine and thin), *pigmentation* (localised, generalised, mucous membrane), *striae* (pink, white) and for any *erythema* (redness of palms) and *nodules*.

Androgenetic alopecia or frontal baldness (miniaturisation of hair follicle) is seen in males and females due to androgen excess.

Diffuse hair loss is seen in both hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism

Thin, shiny hair are seen in hyperthyroidism; while sparse hair are seen in hypothyroidism

Thick (toad-like), rough and dry skin is seen in hypothyroidism while skin is fine and moist in hyperthyroidism and phaeochromocytoma. Localised thickening particularly on the anterior aspect of the leg (pretibial myxoedema) is one of the feature of Grave's disease (dermopathy).

Marked thinning of skin (skin atrophy) with ulceration in the anterior tibial region may be due to necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum seen in diabetes mellitus.

Generalised pallor occurs in panhypopituitarism. In hyperthyroidism, the skin is wet, hot not flushed while in hypothyroidism, it is dry, pale-yellow and there is loss of hair on the lateral third of eyebrows.

Diffuse skin pigmentation (palmar creases, exposed parts of the body) with buccal and circumoral pigmentation is seen in Addison's disease. Excessive pigmentation occurs in Cushing's syndrome

Patches of depigmentation or vitiligo may also be seen in Addison's disease and autoimmune hyperthyroidism or prolonged steroid therapy.

Pink or violaceous striae are seen in Cushing's syndrome.

Multiple small subcutaneous nodules/xanthomas are seen in hyperthyroidism or hyperlipidaemia seen in patients with diabetes mellitus or familial hyperlipidaemia. There may be associated xanthelasmas.

For hirsutism Read case discussion in Bed side medicine-without tears by Prof. SN Chugh.

- In a patient with diabetes, look for the skin lesions common in diabetics
1. **Skin infections** e.g. boils, carbuncle, cellulitis, abscesses, mucocutaneous candidiasis, gangrene
 2. **Necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum** – erythematous plaques with brown waxy discolouration followed by atrophy and scarring of the skin in front of shin (pretibial region)
 3. **Diabetic dermopathy** - Hyperpigmented atrophic skin due to microangiopathy.
 4. **Diabetic stiff hands** (e.g. cheiroarthropathy). There is stiffness of small joints with tight waxy skin over the dorsum of fingers.
 5. **Scleroderma-like thickening of skin** starting from neck and trunk, may become generalised.
 6. **Diabetic bullae** - blistering and bullae formation on the skin of hands and feet without trauma. This is associated with polyneuropathy.
 7. **Granuloma annulare**: The condition is similar to necrobiosis lipoidica. In this, fleshy coloured annular, crescentic skin lesions are seen on the skin of extensor surface of fingers, hands, wrist, toes and ankles.
 8. **Eruptive xanthomas**: These are yellow coloured papules on the knee, elbow, back and buttocks due to associated hyperlipidaemia in diabetes.
 9. **Diabetic foot**: Foot ulceration at pressure points, digital necrosis, gangrene and infection are its components. It is due to neuropathy combined with vasculopathy and ultimately bone may be involved leading to osteomyelitis.

Examination of the eyes

- Look at the eyebrows, eyelids, eyelashes, eyeball, cornea, conjunctivae for any abnormality.

Lid retraction leading to exposure of cornea is seen in Grave's disease

Unilateral or bilateral exophthalmos (proptosis) is common in Grave's disease

Oedema of lids or periorbital oedema with thickening of skin and loss or sparseness of hair is seen in hypothyroidism.

Recurrent styes, chalazion or blephritis, conjunctivitis is common due to infection in diabetics. Xanthelasmas are seen in diabetes, hypothyroidism and hyperlipidaemia.

Paralytic squint occurs due to cranial nerve involvement in diabetes and, external ophthalmoplegia in Grave's disease.

Exposure keratitis, corneal ulceration may be seen in Grave's disease

Corneal calcification is seen in hypercalcaemia due to hyperparathyroidism.

- Test for visual acuity, visual field and ocular movements

Visual acuity is reduced in exophthalmic goitre (Grave's disease), hypothalamic-pituitary space occupying lesions and diabetes

Visual field defects are seen in pituitary tumours

Visual loss is seen in diabetes and rapidly enlarging pituitary tumours

Examine the ocular fundus for optic atrophy or retinopathy

Optic atrophy is seen in compression due to pituitary tumour

Retinopathy is seen in hypertension associated with endocrinal diseases and retinopathy due to diabetes (read diabetic retinopathy)

Look for various eyes signs (Read Synopsis of thyrotoxicosis later in this chapter) in case of thyrotoxicosis.

Examination of neck

- Look for pulsations in the neck

Pulsations of carotid vessels and of other neck vessels is visible in thyrotoxicosis.

Inspection of thyroid

Look at the thyroid region for the enlargement of thyroid (Fig. 20.4A). If thyroid is enlarged, look at the right and left lobes for their shape, size and presence nodule. Next see the isthmus for any nodule. Note the movement of the swelling on deglutition.



Figs 20.4A and B: Inspection of thyroid. **A:** Note the huge enlargement of thyroid with the obliteration of supraclavicular fossa. There is exophthalmos with visible sclera both above and below the cornea **B:** Pizzalo's method of demonstration of mild enlargement of thyroid

Thyroid enlargement causes swelling in the neck which encroaches the suprasternal notch and tries to obliterate it. The swelling moves with deglutition.

The causes of thyromegaly are:

- Goitre e.g. simple or puberty, diffuse toxic (Grave's disease) and nontoxic and nodular (single or multiple nodules) toxic and nontoxic goitre.
- Thyroiditis e.g. viral, postpartum and autoimmune (Hashimoto's thyroiditis)
- Malignancy of thyroid

If thyroid swelling is mild, then Pizzalo's method of inspection is used which makes the thyroid swelling more prominent (Fig 20.4B).

- In case of thyroid swelling, look for the distension of neck veins and veins over the upper thorax.

Neck veins and veins over the upper thorax are distended and visible in retrosternal goitre.

- If veins are prominent, try to establish the retrosternal extension of the goitre by asking the patient to raise both arms over the head and keep it there for a while.

Suffusion of the face and increased dilatation of the veins over the chest during this manoeuvre indicates retrosternal goitre. This is due to obstruction of veins at thoracic inlet by the goitre.

- In case of localised nontoxic thyroid swelling in the neck in a young person, ask the patient to protrude the tongue to differentiate thyroid nodule from thyroglossal cyst.

Thyroglossal cyst also produce midline swelling in the neck in thyroid region. Thyroid swelling and the thyroglossal cyst both move upwards on deglutition, but thyroglossal cyst also moves upwards with protrusion of the tongue while thyroid swelling does not - a differentiating feature.

Palpation of thyroid

The thyroid gland is easier to feel in a long slender neck than in a short stocky one. In shorter necks, added extension of neck may help. In some persons, thyroid is not amenable to physical examination because it is substernal. The steps for palpation of thyroid gland are given in the Box 20.1.

Box 20.1: METHOD OF PALPATION OF THE THYROID GLAND (Fig 20.5)

1. The patient is made to sit comfortably. The examiner should stand behind the patient.
2. Ask the patient to flex the neck so as to relax sternomastoid muscles.
3. Place the fingers of both hands on the patient's neck so that your index fingers lie just below the cricoid cartilage.
4. Ask the patient to sip some water or perform act of deglutition. Feel for the isthmus of thyroid moving up under your finger pulps (pads). It is often but not always palpable.
5. Now try to displace the thyroid to one side with the fingers of the hand of other side. Palpate one lateral lobe of the thyroid. Now perform the same act on the other side and palpate the other lobe.
6. Try to define the lower limit of the thyroid.
7. Alternatively, Lahey's method for palpating each lobe from the front instead of the back may often be more helpful.
8. *Note the size, shape, temperature, tenderness, consistency, nodularity and fixation of the thyroid swelling.*
9. To get below the thyroid place your index finger over the lower border of thyroid and now ask the patient to swallow. The thyroid swelling moves up and you can reach the lower limit. You can not each the lower limit in retrosternal and large goitres.

The temperature over the thyroid swelling is noted by placing back of the fingers over the swelling (Fig. 20.6). Tenderness is elicited by gentle pressure during palpation. Surface is judged by rolling the fingers over the thyroid, Fixity of the thyroid swelling is tested by moving the swelling from side to side and from above downwards.

Auscultate over the lateral lobes for a bruit (Fig. 20.7) if thyroid is enlarged.

Abnormalities of the thyroid gland (Read also the chapter 8)

Normally the thyroid gland is neither visible nor palpable

Goitre means thyroid enlargement the causes of which have already been discussed.



Fig. 20.5: Method of palpation of the thyroid (read the Box 20.1)



Fig. 20.6: Testing for the warmth/temperature of thyroid

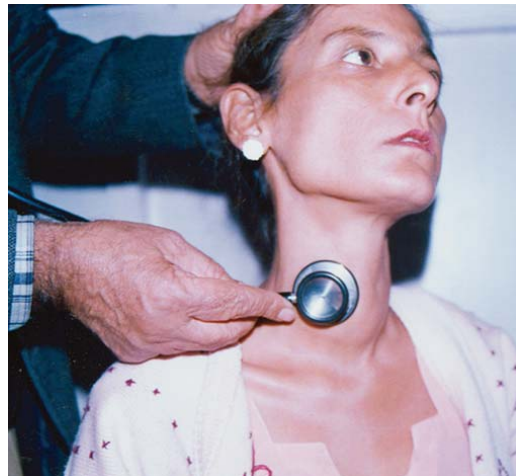


Fig. 20.7: Auscultation of thyroid for a bruit

Thyroid enlargement is mild in simple goitre (see Fig. 8.6), moderate in thyroiditis (see Fig. 8.8), a single thyroid nodule and in benign tumour and some cases of carcinoma, large in Grave's disease (Fig. 20.4A) and multinodular goitre (Fig 20.8).

Goitre is soft in Grave's disease, firm in Hashimoto's thyroiditis and hard in thyroid malignancy and Riedel's thyroiditis.

Thyroid tenderness is seen in thyroiditis.

Thyroid temperature is raised in Grave's disease, multinodular goitre

A localised systolic or continuous bruit may be heard in hyperthyroidism

A single focal nodule suggests either a cyst or adenoma or thyroid carcinoma.

- If thyroid is enlarged, note for its pressure effects e.g. dysphagia. (pressure on oesophagus), dysphasia or stridor (pressure on trachea) or hoarseness of voice (recurrent laryngeal nerve involvement) or Horner's syndrome (sympathetic trunk involvement)

Pressure on the trachea can be confirmed by Kocher's test i.e. pushing the trachea from one side will compress the lateral lobe and subsequently the trachea leading to stridor.

- Note the toxic manifestations. These are discussed under thyrotoxicosis. Fine tremors can be seen on extending hands in front of the body.
- Ascertain whether there are features of hypothyroidism (read hypothyroidism)

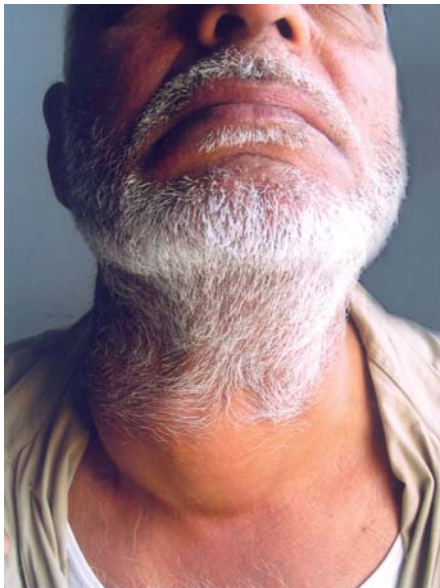


Fig. 20.8: Multinodular goitre

- To complete the examination of neck, palpate the cervical lymph nodes

Palpable and enlarged cervical lymph nodes with goitre indicate malignancy of thyroid.

- Measurement of thyroid swelling. It is difficult to measure the thyroid gland in isolation, however, measurements of neck at the most prominent part of the swelling is employed to assess the increase or decrease in the size of the thyroid swelling during treatment.

Examination of breast

The examination of breast and axillae has been discussed under chapter 9. Examine the breast for endocrinological point of view as follows:

- *Examine the male breast for gynaecomastia* (Read chapter 9 also and see Fig. 9.7 and 9.8)
Gynaecomastia means enlargement of male breast similar to female. This can be detected by palpation with palm of the hand or palpation of breast tissue with fingers for any nodule.
The presence of subareolar nodule >0.5 cm in diameter suggests gynaecomastia which may be physiological or pathological.
Pathological gynaecomastia must be suspected when the glandular tissue or nodule is > 4.0 cm in diameter or is gradually progressive.
Gynaecomastia must be distinguished from subareolar fat deposition by texture and shape of the breast. Comparison of the breast with nearby subcutaneous tissue provides a definite diagnosis.
- *Note whether gynaecomastia is unilateral* (Fig. 20.9) or bilateral.



Fig. 20.9: Gynaecomastia (right breast)



Fig. 20.10: Sheehan's syndrome. Note the atrophy of the breasts with failure of lactation

- Note whether breast enlargement is associated with generalised adiposity. Note the consistency and tenderness. True gynaecomastia is hard and tender (Read the causes of gynaecomastia in Table 9.3, Chapter 9).

Mammaplasia is soft gynaecomastia occurs following oestrogen therapy:

- Examine the female breast for atrophy (Fig 20.10)

Breast atrophy in females is seen in Addison's disease, Sheehan's syndrome and panhypopituitarism.

- Also ask about any discharge from the nipples and when it occurs. Does it occur on squeezing the nipple or is spontaneous.

Inappropriate secretion of milk in a nonlactating female is called *galactorrhoea*, may be *physiological* i.e. occurs only after squeezing the nipple or *pathological* (i.e. occurs spontaneously and can be seen as wetting of bra or night clothes without local stimulation.

- Try to demonstrate galactorrhoea by compressing the areola with your index finger placed in radial position around the nipple.

Milky discharge in nonlactating female (See the Fig 9.6 in chapter 9) should be investigated. It could be due to hormones or drugs.

- Is it unilateral or bilateral?

Galactorrhoea invariably is either due to hyperprolactinaemia (prolactin secreting tumour, hypothyroidism, drugs, idiopathic) or due to increased sensitivity to prolactin.

Examination of genitalia

The genital examination has already been discussed under the examination of abdomen genitourinary system examination (Chapter 14). Here, the examination of testes and ovaries being a part of endocrine system, will be discussed.

Inspection of testes and secondary sexual characters

- Look at the amount and distribution of body hair including beard growth, axillary hair and pubic hair. Note the presence of male pattern baldness. Note the presence of gynaecomastia and galactorrhoea as already discribed.

The failure of development of secondary sexual character indicates prepubertal hypogonadism (Fig 20.11A). While loss of libido and impotence suggest post-pubertal hypogonadism (Fig. 20.11B). Appearance of primary and secondary sexual characters in a male or female before 7 yrs of age is called *isosexual precocious puberty* (Fig 20.12)



Figs 20.11: A: Prepubertal hypergonadotrophic hypogonadism (Klinefelter's syndrome—46 XXY). Note the small penis with very small testes which are firm on palpation. Note bilateral gynaecomastia and enuroidism. B: Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (Kallmann's syndrome). Note the tall stature with small testes and penis. The patient had associated *anosmia*

- Note the presence or absence of testes in the scrotum. Absence of testes in the scrotum is called anorchia while hidden testes with empty scrotum is called *cryptorchidism*. (See Fig. 14.38).

Assess the testicular volume by palpation as well measure its volume by *prader orchidometer*.

Prepubertal testicular volume is < 4 ml. Increased volume implies pubertal gonadotropin stimulation.

The approximate ranges of testicular size are as follows:

Age	Testicular volume	Testicular length in cm	Testicular width in cm
Prepubertal	3-4	<3	<2
Postpubertal	4-15	3-4	2-3
Adult	20-30	4.5-5.5	2.8-3.3

- Note the consistency of the testes

The testes are small and firm in klinefelter's syndrome (Fig. 20.11A) and prepubertal hypogonadism (Fig. 20.11B)

The testes are soft and small in acquired hypogonadism or postpubertal hypogonadism.

- Inspect the external genital parts in female. Note the signs of virilisation.

Enlargement of clitoris is a feature of androgen excess. The signs of virilization are deepening of the voice, temporal balding, clitoromegaly and increased muscle mass.

Hypogonadism

Hypogonadism means hypofunctioning of the gonads which manifests either by deficiency in gametogenesis and/or secretion of gonadal hormones. Symptoms of hypogonadism depend primarily on the age of the patient at the time of development. Hypogonadism is seldom recognised before the age of the puberty unless it is associated with growth retardation or other anatomic or endocrine abnormalities. The features of hypogonadism in males and females are given in the Table 20.3. The causes of hypogonadism are listed in Table 20.4. The *primary* hypogonadism means involvement of gonads while *secondary* is due to hypothalamic pituitary disease. The primary hypogonadism may be hypergonadotrophic (\uparrow gonadotrophin) or hypogonadotrophic (low gonadotrophins) hypogonadism.



Fig. 20.12: Isosexual precocious puberty in a 7 yrs old girl. Note the enlarged breasts and genital parts resembling an adult female

Table 20.3: Clinical features of hypogonadism

I. Prepubertal hypogonadism (Fig 20.11)	
In Male	In Female
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Scanty pubic and axillary hair • Enuchooidism • Reduced muscle mass and strength • Gynaecomastia • Persistent high-pitched voice • Small testes, phallus and prostate 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Scanty pubic and axillary hair • Enuchooidism • Reduced muscle mass • Small atrophic breasts • Change in voice • Small atrophic uterus and tubes
II. Postpubertal hypogonadism	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of libido • Impotence • Progressive decline in muscle mass • Oligospermia or azospermia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of libido • Infertility • Dry vagina and dyspareunia • Primary amenorrhoea

Table 20.4: Causes of hypogonadism

1. Hypothalamic-pituitary disease

- Hypopituitarism
- Kallmann's syndrome (hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (Fig 20.15))
- Hyperprolactinaemia

Contd...

Cont...

2. Primary gonadal disease (Congenital)**In male**

- Anorchia/Leydig cell agenesis
- Klinefelter's syndrome (46XXY)
- Enzyme defect -5 reductase deficiency

In female

- Absent uterus, imperforate hymen
- Turner's syndrome (XO)
- Steroid biosynthetic defect

3. Primary gonadal disease (acquired)

- Testicular torsion
- Cryptorchidism
- Castration
- Chemotherapy/irradiation toxicity
- Infections e.g. orchitis due to mumps
- Systemic diseases
 - Renal failure, hepatic failure (cirrhosis)
 - sickle cell disease
 - Drugs and alcoholism
- Partial ovarian failure e.g. resistant ovarian syndrome or polycystic ovarian syndrome
- Premature ovarian failure
- Ovariectomy
- Chemotherapy/irradiation toxicity
- Oophritis or salpingo-oophritis leading to blockage of fallopian tubes
- Partial ovarian failure e.g. resistant ovarian syndrome or polycystic ovarian syndrome
- Systemic disorders
 - Renal failure, cirrhosis
 - liver, drugs

Examination of the extremities

- Look at the hands, fingers, feet and toes for any abnormality in shape and size of fingers or any other abnormality.

Systemic examination

The main systems involved in endocrinological disorders are, cardiovascular and nervous system. The examination of both these systems have been dealt as separate chapters. The same steps of examination are applied here. However, the findings in the system are summarised in Table 20.5:

Table 20.5: Systemic examination in endocrinal disorders

CVS	Nervous System
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bounding pulses and wide pulse pressure indicate hyperthyroidism. • Hypertension occurs in Conn's syndrome, Cushing's syndrome, thyrotoxicosis, phaeochromocytoma, thyrotoxicosis, hypothyroidism while hypotension occurs in Addison's disease • Postural hypotension indicates autonomic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Proximal myopathy with positive Gower's sign is seen in Cushing's syndrome, thyrotoxicosis and diabetic amyotrophy • Periodic muscle paralysis is seen in Conn's syndrome • Peripheral neuropathies with loss of tendon jerks are seen in diabetes • Hyper-reflexia is seen in thyrotoxicosis and phaeochromocytoma while

Cont...

Cont...

- dysfunction common in diabetics and hypoglycaemia.
- Arrhythmias (e.g. atrial fibrillation) are common in thyrotoxicosis
- Hyperdynamic circulation with flow murmurs occur in thyrotoxicosis.
- Ischaemic heart disease and CHF may occur in thyrotoxicosis, hypothyroidism and diabetes.
- delayed relaxation of Jerks is seen in myxoedema
- Carpal-tunnel syndrome or entrapment neuropathy is seen in hypothyroidism, pregnancy etc.
- Ataxia or gait abnormalities are common due to peripheral neuropathy, myopathy, and osteomalacia

- In case of carcinoma thyroid, always look for the metastatic manifestations in the lungs, liver and bone both clinically and on investigations.
- In case of anaplastic carcinoma of thyroid, even nonmetastatic manifestations may occur. These should be looked and patient should be investigated.

Investigations of a case with endocrinal disorders

Most diagnosis in endocrinology are based on results of biochemical investigations. A clear understanding of these tests is crucial, guided by the principles outlined in the Box 20.2.

Box 20.2:**PRINCIPLES OF ENDOCRINE INVESTIGATION****Timing of measurement**

- Release of many hormones is rhythmical (e.g. pulsatile, circadian or monthly), so random measurement may be invalid and sequential or dynamic tests may be required.

Choice of dynamic biochemical tests

- Abnormalities are often characterised by loss of normal regulation of hormone secretion
- If hormone deficiency is suspected, choose a stimulation test
- If hormone excess is suspected, choose a suppression test
- The more the tests available to choose from, the less likely is that any single test is infallible, so do not interpret one result in isolation.

Imaging

- Secretory cells also take up substrates, which can be labelled
- Most endocrine glands have a high prevalence of 'incidentalomas', so do not scan unless the biochemistry confirms endocrine dysfunction or the primary problem is a tumour.

Biopsy

- Many endocrine tumours are difficult to classify histologically (e.g. adrenal carcinoma and adenoma).

Stimulation and suppression tests used in endocrinology

General

Different laboratories have slightly different reference ranges for and even slightly different protocols for these tests. Always consult your own laboratory before performing complex, expensive and inconvenient tests. Also check what specimen is required (e.g. serum, plasma, urine) and whether any special handling is required (e.g. freezing).

The recent introduction of multichannel endocrine analysers by a number of different manufacturers increases the need for reference to local laboratory ranges and guidelines.

Date, time and sampling conditions (plus date of last menstrual period where appropriate) should always be noted on the request form as they are critical for interpretation.

Gonadal axis

Basal levels

Basal levels are often sufficient to indicate the site of the problem; they may also indicate the stage of the menstrual cycle or of puberty.

The international standard for I.U may change during the publication of this book with resultant changes in reference ranges—please check your own laboratory for their new values.

Box 20.3: BASAL LEVELS OF SEX HORMONES				
Adult male				
Testosterone	10-35 nmol/l			
Luteinizing hormone (LH)	1-10 U/l			
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	1-7 U/l			
Adult female				
	Follicular	Mid-cycle	Luteal	Post menopausal
LH (U/l)	2.5-21	25-70	1-10	>50
FSH (U/l)	1-10	6-25	0.3-21	>25
Oestradiol (pmol/l)	<110	500-1100	300-750	<150
Progesterone (nmol/l)	<12	–	>30	<3
Testosterone (nmol/l)	0.5-3.0			

LHRH test

100 µg of luteinizing hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) is given intravenously via an indwelling catheter at time 0; samples are taken at time 0, +20 and +60 min for LH and FSH. Normal responses are:

Normal response	20 min	60 min
<i>Female (follicular phase)</i>		
LH (U/l)	15-42	12-35
FSH (U/l)	1-11	1-25
<i>Male</i>		
LH (U/l)	13-58	11-48
FSH (U/l)	1-7	1-5

Sperm counts/seminal fluid analysis

Volume	2-6 ml
Density	20-200 × 10 ⁶ ml ⁻¹
Motility	>60% motile

Full assessment of normal and abnormal forms is needed for fertility work.

Prolactin

Stress can affect prolactin levels. To establish a definite abnormality several samples should be taken, ideally through an indwelling venous catheter.

Normal levels are <400 mU per litre in most laboratories. The significance of minor increases (400-600 mU/l) is disputed. Levels of 2000-5000 mU/l are strongly suggestive of a prolactinoma but can occur with other tumours/stalk disconnection.

Growth axis

Basal levels

Growth hormone (GH) release is episodic; however, an undetectable or very low level (<1 mU/l) on a random sample excludes acromegaly.

Acromegaly

In normal subjects, GH levels are suppressed to below 1-2 mU/l during an oral glucose tolerance test, but there is no effect in acromegaly.

GH deficiency

In children, exercise and arginine are often used to stimulate GH secretion; a level above 20 mU/l is a normal response. The insulin induced hypoglycaemia test is, however, the optimal test for adults and children.

The insulin induced hypoglycaemia test should only be used for children when essential and must only be performed in expert centres with considerable expertise and constant medical supervision.

Insulin test for GH reserve

After an overnight fast, a rapid-acting human insulin is administered at 9AM via an indwelling intravenous catheter. The dose is usually 0.15 U/kg body weight but should be 0.1 U/kg for hypopituitarism and 0.2-0.3 U/kg in cases of insulin resistance (e.g. acromegaly, Cushing's syndrome). Clinical hypoglycaemia and a blood glucose <2.2 mmol/l should be produced; if not, repeat the dose at 45 min. Samples are collected at 0, 30, 45, 60, 90 and 120 min.

The test should not be used in patients with epilepsy, heart disease or profound hypopituitarism—a normal ECG and a cortisol result > 150 nmol/l should be seen before the test. Syringes loaded with 50% dextrose and hydrocortisone must always be kept by the side during the test.

This test is also used to measure ACTH reserve (see below).

Thyroid axis

Basal levels

Levels of the thyroid hormones vary little by hour or day unless patients are acutely ill; basal levels thus are usually suffice. Normal thyroid profile is given in the Box 20.4.

Box 20.4: NORMAL THYROID PROFILE	
Total serum thyroxine (T ₄)	60-160 nmol/l
Free serum thyroxine (fT ₄)	13-30 pmol/l
Total serum tri-iodothyronine (T ₃)	1.2-3.1 nmol/l
Free serum tri-iodothyronine (fT ₃)	3.8 pmol/l
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	0.3-3.5 mU/l

TRH test—now much less used

200 µg of thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) is given via an indwelling intravenous catheter at time 0 after a basal sample is collected; subsequent samples are taken at 20 and 60 min. Normal responses (levels of TSH) are given in the Box 20.5:

Box 20.5: NORMAL TSH RESPONSE TO TRH

0 min	0.3-3.5 mU/l
20 min	3.4-20 mU/l
60 min	<20 mU/l
Increment	>20 mU/l

An excessive response indicates hypothyroidism; an inadequate one indicates either primary hyperthyroidism or pituitary disease.

Adrenal axis

All cortisol values here refer to specific assay methods, e.g. radioimmunoassay, and not to fluorimetry.

Basal levels

Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and cortisol levels vary episodically and with a circadian rhythm; single timed values are thus of limited use except at 9AM exactly, the peak of the circadian rhythm, when cortisol values are predictive of response to a stimulatory test:

The cortisol < 100 nmol/l is highly predictive of adrenal/pituitary failure

The cortisol > 500 nmol/l is highly predictive of intact adrenal/pituitary axis

Intermediate values are essentially of little value. The basal levels of adrenal hormones are given in the Box 20.6.

Box 20.6: THE REFERENCE RANGES OF ADRENAL HORMONES

Reference ranges

	0900 h	2400 h (must be asleep)
Cortisol (nmol/l)	180-700	<150
ACTH (ng/l)	10-80	<10

Intravenous synacthen test

This is now frequently used as a safer and easier surrogate for the insulin test, though it tests only adrenal reserve. A basal cortisol sample is taken at 0 min, followed by intravenous Synacthen 250 mg, and a further sample taken at 30 min. A cortisol value >550 nmol/l is normal.

Short ACTH stimulation test

This test is used to exclude Addison's disease. After taking a first sample for cortisol, 0.25 mg of tetracosactrin is given

Box 20.7: DEXAMETHASONE SUPPRESSION TESTS			
		Normal value	Comment
1. Overnight (Give 1-2 mg dexamethasone at bed time)	Cortisol 9 am	<100 nmol/L	• Screening test only • Confirm with low dose test
2. Low dose (48 hr) Give 0.5 mg dexamethasone 6 hrly for 48 hrs (8 doses)	9 am on day 0 and 2	< 50 nmol/L at the end of test	For diagnosis and differential diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome
3. High dose test i.e. 2 mg 6 hrly for 48 hrs (8 doses)	-do-	-do-	

at time 0. Further samples are taken at 30 and 60 min. Normal values are:

30 min	550-1160 nmol /l
60 min	690-1290 nmol /l
Increment	330-850 nmol /l

Dexamethasone suppression tests

These are used to exclude Cushing's syndrome. It is described in the Box 20.7.

Insulin test

This can be used to measure ACTH reserve (read investigation of an reserve). It should be performed where morning cortisol is ≥ 150 nmol/L. A normal response to hypoglycaemia (<45 mg%) produces cortisol level ≥ 550 nmol/L.

Endocrinology of blood pressure and thirst

Aldosterone (and plasma renin activity) should be measured at least 30 min of recumbency and possibly 4 hrs of ambulation. Normal response is given in the Box 20.8.

Box 20.8: NORMAL VALUES OF ALDOSTERONE	
Lying	100-500 pmol/L
Standing	200-1000 pmol/L

Thirst

As a screening test, measure osmolality of the plasma and urine (see the Box 20.9).

Box 20.9: NORMAL VALUES OF OSMOLALITY	
• Plasma	275-290 mosm/kg
• Urine	above 600 mosm/kg

Water deprivation test

Ask the patient to have free fluid intake at night. Start the test in the morning at 8.00 AM. Advise light breakfast, no coffee tea or smoking.

Maintain dehydration for 8 hrs with no access to fluids. Dry food is permitted. Plasma osmolality, urine osmolality and volume of the urine are measured hourly. Record the weight hourly also. Abandon the test if weight falls by > 3% of the body weight.

After 8 hrs, give 2 mg desmopressin IM; continue urine collection hourly (2-4 samples are sufficient). Patient may drink but intake over 12 hrs restricted to 1.5L \times volume excreted in dehydration period.

Results

1. Normal person will maintain plasma osmolality. Urine osmolality rises due to urine concentration to > 800 mosm/kg during dehydration, unenhanced by desmopressin.
2. In cranial diabetes insipidus (DI) urine will fail to concentrate during dehydration (e.g. urine osmolality does not rise); while plasma osmolality rises; this will be corrected by desmopressin with a urine osmolality > 800 mosm/kg. Persons with nephrogenic DI. behave as cranial DI initially but do not concentrate urine after desmopressin.
3. Patients with psychogenic polydipsia respond generally normally. Overlaps are, however not infrequent.

Endocrinal imaging

- I. **Plain X-ray head for pituitary fossa** (AP and lateral view) may be helpful in detecting abnormal calcification and its enlargement due to pituitary tumour (Fig 20.13).

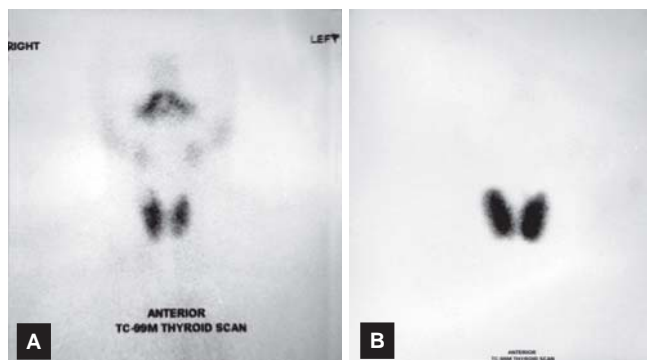
Plain X-ray abdomen may show renal calcification e.g. nephrocalcinosis in patients with long standing hypercalcaemia or renal tubular acidosis.



Fig 20.13: X-ray skull showing enlargement of pituitary fossa (↓) with destruction of clinoid processes

X-ray of soft tissue for heel pad (>23 mm) in case of acromegaly

- II. **Ultrasonography:** It is useful to detect nodularity and enlargement of thyroid, to detect adrenal mass, to detect polycystic ovarian disease and to evaluate the genital organ in hypogonadism.
- III. **CT scan:** It is useful in assessing the pituitary fossa (micro or macroadenoma), adrenal glands and thorax.
- IV. **MRI of pituitary** offers definite advantage over CT scan as it not only detects the pituitary tumour but its intrasellar and suprasellar extensions also.
- V. **Isotope imaging:** It is particularly useful for demonstrating autonomous function within endocrine tumours. This technique is useful and



A : Normal thyroid scan **B:** Hyperthyroidism

Fig. 20.14: Isotope imaging of thyroid

done by different isotopes for different glands i.e. radio-labelled pertechnetate for thyroid (Fig. 20.14). The adrenal cortex is scanned by radio-labelled sllencholesterol and adrenal medulla by radio-labelled meta-iodobenzylguanidine.

Serological tests

- Antibodies can be produced in autoimmune endocrine disorders which can be detected by different serological tests or radioimmunoassay. Anti-peroxidase antibodies are present in higher titres in autoimmune thyroiditis.

BRIEF SYNOPSIS OF FEW COMMON ENDOCRINAL DISORDERS

Thyrotoxicosis (Table 20.6 and Fig. 20.15)

Clinical presentations

- Patients usually present with goitre (swelling in the neck) with symptoms of thyrotoxicosis (listed in the

Table 20.6: Clinical manifestations of thyrotoxicosis


Symptoms		Signs
Weight loss Increased appetite Irritability/behavior change Restlessness Malaise Muscle weakness Tremulousness Vomiting Diarrhoea Eye complaints Goitre (diffuse, nodular) Oligomenorrhoea Loss of libido Gynaecomastia Onycholysis Tall stature (in children)	 <p>Fig. 20. 15: Multinodular toxic goitre. Note the large multiple nodules in both the lobes of thyroid with symptoms and signs of thyrotoxicosis</p>	I. C.N.S. Irritability Psychosis Hyperkinesia Tremors II. CVS Systolic hypertension Cardiac failure Tachycardia or atrial fibrillation Warm vasodilated peripheries Onycholysis Palmar erythema To and fro murmur III. Eyes (Fig. 20.15) Exophthalmos Lid lag, lid retraction Conjunctival oedema Ophthalmoplegia IV. Thyroid gland Thyroid acropachy Pretibial myxoedema Goitre, bruit Weight loss V. Nervous system Insomnia Proximal muscle wasting (shoulder and hips) Peripheral neuropathy

Fig. 20.15). These are cases of Grave's disease and nodular goitre.

- Patients may present with unexplained weight loss inspite of good appetite, without any diarrhoea or malabsorption.
- Patients may present with arrhythmias (atrial fibrillation) especially old patients.
- The young patients present with symptoms of sympathetic overactivity i.e. palpitations, nervousness, sweating, insomnia, tremulousness, weakness, menstrual irregularity (in females).
- Patients may present with psychiatric manifestations e.g. irritability, anger, hyperactivity, depression.

Note: Patient present in variety of ways because thyrotoxicosis disturbs the general metabolism in such a way that every system is affected and patient may present with symptoms related to any system (Fig. 20.15)

Definitions

Thyrotoxicosis implies a state of hyperthyroidism in which the thyroid hormone is toxic to the tissues producing clinical features; while hyperthyroidism simply implies excessive thyroid function. However, both are not synonymous, yet are used interchangeably.

Grave's disease: It is an autoimmune disorder characterised by hyperthyroidism, diffuse goitre, ophthalmopathy and dermopathy (pretibial myxoedema) and thyroid acropachy (clubbing fingers). A thyroid scan and antithyroid antibodies (TPO, TRAb) are diagnostic.

Causes of thyrotoxicosis (Box 20.10)

Box 20.10: CAUSES OF THYROTOXICOSIS		
<i>Common</i> (> 95%)	<i>Less common</i> (3-5%)	<i>Rare</i> (< 1%)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grave's disease • Multinodular goitre • Autonomously functioning solitary thyroid nodule 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thyroiditis e.g. subacute (de Quervain's) and postpartum • Drug induced (e.g. amiodarone, radioactive contrast media or iodine prophylaxis programme) • Factitious (self-induced) • Struma ovarii 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pituitary or ectopic TSH • Thyroid carcinoma

Methods of demonstration

1. Lid lag and lid retraction

Lid retraction means the upper eyelid is pulled higher up than the lower leading to exposure of the upper cornea

(Fig. 20.4A). It is due to overactivity of smooth muscles inserted into levator palpebral superioris. In exophthalmos, the lower eyelid is also retracted exposing the lower sclerae (Fig. 20.15).

Lid lag means the upper lid cannot cope with the movements of the eyeball when patient looks downward following an examinations finger moving downwards from above.

Both lid retraction and lid lag are not synonymous with exophthalmos. They are part of exophthalmos.

2. Exophthalmos (proptosis)

It simply means protusion of the eyeballs within the orbit due to push from behind due to increase in retrobulbar fat or oedema or cellular infiltration. This results in the prominence of the eyeball, staring look, retraction of the eyelids, and clear visibility of the upper and lower sclera. Note the following signs:

One should look for the various eye signs (Box 20.11)

Ophthalmoplegia: This means weakness of extraocular muscles due to oedema or cellular infiltration leading to ptosis (Fig 20.19) as a result of involvement of levator palpebral superioris, inward eyeball movement (lateral rectus palsy) or outward deviation of the eyeball (medial rectus palsy). These muscles palsy result in diplopia and prevents the patient looking upwards and inwards.

Chemosis: It means oedema of the conjunctivae which become oedematous, thickened and wrinkled. It is due to venous and lymphatic obstruction of conjunctivae by proptosis.

Classes of eye signs in thyrotoxicosis

Many scoring systems have been used to gauge the extent and activity of orbital changes in Grave's disease. As a mnemonic, the NO SPECS scheme is used to class the eye signs as follows;

- 0 = No sign or symptom
- 1 = Only sign (lid lag or retraction), no symptoms
- 2 = Soft tissue involvement (pretibial myxoedema)
- 3 = Proptosis (> 22 mm)
- 4 = Extraocular muscle involvement (diplopia)
- 5 = Corneal involvement
- 6 = Sight loss

Pretibial myxoedema - a sign of Grave's disease.

The name justifies the site of skin changes i.e. over the anterior and lateral aspects of the lower leg. The typical skin change is noninflamed, indurated, pink or purple colour plaque giving an 'orange-skin' appearance. Nodular involvement can uncommonly occur.

Box 20. 11:**VARIOUS EYE SIGNS IN THYROTOXICOSIS**

Fig. 20.16: Loss of furrows on looking up — Joffroy's sign positive

Joffroy's sign: Slightly flex the neck with face looking downwards. Now ask the patient to make wrinkles over forehead by looking up. Absence of wrinkling indicates the sign is positive (Fig. 20.16).

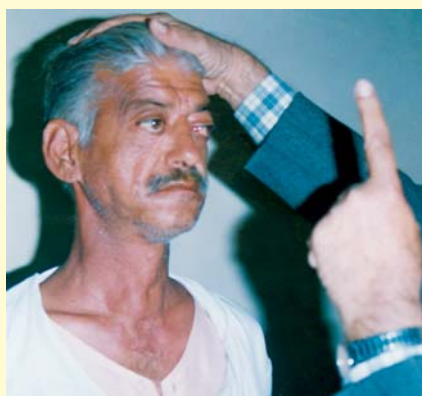


Fig. 20.18: Failure of accommodation (internal ophthalmoplegia) in a patient of exophthalmos (moebius sign positive)

Moebius sign: This means inability or failure to converge the eyeball (Fig. 20.18) when a finger is brought in front of the eyes



Fig. 20.17: Failure of elevation of upper eyelids on looking upwards due to inactivity of levator palpebral superioris. The upper lid does not move due to levator palpebral muscle paralysis. In such a case lid lag sign can not be elicited i.e., negative

Von Graefe's sign (Lid lag, Fig. 20.17). Ask the patient first look straight. Bring your index finger in front of one eye. Now instruct the patient to follow the movements of the finger which is moved slowly from above downwards. The upper eyelid lags behind the eyeball which is easily appreciated.



Fig. 20.19: Lower palpebral conjunctiva is clearly visible in a patient of thyrotoxicosis with bilateral ptosis (external ophthalmoplegia). In a patient with ophthalmoplegia with ptosis, the visibility of the lower sclera indicates lid retraction

Daivympie's sign (lid retraction): This means the visibility of lower sclera due to retraction of the lower eyelid (Fig 20.19). Ask the patient to look straight, the visibility of lower sclera indicate positive sign

Differential diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis

The two common conditions causing thyrotoxicosis are compared in the Table 20.7.

Hypothyroidism (Table 20.8 and Fig. 20.20)

Definitions

Hypothyroidism is clinical condition reflecting hypofunctioning thyroid gland, characterised by low

levels of circulating thyroid hormones. It is called *primary* when the cause of it lies in the thyroid gland itself. It becomes *secondary* when hyperthyroidism occurs due to disease of anterior pituitary or hypothalamus.

Goitrous hypothyroidism means enlargement of thyroid gland associated with hypothyroidism.

Subclinical hypothyroidism means biochemical evidence of hypothyroidism (normal T₃ and T₄ but raised TSH) without any symptoms of hypothyroidism

Table 20.7: Differential diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis

Feature	Grave's disease	Toxic multinodular goitre
Age	Young age	Old age
Sex	Common in females	Common in females
Goitre	Diffuse, firm, smooth. Bruit is heard commonly	Nodular, firm to hard, irregular surface. No bruit.
Eye signs	Common	Uncommon.
Dermopathy (pretibial myxoedema)	May occur	Does not occur
Severity of thyrotoxicosis	Moderate to severe	Mild to moderate
Atrial fibrillation	Common	More common
Compression symptoms	Uncommon	Common
Cause	Autoimmune, may be associated with other autoimmune diseases	Autonomous
Treatment of choice	Drug therapy	Surgery or radioactive iodine

Table 20.8: The symptoms signs of adult hypothyroidism

Symptoms	Signs	
Tiredness/malaise	Mental slowness	Large tongue
Weight gain	Psychosis/dementia	
Anorexia	Ataxia	Periorbital oedema
Cold intolerance	Poverty of movement	Deep voice
Poor memory	Deafness	Goitre (sometime)
Change in appearance		
Depression	'Peaches and cream' complexion	Dry skin
Psychosis	Dry thin hair	Mild obesity
Coma	Loss of eyebrows	Myotonia
Deafness		Muscular hypertrophy
Poor libido/loss of libido	Hypertension	Proximal myopathy
Goitre in some cases	Hypothermia	Slow-relaxing reflexes
Puffy eyes or periorbital swelling	Heart failure	
Dry, brittle, hair	Anaemia	
Bradycardia	Pericardial effusion	
Dry, coarse skin		
Arthralgia		
Myalgia		
Constipation		
Menorrhagia or oligomenorrhoea in women		
A history from a relative is often rewarding		
Symptoms of other autoimmune disease may be present		



Fig. 20.20: Clinical manifestations of hypothyroidism

Cold peripheries
Carpal tunnel syndrome
Oedema

(asymptomatic hypothyroidism). The cause of subclinical hypothyroidism are same as described under transient hypothyroidism. It may persist for many years. Treatment with replacement therapy with small dose of thyroxine is indicated.

Transient hypothyroidism refers to a state of reversible thyroid function, often observed.

- During the first 6 months after subtotal thyroidectomy or ¹³¹I treatment of Grave's disease.
- Post-thyrotoxic phase of subacute thyroiditis
- Postpartum thyroiditis i.e.
- In some neonates, transplacental passage of TSH receptors-binding antibodies (TRABs) from the mother with Grave's disease or autoimmune thyroid disease may cause transient hypothyroidism.

Congenital hypothyroidism is asymptomatic state detected during routine screening of TSH levels in blood spot samples obtained 5-7 days after birth. It results either from thyroid agenesis, ectopic hypoplastic glands or from dyshormogenesis. Early detection and early treatment with replacement thyroxine therapy is mandatory to prevent irreversible brain damage.

Causes of hypothyroidism

(Read case discussion in Bedside Medicine—without tears by Prof SN Chugh.

Simple goitre versus goitrous hypothyroidism: The difference between simple diffuse goitre and Hashimoto's thyroiditis are given in the Table 20.9.

Clinical presentations

- Infants (< 1 year) present with mental retardation, pot belly, large protruding tongue (macroglossia), flat nose, dry skin, sparse hair and delayed milestones of

development, other features of hypothyroidism are present. The condition is called *cretinism* (Fig. 20.21A).

- The adolescents with hypothyroidism e.g. juvenile hypothyroidism ((Fig. 20.21B)) present with short stature, retarded growth, poor performance at school, delayed puberty and sexual maturation. Other features of adult hypothyroidism are present.
- The adult patients present with symptoms and signs illustrated in Fig. 20.20. Usual presentation is



Figs 20.21(A and B): **A. Cretinism** A child showing short stature, retarded growth with coarse features (e.g. oedematous face, thick dry skin, thick lips etc.). He had mental retardation. He developed these features at the age of one year. **B: Juvenile hypothyroidism** in a 16 year girl. She had short stature and retarded growth. She had not started menstruating. Secondary sexual characters are not developed. Note the coarse features on the face i.e. thick lips, oedematous and wrinkle free face.

Table 20.9: Differentiation between two common causes of diffuse goitre

Feature	Simple diffuse goitre (See Fig. 8.15)	Goitre due to Hashimoto thyroiditis (Fig. 8.17)
Age	Common in young girls (15-25 yrs) or during pregnancy	Common in young females (20-50 yrs)
Thyroid enlargement	Mild, tends to be noticed by friends and relative	Large
Goitre	Soft, nontender	Firm, tender
Prevalence	Endemic or sporadic	Sporadic
Symptoms	Asymptomatic or there is a tight sensation in neck.	Pain radiating to jaw or neck, increased during swallowing, coughing and neck movement.
Cause	Suboptimal dietary iodine intake and minor degrees of dyshormogenesis	Autoimmune disease.
Thyroid status	Normal	25% cases are hypothyroid at presentation, others become later on
Thyroid antibodies (TPO antibodies)	Negative	Positive (95% cases)

Table 20.10: Clinical manifestations of GH excess

System	Symptoms	Signs
General	Fatigue, perspiration, heat intolerance and weight gain.	Stout built, overweight and coarse facial features.
Skin and soft tissues	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large hands and feet leading to increased in size of shoes and gloves • Oily skin • Hypertrichosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moist, warm, stout hand with doughy hand shake, increased heel pad (>23 mm) • Skin tags • Increased heel pad • Acanthosis nigricans
Head	Headache, large head with increase in size of hat	• Frontal bossing, parotid enlargement
Eyes	Decreased vision	• Visual field defects
Ears and para nasal sinuses	Large ears and sinusitis	• Large ears and paranasal sinuses
Oral cavity and mouth	Large tongue, voice change, malocclusion of teeth, large thick lips	• Enlarged furrowed tongue with teeth indentation on it.
CVS	Congestive heart failure	• Widely spaced teeth
Genitourinary system	Decreased libido, impotence, oligomenorrhoea,	• Hypertension, cardiomegaly
Neurological muscles	Paraesthesias, hypersomnolence, weakness	• Infertility
Skeletal system	Joint pains (shoulder, knees)	• Carpal tunnel syndrome, proximal myopathy, Osteoarthritis

myxoedema in which features of hypothyroidism are associated with myxomatous changes in skin (dry, toad-like skin, puffiness of face, hands and feet, larynx, (hoarseness of voice) tongue (slurred speech), and ear (leading to deafness). They may complain of carpal tunnel syndrome (entrapment neuropathy).

- Majority of the women present with rapid increase in weight, menstrual irregularity, mental feature (depression) or slowness of activity and generalised ache and pains.

Gigantism and acromegaly (Figs 20.22 A and B and Table 20.10)

Gigantism is a disorder due to excess of GH before fusion of epiphyses resulting in tall stature with stout muscular built; while GH excess after fusion of epiphyses results in normal stature with enlargement of acral parts (hands and feet), a condition called *acromegaly*. If GH excess occurs during puberty before fusion of epiphyses and continues after that will lead to a clinical picture of Giganto-acromegaly. The most common cause is a pituitary tumour or prolactinoma. The effect of excess of GH is visible on all tissues (soft), bones, hands and feet (Fig. 20.22). In addition, compression effects of the pituitary tumour may be noticeable if present. The symptoms and signs of GH excess are given in the Table 20.10.

Cushing syndrome (Table 20.11, Fig. 20.23)

Cushing's syndrome is a clinical condition characterised by increased levels of free circulating glucocorticoids and



A: Gigantism

B: Acromegaly

Figs 20.22A and B: Gigantism (GH excess before the fusion of epiphyses). Note the tall stature, strong muscular built, long Tall, ears, lips and long hands with stout large fingers. B. Acromegaly (excess of GH after the epiphyses have fused). Note the stout stock built with spade-like hands and short stubby fingers

their effects on the various systems of the body. It occurs most often following the therapeutic administration of synthetic steroids or rarely a pituitary tumour or adrenal hyperplasia. It may be *primary* (e.g. adrenal disease) or *secondary* (hypochalamic-pituitary disease). Cushingoid features (pseudocushing's syndrome) may be due to obesity or alcohol consumption.

Causes of Cushing's syndrome (Fig. 20.23)

- Adrenal hyperplasia secondary to hypothalamic-pituitary involvement
 - Pituitary-hypothalamic disorder

Table 20.11: The clinical features of Cushing's syndrome


Symptoms		Signs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight gain (94%) • Obesity • Hirsutism • Fatigue, muscle weakness and backache (85%) • Psychological changes and depression • Blackening of skin • Increased chances of fever, cough and other symptoms of infection • Menstrual irregularity i.e. amenorrhoea (70%) • Polyuria, polydipsia (25%) 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hirsutism (80%) • Oedema (60%) • Hypertension (80%) • Truncal or centripetal obesity (97%) • Camel hump • Moon-facies • Acne • Scanty menses • Cutaneous striae (65-70%) • Easy bruisability (55-60%) • Back pain, fracture and osteoporosis • Emotional lability and personality changes (60%) • Pigmentation • Hypokalaemic alkalosis • Predisposition to infection • Clitoromegaly (15%)

Fig. 20.23: Cushing's syndrome. Note the presence of moon-facies, truncal obesity and pink striae

Note: The incidence of some symptoms and signs is indicated within bracket.

- ACTH secreting tumour
 - Nonendocrine ACTH/CRH secreting tumours (para-neoplastic syndromes)
2. **Adrenal nodular hyperplasia**
 3. **Neoplasm of the adrenals**
Adenoma
carcinoma
 4. **Iatrogenic**
 - Prolonged use of corticosteroids, prolonged use of ACTH.

Addison's disease (Fig. 20.24 and Table 20.12)

It is a clinical condition characterised by hypoadrenal state and its related effects. All the three adrenal hormones e.g. glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids and androgens are reduced. It may be *primary* (adrenal atrophy) or *secondary* (hypothalamic-pituitary disease).

Causes

They are as follows:

- Primary Addison's disease**
 - Surgical removal
 - Infection e.g. tuberculosis, fungal, viral, AIDS
 - Haemorrhage
 - Metastatic deposits
 - Autoimmune destruction
 - Congenital defects in hormone biosynthesis
- Secondary Addison's disease** (involvement of hypothalamus or pituitary)
 - Hypopituitarism
 - Hypothalamic-pituitary disease

- Hypothalamic-pituitary axis suppression by exogenous or endogenous steroids

Table 20.12: Clinical manifestations of Addison's disease

Symptoms and signs
I. Glucocorticoids insufficiency <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight loss • Malaise • Nausea and Vomiting • Anorexia
II. Mineralocorticoids insufficiency <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypotension • Salt loss • Syncope
III. Loss of androgens <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of axillary and pubic hair in females • Sparse body hair
IV. Increased ACTH secretion <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hyperpigmentation of sun-exposed areas, elbow, knees, creases of palm, knuckles, mucous membrane of mouth, scars etc.
V. General <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fatigue • Asthenia or generalised weakness. • Sunken eyeballs, cheeks, thin legs and oedema.



Fig. 20.24: A patient of Addison's disease. Note sunken cheeks, eyeballs, dry pigmented skin and mucous membrane. Patient had long duration of diarrhoea and developed pedal oedema. Such a patient is likely to develop acute crisis during sepsis or surgery

Hypopituitarism (Fig. 20.25 and Table 20.13)

It means deficiency of more than one pituitary hormones. The manifestations due to deficiency of each hormone are presented in the Table 20.13 with Figure 20.25.

Table 20.13: Clinical manifestations of hypopituitarism

Deficiency of hormone	Manifestations
GH deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short stature or growth failure in children Fine wrinkling around the eyes and mouth, muscle mass decreased.
Gonadotrophin deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In <i>males</i>: Decreased libido, decreased beard and body hair and preservation of scalp hair line In <i>females</i>: Amenorrhoea and infertility, loss of axillary and pubic hair
TSH deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hypothyroidism features e.g. fatigue, cold intolerance, thick puffy skin, no goitre
ACTH deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fatigue, decreased appetite, weight loss, decreased skin and nipple pigmentation, hypotension. No hyperpigmentation, hyperkalaemia or potassium loss-these are features of primary Addison's disease
Prolactin deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure of lactation in postpartum female.
ADH deficiency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diabetes insipidus with polyuria and polydipsia.



Fig. 20.25: An adolescent girl (16 yrs F) with panhypopituitarism. Note the stunted growth, failure of secondary sexual characters, No menarche, thick skin, cold intolerance, weight loss

Causes

The causes are listed in Table 20.14.

Table 20.14: Causes of panhypopituitarism

1. Hypothalamic

(a) Congenital

- Gonadotrophin releasing hormone (LHRH) deficiency, i.e. Kallmann's syndrome (Fig. 20.11B).
- Isolated GH deficiency.

(b) Acquired

- Tumours such as craniopharyngioma.
- Radiation.
- Head injury.
- Tuberculosis or sarcoidosis.
- Histiocytosis 'X'

2. Pituitary

- Tumours.
- Radiotherapy
- Postpartum necrosis (Sheehan's syndrome)
- Autoimmune
- Haemorrhage.
- Surgery
- Head injury

Diabetes mellitus (Fig. 20.26)

It is a metabolic disorder characterised by hyperglycaemia, glycosuria due to either lack of insulin (type 1) or insulin resistance (type 2). Diabetes mellitus (DM) may be *primary* (type 1 and type 2) or *secondary* due to pancreatic disease, endocrinopathies, drugs or genetic disorders. Type 1 diabetes is HLA-linked autoimmune insulinitis with destruction of Langerhan's cells in the pancreas while type 2 is related to insulin resistance due to several factors. The diagnostic criteria are given in the Box 20.12.

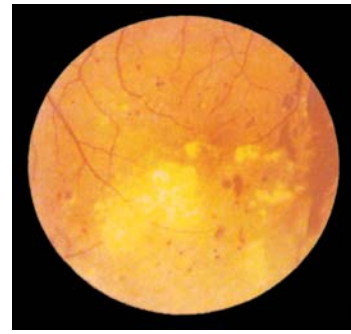
Box 20.12: DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA (ADA AND WHO) FOR DM

Condition	Venous plasma glucose in mg% (mmol/l)	
	Fasting	Postprandial (2hr GTT)*
Normal	<110(6.1)	<140(7.3)
DM	>126(7.0)	>200(11.1)
Impaired fasting glycaemia (IFG)	>110 and <126	<140
Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT)	<126	>140 and <200

* 2hr GTT means following 75 g of oral glucose.

Clinical presentations of diabetes mellitus

- Type 1 diabetics present with a triad of symptoms of hyperglycaemia e.g. polyuria, polydipsia and polyphagia and there is associated weight loss. In some cases, the disease is heralded by the appearance of ketoacidosis during an intercurrent illness or following surgery.
- Type 2 diabetics present to different specialists and superspecialists with features pertaining to various organs/system (Box 20.13).



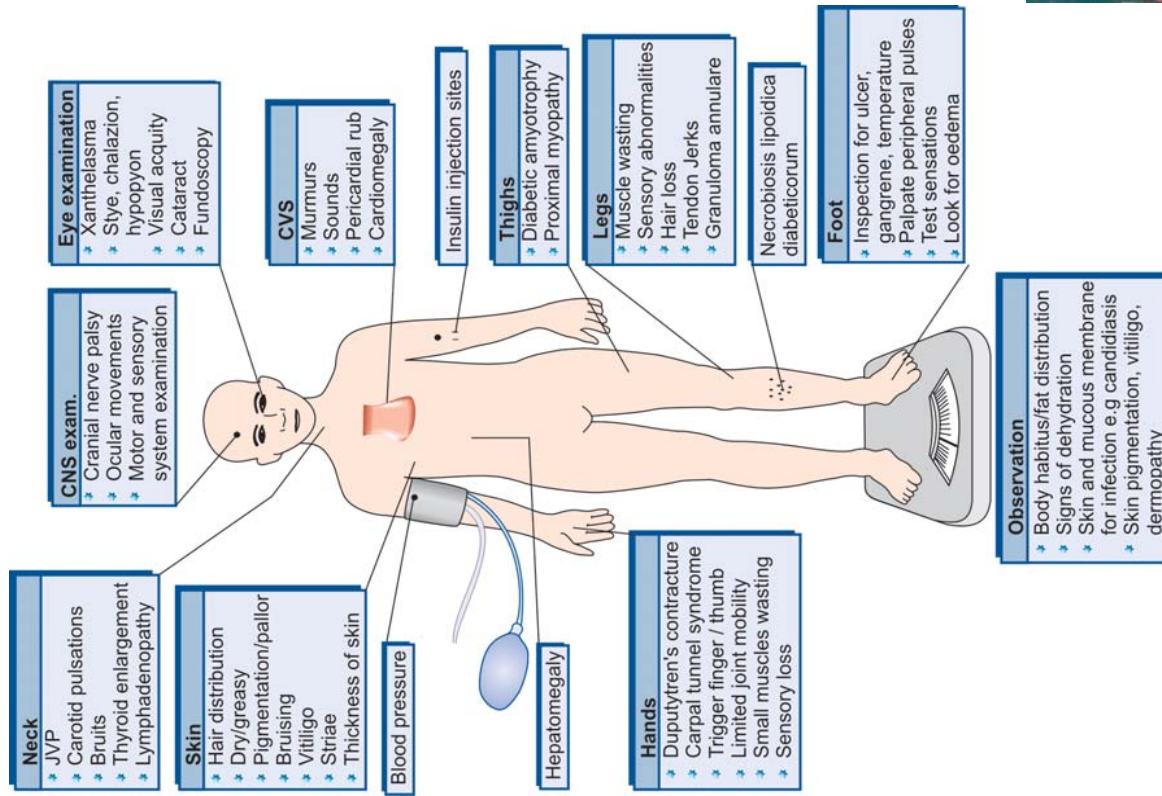
Diabetic retinopathy: Retinal painting showing microaneurysms, haemorrhages (dots and blots) with hard exudates. There is an evidence of neovascularisation



Foot ulcer in a diabetic patient: This is a non-healing bone deep ulcer on the right sole at base of great toe. This occurred as a result of tissue necrosis due to ischaemia, neuropathy and infection



Diabetic nephropathy



Carbuncle(→)



Furuncle/boil (→)



Cellulitis—debridement done

Fig. 20.26: Complete examination of a patient with diabetes mellitus

Box 20.13: CLINICAL PRESENTATIONS OF TYPE 2 DM

Organ/system involved	Features
• Eye	Recurrent styes, chalazion, anterior uveitis (hypopyon), refractory errors with frequent change of glasses, cataract, keratitis, conjunctivitis and retinopathy, ocular nerve palsy.
• Urinary tract	• Urinary tract infection, acute pyelitis, or pyelonephritis, acute papillary necrosis, sterile pyuria, stone formation, nephrotic syndrome (diabetic nephropathy-Fig. 20.26)
• GI tract	• Chronic diarrhoea, malabsorption, gastroparesis, adynamic ileus, GI infections
• Genital tract	<i>In females:</i> pruritus vulvae, vaginal discharge, menstrual irregularities, recurrent abortions, infertility <i>In males:</i> loss of libido, impotence, urethritis
• Cardiovascular	Ischaemic heart disease (silent angina or acute coronary syndrome), hypertension, peripheral vascular disease (cold extremities, digital gangrene, (20.26) diabetic foot (Fig. 20.26)
• Nervous system	• TIA, recurrent strokes, peripheral neuropathies, autonomic neuropathy, mononeuritis multiplex, diabetic amyotrophy, cranial nerve palsy.
• Skin	• Multiple boils, carbuncle, abscesses, cellulitis (Fig. 20.26) pressure sores (20.26)
• Respiratory	• Pneumonias, lungs abscess, tuberculosis
• Immunity	Diabetes is an immunocompromised state, predisposes to infection at each and every site/system.

Table 20.15: Classification, clinical features of neuropathy

Classification	Symptoms and signs
I. Somatic	
(i) Symmetric sensory and distal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tingling or burning sensation in the extremities (hands and feet), nocturnal pain in limbs, numbness and coldness of extremities. • Glove and stocking type of anaesthesia.

Contd...

Contd...

(ii) Asymmetric, motor, proximal (diabetic amyotrophy)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Loss of tendon reflexes and muscle wasting. • Disorganisation of joints (Charcot's joints). • Abnormal gait (wide based, thumping gait). • Nerve conduction velocity delayed in distal parts. • Lower motor neuron paralysis with wasting of muscles. • Hyper or hypoesthesia may be present on anterior aspect of things. • Lower limbs are commonly involved than upper limbs. • Tendon reflexes are lost on affected side. • Lumbosacral area is the site of involvement.
Mononeuropathy	
• Mononeuritis (cranial or spinal)	• 3rd and 6th cranial nerves involvement common producing diplopia and loss of eye movements.
• Mononeuritis multiplex	• Carpal tunnel syndrome with ulnar and median nerve involvement (wrist drop)
II. Autonomic (visceral)	
(a) Cardiovascular	• Vertigo, giddiness and blurring of vision due to postural hypotension resting tachycardia and fixed heart rate.
(b) Gastrointestinal	• Nausea, vomiting, abdominal distension, nocturnal diarrhoea, constipation due to colonic atony, gastroparesis, dysphagia due to oesophageal atony.
(c) Genitourinary	• Loss of libido, impotence, urinary incontinence, difficulty in micturition (atony of bladder)
(d) Sudomotor and vasomotor	• Abnormal or gustatory sweating, anhidrosis, fissuring of feet, cold extremities, dependent oedema.
(e) Eye (Pupils)	• Constriction of pupils, absent or delayed light reflex.

UNIT IV

Appendices

Appendices

517 - 535

Appendices

APPENDIX – I

- Sample collection and venepuncture
- Sample collection for microbial and serological tests
- Collection of samples for other tissues
- Examination of various specimens
- Chemical analysis of urine
- Semen analysis

Sample Collection

Correct sample collection and correct type of container are essential for laboratory investigations. Specimens taken/obtained are taken to the laboratory by the ward boy as soon as they are obtained. If they are to be sent by post, then they should be suitably packed and labelled “Handle with care” and “pathological specimens”. Such samples /specimen are first sealed in the inner container and placed in a secure carton containing sufficient absorbent material so as to dry up all the liquid contents spilled if the inner container is broken.

Local and International regulations for the transmission of pathological material must be adhered to strictly.

Suitable container are usually provided by the laboratory that is going to analyse the sample/specimen. All the container must be clean and sterile for microbial examinations; while the container for blood sample must be perfectly dry. They should have properly fitting cap or lid.

It is essential to use correct container for each investigations, for example, anticoagulant may be necessary for certain investigations while coagulated blood may be needed for others. It is also essential that suitable amount of the blood should be put into the container.

It is also mandatory that the nurse/doctor taking the blood sample must use the sterilised/disposable type of syringe and needle.

Venepuncture (Fig. A.1)

This is to make a puncture in the vein to collect the sample. The site selected is the vein in the antecubital fossa or any other prominent superficial vein.

The steps of venepuncture are:

1. Make the vein prominent by a tourniquet (use a piece of rubber tubing, duputta, a sling or by manual squeezing of arm, etc) applied over the middle of the arm.
2. Clean the area to be punctured by alcohol/spirit/savlon or any other antiseptic solution.
3. Stretch the skin at the elbow with your left hand.
4. The patient is asked to make fist. Introduce the needle in the vein and move it upwards further in the direction of the vein.
5. The blood will enter automatically into the syringe. The venous blood is dark in colour. Take the required amount of the blood in the syringe. Remove the tourniquet, before the needle is withdrawn.
6. Alternatively, you can remove the tourniquet as soon as the needle enters the vein so that free flowing blood is withdrawn as in shocked patients.
7. As soon as the needle is withdrawn, a swab is placed on the punctured site and the patient is asked to bend the elbow so that forearm presses over the swab against the arm for one minute or so.



Fig. A.1: Blood sample collection by nurse

- N.B.** 1. Occasionally, a vein may not be visible at the elbow. In that case, you can collect the sample from any other superficial vein over the forearm or wrist remembering that procedure at these sites is painful.
2. A vein which can be felt easily, can be entered easily than the vein which is just seen.

8. Collect the blood sample in the appropriate container for the test required. Remove the needle first from the syringe and then push the blood into the container, since forcing of the blood through the needle may cause haemolysis.
9. Heparin and EDTA are the commonly employed anticoagulants. EDTA can be used for most haematological investigations and heparin for most simple chemical tests.
10. For blood group and serological investigation, blood should be taken into a dry sterile bottle or tube. If specimen has to be sent to the laboratory by post, it is best to wait till the blood has clotted. Some serum should then be removed with a sterile needle and syringe and this serum is sent separately together with blood clot.

Other specimens

Urine, faeces, peritoneal fluid, pleural fluid, pericardial fluid, gastric and pancreatic juice, arterial blood, semen, nasal secretions, CSF and fluid aspirated from the cyst (cyst puncture) and pus may be also be collected and sent to the laboratory. The method of collection of these samples has been discussed in the appropriate chapters.

Making the best use of the result

All the tests are subject to the errors of performance. The clinician must inform back the pathologist in case of

'*rougue*' result which does not correspond with the clinical data. All results will depend on the precision of the method and the variability of the quality measured among the healthy population.

In nonquantitative test such as cytology, there may be false-positives and false-negatives. The laboratory should be able to say with what frequency these may occur. For instance, in cases of bronchial carcinoma, the finding of malignant cells in the sputum is diagnostic, and detected most often but in a very small number of examinations, apparently malignant cells in the sputum may be reported when there is no evidence of bronchial carcinoma. The clinician should consider such finding in the light of his clinical data. If patient is middle aged smoker, the report of malignant cell would be likely to be true positive as bronchial carcinoma is prevalent in such cases without symptoms. On the other hand, such a positive sputum for malignant cells in a young non-smoking girl is unacceptable and is likely to be false, hence require reassessment. *Precision* is the measure of repeatability of determination. This is employed in quantitative biochemical or haematological tests. The precision of measurement has to be linked to the variations of the true value in the healthy population. Therefore it is conventional to express the normal range as the mean value plus or minus 2 SD (standard deviations). Although 95% of all normal results will fall within this range, and 5% will fall out of this range. Therefore a value just outside this range does not necessarily indicate abnormality.

Microbial tests

Successful microbial culture depends on the viability of the organisms. The overgrowth of the normal flora can hinder in the detection of the pathogens. It is, therefore, necessary to collect the sample for microbial culture properly and by proper technique as careless collection of such samples can cause cross-contamination with the organisms present on the skin surface or in the environment.

The organisms in the specimen can either be detected directly or by the antibody response to the infecting organism (antigen). Direct examination of the stained smear of the sample under light (Fig. A.2.) or electron microscope will visualise the organism directly. Success of such examination depends on the presence of a large number of the organisms in the specimen, for example, in the pus. If fewer organisms are present, a sensitive technique is required to demonstrate them, hence, in a such a situation culture techniques are employed by allowing the organisms to multiply.

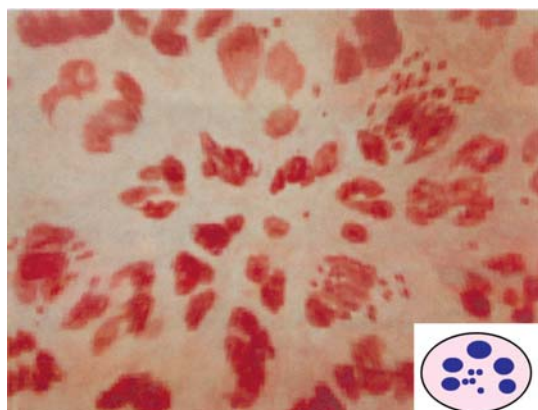


Fig. A.2: Gram Stain of urethral discharge showing Gram-negative intracellular and extracellular diplococci

Most modern methods such as PCR (polymerase chain reaction) have been developed to detect gene or gene products specific to the organism, allowing direct detection even when only a small number of the organisms are present. Although these newer techniques are very sensitive, unless meticulous care is taken both during collection of the specimen and during performance of the test contamination with other antigens or proteins is a problem that reduces the specificity of the result. In addition, specificity may not be much because antigens are shared amongst the organisms and between the patient's tissue and the organism etc but specificity is important.

Serological test

Usually antibodies are detected so far in the serum. Now technique are available to detect the antigen also, therefore, serological test depends on the detection of either antigen or antibody or both. Now-a-days you can perform these serological tests not in the blood but in other samples also such as saliva, CSF and ascitic/pleural fluid etc. The total antibody response or specific IgM or IgG titres can be assessed. The total antibody response and IgG response are used to study the prevalence of the disease in a community. For active disease, it is necessary to demonstrate four fold rise in the IgM level specific to the organism in the specimen studied during the course of the illness.

Collection of the samples of other tissues (CSF, pus, fluid)

A sufficient amount of the material must be supplied to the laboratory for analysis. Generally about 10-15 g of the

tissue or discharge and up to 25 ml of the fluid are necessary. If only very small amounts of the material are available the material should be sent in a sterile container containing isotonic saline never in the formal saline available. In such a situation where the material is small, it is best to summon the laboratory personnel to the bedside to make culture there.

If it is not possible to send the sufficient required material for culture, then a swab may be taken and sent. Ensure that the correct swab supplied by the laboratory is used as swabs vary according to which pathogen is sought (Box A.1).

Box A.1:

SWABS FOR CULTURE

- *Plain swab without transport medium:* They are used for hardy microorganisms only.
- *Plain swab with transport medium:* They are useful for general bacteriology
- *Swab with charcoal (black) transport:* Useful for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, and other delicate bacteria
- *Plain swab with virus transport medium:* Essential to gently squeeze swab in transport medium. Virus transport medium contains antibiotics and is not suitable for bacterial culture
- *Chlamydial swab with transport medium:* Used for detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* antigen by immunoassay. Designed for urogenital and ophthalmic specimens only
- *Wire swab with transport medium:* It is used for nasal pertussis infection

Blood culture

Blood cultures are done for isolation of bacteria or viruses.

Bacterial pathogens

Blood culture for bacterial pathogens is useful in the investigation of almost all infections. Bacteria are often present in blood in only very low concentrations, and their viability and growth potential may be inhibited by antibiotic treatment. Since so many infections accompanied by septicaemia may be caused by many organisms (mixed infections). It is important to inoculate bottles containing a variety of different culture media. The media used should be suitable for aerobic and anaerobic pathogens, and for fastidious species such as *Brucella spp.*, *Mycobacteria spp.*, *Leptospira spp.*, and for non-bacterial pathogens such as fungi. Antibacterial substances present in the patient's blood can be inactivated by dilution (at least 1:10), by the addition of

specific enzymes, e.g. penicillinase, or by absorption by resins.

Before taking blood sample the patient's skin and the bottle cap should be cleaned with antiseptic solution and allowed to dry. At least three sets of blood cultures should be taken, preferably before antibiotic therapy is started. Occasionally, particularly if endocarditis is suspected, it may be necessary to take up to six sets of cultures before a negative result can be declared.

Viral pathogens

Sterile heparinized blood sample should be sent to the laboratory for virus studies.

Serology

Clotted blood in a container without additives is required for serology.

Urine culture

Urine specimens (Box A.2) should be transferred to the laboratory within 1 hour of voiding, unless specific precautions are taken to prevent bacterial multiplication before cultures are set up. Urine specimens may be stored overnight at 4°C. If this is not possible then a commercial kit for culture of the specimen at the bedside should be used. Several commercial 'chemical' kits are available, but experience in their sensitivity and specificity is limited at present.

Mid-stream (MSU) or suprapubic aspiration techniques are suitable for general bacterial and viral culture of urine, but are unsuitable for typhoid or tuberculosis. In the diagnosis of the latter infection three early morning urine (EMU) specimens should be

submitted to the laboratory. For the diagnosis of schistosomiasis the terminal 5 ml of a freshly voided specimen is required.

Examination of faeces

Bacterial pathogens

Human faeces contain approximately 10^{11} organisms/g wet weight as normal flora, but gut bacterial pathogens rarely exceed 10^5 organisms/g. Because of the relative scarcity of bacteria in faecal specimens examination of a Gram-stained smear of faeces is not usually done. However, occasionally in infections caused by *Campylobacter* spp. the typical seagull-shaped Gram-negative bacteria are present in sufficient numbers to be identifiable in a directly stained smear of a faecal specimen.

The definite diagnosis of bacterial infections of the gut is by culture. Correct collection and transportation of the specimen to the laboratory is, therefore, important, since incorrect technique can lead to the death of the pathogen or to overgrowth by normal gut flora.

Collection of the specimen

Approximately 20 ml of stool should be collected on three different occasions as early as possible in the illness and placed in three separate, sterile containers. For immediate transport to the laboratory dry sterile containers are suitable but, if there is a delay in transfer to the laboratory, the faecal specimen should be placed in a suitable preservative, for example in 0.0033 M phosphate buffer mixed with an equal volume of glycerol, at pH 7.0. If possible, include any mucus or blood passed in the faeces in the specimen submitted.

As there are a large number of bacterial species causing diarrhoea, the laboratory will use many different selective culture media in order to isolate them. It is essential to note on the accompanying request form any relevant clinical detail or data to enable the laboratory staff to seek the most likely pathogens. Important information includes a history of travel to potential endemic areas, prior antibiotic therapy, any known outbreak of sporadic disease, possible contamination of food, and any associated immune suppressive disease.

Viral pathogens

Many of the viruses which cause diarrhoea can be cultured. Diagnosis is therefore often made by immunological techniques, or by electron microscopic identification of the virus.

Box A.2: URINE SAMPLE FOR CULTURE AND SENSITIVITY

Catheter specimen of urine (CSU)

Aspirate the urine, via a 21 gauge needle and syringe, from the rubberized part of the tubing connecting the catheter to the collection bag. Do not collect urine from the tap outlet to the bag.

Early morning urine (EMU)

Send the entire first-voided specimen, usually about 250 ml, to the laboratory in the large sterile container provided. Three consecutive morning specimens should be taken.

Mid-stream urine (MSU)

A urine specimen is taken during mid-micturition by the patient, after instruction, or with the assistance of a nurse, after the labia or penile orifice have been cleaned with chlorhexidine

Collection of specimens

In contrast to the techniques used for collection when viral pathogens are suspected, chemical preservatives should not be used. Specimens should be taken into a dry sterile container and sent to the laboratory promptly, or frozen at -20°C (-70°C is normal but rarely available). For direct detection of viral particles by electron microscopy many particles must be present. Electron microscopy is a specific but not very sensitive technique.

Parasitic infections

For detection of *Entamoeba histolytica* infestation the faecal specimen must be kept at body temperature until can be examined. Other cysts and ova can be detected by examination of stool sent in a plain sterile container.

The respiratory tract

Material may be taken for detection of bacteria and viral infections. Specimens can be taken from throat, the nasopharynx, sputum or by bronchoalveolar lavage, as appropriate.

Throat swabs

Vigorously swab the tonsillar areas, the pharynx, and any areas of visible inflammation exudation, ulceration or membrane formation. For bacterial cultures, use a plain swab with transport medium. For viral detection, use a plain swab with viral transport medium. The specimen should be sent immediately to the laboratory, or stored at 4°C and should not be frozen.

Nasopharynx

Specimens of nasopharyngeal secretions are used principally for diagnosis of pertussis infection—an uncommon disorder in developed countries where immunization programmes have been largely effective in preventing whooping cough.

The specimen is obtained using a wire nasal swab. The swab is passed gently along the base of the nostril into the nasopharynx, rotated, removed and placed into transport medium. The laboratory may need prior warning of the arrival of the specimen so that appropriate culture media can be prepared.

For detection of viral pathogens from the nasopharynx an aspirated specimen is obtained using a suction catheter.

Sputum

For best results an early morning freshly expectorated sputum specimen should be collected in a dry, sterile

bottle, preferably with the help of a physiotherapist. For isolation of mycobacteria three consecutive morning specimens should be obtained.

Bronchoalveolar lavage

This technique may be helpful when lower respiratory tract infection is suspected, e.g. *Legionella* spp., *Nocardia* spp., *Pneumocystis carinii*, *Mycobacterium* spp. and *Cytomegalovirus* infections.

The genital tract

Different methods are used for particular genital infection (Box A.3).

Box A.3: MICROBIOLOGICAL INVESTIGATION OF THE GENITAL TRACT

Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection

- Urethral and/or endocervical (not high vaginal), rectal or throat swabs
- Use charcoal transport medium

Chlamydia trachomatis

- Endocervical (not high vaginal) or urethral specimen
- Inoculate in transport medium
- Abnormal specimens will contain pus cells
- Specimen can be stored at $2-8^{\circ}\text{C}$

Candida spp. and *Trichomonas* spp.

- High vaginal swab in plain transport medium

Herpes simplex virus (HSV)

- Most successful in first 3 days of infection
- Use plain sterile swab to collect vesicular fluid into viral transport medium
- Air-dried smears of scrapings from base of vesicles can be used for direct examination by immunofluorescence

Pelvic inflammatory disease

- Send endocervical swabs or pus in charcoal transport medium

The skin

Dermatophytes and *Candida albicans*

Keratinized specimens, e.g. hair, skin scrapings or nail cuttings, should be sent enclosed in black paper, for ease of recognition. Do not use sticky tape.

Virus detection

There are certain methods to detect virus in the skin scrapings.

The eyes

There are methods for detection of bacterial and viral pathogens.

Bacterial pathogens**Conjunctival infection**

Using a firm action, thoroughly swab the inner surface of the lower and then the upper eyelid, using a separate swab for each eye. Use a plain swab and a transport medium. For gonorrhoeal infection use a charcoal transport medium.

Intraocular infection

Bedside inoculation of tiny quantities of aspirated material can be performed by the ophthalmologist.

Viral pathogens

A swab moistened with sterile saline is used to collect secretions from the palpebral conjunctiva; this is inserted into a transport medium.

Scrapings from cornea or conjunctiva can be collected by the ophthalmologist.

Chlamydia infection

Specimens should contain as many epithelial cells as possible, but should not consist of pus. See above for special precautions.

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF THE URINE

The urine is analyzed for proteins, sugar, ketones and urobilinogen. However, the commercial reagent strip tests are available for bedside analysis of the urine. However, the chemical tests are reliable, cheap and use commonly available reagents, they are, therefore, still useful when reagent strip tests are not available.

Proteinuria**The boiling test**

The test is simple. Fill the two-third of test tube with urine. If urine is alkaline, make it acidic (pH5) by adding 10% acetic acid drop by drop and mixing it thoroughly. The pH is measured by indicator paper (litmus paper). Boil the top 2 cm of the tube over a flame while holding the bottom of the tube. Examine the test tube for cloudiness against a dark background. A cloudiness indicates presence of either the protein or phosphate in the urine. Phosphate will dissolve and cloudiness will disappear after adding few drops of more acid. If turbidity/cloudiness persists despite addition of acid, then it is due to protein precipitation and urine is said to be positive for protein. This is a qualitative test. The boiling test is positive only when patient has overt proteinuria. The microalbuminuria is not detected by this test.

The false positive results are given by penicillins, tolbutamide, radiocontrast medium, sulphonamides, PAS and when urine contains a lot of uric acid.

The salicylsulphonic acid test

Take 5 ml of urine in a test tube. Add 20% salicylsulphonic acid drop by drop till a cloudy precipitate is formed or till 25-30 drops have been added. If precipitate is formed, continue to add salicylsulphonic acid until no more precipitate is formed. Express the amount present as haze (1⁺), cloud (2⁺) or granular precipitate (3⁺). In general, haze indicates 20 mg protein/100 ml. A heavier deposit or precipitate is allowed to settle down for half an hour or one hour. Now the quantity is expressed as the proportion of the urine i.e. volume occupied by the precipitate/deposit. If this proportion is one half, then the urine contains 10g protein/litre.

False positive results are similar to the boiling test.

Dipstick test

This is available as a bedside test and can be done by the patient himself, if his eyesight and colour vision is normal. The end of the strip containing the chemical incorporated into the strip is dipped into the urine for a specified period. The change in colour of the strip compared to the colour on the bottle which indicates the loss of proteins.

Urine for 24 hour proteinuria

The urine is collected in a container and volume of the urine is noted during 24 hours. The quantitative analysis of urine by Esbach's albuminometer in measured quantity of urine is done and then proteinuria is calculated depending on the amount of urine passed. It is expressed in grams/day. The test separates the patients with asymptomatic urinary abnormalities (proteinuria is <1g/day) from nephrotic syndrome (subnephrotic range of proteinuria, i.e. <3g%) from nephrotic syndrome (>3.5g/day proteinuria).

Tests for urine sugar**Benedict's test for reducing sugars**

Take 5 ml of Benedict's reagent in a test tube. Add 8 drops of the urine, boil for 2 minutes and allow the test tube to cool. If a reducing substance is present, a precipitate will appear varying from light green colour turbidity to red coloured precipitate (Fig. A.3). The test is not specific for glucose and a positive reaction is given by any reducing

substance present in the urine. Therefore, vit. C and aspirin may give false positive result.

If colour change is due to sugar only then the test gives appropriately quantitative results (Fig. A.3)

Test for Bence-Jones protein's

Bence Jones protein's are light chains, secreted in multiple myeloma and light chain myeloma. Take 5 ml of urine in a test tube and heat the urine with thermometer inside. At 45°C, Bence-Jones protein appear in the urine as a precipitate and remain in the urine upto 58°C. If heating is continued beyond it, the precipitate dissolves. Now cool the urine. The precipitate will reappear on cooling at 60°C.

If the amount of light chain in the urine is low, then immunoelectrophoresis of the urine is method of choice.

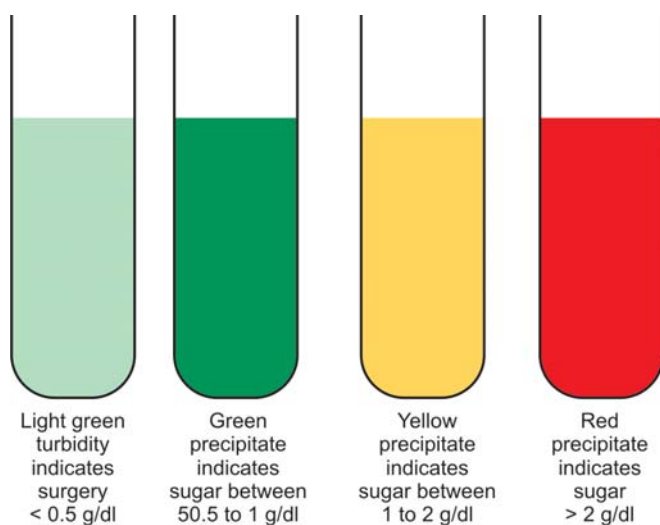


Fig. A.3: Benedict's test

Test for microalbuminuria

It is detected by immunometric assay.

Dipstick test (uristix-test - Fig. A.4)

Urine for glycosuria is employed for screening the public or individual for presence of diabetes. Glycosuria does not mean diabetes could be innocuous as renal glycosuria or alimentary glycosuria or could be due to diabetes renal glycosuria is an inherited condition in which the renal threshold for glucose is reduced resulting in appearance of glucose in urine at a level which is lower than renal threshold i.e. < 180 mg %). On the other hand, glycosuria in diabetes occurs when glucose levels are higher than renal threshold.

The clintix test is bed side dip test in which a strip impregnated with chemical is dipped in the urine for a

specified period (10 sec/30 sec) as per manufacturer's instruction. The colour obtained on the strip is compared with the colour code provided on the bottle by the manufacturer for quantification. In this way, glycosuria can be detected immediately. The dipstick method a glucose-oxidase method, detects glucose in the urine, hence, is specific.



Fig. A.4: Uristix test for sugar

Urine for ketone bodies

Rothera's test

Take 10 ml of urine in a test tube. Saturate the urine with an excess of ammonium sulphate crystals. Now add 3 drops of freshly prepared strong solution of sodium nitroprusside and 2 ml of strong ammonia solution is added further. A deep purple colour over the top of the solution indicates positive test for ketone bodies (acetone and acetoacetic acid). If Rothera's test is negative; ketones are absent.

Ferric chloride (Gerhardt's) test

Take 5 ml of urine in a test tube. Add drop by drop 10 % ferric chloride solution. A precipitate of ferric phosphate usually forms which dissolves when more ferric chloride is added. Brownish-red colouration of the solution indicates positive test and detects the presence of only acetoacetic acid not the acetone.

N.B: Aspirin and other salicylates, phenothiazines, phenol and some drugs give a positive colour reaction with ferric chloride. Boiling the urine for 5 minutes before addition of ferric chloride will destroy the acetoacetic acid but not the other substances, hence, if ferric chloride test is positive even after boiling the urine, then it is positive is due to other substances than the acetoacetic acid.

Ferric chlorides test becomes positive for ketones if considerable amount of acetoacetic acid is present. If Rothera's test is positive but ferric chloride test is negative, then the ketone bodies are present in small amount. If both the tests are positive then the patient is severely ketotic and requires urgent treatment.

Ketostix test

Acetest tablets or ketostix test papers utilising nitroprusside reactions are employed to detect ketone bodies in the urine. Ketostix test is a simple bedside strip test in which the end of the strip containing the reagent incorporated is dipped for the specified period. The colour obtained is matched with colour on the container for quantification (Fig. A.5).

Ketonuria is not pathognomonic of diabetes as starvation, prolonged fasting state, high fat diet and repeated vomiting may result in ketosis, therefore, ketonuria with glycosuria indicates diabetes.



Fig. A.5: Ketostix test for ketone bodies

Urobilinogen and Porphobilinogen

Ehrlich's aldehyde test

Take 1 ml of fresh urine in a test tube. Add 1 ml of Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent. After one and half minutes add 2 ml of saturated aqueous sodium citrate and mix the solution. Now add 2 ml of 3:1 (v/v) mixture of amyl alcohol and benzyl alcohol. The test tube is stoppered and its contents are shaken gently for one minute. Two phases in the solution are formed i.e. upper (alcohol) phase and lower (aqueous) phase. The red colouration of the upper phase indicates urobilinogen while a similar colour in the lower phase indicates porphobilinogen. Chloroform may be used as alternative to amyl and benzyl alcohols.

Normal fresh urine contains enough urobilinogen to produce a weakly positive reaction. A strong reaction indicates excess of urobilinogen suggesting haemolysis.

Test for bile salts

Take 10 ml of urine in a test tube and sprinkle sulphur powder over its surface, watch for 5 minutes. Sulphur powder sinks to the bottom of test tube in the presence of bile salts in the urine. This test is positive in obstructive jaundice.

Test for blood and haemoglobin

Benzidine test

Take 2 ml of urine in a test tube. Add 2 ml of Benzidine reagent and mix. Blue colour indicates the presence of Hb/blood in urine.

Dipstick test

The reagent area of the strip is dipped in the urine for specified period. The colour obtained is matched with the colour index provided on the container.

Microscopic examination of the Urine

(Read investigations of genitourinary system)

SEMEN ANALYSIS

Collection of the sample

Patient is asked to collect the specimen by masturbation following one week's abstinence. Specimen should be collected in a clean, wide mouthed plastic/glass container. Specimen must be received in the laboratory at the earliest possible but not later than 2 hours after collection.

Gross examination

Freshly ejaculated semen is an opaque and viscid fluid. It liquefies spontaneously within 1/2 hour. In case liquefaction does not take place within 1/2 hour, it needs further investigation.

Volume – 2-5 ml.

Postcoital studies suggest that volumes less than 2 ml may result in poor penetration of cervical mucus by sperms.

Colour – Following liquefaction, semen is a translucent, viscous fluid.

pH – Alkaline 7.5-7.8.

Microscopic examination

Sperm count

Count is carried out in a Neubauer chamber using a Thoma pipette in a dilution of 1 in 20 (as for TLC).

Normal count

- = 40-140 million/ml.
- <20 million indicates oligospermia

Motility

Motility of sperms helps in penetration of cervical mucus and migration of sperms into fallopian tube.

Method

Take a drop of the liquefied seminal fluid on a slide; place a coverlip on top of it and examine it under high power objective and assess at least 300 sperms for motility (motile/non-motile).

Calculate % of motile sperms.

Normal range

- Within 1 hour motility is 70-90%
- Within 2 hours motility is 40-70%
- Within 6 hours motility is 25-50%.

Sperm morphology

To study sperm morphology, a thin smear is made from

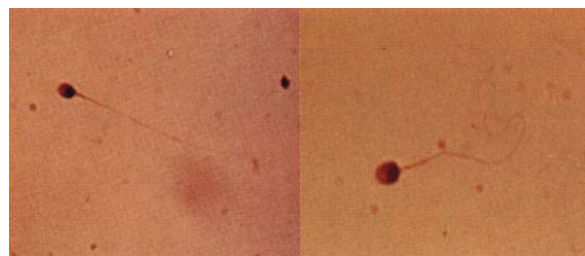


Fig. A.6: Normal sperms

the semen and is fixed in 95% ethanol. Carry out the Pap staining. Examine the smears under oil immersion for:

- morphology of sperms - normal and abnormal (Fig. A.6)
- presence of RBCs and pus cells
- epithelial cells
- abnormal sperms have double and pointed head/double head, etc.

Indications for semen analysis

- Infertility
- Medicolegal utility - in rape case vaginal pool smear for sperms is taken.

APPENDIX – II

- Temperature scales and conversion from Fahrenheit scale to Centigrade scale
- SI units
- Normal values
- Conversion chart
- Greek alphabets

- Table for surface area for different heights and weights
- Ideal body weights and heights of different age groups
- Tables for values useful in pulmonology, haemodynamic monitoring and echocardiography

Centigrade and Fahrenheit scale

The centigrade (Celsius) scale is preferred. Table A.1 shows the relationship of the centigrade and Fahrenheit scales, as far as is likely to be required in clinical work.

Table A.1: The centigrade and Fahrenheit scales

Centigrade	Fahrenheit	Centigrade	Fahrenheit
110	230	36.5	97.5
100	212	36	96.8
95	203	35.5	95.9
90	194	35	95
85	185	34	93.2
80	176	33	91.4
75	167	32	89.6
70	158	31	87.8
65	149	30	86
60	140	25	77
55	131	20	68
50	122	15	59
45	113	10	50
44	111.2	5	41
43	109.4	0	32
42	107.6	-5	23
41	105.8	-10	14
40.5	104.9	-15	5
40	104	-20	-4
39.5	103.1		
39	102.2	0.54	1
38.5	101.3	1	1.8
38	100.4	2	3.6
37.5	99.5	2.5	4.5
37	98.6		

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade:

$$^{\circ}\text{F} - 32 \times 5/9 = ^{\circ}\text{C}$$

To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit:

$$^{\circ}\text{C} \times 9/5 + 32 = ^{\circ}\text{F}$$

SI units

In this book the Systeme International (SI) d'Unites has been used as far as possible. This system aims to derive all

measurements from seven basic units and to express all measurements as decimal fractions or multiples of these. Of the seven basic units the four which appear in this book are:

Physical quantity	Name of SI unit	Symbol
Length	metre	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Amount of substance	mole	mol

and the prefixes indicating the decimal fraction and multiples are:

Fraction	Prefix	Symbol
10^{-1}	deci-	d
10^{-2}	centi-	c
10^{-3}	milli-	m
10^{-6}	micro-	μ
10^{-9}	nano-	n
10^{-12}	pico-	p
10^{-15}	femto	f

1 fluid ounce (fl oz)	= 28 ml
1 gallon UK (gal)	= 4.5 l
1 grain (do not abbreviate)	= 65 mg
1 inch (in)	= 25.4 mm
1 foot (ft)	= 0.3 m
1 ounce (oz)	= 28 g
1 pound (lb)	= 0.45 kg
1 calorie (cal)	= 4.2 J
1 kilocalorie (medical calorie, Cal)	= 4.2 kJ

The litre (= 1dm^3) is also recognized as the unit of volume. It follows that with the adoption of SI, certain familiar terms are no longer used, as is the case with measures of volume. A cubic centimetre (cc, cm^3) is replaced by the millilitre (ml) and the cubic millimetre (cmm , mm^3) by the microlitre (μl). In linear measure the micron (μ) should no longer be used; the correct unit is the micrometre (μm). Blood, intra-uterine and intra-ocular pressure are measured in millimetres of mercury (mmHg) and intrathecal pressures in centimetres of cerebrospinal fluid

(cm CSF). It is recommended that the medical calorie kilocalorie should now be converted to the joule (1 kcal = 4186.8 J).

Further information on SI units may be obtained from The Use of SI Units, Publication PD 5686 of the British Standard Institution, and useful information on the SI units commonly used in medicine and biology is available in Units, Symbols and abbreviations: A Guide for

Biological and Medical Editors Authors, published by the Royal Society of Medicine.

Multiple	Prefix	Symbol
10	deca-	da
10 ²	hecto-	h
10 ³	kilo-	k
10 ⁶	mega-	M

Normal Values (Reference Values)

P = plasma; B = blood; S = serum; E = erythrocyte; U = urine; CSF = cerebrospinal fluid; pg = picogram; ng = nanogram; µg = microgram; mg = milligram; d = day

The normal values, in different samples are depicted in Table A.2

Table A.2: Normal reference values			
Analyte	Sample	Units	SI units
Ammonia	P/S	< 50 µg/dl	
Acetoacetate	S	0.3-1 mg/dl	
Acid phosphatase (ACP), Total	P/S	0.5-4 KAU/dl	2.5-12 IU/L
Acid phosphatase (tartarate labile)	P/S	<0.9 KAU/dl	<1 IU/L
ACTH (corticotropin)	P	2.5-10 ng/dl	2-10 pmol/L
Alanine amino transferase (ALT/SGPT)Male:	S	13-35 IU/L	
Female:		10-30 IU/L	
Albumin	S	3.5-5 g/dl	35-50 g/L
Albumin	CSF	10-30 mg/dl	100-300 mg/L
Aldolase	S	1.5-7 IU/L	
Aldosterone, standing	S	6-20 ng/dl	0.17-0.6 nmol/L
Alpha-1-acid glycoprotein	S	55-140 mg/dl	13.4-34 µmol/L
Alpha-1-antitrypsin	S	75-200 mg/dl	0.75-2 g/L
Alkaline phosphatase(ALP)		53-13 KAU/dl	40-125 IU/L
Alpha fetoprotein (AFP)	S	5-15 ng/ml	5-15 µg/L
Amino acids, Total	P/S	30-50 mg/dl	
Amylase	S	80-180 S U/dl	50-120 IU/L
	U		0-375 IU/L
Angiotensin converting enzyme	S		10-50 IU/L
Angiotensin-I	P	1.8-8 ng/dl	
Angiotensin-II	P	1-6 ng/dl	
Anti diuretic hormone (ADH) (arginine vasopressin)	P	1-13 pg/ml	
Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)	P	0.4-1.5 mg/dl	23-85 µmol/L
Aspartate amino transferase (AST/SGOT)	S	8-20 IU/L	
Bicarbonate (HCO₃)	S	22-26 mEq/L	22-26 mmol/L
Bilirubin, total	S	0.2-1 mg/dl	4-17 µmol/L
Calcium	S	9-11 mg/dl	2.1-2.5 mmol/L
Calcitonin	S	0-20 pg/ml	0-20 ng/L
Calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxy vitamin D)	S	1.5-6 µg/dl	50-160 pmol/L
Epinephrine	P	10-100 pg/ml	10-500 pmol/L
	U	2-22 µg/day	10-100 nmol/day
Ceruloplasmin	S	25-50 mg/dl	
Chloride	S/P	96-106 mEq/L	96-106 mmol/L
Chloride	CSF	120-130 mEq/LU	120-130 mmol/L
			10-200 mmol/L
Cholesterol, Total	S/P	150-200 mg/dl	4-6 mmol/L
(HDL fraction) Male	S	30-60 mg/dl	0.75-1.58 mmol/L
Female		35-75 mg/dl	0.98-1.95 mmol/L

Contd....

Contd....

Analyte	Sample	Units	SI units
(LDL fraction) 20-29 yr		60-150 mg/dl	
30-39 yr		80-175 mg/dl	
40-60 yr		90-200 mg/dl	
Cholinesterase	B	2-12 IU/ml	
Chorionic gonadotropin, (beta-hCG)(non-pregnant)	S	<10 mU/ml	<10 U/L
Complement C3		80-120 mg/dl	
Complement C4		25-40 mg/dl	
Complement-1-esterase		5-10 mg/dl	
Complement-1-esterase inhibitor	S	10-25 mg/dl	
Copper	P	70-150 µg/dl	16-30 µmol/L
Cortisol 9AM	P	5-25 µg/dl	130-600 nmol/L
Midnight	P	2-5 µg/dl	30-130 nmol/L
C-reactive protein (CRP)		0.5-1 mg/dl	
Creatine	S	0.2-0.4 mg/dl	15-30 µmol/L
Creatine kinase (CK)			
Female	S		10-80 U/L
Male	S		15-100 U/L
Creatinine	S	0.7-1.4 mg/dl	60-125 µmol/L
	U	15-25 mg/kg/d;	0.15-0.2 mmol/kg/d
Cyanocobalamin (vitamin B ₁₂)	S	20-80 ng/dl	150-600 pmol/L
Electrophoresis	S	Alb: 55-65%	3.5-4.7g/100 ml
		α ₁ : 2-4%	0.2-0.3 g/dl
		α ₂ : 6-12%	0.4-0.9 g/dl
		Beta: 8-12%	0.5-1.0 g/dl
		gamma: 12-22%	0.7-1.5 g/dl
Estradiol			
Female (Midcycle)	S	10-50 ng/dl	0.3-2 nmol/L
Male		<5 ng/dl	<180 pmol/L
Ferritin Male	S	3-30 µg/dl	30-300 µg/L
Female		2-12 µg/dl	20-120 µg/L
Fibrinogen	P	200-400 mg/dl	5.8-8.5 µmol/L
Folic acid	S	5-20 ng/ml	10-40 nmol/L
FSH Male	S		4-10 IU/L
Female (midcycle)	S		10-20IU/L
Gamma glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT)	S		10-30 IU/L
Globulins	S	2.5-3.5 g/dl	25-35 g/L
Glucagon	S	2-10 ng/dl	
Glucose (Fasting)	P	70-110 mg/dl	4.0-6.1 mmol/L
	B	65-100 mg/dl	3.5-5.6 mmol/L
	CSF	50-70 mg/dl	2.8-4.2 mmol/L
Glucose-6-phosphatedehydrogenase (GPD)			
	E		6-12 U/g Hb
Glutamic acid	S	8-10 mg/dl	
Glutathione	E	20-40 mg/dl	2 mmol/L
Growth hormone (GH)	S		2-6 ng/L
Haptoglobin	S	40-175 mg/dl	400-1750 mg/L
Hemoglobin Male	B	14-16 g/dl	2.17-2.4 mmol/L
Female	B	13-15 g/dl	
Hemoglobin A2	E	2-3% of total	
HbA1c (glycohemoglobin)		4-8% of total	
Hemopexin	S	50-100 mg/dl	
17-hydroxy corticosteroids			
Female	U	2-8 mg/d	5.5-22 µmol/d
Male	U	3-10 mg/d	8-28 µmol/d

Contd....

Contd....

Analyte	Sample	Units	SI units
5-hydroxy indole acetic acid (HIAA)	U	2-9 mg/d	10-47 µmol/d
Immunoglobulins	S		
IgG		800-1200 mg/dl	
IgM		50-200 mg/dl	
IgA		150-300 mg/dl	
IgD		1-10 mg/dl	
IgE		1.5-4.5 µg/dl	
Immunoglobulins	CSF	4-5 mg/dl	
Insulin	S	5-15 µU/ml	30-100 pmol/L
Iodine	S	5-10 µg/dl	
Iron	B	5 mg/dl	
Iron	S	100-150 µg/dl	20-30 µmol/L
Iron binding capacity	S	250-400 µg/dl	44-70 µmol/L
17-ketogenic steroids			
Female	U	3-15 mg/d	10-15 µmol/d
Male	U	5-23 mg/d	17-80 µmol/d
17-ketosteroids	U		
Upto 1 year		<1 mg/d	
1-4 years		<2 mg/d	
5-8 years		<3 mg/d	
8-12 years		3-10 mg/d	
13-16 years		5-12 mg/d	
Male, adult		8-20 mg/d	
Female, adult		6-15 mg/d	
Lactic acid	P	4-20 mg/dl	0.4-2.0 mmol/L
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	S		100-200 IU/L
LH Male	S		1.5-7 IU/L
Female (midcycle)	S		20-50 IU/L
Lipase	S		50-175 IU/L
Lipids-Total	S	400-600 mg/dl	4-6 g/L
Lipoproteins Alpha	S	40 mg/dl	
Beta		180 mg/dl	
Magnesium	S	1.8-2.2 mg/dl	0.7-0.9 mmol/L
Nonesterified fatty acids (NEFA)(FFA)	P	10-20 mg/dl	0.3-0.7 mEq/L
Norepinephrine	P	70-700 pg/ml	1-4 nmol/L
	U	15-80 µg/day	100-500 nmol/day
Nucleotide phosphatase(NTP) (5'-Nucleotidase)	S		2-10 IU/L
Osmolarity	S		280-296 mosmol/kg
			280-296 mmol/kg
Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	S		10-25 ng/L
pCO ₂ , arterial	B	35-45 mmHg	
pH	B	7.4 (7.36 – 7.44)	[H ⁺] = 40 nmol/L
Phenylalanine	S	0.75-1.15 mg/dl	0.05-0.1 mmol/L
Phosphate	S	3-4 mg/dl	1-1.5 mmol/L
	U	1 g/day	32 mmol/day
	B	40 mg/dl	
Phospholipids		150-200 mg/dl	2-2.5 mmol/L
Placental lactogen (HPL)-pregnant	S	0.5-10 mg/L	20-500 nmol/L
Plasminogen	S	10-30 mg/dl	
pO ₂ arterial	B	90-100 mmHg	150-220 ml/L
Potassium	S	3.5-5 - 5.5 mEq/L	3.5-5 mmol/L
Pre-albumin (Transthyretin) (TBPA)	S	25-30 mg/dl	
Progesterone Male	S	12-30ng/dl	0.3-0.9 nmol/L
Female (after midcycle)	S	0.6-3 µg/dl	19-95 nmol/L

Contd....

Contd....

Analyte	Sample	Units	SI units
Prolactin Male	S		10-15 µg/L
Female Normal	S		10-20 µg/L
Pregnancy	S		90-400 µg/L
Prostaglandin E	P	2.5-20 ng/dl	70-550 pmol/L
Prostate specific antigen (PSA) Male	S	100-500 ng/dl	1-5 ng/L
Proteins—total	S	6-8g/dl	60-80 g/L
	CSF	10-30 mg/dl	
Prothrombin	P	10-15 mg/dl	
Pseudocholinesterase		8-18 ID/ml	
Retinol binding protein		3-6 mg/dl	
Secretin	S	3-4.5 ng/dl	
Selenium	S	50-100 ng/dl	0.5-1 µmol/L
Serotonin	B	4-36 mg/dl	0.2-2 (µmol/L
Sodium	S	136-155 mEq/L	136-145 mmol/L
Sulfate	S	0.5-1.5 mEq/L	
T ₃ (Tri iodothyronine)	S	120-190 ng/dl	1.8-3 nmol/L
rT ₃ (reverse T ₃)	S	10-25 ng/dl	0.15-0.4 nmol/L
T ₄ (thyroxine)	S	5-12 µg/dl	65-150 nmol/L
Testosterone,			
male, morning	S	300-1000 ng/dl	10-38 nmol/L
female, morning	S	25-45 ng/dl	1-1.5 nmol/L
Thyroglobulin (Tg)	S	3-5 ng/dl	3-50 µg/L
TRH	S		5-60 ng/L
TSH	S	0.5-5 nU/mL	0.5-5 mU/L
Thyroxine binding globulin		1-2 mg/dl	
Transcortin	S	3-3.5 mg/dl	
Transferrin	S	200-300 mg/dl	23-35 µmol/L
Transketolase	B		150-200 U/L
Transthyretin	S	25-30 mg/dl	
Triglycerides, fasting, Male	S	50-200 mg/dl	0.5-2.3 mmol/L
Female		40-150 mg/dl	0.4-1.6 mmol/L
Troponin I	S		1-10 ng/L
Urea	S	20-40 mg/dl	2.4-4.8 mmol/L
Urea nitrogen	S/P	8-20 mg/dl	3-9 mmol/L
Uric acid Male	S/P	3.5-7 mg/dl	0.21-0.4 mmol/L
Female	S/P	3.0-6 mg/dl	0.18-0.35 mmol/L
Children	S/P	2.0-5.5 mg/ml	0.12-0.32 mmol/L
Vanillyl mandelic acid (VMA)	U	2-6 mg/d	7-32 µmol/d
Vitamin A	S	15-50 µg/dl	0.5-2 µmol/L
Vitamin C			
(Ascorbic acid)	P	0.4-1.5 mg/dl	23-85 µmol/L
Vitamin Ds			
(Calcitriol)	S	1.5-6 µg/dl	50-160 pmol/L
Vitamin E	S	0.5-1.8 mg/dl	12-42 µmol/L
Zinc	S	50-100 µg/dl	8-16 µmol/L

The conversion units of length are depicted in Table A.3.

Table A.3: Conversion chart		
Units of length		
1 megametre	(M)	= 10 ⁶
1 kilometre	(km)	= 10 ³
1 metre	(m)	= 1
1 centimetre	(cm)	= 10 ⁻² m
1 millimetre	(mm)	= 10 ⁻³ m
1 micrometre	(µm)	= 10 ⁻⁶ m
1 nanometre	(nm)	= 10 ⁻⁹ m
1 angstrom	(Å)	= 10 ⁻¹⁰ m
1 picometre	(pm)	= 10 ⁻¹² m
1 femtometre	(fm)	= 10 ⁻¹⁵ m

Contd....

Contd....

Units of mass	
1 Megagram	(Mg) = 10 ⁶ g
1 kilogram	(kg) = 10 ³ g
1 gram	(g) = 1
1 centigram	(cg) = 10 ⁻² g
1 milligram	(mg) = 10 ⁻³ g
1 microgram	(µg) = 10 ⁻⁶ g
1 nanogram	(ng) = 10 ⁻⁹ g
1 picogram	(pg) = 10 ⁻¹² g
1 femtogram	(fg) = 10 ⁻¹⁵ g

The alphabets used are shown in Table A.4.

Table A.4: Greek alphabet (Commonly used letters as symbols)		
Letters	Capital	Small
Alpha	A	α
Beta	B	β
Gamma	Γ	γ
Delta	Δ	δ
Epsilon	E	ϵ
Zeta	Z	ζ
Eta	H	η
Theta	Θ	θ
Kappa	K	κ
Lambda	Λ	λ
Mu	M	μ
Xi	Ξ	ξ
Pi	Π	π
Rho	P	ρ
Sigma	Σ	σ
Phi	Φ	ϕ
Chi	X	χ
Psi	Ψ	ψ
Omega	Ω	ω

The surface areas according to different heights and weight are depicted in Table A.5.

Table A.5: Surface area for different heights and weights		
Ht in cm	Wt in kg	Surface area in square meters
75	15	0.52
80	20	0.62
85	25	0.70
90	30	0.80
95	32	0.85
100	34	0.90
105	35	0.95
110	37	1.00
115	39	1.05
120	40	1.10
125	41	1.15
130	42	1.20
135	44	1.25
140	45	1.30
145	40	1.25
	45	1.32

Contd....

Contd....

	50	1.38
	55	1.45
150	40	1.30
	45	1.35
	50	1.42
	55	1.47
155	45	1.40
	50	1.46
	55	1.52
	60	1.57
160	50	1.50
	55	1.55
	60	1.60
	65	1.65
	70	1.72
165	60	1.65
	65	1.70
	70	1.75
	75	1.81
	80	1.88
170	72	1.85
175	75	1.90
178	78	1.95
180	80	2.00

The height and weight of Indians are depicted in Table A.6.

Table A.6: Ideal body weight and height of different age groups
(Adapted from the Indian Council of Medical Research)

Age	Males		Females	
	Ht in cm	Wt in kg	Ht in cm	Wt in kg
1	75	10.0	74	9.5
2	85	11.0	85	10.0
3	95	13.5	93	13.0
4	100	15.0	98	14.0
5	105	16.5	102	15.5
10	139	32.0	139	33.5
12	149	39.0	150	42.5
15	165	48	155	45.0
20	168	59	158	50.0
30	168	62	158	55.0
40	168	65	158	55.0
50	168	65	158	55.0

The various values in pulmonary physiology used are shown in Table A.7.

Table A.7: Values useful in pulmonary physiology			
Pulmonary mechanics	Symbol	Values	
		Male	Female
A. Spirometry-volume time curves			
• Forced vital capacity	FVC	4.8 L	3.3 L
• Forced expiratory volume in one sec.	FEV ₁	≥ 3.8 L	≥ 2.8 L
• FEV ₁ /FVC	FEV ₁ %	76%	> 77%
• Maximum mid-expiratory flow	MMF (FEF 25-27)	≥ 4.8 L/sec	≥ 3.6 L/sec
• Maximal expiratory flow rate	MEFR (FEF 200-1200)	≥ 9.4 L/sec	≥ 6.1 L/sec
B. Spirometry-flow-volume curves			
• Maximal expiratory flow at 50% of expired vital capacity	V _{max} 50 (FEF 50%)	≥ 6.1 L/sec	≥ 4.6 L/sec
• Maximal expiratory flow at 75% of expired vital capacity	V _{max} 75 (FEF 75%)	≥ 3.1 L/sec	≥ 2.5 L/sec
C. Resistance to airflow			
Airway resistance	Raw	< 2.5 cm H ₂ O/s per litre	
D. Lung compliance (Static)			
Lung + thorax compliance	CL	0.2 L/cm H ₂ O	
	C (L+T)	0.1 L/cm H ₂ O	
E. Maximal static respiratory pressure			
• Maximal inspiratory pressure	MIP	> 90 cm H ₂ O	> 50 cm H ₂ O
• Maximal expiratory pressure	MEP	> 150 cm H ₂ O	> 120 cm H ₂ O
F. Lung volumes			
• Total lung capacity	TLC	6.4 litres	4.9 litres
• Functional residual capacity	FRC	2.2 litres	2.6 litres
• Residual volume	RV	1.5 litres	1.2 litres
• Inspiratory capacity	IC	4.8 litres	3.7 litres
• Expiratory reserve volume	ERV	3.2 litres	2.3 litres
• Vital capacity	VC	1.7 litres	1.4 litres

The haemodynamic values are depicted in Table A.8.

Table A.8: Haemodynamic values	
Pressures (mmHg)	
<i>Systemic arterial</i>	
Peak systolic/end-diastolic	100-140/60-90
Mean	70-105
<i>Left ventricle</i>	
Peak systolic/end-diastolic	100-140/3-12
<i>Left atrium (or pulmonary capillary wedge)</i>	
Mean	2-12
<i>Pulmonary artery</i>	
Peak systolic/end-diastolic	15-30/4-14
Mean	9-17
<i>Right ventricle</i>	
Peak systolic/end-diastolic	15-30/2-7
<i>Right atrium</i>	
Mean	2-6
Resistances [(dynes)/cm⁵]	
Systemic vascular resistance	700-1600
Total pulmonary resistance	100-300
Pulmonary vascular resistance	20-130
Flows	
Cardiac index or cardiac output (litres/min/m ²)	700-1600
Stroke index (ml/beat/m ²)	30-65
Oxygen consumption (litres/min/m ²)	100-150
Arteriovenous oxygen difference (ml/litre)	30-50

The echocardiographic values in normal population are shown in Table A.9.

Table A.9: Normal values of echocardiographic measurements in adults

	Mean	Range
Body surface area (m ²)	1.8	1.45-2.22
RVD (cm) measured at the base in apical	3.5 ± 0.4 cm	2.6 to 4.3 cm
LVID (measure in the parasternal long)	4.7 ± 0.4 cm	3.7-5.6 cm
Posterior left ventricular wall thickness	0.9 ± 0.4 cm	0.6-1.1 cm
IVS wall thickness (cm)	0.9 ± 0.4 cm	0.6-1.1 cm
Left atrial dimension (cm), anteroposterior dimension	2.9 ± 0.3 cm	2.3-3.8 cm
Aortic root dimension (cm)	2.4 ± 0.4	2.0-3.5 cm
Aortic cusp separation	1.9 ± 0.4	1.5-2.6 cm
% of fractional shortening	36%	34-44%
Ejection fraction	67%	55-78%

Abbrev.

RVD = Right ventricular dimension;	LVID = Left ventricular internal diameter;
TVS = Interventricular septum;	d = end-diastole;
s = end-systole;	
calculation of fractional shortening %	$= \frac{\text{LVIDd} - \text{LVIDs}}{\text{LVIDd}} \times 100$

Index

A

- Abdomen 237
 - abdominal movements 245
 - anatomical landmarks 238
 - common abnormalities 241
 - palpable structures 237
 - presenting symptoms 238
 - shape 244
 - systemic examination 241
- Abdominal breathing 214
- Abdominal distension 23
- Abdominal girth 260
- Abdominal lumps 255
- Abdominal neurosis 484
- Abdominal pain 484
- Abdominal paracentesis 280
- Abdominal reflexes 376
- Abdominojugular reflux 167
- Abdominojugular reflux test 169
- Abducens (6th) nerve 345
- Abducens nerve (VI CN) palsy 348
- Abnormal bowel sounds 264
- Abnormal colouration of the urine 294
- Abnormal deposits on the retina 96
- Abnormal gaits 383
- Abnormal posturing 408
- Abnormal redness 72
- Abnormal skin lesions 72
- Abnormal urine volumes 36
- Abnormalities of sensation 391
- Abstract thinking 488
- Acetest 298
- Acne vulgaris 74
- Acrocyanosis 197
- Acromegalic hands 139
- Acromegaly 503, 511
- Acute abdomen 283
- Acute infective monoarthritis 424
- Acute leukaemias 472
- Acute limb ischaemia 192
- Acute lymphadenitis 128
- Acute nephritic syndrome 287
- Acute renal failure 287
- Acute rheumatic activity 171
- Acute severe dyspnoea 33
- Added (adventitious) sounds 225
- Addison's disease 512
- Adnexal masses 313
- Adrenal axis 504
- Adrenal hyperplasia 511
- Adson's test 194
- Aegophony 225
- Age related macular degeneration 96
- Air conduction 110
- Akinetic mutism 404
- Albinism 70
- Albumin 276
- Albumin and globulins ratio 276
- Alcohol related disorders 11
- Alimentary glucosuria 298
- Alkaline phosphatase 275
- Allen test 194
- Allergic contact dermatitis 67
- Allodynia 42, 323
- Alopecia 78
- Alopecia areata 79
- Alpha 1-antitrypsin 277
- Alport's syndrome 293
- Amaurosis fugax 196
- Amenorrhoea 46
- Anaemia 457
- Anaesthesia 42, 323
- Anal reflex 378
- Analgesia 323
- Analysis of a symptom 5
- Analysis of height 54
- Anasarca 150
- Androgenic alopecia 79
- Anencephaly 61
- Aneurysmal disease 197
- Angiocardiography 189
- Angiography 270, 397
- Angle of Louis 166, 204
- Anhydrosis 44
- Anisocoria 90, 91, 347
- Ankle and the foot 449
- Ankle clonus 375
- Ankle jerk 374
- Ankle oedema 148
- Ankle/brachial pressure index 198
- Ankyloglossia 105
- Anomia 339
- Anorexia nervosa 56
- Anosmia 342
- Anotia 113
- Antalgic gait 419
- Anterior nares 117
- Anthropometry 57
- Antinuclear antibodies 453
- Anton's syndrome 329
- Anuria 37, 289
- Anus 469
- Anus, rectum and prostate 267
- Anxiety 477
- Apex beat 173, 174
- Aphthous ulceration 103
- Apnoea 32
- Appendicular 258
- Apraxia 340
- Aprocrine glands 66
- Aqueous humour 81
- Arachnodactyly 141
- Areflexia 376
- Arterial bruits 180, 294
- Arterial pulse 160
- Arterial wall 162
- Arteriography 279
- Arteritis 144
- Arthralgia 170
- Arthritis 148, 414
- Arthrogram 455
- Assessment of hearing 114
- Asterixis 262
- Asthenia 41
- Astigmatism 95
- Asymptomatic bacteriuria 288
- Asymptomatic endocrine disease 493
- Ataxia 379
- Athetosis 385
- Atrial fibrillation 161
- Attention 487
- Attrition of teeth 103
- Audiometry 116, 117
- Auditory acuity 114
- Auscultation 175, 222
 - method 222
- Auscultatory areas 175
- Autoantibodies 278
- Autonomic nervous system 393
- Awake coma 404
- Axillae 137

B

- Babinski's response 377
- Babinski's rising up sign 371
- Back of abdomen 265

- Bacterial pathogens 522, 524
 Bacteriuria 302
 Bad effect of smoking 10
 Balanoposthitis 306
 Barium enema 270
 Barium meal examination 269
 Barrel shaped chest 214
 Bartholin's gland 311
 Bartholin's gland abscess 312
 Basal cell carcinoma 68
 Basal ganglia 316, 318
 Basal levels of sex hormones 503
 Beau's line 142
 Beau's transverse lines 293
 Bed-wetting 38
 Bence-Jones proteinuria 297
 Benedict's test 524
 Benzidine test 526
 Bicipital tendinitis 438
 Bilateral red eyes 83
 Bilateral XII nerve palsy 362
 Bile pigments 299
 Bile salts 526
 Bilirubin 274, 299
 Biopsy of small intestine 272
 Bitot's spots 89
 Blastomyces dermatitidis 120
 Bleeding 464
 Bleeding disorders 473
 Bleeding gums 105, 467
 Bleeding per rectum 23
 Blood 456
 Blood ammonia 276
 Blood count 469
 Blood culture 521
 bacterial pathogens 521
 serology 522
 viral pathogens 522
 Blood loss 35
 Blood pool scanning 189
 Blood pressure 58, 164
 Blood supply of spinal cord and spinal artery syndromes 329
 Blood supply of the brain and spinal cord 326
 Body mass index 53
 Boiling test 524
 Bone conduction 110
 Bone density 455
 Bone marrow examination 470, 471
 Bone pain 416
 Bony bossing 61
 Bony structures 428, 429
 Boutoniere deformity 425
 Bovine cough 27
 Bow legs 292
 Bowed legs 146
 Bowstring sign 434
 Brain 316
 Brain death testing 412
 Brainstem infarction 329
 Brain-stem reflexes 410
 Breast abscess 133
 Breast and the axillae 131
 applied anatomy and physiology 131
 clinical presentations 132
 Breast cancer 132
 Breast cysts 133
 Breast disease 137
 Breast lump 132
 Breath sounds 223
 bronchial 224
 vesicular 223
 Breathing movements 213
 Breathing patterns 211
 Brissaud's reflex 378
 Broca's area 338
 Bromsulphalein (BSP) clearance 277
 Bronchiectasis or bronchial adenoma 28
 Bronchoalveolar lavage 523
 Bronchophony 225
 Bronchoscopy 234
 Brudzinski's sign 341
 Bruises 35, 467
 Buerger's disease thromboangitis obliterans 196
 Buerger's test 194
 Bulbocavernous reflex 378
 Bulge sign 448
 Bulimia 56
 Bundle of His 182
 Bursae 414
C
 Café-au-lait spots 70, 332
 Calculating ability 336
 Caloric test 116, 411
 Caloric testing 117
 Campbell de Morgan spot 241
 Canal of Schlemm 81
 Capillary pulsations 144
 Carcinoma of breast 132
 Cardiac apex 215
 Cardiac catheterisation 189
 Cardiac cycle 156
 Cardiac dullness 220
 Cardiac dyspnoea 34
 Cardiac murmurs 157
 Cardiac neurosis 482
 Cardiac shadow/silhouette 186
 Cardiac versus respiratory dyspnoea 34
 Cardiovascular system 156
 examination 158
 Caries 102
 Carotid arteries and jugular veins 130
 Carotid pulse 169
 Carpal tunnel 441, 444
 Carpal tunnel syndrome 443, 444
 Cataract 90
 Catatonia 404
 Cauda equina 317
 Cauda equina syndrome 430
 Causes of anaemia 458
 Causes of ataxia 382
 Causes of visual loss 82
 Cavernous haemangioma 76
 Cavernous sinus thrombosis 331
 Cells in the urine 300
 Centigrade and fahrenheit scale 528
 Central cyanosis 106
 Central nervous system 316
 Central retinal vein occlusion 98
 Cerebellar lesions 320
 Cerebellum 316, 318
 Cerebral circulation 326
 Cerebral cortex 316
 Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) examination 401
 Ceruloplasmin and copper 277
 Cervical spine 428
 Chancroid 306
 Charcot joint 148
 Chemical analysis of the urine 524
 Chest expansion 434
 Chest pain 26, 29, 481
 Chest X-ray 186, 229, 396
 indications 186
 radiographic findings in heart failure 187
 Chicken pox 73
 Chief complaint (s) 5
 Chilaiditi's syndrome 260
 Chilblain 148
 Chloasma 70
 Cholecystitis 251
 Cholecystography 279
 Cholelithiasis 251
 Chorea 384
 Chorea gravidarum 385
 Chronic leukaemias 472

- Chronic backache 483
 Chronic fatigue 482
 Chronic fatigue syndrome 482
 Chronic headache 482, 483
 Chronic infection 277
 Chronic leg ulceration 202
 Chronic low back pain 483
 Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease 215
 Chronic pernio syndrome 197
 Chronic renal failure 288
 Chronic tophaceous gouty arthritis 426
 Chvostek's sign 388
 Cirrhosis of the liver 262
 Classification of headache 62
 Clinitest and Benedict's test 298
 Clonus 366
 Clubbing 141
 Clubbing of fingers 144, 160
 Coagulation cascade 472
 Coagulation disorders 35
 Coagulation factors 276
 Coagulation pathways 470
 Coated furred tongue 106
 Coating of the tongue 107
 Cochlear functions 358
 Cognition 487
 Cognitive functions 336
 Coin test 227
 Colonoscopy 272
 Colour vision 85
 Coma like syndromes 404
 Coma vigil 404
 Common urinary symptoms 36
 Compulsive water drinking 295
 Computed tomography 229, 270, 278, 397
 Concentration 487
 Conjugate gaze paralysis 348
 Conjugate ocular movements 349
 Conjunctiva 81, 89
 Consciousness 487
 Constipation 22
 Constructional ability 336
 Co-ordination and gait 379
 COPD with cor pulmonale 52
 Cornea and the lens 89
 Corneal arcus 90
 Corneal blink reflex 411
 Corneal calcification 90
 Corneal reflex 351, 378, 411
 Corneal scar 90
 Coronary angiography 189
 Cortical and subcortical centres 322
 Corticospinal (pyramidal) tract 318
 Cough 27
 Cough reflex 379
 Cough, sputum and haemoptysis 26
 Courvoisier's sign 251
 Crackles or rales 225
 Cramp 41
 Cranial nerve palsy 348
 Cranial nerves 317, 341, 396
 Creatinine 302
 Cremasteric reflex 377
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome 24, 274
 Crohn's disease 108
 Cross over tests 440
 Cryptorchidism 47, 309, 501
 Crystal deposition disease 417
 Crystals 301
 Cusco's speculum 314
 Cushing syndrome 511, 512
 Cutaneous candidiasis 74
 Cyanosis 72, 159
 central 159
 mixed 160
 peripheral 159
 Cystocele 312
 Cytones 316
- D**
- Dacrocystography 100
 Daivymple's sign 508
 Dark urine 37
 de Morgan's spots 77
 De' accoucheur's hand 139
 Deafness (hearing loss) 111
 Decerebrate rigidity 367
 Deep (pressure) pain 390
 Deep vein thrombosis 199
 Defecation 379
 Deformities of fingers 141
 Deltoid ligament 449
 Deltoid reflex 374
 Dendritic cells 65
 Depersonalization derealisation 487
 Depression 477
 Dermatology 68
 Dermatomes 324
 Dermatophytes *Candida albicans* 523
 Dermis 66
 Dexamethasone suppression tests 505
 Dextrocardia 173
 Diabetes insipidus 43, 295
 Diabetes mellitus 298, 513
 Diabetic background retinopathy 99
 Diabetic bullae 496
 Diabetic dermopathy 496
 Diabetic foot 148, 496
 Diabetic stiff hands 496
 Diadochokinesis 380
 Diagnostic standardized interviews 490
 Diarrhoea 21, 24
 acute 22
 chronic 22
 Diastasis recti 245
 Diencephalon 316
 Dietary history 56
 Digital (per rectal) examination 268
 Dilated superficial veins 242
 Dinner-fork deformity 384
 Diplopia 83, 84, 348
 Diplopia or blurring of vision 82
 Dipstick test 524, 525, 526
 Disorders of ocular movements 347
 Displacement of cardiac impulse 216
 Distention of abdomen 260
 Disturbance of vision 82
 Doll's eye reflex 358
 Donovanosis 306
 Dowager hump 429
 Drop-arm sign 440
 Dumbbell shape chest 214
 Duplex venous ultrasonography 200
 Dupuytren's contracture 424
 Dysaesthesias 42, 323
 Dysarthria 339
 Dyspepsia/flatulence 20
 Dysphagia 21, 45, 121, 338, 379
 Dysphasia aphasia 339
 Dysphonia 338, 339
 Dysphonia (hoarseness) 121
 Dyspnoea 25, 31
 Dystonia 386,
 Dysuria 289
 Dysuria/stangury 36
- E**
- Ecchymoses 35
 Ecchymotic patches 467
 Echocardiography 188
 Doppler 188
 M-mode 188
 two-dimensional 188
 Edinger-Westpal nucleus 345
 Ehrlich's aldehyde test 299, 526
 Elbow 438
 Electrocardiography 182
 indications 183

Electrocochleography 117
 Electroencephalography 397
 Electromyography 400
 Electronystagmography 116
 Electrophysiological study 100
 Electrophysiological tests 397
 Electroretinograms 100
 Encephalocele 61
 Endocrinal disorders 494
 Endocrinal imaging 505
 Endocrine effect 492
 Endocrine investigation 502
 Endocrine system 492
 Endoscopic retrograde
 cholangiopancreatography 271
 Endoscopic retrograde
 cholangiopancreatography 279
 Endoscopy 270, 280
 Enlarged kidney(s) 254
 Enophthalmos 86
 Enthesis 414
 Enuresis 38
 Enzymes 275
 Epidermis 65
 Epididymis 308
 Epigastric pulsations 174
 Epilepsy/seizure 38
 Epiphora 82
 Episodic weakness 40
 Epistaxis 35, 118
 Epulis 105
 Eruptive xanthomas 496
 Erythema 70, 242
 Erythema marginatum 170
 Erythropoietin production 36
 Evoked potential recording 400
 Evoked response of audiometry 117
 Examination of breasts 135
 Examination of stool 273
 Examination of the ear 113
 auricle 113
 ear canal and drum 114
 Examination of the joints and bones 421
 Examination of the skin 496
 Examination of vomit 281
 Exophthalmos 47, 507
 Exophthalmos (proptosis) 87
 Expansion of the chest 214
 Expiratory spiogram 232
 External os 286
 Extrapyrmidal lesions 320
 Extrinsic allergic alveolitis 209
 Eye movements 410
 Eyes 81, 523

F

FABERE test 447
 Facial appearance 51
 Facial expression 334
 Facial nerve paralysis 354
 Facial pain 352
 Facial palsy 361
 Facial weakness 356
 Facoliths 244
 Failure of erection 45
 Family history 7
 Fasciculations 105, 387
 Fascinate or short shuffling gait 383
 Fascioscapulohumeral (limb girdle)
 myopathy 365
 Fast and slow pulse rate 161
 Fatigue 23, 26
 Fatty abdomen 244
 Features of anxiety disorders 478
 Features of depression 479
 Feedback system 493
 Feet and the legs 146
 Female genitalia 267, 286, 309
 Femoral canal 264
 Femoral hernia 246, 266
 Femoral nerve stretch test 436
 Ferric chloride (Gerhardt's) test 525
 Ferritin 276
 Fever or pyrexia 59
 Fibrillations 387
 Fibrinolytic system 470
 Fibroadenomas 133
 Field of vision 343
 Fine pinch 443
 Finger deformities 140
 Finger flexion 373
 Finger to finger test 380
 Finger-nose test 379
 First (ophthalmic) division 350
 Fissuring of the tongue 107
 Fixed pupil 347
 Flapping tremors 262
 Flatus (gas) 244
 Flexor and extensor spasms 378, 388
 Flexor retinaculum 441
 Flip test 435
 Fluctuation test 267
 Fluid (ascites) 244
 Fluid thrill 261
 Fluoroscopy 188, 229
 Foetus (pregnancy) 244
 Forced expiratory time 234
 Fovea centralis 81
 Freckles 70

Frequency of micturition 38
 Friction rub 218, 264
 Fundus 286
 Fundus of the eye 81
 Fundus photography fluorescein
 angiography 100
 Funnel chest 214
 Furunculosis 120

G

Gait 42, 396, 419
 Gait abnormalities 117
 Gait and balance 341
 Gait apraxia 384
 Galactorrhoea 47, 134
 Gallbladder 250
 enlargement 251
 GALS screening test 420
 Gamma-glutamyl transferase 276
 Gasserian ganglion 350, 351
 Gastrointestinal system 238
 Gastroscopy 271
 Generalised hyperpigmentation 71
 Generalised oedema 150
 Genital tract 523
 Genitourinary symptoms 287
 Genu valgus 447
 Geographical tongue 108
 Gerhardt test 298
 GH deficiency 503
 Gibbus 431
 Gigantism 511
 Gilbert's syndrome 24, 274
 Gingivitis 104
 Glabellar tap 337
 Glasgow coma scale 408
 Glaucomatous optic atrophy 97
 Glisson's capsule 24
 Global aphasia 340
 Globulins 276
 Globus hysericus 21
 Glossitis 106
 Glossopharyngeal neuralgia 359
 Glycosuria 298
 Goitre 129
 Gonadal axis 503
 Gonococcal urethritis 307
 Gower's sign 365
 Granular casts 300
 Granuloma annulare 496
 Granuloma or a ulcer 105
 Grasp reflex 337
 Grave's disease 45, 507
 Graves' diseases ophthalmopathy 44
 Gray matter 316

Groin and back 264
 Guarding 248
 Gum hypertrophy 104
 Gums 104
 Gynaecomastia 47, 134, 135, 499

H

Habits 9
 Haematemeses 21, 35
 Haematemeses malena 24
 Haematuria 35, 37, 294
 Haemoglobinuria 37, 298
 Haemoptysis 28
 Haemorrhagic stroke 327
 Hair 77
 Half and half nails 293
 Halitosis 53, 104
 Hallucinations 335, 486
 Hallucinatory behavior 485
 Hand deformities 145
 Hand grip 443
 Hands and the nails 139
 Headache 38, 61
 Heart burn 20
 Heart sounds 177
 abnormalities 177
 added sounds 179
 metallic sounds 179
 midsystolic clicks 179
 opening snap 179
 pericardial rub 179
 changes in the intensity 177
 ejection clicks 179
 normal 177
 splitting 178
 Heaves 174
 Heberden's nodes 423
 Hemiballismus 386
 Hemifacial spasms 357
 Henöch-schönlein purpura 423
 Hepatic coma 407
 Hepatobiliary system 239
 Hepatomegaly 250
 Hepatosplenomegaly 463
 Herberdon's and Bouchard's nodes 146
 Hernias 245
 Herpangina 109
 Herpes genitalis 311
 Herpes labialis 103
 Herpes zoster infection 73
 Heubner's artery 326
 Hip 444
 Hip joint 445
 Hip pain 444

Hirsutism 47, 79, 80
 Histocompatibility antigen HLA-B₂₇ 455
 History taking 3
 difficulties 7
 parts 4
 pitfalls 4
 HLA-B 27 linked spondyloarthropathy 418
 family 418
 Hoarseness of voice 121
 Hoffman's sign 373, 374
 Holter monitoring 185
 Homan's sign 200
 Hormogenesis 129
 Hormonal production 492
 Hormone receptors 492
 Hormone regulation 493
 Horner's syndrome 81, 88
 Horseshoe kidney 254
 Hutchinson's teeth 103
 Hyaline casts 300
 Hydatid thrill/sign 262
 Hyperacusis 353
 Hyperaesthesia 323,
 Hyperalgesia 42, 323
 Hyperextensibility of joints 453
 Hyperhidrosis 44
 Hyperkeratosis of palms 140
 Hypermetropia 95
 Hyperpathia 42, 323
 Hyperpigmentation 70
 Hyperpyrexia 59
 Hyper-reflexia 376
 Hyper-resonance 221
 Hypertensive retinopathy 99
 Hyperthermia 59
 Hypertonia 367
 Hypertrichosis 80
 Hypoaesthesia 42, 323
 Hypoalgesia 42
 Hypoglossal (xii) nerve 361
 Hypogonadism 501
 Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism 500
 Hypopituitarism 513
 Hypothalamus 316
 Hypothermia 59
 Hypothyroidism 509, 510
 Hypotonia 320, 366
 Hysterical gait 383
 Hysterical pseudocoma 404

I

Ichthyosis 67
 Idiopathic (Bell's) palsy 357

Idiopathic thrombocytopenia 467
 Ileocaecal mass 258
 Ileopsoas abscess 259
 Illicit drug use 11
 Illusions 335
 Illusions misinterpretations 487
 Immunoelectrophoresis 296
 Impedance plethysmography 200
 Impotence 45
 Incisional hernias 242
 Incisional ventral hernia 246
 Increased sweating 44
 Infertility 45
 females 46
 Inguinal hernia 246, 266
 Inguinal lymph nodes 265
 Inhibitor syndromes circulating anticoagulants 473
 Insight 488
 Insight and judgement 335
 Insomnia 483
 Inspection of lips 102
 Inspection of thyroid 497
 Insulin test 272, 505
 Insulin test for GH reserve 504
 Intelligence 336, 488
 Intelligence tests 489
 Intercostals spaces 217
 Intermittent claudication 192
 Internuclear ophthalmoplegia 350
 Interview technique 4
 Intra-abdominal mass 256
 Intraocular tension 99
 Intravenous synacthen test 504
 Inversion and eversion 452
 Involuntary movements 38, 384
 Iris 90
 Iritis 82, 90
 Irregularly irregular pulse 161
 Ischaemia of limb 191
 Ischaemic stroke 327
 Ishihara plates 85
 Isosexual precocious puberty 501
 Isotope brain and bone scanning 397
 Isthmus 286

J

Jandrassik's manoeuvre 377
 Janeway lesion 160
 Jaundice 24, 69, 72, 89
 Jaw jerk 351, 374
 Jendrassik's manoeuvre 375
 Joint crepitus 426
 Joint pain 417
 Joint position sense 391

Joint swelling 465
 Jones criteria 170
 Judgement 336, 488
 Jugular venous pressure 166, 167
 effect of respiration 168
 examination 168
 measurement 168
 Jugular venous pulse and pressure 166
 Juvenile hypothyroidism 510

K

Kallmann's syndrome 69, 500
 Kayser-Fleischer ring 90
 Keratinocytes 65
 Kernig's sign 341
 Ketone bodies 525
 Ketonuria 298
 Ketostix test 526
 Kidneys 253
 Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis 119
 Knee 447
 Knee clonus 375
 Knee jerk 374
 Knee joint stability test 450
 Knee-heel test 381
 Knocked knees 292
 Koilonychia 142
 Koplik's spots 108
 Kussmaul's sign 168
 Kveim test 232
 Kyphoscoliosis 214, 432
 Kyphosis 431

L

Labia 286
 Labial frenulum 101
 Labyrinthine dysfunction 112
 Lacrimal sac 81
 Lacrimation 82
 Lacunar infarct 327
 Lacunar syndromes 329
 Langerhan's cells 65
 Lanugo 77
 Laparoscopy 281
 Laryngitis 53
 Laryngoscopy 234
 Lentigines 70
 Leucocytosis 460
 Leucoerythroblastic anaemia 461
 Leuconychia 293
 Leucopenia 458
 Leukaemias 461
 Leukaemoid reaction 460
 Leukoplakia of tongue 107

Levator palpebrae 81
 Lhermitte's sign 323
 LHRH test 503
 Lid lag 507
 Lid retraction 497, 507
 Light reflex 91
 Linea nigra 242
 Lingual thyroid 128
 Lips 101
 Lithotripsy scar 292
 Livedo reticularis 197
 Liver 249
 Liver aspiration 280
 Liver biopsy 280
 Liver dullness and span 219
 Lock jaw trismus 388
 Locked-in-state 404
 Locomotor system 414
 Lordosis 431
 Loss of libido/desire 45
 Loss of sweating 44
 Low back pain 430, 447
 Lower GI endoscopy 271
 Lower limb joints 444
 Lower motor neuron (LMN) lesions 320
 Lumbar spine 429
 Lump in the neck 121
 Lundh test 273
 Lung biopsy 235
 Lung sounds 225
 Lung volumes 233
 Lymph node enlargement 36
 Lymph nodes 468
 Lymphadenopathy 123, 462
 Lymphoedema of the breast 133

M

Macrocephaly 61
 Macroglossia 105
 Macropsia 44, 82
 Macrotia 113
 Macular degeneration 96
 Macular region 95
 Macular sparing 343
 Magnetic resonance imaging 270, 397
 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) 278
 Malabsorption test 273
 Malar flush 160
 Maldon teeth 103
 Male genitalia 265, 286, 305
 Mammary soufflé 180
 Marasmus 56
 Mass abdomen 24

Mass in epigastrium 257
 Mass in right iliac fossa 257
 Mass in the abdominal wall 256
 Mass in the hypogastrium 259
 Measles 108
 Measurement of intraocular tension 85
 Medial lemniscus 322
 Mediastinoscopy 235
 Mediastinum 215
 Meibomian glands 81
 Meiosis 92
 Melanin 66
 Melanocytes 65
 Melanocytic naevi 70
 Melanomas 70, 96
 Melasma 70
 Melotia 113
 Membranous glomerulonephritis 304
 Memory 336, 487
 Meningeal irritation 340
 Meningococcal meningitis 409
 Menstrual irregularities 46
 Mental status 334
 Metabolism 492
 Microalbuminuria 296, 297, 525
 Microbial examination 231
 Microbial tests 520
 Microcephaly 61
 Micro-organisms 301
 Micropsia 82
 Microtia 113
 Micturition 379
 Mid-line pain 18
 Migraine 64
 Milking sign 384
 Mirizzi's syndrome 251
 Missing teeth 103
 Moebius sign 508
 Molluscum contagiosum 311
 Mononeuritis 393
 Mons pubis 286
 Mood and affect 486
 Mood or emotional state 334
 Morphology of skin lesions 74
 Motor deficit 319
 Motor function 396
 Motor responses 411
 Motor system 318, 362
 Mouth and the pharynx 101
 Mouth thrush 107
 Mouth thrush (oral candidiasis) 109
 Movements at the shoulder 438
 Movements of ankle 452

Movements of the knee joint 449
 Multinodular goitre 499
 Murmurs 180
 causes of 181
 classification 180
 Murphy's sign 250
 Muscle and joints 468
 Muscle biopsy 401
 Muscle cramps 387, 388
 Muscle groups 428
 Muscle spasm 387
 Muscle strength and power 368
 Muscle testing 369
 Muscle weakness 363
 Muscle weakness/myopathy 43
 Muscles 448
 Muscular dystrophy 365
 Myalgia 42
 Myasthenia gravis 84
 Myasthenic weakness 365
 Mydriasis 92
 Myelofibrosis 471
 Myelography 397
 Myelomatosis 462
 Myocardia scanning 189
 Myoclonus 386
 Myoglobinuria 37, 298
 Myokymia 221, 387
 Myopia 95
 Myotonia 367
 Myotonic jerk 376

N

Nail dysplasia 293
 Nails 66
 Nasal discharge 118
 Nasal obstruction 118
 Nasal polyps 120
 Nasal regurgitation of fluids 359
 Nasal septum 119
 Nasopharynx 523
 Nausea 23
 Neck 122
 differential diagnosis of
 lymphadenopathy 127
 examination sequences 124
 inspection 122
 palpation 122
 sites of lymph nodes 122
 symptoms of lymph nodes
 enlargement 123
 Neck and cervical spine movements
 340
 Neck stiffness 340, 341, 409

Necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum
 147, 496
 Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus 295
 Nephrolithiasis 289
 Nephrotic syndrome 287
 Nephrotoxic drugs/toxins 290
 Nerve conduction 400
 Nerve palsy 359
 Nerve root compression 434
 Nervous intermedius 353
 Nervous system 196, 316, 395
 Neurofibromatosis 72
 Neurological examination 407
 Neurons 316
 Neuropsychological test 490
 Neutropenia 458
 Night/rest pain 192
 Nipple discharge 134
 Nipple inversion 134
 Nocturia 27
 Non-articular structures 414
 Nonincisional ventral hernia 246
 Normal fundus 96
 Nose and paranasal sinuses 117
 Numbness 323
 Nutritional status 56
 Nystagmus 116

O

Obesity 53
 Objective personality tests 489
 Occlusion of central artery of retina 99
 Occlusive arterial disease 191
 Occult blood in stool 274
 Ocular fundi 468
 Ocular fundus 94
 Ocular movements 346
 Oculocephalic reflex 358
 Oculocephalic reflex doll's eye
 movements 411
 Oculogyric crisis 411
 Oculomotor (III) nerve 345
 Oculovestibular reflex 411
 Odour from the body 53
 Odynophagia 21
 Oedema 148, 170
 Oedema of lids 497
 Oesophagoscopy 271
 Olfactory (first) cranial nerve 341
 Oligoarthritis 417
 Oliguria 37
 Opacification of the cornea 90
 Ophthalmoscope 95
 Ophthalmoscopy 99

Opisthotonus 388
 Optic (second) cranial nerve 342
 Optic atrophy 96, 497
 Optic neuritis 98
 Ora-facial dyskinesias 387
 Oral mucosa 108
 Oral ulcers 108
 Organ of corti 358
 Orientation 487
 Orthopnoea 25
 Orthostatic (postural) hypotension
 165
 Osler-Weber-Rendu disease 464
 Osteoarthritis 417
 Otalgia 110
 Otorrhoea 111
 Ovarian cysts and tumours 313
 Overuse syndrome 419

P

Pain 323, 390
 Pain abdomen 18
 causes 19
 Pain in the eye 82
 Painful (antalgic) gait 422
 Painful finger-tips/toes 160
 Painful gait 419
 Painless gait 419
 Palatal reflex 378
 Pallor 34
 Palmar creases 145
 Palmar erythema 140, 144
 Palmomental reflex 337
 Palpable masses of the breast 132
 Palpation 26, 194, 246
 deep 247
 light 247
 Palpation of various pulses 195
 Palpation of wrist joint 442
 Palpebral fissure 81, 347
 Pancytopenia 466
 Panic attacks 484
 Pap smear 286
 Papaverine test 489
 Papillae 107
 Papilloedema 97
 Paraesthesias 42, 323
 Paraphasias 338
 Paraphimosis 306
 Parasitic infections 523
 Paratonic rigidity 367
 Parietal oedema 149
 Paronychia 147
 Parosmia 342

- Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea 25
 Patient-doctor relationship 3
 Patrick's test 447
 Peak expiratory flow 233
 Peau d' orange of the breast 134
 Pectoral reflex 374
 Pectum excavatum 172
 Pedigree chart 7
 Pelvic abscess 259
 Pelvic inflammatory disease 313
 Pendular jerk 320, 376, 384
 Penis 286, 305
 Pentagastrin test 272
 Pentosuria 298
 Perception 486
 Percussion 175, 218
 normal areas of resonance and
 dullness 218
 pitfalls 221
 rules 219
 Percutaneous transhepatic
 cholangiography 279
 Pericardia and pleural rubs 294
 Perimetry 344
 Peripheral blood film (PBF) examination
 469
 Peripheral nerves 317
 Peripheral nervous system 317
 Peripheral oedema 26
 Periumbilical mass 257
 Peristalsis 245
 Pes cavus 146
 Petechiae 465
 Phalen's manoeuvre 444
 Pheripheral vascular system 191
 Phimosis 306
 Photodermatosis 73
 Piebaldism 70
 Pigeon chest
 Pitting oedema 149
 Pituitary tumours 44
 Plain X-ray of abdomen 269
 Plantar reflex 377
 Platelet disorders 35
 Platynychia 142
 Pleural chest pain 31
 Pleural rub 225
 Pneumaturia 38
 Pneumonia 28
 Point of maximal impulse 156
 Polyarthrititis 417
 Polycystic ovarian disease 313
 Polycythaemia 462
 Polydipsia 42
 Polyuria 36, 42
 Porphobilinogen 299, 526
 Porphyria 37
 Portal pressure 281
 Portal venography 279
 Port-wine stain 76, 332
 Postcentral gyrus 322
 Posterior columns 322
 Postpolio paralysis 367
 Post-tussive suction 227
 Postural instability 44, 380
 Post-zoster neuralgia 354
 Precocious puberty 46
 Precordium 171
 Prepuce 285
 Pressure sores 148
 Pretibial myxoedema 507
 Priapism 45
 Prognathism 103
 Projective tests 489
 Prolactin 503
 Pronator sign 384
 Proptosis 47, 507
 Protein energy malnutrition 56
 Proteinuria 295
 aetiopathogenesis 296
 asymptomatic 296
 glomerular 296
 orthostatic (postural) 297
 tubular 296
 tests 296
 Proteinuria 524
 Protrusion of the eyeball 82
 Pruritus (itching) 24, 66
 Pseudobulbar palsy 362
 Pseudohypertrophy 363
 Pseudoptosis 88
 Pseudotumour cerebri 64
 Psoas cold abscess 430
 Psoriasis 73, 74
 Psoriatic arthritis 423
 Psychiatric assessment 474
 Psychiatric or mental state
 examination 484
 Psychogenic polydipsia 43
 Psychogenic vertigo 113
 Psychological tests 489
 Ptosis 86, 87, 88
 Pudal's sign 262
 Puffiness of face 38, 292
 Pulmonary angiography 235
 Pulmonary dyspnoea 34
 Pulsations 245
 Pulse 58
 Pulse deficit 161
 Pulse volume 162
 Pulsus alternans 162
 Pulsus bigemini 161
 Pulsus paradoxus 162
 Pupil 90
 Pupillary abnormalities 92, 410
 Pupils 90
 Pupura 467
 Purpura and petechiae 35
 Purpuric spots 467
 Pursuit gaze movements 350
 Pyoderma gangrenosum 68
 Pyogenic granuloma 105
 Pyorrhea alveolaris 104
- ## Q
- Quinsy 109, 121
- ## R
- Radiation of pain 18
 Radiofemoral delay 162
 Radioisotope bone scan 455
 Radionuclide imaging 278
 Radionuclide scanning 189
 Raised intracranial pressure 64
 Rales 218
 Ranula 108
 Rapid tapping gait 383
 Rash 69
 Rating scales 490
 Raynaud's phenomenon 44, 144, 197
 Reagent strips 297, 298
 Rebound phenomenon/test 380
 Redness of eyes 82
 Reference values 529
 Referred back pain 430
 Reflex rigidity 367
 Reflex sympathetic dystrophy 197
 Reflexes 372
 Refraction test 99
 Refractory errors 95
 Reinforcement 375
 Reiter's syndrome 417
 Renal clearance or glomerular
 filtration 302
 Renal functions 285
 Renal glucosuria 298
 Renal imaging 302
 computed tomography 303
 intravenous pyelography 303
 micturating cystogram 303

- plain radiograph of abdomen 302
- radionuclide studies 304
- renal angiogram 303
- renal biopsy 304
- ultrasonography 302
- Renal tubular defects 289
- Renin 285
- Renin-angiotensin system 150
- Repetitive stress syndrome 419
- Reptile tongue 384
- Respiration 58
- Respiration patterns 409
- Respiratory rate and rhythm 213
- Respiratory system 204
 - applied anatomy and physiology 204
 - circumference of the chest 204
 - general physical examination 210
 - lungs, fissures and lobes 205
 - lobes of the lungs 205
 - locations on the chest 207
 - surface markings of the lung 205
 - symptoms of respiratory disease 207
- Respiratory tract 523
- Reticular activating (arousal) system 316
- Retinal atrophy 96
- Retinal haemorrhages 98
- Retinal vein occlusion 99
- Retinitis pigmentosa 96
- Retinopathy 99, 497
- Retroversion of the uterus 312
- Review of systems 12, 18
- Rheumatic diseases 47
- Rheumatic disorders 414
- Rheumatoid arthritis 417, 424
- Rheumatoid factor 453
- Rheumatoid nodules 423
- Rhinorrhoea 118
- Rhythm 161
- Rickety rosary 292, 424
- Rigidity 367
- Ring worm 73
- Ringed sideroblast 471
- Rinne's test 115, 358
- Romberg's sign 116, 323, 381
- Rothera's test 525
- Rotor syndromes 274
- Rough estimate 10
- Rouge 520
- Routine haematological and biochemical test 229
- Rugae 286
- Ruptured tubal pregnancy 313
- S**
- Sabum 66
- Sacral oedema 149
- Salicylsulphonic acid test 524
- Sample collection 519
- Scalp 61
- Scapular reflex 378
- Schamroth's window test 143
- Schirmer's test 354, 356
- Schober's test 433
- Scissor gait 383
- Sclera 89
- Scleritis 89
- Sclerodactyly 141
- Scleroderma-like thickening of skin 496
- Scoliosis 431
- Scrotal swelling 266, 309
- Scrotum 286, 307, 309
- Sebaceous glands 66
- Secretin-cholecystokinin test 272
- Secretins from the eye 82
- Semen analysis 526
- Senile purpura 464
- Sensations 389
- Sense of smell 342
- Sensory ataxia 42, 379, 380
- Sensory disturbance 323
- Sensory root 350
- Sensory symptoms 42
- Sensory system 321
- Sensory vs cerebellar ataxia 393
- Serological test 521
- Serological test for viral hepatitis 277
- Serum lipids and cholesterol 276
- Serum proteins 276
- Serum uric acid 454
- Seventh (facial) cranial nerve 353
- Severe asthma 215
- Sexually transmitted diseases 290
- Shagreen patch 76
- Sheehan's syndrome 500
- Shifting dullness 221, 261
- Short ACTH stimulation test 504
- Shortening of distal phalanges 293
- Shoulder 436
- SI units 528
- Sicca syndrome 89
- Siffness 41
- Sigmoidoscopy and proctoscopy 271
- Sites for hernias 246
- Sixth (abducens) nerve palsy 348
- Skin 65, 467
- Skin colour and pigmentation 69
- Skin dimpling 133
- Skin elasticity 57
- Skin elasticity or turgor 248
- Skin fold thickness 57
- Skin infections 496
- Skin lesions 212
- Skin-associated lymphoid tissue 66
- Skodaic resonance 222
- Skull (cranium) 61
- Skull X-rays 396
- Slit lamp examination 99
- Small vessel stroke 329
- Smooth and glossy skin 241
- Sneezing 118
- Snout and sucking reflexes 337
- Soft tissue rheumatism 416, 418
- Somatic pain 18
- Somatic passivity phenomenon 487
- Sore throat 120
- Sounds 174
- Sour eructation 20
- Spasticity 367
- Spasms 41
- Specific gravity of urine 295
- Speech 485
- Speech and language 338
- Sperm morphology 527
- Spermatic cord 308
- Spider angiomas 243
- Spinal cord 317
- Spinal dermatomes 325
- Spinal myotomes 325
- Spinal reflex arc 321
- Spinal X-rays 396
- Spine 427
- Spinothalamic tracts 322
- Spirometer 232
- Spleen 251
- Splenic dullness 262
- Splenomegaly 244, 252, 463
- Splinter haemorrhages 160
- Spontaneous speech 338
- Sputum 28, 523
- Sputum examination 229
- Squint 84, 92, 93, 94
- Standard 12-lead electrocardiogram 182
- State of hydration 57
- Steatorrhoea 24
- Stensen's duct 101
- Sternal angle 204
- Stiffness 444
- Stimulation and suppression tests 503

- Strabismus 347
 Straight leg raising test 434
 Strawberry tongue 107
 Stress (exercise) electrocardiography 183
 indications and contraindications 184
 method 183
 pitfalls 184
 result 184
 types 183
 Striae 241
 Stridor 32, 121
 Stroke 27
 Structure of hair 77
 Stupor 404
 Subclavian steal syndrome 196
 Subconjunctival haemorrhage 83
 Subhyoid haemorrhages 98
 Succussion splash 227, 264
 Sudomotor function 395
 Sugars in urine 298
 Superficial reflexes 376
 Superficial venous thrombophlebitis 201
 Surface anatomy of the heart 171
 Swabs for culture 521
 Swan-neck deformity 425
 Sweat glands 66
 Swellings in the hands 145
 Syncope 26, 39, 44
 Syndrome of anterior cerebral artery 328
 Syndrome of internal carotid artery occlusion 328
 Syndrome of middle cerebral artery (MCA) 328
 Syndrome of posterior cerebral artery 328
 Syndrome of transient ischaemic attacks 327
 Synovial fluid examination 454
 Synovial joint 414
 Synovitis 47, 424
 Systemic neurological examination 333
 Systemic symptoms 12, 18
 cardiovascular 14
 endocrinal and metabolic 16
 gastrointestinal 12
 genital 17
 haemopoietic 15
 hepatobiliary 13
 locomotor 17
 nervous 15
 respiratory 14
 urinary 15
- T**
- Talipes equinus varus 146
 Tamm-Horsefall mucoproteins 296
 Tandem walking 381
 Taste sensation 355
 Tear fluid 81
 Teeth 101
 Telangiectasia 467, 468
 Temperature 59
 Temperature intolerance 44
 Temporal recession 78
 Temporomandibular joint 427
 Tenderness of chest 216
 Tendon jerks 376
 Tendon reflexes 372
 Tendons 414
 Tension or psychological headache 64
 Terminal dribbling 38
 Terminology used in skin lesions 75
 Test for Bence-Jones protein's 525
 Testes 307
 Testing for convergence 92
 Testing for ptosis 88
 Testing of ocular movements 93
 Testing the sacroiliac joints 436
 Tests for exocrine pancreatic function 272
 Tests for ventilation 232
 Tetanus 388
 Tetanus spasm 388
 The fifth (trigeminal) cranial nerve 350
 The skin 523
 Thermoanaesthesia 323
 Thimbling of nails 142
 Thinning or loss of hair 78
 Thoma's test 445
 Thompson's test 451
 Thoracentesis pleural aspiration 235
 Thoracic and lumbar spine 433
 Thoracic breathing 213
 Thoracic spine 429
 Thought 486
 Thought and perceptions 335
 Thrills 174
 Throat 120
 Throat swabs 523
 Thrombocytopenic purpura 465
 Thrombosis 327, 466
 Thrombosis embolism 195
 Thumb abduction test 443
 Thumping sign 250
 Thyroglobulin 128
 Thyroid axis 504
 Thyroid enlargement 499
 Thyroid gland 128
 abnormalities and their interpretations 130
 applied anatomy and physiology 128
 clinical presentations 129
 examination of thyroid 130
 functions of thyroid hormones 129
 investigations of a patient 130
 Thyroid hormones 128
 Thyromegaly 129
 Thyrotoxicosis 506, 507
 Tics and habit spasms 387
 Tinea pedis 74
 Tinel's sign 444
 Tinnitus 112
 Tissue loss 192
 Tone of muscles 366
 Tonguetie 105
 Tonometer 85
 Torsion dystonia 387
 Torticollis (wry neck) 122
 Touch 389
 Trachea 212, 215
 Tracheobronchial tree and distal airway 207
 Transillumination test 308
 Traube's area of resonance 220
 Traube's semilunar space 263
 Traumatic flail chest 214
 Tremors 105, 384, 385,
 Trendelenburg gait 421
 Trendelenburg's test 201, 445
 Trichomonas vaginalis 301
 Trigeminal (Gasserian) ganglion 350
 Trigeminal nerve lesion 352
 Trigeminal neuralgia 353
 Trigeminal neuralgia tic douloureux 352
 Trochlear (4th) nerve 345
 Trophic ulcers 148
 Trousseau's sign 388
 Truncal ataxia 380
 Tuberculin (Mantoux) test 232
 Tubular disorders 38
 Tubulointerstitial disorder 295
 Tullio's phenomenon 113
 Tunica vaginalis 286
 Tuning fork test 115
 Tympanic membrane 115

Types of fever 59
 Types of joint disease 416
 Types of murmurs 157

U

Ulnar deviation of hand 425
 Ultrasonography 100
 Umbilicus 243
 Unconsciousness or coma 404
 clinical evaluation of a patient 405
 general physical examination 405
 history 405
 systemic examination 407
 clinical features 407
 CT scan 506
 Isotope imaging 506
 MRI of pituitary 506
 pathophysiology and causes 404
 plain X-ray head for pituitary
 fossa 505
 ultrasonography 506
 Undescended testis 259
 Unequal pupils 91
 Unilateral lymphoedema 150
 Unilateral ptosis 347
 Upper GI endoscopy 270
 Upper limb joints 436
 Upper motor neuron (UMN) lesions 319
 Uraemic flaps 293
 Urea 302
 Ureters 285
 Urinary bladder 254, 286
 Urinary incontinence 38
 Urinary system 284
 Urinary tract infection 289
 Urinary tract obstruction 289
 Urine concentration or osmolality 295
 Urine culture 522
 Urine dilution 295
 Urine for 24 hours proteinuria 524
 Urine for culture 301
 Urine sugar 524

Urine tests 274
 Urobilinogen 526
 Urobilinogen urobilin 299
 Urobilinogenuria 299
 Urticarial rash/wheals 67
 Uterine fibroids 312
 Uterine prolapse 312
 Uterus or tubo-ovarian mass 259

V

Vagina 286
 Valgus 424
 Varicose veins 147
 Varicose veins and chronic venous
 insufficiency 201
 Vas deferens 286
 Vascular bruits 264
 Vascular occlusion 197
 Vascular syndromes of brain 327
 Vasculitic changes 140
 Vasculitis 467
 Vasopressin test 43
 Vasospastic disorders 196
 Vegetative state 404
 Venepuncture 519
 Venous drainage of brain dural sinus
 thrombosis 330
 Venous hum 180, 264
 Venous system 198
 Ventilation perfusion scan 235
 Ventilatory defect 233
 Vertebra 325
 Vertebrobasilar insufficiency 39
 Vertebrobasilar artery syndrome 329
 Vertigo 112
 Vertigo or dizziness 39
 Vestibular functions 116, 358
 Vestibule 286
 Vestibulocochlear nerve 357
 Vibration sense 391
 Vincent's infection 104
 Virus detection 523
 Visceral reflexes 378

Visual acuity 84, 497
 Visual evoked potential 100
 Visual field 85
 Visual fixation 116
 Visual function tests 84
 distant vision 84
 near vision 85
 Visual pathways 342
 Vitiligo 69, 70
 Vitreous body 81
 Vitreous haemorrhage 98
 Vocal fremitus 217
 Vocal resonance 224
 Vomiting 21
 Von Graefe's sign 508

W

Waddling gait 383, 421
 Waist-hip ratio 55
 Wartenberg's sign 374
 Water deprivation test 505
 Waveform 167
 WBC casts 300
 Weakness or paralysis 40
 Weber's test 115, 358
 Weight gain 43
 Weight loss 43, 56
 Wernicke's area 338
 Wharton's ducts 101
 Wheeze 32, 218
 Wheezes and rhonchi 225
 Whispering pectoriloquy 225
 White coat hypertension 165
 White matter 316
 Wrist and hands 439
 Wrist clonus 375
 Wrist movements 442

X

Xanthelasma 86
 X-rays of joints 455